

DEWEY
Decimal Classification
and
Relative Index

Devised by
MELVIL DEWEY

Edition 18

Volume 2
Schedules

Dewey, Melvil, 1851–1931.

Dewey decimal classification and relative

First published anonymously in 1876 under the title *Dewey decimal classification and subject index*. 2d–14th editions published under the title *Dewey decimal classification and relative index*.

THIS BOOK WAS COMPOSED, PRINTED AND BOUND
IN THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA
AT KINGSFORT PRESS, INC., KINGSFORT, TENNESSEE

Contents

Volume 1

Melvil Dewey	1
The Dewey Decimal Classification	3
Preface	7
1. Principles	7
2. Degree of expansion	7
3. Notable new features	8
3.1 Tables	8
3.2 Add instructions	9
3.3 Discontinued and unused number	9
3.4 Concepts in centered headings	9
3.5 Phoenix schedules	9
3.6 Use outside the United States	9
3.7 Extraterrestrial worlds	9
3.8 Index	10
4. Relocations	10
5. Spelling	10
Editor's Introduction	13
1. Book classification	13
2. Dewey Decimal Classification	15
2.1 Current use	15
2.2 Basic plan and application	15
2.21 Application	17
2.211 Book numbers	17
2.22 Discipline	17
2.23 Hierarchy	18
2.231 In notation	19
2.232 In discipline and subject	20
2.3 Memory aids	20
2.31 Areas	20
2.32 Languages	21
2.33 Other	21
2.34 Standard subdivisions	21
2.4 Versatility and flexibility	22
3. How to use Dewey	22
3.1 Preliminaries	22
3.2 Analysis of a work	23

Dewey Decimal Classification

3.3	Basic rules for selection of class number	24
3.31	Approach	24
3.32	Headings	25
3.33	Definitions, scope notes, example notes	26
3.34	Inclusion notes	26
3.35	Instruction notes	26
3.351	Class here notes	26
3.3511	Comprehensive and interdisciplinary works	27
3.352	Optional provision	27
3.353	Use of more than one 0 in standard subdivisions	27
3.354	Synthesis of notation (number building)	27
3.3541	Add from auxiliary tables	28
3.3542	Add from schedules	28
3.3543	Add from both tables and schedules	29
3.3544	General suggestions	29
3.3545	Hierarchical force	30
3.355	Citation order	30
3.3551	General special	31
3.356	Relocations	31
3.357	Class elsewhere notes	32
3.358	Cross references	33
3.36	Summary of hierarchical force of entries	33
3.37	Standard subdivisions	33
3.371	General special	35
3.38	Subject not provided for	35
3.39	The value of position	36
3.4	Complexities in selection of class number	37
3.41	More than one subject	37
3.42	More than one aspect	38
3.43	Comprehensive works on concepts in centered headings	39
3.44	Applications	39
3.45	Aggregation and relation signs	39
3.46	Works related to other works	39
3.5	Reduction	39
3.51	How to reduce notation	40
3.52	Segmentation on printed cards	41
3.6	Index	42
3.61	Basic content	42
3.62	Relativity	42
3.63	Cross references	42
3.64	Coordination with schedules	45
3.65	Arrangement and other general formation	45
3.7	General suggestions	46

Contents

4.	Variations from recommended practice	47
4.1	Principle of usefulness	47
4.2	Officially recognized variations	47
4.21	Optional provision	47
4.22	Alphabetical arrangement	48
4.23	Devices for giving more emphasis to "minor" subjects	49
4.231	Artificial digits	49
4.232	Use of established numbers with unofficial meanings	49
4.24	Types of works not classified	49
4.25	Omitting digits	50
4.3	Unofficial variations	50
4.31	Attraction	50
4.32	Expansion	51
4.33	Standard subdivisions	51
4.34	Showing language in notation	51
4.4	Caution	51
5.	Special problems	52
5.1	Long numbers	52
5.2	Changes between editions	53
5.21	Expansions and reductions	53
5.22	Relocations	53
5.23	Reused numbers	53
5.24	Phoenix schedules	54
6.	Acknowledgments	54
7.	Conclusion	55
	Glossary	57
	Index to Preface, Editor's Introduction, and Glossary	62
	Melvil Dewey's Introduction to Edition 12	67
	Tables	113
	Use of the Tables	114
	Table 1. Standard Subdivisions	115
	Table 2. Areas	123
	Table 3. Subdivisions of Individual Literatures	375
	Table 4. Subdivisions of Individual Languages	395
	Table 5. Racial, Ethnic, National Groups	398
	Table 6. Languages	407
	Table 7. Persons	420
	Relocations and Discontinued Numbers	440
	Three-Figure Numbers not in Use	447
	Summaries	449

Volume 2

Schedules	461
Use of the Schedules	462

Volume 3

Relative Index	1629
Use of the Index	1630
Abbreviations Used in the Index	1631
Obsolescent Schedules	2669
Tables of Concordance	2685

Schedules

Use of the Schedules

Full instructions on use of the schedules may be found in the Editor's Introduction, section 3.

Coordination and subordination of subjects are shown by indention and length of number as described in the Editor's Introduction, section 2.231, and are shown also in part by the prominence of the type face.

A number in square brackets [] is not in force, or is no longer in force with the meaning indicated.

A number in *italics* is a reused number, i.e., it has a different meaning from that which it had in one or more of the earlier editions 14–17 (1942–1965).

Asterisks (*) and daggers (†) lead to footnotes, which, in turn, usually lead to detailed instructions at a point earlier in the schedule. Instructions dealing with asterisks and daggers should be read with care, because, while they apply usually to whole entries, e.g., in 222–224, they sometimes apply to kinds of concepts, e.g., kinds of literature in 810–890, and sometimes to separate terms, e.g., in 592–599.

000 Generalities

001 Knowledge and its extension

SUMMARY

- 001.2 Scholarship and learning
 - .3 Humanities
 - .4 Methodology and research
 - .5 Information and communication
 - .6 Data processing
 - .9 Controversial and spurious knowledge
- .2 Scholarship and learning
- .3 Humanities
- .4 Methodology and research
- .42 Methodology
 - Derivation of basic premises, postulates, concepts
 - Class surveys and appraisals [*formerly* 001.42] in 001.433
 - Class methodology of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 018 from Table 1, e.g., methodology in linguistics 410.18; data processing and computerization in 001.6; mathematical methodology in 510
- .422 Statistical method [*formerly also* 311.2]
 - Collection, tabulation, analysis, presentation of randomly selected data
 - Class mathematical analysis and statistical mathematics in 519.5
- .422 2 Collection
 - Questionnaires and field work
- .422 4 Tabulation
 - Arrangement, layout, construction of tables and series
- .422 6 Presentation of data
 - Charts, graphs, nomograms
- .424 Operations research
 - Design, models (simulation), programing
- [.425] Empirical tests and testing
 - Class in 001.434

- [.426] Case studies
 - Class in 001.432
- [.429] Collecting and collections
 - Class in 001.433
- .43 Research
 - Activities and facilities for discovery and establishment of facts thru historical, descriptive, experimental investigation
 - Class here resources
 - Class research in a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 072 from Table 1, e.g., research in linguistics 410.72
 - For support and incentives, see 001.44*
- .432 Historical
 - Including case studies [*formerly* 001.426]
- .433 Descriptive
 - Including surveys and appraisals [*both formerly* 001.42], collecting and collections [*both formerly* 001.429]
- .434 Experimental
 - Including empirical tests and testing [*both formerly* 001.425]
- .44 Support of and incentives for research
 - Endowments, prizes, awards, scholarships, fellowships, medals, certificates, honors
- .5 **Information and communication**
 - Class data processing in 001.6
- .501 Philosophy and theory
 - Class communication theory in 001.51

SUMMARY

- 001.51 Communication theory
 - .53 Cybernetics
 - .54 Communication thru verbal language
 - .55 Communication thru records
 - .56 Communication thru nonverbal language
- .51 Communication theory
- .53 Cybernetics
 - Class communication theory in 001.51, computers in 001.64, control in 003
- .532 Prototypes (Bionics)
- .533 Self-organizing systems

- .534 Perception theory
- .535 Artificial intelligence
- .539 Information theory [*formerly also* 519.7]
- .539 2 Recall
- .539 3 Uncertainty
- .539 4 Relevance and irrelevance

001.54–001.56 Communication

Class comprehensive works in 001.5

- .54 Communication thru verbal language
 - Class linguistics in 410; language of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., language of science 501.4
- .542 Speech and listening
- .543 Writing and reading
- .543 6 Cryptography
- .55 Communication thru records
- .552 Printed and written mediums
 - Class here the book
- .552 2 Conventional size
- .552 3 Microreproductions
- .553 Audiovisual and visual mediums
- .553 2 Motion-picture films
- .553 3 Filmstrips
- .553 4 Slides
- .553 5 Unprojected illustrations
- .554 Audio mediums
- .554 2 Mechanical
- .554 3 Magnetic
- .554 4 Electronic
- [.555] Other
 - Number discontinued; class in 001.55

- .56 **Communication thru nonverbal language [formerly 419]**
 - Pantomime, sign language, smoke signals, drumbeats, flags, lights, other devices representing total concepts
 - Including looking, listening
 - Class manual alphabetic language in 419; nonverbal language of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0147 from Table 1, e.g., nonverbal language of mathematics 510.147
- .6 **Data processing**
 - Class data processing in a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., data processing in banking 332.10285
- .61 **Systems analysis**
 - Including preparation of system flow charts
- .62 **Nonmechanized**
- .63 **Automatic**
 - Including punch-card data processing
 - For electronic data processing, see 001.64*
- .64 **Electronic**
- .640 4 Specific types of computers
- .640 42 Analog
- .640 44 Digital
- .642 **Computer programing**
- .642 3 Program flowcharting (Block diagraming)
 - Preparation of flowcharts to serve as basis of computer programs
- .642 4 Coding
 - Conversion of natural languages into program languages
 - Subarrange by name of program language, e.g., FORTRAN 001.6424 F6
- .642 5 Software
 - Examples: compiler and translator programs, loading programs, industry application programs, other repetitive subroutines
- .644 **Input, storage, output**
- .644 04 Time-sharing, real-time, on-line systems
- .644 2 **Input and storage**
 - Punch cards, paper tape; magnetic tape, disks, drums; data cells, optical scanning, audio input
 - Class punch-card data processing in 001.63

.644 3

Outputs

Printouts, graphics, other visual display, audio

.9

Controversial and spurious knowledge

[.92]

Controversies

Number discontinued; class in 001.9

.93

Curiosities

Well established phenomena not scientifically explained, e.g., frozen mammals in Siberia, fire walking

.94

Mysteries

Reported phenomena not explained, not fully verified, e.g., unidentified flying objects, Loch Ness monster

.95

Deceptions and hoaxes

Example: Piltdown man

.96

Errors, delusions, superstitions

002

[Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

003

Systems

Theory, analysis, design, testing, building, operation of regularly interacting or independent groups of elements

Class systems analysis in data processing in 001.61, mathematics of programming in 519.7

004

[Never assigned]

005

[Never assigned]

006

[Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

007

[Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

008

[Never assigned]

009

[Never assigned]

- .56 **Communication thru nonverbal language [formerly 419]**
 - Pantomime, sign language, smoke signals, drumbeats, flags, lights, other devices representing total concepts
 - Including looking, listening
 - Class manual alphabetic language in 419; nonverbal language of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0147 from Table 1, e.g., nonverbal language of mathematics 510.147
- .6 **Data processing**
 - Class data processing in a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0285 from Table 1, e.g., data processing in banking 332.10285
- .61 **Systems analysis**
 - Including preparation of system flow charts
- .62 **Nonmechanized**
- .63 **Automatic**
 - Including punch-card data processing
 - For electronic data processing, see 001.64*
- .64 **Electronic**
- .640 4 Specific types of computers
- .640 42 Analog
- .640 44 Digital
- .642 **Computer programing**
- .642 3 Program flowcharting (Block diagraming)
 - Preparation of flowcharts to serve as basis of computer programs
- .642 4 Coding
 - Conversion of natural languages into program languages
 - Subarrange by name of program language, e.g., FORTRAN 001.6424 F6
- .642 5 Software
 - Examples: compiler and translator programs, loading programs, industry application programs, other repetitive subroutines
- .644 **Input, storage, output**
- .644 04 Time-sharing, real-time, on-line systems
- .644 2 **Input and storage**
 - Punch cards, paper tape; magnetic tape, disks, drums; data cells, optical scanning, audio input
 - Class punch-card data processing in 001.63

-
- .644 3 **Outputs**
 Printouts, graphics, other visual display, audio
 - .9 **Controversial and spurious knowledge**
 - [.92] **Controversies**
 Number discontinued; class in 001.9
 - .93 **Curiosities**
 Well established phenomena not scientifically explained, e.g., frozen
 mammals in Siberia, fire walking
 - .94 **Mysteries**
 Reported phenomena not explained, not fully verified, e.g., unidentified
 flying objects, Loch Ness monster
 - .95 **Deceptions and hoaxes**
 Example: Piltdown man
 - .96 **Errors, delusions, superstitions**
 - 002 **[Unassigned]**
 Most recently used in Edition 16
 - 003 **Systems**
 Theory, analysis, design, testing, building, operation of regularly interacting
 or independent groups of elements
 Class systems analysis in data processing in 001.61, mathematics of programming
 in 519.7
 - 004 **[Never assigned]**
 - 005 **[Never assigned]**
 - 006 **[Unassigned]**
 Most recently used in Edition 16
 - 007 **[Unassigned]**
 Most recently used in Edition 16
 - 008 **[Never assigned]**
 - 009 **[Never assigned]**

010 Bibliographies and catalogs

Of books, other printed and written records, audiovisual records

(It is optional to class here bibliographies and catalogs of reading for children and young adults; prefer 028.52)

If preferred, class bibliographies and catalogs of motion-picture films in 791.438

.28 Preparation

011 General bibliographies

Lists of works not limited to a specific kind of coverage or place of publication, no matter how arranged

.02 Reference works

.08 Reading of children and young adults
(Use of this number is optional; see note at 010)

► **012–016 Special bibliographies and catalogs**

Class comprehensive works in 010

012 Bibliographies and catalogs of individuals

Works by or about persons not clearly associated with a specific subject

013 Bibliographies and catalogs of works by specific classes of writers

For bibliographies and catalogs of individuals, see 012

.03–.87 Authors with common characteristics other than residence

Add "Persons" notation 03–87 from Table 7 to base number 013

.9 Authors resident in specific regions, continents, countries, localities

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 013.9

014 Bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works

Add to 014 the numbers following 03 in 031–039, e.g., bibliographies and catalogs of anonymous and pseudonymous works in French 014.41

015 Bibliographies and catalogs of works from specific places

Works issued or printed in specific regions, continents, countries, localities, or by specific firms

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 015

016 Bibliographies and catalogs of specific disciplines and subjects

If preferred, class with the specific discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 016 from Table 1, e.g., bibliographies of astronomy 520.16; or, if preferred, class with the specific discipline or subject adding 0 to the notation, e.g., bibliographies of science 500.0, of astronomy 520.0, of descriptive astronomy 523.0, of descriptive astronomy of stars 523.80; or, if preferred, class with the specific discipline or subject using book number A1 or Z9

Add 001-999 to base number 016, e.g., bibliographies of astronomy 016.52

Class in 016.78 bibliographies, catalogs, thematic catalogs of music scores and parts; but, if preferred, class as in the first note above or in 781.97. Class in 016.789912 catalogs and lists of music recordings; but, if preferred, class as in the first note above or in 789.913

Class in 016.8088 bibliographies and catalogs of belles-lettres, e.g., of novels 016.808833

017-019 General catalogs

Lists of works held in a specific collection or group of collections and not limited to a specific kind of coverage or place of publication

Class comprehensive works in 010

017 General subject catalogs

017.1-017.4 Classified

Class comprehensive works in 017

- .1 Classified catalogs of non-private libraries
- .2 Classified catalogs of private and family libraries
- .3 Classified auction catalogs
- .4 Classified booksellers' catalogs

For classified auction catalogs, see 017.3

017.5-017.8 Alphabetic

Class comprehensive works in 017

- .5 Alphabetic subject catalogs of non-private libraries
- .6 Alphabetic subject catalogs of private and family libraries
- .7 Alphabetic subject auction catalogs
- .8 Alphabetic subject booksellers' catalogs

For alphabetic subject auction catalogs, see 017.7

018 Author catalogs and catalogs arranged by date

Add to 018 the numbers following 017 in 017.1-017.4, e.g., catalogs of private and family libraries 018.2

019 Dictionary catalogs

Add to 019 the numbers following 017 in 017.1–017.4, e.g., auction catalogs
019.3

020 Library and information sciences

The science and art utilized in identification, collection, organization, exploitation
of books, other printed and written records, audiovisual materials

For bibliographies and catalogs, see 010

.6 Organizations**.62 Permanent nongovernment organizations****.621 International****.622 National**

Examples: American Society for Information Science, Indian
Library Association

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 020.622

.623 Regional, state, provincial**.623 2 Regional**

Example: Southeast Library Association

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 020.6232

.623 4 State and provincial

Example: Ontario Library Association

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 020.6234

.624 Local

Example: New York Library Club

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 020.624

.7 Study and teaching**.71 Institutions offering instruction in library and information sciences****.711 Library schools**

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 020.711

.715 Institutes and workshops**.75 Book collecting**

021 The library and society

Goals, promotion, government relations

Class here information organizations, comprehensive works on libraries

Use 021.001–021.008 for standard subdivisions

For regulations for use of libraries, see 024; specific kinds of institutions, 026–027

.009 Historical and geographical treatment of libraries

Class historical and geographical treatment of specific libraries and kinds of libraries in 026–027

.1 Libraries as storage centers

.2 Libraries as educational forces and information centers

Class here libraries as centers for instructional materials

.24 Educational forces

.28 Information centers

.3 Libraries in relation to other educational institutions

.4 Libraries as social forces

.6 Library development and cooperation

.62 Extension units

.63 Centralization of systems

.64 Cooperation

Examples: union catalogs, bibliographical centers

Class cooperation in a specific activity with the activity, e.g., cooperative cataloging 025.35

.65 Library networks

Class specific kinds of library networks in 026–027

.7 Promotion of libraries

Example: friends-of-the-library organizations [*formerly also* 026–027]

.8 Libraries and government

.82 Library commissions and governing boards

.83 Financial support

.84 Gifts of books and copyright deposits

.85 Official exchange of publications

.88 Political pressures

022 **Physical plant of libraries and information centers**

Class here library quarters in buildings devoted primarily to other activities,
e.g., physical plant of school libraries

For maintenance of physical plant, see 025.9

.1 **Location and site**

.3 **Planning for buildings**

Requirements based on function

Class library architecture in 727.8

[.309] **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 022.33

.31 **By kinds of libraries**

Add to 022.31 the numbers following 027 in 027.1–027.8, e.g., planning
college library buildings 022.317

Class historical and geographical treatment of kinds of library buildings
in 022.33

.33 **Historical and geographical treatment**

.330 1–.330 4 **Historical periods**

Add to 022.330 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivi-
sions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., planning library
buildings in the 1970s 022.33047

.331–.339 **Geographical treatment**

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 022.33

.4 **Stacks and shelving**

.5 **Reading rooms**

For reading rooms for special materials, see 022.6

.6 **Administrative and special rooms**

Examples: reading rooms for special materials, technical processing areas

.7 **Lighting**

.8 **Heating, ventilation, air conditioning**

As related to function

.9 **Equipment, furniture, furnishings**

For stacks and shelving, see 022.4

023 **Personnel and positions**

.4 **Administrative personnel**

Qualifications, organization, training

- .5 **Staff**
 - Qualifications, organization, training
 - [.502 02] Staff manuals, rules, codes
 - Do not use; class in 023.9
- .7 **Titles and job descriptions**
 - Use 023.7001–023.7009 for standard subdivisions
- .9 **Staff manuals, rules, codes**
- 024 **Regulations for use of libraries**
- .6 **Interlibrary loans**
- 025 **Library operations**
 - Use 025.001–025.009 for standard subdivisions
 - For physical plant, see 022; personnel and positions, 023; documentation, 029*
- .02 **Technical processes**

SUMMARY

- 025.1 **Administration**
- .2 **Acquisitions**
- .3 **Cataloging** ✓
- .4 **Classification**
- .5 **Services to patrons**
- .6 **Circulation services**
- .7 **Binding and repair services**
- .8 **Maintenance and preservation of collections**
- .9 **Maintenance of physical plant**
- .1 **Administration**
 - As related to function
 - Class other functions with the specific subject, e.g., maintenance of physical plant 025.9
- .11 **Finance**
- .12 **Printing and publishing**
- .129 **Duplication processes**
- .17 **Treatment of special materials**
 - Arrangement, care, use
 - Class a special kind of treatment with the kind, e.g., cataloging of special materials 025.34
- .171 **Manuscripts, archival materials, rarities**
- .172 **Clippings, broadsides, pamphlets**
- .173 **Serials, documents, report literature**

- .176 Maps, atlases, globes
- .177 Audiovisual materials
 - For recordings, see 025.178; maps, atlases, globes, 025.176; realia, 025.179*
- .177 1 Pictures and prints
- .177 3 Films and slides
- .178 Recordings and music scores
 - Including discs, tapes, wires
- .179 Other special materials
 - Including microreproductions, realia
- .179 2 Books in raised characters
 - Example: Braille
- .2 **Acquisitions**
 - Selecting and acquiring materials by purchase, exchange, gift, deposit
- .21 Selection of books and other materials
 - Principles and theory
- .23 Order work
- .25 Physical preparation for storage
- .26 Exchange and gift work
 - Including United States Book Exchange
- .3 **Cataloging**
- .32 Descriptive cataloging
- .33 Subject cataloging
 - Use 025.330001–025.330009 for standard subdivisions
 - For classification, see 025.4*
- .330 01–.339 99 Subject headings
 - Add 001–999 to base number 025.33, e.g., subject headings in science 025.335
- .34 Cataloging of special materials
 - Add to 025.34 the numbers following 025.17 in 025.171–025.179, e.g., cataloging of maps 025.346
- .35 Cooperative cataloging
- .37 Filing
- .39 Recataloging

- .4 Classification**
 - Principles, systems, notations
- .43 General classification schedules**
- .46 Classification of specific disciplines and subjects**
 - Use 025.460001–025.460009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add 001–999 to base number 025.46, e.g., classification of public administration 025.4635. ✓
- .49 Reclassification**
- .5 Services to patrons**
 - Class reference, reader, advisory services to special groups in 027.6, other specific services not provided for here with the subject, e.g., circulation services 025.6
- .52 Reference and information services**
 - Class use of books and other records as sources of information in 028.7
- .54 Reader advisory services**
 - Class use of books and other records as sources of recreation and self-development in 028.8
- .542 To individuals**
- .544 To groups**
- .6 Circulation services**
 - Lending and renting materials, keeping records of loans and rentals
 - For regulations for interlibrary loans, see 024.6*
- .7 Binding and repair services**
- .8 Maintenance and preservation of collections**
- .81 Arrangement**
- .82 Inventory**
- .84 Preservation**
 - For binding and repair, see 025.7*
- .9 Maintenance of physical plant**



026–027 Specific kinds of institutions

Class here specific institutions, specific kinds of systems and networks

Class friends-of-the-library organizations [formerly 026–027] in 021.7

Class comprehensive works in 021, a specific activity or service with the subject, e.g., information services 025.52

026

Libraries devoted to specific disciplines and subjects

Class here information organizations and library departments and collections in specific fields; comprehensive works on special libraries

Use 026.0001–026.0009 for standard subdivisions

Add 001–999 to base number 026, e.g., medical libraries 026.61

Class special libraries not devoted to specific disciplines and subjects in 027.6

027

General libraries

Use 027.001–027.008 for standard subdivisions

.009

Historical treatment

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 027.01–027.09

.01–.09

Geographical treatment

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 027.0, e.g., general libraries in France 027.044

SUMMARY

027.1 Private and family libraries

.2 Proprietary libraries

.3 Rental libraries

.4 Public libraries

.5 Government libraries

.6 Libraries for special groups and specific organizations

.7 College and university libraries

.8 School libraries

027.1–027.5 By form of ownership

Class comprehensive works in 027, libraries for special groups and specific organizations regardless of form of ownership in 027.6, libraries devoted to specific disciplines and subjects regardless of form of ownership in 026

.1

Private and family libraries

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 027.1

.2

Proprietary libraries

Semiprivate libraries requiring subscription or membership fees for general use

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 027.2

- .3 Rental libraries**
 - Libraries whose materials are available for use on commercial basis
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 027.3
- .4 Public libraries**
 - Institutions that serve free all residents of a community, district, or region, usually supported in whole or in part from public funds
 - Class here bookmobiles, branches
 - .409 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 027.43-027.49
 - .42 Specific kinds of public libraries**
 - Class treatment of specific kinds of public libraries by continent, country, locality in 027.43-027.49
 - .422 County and regional libraries**
 - .424 Reference and research libraries**
 - .43-.49 Treatment by continent, country, locality**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 027.4
- .5 Government libraries**
 - National, state, provincial
 - .509 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class specific institutions in 027.53-027.59
 - .53-.59 Specific institutions**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 027.5
- .6 Libraries for special groups and specific organizations**
 - Class here reference, reader, advisory services to special groups
 - Class libraries for special groups and specific organizations but devoted to specific disciplines and subjects in 026
 - For libraries for educational institutions, see 027.7-027.8*
 - .62 Libraries for specific age groups**
 - .622 For old-age groups**
 - .625 For children**
 - .625 1 Storytelling**
 - .626 For young adults**
 - .63 Libraries for minority groups**
 - .65 Government libraries for special groups**

- .66 Welfare institution libraries
- .662 Hospital libraries
 - Class here comprehensive works on patient and medical libraries
 - Class medical libraries in 026.61
- .663 Libraries for the blind
- .665 Prison libraries
- .67 Libraries for religious organizations
- .68 Libraries for nonprofit organizations
 - Example: United Nations Library
 - Including libraries of learned societies
- .69 Business and industrial libraries

► **027.7–027.8 Libraries for educational institutions**

Class comprehensive works in 027.7, libraries for educational institutions but devoted to specific disciplines and subjects in 026

- .7 College and university libraries
 - Class here comprehensive works on libraries for educational institutions
 - For school libraries, see 027.8*
- .709 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class specific institutions in 027.73–027.79
- .73–.79 Specific institutions
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 027.7
- .8 School libraries
 - .809 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class specific libraries in 027.823–027.829
 - .82 By level and by place
 - Class libraries in church-supported schools by level and place in 027.83
 - .822 Types by level
 - Class specific libraries in 027.823–027.829
 - .822 2 Elementary
 - .822 3 Secondary
 - .823–.829 Specific libraries
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 027.82
- .83 Libraries in church-supported schools

028 Reading and reading aids**.1 Book reviews**

Class technique of book reviewing in 808.0660281, critical appraisal of literature in 800, reviews on a specific subject with the subject

.5 Reading of children and young adults**.52 Bibliographies and catalogs**

If preferred, class in 010

.7 Use of books and other records as sources of information**.8 Use of books and other records as sources of recreation and self-development****.9 Reading interests and habits****029 Documentation**

Assembling, coding, providing accessibility to recorded knowledge

[.018 3] Data processing, computerization, use of computers

Do not use; class in 029.7

**029.4–029.7 Specific documentation procedures**

Class comprehensive works in 029, use of specific procedures for documenting specific disciplines and subjects in 029.9

For cataloging, see 025.3; classification, 025.4

.4 Abstracting

Manual and mechanized

Class composition of abstracts in 808.06

.5 Indexing

Manual and mechanized indexing of individual, serial, collected records

.53 Coordinate**.54 Chain****.55 Relative****.7 Mechanized storage, search, retrieval of information**

Use of computers and other equipment

.72 Storage**.73 Search****.75 Retrieval and machine translation****.752 Retrieval of abstracts****.753 Retrieval of citations (bibliographies)**

.756 Machine (Mechanized) translation

[Formerly 418.028, also with the specific language using
“Subdivisions of Individual Languages” notation 8028 from
Table 4]

.9 Documentation of specific disciplines and subjects

Abstracting, indexing; mechanized storage, search, retrieval of information

Add 001-999 to base number 029.9, e.g., indexing medical literature 029.961

030 General encyclopedic works

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class encyclopedic works in specific languages in 031-039



031-039 In specific languages

Class here specific encyclopedias and works about them

Arrange by language in which originally written as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to encyclopedias in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Arabic-language encyclopedias 03A (preceding 031). See also option under 031

031 American

English-language encyclopedias originating in Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to encyclopedias in a specific language, it is optional to class them here; in that case class American encyclopedias in 032. See also option under 031-039)

.02 Books of miscellaneous facts

032 In English

For American English-language encyclopedias, see 031

.02 Books of miscellaneous facts

033 In other Germanic languages

Add “Languages” notation 31-394 from Table 6 to base number 03, e.g., Dutch-language encyclopedias 033.931

Class Scandinavian-language encyclopedias in 038

034 In French, Provençal, Catalan

Add “Languages” notation 41-49 from Table 6 to base number 03, e.g., French-language encyclopedias 034.1

035 In Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic

Add “Languages” notation 51-59 from Table 6 to base number 03, e.g., Italian-language encyclopedias 035.1

036 In Spanish and Portuguese

Add "Languages" notation 61–69 from Table 6 to base number 03, e.g.,
Portuguese-language encyclopedias 036.9

037 In Slavic languages

.1 **Russian**

.8 **Other**

For Ukrainian- and Belorussian-language encyclopedias, see 037.9

.81 **Bulgarian and Macedonian**

.811 **Bulgarian**

.819 **Macedonian**

.82 **Serbo-Croatian**

.84 **Slovenian**

.85 **Polish**

.86 **Czech**

.87 **Slovak**

.88 **Wendish (Sorbian, Lusatian)**

.9 **Ukrainian and Belorussian**

.91 **Ukrainian**

.99 **Belorussian**

038 In Scandinavian languages

Add to 038 the numbers following 39 in "Languages" notation 396–398 from
Table 6, e.g., Swedish-language encyclopedias 038.7

039 In other languages

Add "Languages" notation 2–9 from Table 6 to base number 039

040 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

041 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

042 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

043 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

044 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

045 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

046 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

047 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

048 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

049 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

050 General serial publications and their indexes

Class here periodicals

Class administrative reports and proceedings of general organizations in 060

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class serial publications in specific languages in 051–059

**051–059 In specific languages**

Class here specific serial publications and works about them

Arrange by language in which originally published as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to serial publications in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Hindi-language serial publications 05H (preceding 051). See also option under 051

Class bilingual and polylingual publications with the preponderant language; if no language is preponderant, class in 050

If preferred, arrange serial publications alphabetically under 050, using A1 for comprehensive works about them and Z9 for general indexes to them

051 American

English-language serial publications of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to serial publications in a specific language, it is optional to class them here; in that case class American serial publications in 052. See also option under 051–059)

052 In English

For American English-language serial publications, see 051

053 In other Germanic languages

Add "Languages" notation 31–394 from Table 6 to base number 05, e.g., Dutch-language serial publications 053.931

Class Scandinavian-language serial publications in 058

054 In French, Provençal, Catalan

Add "Languages" notation 41–49 from Table 6 to base number 05, e.g., French-language serial publications 054.1

055 In Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic

Add "Languages" notation 51–59 from Table 6 to base number 05, e.g., Italian-language serial publications 055.1

056 In Spanish and Portuguese

Add "Languages" notation 61–69 from Table 6 to base number 05, e.g., Portuguese-language serial publications 056.9

057 In Slavic languages

Add to 057 the numbers following 037 in 037.1–037.9, e.g., Polish-language serial publications 057.85

058 In Scandinavian languages

Add to 058 the numbers following 39 in "Languages" notation 396–398 from Table 6, e.g., Swedish-language serial publications 058.7

059 In other languages

Add "Languages" notation 2–9 from Table 6 to base number 059

060 General organizations and museology

General organizations: history, charters, regulations, membership lists, administrative reports and proceedings of societies, academies, foundations, associations, conferences, congresses whose activity is not limited to a specific field

Including general international organizations

Class here interdisciplinary works on organizations

Arrange geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to organizations in a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., organizations in Pakistan 06P (preceding 061). See also option under 061

Class organizations devoted to a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 06 from Table 1, e.g., organizations devoted to library and information sciences 020.6

.4 General special**.42 General rules of order [formerly 328.1]****.9 Historical treatment**

Class historical treatment of specific areas in 061–068



061–068 General organizations

Class comprehensive works in 060

061 General organizations in North America

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to organizations in a specific country, it is optional to class them here; in that case class organizations in North America in 068.7. See also option under 060)

Class organizations in Middle America in 068.72

.1 Canada

Add to 061.1 the numbers following 71 in "Areas" notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in British Columbia 061.11

.3–.9 United States

Add to 061 the numbers following 7 in "Areas" notation 73–79 from Table 2, e.g., general organizations in Ohio 061.71

Class organizations in Hawaii in 068.969

062 General organizations in England and Wales

Add to 062 the numbers following 42 in "Areas" notation 421–429 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in London 062.1

Class organizations in Scotland and Ireland in 068.41

063 General organizations in central Europe Germany

Add to 063 the numbers following 43 in "Areas" notation 431–439 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Poland 063.8

064 General organizations in France and Monaco

Add to 064 the numbers following 44 in "Areas" notation 441–449 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Paris 064.36

065 General organizations in Italy and adjacent territories

Add to 065 the numbers following 45 in "Areas" notation 451–459 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Rome 065.632

066 General organizations in Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands Spain

Add to 066 the numbers following 46 in "Areas" notation 461–469 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Portugal 066.9

067 General organizations in eastern Europe Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union)

Add to 067 the numbers following 47 in "Areas" notation 471–479 from Table 2, e.g., organizations in Ukraine 067.71

068 General organizations in other geographical areas

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 068, e.g., comprehensive works on general organizations in Europe 068.4, general organizations in Japan 068.52

069 Museology (Museum science)

Class here art museum economy [*formerly* 708.01–708.07]

Class museums as aids in study and teaching of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 074 from Table 1, e.g., museums as aids in study and teaching of mineralogy 549.074

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class historical and geographical treatment of museum buildings in 069.209, museums devoted to specific disciplines and subjects regardless of location in 069.9

SUMMARY

- 069.1 Museum services to patrons
- .2 Physical plant of museums
- .3 Equipment, furniture, furnishings
- .4 Collecting and preparing museum objects
- .5 Collections and exhibits of museum objects
- .6 Personnel and relationships
- .7 Printing and publishing
- .9 Museums devoted to specific disciplines and subjects

.1 Museum services to patrons

Former heading: Educational functions

.13 Circulation services

Lending and renting materials, keeping records of loans and rentals

.132 Museum objects

.134 Representations of museum objects and aids to their use

Pictures, slides, films, projectors

.15 Instruction services

Lectures, classes, field trips

.16 Recreational services

Examples: musical programs, theatrical presentations

.17 Special services to blind patrons

.2 Physical plant of museums

For equipment, furniture, furnishings, see 069.3

.21 Location and site

.22 Planning for buildings

Requirements based on function

- .24 **Special rooms**
- .29 **Utilities and related facilities**
 - Plumbing, lighting, heating, ventilating, air-conditioning, communication systems as related to function
- .3 **Equipment, furniture, furnishings**
- .31 Exhibit cases, screens, pedestals
- .32 Audiovisual apparatus
- .33 Furniture
- .4 **Collecting and preparing museum objects**
 - Methods, equipment, materials
- .5 **Collections and exhibits of museum objects**

069.51–069.54 General principles

Class comprehensive works in 069.5, general principles applied to special collections in 069.55–069.57

- .51 Selection, acquisition, disposal
- .52 Registration, recording, indexing
- .53 Maintenance, preservation, display, arrangement, storage
 - Including display, maintenance of biological specimens [*both formerly also 579.7–579.8*]
- .54 Prevention of thefts and identification of forgeries

069.55–069.57 Special collections

Classification, arrangement, housing

Class comprehensive works in 069.5

- .55 Study collections
- .56 Lending and rental collections
- .57 Collections of secondary materials
 - Photographs, prints, brochures, films, motion pictures, slides representing museum objects
- .6 **Personnel and relationships**
- .62 Regulations for members, visitors, other patrons
- .63 Personnel and positions
 - Qualifications of administrative personnel and staff, in-service training, titles and job descriptions, staff manuals
- .68 Relations with other organizations
- .7 **Printing and publishing**

.9 Museums devoted to specific disciplines and subjects

Add 001-999 to base number 069.9, e.g., museology of science museums 069.95

Class a specific museum activity or service with the subject, e.g., instruction services 069.15

070 Journalism, publishing, newspapers

Use 070.01-070.08 for standard subdivisions of journalism and newspapers

070.1-070.4 Journalism

Collecting, writing, editing information and opinion of current interest for presentation in newspapers, periodicals, newsreels, radio, television

Class comprehensive works in 070; journals on a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 05 from Table 1, e.g., science journals 505; general periodicals in 050; general newspapers in 071-079

.1 News mediums

Including newsreels and documentary films

Class specific journalistic activities and types of journalism regardless of medium in 070.4, sociology of mass media in 301.16

[.11] Ethics of the press

Class in 174.909 7

.17 Printed mediums**.172 Newspapers****.175 Periodicals****.19 Radio and television****.4 Specific journalistic activities and types of journalism****070.41-070.43 Specific journalistic activities**

Class comprehensive works in 070.4

.41 Editing**.412 Editorial policy**

Selection, presentation, display of news; advocacy of specific points of view

Including crusades, editorial cartoons

.415 Editorial mechanics

Copyreading, headlines, style

.43 News gathering and reporting**.431 News sources**

.435 Wire services

Examples: Associated Press, Reuters

► 070.44–070.49 Specific types of journalism

Class comprehensive works in 070.4

.44 Features and special topics

.442 Interpretation and opinion (Columns)

For editorial policy, see 070.412

.444 Education, advice, amusement

Examples: health columns, recipes, humor

.449 Special subjects

Reporting, opinion, criticism

Add 001–999 to base number 070.449, e.g., science reporting
070.4495

.48 Journalism for special groups

For school journalism, see 371.897

.482 Religious groups

.483 Groups by age and sex

.483 2 Children

.483 26 Boys

.483 27 Girls

.483 3 Young adults

.483 36 Young men

.483 37 Young women

.483 4 Adults

.483 46 Men

.483 47 Women

.484 Foreign-language and nondominant racial, ethnic,
national groups

.486 Occupational and employee groups

General journalism for occupational and employee groups

Example: house organs

.49 Pictorial journalism

.5 Publishing [*formerly 655.4–655.5*]

.509 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here history, description, products, processes of specific
establishments



070.51–070.54 Activities

Class comprehensive works in 070.5

- .51 **Selection and editing of manuscripts**
 - Class editorial techniques in 808.02
- .52 **Relations with authors**
- .53 **Design of format**
- .54 **Manufacture**
 - Class printing and binding techniques in 686
- .57 **Kinds of publications**
 - Class specific activities applied to specific kinds of publications in 070.51–070.54
- .572 **Serials**
- .573 **Books**
 - Limited editions; hardbound, paperback, subscription books
 - Class serials in book form in 070.572
- .579 **Special**
- .579 2 **Braille and other raised characters**
- .579 3 **Maps**
- .579 4 **Music**
- .59 **Kinds of publishers**
 - Class specific establishments in 070.509, specific activities of specific kinds of publishers in 070.51–070.54, specific kinds of publications of specific kinds of publishers in 070.57
- .592 **Commercial**
- .593 **Private**
- .594 **Institutional**
 - Examples: university, academic, society
- .595 **Governmental and intergovernmental**
- .9 **Historical treatment of newspapers and journalism**
 - Class historical treatment in specific areas in 071–079
- .92 **Persons regardless of area, region, place**

► 071-079 Geographical treatment of newspapers and journalism

Class here specific general newspapers and works about them

Arrange geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to newspapers and journalism in a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., newspapers and journalism in New Zealand 07N (preceding 071). See also option under 071

If preferred, arrange newspapers alphabetically under 070, using A1 for comprehensive works about them

Class comprehensive works in 070

071 In North America

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to newspapers and journalism in a specific country, it is optional to class them here; in that case class newspapers and journalism in North America in 079.7. See also option under 071-079)

Class newspapers and journalism in Middle America in 079.72

.1 Canada

Add to 071.1 the numbers following 71 in "Areas" notation 711-719 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in British Columbia 071.11

.3-.9 United States

Add to 071 the numbers following 7 in "Areas" notation 73-79 from Table 2, e.g., New York Times 071.471

Class newspapers and journalism in Hawaii in 079.969

072 In England and Wales

Add to 072 the numbers following 42 in "Areas" notation 421-429 from Table 2, e.g., Times of London 072.1

Class newspapers and journalism in Scotland and Ireland in 079.41

073 In central Europe Germany

Add to 073 the numbers following 43 in "Areas" notation 431-439 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Austria 073.6

074 In France and Monaco

Add to 074 the numbers following 44 in "Areas" notation 441-449 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Paris 074.36

075 In Italy and adjacent territories

Add to 075 the numbers following 45 in "Areas" notation 451–459 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Rome 075.632

076 In Iberian Peninsula and adjacent islands Spain

Add to 076 the numbers following 46 in "Areas" notation 461–469 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Portugal 076.9

077 In eastern Europe Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union)

Add to 077 the numbers following 47 in "Areas" notation 471–479 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Ukraine 077.71

078 In Scandinavia

Add to 078 the numbers following 48 in "Areas" notation 481–489 from Table 2, e.g., newspapers and journalism in Sweden 078.5

079 In other geographical areas

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 079, e.g., comprehensive works on general newspapers in Europe 079.4, general newspapers in Japan 079.52

080 General collections

Class here essays, addresses, lectures, quotations

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class collections in specific languages in 081–089

► 081–089 In specific languages

Arrange by language as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to collections in a specific language, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., collections in Urdu 08U (preceding 081). See also option under 081

Class bilingual and polylingual collections with the preponderant language; if no language is preponderant, class in 080

If preferred, arrange collections alphabetically under 080

081 American

English-language collections of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to collections in a specific language, it is optional to class them here; in that case class American collections in 082. See also option under 081–089)

082 In English

For American English-language collections, see 081

083 In other Germanic languages

Add "Languages" notation 31–394 from Table 6 to base number 08,
e.g., German-language collections 083.1

Class Scandinavian-language collections in 088

084 In French, Provençal, Catalan

Add "Languages" notation 41–49 from Table 6 to base number 08,
e.g., French-language collections 084.1

085 In Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic

Add "Languages" notation 51–59 from Table 6 to base number 08,
e.g., Italian-language collections 085.1

086 In Spanish and Portuguese

Add "Languages" notation 61–69 from Table 6 to base number 08,
e.g., Portuguese-language collections 086.9

087 In Slavic languages

Add to 087 the numbers following 037 in 037.1–037.9, e.g.,
Polish-language collections 087.85

088 In Scandinavian languages

Add to 088 the numbers following 39 in "Languages" notation 396–398
from Table 6, e.g., Swedish-language collections 088.7

089 In other languages

Add "Languages" notation 2–9 from Table 6 to base number 089

090 Manuscripts and book rarities

Development, description, critical appraisal

091 Manuscripts**092 Block books****093 Incunabula**

Books printed before 1501

094 Books notable for printing

Limited editions, special editions, typographic masterpieces

For block books, see 092; incunabula, 093

.4 First editions**095 Books notable for bindings****096 Books notable for illustrations and materials****.1 Illustrations****.2 Materials**

Leaves of vellum and silk, letters of silver and gold

097 Books notable for ownership or origin

098 Works notable for content

.1 **Prohibited works**

.11 By religious authorities

.12 By civil authorities

.3 **Literary forgeries and hoaxes**

099 Books notable for format

Miniature editions, unusual dimensions and shapes

100 Philosophy and related disciplines

Philosophy: a branch of learning that investigates and evaluates the ultimate nature of existences and relationships thru observation, speculation, reasoning, but not experimentation

Class the ultimate nature of existences and relationships within the context of revelation, deity, worship in 200; philosophy of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 01 from Table 1, e.g., philosophy of history 901



101–109 Standard subdivisions of philosophy

Class comprehensive works in 100

- 101 **Theory of philosophy**
- 102 **Miscellany of philosophy**
- 103 **Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of philosophy**
- 104 **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

- 105 **Serial publications of philosophy**
- 106 **Organizations of philosophy**
- 107 **Study and teaching of philosophy**
- 108 **Collections of philosophy**

Class collected writings of individual philosophers in 180–190

- 109 **Historical treatment of philosophy**

Not limited by period or place

Class history, description, critical appraisal, biographical treatment of philosophy of specific periods and places in 180–190

110 Metaphysics (Speculative philosophy)*For knowledge, cause, purpose, man, see 120***111 Ontology**

Nature of relations and being

*For cosmology, see 113***.1 Existence and essence****.8 Transcendental properties of being****.82 Unity****.83 Truth****.84 Goodness and evil****.85 Beauty**

Class here esthetics

112 Classification of knowledge**113 Cosmology**

Class specific topics of cosmology not provided for here in 114–119

.2 Origin of universe (Cosmogony)

Former heading: Nature

*For origin of life, see 113.8; cosmic harmony, 113.6***.6 Cosmic harmony****.8 Origin of life****114 Space**

Class here relation of space and matter

115 Time, duration, eternity

Class here relation of time and motion

.4 Space-time

Implications of theories of relativity

116 Motion, change, evolution

Class relation of time and motion in 115

117 Matter and form

Class relation of space and matter in 114

118 Force and energy**119 Number and quantity**

120 Knowledge, cause, purpose, man*For psychology, see 150***121 Epistemology**

Origin, sources, limits, validity of knowledge

Class knowledge and its extension in 001, logic in 160

.5 Doubt and denial**.6 Belief and certitude****.7 Faith****.8 Worth and theory of values (Axiology)****122 Cause and effect**

Class here chance versus cause

*For final cause, see 124***123 Freedom and necessity**

Determinism and indeterminism

.3 Chance

Class chance versus cause in 122

124 Teleology

Design, purpose, final cause

125 Finite and infinite**126 Consciousness and personality (The self)****127 The unconscious and subconscious****128 Man***For consciousness and personality, see 126; the unconscious and subconscious, 127***.1 Soul***For origin and destiny of individual souls, see 129***.2 Mind****.3 Man's nature***For soul, see 128.1; mind, 128.2***.5 Nature of life and death****129 Origin and destiny of individual souls****.4 Incarnation and reincarnation****.6 Immortality**

130 Popular psychology, parapsychology, occultism**131 Popular psychology***For personality analysis and improvement, see 137***.3 Personal well-being, happiness, success****.32 Favorable factors**

Tranquility, personal insight, self-confidence, faith, harmonious living

.33 Adverse factors

Ill health, fear, anxiety, frustrations, fatigue, tension

.35 Dianetics

Extrascientific methods of eradicating mental disturbances thru reliving traumatic experiences

132 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

133 Parapsychology and occultism*For esoteric and cabalistic traditions, see 135.4***SUMMARY****133.1 Apparitions (Ghosts)****.3 Divinatory arts****.4 Magic, witchcraft, demonology****.5 Mundane astrology****.6 Palmistry****.7 Frauds in occultism****.8 Extrasensory perception and psychokinesis****.9 Spiritualism****.1 Apparitions (Ghosts)****.12 Haunted places****.122 Ghosts in specific types of locale**

Examples: haunted graveyards, churches, forests, houses

Class ghosts in specific places regardless of type of locale in 133.129

.129 Ghosts in specific places

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 133.129

.14 Specific kinds of apparitions

Examples: poltergeists, hobgoblins, disembodied spirits

.3 Divinatory arts

For chiromancy, see 133.64; dream books, 135.3; divinatory graphology, 137.7

.32 Predictions

For symbolic divination, see 133.33

.322 Crystal gazing**.323 Radiesthesia**

Location of living and inert substances thru human sensitivity to latent radiations and use of divining rods, pendulums, other devices

133.323 2–133.323 7 Location of specific substances

Class comprehensive works in 133.323

.323 2 Location of water**.323 3 Location of metals****.323 7 Location of petroleum and gases****.323 9 Telediesthesia (Distant prospection)**

Class location of specific substances by telediesthesia in 133.3232–133.3237

.324 Fortunetelling

For horoscopes, see 133.54; fortunetelling by numbers, 133.3354

.324 2 Cartomancy**.324 24 By tarot****.324 29 By other kinds of cards****.324 4 By tea leaves and coffee grounds****.324 8 By oracles and sibyls****.33 Symbolic divination**

For cartomancy, see 133.3242

.333 Geomancy**.334 Divinatory signs and omens****.335 Numerology****.335 4 Fortunetelling by numbers****.335 9 Symbolism of specific numbers****.4 Magic, witchcraft, demonology****.42 Demonology****.422 Satanism (Devil worship)****.423 Evil spirits**

Examples: incubi, succubi, vampires, werewolves

-
- .425 The evil eye
 - .426 Demoniac possession
 - .427 Exorcism of demons
 - .43 Magicians' manuals
 - Grimoire, black books, magic formulas, incantations
 - .44 Charms, amulets, talismans, mascots
 - .442 Love charms
 - .443 Good luck charms
 - .446 Therapeutic charms
 - .47 Voodooism
 - .5 **Mundane astrology**
 - .52 Zodiacal signs
 - .53 Planets
 - Aspects, houses, positions of planets
 - .54 Horoscopes
 - .540 4 General special
 - .540 42 Daily guides and birthday books
 - .542 Casting horoscopes
 - .548 Horoscopes of specific individuals
 - .55 Ephemerides
 - .56 Horary astrology
 - .58 Special developments
 - Use 133.580001–133.580009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add 001–999 to base number 133.58, e.g., medical astrology 133.5861
 - .6 **Palmistry**
 - .62 Chiromnomy
 - Determination of character and latent abilities thru study of shape and physical characteristics of hand
 - .64 Chiromancy
 - Divination thru study of mounts, lines, signs on hands
 - .7 **Frauds in occultism**

.8 Extrasensory perception and psychokinesis

133.82–133.86 Extrasensory perception

Class comprehensive works in 133.8

.82 Telepathy**.84 Clairvoyance****.85 Clairaudience****.86 Precognition****.88 Psychokinesis****.9 Spiritualism**

Communication with discarnate spirits

.901 Philosophy and theory**.901 3 Personal survival****.91 Mediumship**

Development and practice of mediums, psychic experiences of individual mediums

Class a specific phenomenon with the subject, e.g., levitation 133.92

.92 Physical phenomena

Table tipping, rapping, levitation, dematerialization, ectoplasm

.93 Psychic phenomena

Ouija board messages, automatic writings and utterances

134 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

135 Dreams and the mystic traditions**.3 Dream books****.4 Esoteric and cabalistic traditions****.42 Mysteries of the ancient elements****.43 Rosicrucian mysteries****136 [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

137 Personality analysis and improvement

Class personality analysis thru physiognomy in 138

.7 Analytic and divinatory graphology**138 Physiognomy**

Determination of character from analysis of features

139 **Phrenology**

Determination of mental capacities from skull structure

140 **Specific philosophical viewpoints**

Class a specific branch of philosophy with the subject, e.g., metaphysics 110; an application of a specific viewpoint with the subject, e.g., utilitarianism in ethics 171.5; development, description, critical appraisal, collected writings, biographical treatment of individual philosophers regardless of viewpoint in 180–190

141 **Idealism and related systems and doctrines**

Including spiritualism, panpsychism, subjectivism, voluntarism, Platonism, Neoplatonism

.3 **Transcendentalism**

.4 **Individualism**

.5 **Personalism**

.6 **Romanticism**

142 **Critical philosophy**

Class critical realism in 149.2

.3 **Kantianism and neo-Kantianism**

.7 **Phenomenalism and phenomenology**

Including existentialism

143 **Intuitionism and Bergsonism**

For mysticism, see 149.3

144 **Humanism and related systems and doctrines**

.3 **Pragmatism**

.5 **Instrumentalism**

.6 **Utilitarianism**

145 **Sensationalism and ideology**

146 **Naturalism and related systems and doctrines**

Including dynamism, energism

.3 **Materialism**

Including dialectical materialism

.4 **Positivism (Comtism)**

Including empiricism, logical positivism

.5 **Atomism**

.6 **Mechanism and neomechanism**

.7 **Evolutionism**

147 Pantheism and related systems and doctrines

Including panentheism, animism, vitalism, parallelism, occasionalism

.3 Monism**.4 Dualism and pluralism****148 Liberalism, eclecticism, syncretism, traditionalism, dogmatism****149 Other philosophical systems and doctrines****.1 Nominalism and conceptualism****.2 Realism, neorealism, critical realism****.3 Mysticism and anthroposophy****.5 Optimism and meliorism****.6 Pessimism****.7 Rationalism and related systems and doctrines**

Including intellectualism, innatism, nativism

.72 Agnosticism**.73 Skepticism****.8 Nihilism and fatalism***For existentialism, see 142.7***.9 Other systems and doctrines****.94 Linguistic analysis**

Including semantics

150 Psychology

Class psychological principles of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 019 from Table 1, e.g., psychological principles of advertising 659.019

.1 Philosophy and theory**.19 Systems, schools, viewpoints****.192 Speculative systems**

Examples: rational, faculty, phenomenological, existential schools

.193 Functionalism**.193 2 Dynamic psychologies****.193 3 Purposive psychologies****.193 32 Holistic****.193 33 Hormic****.193 34 Organismic**

.194	Reductionism
.194 3	Behaviorism
.194 32	Watsonian behaviorism
	Systems of Watson, Spranger, Hunter, Lashley
.194 34	Neobehaviorism (Pragmatic reductionism)
	Systems of Guthrie, Hull, Skinner, Tolman
.194 4	Reflexology (Associationism)
	Systems of Pavlov, Bekhterev, Thorndike
.195	Psychoanalytic systems
.195 2	Freudian
.195 3	Adlerian
.195 4	Jungian
.195 7	Neopschoanalytic
	Systems of Horney, Fromm, Sullivan
.198	Other systems
.198 2	Gestalt psychology
.198 4	Field theory

151 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

152 Physiological and experimental psychology

SUMMARY

152.1	Sensory perception
.3	Movements and motor functions
.4	Emotions and feelings
.5	Motivation (Drives)
.8	Quantitative psychology
.1	Sensory perception
	Receptive processes and functions
	Class here attributes, thresholds, discrimination, tests
.14	Visual perception
.142	Spatial perception
.142 2	Visual acuity
	Discrimination of spatial distribution of dark and light in visual field
.142 3	Pattern perception
.142 5	Movement perception
	Real and apparent

- .143 Brightness perception
- .145 Color perception
- .148 Other perceptual attributes
 - Optical illusions, afterimages
- .15 Auditory perception
 - .152 Pitch perception
 - .154 Volume perception
 - .157 Timbre perception
 - Tone discrimination
- .158 Localization
- .16 Chemical sensory perception
 - .166 Olfactory perception
 - .167 Gustatory perception
- .18 Other types of sensory perception
 - .182 Cutaneous (Tactile) perception
 - .182 2 Thermal perception
 - .182 3 Pressure perception
 - .182 4 Pain perception
 - .182 8 Derived sensory perception
 - Perception of vibration, itch, tickle
 - .188 Proprioceptive perceptions
 - .188 2 Orientational perceptions
 - .188 6 Visceral perceptions
 - Hunger, thirst, well-being, fatigue
- .189 Synesthesia

.3 Movements and motor functions



152.32–152.33 Automatic movements

Class comprehensive works in 152.3

- .32 Involuntary movements
 - .322 Reflexes
 - .322 3 Innate reflexes
 - .322 4 Conditioned reflexes
 - .324 Instinctive movements

-
- .33 Habits and habit formation
 - .334 Motor learning
 - .335 Handedness and laterality
 - .35 Voluntary movements
 - .38 Special motor functions
 - .382 Locomotion
 - .384 Expressive movements
 - .384 2 Vocal expressions
 - .384 5 Graphic expressions
 - .385 Coordination
 - .4 Emotions and feelings**
 - Affective processes and reactions
 - .42 Expressions of emotions
 - .43 Types of emotions
 - .432 Primitive and uncontrolled emotions
 - .434 Secondary emotions
 - .44 Feeling and feelings
 - Including conation and feeling
 - .442 Expression of feelings
 - .443 Types of feelings
 - .444 Feeling tone
 - .45 States affected by feelings
 - .452 Sentiments and attitudes
 - .454 Moods and dispositions
 - .5 Motivation (Drives)**
 - Types
 - Biological, secondary, social drives
 - .58 Measurements
 - .8 Quantitative psychology**
 - Psychophysical methods
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., fatigue studies in industrial management 658.544
 - .82 Threshold and discrimination studies
 - .83 Reaction-time studies

153 Intelligence, intellectual and conscious mental processes**SUMMARY**

- 153.1 Memory and learning**
 - .2 Ideation**
 - .3 Imagination and imagery**
 - .4 Cognition (Knowledge)**
 - .7 Perceptual processes**
 - .8 Volition (Will)**
 - .9 Intelligence and aptitudes**
- .1 Memory and learning**
 - .12 Memory processes**
 - .122 Retention**
 - .123 Recall and reproduction**
 - .124 Recognition**
 - .125 Forgetting**
 - .13 Types of memory**
 - .132 Visual**
 - .133 Auditory**
 - .134 Visual-auditory**
 - .136 Other**
 - .14 Mnemonic systems**
 - .15 Learning**
 - .152 Methods**
 - .152 2 Repetition and rote learning**
 - .152 3 Imitation**
 - .152 4 Trial and error**
 - .152 6 Association**
 - .152 8 Discrimination**
 - .153 Factors**
 - .153 2 Attention and concentration**
 - .153 3 Interest and enthusiasm**
 - .153 4 Motivation**
 - .154 Transfer of learning**
 - .158 Learning curves**
- .2 Ideation**
 - .22 Association of ideas**

-
- .23 Concepts and concept formation
 - .24 Abstraction
 - .25 Inspiration
 - .3 **Imagination and imagery**
 - .32 Eidetic imagery
 - .35 Creativity
 - .4 **Cognition (Knowledge)**
 - For ideation, see 153.2*
 - .42 Thought and thinking
 - For reasoning, see 153.43*
 - .422 Reflective thought
 - .423 Imageless thought
 - .43 Reasoning
 - .432 Inductive
 - .433 Deductive
 - .44 Intuition
 - .45 Value
 - .46 Judgment
 - .7 **Perceptual processes**
 - Perceptual apprehension and understanding
 - For sensory perception, see 152.1; extrasensory perception, 133.8*
 - .73 Basic elements
 - .733 Attention
 - Including looking, listening
 - .734 Apperception
 - .735 Preperception
 - .736 Subliminal perception
 - .74 Errors (Normal illusions)
 - .75 Types of perception
 - .752 Space perception
 - .753 Time and rhythm perception
 - .754 Movement perception
 - .8 **Volition (Will)**
 - .83 Choice and decision

- .85 **Modification of will**
- .852 **Persuasion**
- .853 **Menticide (Brainwashing)**
- .854 **Conformity**
- .9 Intelligence and aptitudes**
- .92 **Factors affecting intelligence**
- .93 **General intelligence tests**
- .932 **Individual**
- .932 3 **Verbal**
- .932 4 **Nonverbal**
- .933 **Group**
- .933 3 **Verbal**
- .933 4 **Nonverbal**
- .94 **Aptitude tests**
 - Individual, group, verbal, nonverbal tests for special abilities
 - Class here vocational interest tests
 - Use 153.940001–153.940009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add 001–999 to base number 153.94, e.g., tests for musical ability 153.9478
- .98 **Superior intelligence**
 - Class gifted children in 155.455
- 154 Subconscious states and processes (Depth psychology)**
- .2 **The subconscious**
- .22 **Elements**
 - Id, ego, superego
- .24 **Activities**
 - Sublimation, transference, reasoning, conflicts, complexes
- .3 **Secondary consciousness**
 - Daydreams, fantasies, reveries
- .6 **Sleep phenomena**
- .62 **Sleep**
- .63 **Dreams**
- .632 **Types**
- .634 **Analysis**
- .64 **Somnambulism**

- .7 **Hypnotism**
- .72 Mesmerism and animal magnetism
- .76 Induction of hypnosis
- .77 Hypnotic phenomena
- .772 Trance phenomena
- .774 Posthypnotic phenomena
- .78 Special developments

155 **Differential and genetic psychology**

SUMMARY

- 155.2 **Individual psychology**
 - .3 Sex psychology
 - .4 Child psychology
 - .5 Psychology of adolescents
 - .6 Psychology of adults and aged
 - .7 Evolutional psychology
 - .8 Ethnopsychology and national psychology
 - .9 Psychology of influence, pattern, example
- .2 **Individual psychology**
 - Personality, character, individuality
 - .22 Individual differences
 - .23 Personality traits and determinants
 - .232 Specific traits
 - .234 Determinants
 - Biological, moral, social, mental
 - .24 Adaptability
 - .25 Personality development and modification
 - .26 Typology
 - .262 Classical (Hippocrates' theory of temperaments)
 - .264 Modern
 - Examples: classification schemes of Jung, James, Stern, Rorschach, Kretschmer, Sheldon
 - .28 Appraisals and tests
 - .282 Diagnostic graphology
 - .283 Inventories and questionnaires
 - .284 Projective techniques
 - .284 2 Rorschach tests

- .284 3 Szondi tests
- .284 4 Thematic apperception tests
- .3 Sex psychology**
- .31 Erogeneity and libido
- .32 Sex and personality
- .33 Sex differences
- .332 Masculinity
- .333 Femininity
- .334 Bisexuality
- .34 Sex relations

► **155.4–155.7 Developmental psychology**

Class comprehensive works in 155

- .4 Child psychology**
- Thru age eleven
- .41 Basic behavior patterns
- .412 Motor behavior
 - Development of posture, locomotion, coordination
- .413 Adaptive behavior
 - Development of intelligence, intellectual and conscious mental processes
- .418 Personal-social behavior
 - Development of interpersonal relations, responsiveness to gestures and speech, self-help habits

► **155.42–155.45 Specific groupings**

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., preschool boys 155.423

- Exceptional children
- By class, type, relationships
- By age groups
- By sex

Class comprehensive works in 155.4

- .42 By age groups
- .422 Infants
 - From birth to age two
- .423 Preschool children
 - Ages three to five

- .424 School children
 - Ages six to eleven
- .43 By sex
 - .432 Boys
 - .433 Girls
- .44 By class, type, relationships
 - .442 The only child
 - .443 Siblings
 - Brothers and sisters not of the same birth
 - .444 Brothers and sisters of the same birth
 - .445 Adopted and foster children
 - .446 Institutionalized children
- .45 Exceptional children
 - Add to 155.45 the numbers following 371.9 in 371.91–371.97, e.g., psychology of gifted children 155.455
- .5 **Psychology of adolescents**
 - Ages twelve to twenty
 - .53 By sex
 - .532 Young men
 - .533 Young women
- .6 **Psychology of adults and aged**

155.61–155.64 Adults

 - Class comprehensive works in 155.6

 - .61 Mental and creative productivity
 - .63 By sex
 - Class adults of either sex by status, type, relationships in 155.64
 - .632 Men
 - .633 Women
 - .64 By status, type, relationships
 - .642 Single status
 - .642 2 Men
 - .642 3 Women
 - Including unmarried mothers

-
- .643 Divorst status
 - .643 2 Men
 - .643 3 Women
 - .644 Widowed status
 - .644 2 Men
 - .644 3 Women
 - .645 Married status
 - .645 2 Men
 - .645 3 Women
 - .646 Parents
 - Class divorst parents in 155.643, widowed parents in 155.644
 - .646 2 Fathers
 - .646 3 Mothers
 - For unmarried mothers, see 155.6423*
 - .67 Aged
 - .671 Mental and physical impairments
 - .672 Adaptability problems
 - Psychological aspects of retirement, change in status, institutional life
 - .7 Evolutional psychology
 - Influence of heredity on personal characteristics
 - .8 Ethnopsychology and national psychology
 - .81 Primitive (Preliterate) man
-
- 155.82–155.84 Ethnopsychology
- Class comprehensive works in 155.8
 - .82 Race differences
 - .84 Specific races
 - Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 155.84
 - .89 National psychology
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 155.89
 - Class psychology of specific races regardless of national origin in 155.84

-
- .9 Psychology of influence, pattern, example**
 - .91 Physical influences**
 - .911 Sensory**
 - Add to 155.911 the numbers following 152.1 in 152.14–152.18, e.g., psychology of color 155.91145
 - .915 Climatic**
 - .916 Deformities, injuries, diseases**
 - .92 Social influences**
 - Add to 155.92 the numbers following 158.2 in 158.24–158.27, e.g., influences of family members 155.924
 - .93 Situational influences**
 - .935 Catastrophic disasters**
 - Behavior patterns during earthquakes, floods, hurricanes, fires, bombings
 - .936 Accidents**
 - .937 Imminence or approach of death**
 - .94 Housing and community influences**
 - .942–.944 Specific types of communities**
 - Add to 155.94 the numbers following 173 in “Areas” notation 1732–1734 from Table 2, e.g., urban influences 155.942
 - .945 Housing**
 - .95 Clothing**
 - .96 Spatial and restrictive influences**
 - .962 Prisons**
 - .963 Submarine structures**
 - .964 Subterranean structures**
 - Behavior patterns in underground shelters, caves, mines, tunnels and similar structures
 - .965 Aircraft (Aviation psychology)**
 - .966 Spacecraft (Space psychology)**

156 Comparative psychology

Ontogenic and phylogenetic studies of behavior mechanisms in lower organisms

**156.2–156.7 Animal psychology**

Class comprehensive works in 156

.2 Physiological psychology

Add to 156.2 the numbers following 152 in 152.1–152.8, e.g., reaction-time studies of animals 156.283

.3 Intelligence and intellectual processes

Add to 156.3 the numbers following 153 in 153.1–153.9, e.g., learning curves of animals 156.3158

.4 Subconscious states and processes**.7 Abnormal behavior****.9 Plant behavior****157 Abnormal and clinical psychologies****157.1–157.8 Abnormal psychology**

Study of behavior patterns of psychotic, psychoneurotic, mentally deficient individuals

Class comprehensive works in 157, psychology of exceptional children in 155.45

**157.1–157.2 Psychoses**

Class comprehensive works in 157.2

.1 Organic psychoses

Paresis, cerebrovascular disorders, chorea, epilepsy

.2 Functional psychoses

Class here comprehensive works on psychoses

Add to 157.2 the numbers following 616.89 in 616.895–616.898, e.g., manic-depressive psychoses 157.25

For organic psychoses, see 157.1

**157.3–157.7 Psychoneuroses**

Class comprehensive works in 157

.3 Hysteria and related disorders

Add to 157.3 the numbers following 616.852 in 616.8521–616.8528, e.g., amnesias 157.33

-
- .5 Speech and language disorders**
Add to 157.5 the numbers following 616.855 in 616.8552–616.8554, e.g.,
aphasias 157.52
 - .6 Psychoneurotic addictions and intoxications**
Add to 157.6 the numbers following 613.8 in 613.81–613.85, e.g.,
alcoholism 157.61
 - .7 Disorders of character and personality**
Add to 157.7 the numbers following 616.858 in 616.8582–616.8584, e.g.,
homosexuality 157.734
 - .8 Mental deficiency**
Add to 157.8 the numbers following 616.8588 in 616.85882–616.85884, e.g.,
imbeciles 157.823
 - .9 Clinical psychology**
Class clinical psychology of a specific condition with the subject, e.g., of
homosexuality 157.734
 - .92 Psychodiagnoses**
Appraising adjustment problems of individuals
 - .94 Rehabilitation**
 - 158 Applied psychology (Special developments)**
Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., educational guidance
and counseling 371.4
 - .1 Successful living**
 - .2 Interpersonal relations**
 - .24 With family members**
 - .25 With friends and neighbors**
 - .26 With work associates**
 - .27 With strangers**
 - .3 Interviewing**
 - .4 Leadership**
 - .5 Cooperation**
 - .6 Vocational interests**
 - .7 Industrial psychology**
 - 159 Other aspects**

160 Logic

Science of reasoning processes

161 Induction*For hypotheses, see 167; analogy, 169***162 Deduction***For syllogisms, see 166***163 [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

[164] Symbolic (Mathematical) logic

Class in 511.3

**165–169 Specific topics**

Class comprehensive works in 160

165 Fallacies and sources of error

Contradiction, paradox, fictions

166 Syllogisms**167 Hypotheses****168 Argument and persuasion****169 Analogy****170 Ethics (Moral philosophy)****.2 Miscellany****.202 Practical ethics (Conduct of life)****.202 2 For specific age groups****.202 22 Children****.202 23 Young adults (Adolescents)****.202 232 Men****.202 233 Women****.202 26 Aged****.202 4 For groups by sex**

Class practical ethics for specific age groups of either sex in 170.2022

.202 42 Male**.202 44 Female**

171 Systems and doctrines

Class systems and doctrines applied to specific human qualities, relationships, activities in 172–179

.1 Based on authority

Class morals and duties in comparative religion in 291.5; in a specific religion with the religion, e.g., Christian moral theology 241

.2 Based on intuition and moral sense

Including natural law [*formerly* 340.1]

For systems and doctrines based on conscience, see 171.6

.3 Perfectionism

Systems and doctrines based on self-realization, fulfilment of personality

.4 Hedonism

Systems and doctrines based on achievement of individual pleasure or happiness

.5 Utilitarianism

Systems and doctrines based on achievement of greatest happiness of greatest number

.6 Based on conscience

Including casuistry, conflict of duties

.7 Based on evolution and education

Including relativism

.8 Based on altruism

For utilitarianism, see 171.5

.9 Based on egoism

For hedonism, see 171.4

172–179 Applied ethics

Inherent rightness and wrongness of specific human qualities, relationships, activities

Class comprehensive works in 170

172 Ethics of political relationships**.1 Citizenship**

Examples: duties of citizens to community, state, nation with respect to defense, obedience to law, payment of taxes, civic and political activity, revolution, civil war

.2 Public office

Duties of officials with respect to public administration and welfare, security, justice, education, freedom of citizens

.4 International relations

Examples: foreign policies, war and peace, disarmament, espionage

173 Ethics of family relationships

Examples: marriage, separation, divorce, responsibilities of parents for children and home life, of children to parents

174 Professional and occupational ethics

If preferred, class with the specific profession or occupation using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 017 from Table 1, e.g., medical ethics 610.17

.1 Clergy**.2 Medical professions****.22 Hippocratic oath****.24 Euthanasia****.25 Organ transplants**

Example: heart transplants

.26 Economic questions

Examples: medical advertising, fee splitting

.3 Legal professions**.4 Trade, manufacture, finance (Business ethics)**

Including industrial espionage

.6 Gambling business and lottery management

Class ethics of games of chance in 175.5, of betting in 175.9

.9 Other professions and occupations

Add "Persons" notation 09-99 from Table 7 to base number 174.9, e.g., ethics of the press 174.9097 [*formerly* 070.11]

175 Ethics of recreation

Ethics of participation in, of watching and listening to recreational activities

Including ethics of hunting

Class here sportsmanship, fair play

.1 Radio, television, motion pictures, circuses**.2 Theater, opera, musical performances****.3 Dancing****.4 Games of skill**

Class card games in 175.5

.5 Games of chance

Examples: card games, dice games, roulette

-
- .6 **Human and animal combat**
 Examples: boxing, wrestling, bullfights, cockfights
 - .7 **Racing**
 Man, animals, vehicles
 - .8 **Recreational reading**
 Class recreational reading of obscene literature in 176.8
 - .83 Reading comics
 - .9 **Betting**
 Class games of chance involving betting in 175.5
 - 176 **Sexual ethics** ✓
 Including chastity, celibacy, continence, adultery, homosexuality, artificial insemination, contraception
 - .5 **Prostitution**
 - .7 **Obscenity in art**
 - .8 **Obscenity in literature**
 - 177 **Ethics of social relations**
 - .1 **Courtesy, politeness, hospitality**
 Class etiquette in 395
 - .2 **Conversation, gossip, scandal**
 - .3 **Slander, flattery, truthfulness, lying**
 - .4 **Personal appearance**
 Examples: exposure of person, ostentatious dress
 - .5 **Slavery and other discriminatory practices**
 - .6 **Friendship and courtship**
 Class sexual ethics in courtship in 176
 - .7 **Philanthropy, benevolence, kindness**
 Including liberality, charity
 - 178 **Ethics of temperance and intemperance**
 - .1 **In use of alcoholic beverages**
 Abstinence, moderate or social drinking, heavy drinking
 - .7 **In use of tobacco**
 - .8 **In use of narcotics**
 - .9 **In other forms**
 Examples: gluttony, greediness

179 Other applications of ethics Cruelty

Do not use standard subdivisions

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of cruelty**179.2-179.4 Cruelty**

Class comprehensive works in 179

.2 Cruelty to children**.3 Cruelty to animals**

Class vivisection in 179.4

.36 Birds**.4 Vivisection****.5 Profanity, blasphemy, obscenity in speech****.6 Courage and cowardice****.7 Respect and disrespect for human life**

Examples: genocide, homicide, suicide, capital punishment, dueling, abortion

Class ethics of war in 172.4, of civil war in 172.1, of euthanasia in 174.24, of contraception in 176

.8 Vices, faults, failings

Not otherwise provided for

Examples: pride, covetousness, envy, anger, sloth, jealousy, avarice, hatred, cheating

.9 Virtues

Not otherwise provided for

Examples: humility, gentleness, patience, diligence, self-reliance, self-control, toleration, honesty, modesty, prudence, cheerfulness, gratitude

► 180–190 Historical and geographical treatment of philosophy

Class here development, description, critical appraisal, collected writings, biographical treatment of individual philosophers regardless of viewpoint

Class comprehensive works in 109

180 Ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophy

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of ancient philosophy

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 181–188

181 Oriental

Ancient, medieval, modern

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Class treatment in specific places in 181.1–181.9

.04–.09 Based on specific religions

Add to 181.0 the numbers following 29 in 294–299, e.g., Confucian philosophy 181.09512

Class Hindu-Brahmanical philosophy in 181.41–181.48, Judaistic philosophy in 181.3, Christian philosophy in 190

181.1–181.9 Of specific places

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., philosophy of Lebanon 181.L (preceding 181.1). See also option under 181.1

Class comprehensive works in 181

.1 Far East and South Asia

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, it is optional to class it here; in that case class comprehensive works on philosophy of Far East and South Asia in 181.9. See also option under 181.1–181.9)

For philosophy of India, see 181.4

.11 China and Korea

Class Confucian philosophy in 181.09512, Taoist philosophy in 181.09514

.12 Japan

Class Shinto philosophy in 181.09561

.15 Pakistan

.16 Indonesia

.17 Philippines

.19 Southeast Asia

Add to 181.19 the numbers following 59 in "Areas" notation 591–599
from Table 2, e.g., philosophy of Thailand 181.193

.2 Egypt**.3 Palestine, Judea, Israel**

Class here Judaistic philosophy

.4 India

Class philosophy of Pakistan in 181.15

181.41–181.48 Hindu-Brahmanical

Class comprehensive works in 181.4, Buddhist philosophy in 181.043,
Jainist philosophy in 181.044

.41 Sankhya**.42 Mimamsa****.43 Nyaya****.44 Vaisheshika****.45 Yoga****.452 Patanjali****.48 Vedanta****.482 Sankaracharya (Advaita)****.483 Ramanujacharya (Visistadvaita)****.484 Dualistic school****.484 1 Madhvacharya (Dvaita)****.484 2 Bhedabhedā****.484 3 Nimbarka (Dvaitadvaita)****.484 4 Vallabhacharya (Suddhadvaita)****.49 Other****.5 Persia and Iran****.6 Mesopotamia**

Philosophy of Assyria, Babylonia, Chaldea

.8 Phoenicia**.9 Other**

Add to 181.9 the numbers following 39 in "Areas" notation 392–397 from
Table 2, e.g., philosophy of Arabia 181.947



182–188 Ancient Western

Class comprehensive works in 180



182–185 Ancient Greek

Class comprehensive works in 180, Skeptic and Neoplatonic philosophy in 186

182

Pre-Socratic Greek

- .1 Ionic
- .2 Pythagorean
- .3 Eleatic
- .4 Heraclitean
- .5 Empedoclean
- .7 Democritean
- .8 Anaxagorean

183

Sophistic, Socratic and related Greek philosophies

- .1 Sophistic
- .2 Socratic
- .4 Cynic
- .5 Cyrenaic
- .6 Megaric
- .7 Elian and Eretrian

184

Platonic

185

Aristotelian

186

Skeptic and Neoplatonic

- .1 Pyrrhonic
- .2 New Academy
- .3 Eclectic
- .4 Neoplatonic and Alexandrian



187–188 Ancient Roman

Class comprehensive works in 180, Skeptic and Neoplatonic philosophy in 186

187

Epicurean

188 Stoic**189 Medieval Western**

Class here early Christian philosophy

.2 Patristic**.4 Scholastic****.5 Mystic****190 Modern Western philosophy**

Class here comprehensive works on Christian philosophy, on modern philosophy, on Western philosophy, on European philosophy

Divide geographically by country only, as below, but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., philosophy of Mexico 19M (preceding 191). See also option under 191

For ancient, medieval, Oriental philosophy, see 180

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 191–199

191 United States and Canada

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and shorter number to philosophy of a specific country, it is optional to class it here; in that case class philosophy of United States and Canada in 199.7. See also option under 190)

192 British Isles**193 Germany and Austria****194 France****195 Italy****196 Spain and Portugal****.1 Spain****.9 Portugal****197 Russia and Finland****.1 Finland****.2 Russia, Ukraine, Belorussia**

198 Scandinavia

 .1 Norway

 .5 Sweden

 .9 Denmark

199 Other countries

 Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 199

200 Religion

Beliefs, attitudes, practices of individuals and groups with respect to ultimate nature of existences and relationships within context of revelation, deity, worship

Class here comprehensive works on Christianity

Class comparative religion in 291, devil worship in 133.422

The following options give preferred treatment to, or make available more and shorter numbers for the classification of, any specific religion that it is desired to emphasize. Full instructions appear under each number

A. Class in 230–280, with scriptures in 220

B. Class in 210 or 291

C. Class in 298, which is permanently unassigned

D. Give preferred treatment by placing before 220, 291 or 292 thru use of a letter or other symbol. Full instructions appear under 292–299

.1 Philosophy and theory of religion

.19 Psychological aspects

Including religious experience based on use of psychedelic drugs

.2–.3 Miscellany, dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of religion

.4 Religious mythology

.5–.8 Other standard subdivisions of religion

Class religious instruction and exercises in nonsectarian schools in 377.1

.9 Historical and geographical treatment of religion and religious thought

Religious situation and conditions

Class historical and geographical treatment of a specific religion with the subject, e.g., history of Judaism 296.09

.901 Primitive peoples and ancient times

.901 1 Primitive (Preliterate) peoples

Class primitive religions in 291.042

- **201–209 Standard subdivisions of Christianity**
 Class comprehensive works in 200
- 201 Philosophy and theory of Christianity**
 .1 **Christian theology**
 Class specific branches in 230–240
- 202 Miscellany of Christianity**
- 203 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of Christianity**
- 204 General special**
 .5 **Christian mythology**
- 205 Serial publications of Christianity**
- 206 Organizations of Christianity**
 Class Christian church in 260
- 207 Study and teaching of Christianity**
 Class Christian training and instruction in Sunday schools, church schools, vacation Bible schools, under other church auspices in 268
- .1 **Schools and courses**
 Class schools and courses in specific places in 207.4–207.9
- .11 **Colleges and universities**
 Add to 207.11 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Roman Catholic seminaries and courses 207.112
- .12 **Secondary schools**
 Add to 207.12 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Adventist secondary training schools and courses 207.1267
- .3 **Other educational aspects**
 Add to 207.3 the numbers following 07 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 072–079 from Table 1, e.g., museums and exhibits on Christianity 207.34
- .4–.9 **Schools and courses in specific places**
 Colleges, universities, secondary schools
 Class here specific schools and courses
 Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 207
- 208 Collections of Christianity**
 Class collected writings of apostolic and church fathers in 281.1–281.4

209 Historical and geographical treatment of Christianity and Christian thought

Class historical and geographical treatment of organized Christian church in 270

210 Natural religion

Religious beliefs and attitudes attained thru observation and interpretation of evidence in nature, thru speculation, thru reasoning, but not thru revelation

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific religion, it is optional to class it here, and to add to 21 the numbers following the base number for that religion in 292–299, e.g., Hinduism 210, Mahabharata 219.23; in that case class subdivisions of natural religion in 201–209, standard subdivisions of Christianity in 200.1–200.9, standard subdivisions of religion in 200.01–200.09)

211 God

For nature of God, see 212



211.3–211.8 Concepts of God

Class comprehensive works in 211

- .3 Theism
- .4 Rationalism (Free thought)
- .5 Deism
- .6 Humanism, secularism, humanitarianism
- .7 Agnosticism and skepticism
- .8 Atheism

212 Nature of God

- .2 Polytheism
- .3 Dualism
- .4 Monotheism
- .5 Pantheism and derived beliefs
 - Including Subud
- .52 Theosophy
- .53 Anthroposophy
- .8 Anthropomorphism

213 Creation

By fiat, by evolutionary growth and change

.5 Creation of life

Including creation of man

214 Theodicy

Vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering

.8 Providence**215 Science and religion**

Antagonism and reconciliation

Including cybernetics

Class scientific theories of creation in 213

.1 Mathematics**.2 Astronomy**

.24 Life on other worlds

.25 Man in space

.3 Physics**.4 Chemistry****.5 Geology****.6 Paleontology****.7 Life sciences**

For paleontology, see 215.6

.72 Anthropology and ethnology

.74 Biology and natural history

.8 Archeology**.9 Technology**

Medical and engineering sciences

Class manned space flight in 215.25

216 Good and evil

For theodicy, see 214

217 Worship and prayer**218 Man**

His nature and place in universe

Including immortality

219 Analogy

Religious belief based on correspondences

Class religious belief on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on immortality 218

220 Bible

Holy Scriptures of Judaism and Christianity

(If option at 230–280 is chosen, class here sources of the specified religion; in that case class Bible in 298)

Class Christian Biblical theology in 230–270, Jewish in 296.31–296.33, Biblical precepts in Christian codes of conduct in 241.52–241.54, in Jewish codes in 296.385

.01–.08 Standard subdivisions

Class concordances in 220.2, dictionaries and encyclopedias in 220.3

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class isagogics in 220.61; geography, history, chronology, persons of Bible lands in Bible times in 220.9

220.1–220.9 General principles

Class comprehensive works in 220

SUMMARY

220.1 Origins and authenticity

.2 Concordances and indexes

.3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias

.4 Original texts and early versions

.5 Modern versions

.6 Interpretation and criticism

.7 Commentaries

.8 Special subjects treated in Bible

.9 Geography, history, chronology of Bible lands in Bible times

.1 **Origins and authenticity**

.12 **Canon**

Authoritative list of books accepted as Holy Scripture and their selection

.13 **Inspiration**

Bible as revelation (word of God)

.14 **Authorship**

Class inspiration of authors in 220.13

.15 **Prophetic message**

.2 **Concordances and indexes**

.3 Dictionaries and encyclopedias



220.4–220.5 Texts and versions

Class here complete texts, selections from more than one part; textual criticism

Class comprehensive works in 220.4, commentaries with text in 220.77, selections compiled for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., selections for daily meditations 242.2

.4 Original texts and early versions

Codices and translations into modern languages

Class here comprehensive works on texts and versions

.42 Chaldee

.43 Syriac

.44 Hebrew

Class translations from Hebrew texts into modern languages in 220.5

.45 Samaritan

.46 Other Semitic

Examples: Ethiopic, Arabic

.47 Latin

Examples: Itala, Vulgate

Class translations from Vulgate text into modern languages in 220.5

.48 Greek

Class translations from Greek texts into modern languages in 220.5

.49 Other early versions

Examples: Armenian, Coptic, Gothic

.5 Modern versions

Translations from Vulgate, Hebrew, Greek texts into modern languages

.51 Polyglot

.52 In English and Anglo-Saxon

Including translations by a single person, e.g., Goodspeed

Use 220.52001–220.52009 for standard subdivisions



220.520 1–220.520 5 English

Class comprehensive works in 220.52

.520 1 English versions before 1582

.520 2 Douay

.520 3 Authorized (King James)

-
- .520 4 Revised
 - English revised, American revised, revised standard, American standard
 - .520 5 Confraternity
 - .520 6 New English Bible
 - .529 Anglo-Saxon
 - .53-.59 In other languages
 - Add "Languages" notation 3-9 from Table 6 to base number 220.5
 - .6 Interpretation and criticism**
 - For textual criticism, see 220.4-220.5; commentaries, 220.7*
 - .61 Isagogics
 - Literary and external history
 - Class canon in 220.12
 - .63 Hermeneutics
 - .64 Symbolism and typology
 - .65 Harmony
 - .66 Exegesis (Higher criticism)
 - .67 Historical criticism
 - Including form criticism
 - .68 Mythological, allegorical, numerical, astronomical interpretations
 - .7 Commentaries**
 - Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order
 - .77 With text
 - .8 Special subjects treated in Bible**
 - Use 220.80001-220.80009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add 001-999 to base number 220.8, e.g., sciences in Bible 220.85
 - .9 Geography, history, chronology of Bible lands in Bible times**
 - .91 Geography (Description and civilization)
 - .92 Collected persons
 - Description and critical appraisal of work, biography
 - If preferred, class biography in 922, or in 920 without subdivision
 - Class an individual person with the part of the Bible in which he is considered
 - .93 Archeology (Material remains)

- .95 History of events
 Use 220.95001–220.95009 for standard subdivisions
- .950 5 Bible stories retold

221–229 Specific parts of Bible

Class comprehensive works in 220

221 Old Testament

For specific parts of Old Testament, see 222–224

- .1–.8 **General principles**
 Add to 221 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8, e.g., exegesis 221.66, Septuagint version 221.48
- .9 **Geography, history, chronology of Old Testament lands in Old Testament times**
- .91 Geography (Description and civilization)
- .92 Persons
 Description and critical appraisal of work, biography
 If preferred, class biography in 922
- .922 Collected
 If preferred, class biography in 92, or in 920 without subdivision
- .924 Individual
 If preferred, class individual biography in 92 or B; or, if preferred, class individual biography of men in 920.71, of women in 920.72
- .93 Archeology (Material remains)
- .95 History of events
 Use 221.95001–221.95009 for standard subdivisions
- .950 5 Old Testament stories retold

222–224 Specific parts of Old Testament

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001–009 Standard subdivisions
- 01–08 General principles
 Add to 0 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8, e.g., exegesis 066
- 09 Geography, history, chronology
 Add to 09 the numbers following 221.9 in 221.91–221.95, e.g., biography 092

Class comprehensive works in 221

222 *Historical books of Old Testament

- .1 *Pentateuch (Torah)**
 - .11 *Genesis**
 - .12 *Exodus**
For Ten Commandments, see 222.16
 - .13 *Leviticus**
 - .14 *Numbers**
 - .15 *Deuteronomy**
For Ten Commandments, see 222.16
 - .16 *Ten Commandments (Decalog)**
Class Ten Commandments as code of conduct in Christianity in 241.52, in Judaism in 296.385
- .2 *Joshua (Josue)**
- .3 *Judges and Ruth**
 - .32 *Judges**
 - .35 *Ruth**
- .4 *Samuel**
 - .43 *Samuel 1**
Also called Kings 1
 - .44 *Samuel 2**
Also called Kings 2
- .5 *Kings**
 - .53 *Kings 1**
Also called Kings 3
 - .54 *Kings 2**
Also called Kings 4
- .6 *Chronicles (Paralipomena)**
 - .63 *Chronicles 1 (Paralipomenon 1)**
 - .64 *Chronicles 2 (Paralipomenon 2)**
- .7 *Ezra (Esdras 1)**
- .8 *Nehemiah (Esdras 2, Nehemias)**
- .86 *Tobit (Tobias)**
(Use of this number is optional; prefer 229.22)

* Add as instructed under 222–224

.88 *Judith

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 229.24)

.9 *Esther

(It is optional to class here deuterocanonical part of Esther; prefer 229.27)

223 *Poetic books of Old Testament**.1 *Job****.2 *Psalms****.7 *Proverbs****.8 *Ecclesiastes****.9 *Song of Solomon (Canticle of Canticles)****.96 *Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)**

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 229.3)

.98 *Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 229.4)

224 *Prophetic books of Old Testament**.1 *Isaiah (Isaias)****.2 *Jeremiah (Jeremias)****.3 *Lamentations****.37 *Baruch**

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 229.5)

.4 *Ezekiel (Ezechiel)**.5 *Daniel**

(It is optional to class here Song of the three children, Susanna, Bel and the dragon; prefer 229.5–229.6)

.6 *Hosea (Osee)**.7 *Joel****.8 *Amos****.9 *Minor prophets***For Hosea, see 224.6; Joel, 224.7; Amos, 224.8***.91 *Obadiah (Abdias)****.92 *Jonah (Jonas)****.93 *Micah (Micheas)***** Add as instructed under 222–224**

- .94 *Nahum
 - .95 *Habakkuk (Habacuc)
 - .96 *Zephaniah (Sophonias)
 - .97 *Haggai (Aggeus)
 - .98 *Zechariah (Zacharias)
 - .99 *Malachi (Malachias)
 - .997 *Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)
- (Use of this number is optional; prefer 229.73)

225 **New Testament**

For specific parts of New Testament, see 226–228

- .1–.8 **General principles**
 Add to 225 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8, e.g., canon 225.12
- .9 **Geography, history, chronology of New Testament lands in New Testament times**
 Add to 225.9 the numbers following 221.9 in 221.91–221.95, e.g., individual persons 225.924
 Class Jesus Christ, Mary, Joseph, Joachim, Anne, John the Baptist in 232



226–228 Specific parts of New Testament

Add to each subdivision identified by * as instructed under 222–224
 Class comprehensive works in 225

226 ***Gospels and Acts**

- .1 **Harmonies of the Gospels**



226.2–226.5 Specific Gospels

Class comprehensive works in 226

For miracles, see 226.7; parables, 226.8

- .2 ***Matthew**
 Class Golden Rule as code of conduct in 241.54
 For Sermon on Mount, see 226.9
- .3 ***Mark**
- .4 ***Luke**
 Class Golden Rule as code of conduct in 241.54
 For Sermon on Mount, see 226.9
- .5 ***John**

* Add as instructed under 222–224

-
- .6 ***Acts of Apostles**
 - .7 ***Miracles**
 - .8 ***Parables**
 - .9 ***Sermon on Mount**
 - .93 ***Beatitudes**
 - .96 ***Lord's Prayer**
 - 227 ***Epistles**
 - .1 ***Romans**
 - .2 ***Corinthians 1**
 - Class here comprehensive works on Epistles to Corinthians
 - For Corinthians 2, see 227.3*
 - .3 ***Corinthians 2**
 - .4 ***Galatians**
 - .5 ***Ephesians**
 - .6 ***Philippians**
 - .7 ***Colossians**
 - .8 ***Other Pauline epistles**
 - .81 ***Thessalonians 1**
 - Class here comprehensive works on Epistles to Thessalonians
 - For Thessalonians 2, see 227.82*
 - .82 ***Thessalonians 2**
 - .83 ***Timothy 1**
 - Class here comprehensive works on Epistles to Timothy
 - For Timothy 2, see 227.84*
 - .84 ***Timothy 2**
 - .85 ***Titus**
 - .86 ***Philemon**
 - .87 ***Hebrews**
 - .9 ***Catholic epistles**
 - .91 ***James**
 - .92 ***Peter 1**
 - Class here comprehensive works on Epistles of Peter
 - For Peter 2, see 227.93*

* Add as instructed under 222–224

.93 *Peter 2

.94 *John 1

Class here comprehensive works on Epistles of John

For John 2, see 227.95; John 3, 227.96

.95 *John 2

.96 *John 3

.97 *Jude

228 *Revelation (Apocalypse)

229 Apocrypha, pseudepigrapha, deuterocanonical works

Use 229.001–229.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.08 General principles

Add to 229.0 the numbers following 220 in 220.1–220.8,
e.g., commentaries 229.07

.09 Geography, history, chronology of lands of Apocrypha in times
of Apocrypha

Add to 229.09 the numbers following 221.9 in 221.91–
221.95, e.g., individual persons 229.0924

229.1–229.9 Specific books

Add to each subdivision identified by * as instructed under 222–224

Class comprehensive works in 229

SUMMARY

229.1 Esdras 1 and 2

.2 Tobit, Judith, Esther

.3 Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)

.4 Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)

.5 Baruch, Epistle of Jeremy, Song of the three children

.6 Susanna, Bel and the dragon, Prayer of Manasses

.7 Maccabees (Machabees)

.8 Pseudo gospels

.9 Other pseudepigrapha

.1 *Esdras 1 and 2

Also called Esdras 3 and 4

.2 *Tobit, Judith, Esther

.22 *Tobit (Tobias)

If preferred, class in 222.86

.24 *Judith

If preferred, class in 222.88

* Add as instructed under 222–224

- .27 ***Deuterocanonical part of Esther**
 If preferred, class in 222.9
- .3 ***Wisdom of Solomon (Wisdom)**
 If preferred, class in 223.96
- .4 ***Ecclesiasticus (Sirach)**
 If preferred, class in 223.98
- .5 ***Baruch, Epistle of Jeremy, Song of the three children**
 If preferred, class Baruch in 224.37, Song of the three children in 224.5
- .6 ***Susanna, Bel and the dragon, Prayer of Manasses**
 If preferred, class Susanna, Bel and the dragon in 224.5
- .7 ***Maccabees (Machabees)**
- .73 ***Maccabees 1 and 2 (Machabees 1 and 2)**
 If preferred, class in 224.997
- .75 ***Maccabees 3 and 4 (Machabees 3 and 4)**
- .8 ***Pseudo gospels**
- .9 ***Other pseudepigrapha**
- .91 ***Old Testament**
- .911 ***Historical books**
- .912 ***Poetic books**
 Example: Odes of Solomon
- .913 ***Prophetic books**
 Examples: Jewish apocalypses, Book of Enoch,
 Assumption of Moses, Vision of Isaiah,
 Apocalypse of Elias or Elijah
- .914 ***Testaments**
 Example: Testament of the twelve patriarchs
- .915 ***Other books by or about the prophets**
- .918 ***Pseudepigrapha in Dead Sea Scrolls**
 Class of specific type of pseudepigrapha with the
 subject, e.g., Habakkuk commentary 229.915

229.92–229.95 New Testament

Class comprehensive works in 229.9, pseudo gospels in 229.8

- .92 ***Acts of Apostles**
- .93 ***Epistles**
- .94 ***Apocalypses**
- .95 **Other**

* Add as instructed under 222–224



230–280 Christianity

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and more and shorter numbers to a specific religion, e.g., Buddhism, it is optional to class it here and its sources in 220; in that case class Bible and Christianity in 298)

Class comprehensive works in 200

For Bible, see 220



230–270 Specific elements of Christianity

Class here Biblical theology

If preferred, class specific elements of specific denominations and sects in 280

Class comprehensive works in 200



230–240 Christian theology

Class comprehensive works in 201.1

For social and ecclesiastical theology, see 260

230 Christian doctrinal theology (Christian dogma)

Use 230.01–230.09 for standard subdivisions

Class moral theology in 241, doctrinal controversies in general church history in 273

.1–.9 Doctrines of specific denominations and sects

Add to 230 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Methodist doctrines 230.7

(It is optional to class here specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects; prefer 231–236. If option is chosen, add as above, then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 23 in 231–236, e.g., Methodist doctrines on salvation 230.704)



231–236 Specific doctrines

Class here specific doctrines of specific denominations and sects; if preferred, class in 230.1–230.9

Class comprehensive works in 230, doctrines on church government, organization, nature in 262

231 God, Trinity, Godhead

.04 General special

.042 Knowledge of God

Thru faith, tradition, reason

Class revelation in 231.74

.1 God the Father, Creator

.2 God the Son, Redeemer*For Jesus Christ, see 232***.3 God the Holy Ghost (Holy Spirit)****.4 Attributes**

Including omniscience, omnipresence, omnipotence

Class other attributes in 231.5–231.8

.5 Providence**.6 Love and wisdom****.7 Sovereignty**

Including Kingdom of God, divine law

.73 Miracles

Miraculous places, events, objects, cures

Including stigmata

.74 Revelation

Vision and appearing of God, disclosure to men of divine purpose and superhuman knowledge

.8 Justice and goodness

Including theodicy: vindication of God's justice and goodness in permitting existence of evil and suffering

*For Providence, see 231.5***232 Jesus Christ and his family Christology**

Including person and offices, royal office, priesthood, intercession of Jesus Christ

232.1–232.8 Christology

Class comprehensive works in 232, doctrines on life of Jesus in 232.9

.1 Incarnation and messiahship of Christ

Including typology

.12 Messianic prophecies**.2 Christ as Logos (Word of God)****.3 Atonement of Christ****.4 Sacrifice of Christ****.5 Resurrection of Christ****.6 Second coming of Christ****.7 Judgment of Christ****.8 Natures of Christ (Divinity and humanity)**

.9 Doctrines on family and life of Jesus

Use 232.9001–232.9009 for standard subdivisions

- .901 Life of Jesus
Class specific events in 232.92, 232.95–232.97
- .903 Character and personality of Jesus
- .904 Influence of Jesus
- .908 Historicity of Jesus

SUMMARY

- 232.91 Mary, mother of Jesus (Mariology)
 - .92 Infancy of Jesus
 - .93 Mary's husband and parents
 - .94 John the Baptist
 - .95 Public life of Jesus
 - .96 Passion and death of Jesus
 - .97 Resurrection, appearances, ascension of Jesus
 - .98 Agrapha
- .91 Mary, mother of Jesus (Mariology)
- .911 Immaculate Conception
- .912 Annunciation
- .913 Virginity
- .914 Assumption (Ascent to heaven)
- .915 Sanctity and virtues
- .916 Spiritual powers
- .92 Infancy of Jesus
 - Including Holy Family
 - For Mary, see 232.91; Joseph, 232.932*
- .921 Nativity
- .922 Adoration of the shepherds
- .923 Three wise men (Magi)
- .924 Circumcision
- .925 Massacre of innocents
- .926 Flight into Egypt
- .927 Childhood in Nazareth
- .928 Presentation in temple
- .929 Jesus among doctors in temple

- .93 Mary's husband and parents
- .932 Joseph
- .933 Joachim and Anne
- .94 John the Baptist
- .95 Public life of Jesus
 - Including baptism, temptation, calling of apostles
- .954 Teachings
 - For Agrapha, see 232.98*
- .956 Transfiguration
- .957 Last Supper
- .958 Last words to disciples
- .96 Passion and death of Jesus
- .961 Betrayal by Judas
- .962 Trial and condemnation
- .963 Crucifixion and death
- .963 5 Seven last words on cross
- .964 Burial
- .966 Relics of Passion
- .967 Descent into hell
- .97 Resurrection, appearances, ascension of Jesus
- .98 Agrapha
 - Jesus's words not appearing in canonical Gospels

233**Man**

Including moral and spiritual heredity, personality, natural and spiritual body

For salvation, see 234; eschatology, 236

- .1 **Creation and fall**
- .11 Creation of man
- .14 Original sin and fall of man
- .2 **Sin**
 - For original sin, see 233.14*
- .21 Mortal and venial sin
- .22 Sins against the Holy Ghost
 - Class specific mortal and venial sins in 233.21

.4 Accountability**.5 The soul****.7 Freedom of choice between good and evil**

Class predestination and free will in relation to salvation in 234.9

234 Salvation (Soteriology)**.1 Grace**

Including actual and sanctifying grace, merit, innate virtues, spiritual gifts (e.g., speaking in tongues), gifts of the Holy Ghost, righteousness, holiness, universal priesthood

.16 Sacraments**.161 Baptism****.161 2 Infant****.161 3 Adult****.162 Confirmation****.163 Eucharist, Holy Communion, Lord's Supper****.164 Holy Orders****.165 Matrimony****.166 Penance****.167 Anointing of the sick (Extreme unction)****.2 Faith****.3 Redemption****.4 Regeneration****.5 Repentance and forgiveness****.6 Obedience****.7 Justification****.8 Sanctification****.9 Predestination and free will****235 Spiritual beings**

Former heading: Invisible world

For Mariology, see 232.91

.2 Saints

Class Saint Joseph in 232.932, Joachim and Anne in 232.933, John the Baptist in 232.94

.24 Beatification and canonization

235.3–235.4 Pure spirits

Class comprehensive works in 235

For God, see 231

.3 Celestial hierarchy

Angels, archangels, virtues, powers, principalities, dominations, thrones, cherubim, seraphim

.4 Devils (Demons)

.47 Satan (Lucifer)

236 Eschatology

Including Antichrist

.1 Death

.2 Future state of man (Life after death)

Eternal reward and punishment

For intermediate state of man, see 236.4; limbo of fathers, 236.6; limbo of infants, 236.7

.21 Eternity

.22 Immortality

For conditional immortality, see 236.23

.23 Conditional immortality (Annihilationism)

.24 Heaven

.25 Hell

.3 Millennium

Class second coming and judgment as topics of Christology in 232.6–232.7

.4 Intermediate state of man

Probation after death

For purgatory, see 236.5

.5 Purgatory

.6 Limbo of fathers (Limbus patrum)

Abode of souls of the just who died before coming of Jesus Christ

.7 Limbo of infants (Limbus infantum)

Abode of souls of the unbaptized but just

.8 Resurrection of the dead

.9 Last judgment

237 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

238 Creeds, confessions of faith, covenants, catechisms

Class catechetics in 268.6, creeds and catechisms on a specific doctrine with the subject, e.g., attributes of God 231.4

.1 Early and Oriental**.11 Apostles' Creed****.14 Nicene and post-Nicene creeds of Western Church**

Including Constantinopolitan Creed

.142 Nicene Creed**.144 Athanasian Creed****.19 Creeds and confessions of Eastern Church**

Confession of Gennadius II, Answers of Jeremiah II, Confession of Metrophanes, Orthodox Confession of Peter Mogila, Confession of Dositheus

.2 Roman Catholic

Example: Creed of Pius IV

.3-.9 Other

Add to 238 the numbers following 28 in 283-289, e.g., Augsburg Confession 238.41

239 Apologetics and polemics

Exposition of Christian doctrines refuting alleged errors in other systems

Use 239.001-239.009 for standard subdivisions

Class apologetics and polemics on a specific doctrine with the subject, e.g., nature of the church 262.7

.1 In apostolic times

For apologetics and polemics against doctrines of specific groups in apostolic times, see 239.2-239.4

► **239.2-239.4 Against doctrines of specific groups in apostolic times**

Class comprehensive works in 239.1

.2 Against Jews in apostolic times**.3 Against pagans and heathens in apostolic times****.4 Against Neoplatonists in apostolic times**



239.5–239.9 Against doctrines of specific groups in post-apostolic times

Class comprehensive works in 239; comprehensive post-apostolic defenses of and attacks on doctrines of a specific denomination or sect in 230.1–230.9; of a specific religion with the religion, e.g., doctrines of Judaism 296.31–296.33

.5 **Against deists**

.6 **Against Encyclopedists**

.7 **Against rationalists, agnostics, apostates, atheists**

.8 **Against scientists and materialists**

For apologetics and polemics against communists, see 239.9

.9 **Against communists and adherents of other denials**

240 Christian moral and devotional theology

241 Moral theology

For guides to conduct of Christian life, see 248.4

.04 **Specific denominations and sects**

Add to 241.04 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Protestant moral theology 241.0404

.1 **Conscience**

.2 **Laws**

Natural, human, divine

For codes of conduct, see 241.5

.3 **Sins and vices**

For specific moral issues, see 241.6

.4 **Virtues**

For specific moral issues, see 241.6

.5 **Codes of conduct**

For specific moral issues, see 241.6



241.52–241.54 Biblical precepts

Class comprehensive works in 241.5

.52 **Ten Commandments**

.54 **Golden Rule**

.57 **Precepts of church**

Class church law in 262.9

.6 Specific moral issues

Add to 241.6 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g., morality of discriminatory practices 241.675

Class comprehensive works on sins and vices in 241.3, on virtues in 241.4

242 Devotional literature

Texts of meditations, contemplations, prayers for individuals and families

For evangelistic writings, see 243; hymns, 245

SUMMARY**242.1 Classics of meditation and contemplation**

.2 For daily use

.3 For religious occasions

.4 For consolation in times of illness, troubles, bereavement

.6 For specific classes of persons

.7 Specific prayers and groups of prayers

.8 Collections of prayers

.1 Classics of meditation and contemplation

Example: *Imitatio Christi* of Thomas à Kempis

242.2–242.4 For specific times and occasions

Class comprehensive works in 242

.2 For daily use**.3 For religious occasions**

.33 Advent and Christmas

.34 Lent

For Holy Week, see 242.35

.35 Holy Week

.36 Easter

.37 Other feast and fast days

Examples: Ascension Day, Ember Days, Rogation Days

.4 For consolation in times of illness, troubles, bereavement**.6 For specific classes of persons**

Add to 242.6 the numbers following 248.8 in 248.82–248.89, e.g., for young women 242.633

Class prayers for specific classes of persons in 242.82–242.89, devotional literature for specific classes of persons for specific times and occasions in 242.2–242.4



242.7–242.8 Prayers

Class comprehensive works in 242, prayers for specific times and occasions in 242.2–242.4

.7 **Specific prayers and groups of prayers**

.72 To God the Father, the Son, the Holy Ghost

.721 Doxologies (Prayers of praise)

.722 Lord's Prayer

.723 Prayers of faith

Examples: Nicene Creed and Apostles' Creed (credo)

.724 Prayers of thanksgiving

.725 Prayers of penitence

.726 Prayers of petition

.74 To Mary

.741 Ave Maria (Hail Mary)

.742 Rosary

.75 To Joseph, Joachim, Anne

.76 To other saints

.8 **Collections of prayers**

Use 242.8001–242.8009 for standard subdivisions

For specific groups of prayers, see 242.7

.801–.809 For specific denominations and sects

Add to 242.80 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., collections of private prayers for Methodists 242.807

.82–.89 For specific classes of persons

Add to 242.8 the numbers following 248.8 in 248.82–248.89, e.g., collections of private prayers for young women 242.833

243 **Evangelistic writings for individuals and families**

Works designed to convert readers, promote repentance

244 **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 15

245 **Hymns without music**

Texts for individuals and families

Add "Languages" notation 1–9 from Table 6 to base number 245

Class comprehensive works on hymns without music [*formerly* 245] in 264.2

Class musical scores and parts in 783.95, modern metrical versions of Psalms in 223.205

246 Art in Christianity

Religious significance and purpose

Former heading: Symbolism and symbolic objects and places

Class creation, description, critical appraisal as art in 700

For church furnishings and related articles, see 247

**246.1–246.4 Schools and styles**

Class comprehensive works in 246, specific elements by school and style in 246.5–246.9

.1 Byzantine and Gothic**.2 Early Christian and Romanesque****[.3] Statuary and icons**

Class statuary in 247.3, icons in 246.53

.4 Renaissance and modern

Including Protestant

**246.5–246.9 Specific elements**

Class comprehensive works in 246

.5 Icons, symbols, insignia**.53 Icons [*formerly* 246.3]****.55 Emblems [*formerly also* 247.9] and symbols**

Including banners, thuribles, incense, cryptograms

For colors and lights, see 246.6

.558 Crosses and crucifixes**.56 Insignia**

Including insignia of rank [*formerly* 247.6]

.6 Colors and lights

Class altars [*formerly* 246.6] in 247.11

.7 Musical, rhythmic, dramatic arts

Examples: the dance, passion plays

.9 Architecture

Add to 246.9 the numbers following 726 in 726.1–726.9, e.g., cathedral church buildings 246.96

247 Church furnishings and related articles**.1 Furniture**

Add to 247.1 the numbers following 729.9 in 729.91–729.98, e.g., altars 247.11 [*formerly* 246.6]

.3 Sculpture

Including statuary [*formerly* 246.3]

.4 Structural decoration

Add to 247.4 the numbers following 729 in 729.3–729.8, e.g., decoration in enamel 247.46

.5 Paintings

Add to 247.5 the numbers following 704.948 in 704.9484–704.9487, e.g., Holy Family 247.556

[.6] Insignia of rank

Class in 246.56

.7 Textiles

Use 247.7001–247.7009 for standard subdivisions

Add to 247.7 the numbers following 746 in 746.04–746.96, e.g., vestments 247.792, altar cloths 247.796

.8 Plastic arts

Add to 247.8 the numbers following 73 in 736–739, e.g., eucharistic vessels of gold 247.892282

For sculpture, see 247.3; *structural decoration*, 247.4; *crosses and crucifixes*, 246.558

[.9] Emblems

Class in 246.55

248 Practice of religion in personal and family life **Personal religion**

For Christian worship in family life, see 249

.06 Organizations

Class here pious societies, e.g., sodalities, confraternities



248.2–248.9 Personal religion

Christianity as inner experience and guide to daily living

Class comprehensive works in 248, texts of devotional literature in 242

SUMMARY

248.2 Religious experience

.3 Private worship, prayer, meditation, contemplation

.4 Guides to conduct of Christian life

.5 Witness bearing

.6 Stewardship

.8 Personal Christianity for specific classes of persons

.9 Personal Christianity for specific denominations and sects

- .2 Religious experience**
 - .22 Mysticism**
 - .24 Converts and conversion**
 - .242 Conversion of Protestants to Roman Catholicism**
 - .244 Conversion of Roman Catholics to Protestantism**
 - .246 Conversion of non-Christians to Christianity**
 - .25 Moral rearmament**
 - .27 Self-discipline (Asceticism)**
 - Aids to perfection
 - .272 Strict self-denial**
 - .273 Fasting and abstinence**
 - .274 Other austerities and self-denials**
 - .29 Other**
 - Including stigmata, speaking in tongues (glossolalia), pilgrimages
 - .3 Private worship, prayer, meditation, contemplation**
 - .4 Guides to conduct of Christian life**
 - Application of Christian virtues to everyday living
 - .42 General guides**
 - .48 Guides for specific denominations and sects**
 - Add to 248.48 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Roman Catholic guides 248.482
 - .5 Witness bearing**
 - .6 Stewardship**
 - .8 Personal Christianity for specific classes of persons**
 - Class a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., private prayer 248.3
- **248.82–248.85 For specific age groups**
- Class comprehensive works in 248.8, other groupings of persons of specific ages in 248.86–248.89
- .82 Children**
 - .83 Young adults (Adolescents)**
 - Class here students
 - .832 Men**
 - .833 Women**

.84 Adults

For aged, see 248.85

.842 Men

.843 Women

.85 Aged

► 248.86–248.89 For other groupings of persons

Class comprehensive works in 248.8

.86 Afflicted

.88 Occupational classes

For religious groups, see 248.89

.89 Religious groups

.892 Secular clergymen

Priests, ministers, pastors, rectors, vicars, chaplains, curates, elders,
deacons, assistants

.894 Persons in religious orders

Religious and monastic life

.894 2 Men

.894 22 Vocation

.894 25 Selection and novitiate

.894 28 Rules

.894 3 Women

Add to 248.8943 the numbers following 248.8942 in 248.89422–
248.89428, e.g., vocation 248.89432

.9 Personal Christianity for specific denominations and sects

Add to 248.9 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., personal
Christianity for Latter-Day Saints 248.993

Class personal Christianity for specific classes of persons regardless of
denomination or sect in 248.8

249 Christian worship in family life



250–280 Christian church

Class comprehensive works in 260

250 Local Christian church and Christian religious orders

Class public worship in 264, missions in 266, religious training and instruction in 268



251–254 Local church

Class comprehensive works in 250, special parochial activities in 259

251 Preaching (Homiletics)

Use 251.001–251.009 for standard subdivisions

Class texts of sermons in 252, evangelism in 253.7

- .01 Preparation
- .02 Sermon outlines
- .03 Delivery
 - Voice, expression, gesture
- .07 Radio and television preaching
- .08 Homiletic illustrations

252 Texts of sermons

Use 252.001–252.009 for standard subdivisions

Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., God's Providence 231.5

- .01–.09 By specific denominations and sects
 - Add to 252.0 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Anglican sermons 252.03



252.1–252.9 For specific occasions and audiences

Class comprehensive works in 252

- .1 For baptisms, confirmations, weddings, funerals
 - Class sermons for memorial occasions in 252.9
- .5 For specific classes of persons
 - .53 Children
 - .55 Young adults (Adolescents)
 - Examples: academic, chapel, convocation, commencement sermons
 - .56 Afflicted and aged

- .58 Occupational classes
For religious groups, see 252.59
- .59 Religious groups
- .592 Secular clergymen
Priests, ministers, pastors, rectors, vicars, chaplains, curates, elders,
deacons, assistants
- .594 Persons in religious orders
Monks, friars, nuns
- .6 For church and public occasions

252.61–252.67 Church year

Class comprehensive works in 252.6

- .61 Advent and Christmas
- .62 Lent and Holy Week
- .63 Easter
- .67 Other feast and fast days
Examples: Ascension Day, Ember Days, Rogation Days, specific saints' days
- .68 Secular occasions
Examples: elections, thanksgivings, holidays
- .7 For consecrations, ordinations, installations
- .9 For memorial occasions

253 Secular clergymen and pastoral duties

Priests, ministers, pastors, rectors, vicars, curates, chaplains, elders,
deacons, assistants

Class education of clergymen in 207.1

.2 Life and person

Including qualifications, celibacy, wife, family

For personal Christianity for secular clergymen, see 248.892

253.5–253.7 Pastoral duties and responsibilities

Of clergy and laity

Class comprehensive works in 253

For preaching, see 251; parish government and administration, 254

- .5 Counseling
- .7 Evangelism
- .73 Outdoor

- .75 In prisons
- .76 In homes
- .78 By radio and television

254 Parish government and administration

As related to function

Use 254.001–254.009 for standard subdivisions

Class management in 658.9125

- .01–.09 By specific denominations and sects
 - Add to 254.0 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., government and administration of Roman Catholic parishes 254.02
- .2 In specific kinds of communities
 - Add to 254.2 the numbers following 173 in “Areas” notation 1732–1734 from Table 2, e.g., rural parishes 254.24
 - Class a specific activity in a specific kind of community with the subject, e.g., membership promotion 254.5
- .3 Radio and television work
- .4 Public relations and publicity
 - For radio and television work, see 254.3
- .5 Membership
 - Promotion and service
- .6 Programs
 - Planning and execution
- .7 Buildings, equipment, grounds
- .8 Finance
 - Budget, income, methods of raising money, expenditures

255 Religious congregations and orders (Monasticism)

Government, organization, administration as related to function

Class here comprehensive works on Christian religious congregations and orders

Use 255.001–255.009 for standard subdivisions

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001–009 Standard subdivisions
- 02 Constitutions
- 04 Statutes, ordinances, customs
- 06 Rule

Class special parochial activities in 259, management in 658.91255

For religious congregations and orders in church organization, see 262.24; in church history, 271

**255.01–255.09 Specific kinds**

Class comprehensive works in 255

- .01 Contemplative
- .02 Eremitical
- .03 Teaching
- .04 Preaching
- .05 Military
- .06 Mendicant
- .07 Nursing
- .08 Canons regular
- .09 Other
- .092 Brothers
- .093 Lay brothers
- .094 Third orders
- .095 Secular institutes

SUMMARY

- 255.1 **Benedictines**
- .2 **Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)**
- .3 **Franciscans (Gray Friars)**
- .4 **Augustinians**
- .5 **Jesuits and related orders**
- .6 **Passionists and Redemptorists**
- .7 **Other Roman Catholic orders of men**
- .8 **Non-Roman Catholic orders of men**
- .9 **Congregations and orders of women**

**255.1–255.8 Specific orders of men**

Class comprehensive works in 255

**255.1–255.7 Roman Catholic orders of men**

Class comprehensive works in 255

- .1 **Benedictines**
Including Celestines, Cluniacs
- .12 ***Cistercians (Bernardines)**
- .125 ***Trappists**
- .13 ***Olivetans**

* Add as instructed under 255

-
- .2 *Dominicans (Friars Preachers, Black Friars)**
 - .3 Franciscans (Gray Friars)**
 - Including Observants, Recollects, Alcantarines
 - .36 *Capuchins**
 - .37 *Conventuals**
 - .4 Augustinians**
 - Including Augustinian Recollects
 - .5 Jesuits and related orders**
 - Including Theatines, Barnabites, Somaschi, Camillians, Minor Clerks Regular, Clerks Regular of the Mother of God, Piarists
 - .53 *Jesuits (Society of Jesus)**
 - .6 Passionists and Redemptorists**
 - .62 *Passionists**
 - .64 *Redemptorists**
 - .7 Other Roman Catholic orders of men**
 - .71 *Carthusians**
 - .73 *Carmelites (White Friars)**
 - .75 *Sulpicians**
 - .76 *Oblates**
 - .77 *Lazarists (Vincentians)**
 - .78 *Christian Brothers (Brothers of the Christian Schools)**
 - .79 Other**
 - Including specific orders of knighthood, e.g., Knights of Malta
 - .8 Non-Roman Catholic orders of men**
 - .9 Congregations and orders of women**
 - Sisterhoods, convents, nunneries
 - Use 255.9001–255.9009 for standard subdivisions
 - .901–.909 Specific kinds**
 - Add to 255.90 the numbers following 255.0 in 255.01–255.09, e.g., contemplative orders 255.901

* Add as instructed under 255

-
- 255.91–255.98 Specific orders of women
Class comprehensive works in 255.9
-
- 255.91–255.97 Roman Catholic orders of women
Class comprehensive works in 255.9
- .91 Sisters of Charity
Example: Sisters of Charity of Saint Vincent de Paul
 - .92 *Sisters of Mercy
 - .93 Sacred Heart orders
 - .94 *Sisters of Bon Secours
 - .95 *Little Sisters of the Poor
 - .97 Other Roman Catholic orders of women
 - .971 *Carmelites
 - .972 *Dominicans
 - .973 *Franciscans
 - .974 *Ursulines
 - .975 Visitation orders
 - .976 Saint Joseph orders
 - .977 Presentation orders
 - .979 Other
 - .98 Non-Roman Catholic orders of women
- 256 [Unassigned]
Most recently used in Edition 14
- 257 [Unassigned]
Most recently used in Edition 14
- [258] Parochial welfare work
Class in 361.75
- 259 Parochial activities by parishes and religious orders
Examples: camp programs, recreation, work with children, soldiers, students, foreigners
For parochial welfare work, see 361.75
- * Add as instructed under 255

260 Christian social and ecclesiastical theology

Institutions, services, observances, disciplines, work of Christianity and Christian church

Class here comprehensive works on Christian church

For historical and geographical treatment, see 270; local church and religious orders, 250; denominations and sects, 280

261 Social theology

Attitude of Christianity toward and influence on secular matters and other religions

.1 Role of Christian church in society

Example: role in education, in social amelioration

.2 Christianity and other religions and irreligion

Including Christian church and the apostate and indifferent

.5 Christianity and intellectual development

Examples: attitude toward science, toward growth of knowledge

.7 Christianity and civil government

Attitude toward and influence on political activities and ideologies

.72 Religious freedom

.73 Theocracy

Supremacy of church over civil government

.8 Christianity and socioeconomic problems

For Christianity and civil government, see 261.7; role of Christian church in society, 261.1

.83 Social problems

.832 Social disorganization

Add to 261.832 the numbers following 362 in 362.1–362.5, e.g., attitude of Christianity toward alcoholism 261.832292

For crime, see 261.833

.833 Crime

Add to 261.833 the numbers following 364 in 364.1–364.8, e.g., attitude of Christianity toward treason 261.833131, toward capital punishment 261.83366

.834 Social structure

Add to 261.834 the numbers following 301.4 in 301.41–301.45, e.g., attitude of Christianity toward homosexuality 261.834157

.85 The economic order

.87 International affairs

.873 War and peace

Examples: attitude of Christianity toward pacifism, conscientious objectors

262 Ecclesiology

Church government, organization, nature

.001 Philosophy and theory

Class here ecumenicalism, church renewal

.002-.009 Other standard subdivisions

.01-.09 Government and organization of specific denominations and sects

Add to 262.0 the numbers following 28 in 281-289, e.g., government and organization of United Methodist Church 262.076

SUMMARY

262.1 Governing leaders

.2 Parishes and religious orders in church organization

.3 Government and organization of systems governed by papacy and episcopacy

.4 Government and organization of systems governed by election

.5 General councils

.7 Nature of the church

.8 Church and ministerial authority and its denial

.9 Church law and discipline

.1 Governing leaders

.11 Apostolic succession

262.12-262.15 Governing leaders by rank

Class comprehensive works in 262.1

.12 Bishops and archbishops

.13 Popes and their administration

.131 Papal infallibility

.132 Temporal power of the pope

.135 College of Cardinals

.136 Administration

Including congregations, tribunals, offices of Curia Romana

For College of Cardinals, see 262.135

.14 Local clergy

.15 Laity

-
- **262.17–262.19 Governing leaders by system of government**
 Class comprehensive works in 262.1, leaders by rank in a specific system of government in 262.12–262.15
- .17 Governing leaders in papal and episcopal systems
 - .18 Governing leaders in presbyterian systems
 - .19 Governing leaders in congregational systems
 - .2 **Parishes and religious orders in church organization**
 Class government and administration of parishes and religious orders in 254–255
 - .22 Parishes
 - .24 Religious congregations and orders
-
- **262.3–262.4 Specific forms of organization**
 Class comprehensive works in 262, specific denominations and sects regardless of form of organization in 262.01–262.09, a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., parishes 262.22
- .3 **Government and organization of systems governed by papacy and episcopacy**
 Sees, dioceses, cathedral systems
 - .4 **Government and organization of systems governed by election**
 Synods, presbyteries, congregations
 - .5 **General councils**
 Add to 262.5 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., ecumenical councils of Roman Catholic Church 262.52
 Class acts of ecumenical councils in 262.9
 - .7 **Nature of the church**
 - .72 Attributes, marks, notes
 Apostolicity, catholicity, holiness, unity, credibility, infallibility, necessity, visibility and invisibility
 - .73 Communion of saints
 - .77 Mystical body of Christ
 - .8 **Church and ministerial authority and its denial**
 Including heresy, schism

.9 Church law and discipline

Canon (ecclesiastical) law



262.91–262.93 Roman Catholic

Class comprehensive works in 262.9

.91 Acts of the Holy See

Encyclicals, papal bulls and decrees, briefs, apostolic letters

.92 Early Roman Catholic codes and treatises on them**.922 To Gratian, ca. 1140****.923 Corpus iuris canonici****.924 Quinque compilationes antiquae****.925 Other****.93 Codex iuris canonici (1917)****.931 General principles (Canons 1–86)****.932 Persons (Canons 87–725)**

Clergy, religious, laity

.933 Things (Canons 726–1551)

Sacraments, sacred times and places, worship, teaching office, benefices, temporal goods

.934 Procedure (Canons 1552–2194)

Trials, cases of beatification and canonization

.935 Crimes and penalties (Canons 2195–2414)Including censures [*formerly* 265.65]**.98 Other denominations**

Add to 262.98 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Anglican ecclesiastical law 262.983

263 Days, times, places of religious observance**.04 General special****.042 Holy places**

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 263.042



263.1–263.4 Sabbath and Sunday

Class comprehensive works in 263

.1 Biblical Sabbath**.2 Observance of seventh day**

.3 Sunday*For Sunday observance, see 263.4***.4 Sunday observance****.9 Other days and times**

Class here church year

.91 Advent and Christmas**.92 Lent and Holy Week****.93 Easter****.97 Other feast and fast days**

Examples: Ascension Day, Ember Days, Rogation Days

*For specific saints' days, see 263.98***.98 Specific saints' days****264 Public worship**

Divine services, religious ceremonies, liturgies, their conduct and texts

Class here comprehensive works on worship

Use 264.001–264.009 for standard subdivisions

Class private worship for individuals and families in 240

*For Sunday-school services, see 268.7, other rites, ceremonies, ordinances, 265***► 264.01–264.09 By specific denominations and sects**

Class comprehensive works in 264

.01 Primitive and Oriental churches

Add to 264.01 the numbers following 281 in 281.1–281.9, e.g., liturgy and ritual of Eastern Orthodox churches 264.019; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 264 in 264.1–264.9, e.g., Eastern Orthodox prayer 264.01901

.02 Roman Catholic Church

Use 264.02001–264.02009 for standard subdivisions

.020 1–.020 9 Specific elements

History, meaning, place in public worship

Add to 264.020 the numbers following 264 in 264.1–264.9, e.g., scripture readings 264.0203

► 264.021–264.028 Texts of liturgy, ritual, prayers

Class comprehensive works in 264.02

.021 Texts of calendars and ordos

Liturgical year

- .022 Texts of ceremonials
- .023 Texts of missals
- .024 Texts of breviaries
 - For psalter, see 264.028*
- .025 Texts of rituals
- .027 Texts of special books
 - .027 2 For specific times of year
 - Example: Holy Week
 - .027 4 For special liturgical services
 - Example: Forty Hours devotion
- .028 Texts of psalter
- .03 Anglican churches
 - Use 264.03001–264.03009 for standard subdivisions
- .030 1–.030 9 Specific elements
 - History, meaning, place in public worship
 - Add to 264.030 the numbers following 264 in 264.1–264.9, e.g., prayer 264.0301



264.031–264.038 Texts of liturgy, ritual, prayers

Class comprehensive works in 264.03

- .031 Texts of calendars, festivals, fasts
- .032 Texts of lectionary and rubrics
- .033 Texts of morning prayer and litany
- .034 Texts of evening prayer and vespers
- .035 Texts of sacraments, ordinances, services
- .036 Texts of collects, epistles, Gospels
- .037 Texts of ordinal, articles, creeds
- .038 Texts of psalter
- .04–.09 Other specific denominations and sects

Add to 264.0 the numbers following 28 in 284–289, e.g., United Methodist services 264.076; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 264 in 264.1–264.9, e.g., responsive readings in United Methodist services 264.07604



264.1–264.9 Specific elements

History, meaning, place in public worship, texts

Class comprehensive works in 264, specific elements in public worship of specific denominations and sects in 264.01–264.09

.1 Prayer

.13 Texts of prayers

Including litanies

.2 Music

Class here comprehensive works on hymns without music [*formerly* 245]

Class musical scores and parts in 783, hymns without music for individuals and families in 245

.3 Scripture readings and the Mass

.4 Responsive readings

.5 Creeds and confessions of faith

Class texts in 238

.6 Sermons, exhortations, instructions

Class texts of sermons in 252

.7 Prayer meetings, Holy Hours, novenas

.9 Sacramentals

For consecrations and dedications, see 265.92

265 Other rites, ceremonies, ordinances Sacraments

Preparation, instruction, performance



265.1–265.7 Sacraments

Class comprehensive works in 265, texts of liturgy and ritual of sacraments in specific denominations in 264.01–264.09

.1 Baptism

.12 Infant

.13 Adult

.2 Confirmation

.3 Eucharist, Holy Communion, Lord's Supper

For viaticum, see 265.7

.4 Holy Orders

.5 Matrimony

- .6 Penance**
- .61 Contrition**
 - Examination of conscience, prayers preparatory to confession
- .62 Confession**
- .63 Satisfaction**
 - Penitential prayers and acts for the remission of sin
- .64 Absolution**
- [.65] Censures**
 - Class in 262.935
- .66 Indulgences**
- .7 Viaticum and anointing of the sick (extreme unction)**
- .8 Rites in illness and death**
- .82 Religious ceremonies for the afflicted**
 - For extreme unction, see 265.7*
- .85 Religious ceremonies for the dying and dead**
 - Including commendation of a soul
- .9 Other acts**
 - Examples: love feasts (agapes), foot washing, laying on of hands, exorcism, ceremonies of joining church
- .92 Consecrations and dedications**

266**Missions**

- Class here missionary societies
- Use 266.001–266.008 for standard subdivisions
- For mission schools, see 377.6*
- .009 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class here joint and interdenominational missions
 - Class geographical treatment of missions of specific denominations and sects in 266.1–266.9
- .02 Kinds of missions**
- .022 Home**
- .023 Foreign**
- .025 Medical**
- .09 Missionary stories**

.1-.9 Of specific denominations and sects

Add to 266 the numbers following 28 in 281-289, e.g., Seventh-Day Adventist missions 266.673, Adventist missions by continent, country, locality 266.674-266.679

267 Associations for religious work

Class pious societies in 248.06

For missionary societies, see 266; religious congregations and orders, 255

SUMMARY

- 267.1 Of both men and women**
 - .2 Of men**
 - .3 Young Men's Christian Associations**
 - .4 Of women**
 - .5 Young Women's Christian Associations**
 - .6 Of young adults**
 - .7 Of boys**
 - .8 Of girls**

.1 Of both men and women**.13 Interdenominational and nondenominational**

For Salvation Army, see 267.15

.15 Salvation Army**.18 Of specific denominations and sects**

Add to 267.18 the numbers following 28 in 280.2-289.9, e.g., Baptist Adult Union 267.186132

.2 Of men**.23 Interdenominational and nondenominational**

Class Young Men's Christian Associations in 267.3

.24 Of specific denominations and sects

Add to 267.24 the numbers following 28 in 280.2-289.9, e.g., Baptist societies 267.246

.3 Young Men's Christian Associations**[.309] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 267.39

.31 Program and objectives**.32 Buildings and equipment**

As related to function

Class management in 658.2

.33 Organization and administration

- .34 **Staff**
 - Duties, qualifications, training
- .35 **Departments**
 - Examples: religious, educational, physical, boys'
- .36 **Work among special classes**
 - Examples: service to travelers, to foreign and racial groups, to migrants
- .39 **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .390 1–.390 4 **Historical periods**
 - Add to 267.390 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., Young Men's Christian Associations in the 1960s 267.39046
- .391–.399 **Geographic treatment**
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 267.39
- .4 **Of women**
- .43 **Interdenominational and nondenominational**
 - Class Young Women's Christian Associations in 267.5
- .44 **Of specific denominations and sects**
 - Add to 267.44 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Baptist societies 267.446
- .5 **Young Women's Christian Associations**
 - Add to 267.5 the numbers following 267.3 in 267.31–267.39, e.g., staff 267.54
- .6 **Of young adults**
- .61 **Interdenominational and nondenominational**
 - Class Young Men's Christian Associations in 267.3, Young Women's Christian Associations in 267.5
- .613 **Young People's Society of Christian Endeavor**
- .62 **Of specific denominations and sects**
 - Add to 267.62 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Baptist Young People's Union 267.626132
- .7 **Of boys**
 - Class Young Men's Christian Associations in 267.3
- .8 **Of girls**
 - Class Young Women's Christian Associations in 267.5

268 Religious training and instruction

In Sunday schools, church schools, vacation Bible schools, under other church auspices

Class religious instruction in nonsectarian schools in 377.1, religious training of child in home in 649.7

.1 Administration

As related to function

Class management in 658.91268

.2 Buildings and equipment

As related to function

Class management in 658.2

.3 Personnel

.4 Teaching departments and divisions

Organization, methods, textbooks, records, rules, services

For catechisms, see 238

.43 Specific departments and divisions

.432 Children's division (Ages 1–12)

Cradle roll, beginners', primary, junior departments

268.433–268.434 Higher levels

Class comprehensive works in 268.43, textbooks on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on missions 266

.433 Young people's division

Intermediate, senior departments

.434 Adult division

Men's, women's departments

.435 Home departments

.5 Records and rules

Including attendance, promotion, prizes, decorations, honor rolls

Class records and rules for specific departments and divisions in 268.43

.6 Methods of instruction and study

Class here curriculums, catechetics

Class methods for specific age groups in 268.43

.61 Value and use of textbooks

.62 Textbook method

For value and use of textbooks, see 268.61

- .63 Lecture and audiovisual methods
- .632 Lecture method
- .635 Audiovisual methods
- .67 Dramatic method
- .68 Laboratory methods

.7 Services

Including order of service, music, rallies, anniversaries, special days and festivals

Class services for specific departments and divisions in 268.43

.8 Specific denominations and sects

Add to 268.8 the numbers following 28 in 280.2–289.9, e.g., Presbyterian religious training and instruction 268.85

Class specific elements in training and instruction by specific denominations and sects in 268.1–268.7

269 Organized spiritual renewal

.2 Revivals and camp meetings

Class here comprehensive works on evangelism

Class evangelism as pastoral duty in 253.7

.6 Retreats

Add to 269.6 the numbers following 248.8 in 248.82–248.89, e.g., retreats for men 269.642

270 Historical and geographical treatment of organized Christian church (Church history)

Use 270.01–270.08 for standard subdivisions

Class historical and geographical treatment of specific denominations and sects in 280

.09 Historiography

270.1–270.8 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 270

- .1 Apostolic period to 325
- .2 Period of ecumenical councils, 325–787
- .3 Struggle between papacy and empire, 787–1054
- .38 Great schism, 1054
- .4 Period of papal supremacy, 1054–1200
- .5 Late Middle Ages to Renaissance, 1200–1517
- .6 Reformation and Counter-Reformation, 1517–1648

.7 Peace of Westphalia to French Revolution, 1648–1789

.8 Modern church, 1789–

.81 19th century, 1789–1900

.82 20th century, 1900–

Class here ecumenical movement

Add to 270.82 the numbers following 0904 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 09041–09047 from Table 1, e.g., church history in 1960–1970 270.826



271–273 Special topics of church history

Class comprehensive works in 270

271 Religious congregations and orders in church history

Use 271.001–271.009 for standard subdivisions

Add to 271 the numbers following 255 in 255.01–255.98, e.g., Franciscans in church history 271.3, then add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., Franciscans in United Kingdom 271.3042

272 Persecutions in general church history

.1 Of Apostolic Church by imperial Rome, 1st–4th centuries

.2 By Inquisition

.3 Of Waldenses and Albigenses, 11th–12th centuries

.4 Of Huguenots

.5 Of Molinists and Quietists

.6 Of Anglican reformers by Mary I

.7 Of Roman Church by Elizabeth I and Anglicans

.8 Of Quakers, Baptists, witches by Puritans and others

.9 Other persecutions

273 Doctrinal controversies and heresies in general church history

.1 1st–2d centuries

Class here Gnosticism

Class Gnosticism of 3d century in 273.2

.2 3d century

Including Manicheism

For Sabellianism, see 273.3

[.23] Manicheism

Number discontinued; class in 273.2

- [.25] **Parsee dualism**
 Provision discontinued because without meaning in Christianity
- .3 **Sabellianism**
- .4 **4th century**
 Including Arianism, Donatism
- .5 **5th century**
 Including Pelagianism
- .6 **6th–16th centuries**
 Including Albigensianism, Waldensianism
 Class here antinomianism
 Class later antinomianism in 273.7–273.9
- .7 **17th century**
 Including Molinism, Jansenism, Pietism
- .8 **18th century**
 Including agnosticism
- .9 **19th century and later**
 Including modernism, materialism

- **274–279 Treatment by continent, country, locality**
 Class comprehensive works in 270, geographical treatment of a specific
 subject with the subject, e.g., persecutions of Huguenots in France
 272.4
- 274 **Christian church in Europe**
 Add “Areas” notation 41–49 from Table 2 to base number 27, e.g.,
 Christian church in France 274.4
- 275 **Christian church in Asia**
 Add “Areas” notation 51–59 from Table 2 to base number 27, e.g.,
 Christian church in Japan 275.2
- 276 **Christian church in Africa**
 Add “Areas” notation 61–69 from Table 2 to base number 27, e.g.,
 Christian church in South Africa 276.8
- 277 **Christian church in North America**
 Add “Areas” notation 71–79 from Table 2 to base number 27, e.g.,
 Christian church in Pennsylvania 277.48
- 278 **Christian church in South America**
 Add “Areas” notation 81–89 from Table 2 to base number 27, e.g.,
 Christian church in Brazil 278.1

279 Christian church in other parts of world

Add "Areas" notation 93–98 from Table 2 to base number 27, e.g.,
Christian church in Australia 279.4

280 Denominations and sects of Christian church

Class here general historical and geographical treatment of, comprehensive works on specific denominations and sects and their individual local churches (It is optional to class here specific elements of specific denominations and sects; prefer 230–270. If option is chosen, add to the number for each specific denomination, sect, group as follows:

- 001–008 Standard subdivisions
- [009] Historical and geographical treatment
- Do not use; class in 07
- 02 Basic textual sources
- Class Bible in 220
- 03–06 Doctrinal, moral, social theology
- Add to 0 the numbers following 2 in 230–260,
 e.g., the denomination and international affairs
- 06187
- 07 Historical and geographical treatment
- Add to 07 the numbers following 27 in
 270.1–279, e.g., 20th century 07082)

- .01–.03 Standard subdivisions
- .04 General special
- .042 Relations between denominations
- .05–.09 Other standard subdivisions

280.2–280.4 Branches

Class comprehensive works in 280, specific denominations and sects in 281–289

- .2 Catholicism
- .4 Protestantism

281 Primitive and Oriental churches**281.1–281.4 Early church**

Class here collected writings of apostolic and church fathers, patristics
Class comprehensive works in 281.1, general history in 270.1–270.3, a specific work of an apostolic or church father with the subject, e.g., philosophy 189.2

- .1 Apostolic Church to time of great schism, 1054

For specific periods, see 281.2–281.4

► **281.2–281.4 Specific periods of Apostolic Church**

Class comprehensive works in 281.1

.2 **Primitive Apostolic Church to 100**

.3 **Ante-Nicene church, 100–325**

.4 **Post-Nicene church, 325–1054**

.5 **Oriental churches**

For specific Oriental churches, see 281.6–281.9

► **281.6–281.9 Specific Oriental churches**

Class comprehensive works in 281.5

.6 **Monophysite churches**

Including Eutychian Church

.62 **Armenian**

.63 **Jacobite**

.7 **Coptic and Abyssinian churches**

.8 **Nestorian churches**

.9 **Eastern Orthodox churches**

.909 **Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 281.94–281.99

.93 **Specific churches**

Examples: Greek, Russian, Syrian, Ukrainian

Class treatment of specific churches by continent, country, locality in 281.94–281.99

.94–.99 **Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 281.9

282 Roman Catholic Church

Class Oriental churches in communion with Rome in 281.5–281.8

.09 **Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 282.4–282.9

.4–.9 **Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 282

283 Anglican churches**.09 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 283.4–283.9

.3 Specific branches

Example: Reformed Episcopal Church and its affiliates

Class treatment of a specific branch by continent, country, locality in 283.4–283.9

.4–.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 283

284 Protestant denominations of Continental origin

For Baptist churches, see 286.1–286.5; Church of the New Jerusalem, 289.4; Mennonite churches, 289.7

SUMMARY**284.1 Lutheran churches****.2 Calvinistic and Reformed churches in Europe****.3 Hussite and Anabaptist churches****.4 Albigensian and Waldensian churches****.5 Huguenot churches****.6 Moravian churches****.8 Modern schisms in Catholic Church****.9 Arminian and Remonstrant churches****.1 Lutheran churches****.109 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 284.14–284.19

.13 Specific churches, branches, synods

Class treatment of a specific church, branch, synod by continent, country, locality in 284.14–284.19

.131 The American Lutheran Church**.131 2 The Evangelical Lutheran Church****.131 3 United Evangelical Lutheran Church****.131 4 The Lutheran Free Church****.132 The Evangelical Lutheran Synodical Conference of North America**

For Wisconsin Evangelical Lutheran Synod, see 284.134

.132 2 The Lutheran Church—Missouri Synod**.132 3 Synod of Evangelical Lutheran Churches (Slovak)****.133 The Lutheran Church in America****.133 2 American Evangelical Lutheran Church****.133 3 Augustana Evangelical Lutheran Church**

- .133 4 Finnish Evangelical Lutheran Church
- .133 5 The United Lutheran Church in America
- .134 Wisconsin Evangelical Lutheran Synod
- .14-.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 284.1
- .2 **Calvinistic and Reformed churches in Europe**
 - Class Presbyterian churches in 285.1-285.2
- .209 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 284.24-284.29
- .23 Specific churches and branches
 - Class treatment of specific churches and branches by continent, country, locality in 284.24-284.29
 - For Huguenot churches, see 284.5*
- .24-.29 Treatment by continent, country, locality
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 284.2
- .3 **Hussite and Anabaptist churches**
- .4 **Albigensian and Waldensian churches**
- .5 **Huguenot churches**
- .6 **Moravian churches**
 - For Hussite churches, see 284.3*
- .609 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 284.64-284.69
- .64-.69 Treatment by continent, country, locality
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 284.6
- .8 **Modern schisms in Catholic Church**
 - Including Old Catholic Church, Gallican schismatic churches, Constitutional Church, Little Church of France
- .84 Jansenists
- .9 **Arminian and Remonstrant churches**
- 285 **Presbyterian, American Reformed, Congregational churches**

SUMMARY

- 285.1 **Presbyterian churches of United States origin**
- .2 **Presbyterian churches of British Commonwealth origin**
- .7 **Reformed churches in America**
- .8 **Congregationalism**
- .9 **Puritanism**



285.1–285.2 Presbyterian churches

(If option under 280 is followed, use 285.001–285.008 for standard subdivisions, 285.02–285.07 for specific elements of Presbyterian churches)

Class comprehensive works in 285

- .1 Presbyterian churches of United States origin**
 - .109 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 285.14–285.19
 - .13 Specific denominations**
 - Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 285.14–285.19
 - .131 United Presbyterian Church in the United States of America**
 - .132 Presbyterian Church in the United States of America**
 - .133 Presbyterian Church in the United States**
 - .134 United Presbyterian Church of North America**
 - .135 Cumberland Presbyterian Church**
 - .136 Reformed Presbyterian churches**
 - .14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality**
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 285.1
- .2 Presbyterian churches of British Commonwealth origin**
 - .209 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 285.24–285.29
 - .24–.29 Treatment by continent, country, locality**
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 285.2
 - Class United Church of Canada in 287.92
- .7 Reformed churches in America**
 - .709 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 285.74–285.79
 - .73 Specific denominations**
 - Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 285.74–285.79
 - .731 Christian Reformed Church**
 - .732 Reformed Church in America (Dutch)**
 - .733 Reformed Church in the United States (German)**
 - .734 Evangelical and Reformed Church**

- .74-.79 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 285.7
- .8 **Congregationalism**
- .809 Historical and geographical treatment
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 285.84-285.89
- .83 Specific denominations
Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 285.84-285.89
- .832 Congregational Churches
Class United Church of Canada in 287.92
- .833 Congregational Christian Churches
For Christian Church, see 286.63
- .834 United Church of Christ
For Evangelical and Reformed Church, see 285.734
- .84-.89 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 285.8

.9 **Puritanism**

286 **Baptist, Disciples of Christ, Adventist churches**

► **286.1-286.5 Baptist churches**

(If option under 280 is followed, use 286.001-286.008 for standard subdivisions, 286.02-286.07 for specific elements of Baptist churches)

Class comprehensive works in 286

- .1 **Regular (Calvinistic) Baptists**
- .109 Historical and geographical treatment
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 286.14-286.19
- .13 Specific denominations
Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 286.14-286.19
- .131 American (Northern) Baptist Convention
- .132 Southern Baptist Convention
- .133 National (Negro) Baptist Convention, U.S.A.
- .14-.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 286.1
- .2 **Freewill Baptists church**
- .3 **Seventh-Day Baptists church**

.4 Old School Baptists churches

Examples: Primitive, Antimission, Hard-Shell Baptists churches

.5 Other Baptist churches and denominations

Examples: Dunkers, Church of the Brethren

.6 Disciples of Christ (Campbellites)**.609 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 286.64–286.69

.63 Specific denominations

Examples: Christian Church, Church of Christ

Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 286.64–286.69

.64–.69 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 286.6

.7 Adventist churches**.709 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 286.74–286.79

.73 Specific denominations

Examples: Seventh-Day Adventists church, Church of God (Adventists), Advent Christian Church

Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 286.74–286.79

.74–.79 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 286.7

287 Methodist churches**.1 Wesleyan Methodist Church****.109 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 287.14–287.19

.14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 287.1

.4 Primitive Methodist Church**.409 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 287.44–287.49

.44–.49 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 287.4

.6 United Methodist Church**.609 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 287.64–287.69

.63 Specific antecedent denominations

Class treatment of specific antecedent denominations by continent, country, locality in 287.64–287.69

For Methodist Protestant Church, see 287.7; Evangelical United Brethren Church, 289.9

.631 The Methodist Church (1939–1968)**.632 Methodist Episcopal Church****.633 Methodist Episcopal Church, South****.64–.69 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 287.6

.7 Methodist Protestant Church**.8 Negro Methodist churches in United States****.809 Historical treatment**

Class treatment by state or locality in 287.87

.83 Specific denominations

African Methodist Episcopal Church, African Methodist Episcopal Zion Church, Christian Methodist Episcopal Church

Class treatment of specific denominations by state or locality in 287.87

[.84–.86] Treatment in Europe, Asia, Africa

Provision discontinued because contradictory in context

.87 Treatment by state and locality

Add “Areas” notation 73–79 from Table 2 to base number 287.8

[.88–.89] Treatment in South America and other parts of world

Provision discontinued because contradictory in context

.9 Other Methodist churches**.92 United Church of Canada****.97 Other**

Examples: Free Methodist Church of North America, Congregational Methodist Church

288 Unitarianism

Class here Socinianism, Anti-Trinitarianism

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 288.4–288.9

.3 Specific denominations

Class treatment of specific denominations by continent, country, locality in 288.4–288.9

.32 Unitarian Universalist Association

For Universalist Church, see 289.1

.33 Unitarian Church**.4–.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality**

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 288

289 Other denominations and sects**SUMMARY****289.1 Universalist Church****.3 Latter-Day Saints****.4 Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)****.5 Church of Christ, Scientist (Christian Science)****.6 Society of Friends (Quakers)****.7 Mennonite churches****.8 Shakers****.9 Others****.1 Universalist Church****.109 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.14–289.19

.14–.19 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 289.1

.2 [Permanently unassigned]

If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific denomination or sect not separately provided for, class it here

.3 Latter-Day Saints**.309 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.34–289.39

.32 Sources (Sacred books)**.322 Book of Mormon****.33 Specific branches**

Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints (Mormons), Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-Day Saints

Class treatment of specific branches by continent, country, locality in 289.34–289.39

34–.39 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 289.3

- .4 Church of the New Jerusalem (Swedenborgianism)**
- .409 Historical and geographical treatment
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.44–289.49
- .44–.49 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 289.4
- .5 Church of Christ, Scientist (Christian Science)**
- .509 Historical and geographical treatment
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.54–289.59
- .52 Sources
Writings by Mary Baker Eddy
- [.522–.523] Specific sources
Numbers discontinued; class in 289.52
- .54–.59 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 289.5
- .6 Society of Friends (Quakers)**
- .609 Historical and geographical treatment
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.64–289.69
- .63 Specific branches
Orthodox and Hicksite
Class treatment of specific branches by continent, country, locality in 289.64–289.69
- .64–.69 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 289.6
- .7 Mennonite churches**
- .709 Historical and geographical treatment
Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 289.74–289.79
- .73 Specific branches
Examples: Amish, Church of God in Christ, Defenceless Mennonites, General Conference Mennonites, Hutterian Brethren
Class treatment of specific branches by continent, country, locality in 289.74–289.79
- .74–.79 Treatment by continent, country, locality
Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 289.7
- .8 Shakers**
United Society of True Believers in Christ’s Second Appearing

.9 Others

Examples: Assemblies of God, Churches of God, Church of the Nazarene, Evangelical United Brethren Church, Jehovah's Witnesses, New Thought, Pentecostal Assemblies, United Brethren in Christ, Unity School of Christianity

If preferred, class a specific denomination or sect requiring local emphasis in 289.2

For Salvation Army, see 267.15

290 Other religions and comparative religion**291 Comparative religion**

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific religion, it is optional to class it here, and to add to 291 the numbers following the base number for that religion in 292–299, e.g., Hinduism 291, Mahabharata 291.923; in that case class subdivisions of comparative religion in 290.1–290.9, standard subdivisions in 290.01–290.09)

[.012] Classification

Do not use; class in 291.14

.04 General special**.042 Primitive religions****.06 Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 291.65

SUMMARY**291.1 Relationships and attitudes of religions****.2 Doctrinal theologies (Dogmas)****.3 Forms of worship and other practices****.4 Personal religion****.5 Moral theology****.6 Leaders and organization****.7 Activities inspired by religious motives****.8 Sources****.9 Sects and reform movements****.1 Relationships and attitudes of religions****.13 Mythological foundations**

Constituent elements, growth, changes in form of religious myths

.14 Classification of religions

Examples: polytheistic, pantheistic, monotheistic, atheistic

.17 Social theologies

Attitudes of religions toward and influences on secular matters and other religions

.171 Role of organized religions in society

Examples: in education, in social amelioration

- .172 Interreligious relations
 - Including relations of religions with irreligion
- .175 Religions and intellectual development
 - Examples: attitudes toward science, toward growth of knowledge
- .177 Religions and civil government
 - Attitudes toward and influences on political activities and ideologies
- .177 2 Religious freedom
- .177 3 Theocracy
 - Supremacy of organized religions over civil governments
- .178 Religions and socioeconomic problems
 - For religions and civil government, see 291.177; role of organized religions in society, 291.171*
- .178 3 Social problems
- .178 32 Social disorganization
 - Add to 291.17832 the numbers following 362 in 362.1–362.5, e.g., attitude of religions toward alcoholism 291.17832292
 - For crime, see 291.17833*
- .178 33 Crime
 - Add to 291.17833 the numbers following 364 in 364.1–364.8, e.g., attitude of religions toward treason 291.17833131, toward capital punishment 291.1783366
- .178 34 Social structure
 - Add to 291.17834 the numbers following 301.4 in 301.41–301.45, e.g., attitude of religions toward homosexuality 291.17834157
- .178 5 The economic order
- .178 7 International affairs
- .178 73 War and peace
 - Examples: attitude of religions toward pacifism, conscientious objectors
- .2 Doctrinal theologies (Dogmas)
- .21 Objects of worship and veneration
 - Class here animism, spiritism
- .211 Gods, goddesses, other divinities and deities
- .212 Nature
 - Examples: sun, water, fire, trees, sex
- .213 Persons
 - Examples: ancestors, the dead, monarchs, heroes, saints
- .214 Personified abstractions

- .215 **Angels and other good spirits**
 - Servants and messengers of divinity
- .216 **Devils, demons, other evil spirits**
- .218 **Images**
- .22 **Man and his soul**
 - Including creation, sin, salvation, repentance, atonement
 - For eschatology, see 291.23*
- .23 **Eschatology**
 - Including death, resurrection, immortality, other worlds, heaven, purgatory, hell, rewards, punishments, reincarnation
- .3 **Forms of worship and other practices**
 - For personal religion, see 291.4*
- .32 **Divination**
 - Examples: omens, oracles, prophecies
- .33 **Witchcraft**
- .34 **Offerings, sacrifices, penances**
- .35 **Sacred places**
 - Examples: holy buildings, temples, shrines, pagodas, grottoes
- .36 **Sacred times**
 - Examples: liturgic year, religious calendar, religious festivals
- .37 **Symbolism, symbolic objects, emblems**
- .38 **Rites and ceremonies**
 - Conduct and texts
 - Examples: liturgy, public prayer, music, public feasts and fasts, pilgrimages, processions
 - Class musical scores and parts in 783
- .4 **Personal religion**
 - Religion as inner experience and guide to daily living
- .42 **Religious experience**
 - Examples: mysticism, conversion, asceticism, self-discipline
- .43 **Private worship, prayer, meditation, contemplation**
 - Procedures and texts
- .44 **Guides to conduct of life**
 - Application of religious virtues to everyday living

.5 Moral theology

Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties

For guides to conduct of life, see 291.44

.56 Specific moral issues

Add to 291.56 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g.,
morality of discriminatory practices 291.5675

.6 Leaders and organization

291.61–291.64 Leaders and their work

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., supernaturally endowed
founders of religions 291.63

Divinely inspired persons

Persons endowed with supernatural power

Priests, ministers, pastors

Interpreters of religion

Class comprehensive works in 291.6

.61 Priests, ministers, pastors**.62 Persons endowed with supernatural power**

Examples: thaumaturgists, sorcerers, magicians, exorcists

.63 Divinely inspired persons

Examples: messiahs, founders of religions, prophets

.64 Interpreters of religion

Examples: writers, reformers

For priests, ministers, pastors, see 291.61

.65 Organization and organizations

Examples: institutions, associations, orders, parties, congregations

Class laws and decisions in 291.84

.7 Activities inspired by religious motives

Examples: religious wars, missions, religious training and instruction

.8 Sources**.82 Sacred books and scriptures****.83 Oral traditions****.84 Laws and decisions****.9 Sects and reform movements**

Class a specific aspect of a sect or reform movement with the subject, e.g.,
moral theology of reform movements 291.5

292-299 Specific religions

Arrange as below, but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific religion, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Hinduism 2H0 (preceding 220), or 29H (preceding 291 or 292); add to the base number thus derived, e.g., to 2H or to 29H, the numbers following the base number for that religion in 292-299, e.g., Shivaism 2H5.13 or 29H.513

Class comprehensive works in 290

292 Classical (Greek and Roman) religion

Use 292.001-292.009 for standard subdivisions, but class religious organizations in 292.65

292.07-292.08 By specific culture

Class comprehensive works in 292, specific elements regardless of culture in 292.1-292.9

.07 Roman

.08 Greek

.1-.9 Specific elements

Add to 292 the numbers following 291 in 291.1-291.9, e.g., classical gods and goddesses 292.211

293 Germanic religion

.06 Organizations

Class religious organizations in 293.65

.1-.9 Specific elements

Add to 293 the numbers following 291 in 291.1-291.9, e.g., eschatology 293.23

294 Religions of Indic origin

SUMMARY

- 294.1 The Vedas
- .3 Buddhism
- .4 Jainism
- .5 Hinduism (Brahmanism)
- .6 Sikhism

.1 The Vedas

.12 Rigveda

.13 Samaveda

.14 Yajurveda

.15 Atharvaveda

-
- .3 Buddhism**
 - .306 Organizations**
 - Class religious organizations in 294.365
 - .33 Relationships and attitudes**
 - Add to 294.33 the numbers following 291.1 in 291.13–291.17, e.g., relations with other religions 294.3372
 - .34 Doctrines and practices**
 - Add to 294.34 the numbers following 291 in 291.2–291.4, e.g., guides to conduct of life 294.3444
 - .35 Moral theology**
 - Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties
 - Class guides to conduct of life in 294.3444
 - .356 Specific moral issues**
 - Add to 294.356 the numbers following 17 in 172–179, e.g., morality of war and peace 294.35624
 - .36 Leaders and organization**
 - .361–.364 Leaders and their work**
 - Add to 294.36 the numbers following 291.6 in 291.61–291.64, e.g., the Buddha 294.363
 - .365 Organization and organizations**
 - Including institutions, associations, parties, congregations
 - Class laws and decisions in 294.384
 - .365 7 Monasticism and monasteries**
 - .37 Activities inspired by religious motives**
 - Examples: missions, religious training and instruction
 - .38 Sources**
 - .382 Sacred books and scriptures (Tripitaka)**
 - .382 2 Vinayapitaka**
 - .382 3 Suttapitaka**
 - .382 4 Abhidhammapitaka**
 - .383 Oral traditions**
 - .384 Laws and decisions**
 - .39 Branches**
 - Class a specific aspect of a branch with the subject, e.g., guides to conduct of life in Mahayana 294.3444
 - .391 Hinayana (Southern, Theravada) Buddhism**

- .392 Mahayana (Northern) Buddhism
- .392 3 Lamaism
- .392 7 Zen
- .4 Jainism
- .406 Organizations
Class religious organizations in 294.465
- .41-.48 General principles
Add to 294.4 the numbers following 291 in 291.1-291.8, e.g.,
moral theology 294.45
- .49 Sects and reform movements
Class a specific aspect of a sect or reform movement with the subject,
e.g., moral theology of the Digambara 294.45
- .492 Svetambara
- .493 Digambara
- .5 Hinduism (Brahmanism)
- .506 Organizations
Class religious organizations in 294.565

SUMMARY

- 294.51-.53 Relationships, doctrines, worship
- .54 Personal religion and moral theology
- .55 Sects and reform movements
- .56-.57 Leaders, organization, activities
- .59 Sources
- .51-.53 Relationships, doctrines, worship
Add to 294.5 the numbers following 291 in 291.1-291.3, e.g.,
attitude toward science 294.5175
For personal religion, see 294.542-294.544
- .54 Personal religion and moral theology
- .542-.544 Personal religion
Hinduism as an inner experience and guide to daily living
Add to 294.54 the numbers following 291.4 in 291.42-291.44, e.g.,
Hindu asceticism 294.542
- .548 Moral theology
Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties, dharma
Class guides to conduct of life in 294.544
- .548 6 Specific moral issues
Add to 294.5486 the numbers following 17 in 172-179, e.g.,
morality of family relationships 294.54863

- .55 **Sects and reform movements**
 Class a specific aspect of a sect or reform movement with the subject,
 e.g., doctrines of Vishnuism 294.52
 For Buddhism, see 294.3; Jainism, 294.4
- .551 **Early**
- .551 2 Vishnuism
- .551 3 Shivaism
- .551 4 Shaktatism
- .551 5 Ganapataism
- .551 6 Shanmukaism
- .551 7 Sauratism
- [.553] **Sikhism**
 Class in 294.6
- .555 **Ramakrishna movement**
- .556 **Reformed Hinduism**
- .556 2 Brahma Samaj
- .556 3 Arya-Samaj
- .56-.57 **Leaders, organization, activities**
 Add to 294.5 the numbers following 291 in 291.6-291.7, e.g.,
 gurus 294.561
- .59 **Sources**
- .592 **Sacred books and scriptures**
 For the Vedas, see 294.1
- .592 1 Upanishads
- .592 2 Ramayana
- .592 3 Mahabharata
 For Bhagavad Gita, see 294.5924
- .592 4 Bhagavad Gita
- .592 5 Puranas
- .592 6 Dharmasastras
- .593 **Oral traditions**
- .594 **Laws and decisions**
- .6 **Sikhism [formerly 294.553]**
- .606 **Organizations**
 Class religious organizations in 294.665

.61–.69 Specific elements

Add to 294.6 the numbers following 291 in 291.1–291.9, e.g.,
virtues 294.65

295 Zoroastrianism (Mazdaism, Parseeism)**.06 Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 295.65

.1–.9 Specific elements

Add to 295 the numbers following 291 in 291.1–291.9, e.g.,
virtues 295.5

296 Judaism**.06 Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 296.67

SUMMARY**296.1 Sources**

.3 Doctrinal, moral, social theology

.4 Public services, rites, traditions

.6 Leaders, organization, activities

.7 Personal and family religion

.8 Sects and movements

.1 Sources

For Old Testament, see 221

.12 Talmudic literature

Use 296.12001–296.12009 for standard subdivisions



296.120 4–296.120 7 General considerations

Class comprehensive works in 296.12



296.120 4–296.120 5 Texts

Class here textual criticism

Class comprehensive works in 296.12, commentaries with text in 296.1207

.120 4 Hebrew and Aramaic texts

.120 5 Translations

Add “Languages” notation 1–9 from Table 6 to base number
296.1205

.120 6 Interpretation and higher criticism

Add to 296.1206 the numbers following 220.6 in 220.61–220.68,
e.g., hermeneutics 296.12063

For commentaries, see 296.1207

.120 7

Commentaries

Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order

Including commentaries with text



296.123–296.129 Specific works

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001–009

Standard subdivisions

04

Hebrew and Aramaic texts

Class here textual criticism

Class commentaries with text in 07

05

Translations

Class here textual criticism

Class commentaries with text in 07

06

Interpretation and higher criticism

Add to 06 the numbers following 220.6 in 220.61–

220.68, e.g., hermeneutics 063

For Commentaries, see 07

07

Commentaries

Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order

Including commentaries with text

Class comprehensive works in 296.12

.123

*Mishnah

.124

*Palestinian Talmud

.125

*Babylonian Talmud

.126

Tosefta and Baraita

.126 2

*Tosefta

.126 3

*Baraita

.129

Other Talmudic texts

.14

Midrash

Use 296.14001–296.14009 for standard subdivisions

.140 4–.140 7

General considerations

Add to 296.140 the numbers following 296.120 in

296.1204–296.1207, e.g., Hebrew and Aramaic texts 296.1404



296.141–296.142 Specific works

Add to each subdivision identified by * as instructed under 296.123–296.129, e.g., criticism and interpretation of Haggadah 296.14206

Class comprehensive works in 296.14

.141

*Halakah

.142

*Haggadah

* Add as instructed under 296.123–296.129

-
- .16 Cabala
 - .17 Early rabbinical writings to 1400
 - .172 Maimonides
 - .179 Responsa
 - .18 Laws and decisions
 - Class here later Halakah
 - .182 Joseph Caro
 - .19 Later Haggadah
 - .3 **Doctrinal, moral, social theology**
-
- 296.31-296.33 Doctrinal theology (Dogma)
- Class here Biblical theology
 - Class comprehensive works in 296.3
- .31 Spiritual beings
 - Attributes and functions
 - .311 God
 - .315 Angels
 - .316 Devils (Demons)
 - .32 Man and his soul
 - Including creation, sin, salvation, repentance, atonement
 - For eschatology, see 296.33*
 - .33 Eschatology
 - Including death, resurrection, immortality, messianism
 - .38 Moral and social theology
 - .385 Moral theology
 - Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties
 - Including Biblical precepts
 - For guides to conduct of life, see 296.74*
 - .387 Social theology
 - Attitude toward and influence on secular matters and other religions
 - Add to 296.387 the numbers following 291.17 in 291.171-291.178, e.g., attitude toward science 296.3875

- .4 Public services, rites, traditions**
- Conduct and texts
- Class here liturgy, hymns, prayer, music, responsive reading, symbolism, ceremonies, comprehensive works on public and private worship and prayer
- Class musical scores and parts in 783
- For personal and family religion, see 296.7*
- .41 Sabbath**
- .42 Sermons and homiletics**
- Class sermons on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., social theology 296.387
- .43 Festivals, holy days, fasts**
- For Sabbath, see 296.41*
- .431 Rosh Hashanah (New Year)**
- .432 Yom Kippur (Day of Atonement)**
- .433 Sukkoth (Feast of Tabernacles)**
- .435 Hanukkah (Feast of the Dedication)**
- .436 Purim (Feast of Lots)**
- .437 Pesach (Passover)**
- .438 Shabuoth (Feast of Weeks, Pentecost)**
- .439 Other**
- Examples: Tishah b'Ab, Lag b'Omer
- .44 Rites and customs for specific occasions**
- .442 Special rites for male Jew**
- .442 2 Berith milah (Circumcision)**
- .442 3 Pidyon haben (Redemption of first-born male)**
- .442 4 Bar mitzvah**
- .443 Bath mitzvah**
- .444 Marriage and divorce rites and traditions**
- .445 Burial and mourning rites and traditions**
- .6 Leaders, organization, activities**
- .61 Leaders**
- .65 Synagogues**

- .67 **Organization and organizations**
 - Examples: institutions, associations, polity
 - Class laws and decisions in 296.18
 - For synagogues, see 296.65*
- .673 Young Men's Hebrew Associations
- .675 Young Women's Hebrew Associations
- .68 **Religious education**
 - In Sunday schools, afternoon weekday schools, parochial schools
- .7 **Personal and family religion**
- .71 **Religious experience**
 - Examples: mysticism, conversion, asceticism, self-discipline
- .72 **Daily devotions and worship**
 - Examples: morning, afternoon, evening prayers; blessings at meals, meditation, contemplation
- .73 **Observance of dietary laws**
- .74 **Guides to conduct of life**
 - Application of religious virtues to everyday life
 - For observance of dietary laws, see 296.73*
- .8 **Sects and movements**
 - Class a specific aspect of a sect or movement with the subject, e.g., observance of dietary laws in Conservative Judaism 296.73
- .81 **Ancient**
 - Karaites, Pharisees, Sadducees, Essenes, Samaritans, Hellenistic movement, Qumran community
- .82 **Medieval**
 - Example: Sabbatianism
- .83 **Modern**
- .832 **Orthodox Judaism**
- .833 **Mystical Judaism**
 - Example: modern Hasidism
- .834 **Reform movements**
- .834 2 Conservative Judaism
- .834 4 Reconstructionist Judaism
- .834 6 Reform Judaism

297 Islam and religions derived from it**.06 Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 297.65

SUMMARY

- 297.1 Sources, relationships, attitudes of Islam
- .2 Islamic doctrinal theology (Aqaid and Kalam)
- .3 Islamic forms of worship and other practices
- .4 Personal religion in Islam
- .5 Islamic moral theology
- .6 Islamic leaders and organization
- .7 Islamic activities
- .8 Islamic sects and other religions

.1 Sources, relationships, attitudes of Islam**297.12–297.14 Sources**

Class comprehensive works in 297.1

.12 Sacred books and scriptures**.122 Koran****297.122 1–297.122 8 General principles**

Class comprehensive works in 297.122

.122 1 Origins and authenticity**297.122 4–297.122 5 Texts**

Class here textual criticism

Class comprehensive works in 297.122, commentaries with text in 297.1227

.122 4 Arabic texts**.122 5 Translations**

Add “Languages” notation 1–9 from Table 6 to base number 297.1225

.122 6 Interpretation and higher criticism

Add to 297.1226 the numbers following 220.6 in 220.61–220.68, e.g., historical criticism 297.12267

*For commentaries, see 297.1227***.122 7 Commentaries**

Criticism and interpretation arranged in textual order

Including commentaries with text

.122 8 Special subjects treated in Koran

- .122 9 Individual suras and groups of suras
Origins, authenticity, texts, criticism, interpretation,
commentaries, special subjects

.124 Hadith (Traditions)

Use 297.124001–297.124009 for standard subdivisions

.124 01–.124 08 General principles

Add to 297.1240 the numbers following 297.122 in 297.1221–
297.1228, e.g., origins 297.12401



297.124 1–297.124 8 Specific Hadith

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–09 General principles

Add to 0 the numbers following 297.122 in 297.1221–
297.1228, e.g., historical criticism 067

Class comprehensive works in 297.124

- .124 1 *Al-Bukhari
.124 2 *Abu Daud
.124 3 *Muslim
.124 4 *Al-Tirmidhi
.124 5 *Al-Nasai
.124 6 *Ibn Majah
.124 7 Other Sunni Hadith
.124 8 Hadith of other sects

.13 Oral traditions

Class Hadith in 297.124

.14 Laws and decisions (Tawhid)

Religious and ceremonial

Class Islamic law on other subjects in 340.59

.19 Relationships and attitudes

.197 Social theology

Attitude toward and influence on secular matters and other religions

Add to 297.197 the numbers following 291.17 in 291.171–291.178,
e.g., attitude toward Judaism 297.1972

* Add as instructed under 297.1241–297.1248

- .2 Islamic doctrinal theology (Aqaid and Kalam)**
For Muhammad the Prophet, see 297.63
- .204 Doctrines of specific sects**
 Add to 297.2042 the numbers following 297.8 in 297.81–297.85,
 e.g., doctrines of Kadarites 297.20435
- .21 Spiritual beings**
 Attributes and functions
- .211 God**
 Including revelation, miracles
- .215 Angels**
- .216 Devils (Demons)**
- .22 Man**
 Including creation, fall, sin, salvation, conscience, grace, faith,
 repentance, intercession, predestination and free will
For eschatology, see 297.23
- .23 Eschatology**
 Including death, intermediate state, resurrection, day of judgment,
 rewards, punishment, future life, eternity, heaven, hell
- .24 Other doctrines**
 Examples: prophets prior to Muhammad, caliphate, imamat
- .29 Apologetics and polemics**
 Exposition of Islamic doctrines refuting alleged errors in other systems
- .291 Against pagans and heathens**
- .292 Against Judaism**
- .293 Against Christianity**
- .294 Against Hinduism**
- .295 Against other religions**
- .297 Against rationalists, agnostics, atheists**
- .298 Against scientists and materialists**
- .3 Islamic forms of worship and other practices**
 Use 297.3001–297.3009 for standard subdivisions
For personal religion, see 297.4
- .301–.305 Specific sects**
 Add to 297.30 the numbers following 297.8 in 297.81–297.85, e.g.,
 Sunni rites 297.301

- .32 Divination
 - Examples: omens, oracles, prophecies
 - .33 Occultism
 - Including amulets, talismans, charms, witchcraft
 - .35 Sacred places
 - Mecca, Medina, Jerusalem
 - .36 Sacred times
 - Examples: Fridays, Ramadan
 - .38 Rites and ceremonies
 - Conduct and texts
 - Class here prayer, feasts and fasts, pilgrimages, comprehensive works on public and private worship and prayer
 - For personal religion, see 297.4*
 - .4 **Personal religion in Islam**
 - Religion as inner experience and guide to daily living
 - Class here Sufism
 - Add to 297.4 the numbers following 291.4 in 291.42–291.44, e.g., guides to conduct of life 297.44
 - .5 **Islamic moral theology**
 - Conscience, sins, vices, virtues, duties
 - For jihad (holy war), see 297.72; guides to conduct of life, 297.44*
 - .51 Profession of faith
 - .52 Prayer five times daily
 - .53 Fasting
 - .54 Almsgiving (Zakat)
 - .55 Pilgrimage to Mecca
 - .6 **Islamic leaders and organization**
-
- 297.61–297.64 Leaders and their work
- Class comprehensive works in 297.6
 - .61 Functionaries
 - Muezzins and imams
 - .63 Muhammad the Prophet
 - .64 Muhammad's family and companions

- .65 **Organization and organizations**
 Institutions, associations, orders, parties, congregations
 Including caliphate
 Class laws and decisions in 297.14

- .7 **Islamic activities**
 Including missions, religious training and instruction

- .72 Jihad (Holy war)

- .8 **Islamic sects and other religions**

► 297.81–297.85 Islamic sects and reform movements

Class comprehensive works in 297.8, a specific aspect of a sect or reform movement with the subject, e.g., doctrines of Kadarites 297.20435

For Sufism, see 297.4

- .81 Sunnites
 .811 Hanafites
 .812 Shafaites
 .813 Malikites
 .814 Hanbalites and Wahhabis
 .82 Shiites
 .821 Twelvers (Ithna Asharites)
 .822 Seveners (Ismailites)
 .824 Zaydites
 .83 Other
 For Druzes, see 297.85
 .835 Kadarites
 .837 Murjiites
 .85 Druzes

► 297.87–297.89 Religions derived from Islam

Class comprehensive works in 297.8

For Sikhism, see 294.6

- .87 Religion of Black Muslims
 .88 Babism
 .89 Bahai faith
 .890 6 Organizations
 Class religious organizations in 297.8965

.891–.899 **Specific elements**

Add to 297.89 the numbers following 291 in 291.1–291.9, e.g.,
duties 297.895

298 [Permanently unassigned]

If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific
religion, class it here

299 Other religions

If preferred, class a specific religion requiring local emphasis in 298

**.1–.4 Of Indo-European, Semitic, North African, North and West Asian,
Dravidian origin**

Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 91–94 from Table 5
to base number 29, e.g., Druidism 299.16, religion of Yezidis 299.159

.5 Of East and Southeast Asian origin

.51 **Chinese**

.512 **Confucianism**

.512 06 **Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 299.51265

.512 1–.512 9 **Specific elements**

Add to 299.512 the numbers following 291 in 291.1–291.9, e.g.,
virtues 299.5125

Class writings of Confucius in 181.09512

.514 **Taoism**

.514 06 **Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 299.51465

.514 1–.514 9 **Specific elements**

Add to 299.514 the numbers following 291 in 291.1–291.9, e.g.,
forms of worship 299.5143

.54 **Tibetan**

.56 **Japanese and Ryukyuan**

.561 **Shintoism**

.561 06 **Organizations**

Class religious organizations in 299.56165

.561 1–.561 9 **Specific elements**

Add to 299.561 the numbers following 291 in 291.1–291.9, e.g.,
shrines 299.56135

.57–.59 **Other**

Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 957–959 from Table 5
to base number 29, e.g., Caodaism 299.592

.6 Of Black African and Negro origin

For religion of Black Muslims, see 297.87

.7 Of North American Indian origin

.8 Of South American Indian origin

.9 Of Austronesian, Oceanic, miscellaneous origin

Miscellaneous origin: Basque, Elamite, Etruscan, Sumerian, Georgian,
Ingush, Chechen, Circassian

300

300 The social sciences

The sciences that deal with social activities and institutions

Class here behavioral sciences

Use 300.1–300.9 for standard subdivisions

Class military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of a war with history of the war; a specific behavioral science with the subject, e.g., psychology 150

301 Sociology

The science that deals comprehensively with social activities and institutions

Class customs and folklore in 390, social pathology in 362

.01–.03 Standard subdivisions

Class theories of social causation in 301.04

.04 Theories of social causation

.042 Biological determinism

Postulation of biological factors as determinants of differences between and within cultures

.042 2 Racial factors

Example: theories of De Gobineau

.042 3 Hereditary factors

Examples: theories of Galton, Hooton

.042 4 Natural selection (Social Darwinism)

Natural selection as a cause of social inequality

.043 Geographical determinism

Variations in climate and topography as social causes

Examples: theories of Ratzel, Le Play, Huntington

.044 Mechanistic theories (Social physics)

Application of laws of physics to questions of social causation

Example: theories of Pareto

.045 Sociological determinism

Causation derived from within rather than from outside the social system

Examples: theories of Durkheim, Weber

- .05-.08 Other standard subdivisions
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment of sociology as a discipline
Class historical and geographical treatment of social conditions in 309.1

SUMMARY

- 301.1 Social psychology
- .2 Culture and cultural processes
- .3 Ecology and community
- .4 Social structure
- .5 Institutions
- .6 Social conflict and accommodation
- .1 Social psychology
Study of collective responses and behavior of groups and other collectivities
Class social influence on individuals in 155.9

SUMMARY

- 301.11 Social interaction
- .14 Communication
- .15 Social control and socialization
- .16 Mass communication
- .18 Groups
- .11 Social interaction
- .112 Person to person
- .113 Person to group
Including isolation, individualism, role theory
- .114 Group to group
Including in and out groups
- .14 Communication
For mass communication, see 301.16
- .15 Social control and socialization
Former heading: Group behavior
-
- ▶ 301.152-301.155 Social control
Class comprehensive works in 301.15
- .152 Social control thru coercion
Pressure brought to bear apart from loyalties and conviction
Former heading: For stability
- [.152 2] Group loyalty and morale
Class in 301.157

- [.152 3] Control of public opinion
 - Class in 301.154
 - [.153] Social movements
 - Class in 301.242
 - .154 Social control thru indoctrination
 - Control [*formerly also* 301.1523] and development of public opinion
 - Former heading: In opinion formation
 - .154 2 Measurement of public opinion
 - .154 3 Opinions, attitudes, beliefs on specific topics
 - Add 001-999 to base number 301.1543, e.g., opinions on practical politics 301.1543329 [*formerly* 329.05]
 - .155 Social control thru authority and leadership
 - .155 2 Authority
 - The right to control pertaining to office
 - .155 3 Leadership
 - The capacity to control, direct, persuade stemming from personal qualities apart from office
 - .155 4 Group decision-making processes
 - .157 Socialization
 - Securing acceptance of elements of culture; maintenance of group loyalty and morale [*formerly* 301.1522]
 - .157 2 Of the young
 - .157 3 Of adults
 - .16 Mass communication
 - .161 Mass media
 - Newspapers, periodicals, books, films, radio, television
 - .162 Audience
 - Exposure and characteristics
 - .18 Groups
 - For the community, see* 301.34
 - .180 28 Sociometry
 - Measurement of patterns of individual relationships within groups
-
- 301.181-301.182 Unstable groups
 - Class comprehensive works in 301.18
- ▶
- ↙
- .181 Audiences and publics
 - Former heading: The public at large

- .182 **Crowds and mobs**
- .183 **Secondary groups**
 Former heading: Associations and meetings
- .183 1 **Voluntary associations**
 Organizations to which people belong on a part-time basis and
 without remuneration
- .183 2 **Bureaucracies**
 Formal organizations [*formerly* 301.405]: formally organized,
 hierarchical, large-scale, relatively permanent groups formed
 for purpose of achieving an explicit goal
- .185 **Small (Primary) groups [*formerly also* 301.402]**
 Groups small enough that all members can engage in face-to-face
 relationships at one time
 Examples: play groups, cliques, gangs, committees
- [.186] **Pressure groups**
 Class in 322.43
- .2 **Culture and cultural processes**
 Class here primitive races [*formerly* 572.7], cultural [*formerly* 390] and
 social anthropology, comprehensive works on anthropology
 Class social conflict [*formerly* 301.2] in 301.63
 Class criminal anthropology in 364.2, physical anthropology in 573'
- .209 **Historical and geographical treatment of general, cultural,
 social anthropology as disciplines**
 Class historical and geographical treatment of culture in 900, of
 cultural processes in 301.29
- .21 **Elements of culture**
 Beliefs, cognitive elements, technology, folkways, mores, language
- .22 **Subcultures**
 Groups that share the total culture, but also have patterns of behavior
 peculiar to themselves
- .24 **Social change**
 Former heading: Means and kinds
 Including progress, regress
 For conflict, see 301.63; *planning, 309.2*
- **301.241–301.243 Causes of social change**
 Class comprehensive works in 301.24
- .241 **Social change induced by contact between cultures
 (acculturation)**
 Including social effects of international assistance

- .242 Social innovation and reform
 - Social movements [*formerly* 301.153]
- .243 Social change induced by science and technology
 - Including invention, automation
- [.245--.246] Progress and regress
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 301.24

301.247-301.248 Kinds of social change

Class comprehensive works in 301.24

- .247 Changes in beliefs, values, norms
- .248 Changes in institutions, techniques, organizational patterns
- .29 Historical and geographical treatment of cultural processes

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 301.29, e.g., cultural processes of Occident 301.291821; then, for cultural processes and general relations between two countries, regions, areas, places, add 0 and again add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., cultural processes and general relations between Occident and Orient 301.29182105

Give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of notations

If preferred, give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class cultural processes and general relations between United States and Islamic world in 301.297301767

Class cultural situation in 901.9

.3 Ecology and community

.31 Ecology

Influence and effect of environment on human groups

Class here interdisciplinary works on pollution

Class a specific aspect of pollution with the subject, e.g., public health measures 614.71-614.77

For demography, see 301.32

.32 Demography

Density, increase, decrease, movement, characteristics of populations

.320 212 Tables, formulas, specifications, statistics

Class statistical tables in 312

.320 9 Historical and geographical treatment of demography as a discipline

Class historical and geographical treatment of populations in 301.329

-
- .321 Fertility
 - Including birth control
 - .322 Mortality
 - .323 Characteristics (Composition) of populations
 - 301.324–301.328 Migration (Population movements)
 - Class comprehensive works in 301.32
 - .324 Immigration
 - Movement of population into a specific area or country without regard to place of origin
 - .325 Emigration
 - Movement of population out of a specific area or country without regard to destination
 - .326 Migration within a country
 - For migration to cities, see 301.361*
 - .328 Migration from one country to another
 - Movement of population out of a specific area or country into another specific area or country
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 301.328 for place of origin, e.g., migrations from Islamic countries 301.3281767; then add 0 and again add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 for place of entry, e.g., migration from Islamic countries to United States 301.3281767073
 - .329 Historical and geographical treatment of populations
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 301.329
 - .34 The community
 - For specific kinds of communities, see 301.35–301.36; local planning, 309.26*
 - 301.35–301.36 Specific kinds of communities
 - Class comprehensive works in 301.34
 - .35 Rural communities
 - Including plantations
 - Class here agricultural sociology [*formerly also 630.11*]
 - .351 Open-country communities
 - Rural areas comprising separate residential farmsteads and market town
 - .352 Agricultural villages
 - Residential villages with outlying nonresidential farms

- .36 Urban communities
- .361 Location, structure, expansion, patterns of growth
 - Including migration to cities
- .362 Suburbs
- .363 Cities
- .364 Metropolitan areas (Conurbations)
 - Urban areas comprising two or more governmental jurisdictions
- [.37] States, provinces, nations
 - Class in 309.1
- .4 **Social structure**
 - Former heading: Institutions and groups
 - Use 301.4001–301.4009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class industrial, religious, racial, class conflict in 301.634–301.637
- [.402] Small (Primary) groups
 - Class in 301.185
- [.403] Large groups
 - Provision discontinued because terminology not used
- [.404] Informal organizations
 - Provision discontinued because terminology not used
- [.405] Formal organizations
 - Class in 301.1832
- [.406] Institutionalism
 - Provision discontinued because without meaning

SUMMARY

- 301.41 The sexes and their relations
 - .42 Marriage and family
 - .43 Specific age levels
 - .44 Social classes
 - .45 Nondominant aggregates
- .41 The sexes and their relations
 - .411 Men
 - Social role and function
 - .412 Women
 - Social role and function
 - [.412 1–.412 9] Specific aspects of woman's role and function
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 301.412

[.413] Celibacy

Class in 301.417

.414 Courtship

.414 2 Dating

.414 3 Choice of mate

.415 Extramarital and abnormal sexual relations

► 301.415 2–301.415 4 Extramarital relations

Class comprehensive works in 301.415

.415 2 Premarital relations

Including illegitimacy

.415 3 Adultery

.415 4 Prostitution

► 301.415 7–301.415 8 Abnormal sexual relations

Class comprehensive works in 301.415

.415 7 Homosexuality

.415 8 Other abnormal sexual relations

Incest, bestiality, sadism, masochism

.417 Sexual behavior, habits, moral conditions

Class here celibacy [*formerly* 301.413]

Class extramarital and abnormal sexual relations in 301.415, marital sexual relations in 301.418

[.417 09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 301.4179 .

.417 4 Of specific classes and aggregates

Add to 301.4174 the numbers following 301.4 in 301.44–301.45, e.g., sex habits of executives 301.4174447

.417 5–.417 6 Of specific ages, sexes, relationships

Add to 301.417 the numbers following 155 in 155.5–155.6, e.g., sexual behavior of single women 301.4176423

.417 9 Historical and geographical treatment

.417 901–.407 904 Historical periods

Add to 301.41790 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., sexual behavior in 20th century 301.417904

.417 91–.417 99 Geographical treatment

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 301.4179

- .418 Marital sexual relations [*formerly* 301.426]
 - Class here sex instruction, guides, manuals
 - Add "Persons" notation 03–99 from Table 7 to base number 301.418
- .42 Marriage and family
- .421 Structure and functions of family
 - Class here kinship [*formerly* 392.32], totemism [*formerly* 392.33]
- ▶ 301.421 2–301.421 3 Types of family
 - Class comprehensive works in 301.421
- .421 2 Nuclear family
 - Parents and children
- .421 3 Consanguine (Extended) family
 - Several generations and collateral relatives
- .422 Types of marriage
 - Class interracial, intercultural, interreligious marriages [*all formerly* 301.422] in 301.429
- .422 2 Monogamy
- .422 3 Polygamy (Plural marriage)
 - Polygyny and polyandry
- .423 The family and social change
- .426 Family planning
 - Former heading: Husband-wife relationship
 - Class marital sexual relations in 301.418, general husband-wife relationships in 301.427 [*both formerly* 301.426]
- .427 Intrafamily relationships
 - Class here remarriage [*formerly* 301.4285], general husband-wife relationships [*formerly* 301.426], parent-children relationships
 - Class family planning in 301.426, marriage counseling in 362.82, child care and training in 649.1
 - For marital sexual relations, see* 301.418
- [.427 024] Works for specific types of users
 - Do not use; class in 301.4272
- .427 2 Guides, manuals, advice for specific types of users
 - Add "Persons" notation 03–99 from Table 7 to base number 301.4272
- .428 Family dissolution
 - Including separation and desertion
- .428 4 Divorce

- [.428 5] Remarriage
 - Class in 301.427
- .428 6 Death
- .429 Interracial, intercultural, interreligious marriages
 - [all formerly 301.422]
- .43 Specific age levels
- .431 Minors
- .431 4 Children
 - Thru age eleven
- .431 5 Adolescents
 - Ages twelve to twenty
- .434 Mature and middle-aged persons
- .435 Aged persons
 - Including retirement

301.44–301.45 Social stratification

Class here prejudice, discrimination

Class comprehensive works in 301.4

- .44 Social classes
 - For class conflict, see 301.637
- .440 4 General special
- .440 44 Social mobility
- .441 Classes determined by economic status and ownership of property
 - Poor [formerly 301.4523], middle classes, gentry, wealthy
- .442 Classes determined by family and by kinship ties
 - Example: aristocracies
- .443 Classes determined by location and duration of residence
- .444 Classes determined by occupation
- .444 2 Laboring classes
 - Skilled and unskilled manual workers in manufacturing, extractive, construction industries
 - For agricultural classes, see 301.4443
- .444 3 Agricultural classes
 - Examples: peasants, sharecroppers

- .444 4 Service classes
 Workers in occupations performing services rather than
 producing and distributing goods
 For professional classes, see 301.4446
- .444 5 White-collar classes
 Employed classes engaged in clerical and kindred occupations
 Example: salesmen
- .444 6 Professional classes
 Persons engaged in service occupations demanding academic
 education beyond high school level as prerequisite for entrance
- .444 7 Managerial (Executive) and entrepreneurial classes
- .445 Classes determined by amount of education
 Examples: intelligentsia, intellectuals
- [.446] Social stratification by religion
 Class in 301.452
- [.447] Social stratification by race
 Class in 301.451
- [.448] Social stratification by language
 Class in 301.451
- .449 Other social classes
- .449 2 Classes determined by possession of authority and power
 Elites, governing and official classes, royalty
- .449 3 Classes determined by legal status
 Examples: slaves, serfs [*both formerly 301.4522*]
- .449 4 Alienated and excluded classes
 Examples: hobos, tramps, untouchables, hippies
- .45 Nondominant aggregates
 Class here aggregates distinctive because of social practices
- .451 Aggregates of specific national [*formerly 301.453*],
 racial, ethnic origins
 Class here social stratification by race [*formerly 301.447*], by
 language [*formerly 301.448*]
- .451 04 General special
- .451 042 Racial, ethnic, national differences, attitudes, behavior
- .451 1 Aggregates of general, mixt, North American origins
 Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01-13 from Table
 5 to base number 301.4511, e.g., Canadians 301.451111, Mongoloids
 301.4511035; then, unless it is redundant, add 0 and to the result
 add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., Canadians in United
 States 301.451111073, Mongoloids in Europe 301.451103504

- .451 2-.451 9 **Aggregates of other origins**
 Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 2-9 from Table 5 to base number 301.451, e.g., United States Negroes 301.45196073, South African black natives 301.451968; then, unless it is redundant, add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., United States Negroes in England 301.45196073042, in Alabama 301.451960730761, South African blacks in Transvaal 301.4519680682
- .452 **Adherents to religious organizations**
 Class here social stratification by religion [*formerly* 301.446]
- [.452 1] **Aggregates distinctive because of cultural practices**
 Number discontinued; class in 301.45
- [.452 2] **Slaves and serfs**
 Class in 301.4493
- [.452 3] **Poor**
 Class in 301.441
- .452 8 **Adherents to Christian religious organizations**
 Add to 301.4528 the numbers following 2 in "Persons" notation 21-28 from Table 7, e.g., Baptists 301.452861; then add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., Baptists in Russia 301.452861047
- .452 9 **Adherents to other religious organizations**
 Add "Persons" notation 29 from Table 7 to base number 301.45, e.g., Muslims 301.452971; then add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., Muslims in India 301.452971054
- [.453] **Aggregates of specific national origin**
 Class in 301.451
- [.47] **Illnesses and disability**
 Class in 362.1-362.4
- .5 Institutions**
 Complex normative patterns governing behavior in certain fundamental and recurring situations, and the organized aggregates to which the norms are applied
 Former heading: Sociology of everyday activities and preoccupations
- .51 **Economic institutions**
For specific economic activities, see 301.52-301.55
-
- ▶ 301.52-301.55 **Specific economic activities**
 Class comprehensive works in 301.51
- .52 **Economic activities concerned with securing food**
- .53 **Economic activities concerned with securing clothing**

- .22 International planning and assistance
- .222 International planning
- .223 International assistance
 - For social effects of international assistance, see 301.241*
 - .223 2 By international organizations and groups of countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 for recipient place to base number 309.2232
 - .223 3 By one nation to another or others
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 309.2233 for donor country, e.g., United States foreign assistance 309.223373; then add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 for recipient place, e.g., United States assistance to Arab countries 309.2233730174927
 - For voluntary service groups, see 309.2235*
 - .223 5 Voluntary service groups
 - Example: United States Peace Corps
 - .223 509 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by country of origin in 309.22354-309.22359
 - .223 54-.223 59 By country of origin
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 309.2235
- .23 National planning
- .25 State, provincial, county planning
- .26 Local planning
- .262 Cities and metropolitan areas
- .263 Rural areas

310-390 Specific social sciences

The sciences that deal with specific social activities and institutions

Class comprehensive works in 300

310 Statistics

Collections of quantitative data

Class statistics of a specific subject other than population with the subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0212 from Table 1, e.g., statistics on banking 332.10212

- .6 Statistical organizations [*formerly 311.3-311.4*]
- .9 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class general statistics by continent, country, locality in modern world in 314-319

[311] Statistical method and organizations

Class comprehensive works on statistical method in 001.422, statistical mathematics in 519.5 [*both formerly* 311.2]; statistical organizations [*formerly* 311.3–311.4] in 310.6

312 Statistics of populations (Demographic statistics)

SUMMARY

- 312.1 On births (Fertility)
- .2 On deaths (Mortality)
- .3 On illness (Morbidity)
- .4 On accidents and crimes of violence
- .5 On marriage and divorce
- .6 On physical features and measurements (Somatology)
- .8 On density, increase, decrease, movement of populations
- .9 On other specific characteristics of populations

312.1–312.4 Vital statistics *2000*

Class comprehensive works in 312

- .1 On births (Fertility)
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 312.1
- .2 On deaths (Mortality)
- .22 Maternal deaths in childbirth
- .23 Infant deaths
 - Statistics of deaths of persons under one year of age
 - Class here neonatal deaths
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 312.23
 - Class stillbirths in 312.24
- .24 Stillbirths
 - Including perinatal deaths
- .26 Deaths caused by disease
 - Class infant deaths caused by disease in 312.23
- .260 4 Special diseases
 - Dental diseases; diseases of eye and ear; gynecological diseases; wounds and injuries
 - Add to 312.2604 the numbers following 61 in 617–618, e.g., statistics on deaths due to gynecological diseases 312.260481
 - For maternal deaths in childbirth, see 312.22*
- .261–.269 Specific diseases
 - Add to 312.26 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.9, e.g., statistics on deaths due to pulmonary tuberculosis 312.26246
 - Class diseases not provided for here in 312.2604

- .27 Deaths caused by accidents and crimes of violence**
 Class infant deaths caused by accidents and crimes of violence in 312.23

312.272–312.275 By accidents

Class comprehensive works in 312.27

- .272 Accidents in the home**
.273 Industrial accidents
.274 Transportation accidents
.275 Recreation accidents
.276 Crimes of violence
 Deaths by homicide and suicide

.3 On illness (Morbidity)

- .304 Special illnesses**
 Dental diseases; diseases of eye and ear; gynecological and obstetrical diseases; wounds and injuries
 Add to 312.304 the numbers following 61 in 617–618, e.g., statistics on impaired hearing 312.30478

.31–.39 Specific illnesses

Add to 312.3 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.9, e.g., statistics on measles 312.3915

Class illnesses not provided for here in 312.304

.4 On accidents and crimes of violence

Add to 312.4 the numbers following 312.27 in 312.272–312.276, e.g., statistics on incidence of traffic accidents 312.44

.5 On marriage and divorce

.6 On physical features and measurements (Somatology)

.8 On density, increase, decrease, movement of populations

.9 On other specific characteristics of populations

Examples: sex, language, religion, education

.92 Age

.93 Racial, ethnic, national origin

.94 Occupation

313 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

► **314–319 General statistics by continent, country, locality in modern world**

Class comprehensive works In 310

314 General statistics of Europe

Add "Areas" notation 41–49 from Table 2 to base number 31, e.g., general statistics of England 314.2

315 General statistics of Asia

Add "Areas" notation 51–59 from Table 2 to base number 31, e.g., general statistics of Japan 315.2

316 General statistics of Africa

Add "Areas" notation 61–69 from Table 2 to base number 31, e.g., general statistics of Tanzania 316.78

317 General statistics of North America

Add "Areas" notation 71–79 from Table 2 to base number 31, e.g., general statistics of British Columbia 317.11

318 General statistics of South America

Add "Areas" notation 81–89 from Table 2 to base number 31, e.g., general statistics of Buenos Aires 318.21

319 General statistics of other parts of world

Add "Areas" notation 93–98 from Table 2 to base number 31, e.g., general statistics of Australia 319.4

320 Political science

Study of the formalized institutions and processes by which society as a whole is governed

For public administration, see 350; law, 340

.01 **Philosophy and theory**

Class political theories and ideologies in 320.5

.02–.08 **Other standard subdivisions**

.09 **Historical and geographical treatment of political science as a discipline**

Class historical and geographical treatment of political situation and conditions in 320.9

SUMMARY

- 320.1 The state
 - .2 Role of government
 - .3 Comparative government
 - .4 Descriptive government (Civics)
 - .5 Political theories and ideologies
 - .9 Political situation and conditions
- .1 The state
 - Class specific forms of states in 321
 - .101 Philosophy and theory
 - Class theories of origin in 320.11
 - .11 Theories of origin
 - .12 Territory
 - Former heading: Geopolitics
 - Class geopolitics in international relations in 327.1011
 - [.13] National self-determination
 - Class in 320.157
 - .15 Elements
 - Former heading: Nature, entity, concept of the state
 - For territory, see 320.12; government, 320.2–320.4*
 - [.155] Emerging states
 - Class in 320.17
 - .156 Population
 - Class relations of state to population in 322–324
 - .157 Sovereignty
 - Including national self-determination [*formerly also 320.13*]
 - [.158] Nationalism
 - Class in 320.54
 - [.159] “Pan” movements
 - Class in 320.54
 - .17 Emerging states [*formerly 320.155*]
 - [.18] Symbolism and emblems
 - Provision discontinued because without meaning in political science



320.2–320.4 Government

Class comprehensive works in 320.2

.2 Role of government

Class here comprehensive works on government

For comparative government, see 320.3; descriptive government, 320.4

.3 Comparative government

Structure, functions, activities

.4 Descriptive government (Civics)

Structure, functions, activities

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 320.4

Class legislative branch in 328, executive branch in 350, judicial branch in 347

For comparative government, see 320.3

.5 Political theories and ideologies

Class theories and ideologies on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., theories of the state 320.1

.51 Liberalism

.512 Traditional

Theories and ideologies stressing rationalism, individualism, limited government

.513 Modern

Theories and ideologies stressing responsibility of state for welfare of its citizens

.52 Conservatism

Theories and ideologies stressing limits of human reason and virtue, value of tradition, caution in effecting social change

.53 Collectivism

.531 Socialism

.531 2 Non- and quasi-Marxian

Examples: Christian socialism, Fabian socialism

.531 5 Marxian (Social democracy, Democratic socialism)

.532 Communism

Including political aims [*formerly also 335.413*]

Class here comprehensive works on Marxian systems of collectivism

For Marxian socialism, see 320.5315

.532 2 Marxism-Leninism

- .532 3 Variant forms
 Example: Titoism
- .533 Fascism
 Including national socialism
- .54 Nationalism [*formerly* 320.158]
 Example: "pan" movements [*formerly* 320.159], e.g., Pan-Slavism
- .55 Religiously oriented theories and ideologies
 Examples: theocracy, Gandhism
 For Christian socialism, see 320.5312

- .56 Racism
 Political theories and ideologies based on racial discrimination
 Example: apartheid

- .57 Anarchism

.9 Political situation and conditions

- .901-.904 Historical periods
 Add to 320.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions"
 notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., political conditions in 13th
 century 320.9022

- .91-.99 Geographical treatment
 Add "Arcas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 320.9, e.g.,
 political situation and conditions in France 320.944; then to the result
 add historical period numbers from appropriate subdivisions of 930-
 990, e.g., political situation and conditions in France under Louis XIV
 320.944033. For Ireland (320.9415) and United States insert 0 before
 period number, e.g., political situation in United States during Recon-
 struction period 320.97308

321 Forms of states

Use 321.001-321.009 for standard subdivisions

- 321.01-321.06 Forms determined by geographical considerations
 Class comprehensive works in 321

- 321.01-321.02 Forms determined by geographical distribution
 of power

Class comprehensive works in 321, forms of state determined by extent
 of territory governed as well as by geographical distribution of power
 in 321.03-321.06

- .01 Unitary states

States in which full control is vested in central governments

-
- .02 **Federal states**
 - States in which control is divided between central and regional governments
 - Including confederations
 - 321.03–321.06 **Forms determined by extent of territory governed**
 - Class comprehensive works in 321
 - .03 **Empires**
 - .04 **Supranational states**
 - Including world state
 - Class empires in 321.03
 - .05 **National states**
 - .06 **City states**
 - 321.07–321.08 **Special forms**
 - Class comprehensive works in 321
 - .07 **Ideal states**
 - Anarchy, utopias
 - .08 **States with special limitations**
 - Examples: semisovereign and dependent states
 - .09 **Change of form of state**
 - 321.1–321.9 **Forms determined by extent of popular participation**
 - Class comprehensive works in 321
 - .1 **Primitive and despotic states**
 - .12 **Primitive**
 - Tribal and family states
 - Examples: patriarchal and matriarchal forms
 - .14 **Despotic**
 - Before 1500 A.D.
 - .3 **Feudal system**
 - .4 **Pure democracies**
 - .5 **Elitist systems**
 - Autocracies, theocracies, oligarchies, plutocracies
 - Former heading: States controlled by select few

- .6 Absolute monarchies**
- [.7] Modern constitutionalism**
 - Class in 321.8
- .8 Democratic forms (Modern constitutionalism [*formerly also* 321.7])**
 - For pure democracies, see 321.4*
- .804 Kinds of executives**
- .804 2 Presidential systems**
 - Governmental systems in which separately elected executive is not responsible to legislature
- .804 3 Cabinet systems**
 - Governmental systems in which chief executive and cabinet are members of and responsible to legislature
- .86 Republics**
- .87 Limited monarchies**
- .9 Authoritarian forms**
 - For despotic states, see 321.14, elitist systems, 321.5; absolute monarchies, 321.6*
- .92 Communist states**
- .94 Fascist states**



322–324 Internal relations of state

Class comprehensive works in 323

- 322 Relation of state to social groups and their members**
- .1 Religious bodies (State and church) [*formerly also* 323.111]**
- .2 Labor movements and groups**
- .3 Business and industry**
- .4 Political action groups**
 - Former heading: Protest and pressure groups
 - For relation of state to political parties, see 329.06*
- .42 Revolutionary and subversive groups [*formerly* 323.2]**
 - Groups desiring to overthrow society or government

- .43 **Pressure groups** [*formerly* 301.186]
 Groups striving for immediate and relatively limited goals
 Class role of pressure groups in practical politics in 329.03, legislative
 lobbying in 328.38
- .44 **Protest and reform movements**
 Groups desiring alteration of some substantial social function
- .5 **Military organizations (Armed forces)**
- 323 Relation of state to its residents**
 Class here comprehensive works on internal relations of state
 *For relation of state to social groups and their members, see 322; electoral
 process, 324*

SUMMARY

- 323.1 **Nondominant aggregates**
 .3 **Social classes**
 .4 **Civil rights**
 .5 **Political rights**
 .6 **Citizenship and related topics**

► 323.1–323.3 Relation of state to social aggregates

Class comprehensive works in 323.1

- .1 **Nondominant aggregates**
 Class here comprehensive works on relation of state to social aggregates
 For social classes, see 323.3
- .109 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 323.13–323.19
- .11 **National** [*formerly* 323.12], racial, ethnic
- [.111] **Socioeconomic and religious**
 Class socioeconomic aggregates in 323.3, religious bodies in 322.1
- .112–.119 **Specific aggregates**
 Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 2–9 from Table 5
 to base number 323.11, e.g., relation of state to Jews 323.11924, to
 United States Negroes 323.1196073; then, unless it is redundant, add
 0 and to the result add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., rela-
 tion of state to Jews in Germany 323.11924043, to United States Ne-
 groes in England 323.1196073042, in southern states 323.1196073075
- [.12] **National**
 Class in 323.11

- .13-.19 **Treatment by continent, country, locality**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 323.1
 Class specific racial, ethnic, national aggregates in specific continents,
 countries, localities in 323.112-323.119

[.2] **Revolutionary and subversive groups**

Class in 322.42

.3 **Social classes**

Including socioeconomic aggregates [*formerly also* 323.111]

[.35] **Communities**

Provision discontinued because without meaning in political science

► **323.4-323.6 Relation of state to individuals**

Class comprehensive works in 323

.4 **Civil rights**

.401 **Philosophy and theory**

Including natural rights

.42 **Equal protection of the laws**

.422 **Procedural rights**

Examples: habeas corpus, trial by jury

.423 **Rights of nondominant aggregates**

.43 **Personal security (Life)**

Including right to keep and bear arms

.44 **Freedom of action (Liberty)**

For rights of assembly and association, see 323.47; right of petition, 323.48

.442 **Freedom of conscience and religion**

.443 **Freedom of speech**

.445 **Freedom of publication**

Including freedom of press

.46 **Economic rights (Property)**

Right to own, acquire, use, transfer property; freedom of contract; equal access to employment opportunities

.47 **Rights of assembly and association**

.48 **Right of petition**

Class here comprehensive works on rights of petition and assembly

For right of assembly, see 323.47

.49 **Limitation and suspension of individual rights and guarantees**

-
- .5 **Political rights**
 - Right to be represented, right to hold office
 - Class electoral process in 324
 - .6 **Citizenship and related topics**
 - .62 Acquisition of citizenship
 - For acquisition of citizenship by marriage, see 323.636*
 - .622 By birth
 - .623 By naturalization
 - .629 In other ways
 - Long residence, land purchase, adoption
 - .63 Relation of state to specific classes of residents
-
- 323.631–323.634 Residents of differing nationality
 - Class comprehensive works in 323.63
 - .631 Aliens
 - .632 Stateless persons
 - .634 Persons with dual nationality
 - .636 Married people of differing nationality
 - Including acquisition of citizenship by marriage
 - .64 Expatriation and repatriation
 - .65 Duties and obligations of citizens
 - .67 Passports and visas
- 324 Electoral process**
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 324.4–324.9
 - .1 **Qualifications for voting**
 - Including mental, moral, property qualifications; poll tax
 - For woman suffrage, see 324.3*
 - .11 General
 - Residence, age, citizenship
 - .14 Literacy
 - .15 Race, national origin, religion

-
- .2 Elections**
 - Local [*formerly* 352.004], regional, state, national
 - For primary elections, see* 329.0223
 - .202 Miscellany
 - .202 1 Election returns
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 324.2021
 - .21 Electoral systems
 - Including electoral colleges
 - .22 Basis of representation
 - For basis of representation in legislative branch, see* 328.334
 - [.23] Nomination of candidates for office
 - Class in 329.022
 - .24 Procedures
 - .241 Registration
 - .242 Voting
 - .242 2 Services of election officials
 - .242 3 Reporting, tabulating, certifying
 - .242 4 Absentee voting
 - .25 Ballot systems
 - .27 Corruption and irregularities in elections
 - .271 Electoral frauds
 - .273 Irregular contributions and expenditures
 - .277 Contested elections
 - .29 Recall
 - .3 Woman suffrage**
 - .4-.9 Treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world**
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 324
- 325 International migration**
- Class here transfer of population
 - .09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 325.4-325.9

.1 Immigration

Entrance into a country, for purpose of establishing permanent residence

.109 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 325.4–325.9

.2 Emigration

Departure from a country for residence elsewhere

.209 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 325.23–325.29

.21 Political refugees**[.22] Transfer of population**

Number discontinued; class in 325

.23–.29 Emigration from specific continents, countries, localities

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 325.2, e.g., emigration from Japan 325.252; then add 09 and to the result add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 for place entered, e.g., emigration from Japan to United States 325.2520973

.3 Colonization**.309 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class colonization in specific places in modern world in 325.4–325.9, colonization by specific countries in 325.33–325.39

.31 Colonial administration and policies

Class internal administration of specific colonies in 354

.33–.39 Colonization by specific countries

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 325.3, e.g., colonization by United Kingdom 325.342; then add 09 and to the result add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 for place colonized, e.g., colonization by United Kingdom in West Africa 325.3420966

.4–.9 International migration by continent, country, locality in modern world

Class here migration to, colonization in specific places

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 325

Class emigration to specific continents, countries, localities from specific continents, countries, localities in 325.23–325.29; colonization in specific continents, countries, localities by specific countries in 325.33–325.39

326 Slavery and emancipation

327 International relations

Affairs of the world political community

Class military art and science in 355

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class foreign policies of and foreign relations between specific nations in 327.3-327.9

.1 International competition and cooperation**.101 Philosophy and theory****.101 1 Geopolitics****.11 Power politics**

Processes of finding and using power necessary to reach selected goals

.112 Balance of power system**.114 Spheres of influence****.116 Collective security****.12 Espionage and subversion****.14 Conduct of propaganda and psychological warfare****.17 International cooperation**

Class international organizations in 341.22-341.24

.172 Promotion of peace**.174 Disarmament****.2 Diplomacy**

Conduct of negotiations between governments

Class laws, rules, customs governing diplomatic conduct in 341.33

.3-.9 Foreign policies of and foreign relations between specific nations

Attitudes, courses of action, objectives adopted by governments of states in their relations with other states and regions

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 327, e.g., foreign policy of United Kingdom 327.42; then, for foreign relations between that nation and another nation, region, area, place, add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., foreign relations between United Kingdom and France 327.42044, between Israel and Arab world 327.56940174927

Give priority in notation to the nation emphasized. If the emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations

If preferred, give priority in notation to the nation requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class foreign relations between United States and France in 327.73044

328 Legislation**.1 Parliamentary rules and procedures**

Rules and procedures of legislative bodies

Class general rules of order [*formerly* 328.1] in 060.42**.2 Legislative function**

Including initiative and referendum

.3 Legislative branch of government

Parliaments, congresses, assemblies

.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class legislative branch of specific jurisdictions in modern world in 328.4–328.9

SUMMARY**328.31 Upper house****.32 Lower house****.33 Membership****.34 Powers, privileges, restrictions****.35 Sessions****.36 Internal organization and discipline****.37 Enactment of legislation****.38 Lobbying****.39 Forms of legislative bodies****328.31–328.32 Specific houses**

Class comprehensive works in 328.3, specific houses of specific legislatures in modern world in 328.4–328.9, specific elements of specific houses in 328.33–328.38

.31 Upper house**.32 Lower house****328.33–328.38 Specific elements**

Class comprehensive works in 328.3, specific elements of specific legislatures in modern world in 328.4–328.9

.33 Membership

Including qualifications, terms of office

.333 Compensation**.334 Basis of representation****.334 5 By election districts****.334 52 Apportionment and reapportionment****.334 54 Redistricting**

- .334 55 Gerrymandering
- .334 7 Proportional representation
- .34 Powers, privileges, restrictions
- .341 General powers
 - For treaty and war powers, see 328.346*
- .341 2 Financial
 - Taxation, appropriations, budgeting, borrowing and lending money, establishment and regulation of currency
- .341 3 General economic and public welfare
- .345 Extralegislative powers
- .345 2 Investigative
 - Including ombudsman system
 - Class ombudsman system as part of executive branch in 350.91
- .345 3 Judicial
 - Example: power to impeach
- .345 4 Electoral
- .345 5 Power over appointments
- .345 6 Supervision and control of executive
 - For ombudsman system, see 328.3452*
- .346 Treaty and war powers
- .347 Personal privileges and immunities of legislators
 - For personal immunities, see 328.348*
- .348 Personal immunities of legislators
- .349 Restrictions on legislative power
 - Constitutional restrictions, checks exercised by other branches and by electorate
- .35 Sessions
- .36 Internal organization and discipline
 - For rules, see 328.1*
- .362 Officers and leaders
 - For party organization in legislative bodies, see 328.369*
- .365 Committees
 - Structure, function, procedure
 - Class committee hearings and reports on a specific subject with the subject in law
- .366 Discipline of members

- [.368] Lobbying
 Class in 328.38
- .369 Party organization in legislative bodies
- .37 Enactment of legislation
- .372 Origin
 Origination by members, by executive, by outside interests
- .373 Drafting
- .375 Passage
 For committee procedure, see 328.365
- .377 Resolutions
- .378 Enactment of specific types of legislation
 Public and private bills and resolutions
 For resolutions, see 328.377
- .38 Lobbying [*formerly 328.368*]
- .39 Forms of legislative bodies
 Unicameral, bicameral
 Class forms of specific legislatures in modern world in 328.4–328.9
- 4–9 **Legislative branch of specific jurisdictions in modern world**
 Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 328, e.g., United Kingdom Parliament 328.42; then add further as follows:
- 001–008 Standard subdivisions
 - 01 Journals
 - 02 Debates
 - 03 Abstracts
 - 04 Other documents
 - 05 Rules and procedures
 Including legislative manuals
 - 07 The legislative body
 Add to 07 the numbers following 328.3 in 328.31–328.39, e.g., compensation of members 0733
 - 09 History
 - 092 Biography

329 **Practical politics Political parties**

Use 329.001–329.009 for standard subdivisions

Class elections in 324.2

- .01 **Campaign techniques and literature**
 Former heading: Political propaganda
 Class campaign techniques and literature of specific political parties in 329.1–329.9
 For platforms and slogans, see 329.0213

- .02 **Political parties**
 Including comprehensive works on political parties in United States
 and its subdivisions
 Class specific political parties in United States in 329.1–329.8, parties
 in other specific countries in 329.9
- .021 **Party organization**
- .021 1 **State and local organizations**
 Including political machines
- .021 2 **National organizations**
 Including party leadership
- .021 3 **Platforms and slogans**
- .021 4 **Party caucuses**
 Class nomination of candidates for office by party caucuses in
 329.0222
- .022 **Nomination of candidates for office [*formerly also* 324.23]**
- .022 1 **Conventions**
- .022 2 **Caucuses**
- .022 3 **Primary elections**
- [.022 4] **Boss dictation**
 Number discontinued; class in 329.022
- .023 **Election history**
 Class here specific campaigns
 Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 329.023,
 e.g., election history of United Kingdom 329.02342; then to the result
 add historical period numbers from appropriate subdivisions of 930–
 990, e.g., history of British general election of 1959 329.02342085.
 For Ireland (329.023415) and United States insert 0 before period
 number, e.g., election of 1968 in United States 329.023730923
- .024 **Political patronage**
- .025 **Party finance**
 Former heading: Political contributions and fund raising
 Including campaign finance
 For irregular contributions and expenditures, see 324.273
- .03 **Pressure and other interest groups**
 For legislative lobbying, see 328.38
- [.04] **Political process**
 Number discontinued; class in 329
- [.05] **Public opinion**
 Class in 301.1543329

- .06 Relation of state to political parties
- .07 Marxist organizations and their activities
 - Class here communist international organizations [*formerly* 335.44]
 - Class communist parties in 329.02
- .072 Internationals
 - First, Second, Vienna Internationals [*all formerly* 335.42]; Third International (Comintern), Cominform
- .073 Communist front organizations
- .074 Youth organizations
- .078 Propagation of Marxism
 - Including propagation of communism [*formerly* 335.432]

▶ 329.1–329.9 Political parties of specific countries

Arrange as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to parties of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., political parties of Peru 329.P (preceding 329.1); then, if desired, arrange specific parties alphabetically as suggested at 329.9, e.g., Apra leadership 329.P A70212

Class comprehensive works in 329.02

▶ 329.1–329.8 Specific political parties of United States

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and shorter numbers to political parties of a specific country, it is optional to class them here; in that case, class specific political parties of United States in 329.973)

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–06 General principles

Add to 0 the numbers following 329.0 in 329.01–329.06, e.g., conventions 0221

Class comprehensive works in 329.02

- .1 ***Federalist Party**
- .2 ***Anti-Federalist Party**
 - Predecessor of Democratic Party
 - Class here Jeffersonian Republican Party, Democratic Republican Party
- .3 ***Democratic Party**
- .4 ***Whig Party**
 - Class here National Republican Party
- .5 ***American (Know-Nothing) Party**
- .6 ***Republican Party**

* Add as instructed under 329.1–329.8

.8 Other parties

329.81–329.86 Collectivist parties

Class comprehensive works in 329.8

.81 *Socialist Party

Including Socialist Labor Party

.82 *Communist Party**.86 American Nazi Party****.87 *Free Soil Party****.88 *Populist Party****.89 Others****.892 Splinter parties**

Parties formed by dissident sections of major parties, e.g.,
Dixiecrats, "Bull Moose"

.893 Regional and local parties

Examples: Conservative and Liberal Parties in New York

.894 Single-interest parties

Example: Prohibition Party

.9 Political parties of other countries

Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 329.9, e.g.,
parties of United Kingdom 329.942

If desired, arrange specific parties of a specific country alphabetically, e.g.,
Labour Party of United Kingdom 329.942L2; then to the result add the
numbers following 329 in 329.01–329.06, e.g., Labour Party leadership
329.942L20212

330 Economics

The science of human behavior as it relates to utilization of scarce means for satisfaction of needs and desires thru production, distribution, consumption

For commerce, see 380

.01–.08 Standard subdivisions

Class theories in 330.1

.09 Historical and geographical treatment of economics as a discipline

Class economic situation and conditions in 330.9

.1 Systems and theories**.12 Systems****.122 Free-enterprise economy**

Usually synonymous with capitalism

* Add as instructed under 329.1–329.8

-
- .124 **Planned economies**
 - Class socialism and related systems in 335
 - .126 **Mixt economies**
 - Interventionism, welfare state systems
 - .15 **Schools of economic thought**
 - .151 **Pre-classical schools**
 - For physiocracy, see 330.152*
 - .151 2 **Ancient and medieval theories**
 - .151 3 **Mercantilism**
 - .152 **Physiocracy**
 - School of Quesnay
 - .153 **Classical economics**
 - School of Smith, Malthus, Ricardo, Bastiat, Say
 - Class neoclassicism [*formerly 330.153*] in 330.155
 - .154 **Methodological schools**
 - Schools based on employment of specific methods of analysis
 - .154 2 **Historical school**
 - School of Roscher, Knies, Hildebrand, Schmoller, Bücher, Knapp
 - .154 3 **Mathematical economics**
 - School of Cournot, Dupuit, Pareto
 - .155 **Miscellaneous schools**
 - Neoclassicism [*formerly 330.153*]; universalism; romantic, institutional, ethical, social justice schools; welfare economics; single-tax school
 - .156 **Keynesianism**
 - .157 **Marginal utility ("Austrian") school**
 - School of W. S. Jevons, Menger, Walras, Wieser, Böhm-Bawerk, Von Mises
 - .159 **Socialist and related schools**
 - (Use of this number is optional; prefer 335)
 - Add to 330.159 the numbers following 335 in 335.1–335.9, e.g., Marxian systems 330.1594
 - .16 **Theories of wealth**
 - Former heading: Miscellaneous general theories
 - [.161] **Theories of wealth**
 - Number discontinued; class in 330.16

- [.162] Theories of value
 Class in 338.521
- [.163] Theories of income
 Class in 339.201
- .17 Theories of property
- .9 Economic situation and conditions
- .901-.904 Historical periods
 Add to 330.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions"
 notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., economic situation in 1960-
 1970 330.9046
- .91-.99 Geographical treatment (Economic geography)
 If preferred, class in 910.133
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 330.9, e.g.,
 economic situation and conditions in France 330.944; then to the result
 add historical period numbers from appropriate subdivisions of 930-990,
 e.g., economic situation and conditions in France under Louis XIV
 330.944033. For Ireland (330.9415) and United States insert 0 before
 period number, e.g., economic situation in United States during Re-
 construction period 330.97308

331 Labor economics

- Class here industrial relations
- Class personnel management in 658.3
- .01 Philosophy and theory
- .011 Right to earn a living
- .012 Satisfactions of labor
 Class classification of labor in 331.7
- .013 Freedom, dignity, value of labor
- .04 Industrial relations in specific industries and occupations
 [formerly 331.18]
- .041 Service, professional, managerial
 Add 001-999 to base number 331.041, e.g., clerical
 occupations 331.041651
- .042-.049 Other
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 331.04 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g.,
 chemical industries 331.046
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment of industrial relations
 [formerly 331.19], of labor economics

SUMMARY

- 331.1 Labor force and market
 - .2 Conditions of employment
 - .3 Workers of specific age groups
 - .4 Women workers
 - .5 Special categories of workers
 - .6 Categories of workers by racial, ethnic, national origin
 - .7 Labor by industry and occupation
 - .8 Labor unions (Trade unions) and labor-management bargaining
- .1 Labor force and market
 - Class labor force and market with respect to specific classes of workers in 331.3–331.6
- .11 Labor force
 - All who are employed or looking for work
- [.112] Labor market
 - Class in 331.12
- [.113] Discrimination in employment
 - Class in 331.133
- .114 Characteristics of labor force
 - Composition, quality, size
- .114 2 Job qualifications
 - Physical and mental capacity, education, skills, experience
- .114 3 Personal characteristics
 - Class workers with specific characteristics in 331.3–331.6
- .114 4 Type of employment
 - Examples: wage and salary earners, self-employed
 - Including unpaid family help
- [.115] Obtaining employment
 - Class in 331.128
- [.116] Labor-management (Collective) bargaining
 - Class in 331.89
- .117 Systems of labor
 - .117 2 Free
 - .117 3 Compulsory
 - .117 32 State labor (Drafted workers) [*formerly* 331.57]
 - .117 34 Slave labor [*formerly* 331.582]
- .118 Labor productivity

-
- .12 Labor market [*formerly also* 331.112]
 - Former heading: Labor stability and instability
 - For maladjustments in labor market, see* 331.13
 - .121 Characteristics and types
 - .121 2 Characteristics
 - Diversity, competition among employees and among workers, availability of market information to employers and employees
 - For mobility of labor, see* 331.127
 - .121 4 Types
 - Fully and partially structured, unstructured; characterized by degree to which explicit standards set by government, union contract, individual employer govern job qualifications, obtaining employment, advancement, rights of employees
 - [.122] Employment security and job tenure
 - Class in 331.2596
 - .126 Supply and demand
 - Including turnover
 - .127 Mobility of labor
 - .128 Obtaining employment [*formerly* 331.115]
 - Including employment agencies, labor exchanges
 - .13 Maladjustments in labor market
 - Former heading: Unemployment and reemployment
 - .133 Discrimination in employment [*formerly* 331.113]
 - Including discrimination on political and religious grounds
 - [.134] Cancellation of labor contracts
 - Class in 331.8915
 - .136 Labor shortages
 - .137 Unemployment
 - .137 04 Kinds
 - .137 042 Technological
 - Including unemployment due to automation
 - .137 044 Seasonal
 - .137 045 Frictional
 - Irreducible minimum of people out of work because of need or desire to change jobs
 - .137 047 Cyclical
 - Unemployment due to economic fluctuations

[.137 09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 331.1379

► 331.137 2–331.137 7 Specific elements of unemployment

Class comprehensive works in 331.137

.137 2 Causes

.137 3 Effects

.137 4 Distribution and incidence

.137 7 Prevention and relief

Class a specific measure with the subject, e.g., guaranteed-wage plans 331.23, economic stabilization 339.5

.137 8 Unemployment among general classes of labor and in specific industries and occupations

Class specific elements regardless of class, industry, occupation in 331.1372–331.1377

.137 804 General classes of unemployed

Examples: uneducated, unskilled

► 331.137 81–331.137 89 Unemployment in specific industries and occupations

Class comprehensive works in 331.1378

.137 81 Service, professional, managerial

Add 001–999 to base number 331.13781, e.g., clerical occupations 331.13781651

.137 82–.137 89 Other

Extractive, manufacturing, construction

Add to 331.1378 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., automobile workers 331.1378292

.137 9 Historical and geographical treatment

.137 901–.137 904 Historical periods

Add to 331.13790 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., unemployment in 19th century 331.1379034

.137 91–.137 99 Geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 331.1379

[.138] Reemployment

Number discontinued; class in 331.13

[.15] Conciliation measures

Class in 331.8914

- [.18] Industrial relations in specific industries and occupations
Class in 331.04
- [.19] Historical and geographical treatment of industrial relations
Class in 331.09
- .2 Conditions of employment**
Class conditions of employment of special classes of workers in 331.3–331.6
- .204 In specific industries and occupations
- .204 1 Service, professional, managerial
Add 001–999 to base number 331.2041, e.g., clerical occupations
331.2041651
- .204 2–.204 9 Other
Extractive, manufacturing, construction
Add to 331.204 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g.,
chemical industries 331.2046

SUMMARY

- 331.21 Wages
- .22 Wage scales and differentials
- .23 Guaranteed-wage plans
- .25 Other conditions of employment
- .28 Wages in specific industries and occupations
- .29 Historical and geographical treatment of wages
- .21 Wages
For wage scales and differentials, see 331.22, wages in specific industries and occupations, 331.28
- .210 1 Theories
Examples: subsistence theory (“iron law”), wages fund theory, marginal productivity theory, bargain theory, national income theory
- [.210 9] Historical and geographical treatment
Do not use; class in 331.29
- .215 Wage determination
By intra- and inter-industry comparison, ability to pay, cost of living
- .216 Methods of payment
- .216 2 Time payments
Hourly, weekly, monthly, annual, other periods
For guaranteed-wage plans, see 331.23
- .216 4 Incentive payments
Piecework, combined time- and piecework, group incentives, bonuses, profit sharing

- .216 6 **Other**
 Examples: professional fees, subcontracting, tipping, weighting allowances, other allowances
- [.218] **Plurality of wages**
 Number discontinued; class in 331.21
- .22 **Wage scales and differentials**
 Differences between industries, occupations, regions
- .23 **Guaranteed-wage plans**
- .25 **Other conditions of employment**
- .252 **Pensions**
- .255 **Fringe benefits**
 Examples: insurance, health and welfare programs, unemployment compensation
 Class sick leave, paid vacations [*both formerly 331.255*] in 331.2576
 For pensions, see 331.252
- .257 **Hours**
 Occurrence and duration of work periods [*formerly 331.81*]
- .257 2 **Work day and week**
- .257 4 **Night, holy day, Sunday, holiday work**
- .257 6 **Leave and rest periods**
 Sick leave, paid vacations [*both formerly 331.255*], holidays, rest periods (breaks)
- .259 **Training, worker security and discipline**
- .259 2 **Training** [*formerly 331.86*]
- .259 22 **Apprenticeship**
- .259 23 **Rehabilitation training**
- .259 24 **Retraining**
 Teaching new skills to replace obsolescent ones
- .259 6 **Worker security**
 Employment security, job tenure [*both formerly 331.122*], seniority, rights of transfer and promotion, right to organize and bargain collectively
- .259 8 **Worker discipline**
- .28 **Wages in specific industries and occupations**
 Class specific elements of wages in specific industries and occupations in 331.21–331.23
- .281 **Service, professional, managerial**
 Add 001–999 to base number 331.281, e.g., wages in clerical occupations 331.281651

- .282-.289 Other**
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 331.28 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., wages in building trades 331.289
- .29 Historical and geographical treatment of wages**
- .290 1-.290 4 Historical periods**
 Add to 331.290 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., wages in 1930-1940 331.29043
- .291-.299 Geographical treatment**
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 331.29
- 331.3-331.6 Labor force by personal characteristics**
 Class here labor force and market, conditions of employment, specific industries and occupations, labor unions, labor-management bargaining with respect to special classes of workers
 Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., aged Chinese women 331.398
 Workers of specific age groups
 Women workers
 Special categories of workers
 Categories of workers by racial, ethnic, national origin
 Class comprehensive works in 331.1143
- .3 Workers of specific age groups**
- .31 Children**
 Thru age thirteen
- .34 Young people**
 Thru age twenty
For children, see 331.31; young people in specific industries and occupations, 331.38
- .38 Young people in specific industries and occupations**
 Children and youth
- .381 Service, professional, managerial**
 Add 001-999 to base number 331.381, e.g., clerical occupations 331.381651
- .382-.389 Other**
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 331.38 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., textile workers 331.3877

-
- .39 **Other age groups**
 - .394 **Middle aged**
 - .398 **Aged**
 - .398 8 **In specific industries and occupations**
 - .398 81 **Service, professional, managerial**
 - Add 001-999 to base number 331.39881, e.g., clerical occupations 331.39881651
 - .398 82-.398 89 **Other**
 - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 - Add to 331.3988 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., agricultural workers 331.39883
 - .4 **Women workers**
 - .42 **Wages**
 - Class wages of married women in 331.43
 - .43 **Married women**
 - .48 **In specific industries and occupations**
 - Class wages of women in specific industries and occupations in 331.42, married women in specific industries and occupations in 331.43
 - .481 **Service, professional, managerial**
 - Add 001-999 to base number 331.481, e.g., clerical occupations 331.481651
 - .482-.489 **Other**
 - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 - Add to 331.48 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., pulp and paper workers 331.4876
 - .5 **Special categories of workers**
 - For categories of workers by racial, ethnic, national origin, see 331.6*
 - .51 **Prisoners**
 - Including political and war prisoners [*both formerly* 331.584]
 - .54 **Economically disadvantaged workers**
 - .542 **Contract workers**
 - .544 **Migrant workers** [*formerly* 331.67]
 - .55 **Apprentices**
 - [.57] **State labor (Drafted workers)**
 - Class in 331.11732

- [.58] **Slaves, political and war prisoners**
 Class slave labor [*formerly* 331.582] in 331.11734, political and war prisoners [*both formerly* 331.584] in 331.51
- .59 **Workers suffering physical and mental handicaps**
- .6 **Categories of workers by racial, ethnic, national origin**
- .62 **Immigrants**
 For place of origin add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 331.62, e.g., immigrant workers from China 331.6251; then, for place located, add 0 and again add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., immigrant workers from China in California 331.62510794
 Class migrant workers in 331.544
- .63 **Native-born nonindigenous ethnic groups**
 Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 03-99 from Table 5 to base number 331.63, e.g., United States Negroes 331.6396073; then, for place located, unless it is redundant, add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., Negro workers in Alabama 331.63960730761
- [.66] **Sharecroppers**
 Class in 333.563
- [.67] **Migrant workers**
 Class in 331.544
- .69 **Indigenous ethnic groups**
 Example: North American Indians in North America
 Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 03-99 from Table 5 to base number 331.69
- .7 **Labor by industry and occupation**
 Use 331.7001-331.7009 for standard subdivisions
 Class a specific element of labor with the subject, e.g., wages 331.21
- .702 **Choice of vocation**
- .71 **Professional and managerial occupations**
 Class specific professional and managerial occupations in 331.761
- .712 **Professional**
- .714 **Managerial**
- .76 **Specific industries and occupations**
 (It is optional to class here specific subjects as professions or occupations; prefer specific subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., architecture as a profession 720.23)
- .761 **Service, professional, managerial**
 Add 001-999 to base number 331.761, e.g., clerical occupations 331.761651

-
- .762-.769 **Other**
 - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 - Add to 331.76 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., food processing 331.7664
 - .79 **Specific groups of occupations**
 - Class agricultural occupations in 331.763
 - For professional and managerial occupations, see 331.71*
 - .793 **Service**
 - .794 **Industrial**
 - Including foremanship; skilled, semi-skilled work
 - For unskilled work, see 331.798*
 - .795 **Public service**
 - Occupations of elected and appointed civil servants
 - .798 **Unskilled work**
 - .8 **Labor unions (Trade unions) and labor-management bargaining**
 - Class labor unions and labor-management bargaining in relation to special classes of workers in 331.3-331.6
 - [.81] **Occurrence and duration of work periods**
 - Class in 331.257
 - [.86] **Training**
 - Class in 331.2592
 - .87 **Labor union organization**
 - .872 **Levels of organization**
 - Locals, nationals, federations
 - .873 **Union management**
 - Financial and membership policies, officers, discipline of members
 - Class general management of unions in 658.9133188
 - .874 **Union elections and conventions**
 - .88 **Labor unions (Trade unions)!**
 - For labor union organization, see 331.87*
 - .880 1 **Theory of unions**
 - Unions as instruments of class struggle, as instruments of industrial democracy; control of industry by workers, countermonopoly theory
 - Including anti-union theories

- .880 9 Historical and geographical treatment
- .880 91 International unions, and treatment by areas, regions,
 places in general
 Class international unions of United States and Canadian
 workers in 331.88097
- .880 911-.880 918 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general.
- .880 93-.880 99 Treatment by continent, country, locality
- .881 In specific industries and occupations
- .881 1 Service, professional, managerial
 Add 001-999 to base number 331.8811, e.g., unions of clerical
 workers 331.8811651
- .881 2-.881 9 Other
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 331.881 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g.,
 garmentworkers' unions 331.88187
- .883 Kinds of unions
 Class specific kinds of unions in specific occupations in 331.881
 For revolutionary unions, see 331.886
- .883 2 Craft unions
- .883 3 Industrial unions
- .883 4 Company unions
- .886 Revolutionary unions
- .889 Union security arrangements
- .889 2 Shop arrangements
 Closed shop, union shop, preferential hiring, sole bargaining rights
- .889 4 Control of hiring and layoffs
 Licenses, hiring halls, control of apprenticeships
- .889 6 Other measures
 Dues checkoff, control of grievance procedures, make-work
 arrangements (featherbedding)
- .89 Labor-management (Collective) bargaining [*formerly also*
 331.116] and disputes
- .890 4 In specific industries and occupations
- .890 41 Service, professional, managerial
 Add 001-999 to base number 331.89041, e.g., clerical
 occupations 331.89041651

.890 42-.890 49 **Other**
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 331.8904 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g.,
 garment industry 331.890487

.891 **Procedures**

.891 2 **Preliminaries**
 Organizing, winning recognition, negotiation of contract

.891 4 **Conciliation measures** [*formerly* 331.15]

 Arbitration and mediation

.891 5 **Negotiation during life of contract**

 Including cancelation of labor contracts [*formerly* 331.134]

.892 **Strikes**

.892 01 **Theory of strikes**

 Right to strike, effects of strikes

[.892 09] **Historical and geographical treatment**

 Do not use; class in 331.8929

.892 1 **Strike votes**

331.892 2-331.892 6 **Kinds of strikes**

Class comprehensive works in 331.892, specific kinds of strikes in specific industries and occupations in 331. 8928

.892 2 **Organized**
 Economic, jurisdictional, other

.892 3 **Sympathetic**

.892 4 **Outlaw (Wildcat)**

.892 5 **General**

 Work stoppages thruout an area to put pressure on government

.892 6 **Other**

 Sit-down strikes [*formerly* 331.893], protest stoppag es .

.892 7 **Picketing**

.892 8 **Strikes in specific industries and occupations**

.892 81 **Service, professional, managerial**

 Add 001-999 to base number 331.89281, e.g., strikes of
 clerical workers 331.89281651

.892 82-.892 89 **Other**

 Extractive, manufacturing, construction

 Add to 331.8928 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g.,
 strikes of rubber workers 331.892878.

- .892 9 Historical and geographical treatment
- .892 901–.892 904 Historical periods
 - Add to 331.89290 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., strikes in 19th century 331.8929034
- .892 91–.892 99 Geographical treatment
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 331.8929
- .893 Other labor measures
 - Examples: sabotage, boycotts, injunctions, political action
 - Class sit-down strikes [*formerly* 331.893] in 331.8926
- .894 Management measures
 - Examples: lockouts, strikebreaking, blacklisting, whitelisting, injunctions, yellow-dog contracts, political action
- .898 Government measures
 - Including right-to-work policy
 - For conciliation measures, see* 331.8914
- .898 2 Strike requirements
 - Purpose, notice, cooling-off periods, exhaustion of other means
- .898 4 Use of troops

332 Financial economics

Former heading: Lucrative capital

- .02 Miscellany
- .024 Personal finance
 - Including estate planning
 - Class investment guides in 332.678
- .04 General special
- .041 Capital
 - That portion of the stock of economic goods which is used to produce a return
- .041 2 Working capital
 - Money, short-term money claims, inventories
- .041 4 Fixt (Investment) capital
 - Production instrumentalities with economic life span measured in years
 - For land, see* 333

- .041 5 • Capital formation
 Saving and investment
 Self-financing
 Use by an individual of his own savings, or by an enterprise
 of its retained profits, for investment in own business
 .041 54 Sources of capital
 .06 Organizations
 Class financial institutions in 332.1–332.3

SUMMARY

- 332.1 Banks and banking
 .2 Specialized banking institutions
 .3 Credit and loan institutions
 .4 Money
 .5 Other mediums of exchange
 .6 Investment finance
 .7 Credit
 .8 Interest and discount
 .9 Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration

332.1–332.3 Financial institutions and their functions

Class here clearinghouses [*formerly* 332.78]

Class comprehensive works in 332.1

- .1 Banks and banking
 Class here comprehensive works on money and banking, on financial
 institutions and their functions
 Class management of financial institutions in 658.913321
 *For specialized banking institutions, see 332.2; credit and loan
 institutions, 332.3; money, 332.4; credit, 332.7*
 .11 Central banks
 .112 Relation to monetary policy
 Issuance of bank notes, purchase of government securities
 .113 Relation to private banks
 Reserve requirements, interest rates, loans, clearance
 .114 Open market operations
 .12 Commercial banks
 Including savings departments [*formerly* 332.24]
 *For multiple banking, see 332.16; banking services of commercial
 banks, 332.17*
 .122 Incorporated
 .122 3 National

-
- .122 4 State
 - .123 Unincorporated (Private) [*formerly* 332.13]
 - [.13] Unincorporated (Private)
 - Class in 332.123
 - .15 International banks and banking
 - Class here international operations of commercial banks
 - .152 For monetary stabilization and balance of payments
 - Example: International Monetary Fund
 - .153 For development of resources and production
 - Examples. International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (World Bank), International Finance Corporation, International Development Association
 - .154 For promotion and facilitation of trade
 - Example: Export-Import Bank
 - .155 For international settlements
 - Example: Bank for International Settlements
 - .16 Multiple banking
 - Branch, chain, group banking; bank holding companies, syndicates, mergers
 - .17 Banking services of commercial banks
 - Class here comprehensive works on services of banks
 - Class services of specialized banking institutions in 332.2–332.3
 - For international operations, see* 332.15
 - [.172] Departmentalization
 - Number discontinued; class in 332.1
 - .175 General
 - .175 2 Deposits
 - Demand (checking accounts), time (savings accounts)
 - .175 3 Loans
 - .175 4 Investments
 - .178 Special
 - Trust services, safe-deposit services, clearance

- .2 **Specialized banking institutions**
 - For agricultural institutions, see 332.31; investment banking, 332.66; cooperative banking, 334.2*
- .21 Savings banks
 - Mutual and stock
 - Including government savings banks
 - For postal savings banks, see 332.22*
- .22 Postal savings banks
- [.24] Savings departments of commercial banks
 - Class in 332.12
- .26 Trust companies
- .3 **Credit and loan institutions**
- .31 Agricultural institutions
 - Example: land banks
- .32 Savings and loan associations
 - Also known as building and loan associations, home loan associations, mortgage institutions
- .34 Loan brokers
 - Examples: pawnbrokers, chattel-loan brokers, salary-loan brokers
- .35 Consumer and sales finance institutions
- .37 Industrial banks
 - For credit unions, see 334.2*
- .38 Insurance companies
 - Credit and loan functions
- .4 **Money**
 - Class other mediums of exchange in 332.5
- .401 Theories
 - Examples: quantity theory, circulation and velocity theory, equation of exchange theory, income and cash balance theories
- .404 Forms of money
- .404 2 Gold and silver coins
- .404 3 Token coins [*formerly 332.46*]
 - Coins made of non-precious metals
- .404 4 Paper money [*formerly 332.53*]
- [.409] Historical and geographical treatment
 - Do not use; class in 332.49

- .41 **Relation to economic conditions**
 Former heading: As a medium of exchange
 Class here inflation and deflation
 Class legal tender [*formerly* 332.41] in 332.42042

.413 Variations in purchasing power

.414 Variations in quantity

.42 **Monetary standards**

 Former heading: As a standard of value

.420 4 General special

.420 42 Official status of money

 Class here legal tender [*formerly* 332.41]

.420 422 Standard money

 Money in which all other forms of money may be
 redeemed by law

.420 424 Credit money

 Promises to pay standard money

332.422–332.425 Commodity standards

Systems in which value of monetary unit is kept equal to value of a designated quantity of a particular commodity or group of commodities

Class comprehensive works in 332.42

.422 **Monometallic**

.422 2 Gold

 Gold coin, gold bullion, gold exchange standards

.422 3 Silver

.423 **Bimetallic**

 Gold and silver

.424 **Symmetallic**

 Combinations of metals

.425 **Composite commodity**

 Staple commodities in predetermined proportions

.427 **Fiat**

 Controlled [*formerly* 332.428] and free forms of non-redeemable
 (inconvertible) currencies not kept equal to units of any
 commodity or group of commodities

 Including fiat money [*formerly* 332.52]

[.428] **Controlled**

 Class in 332.427

-
- .45 Foreign exchange
 - .452 With a gold standard
 - Monetary units of exchanging countries defined in terms of gold, currencies freely convertible into gold, full freedom to import and export gold
 - .454 With a paper standard
 - Monetary units of exchanging countries not defined in terms of gold, currencies not convertible into gold, restricted import and export of gold
 - .456 Regulation of exchange
 - .456 2 By supply and demand
 - .456 4 By government control of exchange rates
 - .456 6 By international agreement
 - For International Monetary Fund, see 332.152*
 - .46 Monetary policy
 - Including minting policies and practices
 - Class token coins [*formerly* 332.46] in 332.4043
 - Class use of monetary policy for economic stabilization in 339.53, relation of central banks to monetary policy in 332.112
 - For historical and geographical treatment of money and monetary policy, see 332.49; managed currency, 332.56*
 - .49 Historical and geographical treatment of money and monetary policy
 - .490 1-.490 4 Historical periods
 - Add to 332.490 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., money in 19th century 332.49034
 - .491-.499 Geographical treatment
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 332.49
 - .5 Other mediums of exchange
 - [.52] Fiat money
 - Class in 332.427
 - [.53] Paper money
 - Class in 332.4044
 - .55 Barter instruments and commercial paper
 - .56 Managed currency and social credit money

.6 Investment finance**SUMMARY**

- 332.62 Brokerage firms**
- .63 Forms of investment**
- .64 Exchange of securities and commodities**
- .65 International exchange of securities**
- .66 Investment banking**
- .67 Investment and investments**
- .68 Lotteries**

[.61] Organized securities exchanges

Class in 332.642

.62 Brokerage firms

Including investment counselors

.63 Forms of investmentClass investment regardless of form in specific types of business in
332.6722**.632 Securities and commodities**

Description and evaluation of safety features, growth potential, yield

.632 04 General special**.632 042 Auxiliary evaluation techniques**Reading ticker tapes, financial pages; analyzing corporate
balance sheets

332.632 2–332.632 7 SecuritiesClass here private securities [*formerly* 332.6333]

Class comprehensive works in 332.632

.632 2 Stocks**.632 23 Common****.632 25 Preferred****.632 3 Bonds**Including government bonds (national, state, provincial,
municipal) [*formerly* 332.6332]**.632 4 Real estate**

Including mortgages

.632 7 Mutual funds and other investment company securities**.632 8 Commodities**

Including commodity futures

- [.633] **Specific classes of securities**
 - Class government bonds [*formerly* 332.6332] in 332.6323, private securities [*formerly* 332.6333] in 332.6322–332.6327
- .634 **Investment in capital goods**
 - Plant and equipment
 - For real estate, see* 332.6324
- .64 **Exchange of securities and commodities**
 - Operation and activities of securities and commodities markets; trading procedures
 - For international exchange of securities, see* 332.65
- .642 **Exchange of securities**
 - Including organized securities exchanges [*formerly also* 332.61]
 - For over-the-counter market, see* 332.643
- .643 **Over-the-counter market**
- .644 **Exchange of commodities**
 - Including commodity exchanges
- .645 **Speculation**
 - Purchase of securities and commodities with intent to profit by fluctuations in price
 - Including buying on margin
- .65 **International exchange of securities**
- .66 **Investment banking**
 - Underwriting and sale of security issues
- .67 **Investment and investments**
 - For forms of investment, see* 332.63
- .672 **Domestic**
- .672 2 **Investment in specific types of business**
 - Class investment by specific kinds of institutions in specific types of business in 332.6725
- .672 5 **Investment by specific kinds of institutions**
 - Examples: investment by life insurance companies, pension funds, governments
 - For investments by banks, see* 332.1754
- .673 **Foreign**
 - For international exchange of securities, see* 332.65
- .673 09 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class investments originating in specific countries in 332.6733–332.6739

- .673 1 By sources of capital
 Class investments originating in specific countries regardless of
 source of capital in 332.6733–332.6739
- .673 12 By governments
- .673 14 By private investors
- .673 2 Government policy
- .673 22 Incentives and obstacles in country of investment
 Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number
 332.67322
- .673 24 Incentives and obstacles in country of investor
 Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number
 332.67324
- .673 3–.673 9 Investments originating in specific countries
 Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 332.673,
 e.g., British foreign investments 332.67342; then, for place of in-
 vestment, add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1–9 from
 Table 2, e.g., British foreign investments in Brazil 332.67342081
- .678 Investment guides
 Manuals of advice to prospective investors
 Including forecasting, formula plans, speculation
 Class guides to investment in specific areas in 332.67309
- .68 Lotteries
- .7 **Credit**
 Class credit functions of specific financial institutions in 332.1–332.3
 For interest and discount, see 332.8
- .71 Agricultural
- .72 Real-estate
 Including mortgage loans
- .74 Other
- .742 Commercial, mercantile, industrial
 Including small business loans
- .743 Personal loans
 Including chattel mortgages, consumer credit
- .75 Credit restrictions and collapse (bankruptcy)
- [.754] Bankruptcy
 Number discontinued; class in 332.75

-
- .76 **Credit instruments**
 - Including checks, money orders
 - For commercial paper, see 332.77*
 - .77 **Commercial paper**
 - Promissory notes, drafts, letters of credit, acceptances
 - [.78] **Clearinghouses**
 - Class in 332.1–332.3
 - .8 **Interest and discount**
 - Class interest and discount tables in 513.93
 - .82 **Interest**
 - For usury, see 332.83*
 - .83 **Usury**
 - .84 **Discount and rediscount**
 - .9 **Counterfeiting, forgery, alteration**
 - Class counterfeit coins in 737.4, counterfeit paper money in 769.55, counterfeit stamps in 769.562
 - 333 **Land economics**
 - Land: the sum total of natural and man-made resources over which possession of the earth gives control
 - .001–.009 **Standard subdivisions**
 - Class theories in 333.01
 - .01 **Theories**
 - .012 **Economic rent**
 - Return produced by ownership of land after deduction of all outlays for labor and capital
 - Including Ricardo's theory of earning power of land in terms of its marginal productivity

SUMMARY

- 333.1 **Public control of land**
- .2 **Control of land by non-governmental collectivities**
- .3 **Individual control of land**
- .4 **Absentee ownership**
- .5 **Rental and leasing arrangements**
- .7 **Land utilization**
- .8 **Utilization of subsurface (mineral) resources**
- .9 **Utilization of other natural resources**



333.1–333.5 Control of land

Right to possession and use of land; right to transfer of possession and use

Class here control of specific kinds of natural resources [*formerly* 333.7–333.9]

Class comprehensive works in 333

- .1 Public control of land**
 - Control by society as a whole thru its official representatives
 - Including tribal and community control
- .11 Kinds of land controlled by the state**
 - Examples: forests, recreational lands, highways and streets
 - Including acquisition, disposal
- .13 Acquisition**
 - Expropriation, eminent domain, purchase
 - Class acquisition of specific kinds of land in 333.11
 - For nationalization, see 333.14*
- .14 Nationalization**
- .16 Disposal**
 - Sale and free grants
 - Class disposal of specific kinds of land in 333.11
- .2 Control of land by non-governmental collectivities**
 - Including open-field system
- .3 Individual control of land**
 - For absentee ownership, see 333.4*
 - .32 Tenure**
 - .322 Feudal tenure**
 - .323 Individual tenure**
 - For corporate ownership, see 333.324*
 - .323 2 Complete ownership (Fee simple)**
 - Full right to possession, use, transfer of possession and use
 - .323 4 Qualified ownership**
 - Ownership with restrictions on use or transfer
 - Examples: entails, life estates
 - .324 Corporate ownership**

-
- .33 **Transfer of possession and use**
 - Class here real estate
 - Class government acquisition and disposal in 333.1
 - For subdivision and development, see 333.38*
 - .332 **Valuation (Appraisal)**
 - Class valuation of land for government acquisition and disposal in 333.13–333.16, valuation of specific kinds of land in 333.335–333.339
 - .333 **Sale and gift**
 - Class sale and gift of specific kinds of land in 333.335–333.339
 - [.334] **Rental**
 - Class in 333.5
-
- ▶ 333.335–333.339 **Transfer of possession and use of specific kinds of land**
 - Class comprehensive works in 333.33
 - .335 **Agricultural and other rural lands**
 - Rental [*formerly also* 333.55], sale, appraisal
 - Including forested lands
 - .336 **Industrial lands**
 - Rental, sale, appraisal
 - Including transportation space, e.g., airport space, railroad rights-of-way
 - .337 **Urban lands**
 - Rental [*formerly also* 333.6], sale, appraisal of residential and commercial lands
 - For industrial lands, see 333.336*
 - .339 **Other natural resources**
 - Rights to use of minerals, water, air space
 - Including sale, rental, appraisal
 - .38 **Subdivision and development**
 - .4 **Absentee ownership**
 - .5 **Rental [*formerly also* 333.334] and leasing arrangements**
 - Class rental and lease of specific kinds of land in 333.335–333.339
 - .53 **Tenancy**
 - Tenancy for years (for a specified time period), tenancy from year to year, tenancy at will
 - For landlord-tenant relations, see 333.54*

- .54 Landlord-tenant relations
 - Class legal relations in 346.04342
- [.55] Rental of agricultural lands
 - Class in 333.335
- .56 Types of rental
- .562 Cash rental
- .563 Share and percentage rental
 - Agriculture and business
 - Including sharecroppers [*formerly* 331.66]
- [.6] Rental of urban lands
 - Class in 333.337

▶ 333.7–333.9 Utilization of specific natural resources

Class here pollution

Class control of specific kinds of natural resources [*formerly* 333.7–333.9] in 333.1–333.5

Class comprehensive works in 333.7

.7 Land utilization

Class here comprehensive works on utilization of specific natural resources, on power resources

For utilization of mineral resources, see 333.8; utilization of other natural resources, 333.9

.72 Conservation

Class conservation of specific types of natural resources in 333.73–333.95

.73 Kinds of land by physical condition

Examples: arid, semiarid, humid, mountainous

Including wastelands

.74 Pasture (Grazing) lands

.75 Forest lands

.76 Agricultural and other rural lands

For pasture lands, see 333.74; forest lands, 333.75

.77 Urban lands

Industrial, commercial, civic, residential uses

.772 Highways and streets

- .78 **Recreational lands**
 Parks and playgrounds
 Including recreational use of water and land adjoining it
 Class wildlife refuges [*formerly* 333.78] in 333.95

.8 Utilization of subsurface (mineral) resources

- .82 **Fuels**
 Coal, oil, gas

- .85 **Other minerals**

.9 Utilization of other natural resources

- .91 **Water and land adjoining it**
 Use 333.91001–333.91009 for standard subdivisions

- .910 2 Surface water

- .910 4 Ground (Subsurface) water

333.912–333.915 **Water for specific uses**

Class comprehensive works in 333.91

For recreational use, see 333.78

- .912 **Proprietary uses**
 Uses involving consumption of water
 For use for irrigation, see 333.913

- .912 2 **Individual consumption**
 Water for drinking and washing

- .912 3 **Industrial consumption**

- .913 **Use for irrigation**

- .914 **Nonproprietary uses**

Uses not involving consumption

Example: use for power generation

For transportation use, see 333.915; use for commercial fishing, 333.95

- .915 **Use for transportation**

333.916–333.918 **Specific kinds of water and land adjoining it**

Class comprehensive works in 333.91, specific uses of specific kinds of water in 333.912–333.915

- .916 **Bodies of water**

Class lands adjoining specific kinds of bodies of water in 333.917–333.918

- .916 2 **Streams**

- .916 3 Other fresh-water bodies
 - Lakes, ponds
- .916 4 Bodies of salt water
 - Oceans, seas
- .917 Shorelands
- .918 Submerged lands and tidelands
- .92 Air
- .94 Space
- .95 Biological resources
 - Including wildlife refuges [*formerly* 333.78] and habitats, use of waters for commercial fishing

334 Cooperatives

Voluntary organizations establishd by groups of individuals to engage in production and distribution of economic goods with distribution of earnings on the basis of patronage or participation

- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
- .091 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general
 - .091 1-.091 8 Specific areas, regions, places
 - Not limited by continent, country, locality
 - .091 9 International associations of cooperatives
 - .093-.099 Treatment by continent, country, locality
- .1 **Building and housing**
- .2 **Banking and credit**
 - Including credit unions
- .5 **Distribution (Consumers' cooperatives)**
 - For housing, see* 334.1
- .6 **Production**
- .68 In specific industries
- .681 Service and professional
 - Add 001-999 to base number 334.681, e.g., cooperative medical services 334.68161
 - For banking and credit, see* 334.2
- .682-.689 Other
 - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 - Add to 334.68 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., cooperative cattle production 334.68362
 - For building, see* 334.1

.7 Benefit societies

Friendly, mutual-aid, benevolent, provident

335 Socialism and related systems

Class here interdisciplinary works on political and economic aspects of socialism and related systems

If preferred, class in 330.159

Use 335.001–335.009 for standard subdivisions

Class political aspects of socialism and related systems in 320

.02 Utopian systems and schools

Voluntary association

Class specific utopian systems in 335.1–335.3

SUMMARY

- 335.1 Systems of English origin**
- .2 Systems of French origin**
- .3 Systems of American origin**
- .4 Marxian systems (Marxism)**
- .5 State socialism and democratic socialism**
- .6 National socialism**
- .7 Christian socialism**
- .8 Other systems**
- .9 Voluntary socialist and anarchist communities**

335.1–335.3 Non- and quasi-Marxian socialism

Class comprehensive works in 335

For national socialism, see 335.6; Christian socialism, 335.7; voluntary socialist communities, 335.9

.1 Systems of English origin**.12 Utopian socialism**

Including Owenism

.14 Fabian socialism**.15 Guild socialism****.2 Systems of French origin**

Examples: Fourierism (Phalansterianism), Babouvism, Icarianism, Saint-Simonism

.3 Systems of American origin**.4 Marxian systems (Marxism)****.401 Philosophy and theory**

Class basic concepts in 335.41

-
- .41 Basic concepts
 - .411 Philosophic foundations
 - Dialectical materialism, historical materialism, theory of knowledge, theory of class struggle
 - Class labor theory of value [*formerly* 335.411] in 335.412
 - .412 Economic concepts
 - Example: labor theory of value [*formerly* 335.411]
 - .413 Aims
 - Social ownership of means of production
 - Class political aims [*formerly* 335.413] in 320.532
-
- 335.42–335.43 Marxian doctrines and systems characteristic of specific historical periods
- Class comprehensive works in 335.4
 - .42 Early period
 - Class First, Second, Vienna Internationals [*all formerly* 335.42] in 329.072
 - .422 Communism (1848–1875)
 - Period of Communist manifesto
 - .423 Scientific socialism (1875–1917)
 - For democratic socialism, see* 335.5
 - .43 Communism (Marxism-Leninism)
 - Communism of post-1917 period
 - Example: Russian communism
 - [.432] Propagation
 - Class in 329.078
 - .433 Trotskyite doctrines
 - .434 National variants
 - Examples: Yugoslav, Chinese, Cuban
 - .436 Critical works
 - .437 Comparative studies
 - Comparison with capitalism, cooperation, other forms of collectivism
 - .438 Attitude toward and influence on other subjects
 - Add 001–999 to base number 335.438, e.g., attitude toward religion 335.4382
 - [.44] Communist international organizations
 - Class in 329.07

.5 State socialism and democratic socialism*For Fabian socialism, see 335.14***.6 National socialism**

Examples: fascism, Nazism, Falangism

.7 Christian socialism

Class voluntary Christian socialist communities in 335.9

.8 Other systems**.82 Syndicalism****.83 Anarchism**

Class voluntary communities in 335.9

.9 Voluntary socialist and anarchist communities

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 335.9

336 Public finance

Financial transactions of governments and their units

Use 336.001-336.008 for standard subdivisions

Class financial administration of governments in 350.72

.01 By governmental level**.012 National****.013 Intermediate**

Examples: state, provincial

.014 Local**.02 Revenue**

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 336.02

Class specific forms of revenue in 336.1-336.2

.09 Historical and geographical treatment**.091 Areas, regions, places in general****.091 6 Associations of sovereign states****.091 62 League of Nations****.091 63 United Nations****.091 68 Regional associations****.093 The ancient world****[.094-.099] Continents, countries, localities in modern world**

Do not use; class in 336.4-336.9

► **336.1–336.2 Revenues**

Class comprehensive works in 336.02

.1 Nontax revenues

For public borrowing, see 336.34

► **336.11–336.15 Commercial revenues**

Class comprehensive works in 336.1

For revenue from public industries and services, see 336.19

.11 From rents and franchises

.12 From public lands

Including mineral rights

For rents and franchises, see 336.11

.15 From deposits, investments, loans

.16 Administrative revenues

Including fees [*formerly* 336.273], licenses [*formerly* 336.274], fines, profits on coinage, gifts

For franchises, see 336.11

.17 Revenues from lotteries

.18 Inter- and intragovernmental revenues

.182 From reparations and interest on war loans

.185 From one government unit to another

Grants from higher units, technical assistance funds, payments in lieu of taxes

.188 From international grants

.19 Revenue from public industries and services

.2 Taxes and taxation

Use 336.2001–336.2009 for standard subdivisions

[.202–.204] **Types of taxes by base**

Numbers discontinued; class in 336.2

SUMMARY

- 336.22 Property taxes**
- .23 Personal property taxes**
- .24 Income taxes**
- .25 Poll taxes**
- .26 Customs taxes (Customs duties)**
- .27 Other taxes**
- .29 Principles of taxation**

-
- [.21] **Direct taxes**
 Class in 336.294
- 336.22–336.27 **Specific taxes**
 Class comprehensive works in 336.2
- 336.22–336.24 **Taxes on wealth and income**
 Class comprehensive works in 336.2
 For estate, inheritance, gift taxes, see 336.276
- .22 **Property taxes**
 Including taxes on land, buildings, permanent improvements
 For personal property taxes, see 336.23
- .23 **Personal property taxes**
 On tangible and intangible property
- .24 **Income taxes**
- .242 **Personal**
- .242 2 **Income from wages**
 Including withholding tax
- .242 4 **Income from property transfers**
 Capital gains and losses
 Class here comprehensive works on taxation of individual and corporate gains and losses
 Class taxation of corporate capital gains in 336.243
- .242 6 **Interest income**
 Class here comprehensive works on taxation of individual and corporate interest income
 Class taxation of corporate interest income in 336.243
- .242 8 **Retirement income**
- .243 **Corporate**
 Including taxes on excess and undistributed profits, on capital gains
 Class here comprehensive works on business taxes
 Class a specific business tax with the subject, e.g., excise taxes 336.271
- .249 **Social security taxes**
 Class social security benefits in 368.4
- .25 **Poll taxes**
- .26 **Customs taxes (Customs duties)**
- .263 **Export and transit taxes**

- .264 **Import taxes**
 For import tax schedules, see 336.265; import taxes on specific commodities, 336.266
- .265 **Import tax schedules**
 For import tax schedules on specific commodities, see 336.266
- .266 **Import taxes and tax schedules on specific commodities**
 Add 001-999 to base number 336.266, e.g., taxes on paintings 336.26675
- .27 **Other taxes**
- .271 **Excise and related taxes**
 Examples: sales, use, sumptuary, luxury taxes
 Class indirect taxes [*formerly* 336.271] in 336.294
- [.271 1-.271 3] **Specific kinds**
 Numbers discontinued; class in 336.271
- .272 **Stamp taxes and revenue stamps**
- [.273] **Fees**
 Class in 336.16
- [.274] **Licenses**
 Class in 336.16
- .276 **Estate, inheritance, gift taxes**
- .278 **Taxes on specific commodities and services**
 Add 001-999 to base number 336.278, e.g., taxes on theater tickets 336.278792
 Class a specific kind of tax on a specific commodity with the kind of tax, e.g., import taxes 336.266
- .29 **Principles of taxation**
- .291 **General principles**
 Adequacy (yield), diversity, economy and convenience of collection, certainty, justice
- .293 **Kinds of rate**
 Progressive, proportional, regressive
- .294 **Incidence**
 Direct taxes [*formerly* 336.21], indirect taxes [*formerly* 336.271]
- [.294 2-.294 4] **Persons and organizations**
 Numbers discontinued; class in 336.294
- [.295] **Economic effects of taxation**

- .3 **Public securities and debt**
 - Class use of fiscal policy in economic stabilization in 339.52
- .31 **Public securities**
 - Former heading: Funded debts
 - Examples: treasury and savings bonds ✓
 - Class investment in public securities in 332.6323
 - For short term securities, see 336.32*
- .32 **Short term securities**
 - Former heading: Unfunded debts (Floating debts)
 - Examples: treasury bills and notes, certificates of indebtedness
- .34 **Public borrowing and public debt**
 - For public securities, see 336.31; debt management, 336.36*
- .343 **By governmental level and source**
- .343 1 Local
- .343 2 Intermediate
 - Examples: state and provincial
- .343 3 National
 - Borrowing from own citizens
- .343 5 International
- .344 **Flotation of loans**
 - Compulsory and voluntary loans, subscriptions, allotments, marketability
- .346 **Limitation of public indebtedness**
- .36 **Debt management**
- .363 **Repayment and redemption**
 - Including sinking funds
- .368 **Repudiation and abrogation**
 - Including public insolvency
- .39 **Expenditure**
 - Character, principles, classification, justification
 - Class economic effects of expenditure in 339.52
- .4-.9 **Public finance by continent, country, locality in modern world**
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 336
- 337 **[Unassigned]**
 - Most recently used in Edition 16

338 Production

Making economic goods and services available for satisfaction of human wants thru extraction, manufacture, transportation, storage, exchange

Class specific factors of production in 331-333, marketing in 380

.001 **Philosophy and theory**

Class a specific theory with the subject, e.g., law of diminishing marginal utility 338.5212

.002-.008 **Other standard subdivisions**

.009 **Historical and geographical treatment of general principles and theories [*formerly* 338.019]**

Class historical and geographical treatment of production in 338.09

.01 **Factors of production**

Class factors of production as costs of production in 338.512

[.012] **Factors of production**

Number discontinued; class in 338.01

[.013] **Costs of production**

Class in 338.51

[.016] **Laws of production**

Class law of supply and demand in 338.521, of diminishing marginal returns in 338.512, of diminishing marginal utility in 338.5212, of comparative advantage in 338.6046

[.018] **Methods**

Class specialization [*formerly* 338.0182] in 338.6046, change (growth and development) [*formerly* 338.0183] in 338.09, competition [*formerly* 338.0185] in 338.6048, control of production [*formerly* 338.0186] in 338.6

[.019] **Historical and geographical treatment of general principles and theories**

Class in 338.009

.02 **Lists of commodities and services**

.04 **Entrepreneurship [*formerly* 338.7]**

.06 **Production efficiency**

Cost-output ratio, effects of technology used

Former heading: Machines in production

Including automation

[.064] **Automation**

Number discontinued; class in 338.06

- .09 **Historical and geographical treatment of production**
 Industrial conditions and situation, existing and potential resources for production
 Including growth and development [*formerly* 338.0183]
 Class here industrial surveys, location of industry, productivity
 Class a specific resource with the subject, e.g., water for power 333.914

SUMMARY

- 338.1 **Agriculture**
 .2 **Mineral industries**
 .3 **Other extractive industries**
 .4 **Secondary industries**
 .5 **General production economics**
 .6 **Organization of production**
 .7 **Organizations and their structure**
 .8 **Combinations**
 .9 **Production programs and policies**

338.1–338.4 Specific kinds of industries

Class comprehensive works in 338, organization of production in specific kinds of industries [*formerly* 338.1–338.4] in 338.6

338.1–338.3 Primary (Extractive) industries

Class comprehensive works in 338

- .1 **Agriculture**
 [.12] **Control**
 Number discontinued; class in 338.1
 .13 **Financial considerations**
 Capital formation, costs, prices, income
 Class government policy in 338.18
 .133–.138 **Prices of specific products**
 Add to 338.13 the numbers following 63 in 633–638, e.g., rice 338.13318
 .15 **Surpluses and shortages**
 From economic and physical causes
 Class food supply in 338.19
 .16 **Production efficiency**
 Cost-output ratio, factors of production, effects of technology used
 Former heading: Machines in production
 Including automation

- .17 Specific products**
 - Add to 338.17 the numbers following 63 in 633–638, e.g., rice 338.17318
 - Class specific elements of production applied to specific products in 338.13–338.16, 338.18; specific producers in 338.76
- .18 Government farm policies**
 - Examples: subsidies, price supports, acreage allotments
 - Class government policies with respect to food supply in 338.19
- .180 9 Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 338.183–338.189
- .181 International policies**
 - Policies and programs of international bodies
- .183–.189 Treatment by continent, country, locality**
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 338.18
- .19 Food supply**
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 338.19
- .2 Mineral industries**
- [.22] Control**
 - Number discontinued; class in 338.2
- .23 Financial considerations**
 - Capital formation, costs, prices, income
- [.25] Maladjustments in production**
 - Number discontinued; class in 338.2
- .26 Production efficiency**
 - Cost-output ratio, factors of production, effect of technology used
 - Former heading: Machines in production
 - Including automation
- .27 Specific products**
 - Add to 338.27 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., water 338.277
 - Class specific elements of production applied to specific products in 338.23–338.26, specific producers in 338.76
- .3 Other extractive industries**
- [.32–.36] Specific elements**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 338.3

- .37 **Specific products**
 Class specific producers in 338.76
- .371 **Products of culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates**
 Add to 338.371 the numbers following 639 in 639.3–639.7, e.g., culture of oysters 338.37141
 Class insect culture in 338.178
- .372 **Products of fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping**
 Add to 338.372 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., sponges 338.37234
- .4 **Secondary industries**
 Class communication industries in 380.3, transportation industries in 380.5 [both formerly 338.4]
- [.42] **Control**
 Number discontinued; class in 338.4
- .43 **Financial considerations**
- .430 01–.439 99 **Prices of specific products**
 Add 001–999 to base number 338.43, e.g., automobile prices 338.436292
- .45 **Production efficiency**
 Cost-output ratio, effect of technology used, factors of production
 Former heading: Machines in production
- .454 **Automation**
 For automation in specific industries, see 338.456
- .456 **Production efficiency in specific industries**
 Class here automation in specific industries
- .456 1 **Service and professional**
 Add 001–999 to base number 338.4561, e.g., automation of office operations 338.4561651
- .456 2–.456 9 **Manufacturing and construction**
 Add to 338.456 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., machines in textile manufacture 338.45677

► **338.46–338.47 Goods and services**

Class comprehensive works in 338.4, specific elements of production applied to specific goods and services in 338.43–338.45, specific producers in 338.76

- .46 **Professional services**
 For specific services, see 338.47

- .47 **Specific goods and services**
 Add 001-999 to base number 338.47, e.g., textile manufacture
 338.47677
- [.49] **Maladjustments in production**
 Number discontinued; class in 338.4
- .5 **General production economics**
 Costs, prices, economic fluctuations (business cycles)
 Class production economics of specific kinds of industries in 338.1-338.4
 For organization of production, see 338.6
- .51 **Costs [formerly 338.013]**
- .512 **Factors of production as costs of production**
 Law of diminishing marginal returns [*formerly* 338.016],
 of factorial proportions
- .514 **Elements in cost calculation**
- .514 2 **Kinds of cost**
 Fixed, variable, average, total, marginal
- .514 4 **Size of enterprise**
 Economies and diseconomies of scale, use of technology
- .516 **Profit**
 Relation of marginal cost to marginal revenue
- .52 **Prices**
 Determination, effects of changes
 Class effect of money on prices in 332.41, effect of costs on prices in
 338.516
- .520 1 **Theory**
 Class specific theories in 338.521
- .520 2 **Miscellany**
- .520 21 **Tubulated and related materials**
- .520 212 **Tables, formulas, specifications**
 Class statistics in 338.528
- .521 **Price theories**
 Class here law of supply and demand [*formerly* 338.016], theories
 of value [*formerly* 330.162]
 Class Marxian labor theory of value in 335.412
- .521 2 **Price-demand relationship**
 Including law of diminishing marginal utility [*formerly* 338.016]
- .521 3 **Price-supply relationship**



338.522–338.526 Determination

Class comprehensive works in 338.52

.522

Determination in free markets

Free markets: markets comprising a number of sellers large enough that no individual seller can affect the price, selling either homogeneous, standardized products (pure competition) or similar but not standardized products (monopolistic competition)

Examples: wheat market, market for brand-name products

Including interproduct competition, e.g., butter versus margarine

.523

Determination in controlled markets

Oligopoly, monopoly

Including price leadership

Class organization structure of combinations and monopolies in 338.8

.526

Determination by government regulation

.528

Levels

Statistics, indexes

.54

Economic fluctuations (Business cycles)

[.540 1]

Theory

Do not use; class in 338.542

.542

Theories of fluctuations

Causes and effects

.543

Remedial and preventive action

Class economic stabilization in 339.5

.544

Business forecasting

.544 2

Methods of forecasting

.544 3

Forecasts

.6

Organization of production

Class here control of production [*formerly* 338.0186], organization of production in specific kinds of industries [*formerly also* 338.1–338.4]

For organizations and their structure, see 338.7

.604

General special

.604 2

Location

Proximity to sources of power, raw materials, markets, labor supply, transportation

.604 6

Specialization [*formerly* 338.0182]

Including law of comparative advantage [*formerly* 338.016]

- .604 8 Competition [formerly 338.018 5] and restraint
 Class monopoly and monopolies in 338.82
- .63 Systems of production
 For factory system, see 338.65
- .632 Guild system [formerly 338.64]
- .634 Domestic (Cottage) industries
 Performance by family unit for hire of stages of manufacture
- .64 Size of enterprises
 Class guild system [formerly 338.64] in 338.632
 Class relation of size of enterprise to cost of production in 338.5144
- .642 Small business
 Including small industries, handicrafts, custom production
- .644 Big business
 Including large industry [formerly 338.65]
 Class monopoly and monopolies in 338.82
- .65 Factory system
 Class large industry [formerly 338.65] in 338.644
- .7 **Organizations and their structure**
 Class entrepreneurship [formerly 338.7] in 338.04
 For cooperatives, see 334; combinations, 338.8
- .71 Formation and dissolution of economic enterprises
-
- ▶ 338.72–338.74 Specific kinds of organizations
 Class comprehensive works in 338.7
- .72 Individual proprietorships
- .73 Partnerships
- .74 Corporations
 Open and closed
 For government corporations, see 350.0092
- .76 Organizations in specific industries
 Class here individual organizations
- .761 Service and professional
 Add 001–999 to base number 338.761, e.g., law firms 338.76134
 Class financial institutions in 332.1–332.3, organizations engaged in
 communication and transportation in 383–388, insurance companies
 in 368

- .762-.769 **Other**
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 338.76 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., agriculture 338.763
 Class technological methods and procedures of a specific organization or kind of organization with the subject, e.g., technical process reports of textile manufacturing companies 677
- .8 Combinations**
 Organization and structure for massive production and control of production
- .804 **General special**
- .804 2 **Kinds of combinations**
 Horizontal, vertical, conglomerate
- .82 **Monopoly and monopolies**
- .826 **In specific industries**
- .826 1 **Service and professional**
 Add 001-999 to base number 338.8261, e.g., in newspaper publishing 338.826107
- .826 2-.826 9 **Other**
 Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 Add to 338.826 the numbers following 6 in 620-690, e.g., in gem diamond mining 338.82622382
- .83 **Mergers and amalgamations**
- .85 **Trusts**
- .86 **Holding companies**
- .87 **Informal arrangements**
 Interlocking directorates, pools, cartels
 For international cartels, see 338.88
- .88 **International**
 Including international cartels, foreign-owned subsidiaries
- .9 Production programs and policies**
 Examples: control, subsidies, grants by government, nationalization
 Use 338.9001-338.9008 for standard subdivisions
 Class production programs and policies with respect to specific kinds of industries in 338.1-338.4
- .900 9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class treatment by country and locality in 338.93-338.99
- .902 **Autarky (Self-sufficiency)**

.903 Interdependence**.91 International**

Foreign economic policies, relations, assistance

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 338.91, e.g., foreign economic policy of United Kingdom 338.9142; then, for foreign economic relations between two countries, regions, areas, places, add 0 and again add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2, e.g., economic relations between United Kingdom and France 338.9142044

Give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place emphasized. If the emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations

If preferred, give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class foreign economic relations between United States and France in 338.9173044

.93-.99 National, state, provincial, local

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 338.9

339 Macroeconomics

Behavior and functioning of the economy as a totality; national income, saving, investment, consumption

Former heading: Distribution of capital goods and consumption of consumer goods

Class money and banking in 332.1-332.4

For economic fluctuations, see 338.54

.2 Income distribution and accounting

National, regional, local

For measures of national income, see 339.3

.201 Theories of income [formerly 330.163]**.21 Functional distribution of income**

Compensation of employees, proprietor's income, rental income, corporate profits, payments for use of invested capital

.23 Input-output accounts (Interindustry accounts)

Accounts and analysis of goods and services provided by each industry for all other industries and consuming units

.26 Flow-of-funds accounts

Sources of funds paid to and use of funds by various sectors of the economy

.3 Measures of national income**.309 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class income accounts of specific countries and localities in 339.33-339.39

-
- .31 **Gross national product (GNP)**
 Aggregate expenditures for current output of final goods by government, business, domestic and foreign consumers
 - .310 9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class gross national product of specific countries and localities in 339.33–339.39
 - .32 **Other measures**
 Net national product (NNP), national income (NI), personal income (PI), disposable personal income (DPI)
 - .320 9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class measures of income of specific countries and localities in 339.33–339.39
 - .33–.39 **Income accounts of specific countries and localities**
 Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 339.3
 - .4 **Factors affecting national income**
 Former heading: Consumption and conservation of income and wealth
 For economic stabilization, see 339.5
 - .41 **Income-consumption relations**
 Marginal propensities to consume and save at various levels of income; multiplier effect, consumer response to decreases and increases in income
 Former heading: Personal income
 - .42 **Costs and prices**
 Class standard of living [*formerly 339.42*] in 339.47
 - .43 **Savings and investment**
 Including hoarding [*formerly 339.46*]
 - .46 **Economic causes and effects of poverty**
 Former heading: Underconsumption
 Class hoarding [*formerly 339.46*] in 339.43
 - .47 **Consumption**
 Including standard of living [*formerly 339.42*], control of consumption
 For income-consumption relations, see 339.41; effects of poverty, 339.46; consumption of specific commodities, 339.48
 - .48 **Consumption of specific commodities**
 Add 001–999 to base number 339.48, e.g., consumption of agricultural products 339.4863
 - .49 **Conservation of national resources**
 Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 339.49
 Class conservation policies for natural resources in 333.7–333.9

- .5 Economic stabilization and growth**
- .52 Use of fiscal policy**
 - Taxation, spending, public debt, debt management
 - Including economic effects of taxation [*formerly* 336.295], of expenditure
- .53 Use of monetary policy**
 - Changes in bank reserves, rediscount rates, sale and purchase of government securities

340 Law

This schedule is completely new, prepared with little or no reference to earlier editions and assigning new meanings to most numbers. Such numbers are italicized

If preferred, class law of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 026 from Table 1, e.g., law of education 370.26

- [.01] Philosophy and theory**
 - Do not use; class in 340.1
- .02 Miscellany**
- .03 Dictionaries**
 - Class encyclopedias in 348.06
- .04-.09 Other standard subdivisions**
- .1 Philosophy and theory**
 - Class here jurisprudence
 - Class natural law [*formerly* 340.1] in 171.2
 - For theory of specific systems of law, see 340.5*
- .109 Legal theories and schools**
 - Biography, description, critical appraisal of work of individual theorists
 - Do not add "Areas" notations 1-9 from Table 2
- .11 Special topics**
 - Including origin, sources, nature, limits of law; rule of law; legal reasoning; justice
- .112 Law and ethics**
 - Including law and morality
- .115 Law and society**
 - Including law and state
- .2 Comparative law**
- .3 Law reform**

.5 Systems of law

History and theory

Class religious laws of a specific religious body with the body, e.g., Christian canon law 262.9, Islamic law relating to religious matters (Tawhid) 297.14; law of specific countries in 340.09

.52 Primitive law

Law of preliterate peoples regardless of time or place

Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 340.52

.53 Ancient law

Add "Areas" notation 3 from Table 2 to base number 340.5, e.g., law of ancient Greece 340.538

Class ancient Oriental law in 340.58

For Roman law, see 340.54

.54 Roman law

Including Byzantine law

For medieval Roman law, see 340.55

.55 Medieval European law

Including feudal law, medieval Roman law

.56 Civil law systems

Systems of law derived from Roman law

Including Roman-Dutch law

.57 Common law systems

Including equity

.58 Oriental law

Indigenous systems

Class systems of law in Oriental countries derived from a European system with the system from which derived, e.g., civil law 340.56; law in a specific Oriental country with the country, e.g., Japan 340.0952

For Islamic law, see 340.59

.59 Islamic law (Fiqh)

Law relating to civil matters

[.6] Medical jurisprudence (Forensic medicine)

Class in 614.19

.9 Conflict of laws

The body of rules governing choice of jurisdiction in cases in private law which fall under the laws of two or more such jurisdictions

Class here private international law

Class domestic conflict of laws in 342.042

341 International law**.01 Theory**

Class critical works on individual publicists (theorists) in 341.1

.013 Value and function

Including role of international law in peace

.02 Miscellany**.026 Treaties and cases**

Texts of treaties; judicial decisions, guides

Including protocols, conventions

Class treaties and cases on a specific subject with the subject in international law, using this extended standard subdivision 026, e.g., collections of treaties on air transportation 341.46026



341.026 1–341.026 6 Treaties

Class comprehensive works in 341.026



341.026 1–341.026 3 Series of treaties compiled by international organizations

Class comprehensive works in 341.026, specific kinds of treaties regardless of compiling organization in 341.0265–341.0266

.026 1 League of Nations series of treaties

Class League of Nations series relating to a specific area in 341.0264

.026 2 United Nations series of treaties

Class United Nations series relating to a specific area in 341.0264

.026 3 Series of treaties compiled by regional organizations

Add to 341.0263 the numbers following 341.24 in 341.242–341.249, e.g., series compiled by Organization of American States 341.02635

.026 4 Collections of treaties by area

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 341.0264

Class collections of treaties relating to a specific area compiled by regional organizations in 341.0263, collections of specific kinds of treaties by area in 341.0265–341.0266



341.026 5–341.026 6 Kinds of treaties

Collections and individual treaties

Class comprehensive works in 341.026

.026 5 Multilateral treaties

.026 6

Bilateral treaties

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 341.0266, e.g., treaties of United Kingdom 341.026642; then add 0 and again add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2, e.g., treaties between United Kingdom and France 341.026642044

Give priority in notation to the country coming first in the sequence of area notations

If preferred, give priority in notation to the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class treaties between United Kingdom and United States in 341.026673042

.026 8

Cases

Decisions and reports

.04

Relation of international and domestic law**SUMMARY****341.1 Sources of international law****.2 The world community****.3 Relations between states****.4 Jurisdiction and jurisdictional relations of states****.5 Disputes and conflicts between states****.6 Law of war****.7 International cooperation****.1 Sources of international law**

Treaties, judicial decisions, custom, general principles of law, works of publicists

Class here critical works on individual publicists

Class texts of treaties and reports of judicial decisions in 341.026; writings of publicists with the subject in international law, e.g., international rivers 341.442

.2 The world community

Including world government

Class here international persons and personality

341.22-341.24 Corporate bodies

Class comprehensive works in 341.2, legal aspects of specialized world agencies with the subject in international law, e.g., World Health Organization 341.765

.22

League of Nations

Add to 341.22 the numbers following 341.23 in 341.232-341.239, e.g., Covenant of League 341.222

- .23 United Nations
 - .232 Organization
 - Charter, General Assembly, Security Council, Secretariat, other organs
 - .233 Administration
 - Membership, admission, finance, officials and employees
 - .234–239 General relations with specific nations
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 341.23
 - Class relations dealing with a specific subject with the subject in international law, e.g., United Nations peacekeeping operations in the Congo 341.58
 - .24 Regional associations and organizations
 - .242 European
 - .243 Atlantic
 - .245 Western Hemisphere
 - .246 Pacific
 - .247 Asian
 - .247 3 Far East
 - Including Southeast Asia
 - .247 7 Western Asia
 - Class here Middle East
 - Including Arab League
 - .249 African
 - For Arab League, see 341.2477*
-
- 341.26–341.29 Territorially organized bodies
- Class comprehensive works in 341.2
 - .26 States
 - Sovereignty, origin, succession, termination
 - Including recognition of states and governments
 - Class here liability of states
 - For semisovereign and dependent states, see 341.27; relations between states, 341.3; jurisdiction of states, 341.4*
 - .27 Semisovereign and dependent states
 - Mandates, protectorates, trusteeships, satellites, vassal states
 - .28 Nonself-governing territories
 - .29 Areas having special status in international law
 - Examples: Berlin, neutralized states

.3 Relations between states

For jurisdictional relations, see 341.4; disputes, 341.5; cooperation, 341.7

.33 Diplomacy

Diplomatic procedures, personnel, agencies, privileges and immunities
Including consular officials and functions, officials and representatives
of international organizations

.37 Treaties

Negotiation and ratification, validity and binding force,
termination, interpretation

Class texts of treaties in 341.026

.4 Jurisdiction and jurisdictional relations of states

Class here servitudes and easements, rights of innocent passage

**341.42–341.47 Jurisdiction over physical space**

Class comprehensive works in 341.4

.42 Territory

Acquisition, boundaries

Class boundary rivers in 341.442

.44 Bodies of water

Class here maritime law, water transportation

.442 Rivers

National, semi-national, boundary, internationalized rivers

Including combined river, lake, canal systems, e.g.,
Saint Lawrence Seaway

.444 Lakes and landlocked seas

Class combined river, lake, canal systems in 341.442

.446 Canals and straits

Class combined river, lake, canal systems in 341.442

.448 Ocean and sea waters

Territorial waters and their extensions, bays and ports

For high seas, see 341.45

.45 High seas

Class fisheries, pollution control, conservation of sea resources in 341.762

.46 Airspace

Over land and sea

Including air transportation

-
- .47 Extraterrestrial space
 - Space beyond earth's atmosphere
 - Including moon and planetary bodies
 - .48 Jurisdiction over persons
 - Including jurisdiction of state over its nationals in other areas
 - Class private international law in 340.9
 - .481 Basic human rights
 - .482 Nationality and citizenship
 - .484 Jurisdiction over aliens
 - Rights and obligations of aliens
 - Including immigration, passports, visas
 - Class liability of states for aliens in 341.26, criminal jurisdiction over aliens in 341.488
 - For stateless persons and refugees, see 341.486*
 - .486 Jurisdiction over stateless persons and refugees
 - .488 Criminal jurisdiction
 - Over citizens, aliens
 - Including extraterritoriality, extradition, right of asylum
 - Class international crimes in 341.77
 - .5 **Disputes and conflicts between states**
 - Class disputes on a specific subject with the subject in international law, e.g., jurisdictional disputes 341.4
 - For law of war, see 341.6*
 - .52 Peaceful settlement
 - Negotiation, mediation, conciliation, arbitration
 - Including role of international organizations
 - For adjudication, see 341.55*
 - .55 Adjudication
 - Courts and court procedure
 - Including role of domestic courts in adjudicating matters of public international law
 - .58 Coercive methods of settlement short of war
 - Intervention, boycott, peaceful blockade, retorsion and reprisal, sanctions, rupture of diplomatic relations
 - Including role of international organizations, international armed forces, intervention in internal affairs

- .6 Law of war**
- .62 General principles**
 - Legality, justification, opening of hostilities
- .63 Conduct of war**
 - Weapons; espionage; land, naval, air warfare
 - Including intercourse between belligerents
- .64 Neutrality and neutral nations**
 - Class status of nationals of neutral nations in 341.67
- .65 Treatment of sick, wounded, prisoners**
 - Including granting of quarter
- .66 Termination of war**
 - Treaties, laws of occupation
 - Including restitution, indemnification, reparations
 - Class texts of treaties in 341.026
- .67 Individuals**
 - Status of enemy aliens, nationals of neutral nations, combatants, noncombatants
- .68 International law and civil war**
 - Including recognition of belligerency
- .69 War crimes**
- .7 International cooperation**

SUMMARY

- 341.72 Defense and mutual security**
- .73 Peace and disarmament**
- .75 International economic law**
- .76 Social law and cultural relations**
- .77 International criminal law**
- .78 International judicial cooperation**
- .72 Defense and mutual security**
 - Including civil defense, international security forces
- .722 Peaceful (Friendly) occupation**
 - Including status of forces
- .725 Bases and other military installations**
 - Including use of territory
- .728 Military assistance**
 - Including military missions, production agreements, loan and sale of equipment

- .73 Peace and disarmament
 - Including suspension of weapons testing
- .75 International economic law
 - Class fisheries in 341.762, labor in 341.763
- .751 Monetary law
 - Including monetary exchange
- .752 Investments
 - Class municipal law with respect to foreign investments in 346.092
- .753 Organization and conduct of business
 - Including combinations, monopoly, unfair competition, restraint of trade
- .754 Trade and commerce
- .754 3 Tariffs
 - Class tariffs on specific commodities in 341.7547
- .754 7 Trade in specific commodities
 - Add to 341.7547 the numbers following 380.14 in 380.141–380.145, e.g., rice 341.75471318
- .755 Power and power resources
- .756 Transportation
 - For water transportation, see 341.44, air transportation, 341.46*
- .757 Communications
- .757 3 Postal
- .757 7 Telecommunications
- .758 Copyright, patents, trademarks
- .759 Economic and social development
 - Economic and technical assistance, voluntary service groups
- .76 Social law and cultural relations
 - For economic and social development, see 341.759*
- .762 Conservation of natural resources
 - Including fisheries and fishing, pollution control
- .763 Labor
- .765 Public health
- .767 Educational, scientific, cultural relations
 - Including exchanges of persons

- .77 International criminal law
 Piracy, slave trade, white slave traffic, drug traffic, traffic in obscene publications, counterfeiting
For war crimes, see 341.69
- .78 International judicial cooperation
 Judicial assistance, status of judgments of foreign courts, letters rogatory
For extradition, see 341.488



342–348 Municipal law

Law of individual states and nations

Add to each subdivision the following extended standard subdivision:

- 026 Laws, regulations, cases, procedure, courts
- 026 2 Preliminary materials
 - Bills, hearings, reports, executive messages, statements of witnesses, legislative histories, slip laws
- 026 3 Laws and regulations
- 026 32 Collected laws
 - Including proposed and uniform codes
- 026 33 Individual laws
- 026 36 Administrative regulations
 - Collections and individual regulations
- 026 38 Guides to laws and regulations
 - Digests, citators, checklists, tables, indexes
- 026 4 Cases
 - Do not use for casebooks
 - Reports
 - Court decisions
 - Decisions (Rulings) of regulatory agencies
 - Guides
 - Digests, citators, checklists, tables, indexes
 - Including loose-leaf services
 - Class here guides to laws, regulations, cases
 - For guides to laws and regulations, see 02638*
- 026 5 Advisory opinions of attorneys-general (ministers of justice)
- 026 9 Courts and procedure
 - Including administrative courts, regulatory agencies; practice, rules, form books

If preferred, class laws, regulations, cases on specific subjects in law in 348, courts and procedure in specific fields in 347

Class comprehensive works in 340

342–345 Public law

Class comprehensive works in 342

342 Constitutional and administrative law

Class here comprehensive works on public law

Use 342.001–342.009 for standard subdivisions

For miscellaneous public law, see 343; social law, 344; criminal law, 345

.02 Constitutions and other basic instruments of government

Class here municipal charters

For revision and amendment, see 342.03

.023 Texts

Including annotated texts

.024 Sources

Examples: records, debates of constitutional conventions

.029 History

For sources, see 342.024

.03 Revision and amendment of constitutions and other basic instruments

Amending procedure; history of amendments

Including proposed amendments

Class amendments dealing with a specific subject with the subject in constitutional law, e.g., mode of selection of chief executive 342.062

.04 Structure of government

Class government corporations in 346.067

.042 Levels of government

Including federalism, federal structure, relations between levels, relations between subordinate units of same level, domestic conflict of laws

.044 Branches of government

Including distribution and separation of powers, relations between branches

For legislative branch, see 342.05; executive branch, 342.06; judicial branch, 347

.05 Legislative branch of government

Powers, functions, duties, privileges and immunities of legislators, modes of selection, legislative procedure

-
- .06 **Executive branch of government**
 - Powers, functions, duties, terms of office, modes of selection
 - Class here administrative law
 - .062 **Chief and deputy chief executives**
 - Including martial law
 - .064 **Executive departments and ministries**
 - .066 **Administrative procedure**
 - Legislative and judicial functions of executive branch
 - Including regulatory agencies, administrative courts, ombudsmen
 - Class regulatory agencies, administrative courts dealing with a specific subject with the subject in law using extended standard subdivision 0269, e.g., Civil Aeronautics Board of United States 343.730970269
 - .068 **Officials and employees**
 - Including civil service
 - .07 **Election law**
 - Including right to vote
 - Class mode of selection of executives in 342.06
 - .08 **Jurisdiction of governmental units over persons**
 - Including residence status of persons in local jurisdictions
 - .082 **Entrance to and exit from national domain**
 - Immigration, emigration, passports, visas, quotas
 - .083 **Citizenship and nationality**
 - Including status of aliens
 - .085 **Individual rights**
 - For right to vote, see 342.07*
 - .087 **Status of groups and social aggregates**
 - Religious, racial, political groups
 - Including political parties
 - .088 **Government liability**
 - For liability of schools, school officials, school districts, see 344.075*
 - .09 **Local government**
 - Class specific local governments in 342.3–342.9

.3-.9 Specific jurisdictions

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 342, e.g., constitutional and administrative law of Australia 342.94, of New South Wales 342.944; then to the result add the numbers following 342 in 342.001-342.09, e.g., election law of Australia 342.9407, of New South Wales 342.94407

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to constitutional and administrative law of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 342 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for constitutional and administrative law of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive base number by adding to 342 the numbers following the base "Areas" notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., constitutional and administrative law of Australia 342, of New South Wales 342.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., election law of Australia 342.07, of New South Wales 342.407

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., United States "Areas" notation 73, states of United States 74-.79), add to 342 that part of the "Areas" notation that changes, e.g., constitutional and administrative law of United States 342, of Pennsylvania 342.48. Class constitutional and administrative law of Hawaii in 342.99

(If option is chosen, class comparative constitutional and administrative law, constitutional and administrative law of other jurisdictions in 349.2)

343 Miscellaneous public law

Use 343.001-343.009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

- 343.01 Veterans' law, and military and defense law
- .02 Law of public property
- .03 Law of public finance
- .04 Tax law
- .05 Kinds of taxes by base
- .06 Kinds of taxes by incidence
- .07 Regulation of industry
- .08 Regulation of trade
- .09 Control of public utilities (regulated industries)
- .01 Veterans' law, and military and defense law
- .011 Veterans' law

343.012–343.019 Military and defense law

Class here war and emergency legislation

Class comprehensive works in 343.01; a specific aspect of military, war, defense, emergency legislation not provided for here with the subject in law, e.g., regulation of industry 343.07

For martial law, see 342.062

- .012 **Manpower procurement**
 - Draft, conscription, selective service, recruitment
 - Including conscientious objectors, reserves
- .013 **Military services**
 - Organization, training, pay, leave, allowances, living conditions
 - For discipline and conduct, see 343.014; specific military services, 343.016–343.019*
- .014 **Discipline [*formerly* 355.1332] and conduct**
 - Including awards and incentives, enforcement, offenses
- .014 3 **Military courts and court procedure**
- .014 6 **Military penology**
 - Including probation and parole
- .015 **Laws governing armies**
- .016–.019 **Specific military services**
 - Add to 343.01 the numbers following 35 in 356–359, e.g., naval law 343.019
 - Class discipline and conduct of specific services in 343.014, manpower procurement of specific services in 343.012
 - For laws governing armies, see 343.015*
- .02 **Law of public property**
 - Acquisition, disposal, regulation and control
- .023 **Personal property**
- .025 **Real property**
 - Including eminent domain, nationalization
 - Class government regulation of private and public real property in 346.044
- .03 **Law of public finance**
- .032 **Monetary law**
 - Currency, coinage, foreign exchange
 - Class international law of monetary exchange in 341.751

- .034 **Budgetary law**
 Accounting, auditing, expenditures
 For revenue law, see 343.036
- .036 **Revenue law**
 For public borrowing and debt, see 343.037; tax law, 343.04
- .037 **Public borrowing and debt**
 Class government securities in 346.092
- .04 **Tax law**
 Class here tax planning
 For specific kinds of taxes, see 343.05–343.06
- .042 **Assessment and collection**
 Class assessment and collection of specific kinds of taxes in 343.05–
 343.06, tax evasion in 345.0233
- .043 **Taxes by level**
 National, state, local
 Class specific kinds of taxes regardless of level in 343.05–343.06

343.05–343.06 Specific kinds of taxes

Class comprehensive works in 343.04, social security taxes in 344.02

- .05 **Kinds of taxes by base**
- .052 **Income tax**
 Including withholding, capital gains, profits taxes
- .053 **Estate, inheritance, gift taxes**
 Including estate planning
- .054 **Property taxes**
 Real and personal
- .055 **Excise and transaction taxes**
 Examples. sales, use, sumptuary, luxury, added value taxes
 Including taxes on specific commodities and services
- .056 **Customs taxes (Tariff)**
- .057 **Stamp taxes and duties**
- .06 **Kinds of taxes by incidence**
 Class taxes on specific bases regardless of incidence in 343.05
- .062 **On individuals**
 Including those engaged in specific businesses and occupations
- .064 **On fiduciary trusts**

- .066 **On organizations**
 Including partnerships
 For taxes on corporations, see 343.067
- .067 **On corporations**
- .068 **On business enterprises**
 Including small business taxes
 Class taxes on specific types of business organizations in 343.066,
 on individuals engaged in business in 343.062
- .07 **Regulation of industry**
 Including consumption control (rationing)
 Class here consumer protection, comprehensive works on regulation of
 industry and trade
 Class public health and safety measures in 344.04; regulation of real
 estate business in 346.0437, of banks in 346.082, of insurance companies
 and agencies in 346.086, of organizations engaged in marketing securities
 in 346.092
 *For regulation of organization, see 346.06; of trade, 343.08;
 of public utilities, 343.09*

▶ 343.072–343.075 Specific aspects of regulation

Class comprehensive works in 343.07; regulation of specific industries
 regardless of aspect in 343.076–343.078; a specific aspect of industrial
 regulation not provided for here with the subject in law, e.g., wages
 344.0121

- .072 **Unfair practices**
 Including industrial espionage, rebates, disparagement
 Class here antitrust law
- .072 3 **Restraint of trade**
- .072 5 **Price fixing and discrimination**
- .074 **Economic assistance**
 Domestic and foreign
 Examples: price supports, subsidies
 Including government loans, mortgage insurance
- .075 **Production controls**
 Quantity and quality controls, weights and measures,
 packaging (containers)
 Including economic planning
 Class subsidies in 343.074

► 343.076–343.078 Specific industries and services

Class comprehensive works in 343.07

.076 Agriculture and agricultural industries

Including forestry, fisheries

.077 Mineral industries

.078 Secondary industries and services

.08 Regulation of trade

Class here commodity exchanges and exchange transactions

► 343.082–343.084 General considerations

Class comprehensive works in 343.08, general considerations applied to specific kinds of trade in 343.087–343.088, general considerations applied to specific commodities in 343.085

.082 Advertising and labeling

.083 Prices

.084 Marketing

Including quotas, agreements

.085 Specific commodities

Add to 343.085 the numbers following 380.14 in 380.141–380.145, e.g., rice 343.0851318

Class a specific kind of trade in a specific commodity in 343.087–343.088

► 343.087–343.088 Specific kinds of trade

Class comprehensive works in 343.08

.087 Foreign (International) trade

Add to 343.087 the numbers following 380.14 in 380.141–380.145, e.g., rice 343.0871318

Class tariffs in 343.056

.088 Domestic trade

Class here interstate commerce, wholesale and retail trade

Add to 343.088 the numbers following 380.14 in 380.141–380.145, e.g., rice 343.0881318

.09 Control of public utilities (regulated industries)

SUMMARY

- 343.091 General considerations**
- .092 Water and power supply**
- .093 Transportation**
- .094 Road and highway transportation**
- .095 Rail transportation**
- .096 Water transportation**
- .097 Air and space transportation**
- .098 Local transportation**
- .099 Communications**

.091 General considerations

Rates, rate-making, operations, facilities, services

Class general considerations applied to specific utilities in 343.092–343.099

343.092–343.099 Specific utilities

Class comprehensive works in 343.09

.092 Water and power supply

Including electric, gas, atomic power

.093 Transportation

Including pipelines

Class safety in transportation in 344.047

For specific kinds of transportation, see 343.094–343.098

343.094–343.098 Specific kinds of transportation

Class comprehensive works in 343.093

343.094–343.097 Nonlocal transportation

Class comprehensive works in 343.093

.094 Road and highway transportation

Class traffic accidents in 346.032, police traffic services in 344.05233, traffic offenses in 345.0247

.094 2 Roads and highways

.094 4 Vehicles

Class property laws relating to vehicles in 346.047

For vehicle operation, see 343.0946

.094 6 Vehicle operation and traffic control

.094 8 Commercial services

Bus and truck

For vehicles, see 343.0944

.095 Rail transportation

Class property laws relating to rights-of-way in 346.043

.095 2 Stationary facilities

Tracks, yards, stations, signals

.095 5 Rolling stock

Locomotives, cars

.095 8 Services

Passenger, freight

.096 Water transportation

Class here maritime, admiralty law

Class international maritime law in 341.44; a specific subject of maritime or admiralty law not provided for here with the subject in law, e.g., maritime contracts 346.02

► 343.096 2-343.096 4 Specific kinds of water transportation

Class comprehensive works in 343.096; facilities, operations, services of specific kinds of transportation in 343.0965-343.0968

.096 2 Ocean

.096 4 Inland waterway

Including interoceanic waterways

► 343.096 5-343.096 8 Facilities, operations, services

Class comprehensive works in 343.096

.096 5 Ships

Including papers, registry, qualifications of officers and crews

.096 6 Navigation and rules of the road

.096 7 Ports and harbors

Including services, e.g., warehousing, towing and tug services

.096 8 Services

Passenger, freight

For services of ports and harbors, see 343.0967

.097 **Air and space transportation**

▶ 343.097 5–343.097 8 Air transportation

 Class comprehensive works in 343.097

.097 5 **Aircraft**

 Including papers, registry, qualifications of officers and crews

.097 6 **Air navigation and traffic control**

.097 7 **Airports and landing fields**

 Including services, e.g., hangars

For traffic control, see 343.0976

.097 8 **Air transportation services**

 Passenger, freight

For services of airports and landing fields, see 343.0977

.097 9 **Space transportation**

.098 **Local transportation**

 Class traffic accidents in 346.032, police traffic services in 344.05233, traffic offenses in 345.0247

.098 1 **Pedestrian traffic**

.098 2 **Street (Vehicular) traffic**

.098 3 **Rail traffic**

 Surface, subsurface, elevated

.099 **Communications**

.099 2 **Postal service**

.099 4 **Telecommunication**

 Radio, television, telephone, telegraph

.099 8 **Press law**

 Class libel in 346.034, freedom of press in 342.085, censorship in 344.0531

.3-.9 Specific jurisdictions

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 343, e.g., miscellaneous public law of Australia 343.94, of New South Wales 343.944; then to the result add the numbers following 343 in 343.001-343.099, e.g., tax law of Australia 343.9404, of New South Wales 343.94404

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to miscellaneous public law of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 343 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for miscellaneous public law of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive base number by adding to 343 the numbers following the base "Areas" notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., miscellaneous public law of Australia 343, of New South Wales 343.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., tax law of Australia 343.04, of New South Wales 343.404

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., United States "Areas" notation 73, states of United States 74-79), add to 343 that part of the "Areas" notation that changes, e.g., miscellaneous public law of United States 343, of Pennsylvania 343.48. Class miscellaneous public law of Hawaii in 343.99

(If option is chosen, class comparative miscellaneous public law, miscellaneous public law of other jurisdictions in 349.3)

344 Social law

Use 344.001-344.009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

- 344.01 Labor**
 - .02 Social insurance**
 - .03 Welfare**
 - .04 Public health**
 - .05 Public order, safety, morals**
 - .06 Public works**
 - .07 Education and schools**
 - .08 Educational and cultural exchanges**
 - .09 Culture and religion**

.01 Labor

Add to 344.01 the numbers following 331 in 331.1-331.8, e.g., child labor law 344.0134

.02 Social insurance

Add to 344.02 the numbers following 368.4 in 368.41-368.48, e.g., workmen's compensation insurance 344.021

- .03 Welfare
- .031-.032 Welfare work and services
- Add to 344.03 the numbers following 36 in 361-362, e.g.,
welfare work of charitable trusts 344.03176
- Class adoption of children in 346.017
- For penal institutions, see 344.035*
- .035 Penal institutions
- Add to 344.035 the numbers following 365 in 365.3-365.7, e.g.,
law governing convict labor 344.03565
- .04 Public health
- .041 Medical personnel and their activities
- Physicians, specialists, technicians, nurses, public health personnel
- .042 Product control
- Control for purity, safety
- Examples: purity of food, drugs, cosmetics; safety of automobiles,
toys, wearing apparel
- .043 Control of disease
- Control of carriers, quarantine, immunization measures
- Including control of specific diseases
- For mental health, see 344.044*
- .044 Mental health
- Including addictions
- .045 Disposal of dead
- .046 Control of environment
- .046 2 Waste disposal
- Examples: garbage collection, sewerage
- .046 3 Pollution and noise control
- .046 4 Sanitation in places of public assembly
- Examples: hotels, restaurants
- For industrial hygiene, see 344.0465*
- .046 5 Industrial hygiene and safety
- .047 Safety
- Including safety in recreation, in use of hazardous materials,
in transportation
- Class product safety in 344.042
- For industrial safety, see 344.0465; public safety, 344.05*
- .048 Birth control
- .049 Veterinary public health

.05 Public order, safety, morals

Add to 344.05 the numbers following 363 in 363.2–363.4, e.g., police services 344.052

For criminal investigation and law enforcement, see 345.052

.06 Public works

Add 001–999 to base number 344.06, e.g., public housing 344.063635

.07 Education and schools

Unless other instructions appear, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this topic in the number coming last in the schedule, e.g., finance of elementary public schools by local governments 344.076 (not 344.074, 344.073, or 344.071)

For educational exchanges, see 344.08

344.071–344.072 Kinds of schools

Class comprehensive works in 344.07

.071 Public schools**.072 Private schools****.073 By level of government**

National, state, local

.074 By level of education

Primary, secondary, higher

.075 Liability of schools, school officials, school districts**.076 School finance**

Including government aid to private education

.077 Content of education

Curriculums, courses of study, textbooks

.078 Teachers and teaching

Including examination, certification, registration, appointment of teachers

.079 Students

Including compulsory education, right to education

.079 1 Education of exceptional students

Add to 344.0791 the numbers following 371.9 in 371.91–371.97, e.g., education of blind students 344.079111

.079 2 Attendance

Including truancy, school year and day

.079 3 Discipline and student rights

- .079 4 Student services
 - Examples: counseling, personnel services
 - Class child welfare in 344.0327
- .079 6 Religion in schools
- .079 8 Segregation and discrimination
- .08 Educational and cultural exchanges
- .09 Culture and religion
 - Including knowledge, information
- .092 Libraries and archives
- .093 Museums and galleries
- .094 Historical buildings and monuments
- .095 Science
- .097 The arts
- .099 Amusements
 - Examples: boxing, horse racing
 - Class law of gambling in 344.0542

.3-9 Specific jurisdictions

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 344, e.g., social law of Australia 344.94, of New South Wales 344.944; then to the result add the numbers following 344 in 344.001-344.099, e.g., labor law of Australia 344.9401, of New South Wales 344.94401

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to social law of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 344 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for social law of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive base number by adding to 344 the numbers following the base "Areas" notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., social law of Australia 344, of New South Wales 344.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., labor law of Australia 344.01, of New South Wales 344.401

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., United States "Areas" notation 73, states of United States 74-79), add to 344 that part of the "Areas" notation that changes, e.g., social law of United States 344, of Pennsylvania 344.48. Class social law of Hawaii in 344.99

(If option is chosen, class comparative social law, social law of other jurisdictions in 349.4)

345 Criminal law

Use 345.001–345.009 for standard subdivisions

.01 Criminal courts

Jurisdiction, officials, court management

Including public prosecutors, public defenders, legal aid

For juvenile courts, see 345.08

**345.02–345.04 General considerations**

Class comprehensive works in 345

.02 Offenses

Class here trials of specific offenses

Add to 345.02 the numbers following 364.1 in 364.13–364.18, e.g.,
murder 345.02523

.03 Offenders

Examples: principals, accessories, recidivists, juveniles, women

.04 Liability, responsibility, guilt

Including capacity to commit crime; criminal intent;
defenses, e.g., duress

.05 Criminal procedure

Including crime and the press, judicial error

Class here administration of criminal justice, criminal practice,
court rules

*For courts, see 345.01; evidence, 345.06; trials, 345.07;
juvenile procedure, 345.08*

.052 Criminal investigation and law enforcement

Interrogation, surveillance, interception of communication, search
and seizure, warrants, arrest

Including judicial assistance, interstate rendition (extradition)

Class rights of suspects in 345.056, admissibility of results of
investigative procedures as evidence in 345.06

.056 Rights of suspects

Speedy trial, jury trial, services of counsel, habeas corpus,
protection from self-incrimination

Class legal aid in 345.01

.06 Evidence

Class here confessions

Add to 345.06 the numbers following 347.06 in 347.062–347.067, e.g.,
expert testimony 345.067

- .07 **Trials**
 Class trials of specific offenses in 345.02, appellate procedure in criminal cases in 347.08
- .072 **Pretrial procedure**
 Preliminary hearings, pretrial release, arraignment, pleadings, grand jury proceedings, indictment
- .075 **Trial (Courtroom) procedure**
 Defense and prosecution
 Including juries and jury selection, opening statements, examination of witnesses, summations, instructions to jury, verdicts
 For final disposition of cases, see 345.077
- .077 **Final disposition of cases**
 Judgments, sentences, punishments
 Including probation, parole, pardon, rehabilitation (rehabilitation: reinstatement, after service of sentence, of a criminal in personal rights lost by judicial sentence)
- .08 **Juvenile procedure**
 Including juvenile courts
- .3--.9 **Specific jurisdictions**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 345, e.g., criminal law of Australia 345.94, of New South Wales 345.944; then to the result add the numbers following 345 in 345.001-345.08, e.g., law of evidence in Australia 345.9406, in New South Wales 345.94406
 (If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to criminal law of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 345 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for criminal law of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive base number by adding to 345 the numbers following the base "Areas" notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., criminal law of Australia 345, of New South Wales 345.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., law of evidence in Australia 345.06, in New South Wales 345.406
 (For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., United States "Areas" notation 73, states of United States 74-79), add to 345 that part of the "Areas" notation that changes, e.g., criminal law of United States 345, of Pennsylvania 345.48. Class criminal law of Hawaii in 345.99
 (If option is chosen, class comparative criminal law, criminal law of other jurisdictions in 349.5)

346 Private law

Use 346.001–346.009 for standard subdivisions

SUMMARY

- 346.01 Persons and domestic relations**
 - .02 Contracts and agency**
 - .03 Torts (Delicts)**
 - .04 Property**
 - .05 Inheritance, succession, fiduciary trusts, trustees**
 - .06 Associations (Organizations)**
 - .07 Commercial law**
 - .08 Banking and insurance**
 - .09 Securities and negotiable instruments**
- .01 Persons and domestic relations**
- .012 Persons**
 - Names, domiciles, births, deaths
 - For capacity and status of persons, see 346.013*
- .013 Capacity and status of persons**
 - Capacity: the attribute of persons which enables them to perform civil or juristic acts
 - Examples: capacity and status of women, of minors, of aged persons, of persons of unsound mind, of slaves, of racial, ethnic, national, economic groups
- .015 Domestic relations (Family law)**
 - Including affinity (relation which one spouse because of marriage has to blood relatives of the other)
 - For marriage, see 346.016; parent and child, 346.017*
- .016 Marriage**
 - Including certificates, solemnization, common-law marriage, invalid and voidable marriages, marriage contracts
 - Class law relating to property of married persons in 346.04
- .016 3 Husband and wife**
 - Rights and duties
 - Class civil status of married women in 346.013
- .016 6 Divorce, separation, annulment**
 - Including alimony
- .017 Parent and child**
 - Including illegitimacy, legitimation, paternity (affiliation), adoption, parental rights and duties
- .018 Guardian and ward**

.02 Contracts and agency

346.022–346.025 Contracts

Class here liability

Class comprehensive works in 346.02, specific contracts in 346.07

Except as specifically provided for here, class contracts dealing with a specific subject with the subject in law, e.g., contracts of partnership 346.068

For extracontractual liability, see 346.03; criminal liability, 345.04; government liability, 342.088; liability of schools, school officials, school districts, 344.075

.022 General principles of contracts

Parties to contract, consideration, void and voidable contracts, assignments, rescission, breach of contract, remedies

.023 Public (Government) contracts

Including war, defense, research and development contracts

.024 Contracts of service

Including master-servant relationships

Class contracts of service involving bailments in 346.025, agency in 346.029, labor contracts in 344.01891

.025 Contracts involving bailments

Consignment of property to another for custodial care or performance of service

Examples: deposit of goods in warehouses, consignment of goods for transportation, property of guests in inns and hotels, pledges (pawns)

.029 Agency and quasi contract

Including power of attorney, unjust enrichment

.03 Torts (Delicts)

Including defenses, remedies

Class here extracontractual liability; liability of specific classes and groups, e.g., employers; liability for torts of others, e.g., employees

.032 Negligence

Including contributory negligence, accidents

.033 Torts against the person

Assault and battery, false arrest, false imprisonment, malpractice, abuse of legal process, invasion of privacy

For accidents, see 346.032; defamation, 346.034

.034 Defamation

Libel and slander

- .036 **Torts involving property**
 Trover and conversion, trespass, deceit and fraud, nuisance,
 attractive nuisance
- .038 **Strict liability**
 Liability without fault
 Examples: damage caused by children or animals, by hazardous
 activities and occupations, product liability
- .04 **Property**
 Class here marital property relations
 For public property, see 343.02
- .042 **Kinds of interest in property**
 Joint, community, separate property; future interests
 (executory interests, expectancies)
-
- 346.043–346.048 Kinds of property
 Class comprehensive works in 346.04
- .043 **Real property**
 Land, permanent fixtures, natural resources
 For government control and regulation, see 346.044
- .043 2 **Ownership (Land tenure)**
 Types of estate, e.g., fee simple, joint tenancy; incidents of
 ownership, e.g., boundaries, riparian rights
 Including ejectment and recovery
- .043 3 **Horizontal property (Condominiums) and cooperative
 ownership**
- .043 4 **Tenancy**
-
- 346.043 42–346.043 46 General considerations
 Class comprehensive works in 346.0434
- .043 42 **Landlord and tenant**
 Class ejectment in 346.0432
- .043 44 **Rent**
 Including rent control
- .043 46 **Leases**
- .043 48 **Farm tenancy**
 Class specific aspects of farm tenancy in 346.04342–346.04346
- .043 5 **Easements and servitudes**
 Charges or burdens resting upon real estate for benefit or
 advantage of others than owner

- .043 6 **Transfer**
Including acquisition, restrictions on alienation, consolidation of land holdings, real-estate mortgages
Class real-estate business in 346.0437, inheritance and succession in 346.052–346.057
For conveyancing, see 346.0438
- .043 7 **Real-estate business**
Including subdivision of land, valuation of real property
Class regulation of a specific general administrative function of real-estate business with the subject in law, e.g., organization 346.065, wages 344.0121
- .043 8 **Conveyancing**
That part of the lawyer's business which relates to alienation and transmission of property rights from one person to another; framing legal documents intended to create, define, transfer, or extinguish rights
Including deeds, registration and description of land, titles, abstracts of title, title investigations
- .044 **Government control and regulation of real property**
Public and private property
Class here land reform, conservation
For rent control, see 346.04344; regional and city planning, 346.045; control of specific kinds of lands and resources, 346.046
- .045 **Regional and city planning**
Including zoning
- .046 **Government control and regulation of specific kinds of land and natural resources**
Add to 346.046 the numbers following 333 in 333.7–333.9, e.g., control of recreational lands 346.04678
- .047 **Personal property**
Including leasing
For intangible property, see 346.048; sale, 346.072
- .048 **Intangible property**
Class here industrial property (intangible property of an industrial nature, e.g., business names, licenses, goodwill)
For negotiable instruments, see 346.096
- .048 2 **Copyright**
- .048 4 **Design protection**
- .048 6 **Patents**
- .048 8 **Trademarks**

- .05 **Inheritance, succession, fiduciary trusts, trustees**
- 346.052–346.057 Inheritance and succession
- Class here probate law and practice
- Class comprehensive works in 346.052
- .052 **Succession**
- Including intestate succession
- Class here comprehensive works on inheritance and succession
- For testate succession, see 346.054; administration of estates, 346.056*
- .054 **Wills (Testate succession)**
- .056 **Administration of estates**
- Including execution of wills
- For unclaimed estates, see 346.057*
- .057 **Unclaimed estates**
- .059 **Fiduciary trusts and trustees**
- .06 **Associations (Organizations)**
- Organization, ownership, management
- Class here organization of associations engaged in specific types of enterprises, e.g., organization of railroad companies
- Class organization of labor unions in 344.0187
- .062 **General considerations**
- Including names, registration, meetings
- Class general considerations of specific kinds of organizations in 346.064–346.068
- .063 **Accounting**
- Class accounting for specific kinds of organizations in 346.064–346.068
- 346.064–346.068 Specific kinds of organizations
- Class here accounting, meetings
- Class comprehensive works in 346.06
- .064 **Nonprofit organizations**
- Unincorporated societies, trade and professional associations, nonprofit corporations
- Including charitable trusts and foundations
- Class welfare work of charitable trusts and foundations in 344.03176

- .065 **Business enterprises**
 - Including valuation
 - For corporations, see 346.066; unincorporated business organizations, 346.068*
- .065 2 **Small business**
- .066 **Corporations**
 - For nonprofit corporations, see 346.064*
- **346.066 2–346.066 6 Specific aspects of corporation law**
 - Class comprehensive works in 346.066
- .066 2 **Organization**
 - Incorporation, charters, bylaws, promotion, reorganization and merger, liquidation
- .066 4 **Management**
 - Officers, records, meetings, accounting
- .066 6 **Securities and security holders**
 - Including shareholders' voting and meetings
 - Class securities marketing in 346.092
- .066 8 **Kinds of corporations**
 - Including close corporations, family corporations, private companies, cooperatives
 - Class specific aspects of corporation law applied to specific kinds of corporations in 346.0662–346.0666
 - For government corporations, see 346.067*
- .067 **Government corporations**
 - Class municipal corporations in 342.09
- .068 **Unincorporated business enterprises**
 - Example: partnerships
- .07 **Commercial law**
 - Class regulation of industry and trade in 343.07–343.09
 - For banking and insurance, see 346.08; securities and negotiable instruments, 346.09*
- .072 **Sale**
 - Class secured sales transactions in 346.074, sale of real property in 346.0436
- .073 **Loan**
 - Including agricultural and consumer credit, interest
 - Class secured loan transactions in 346.074

- .074 **Secured transactions**
Examples: chattel mortgages, liens, suretyship and guaranty,
conditional sales (installment sales, hire-purchase)
Class real estate mortgages in 346.0436
- .077 **Debtor and creditor relationships**
Collection of debts, creditors' remedies, debtors' relief
For bankruptcy, see 346.078
- .078 **Bankruptcy**
Including receivership
- .08 **Banking and insurance**
- .082 **Banks and banking**
Class regulation of a specific general administrative function of banks
with the subject in law, e.g., corporate organization 346.066, wages
344.0121
For loans, see 346.073
- .086 **Insurance**
Class regulation of a specific general administrative function of in-
surance companies and agencies with the subject in law, e.g., cor-
porate organization 346.066, wages 344.0121
For social insurance, see 344.02
- .09 **Securities and negotiable instruments**
- .092 **Securities**
Stocks, bonds, mutual funds
Including government securities
Class regulation of a specific general administrative function of or-
ganizations engaged in marketing securities with the subject in law,
e.g., organization 346.065, wages 344.0121
- .096 **Negotiable instruments**
Checks, bills of exchange, drafts, trade acceptances, promissory
notes, warehouse receipts
For securities, see 346.092

.3-.9 Specific jurisdictions

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 346, e.g., private law of Australia 346.94, of New South Wales 346.944; then to the result add the numbers following 346 in 346.001-346.096, e.g., property law of Australia 346.9404, of New South Wales 346.94404

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to private law of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 346 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for private law of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive base number by adding to 346 the numbers following the base "Areas" notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., private law of Australia 346, of New South Wales 346.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., property law of Australia 346.04, of New South Wales 346.404

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., United States "Areas" notation 73, states of United States 74-79), add to 346 that part of the "Areas" notation that changes, e.g., private law of United States 346, of Pennsylvania 346.48. Class private law of Hawaii in 346.99

(If option is chosen, class comparative private law, private law of other jurisdictions in 349.6)

347 Civil procedure

Class here comprehensive works on civil and criminal procedure, judicial branch of government, administration of justice

(It is optional to class here courts and procedure in specific fields of law; prefer specific subject using extended standard subdivision 0269 as given under 342-348)

Use 347.001-347.009 for standard subdivisions

For administrative procedure, see 342.066; criminal procedure, 345

.01 Courts

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each

.012 General considerations

Powers, functions, jurisdiction, organization

.013 Judicial administration (Court management)

Effect of court work loads, calendars, records, staffing,
on administration of justice

.014 Judges

Appointment, tenure, retirement, removal, discipline

.016 Other officials

Marshals, sheriffs, constables, clerks, court reporters, coroners,
justices of the peace, notaries

Class techniques of court reporting in 653.18

347.02–347.04 Courts with specific kinds of jurisdiction

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 2 General considerations
 - Powers, functions, jurisdiction, organization
- 3 Judicial administration
- 34 Judges
- 36 Other officials
- 5 Procedure
 - Including practice, rules

Class comprehensive works in 347.01

.02 *Courts of general original jurisdiction

.03 *Courts of appellate jurisdiction

Class appellate courts of specialized jurisdiction in 347.04

.033 *Intermediate

.035 *Courts of last resort (Supreme courts)

.04 Courts of specialized jurisdiction

Example: admiralty courts

Class courts dealing with a single specific subject with the subject in law using extended standard subdivision 0269, e.g., tax courts 343.040269

347.05–347.08 Procedure

Class here procedure in equity

Class comprehensive works in 347, procedure in specific courts and levels of courts in 347.02–347.04

.05 Court procedure

Class here practice, court rules (practice: the form, manner, order of instituting and conducting a suit or other judicial proceeding thru its successive stages to its end in accordance with rules and principles laid down by law or by regulations and precedents of the courts)

For evidence, see 347.06; trials, 347.07; appellate procedure, 347.08

.052 General considerations

Motions, limitation of actions, parties to trial, jury trial

.055 Forms and form books

.06 Evidence

.062 Admissibility

.064 Kinds

Examples: documentary, circumstantial, scientific

For witnesses, see 347.066

Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

.066

Witnesses

Capacity, privileges and immunities, privileged communications, compulsion of attendance

Including forensic psychology

For expert testimony, see 347.067

.067

Expert testimony

.07

Trials

.072

Pretrial procedure

Pleading, publication of notice, service of process, pretrial discovery procedures, pretrial conferences, motions

.075

Trial (Courtroom) procedure

Juries and jury selection, opening statements, examination of witnesses, summations, instructions to juries, verdicts

.077

Judgments

Including remedies, executions of judgment, costs, attachment and garnishment

.08

Appellate procedure

.09

Arbitration

.3-.9

Specific jurisdictions

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 347, e.g., civil procedure of Australia 347.94, of New South Wales 347.944; then to the result add the numbers following 347 in 347.001-347.09, e.g., law of evidence in Australia 347.9406, in New South Wales 347.94406

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to civil procedure of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 347 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for civil procedure of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive base number by adding to 347 the numbers following the base "Areas" notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., civil procedure of Australia 347, of New South Wales 347.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., law of evidence in Australia 347.06, in New South Wales 347.406

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., Sudan "Areas" notation 624, parts of Sudan 625-629), add to 347 that part of the "Areas" notation that changes, e.g., civil procedure of Sudan 347, of Darfur Province 347.7

(If option is chosen, class comparative civil procedure, civil procedure of other jurisdictions in 349.7)

A special development for United States follows

.73 Civil procedure of United States

(It is optional to class here courts and procedure in specific fields of United States law; prefer specific subject using extended standard subdivision 0269 as given under 342–348)

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to civil procedure of United States, it is optional to use 347 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, add to 347 the numbers following 347.7 in 347.731–347.739, e.g., United States Supreme Court 347.326. If option is chosen, class comparative civil procedure, civil procedure of other jurisdictions in 349.7)

For procedural law of specific states and localities, see 347.74–347.79

.731 Courts

Add to 347.731 the numbers following 347.01 in 347.012–347.016, e.g., judges 347.7314

For specific courts and court systems, see 347.732–347.734

► **347.732–347.734 Specific courts and court systems**

Class comprehensive works in 347.731

.732 Federal courts

Add 0 to base number 347.732; then to the result add as instructed under 347.02–347.04, e.g., judges 347.732034

For specific Federal courts, see 347.7322–347.7328

► **347.732 2–347.732 8 Specific Federal courts**

Add to each subdivision identified by * as instructed under 347.02–347.04, e.g., procedure in district courts 347.73225

Class comprehensive works in 347.732

.732 2 *District courts

Courts of original jurisdiction

.732 4 *Courts of appeal

For Supreme Court, see 347.7326

.732 6 *Supreme Court**.732 8 Courts of specialized jurisdiction**

Example: United States Court of Customs and Patent Appeals

Class courts dealing with a single specific subject with the subject in United States law using extended standard subdivision 0269, e.g., tax courts 343.73040269

* Add as instructed under 347.02–347.04

- .733 State courts**
 Add to 347.733 the numbers following 347.732 in 347.7322–347.7328, e.g., state supreme courts, 347.7336
 Class courts of specific states in 347.74–347.79
- .734 Local courts**
 Class courts of specific localities in 347.74–347.79
- .735–.738 Procedure**
 Add to 347.73 the numbers following 347.0 in 347.05–347.08, e.g., rules of evidence 347.736
 Class procedure in specific courts and court systems in 347.732–347.734
- .739 Arbitration**
- .74–.79 Civil procedure of specific states and localities of United States**
 Add “Areas” notation 74–79 from Table 2 to base number 347, e.g., civil procedure of Pennsylvania 347.748, of Philadelphia 347.74811; then to the result add the numbers following 347 in 347.001–347.09, e.g., Supreme Court of Pennsylvania 347.748035, courts of Philadelphia 347.7481101. For local courts do not follow 347.02–347.04. Class civil procedure of Hawaii in 347.969
 (If second option under 347.73 is chosen, add to 347 the numbers following 7 in “Areas” notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., civil procedure of Pennsylvania 347.48, of Philadelphia 347.4811; then add further as shown above, e.g., Supreme Court of Pennsylvania 347.48035, courts of Philadelphia 347.481101. Class civil procedure of Hawaii in 347.99)

348 Laws (Statutes), regulations, cases

(It is optional to class here laws, regulations, cases covering specific subjects in law; prefer specific subject using extended standard subdivision 026 as given under 342–348)

- .001–.002 Standard subdivisions**
- .003 Dictionaries**
 Class encyclopedias in 348.06
- .004–.009 Other standard subdivisions**
- .01 Preliminary materials**
 Bills, hearings, reports, executive messages, statements of witnesses, legislative histories, slip laws

348.046–348.048 Guides

Class here combined guides to laws, regulations, cases

Class comprehensive guides in 348.046

For guides to laws and regulations, see 348.026–348.028

.046

Digests

Class here comprehensive guides to cases

For citators, see 348.047; checklists, tables, indexes, 348.048

.047

Citators

.048

Checklists, tables, indexes

.05

Advisory opinions of attorneys-general (ministers of justice)

.06

Encyclopedias

.3–.9

Specific jurisdictions

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 348, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Australia 348.94, of New South Wales 348.944; then to the result add the numbers following 348 in 348.001–348.06, e.g., Australian code 348.94023, code of New South Wales 348.944023

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to laws, regulations, cases of a specific jurisdiction, it is optional to use 348 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case, for laws, regulations, cases of a jurisdiction subordinate to the preferred jurisdiction, derive the base number by adding to 348 the numbers following base “Areas” notation from Table 2 for that jurisdiction, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Australia 348, of New South Wales 348.4. For both the preferred jurisdiction and its subdivisions add further as shown above, e.g., Australian code 348.023, code of New South Wales 348.4023

(For subordinate jurisdictions of a country with irregular notation, i.e., each country the numbers for whose subdivisions are coordinate with the number for the entire country (e.g., Sudan “Areas” notation 624, parts of Sudan 625–629), add to 348 that part of the “Areas” notation that changes, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Sudan 348, of Darfur Province 348.7

(If option is chosen, class comparative laws, regulations, cases, and laws, regulations, cases of other jurisdictions in 349.8)

A special development for United States follows

- .73 Laws (Statutes), regulations, cases of United States**
 Federal laws, regulations, cases; national and regional treatment of state and local laws, regulations, cases
 (It is optional to class here laws, regulations, cases covering specific subjects in United States law; prefer specific subject using extended standard subdivision 026 as given under 342–348)
 (If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to laws, regulations, cases of United States, it is optional to use 348 without geographical subdivision as base number. In that case add to 348 the numbers following 348.7 in 348.732–348.736, e.g., United States code 348.323. If option is chosen, class comparative laws, regulations, cases, and laws, regulations, cases of other jurisdictions in 349.8)
For laws, regulations, cases of specific states, see 348.74–348.79
- .730 1–.730 2 Standard subdivisions**
- .730 3 Dictionaries**
 Class encyclopedias in 348.736
- .730 4–.730 9 Other standard subdivisions**
- .731 Preliminary materials**
 Bills, hearings, reports, executive messages, statements of witnesses, legislative histories, slip laws
- .732 Laws (Statutes) and regulations**
- 348.732 2–348.732 4 Collections of laws
- .732 2 Federal statutes**
 (If first option under 348.73 is chosen, class here individual laws)
- .732 3 United States code**
- .732 4 Selected Federal laws**
- .732 5 Federal administrative regulations**
- 348.732 6–348.732 8 Guides
 Class comprehensive guides in 348.7326
- .732 6 Digests**
 Including summaries of changes
 Class here comprehensive guides to laws and regulations
For citators, see 348.7327; checklists, tables, indexes, 348.7328
- .732 7 Citators**
- .732 8 Checklists, tables, indexes**

.734

Cases

Do not use for casebooks

**348.734 1–348.734 2 Reports**

Official and unofficial

.734 1

Federal court reports

.734 13

Supreme Court

.734 15

Lower Federal courts

.734 2

National reporter system

If preferred, arrange reporters alphabetically, e.g., Atlantic reporter 348.7342 A8

.734 22

Atlantic

.734 23

Northeastern

.734 24

Northwestern

.734 25

Southeastern

.734 26

Southwestern

.734 27

Southern

.734 28

Pacific

.734 4

Court decisions

.734 5

Decisions (Rulings) of regulatory agencies**348.734 6–348.734 8 Guides**

Class here combined guides to laws, regulations, cases

Class comprehensive guides in 348.7346

For guides to laws and regulations, see 348.7326–348.7328

.734 6

Digests

Class here comprehensive guides to cases

For citators, see 348.7347; checklists, tables, indexes, 348.7348

.734 7

Citators

.734 8

Checklists, tables, indexes

.735

Advisory opinions of Attorney-General

.736

Encyclopedias

.74-.79 Laws, regulations, cases of specific states of United States

Add "Areas" notation 74-79 from Table 2 to base number 348, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Pennsylvania 348.748, of Philadelphia 348.74811; then to the result add the numbers following 348 in 348.001-348.06, e.g., Pennsylvania statutes 348.748022, Philadelphia code of ordinances 348.74811023. Class laws, regulations, cases of Hawaii in 348.969

(If second option under 348.73 is chosen, add to 348 the numbers following 7 in "Areas" notation 74-79 from Table 2, e.g., laws, regulations, cases of Pennsylvania 348.48, of Philadelphia 348.4811; then add further as shown above, e.g., Pennsylvania statutes 348.48022, Philadelphia code of ordinances 348.4811023. Class laws, regulations, cases of Hawaii in 348.99)

349 Municipal law

Law of individual states and nations

(Use of this number is optional. Class here comparative law, law of jurisdictions other than the preferred jurisdiction as explained under 342.3-342.9 and parallel numbers thru 348.3-348.9)

Add to 349 the numbers following 34 in 342-348, e.g., comparative law of evidence 349.706, Australian law of evidence 349.79406

350 Public administration Executive branch

Military art and science

Public administration: structure, internal management, activities of government agencies charged with execution of law and public policy

Use 350.0001-350.0009 for standard subdivisions of public administration, of executive branch

Class administrative aspects of legislative branch of government in 328, of judicial branch in 347.013

350.001-350.009 The executive

Class comprehensive works in 350.003

- .001 Bureaucracy**
- .002 Separation of powers**
- .003 General considerations of executive branch**

350.003 1-350.003 6 The chief executive

Class comprehensive works in 350.003

- .003 1 Types of chief executive**
- .003 12 Heads of state**
 - Monarchs and their representatives; presidents in cabinet systems of government

For presidents in presidential systems, see 350.00313

- .003 13 Heads of government
 - Prime ministers, premiers, chancellors; presidents in presidential systems of government
- .003 14 Plural executives
- .003 15 Chief executives without legal status
 - Example: chairmen of monolithic political parties
- .003 18 Deputy chief executives
 - Vice-presidents, vice- and deputy premiers and chancellors
- .003 2 Powers, functions, privileges of chief executive
- .003 4 Qualifications, term of office, method of selection of chief executive
- .003 5 Executive messages, speeches, writings
- .003 6 Impeachment, abdication, resignation of chief executive

► 350.003 7–350.003 9 Other general considerations of executive branch

Class comprehensive works in 350.003

- .003 7 Relationship to other branches of government
- .003 72 To legislature
- .003 73 To judiciary
- .003 8 Relationship to citizens
- .003 9 Relationship to fundamental instrument
 - Constitution, charter, basic law
- .004 Executive departments and ministries of cabinet rank
 - Class specific executive departments and ministries in 350.01–350.08
- .005 Cabinet, ~~cabinet~~ systems, councils of state
- [.007] Conflict of interest
 - Class in 350.995
- .009 Special commissions, corporations, agencies, quasi-administrative bodies
 - Independent bodies and bodies within departments and ministries of cabinet rank
- .009 1 Regulatory agencies
- [.009 12–.009 14] Specific kinds
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 350.0091
- .009 2 Government corporations
- .009 3 Advisory, consultative, informational bodies
 - Examples: authorities taking censuses, boards of economic advisers

► 350.01-350.08 Specific executive departments and ministries of cabinet rank

Class comprehensive works in 350.004

- .01 Foreign affairs departments
- .02 Finance departments
- .03 Home affairs (Interior) departments
- .05 Justice departments
- .06 Defense departments
- .07-.08 Other departments

Add to 350.0 the numbers following 350 in 350.7-350.8, e.g., departments of labor 350.083

- .09 Intergovernmental administration
- .091 Between central governments of same level
Example: two state governments
- .092 Between central governments of different levels
Example: national and state governments
- .093 Between central governments and local governments
Examples: state and local governments, national and local governments
Class central government control of local units in 352.0022

SUMMARY

- 350.1 Personnel management
- .2 Registers of personnel
- .3 Civil service examinations
- .5 Pensions
- .6 Merit system (Civil service)
- .7 Internal administration, finance, social order
- .8 Other administrative activities
- .9 Malfunctioning of government

► 350.1-350.3 Government service [*formerly also* 350.4]

Class comprehensive works in 350.1

For merit system, see 350.6

.1 Personnel management

Procedures for hiring, developing, utilizing capacities of employees

Class here comprehensive works on government service

Use 350.1001-350.1009 for standard subdivisions

For registers of personnel, see 350.2

.101 Personnel planning and policy

- .102 Supervision
 Including human relationships, utilization of psychology in
 personnel management
- .103 Job classification [*formerly* 350.122], analysis, description

SUMMARY

- 350.12 Wage and salary administration
 - .13 Recruitment and selection of personnel
 - .14 Utilization of capacities of personnel
 - .15 Training of personnel
 - .16 Conditions of employment
 - .17 Employer-employee relationships
 - .18 Separation from service
- .12 Wage and salary administration
- [.122] Job classification
 - Class in 350.103
- .123 Types of compensation
 - .123 2 Salaries
 - .123 22 Adjustments
 - .123 23 Deductions
 - .123 3 Wage incentives
 - .123 4 Employee benefits
 - For pensions, see 350.5*
- .125 Payroll administration
- .13 Recruitment and selection of personnel
- .131 Recruitment
- .132 Selection
 - Class here comprehensive works on selection and placement
 - For placement, see 350.143-350.145*
 - .132 2 Personal requirements
 - Age, physical condition, sex, aptitudes
 - .132 3 Professional, occupational, educational requirements
 - .132 4 Special requirements
 - .132 42 Loyalty and security considerations
 - Including loyalty oaths
 - Class security clearance in 350.1325
 - .132 43 Veterans' preference

- .132 5 Selection procedures
 - Forms, tests, physical examinations, investigations, interviews, polygraph (lie detector) tests
 - Including security clearance
 - For civil service examinations, see 350.3*
 - .14 Utilization of capacities of personnel
 - .142 Performance rating (Evaluation)
-
- 350.143–350.145 Personnel placement
- Class comprehensive works in 350.14
- .143 Promotion
 - .144 Demotion
 - .145 Transfer
 - .147 Motivation
 - Promotion of employee morale [*formerly* 350.175], productivity, efficiency, creativity
 - Including discipline [*formerly* 350.167], interpersonal relations
 - .15 Training of personnel [*formerly also* 350.1626]
 - Class here educational programs
 - .152 Induction and orientation
 - .153 Job training
 - Including adjustment to automation, managerial development, retraining
 - .154 Other
 - Occupational rehabilitation, attitude training, training in human relations, safety training
 - .16 Conditions of employment
 - Class wages and salaries in 350.12, placement and evaluation in 350.14, training in 350.15
 - .161 Physical conditions
 - Safety, ventilation, heating, lighting, noise, space requirements
 - Class health and safety services in 350.1622
 - .162 Personnel services
 - .162 2 Health and safety programs
 - Including mental health

- .162 3 **Economic services**
 - Former heading: Welfare services
 - Examples: housing, transportation, food services, discounts, credit facilities
- .162 5 **Counseling services**
 - Class mental health programs and services in 350.1622
- [.162 6] **Educational programs**
 - Class in 350.15
- .163 **Days and hours of work**
- .164 **Leaves of absence**
- [.167] **Discipline**
 - Class in 350.147
- .17 **Employer-employee relationships**
 - Class interpersonal relations in 350.147
- .172 **Employee participation in management**
- .173 **Labor unions and other employee organizations**
 - For collective bargaining, see 350.174*
- .174 **Collective bargaining**
- [.175] **Employee morale**
 - Class in 350.147
- .176 **Grievances and appeals**
- .18 **Separation from service**
 - For pensions, see 350.5*
- .181 **Resignation**
- .182 **Retirement**
- .183 **Dismissal for cause**
- .184 **Layoff for retrenchment**
- .2 **Registers of personnel**
- .3 **Civil service examinations**
 - Class examinations on a specific subject with the subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 076 from Table 1, e.g., accounting 657.076
- [.4] **Government service**
 - Class in 350.1–350.3
- .5 **Pensions**
- .6 **Merit system (Civil service)**
 - Origin, development, operation

350.7–350.8 Specific administrative activities

Class comprehensive works in 350; comprehensive works on a specific technique or operation and its public administration with the subject, e.g., banking 332.1

.7 Internal administration, finance, social order

SUMMARY

- 350.71 Internal administration
 - .72 Financial administration
 - .74 Police organization and management
 - .75 Maintenance of public safety
 - .76 Regulation and control of factors affecting public morals
 - .77 Regulation and control of public health
 - .78 Fire and accident protection

.71 Internal administration

For personnel management, see 350.1

.711 Execution of contracts

.712 Procurement

Including building construction

.713 Utilization and disposal of property, equipment, supplies

Including buildings and grounds maintenance

.714 Records management

.72 Financial administration

SUMMARY

- 350.721 Determination and administration of fiscal policy
 - .722 The budget
 - .723 Accounting and auditing
 - .724 Tax administration
 - .725 Fiscal relations between jurisdictional levels

.721 Determination and administration of fiscal policy

.722 The budget

Official estimates submitted by chief executive

.722 2 Formulation and preparation

.722 3 Adoption

.722 4 Revision

Supplementary and deficiency budgets

.723 Accounting and auditing

.723 1 Accounting

.723 2 Auditing

.724

Tax administration

Use 350.724001–350.724009 for standard subdivisions

**350.724 01–350.724 03 General activities**

Class comprehensive works in 350.724

.724 01

Assessment

.724 011

Equalization

.724 013

Valuation and appraisal

.724 02

Collection

.724 022

Liens

.724 023

Avoidance

.724 024

Evasion

.724 03

Appeals

**350.724 2–350.724 7 Specific kinds of taxes**Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 350.7240 ...
in 350.72401–350.72403, e.g., avoidance 23

Class comprehensive works in 350.724

.724 2

*Real property taxes

.724 3

*Personal property taxes

.724 4

*Incomes taxes

Class here social security taxes

.724 5

*Poll taxes

.724 6

*Customs duties

.724 7

Other taxes

.724 71

Indirect

.724 711

*Excise, sumptuary, luxury

.724 713

Transaction (Turnover)

.724 713 2

*Sales

.724 713 5

*Use

.724 76

*Estate, inheritance, gift

.725

Fiscal relations between jurisdictional levels

Add as instructed under 350.7242–350.7247



350.74–350.78 Maintenance of social order

Class comprehensive works in 350.7

- .74 Police organization and management
- .75 Maintenance of public safety
 - For fire and accident protection, see 350.78*
- .751 Censorship and control of information
- .752 Control of public gatherings
- .753 Control of explosives and firearms
- .754 Disaster and emergency planning and relief
 - For civil defense, see 350.755*
- .755 Civil defense
- .756 Prevention of public violence and crime
- .76 Regulation and control of factors affecting public morals
- .761 Alcoholic beverages
- .762 Gambling
- .764 Prostitution
- .765 Drugs
- .77 Regulation and control of public health
 - Class regulation and control of water supply in 350.871
- .78 Fire and accident protection
- .782 Fire protection and prevention
- .783 Accident prevention (Safety measures)
- .8 Other administrative activities**
 - Regulation, control, financial support, information, advice and counsel relating to specific areas of public life

SUMMARY

- 350.81 Assemblage and dissemination of information
- .82 Relation to production, commerce, consumption
- .83 Relation to labor
- .84 Relation to social welfare
- .85 Relation to culture and religion
- .86 Relation to public works and housing
- .87 Relation to public utilities and transportation
- .88 Relation to justice
- .89 Relation to foreign affairs and defense

- .81 Assemblage and dissemination of information
 - Examples: census taking, weather forecasting
- .82 Relation to production, commerce, consumption
- .821 Standards
 - Including weights and measures
- .822 Money
 - Manufacture and issuance
 - Class administration of fiscal policy in 350.721
- .823 Primary industries and natural resources
 - For public utilities, see 350.87*
- .823 2 Natural resources
 - Air, water, land (soil), minerals, wildlife
 - Including control of floods, pollution, weather
- .823 3 Agriculture and forestry
- .823 6 Fishing and hunting
- .823 8 Extraction of mineral resources
- .824 Secondary industries
 - Including patents, copyrights, trademarks
 - For public utilities, see 350.87*
- .824 2 Manufacturing and construction
 - Including occupational licensure and registration
- .824 3 Service and professional
 - Including licensure and registration of medical personnel
[formerly also 614.2], of other occupations
- .825 Financial institutions and transactions
 - Insurance companies, banks, savings and loan associations, loan companies
- .826 Domestic trade
- .827 International trade
- .829 Consumption (Rationing)
- .83 Relation to labor
- .84 Relation to social welfare
- .841-.848 Services to the needy and afflicted
 - Add to 350.84 the numbers following 362 in 362.1-362.8, e.g.,
regulation of psychiatric hospitals 350.8421
- .849 Penal institutions

- .85 Relation to culture and religion
 - Class education and the state [*formerly* 350.85] in 379
- .852 Libraries
- .853 Museums
- .854 The arts
 - Including official support and regulation of music [*formerly also* 780.075]
- .855 Science
- .857 Religion
- .858 Sports
- .86 Relation to public works and housing
- .862 Public buildings
- .863 Parks and recreational facilities
- .864 Roads, bridges, tunnels
- .865 Housing
- .866 Cemeteries
- .87 Relation to public utilities and transportation
 - Class here finances, public ownership, privileges, obligations
 - Use 350.87001–350.87009 for standard subdivisions
- [.870 2–.870 6] General principles
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 350.87
- .871 Water supply
 - Use 350.871001–350.871009 for standard subdivisions
- [.871 02–.871 06] General principles
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 350.871
- .871 07 Urban
- .871 08 Rural
- .871 5 Pollution
- .871 6 Purification
- .872 Power and gas
- .872 2 Electric power
 - Use 350.8722001–350.8722009 for standard subdivisions
- [.872 202–.872 206] General principles
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 350.8722
- .872 207 Urban
- .872 208 Rural

-
- .872 3 Gas
 - Use 350.8723001–350.8723009 for standard subdivisions
 - [.872 302–.872 306] General principles
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 350.8723
 - .873 Mail
 - .874 Telecommunication
 - Add to 350.874 the numbers following 384 in 384.1–384.7, e.g., radiobroadcasting 350.87454
 - .875–.878 Transportation
 - Add to 350.87 the numbers following 38 in 385–388, e.g., rapid transit 350.8784
 - .88 Relation to justice
 - .89 Relation to foreign affairs and defense
 - .892 Foreign affairs
 - .895 Defense
 - .9 **Malfunctioning of government**
 - Former heading: Governmental accountability
 - .91 Grievances and claims against the state
 - Former heading: Liability
 - Including ombudsman system
 - For specific offenses, see 350.996*
 - [.92] Control of internal administration
 - Number discontinued, class in 350
 - .99 Administrative responsibility
 - Personal liability of government officials to the state and to individuals for torts committed in office
 - .991 Abuse of administrative responsibility
 - .992 Investigation of public officials
 - .993 Impeachment
 - .995 Conflict of interest [*formerly* 350.007]
 - .996 Specific offenses
 - Examples: bribery, influence peddling, embezzlement, misappropriation of funds

351 Central governments

National, state, provincial

Use 351.0001–351.0009 for standard subdivisions

Add to 351 the numbers following 350 in 350.001–350.996, e.g., internal administration 351.71

For specific national, state, provincial governments, see 353–354

352 Local units of government

Use 352.0001–352.0008 for standard subdivisions

.000 9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality [*formerly*
352.00093–352.00099] in 352.03–352.09

.002 Control and malfunctioning

.002 2 Central government control of local units

.002 9 Malfunctioning

Former heading: Governmental accountability

Add to 352.0029 the numbers following 350.9 in 350.91–350.99,
e.g., abuse of administrative responsibility 352.002991

.003 Municipal incorporation

[.004] Elections

Class in 324.2

.005 Government service

Add to 352.005 the numbers following 350 in 350.1–350.6, e.g., wage
and salary administration 352.00512

.006 Annexation

.007 Levels of local government

Former heading: Rural units

.007 2 Basic units (Municipalities)

For urban municipalities, see 352.008

.007 22 Rural municipalities

Examples: townships, rural districts, parishes, shires

.007 3 Intermediate levels

Administrative levels between national, state, provincial
governments and municipalities

Examples: counties, administrative counties, provinces, districts,
departments, parishes, arrondissements, Landkreise, regions

- .008 Urban municipalities
Examples: cities, towns, villages, boroughs, county boroughs, urban districts, communes
- .008 2 Mayor-council with weak mayor
- .008 3 Mayor-council with strong mayor
- .008 4 Council-manager
- .008 5 Commission
- .009 Special-purpose authorities and districts
For school boards and districts, see 379.153
- .009 2 Economic
Example: port authorities
- .009 3 Urban-service
Example: sewage districts
- .009 4 Metropolitan areas (Conurbations)
- .009 5 Inter-municipal authorities
- .03-.09 Treatment by continent, country, locality [*formerly also*
352.00093-352.00099]
- Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 352.0, e.g.,
administration of local governments in New York State 352.0747,
administration of New York City 352.07471
- Class specific topics by continent, country, locality in 352.002-352.009

352.1-352.9 Specific administrative activities

Class here administration of departments concerned

Class comprehensive works in 352

SUMMARY

- 352.1 Financial and internal administration
- .2 Police organization and management
- .3 Fire and accident protection
- .4 Regulation and control of public health
- .5 Regulation and control of public buildings
- .6 Regulation and control of sanitary engineering
- .7 Regulation and control of other public works and housing
- .8 Licensing
- .9 Other activities

.1 Financial and internal administration**352.12–352.13 Financial administration**

Class comprehensive works in 352.1

For accounting and auditing, see 352.17

.12 The budget

Official estimates submitted by chief executive

.13 Tax administration**.131 Assessment**

For special assessments, see 352.134

.131 2 Equalization**.131 3 Valuation and appraisal****.133 Collection****.134 Special assessments****.16 Internal administration**

Add to 352.16 the numbers following 350.71 in 350.711–350.714, e.g.,
records management 352.164

Class personnel management in 352.0051

.17 Accounting and auditing**.2 Police organization and management****.3 Fire and accident protection****.4 Regulation and control of public health**

For sanitary engineering, see 352.6

**352.5–352.7 Regulation and control of public works**

Class comprehensive works in 352

.5 Regulation and control of public buildings**.6 Regulation and control of sanitary engineering**

Water-supply, sewage- and refuse-disposal structures

.7 Regulation and control of other public works and housing**.72 Cemeteries****.73 Parks and recreational facilities****.74 Roads, bridges, tunnels****.75 Housing****.8 Licensing**

- .9 Other activities**
- .91 Regulation and control of public utilities and transportation**
Add to 352.91 the numbers following 350.87 in 350.871–350.878, e.g., electric power 352.9122
- .92 Regulation of construction**
Class here permits, codes, inspections, standards
- .922 Building construction**
- .923 Electrical installations**
- .926 Plumbing**
- .93 Maintenance of public safety and factors affecting morals**
Add to 352.93 the numbers following 350.7 in 350.75–350.76, e.g., civil defense 352.9355
- .94 Regulation and control of economic, welfare, cultural activities**
Add to 352.94 the numbers following 350.8 in 350.81–350.85, e.g., labor 352.943
Class health services in 352.4
- .95 Waste and refuse collection**
- .96 Planning**
- .961 Zoning**
- .962 Land subdivision**
- .98 Regulation and control of justice**

► **353–354 Specific national, state, provincial governments**

Class comprehensive works in 351

353 United States federal and state governments

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to central governments of a specific country, it is optional to class them here; in that case class United States federal and state governments in 354.73–354.79, 354.969)

Use 353.0001–353.0008 for standard subdivisions

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number corresponding to the one that comes last in 350.001–350.996, e.g., conflicts of interest in regulatory agencies 353.00995 (corresponding to 350.995)

- .000 9 Historical and geographical treatment**
Class state governments in 353.9

.001-.009 Government service, specific administrative activities,
governmental malfunctioning in federal government
Add to 353.00 the numbers following 350 in 350.1-350.9, e.g., budget
353.00722

.01-.09 The executive in federal government
Add to 353.0 the numbers following 350.00 in 350.001-350.009, e.g.,
vice-presidents 353.0318

► **353.1-353.8 Specific executive departments in federal government**

Class comprehensive works in 353.04

- .1 Department of State
- .2 Department of the Treasury
- .3 Department of the Interior
- .4 Post Office Department
- .5 Department of Justice
- .6 Department of Defense
 - For Department of the Navy, see 353.7*
- .62 Department of the Army
- .63 Department of the Air Force
- .7 Department of the Navy
- .8 Other departments
 - .81 Department of Agriculture
 - .82 Department of Commerce
 - .83 Department of Labor
 - .84 Department of Health, Education, and Welfare
 - .85 Department of Housing and Urban Development
 - .86 Department of Transportation
- .9 State governments

► **353.91-353.93 General principles**

Class comprehensive works in 353.9, general principles applied to specific
states in 353.94-353.99

- .91 The executive
 - Add to 353.91 the numbers following 350.00 in 350.001-350.009, e.g.,
powers of governors 353.9132

- .92 **Specific kinds of executive departments and intergovernmental administration**
- .921-.928 **Specific kinds of executive departments**
 Add to 353.92 the numbers following 350.0 in 350.01-350.08, e.g., labor departments 353.9283
- .929 **Intergovernmental administration**
- .929 1 **Between states**
 Interstate agreements, cooperation, disputes
- .929 2 **Between states and federal government**
- .929 3 **Between states and local governments**
- .93 **Government service, specific administrative activities, governmental malfunctioning**
 Add to 353.93 the numbers following 350 in 350.1-350.9, e.g., state merit systems 353.936
- .94-.99 **Specific states**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 353.9, e.g., administration of government of Hawaii 353.9969; then add further as follows:
- 000 1-000 9 **Standard subdivisions**
- 001-009 **Government service, specific administrative activities, governmental malfunctioning**
 Add to 00 the numbers following 350 in 350.1-350.9, e.g., merit system 006
- 01-09 **The executive**
 Add to 0 the numbers following 350.00 in 350.001-350.009, e.g., lieutenant governors 0318
- 1-8 **Specific executive departments**
 Add the numbers following 350.0 in 350.01-350.08, e.g., labor department 83
- 9 **Intergovernmental administration**
 Add to 9 the numbers following 353.929 in 353.9291-353.9293, e.g., relation between state and local governments 93

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this table in the number corresponding to the one that comes last in 350.001-350.996, e.g., conflicts of interest in regulatory agencies 00995 (corresponding to 350.995)

354 **Other central governments**

- .1 **International**

.3-.9 National, state, provincial .

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 354, e.g., government of Canada 354.71; except for Germany add further as follows:

- 000 1-000 9 Standard subdivisions
- 001-009 Government service, specific administrative activities, governmental malfunctioning
 Add to 00 the numbers following 350 in 350.1-350.9, e.g., merit system 006
- 01-05 Specific aspects of the executive
 Add to 0 the numbers following 350.00 in 350.001-350.005, e.g., cabinet 05
- 06 Specific executive departments and ministries of cabinet rank
 Add to 06 the numbers following 350.0 in 350.01-350.08, e.g., ministry of foreign affairs 061
- 08 Intergovernmental administration
 Add to 08 the numbers following 350.09 in 350.091-350.093, e.g., relation between national and state governments 082
- 09 Special commissions, corporations, agencies, quasi-administrative bodies
 Add to 09 the numbers following 350.009 in 350.0091-350.0093, e.g., government corporations 092

Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this table in the number corresponding to the one that comes last in 350.001-350.996, e.g., conflicts of interest in regulatory agencies 00995 (corresponding to 350.995)

.43 Germany

Use 354.430001-354.430009 for standard subdivisions

- .430 01-.430 09 Government service, specific administrative activities, governmental malfunctioning
 Add to 354.4300 the numbers following 350 in 350.1-350.9, e.g., merit system 354.43006
- .430 1 Bureaucracy
- .430 2 Separation of powers
- .430 3 Executive branch
 For cabinet, see 354.4305; specific ministries, 354.4306
- .430 5 Cabinet and cabinet system
- .430 6 Specific ministries
 Add to 354.4306 the numbers following 350.0 in 350.01-350.08, e.g., ministry of foreign affairs 354.43061

355 Military art and science

Conduct of warfare and defense

Class here land operations, combined operations

Class relation of state to military organizations in 322.5, civilian administration and control of military activities in 350.895, administration of defense departments in 350.06

For specific kinds of military forces and warfare, see 356–359

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

.009 Historical and geographical treatment

Class military aspects of history of specific wars in 900

355.02–355.07 Basic considerations

Class comprehensive works in 355

.02 War and warfare

Class influence of war on society in 301.6334

.021 Overall concepts

.021 3 Militarism and antimilitarism

.021 5 Limited and total war

.021 7 Nuclear and conventional warfare

.021 8 Scope

.021 82 Warfare between and among states

.021 84 Insurgent, revolutionary, resistance warfare

.022 Sociological factors affecting warfare

Class sociology of military institutions in 301.593, general sociology of war in 301.6334 [*both formerly 355.022*]

For sociological causes of war, see 355.0274

.023 Economic factors affecting warfare

Costs and benefits

For economic causes of war, see 355.0273

.027 Causes

.027 2 Political and diplomatic

.027 3 Economic

.027 4 Sociological

.027 5 Psychological

.028 Results

Occupation, dislocation, reconstruction

- .03 Military situation and policy
 [.030 9] Historical and geographical treatment
 Do not use; class in 355.033
-
- 355.031–355.032 Specific elements
 Class comprehensive works in 355.03
- .031 Mutual security pacts
 Examples: Central Treaty Organization, North Atlantic Treaty Organization, Southeast Asia Treaty Organization, Warsaw Pact
- .032 Military missions and assistance
 Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 for country visited or assisted to base number 355.032, e.g., military assistance to Vietnam 355.032597
- .033 General history and description
For specific elements, see 355.031–355.032
- .033 001–.033 004 Historical periods
 Add to 355.03300 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., military situation and policy in 1930–1940 355.0330043
- .033 01–.033 09 Geographical treatment
 Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 355.0330, e.g., military situation and policy in Brazil 355.033081
- .033 2 Military situation
 Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 355.0332
- .033 5 Military policy
 Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 355.0335
 Class combat strategy in 355.43
- .07 Military research and development

SUMMARY

- 355.1 Military life and postmilitary benefits
 .2 Military resources
 .3 Organization and personnel of military forces
 .4 Military operations
 .5 Training maneuvers, exercises, drills
 .6 Central administration
 .7 Military installations and land reservations
 .8 Military equipment and supplies (Materiel)
- .1 Military life and postmilitary benefits
 .101–.109 Standard subdivisions of military life

SUMMARY

- 355.11 Service periods and their termination
 - .12 Living conditions and customs in peace and war
 - .13 Conduct, rewards, remuneration
 - .14 Uniforms as costume
 - .15 Colors and standards
 - .16 Celebrations
 - .17 Ceremonials
- .11 Service periods and their termination
 - .111 Length of service
 - .112 Promotion and demotion
 - .113 Inactive periods
 - Leaves, furloughs, reserve status, status during captivity or internment
 - .114 Termination of service
 - Retirement, resignation, discharge, reinstatement
 - .115 Veterans' rights and benefits
 - .115 1 Pensions
 - .115 2 Education and training
 - .115 4 Employment and reemployment
 - Class veterans' preference in government service personnel selection in 350.13243
 - .115 6 Rehabilitation and health benefits
 - .12 Living conditions and customs in peace and war
 - .123 Servicemen's morale
 - .129 Living conditions and customs in specific situations
 - Class servicemen's morale in specific situations in 355.123
 - .129 2 In basic training and at permanent bases
 - .129 3 On maneuvers and in transport
 - .129 4 In battle
 - .129 5 In military prisons and prison camps
 - Conditions in penal institutions for infractions of military law and discipline
 - .13 Conduct, rewards, remuneration
 - .133 Conduct
 - .133 2 Discipline
 - Class law of discipline [*formerly* 355.1332] in 343.014
 - For offenses, see* 355.1334
 - .133 22 Regulations

-
- .223 4 **Qualifications for service**
 - .223 6 **Processing for service**
 - Registration, classification, examination, enlistment, conscription, commissioning
 - .224 **Conscientious objectors**
 - .225 **Universal training and service**
 - [.225 5] **Universal training and service**
 - Number discontinued; class in 355.225
 - .229 **Womanpower**
 - Class specific elements in 355.223–355.225
 - .23 **Civilian manpower and womanpower**
 - .24 **Raw materials**
 - .242 **Metals**
 - .243 **Nonmetallic minerals**
 - .245 **Agricultural products**
 - .26 **Industrial resources**
 - .27 **Transportation and communication facilities**
 - .28 **Mobilization**
 - Requisition, commandeering, voluntary mobilization
 - Class mobilization of specific resources in 355.22–355.27
 - .29 **Demobilization**
 - Class demobilization of specific resources in 355.22–355.27
 - .3 **Organization and personnel of military forces**
 - .31 **Administrative units**
 - Examples: armies, divisions, companies; foreign legions, other special-purpose units
 - .33 **Hierarchy**
 - Class here line-and-staff functions
 - .331 **Staff and high command**
 - .332 **Commissioned and warrant officers**
 - .338 **Enlisted personnel**
 - Including noncommissioned officers
 - .34 **Special services**
 - Units and services responsible for noncombatant functions and activities
 - .341 **Administrative and supply services**
 - .342 **Public information services**

- .343 Unconventional warfare services
- .343 2 Intelligence
 - Including mapping, cryptanalysis services
- .343 3 Counterintelligence
 - Including security classification services
- .343 4 Psychological warfare (Propaganda)
- .343 7 Subversion and sabotage
- .345 Health services
 - Medical, dental, nursing, veterinary
- .346 Recreational services
 - Athletic games and sports, arts and crafts, music, dances, library services
- .347 Religious and counseling services
- .348 Women's services
 - Class a specific service with the subject, e.g., health services 355.345
- .35 Combat units according to field of service
- .351 Home guards and frontier troops
- .352 Colonial and expeditionary forces
- .356 Allied and coalition forces
- .357 International forces
 - Troops under unified command acting by supranational authorization
- .37 Reserves
- .4 Military operations
 - Class here attack and defense plans, deception, camouflage
- .409 Historical treatment
 - Class historical treatment in specific areas in 355.47
- .41 Logistics and other support operations
- .411 Logistics
 - Including troop movements
 - For supply, see 355.415*
- .412 Encampment
- .413 Reconnaissance
- .415 Troop support
 - Communication, supply, medical service, prisoner handling

.42 Tactics

The art of employing troops, weapons, equipment in battle

Class tactics of siege warfare in 355.44, of defense of home territory in 355.45

.422 General tactics

Examples: debarkation and landing, skirmishing, attacks, counterattacks, retreats; mobile (blitz), commando (hit-and-run), infiltration tactics

► **355.423–355.426 In specific conditions**

Class comprehensive works in 355.42

.423 In specific kinds of terrain, climate, weather**.424 Using animals****.425 In guerrilla warfare****.426 In cities**

Tactics in street fighting, house-to-house fighting, quelling riots

.43 Strategy

The art and science of employing armed forces of a nation to secure the objects of national policy

Use 355.43001–355.43009 for standard subdivisions

For siege warfare, see 355.44; defense of home territory, 355.45

.430 5 Limited and total war**.430 7 Nuclear and conventional warfare****.44 Siege warfare****.45 Defense of home territory**

Defense of frontiers, coasts, industrial areas, strategically valuable positions

.47 Tactical and strategic geography

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 355.47

.48 Technical analyses of military events

Real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles

.49 Occupation of conquered territory

Including military government

.5 Training maneuvers, exercises, drills**.52 Grand maneuvers**

- .54 Basic training of units
 - Including tactical exercises, drills
- .544 Camp and fortification operations
 - Setting up, repairing, dismantling camps, temporary fortifications, batteries, obstacles, field kitchens
- .547 Small arms and bayonet practice
- .548 Self-defense
 - Unarmed combat and combat with knife
- .55 Officers' maneuvers and exercises
- .58 Maneuvers involving civil population
 - Warning and intelligence service, rescue maneuvers, safety activities, demonstrations
- .6 Central administration
 - Military administration at top level
 - For organization of military forces, see 355.3*
 - .61 Personnel management
 - Administration of personnel activities, maintenance of personnel records
 - For administration of pay, allowances, pensions, see 355.64*
 - [.611] Adjutant general's department
 - Number discontinued, class in 355.6
 - [.613] Personnel management
 - Number discontinued, class in 355.61
 - [.614] Issuance of orders
 - Number discontinued; class in 355.6
 - .62 Supply and financial administration
 - .621 Supply administration
 - Class supply of specific items in 355.65–355.67
 - .621 1 Execution of contracts
 - .621 2 Procurement
 - .621 3 Utilization and disposal
 - .622 Financial administration
 - [.622 3] Accounting and auditing
 - Class in 657.835
 - .63 Inspection
 - .64 Administration of pay, allowances, pensions
 - .65 Administration of food supply

- .66 Administration of clothing and equipment supply
- .67 Housing administration
- .69 Other central administrative services
 - Example: graves registration service
- .7 **Military installations and land reservations**
 - Description, operation, use
- .71 Quarters for personnel
 - Barracks, camps, post exchanges, canteens, prisons
- .72 Medical installations
- .73 Artillery installations
 - Arsenals, ordnance factories and depots, target ranges, artillery schools
- .74 Engineering installations
 - Testing grounds; installations for construction, maintenance, repair, storage of vehicles and other engineering equipment
- .75 Supply depots and installations
- .79 Land
- .8 **Military equipment and supplies (Materiel)**
 - Description, procurement, issue, operation, use, packing, shipping
- .81 Food, clothing, camp equipment
- .82 Ordnance
 - Weapons, ammunition, other combat supplies
 - For combat vehicles, see 355.83*
- .83 Transportation equipment
 - Combat and support vehicles, trains, fuel
- .85 Communication equipment
- .88 Medical supplies

► **356–359 Specific kinds of military forces and warfare**

Units, services, countermeasures

Class here history of specific military organizations not limited to any one war

Class comprehensive works in 355, a specific countermeasure with the subject, e.g., coast artillery 358.16 (not 359)

► **356–357 Land forces and warfare**

Class comprehensive works in 355

For armored and technical land forces and warfare, see 358.1–358.3

356 Foot forces and warfare

.1 Infantry

► **356.11–356.16 Specific kinds of troops**

Class comprehensive works in 356.1

.11 Regular troops

Example: motorized infantry

.15 Irregular troops

Examples: self-organized infantry, guerrillas, brigand troops

.16 Troops having special combat functions

.162 Troops specializing in specific weapons

Examples: sharpshooters (snipers), machine gunners, grenadiers, bazookamen

.164 Ski and mountain troops

.166 Paratroops

.167 Commandos and rangers

.18 Training, plans, operations, equipment, supplies, installations

Class these topics applied to specific kinds of troops in 356.11–356.16

.183 Infantry operations

.184 Training drills, maneuvers, exercises

.186 Equipment and supplies (Materiel)

.187 Installations

[.2] Specialized foot forces

Number discontinued; class in 356

357 Mounted forces and warfare**.1 Horse cavalry***For remount and training services, see 357.2***.18 Plans, operations, training, installations, equipment, supplies****.184 Attack and defense plans and operations****.185 Training maneuvers, exercises, drills****.187 Installations****.188 Equipment and supplies (Materiel)****.2 Remount and training services**

Training cavalry mounts, remount depots, breeding and care of cavalry mounts, horsemanship

.5 Mechanized cavalry**► 357.52–357.54 Specific kinds**

Class comprehensive works in 357.5

.52 Bicycle**.53 Motorcycle****.54 Large motor vehicle**

Examples: jeep and truck cavalry

.58 Plans, operations, training, installations, equipment, supplies

Add to 357.58 the numbers following 357.18 in 357.184–357.188, e.g., equipment and supplies 357.588

Class these topics applied to specific kinds of mechanized cavalry in 357.52–357.54

358 Armored and technical land forces and warfare, air and space forces**SUMMARY****358.1 Artillery, land missile, armored forces and warfare****.2 Engineer forces****.3 Other technical forces and warfare****.4 Air forces and warfare****.8 Space forces and warfare****► 358.1–358.3 Armored and technical land forces and warfare**

Class comprehensive works in 358

.1 Artillery, land missile, armored forces and warfare**.12 Field artillery**

- .13 **Antiaircraft artillery**
- .16 **Coast artillery**
- .17 **Guided (Strategic) land missile forces and warfare**
 - Class here comprehensive works on missile forces, warfare, defense
 - Add to 358.17 the numbers following 623.4519 in 623.45194–623.45196, e.g., long-range surface-to-surface missile-launching forces 358.1754
 - Class air missile forces in 358.42–358.43, naval missile forces in 359.981
- .18 **Armored forces and warfare**
 - Tanks, armored cars, other armored vehicles
- .2 **Engineer forces**
- .22 **Construction**
 - Roads, railroads, bridges, tunnels, docks, airports
- .23 **Demolition**
- .24 **Communications (Signals and signaling)**
 - Including military cryptography
- .25 **Transportation**
- .3 **Other technical forces and warfare**
 - Including forces constructing camouflage and buildings, manufacturing war materiel
- .34 **Chemical**
- .38 **Biological**
- .39 **Nuclear**
 - Class nuclear guided-missile forces and warfare in 358.17
- .4 **Air forces and warfare**
 - Use 358.4001–358.4009 for standard subdivisions
- .403 **Situation and policy**
- .407 **Research and development**
- .41 **Functions and organization**
 - Class functions and organization of specific forces in 358.42–358.46
- .411–.413 **Military life, resources, forces**
 - Add to 358.41 the numbers following 355 in 355.1–355.3, e.g., air force uniforms as costume 358.4114
- .414 **Air operations**
 - Class here attack and defense plans, deception, camouflage
 - For bombing operations, see 358.42; fighting operations, 358.43*
- .414 09 **Historical treatment**
 - Class historical treatment in specific areas in 358.4147

- .414 1 Logistics and other support operations
 For transportation, see 358.44; reconnaissance, 358.45
- .414 12 Encampment
- .414 15 Troop-support
 Tactics of supply, medical service, prisoner handling
 For communications, see 358.46
- .414 2 Tactics
 Class tactics of defense of home territory in 358.4145
- .414 3 Strategy
 The art and science of employing air forces of a nation to secure
 the objects of national policy
 For defense of home territory, see 358.4145
- .414 5 Defense of home territory
 Defense of frontiers, coasts, industrial areas, strategically valuable
 positions
- .414 7 Tactical and strategic geography
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 358.4147
- .414 8 Technical analyses of military events
 Real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles
- .415 Training maneuvers, exercises, drills
- .415 4 Basic training of units
- .415 5 Officers' maneuvers and exercises
- .415 8 Maneuvers involving civil population
- .416-.418 Central administration, installations, materiel
 Add to 358.41 the numbers following 355 in 355.6-355.8, e.g., air
 proving grounds 358.4174

358.42-358.46 Specific forces

- Administration, military art and science, services, units, operations
- Class comprehensive works in 358.4
- .42 Bombing forces and operations
 Including air-to-surface and air-to-underwater guided (strategic)
 missile-launching forces
- .43 Pursuit and fighting forces and operations
 Including air-to-air guided (strategic) missile-launching forces
- .44 Transportation forces and operations
- .45 Reconnaissance forces and operations
- .46 Communications forces and operations

.8 Space forces and warfare**359 Sea (Naval) forces and warfare**

Use 359.001–359.009 for standard subdivisions

.03 Situation and policy**.07 Research and development****.1–.2 Naval life and resources**

Add to 359 the numbers following 355 in 355.1–355.2, e.g., discipline 359.1332

.3 Organization and personnel of naval forces**.31 Administrative units**

Examples: fleets, squadrons, flotillas, crews, divisions

.32 Types of ships

Add to 359.32 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.825–623.826, e.g., cruisers 359.3253

.33–.37 Other

Add to 359.3 the numbers following 355.3 in 355.33–355.37, e.g., supply services 359.341

.4 Naval operations

Class here attack and defense plans and operations, deception, camouflage

.409 Historical treatment

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 359.47

.41 Logistics and other support operations

Add to 359.41 the numbers following 355.41 in 355.411–355.415, e.g., reconnaissance 359.413

.42 Tactics

Class tactics of defense of home territory in 359.45

.43 Strategy

The art and science of employing naval forces of a nation to secure the objects of national policy

For defense of home territory, see 359.45

.45 Defense of home territory**.47 Tactical and strategic geography**

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 359.47

.48 Technical analyses of naval events

Real and imaginary wars, campaigns, battles

.5-.8 Training, central administration, installations, materiel
 Add to 359 the numbers following 355 in 355.5-355.8, e.g., naval procurement 359.6212

.9 Specialist forces

.96 Marine

.97 Coast guard

.98 Technical

.981 Artillery and guided-missile
 Including antiaircraft defenses

.982 Engineering

.983 Communication

.984 Underwater demolition and reconnaissance
 Example: frogmen

360 Social pathology, social services, association

361 Social welfare work

General methods of alleviation of social problems

Use 361.001-361.008 for standard subdivisions

Class a specific application of social welfare work with the subject, e.g., social welfare services to prison inmates 365.66

For insurance, see 368

[.009] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 361.9

.02 Free assistance

Class a specific kind of free assistance with the subject, e.g., counseling 361.06

.04 Paid assistance

Assistance for which recipient pays all or part of cost

Class a specific kind of paid assistance with the subject, e.g., counseling 361.06

.05 Material assistance

Financial aid; relief; direct provision of food, clothing, shelter; recreational activities and facilities; institutional care

.06 Counseling and related services

Services directed toward enabling individuals and groups to assist themselves

SUMMARY

- 361.2 **Planning**
- .3 **Casework**
- .4 **Group work**
- .5 **Disaster relief**
- .6 **Public welfare work**
- .7 **Private welfare work**
- .8 **Community organization**
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment**

- .2 **Planning**
- .3 **Casework**
- .32 Caseworker-client relations
 - Including interviewing
- .38 Casework for specific types of counselors
 - Examples: legal and ministerial counseling
- .4 **Group work**
- .5 **Disaster relief**
- .51 From earthquakes and volcanic eruptions
- .52 From floods
- .53 From effects of war
 - Relief of displaced persons, refugees, prisoners of war
- .54 From epidemics and pandemics
- .55 From famines
- .56 From fires, explosions, mine and nuclear accidents
- .57 From storms
 - Snow, rain, wind
- .58 From transportation accidents
 - Land, sea, air, space
- .6 **Public welfare work**
- .62 By central governments
- .63 By local governments
- .7 **Private welfare work**
- .73 Fund raising
 - Charitable bazaars, drives, donations, subscriptions
- .74 Individual philanthropy
- .75 Welfare work by religious organizations
 - Including parochial welfare work [*formerly* 258]

.76 Welfare work by foundations and charitable trusts

.77 Welfare work of international organizations

Examples: welfare work by Red Cross, CARE

.8 Community organization

Coordination thru social service exchanges, community chests,
united charities

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

.901-.904 Historical periods

Add to 361.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions"
notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., welfare work in 1960-1970
361.9046

.91-.99 Geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 361.9

362 Social pathology and its alleviation

Social disorganization and social welfare

Class general methods of alleviation in 361

For disaster relief, see 361.5; crime and its alleviation, 364

.04 General special

.042 Social problems

.042 2 Nature, extent, social effects

.042 3 Causes

.042 4 Prevention

.042 5 Alleviation

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 362.9

SUMMARY

362.1 Physical illness

.2 Mental illness

.3 Mental retardation

.4 Physical handicaps and disablements

.5 Poverty

.6 Problems of aged people and their alleviation

.7 Problems of young people and their alleviation

.8 Problems of other groups and their alleviation

.9 Historical and geographical treatment



362.1–362.4 Illness and disability [*formerly* 301.47]

Class comprehensive works in 362.1, illnesses and disabilities of specific groups in 362.6–362.8, medical science in 610

.1 Physical illness

Class here comprehensive works on illness and disability

Class medical records management [*formerly* 362.1] in 651.5

For mental illness, see 362.2, mental retardation, 362.3; physical handicaps and disablements, 362.4

.104 General special

.104 2 Social problems

.104 22 Nature, extent, social effects

.104 25 Alleviation

Services of medical personnel and institutions,
medical social work



362.11–362.18 General services

Class comprehensive works in 362 1, services to people with specific physical conditions in 362 19

.11 General services of hospitals and infirmaries

.12 General services of dispensaries, clinics, medical centers

.13 General services of sanitariums for incurables

.14 General services provided at home

[.15] Services of maternity hospitals

Class in 362.1982

.16 General services of convalescent, nursing, rest homes

.18 Ambulance services

.19 Services to those with specific physical conditions

Institutional and home care

Add to 362.19 the numbers following 61 in 616–618, e.g., maternity hospitals 362.1982 [*formerly* 362.15]

.2 Mental illness

.204 General special

.204 2 Social problems

.204 22 Nature, extent, social effects

.204 25 Alleviation

Services of medical personnel and institutions,
psychiatric social work

For institutions for the criminally insane, see 365.46



362.21–362.24 General services

Class comprehensive works in 362.2, services to the addicted in 362.29

- .21 General services of psychiatric hospitals
- .22 General services of psychiatric clinics
- .23 General services of sanitariums and nursing homes
- .24 General services provided at home
- .29 Services to the addicted
 - Class here services of hospitals, clinics, sanitariums, nursing homes
- .292 Alcoholics
 - Including services of Alcoholics Anonymous
- .293 Narcotics addicts
- .3 **Mental retardation**
 - Including services of hospitals, custodial homes, allied institutions
- .4 **Physical handicaps and disablements**
- .41 Blindness and partial blindness
- .42 Deafness, deaf-mutism, partial deafness
- .43 Crippled conditions
- .5 **Poverty**
 - Temporary or chronic financial disadvantage
 - Including budget counseling, employment services
 - Class here services to financially disadvantaged survivors and dependents
[formerly also 362.62]
 - Class poverty connected with a specific group or condition with the
subject, e.g., poverty of the aged 362.6
- .58 Legal aid



362.6–362.8 Social pathology of specific groups and its alleviation

Class comprehensive works in 362

- .6 **Problems of aged people and their alleviation**
- .604 General special
- .604 2 Social gerontology
 - Nature, extent, effects, causes, prevention, alleviation of social
problems of aged people

- .61 Institutional services
- .611-.614 To those suffering illnesses and handicaps
 - Add to 362.61 the numbers following 362 in 362.1-362.4, e.g.,
general services of nursing homes 362.6116
- .615 Of homes and asylums
 - Class services of homes and asylums to those suffering illnesses
and handicaps in 362.611-362.614
- [.62] Survivors and dependents
 - Class services to young survivors and dependents in 362.7, to financially
disadvantaged survivors and dependents in 362.5
- .63 Noninstitutional services
 - Examples: financial assistance, recreational services, clubs,
services provided at home
- .7 Problems of young people and their alleviation
 - Infants, children, adolescents
 - Class here services to young survivors and dependents
[formerly also 362.62]
- .704 General special
- .704 2 Social pathology
 - Nature, extent, effects, causes, prevention, alleviation of social
problems of young people
- .71 Services to children in the family
 - Day care, aid to dependent children, protective services to
neglected and abused children
 - Class services to maladjusted children in the family in 362.74
- .73 Services to children separated from the family
 - Orphans; abandoned, neglected, abused children; children from
broken or inadequate families
 - Class here placement
 - Class services to maladjusted children separated from the family
in 362.74
- [.731] Placement
 - Number discontinued, class in 362.73
- .732 Institutional care
 - Services of homes and asylums
 - Including houseparents
- .733 Foster home care
- .734 Adoption

- .74 Services to maladjusted children
- .742 By child guidance clinics
- .743 By schools
- .745 By junior republics
- .78 Services to those suffering illnesses and handicaps
 - Add to 362.78 the numbers following 362 in 362.1–362.4, e.g., services to mentally retarded young people 362.783
- .8 **Problems of other groups and their alleviation**
- .82 Families
 - Including marriage and family counseling, visiting housekeepers
 - Class specific problems and problems of specific groups with the subject, e.g., Negro families 362.84
- .83 Unmarried mothers
- .84 Minority groups
- .85 Laboring classes
 - Including migratory workers
 - Class members of minority groups in 362.84
- .88 Victims of crimes of violence
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .901–.904 Historical periods
 - Add to 362.90 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., alleviation of social pathology in 1960–1970 362.9046
- .91–.99 Geographical treatment
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 362.9

363 **Other social services**

SUMMARY

- 363.2 **Police services**
 - .3 Maintenance of public safety
 - .4 Control of factors affecting public morals
 - .5 Public works
 - .6 Public utilities
- .2 **Police services**
 - Class police services in maintenance of public safety in 363.3, in control of factors affecting public morals in 363.4
- .22 **Personnel**
 - Responsibilities, qualifications, grades

- .23 Operations
 - For criminal investigation, see 364.12*
- .232 Suppression of crime and delinquency
 - Patrol and surveillance
 - Including canine (K-9) services [*formerly 363.248*]
 - For pursuit and apprehension, see 363.234, prevention of crime and delinquency, 364.4*
- .233 Regulation and control of noncriminal activities
 - Examples: traffic control; enforcement of sanitation, building, licensing laws and ordinances, location of missing persons
- .234 Pursuit and apprehension
- [.236] Self-defense
 - Number discontinued; class in 363.2
- .24 Auxiliary services
- .242 Records and communications
 - Services related to police functions
 - Examples: photograph and fingerprint files
- [.243] Jails
 - Class in 365.3
- .244 Laboratories
 - Use of scientific tests and procedures in police work
- [.245] Buildings and equipment
 - Number discontinued; class in 363.2
- [.248] Canine (K-9) services
 - Class in 363.232
- .3 **Maintenance of public safety**
 - Class here prevention of violence
 - For suppression of crime and delinquency, see 363.232*
- .31 Censorship and control of information
- .32 Control of public gatherings
- .33 Control of explosives and firearms
- .34 Disaster and emergency planning
 - For civil defense, see 363.35*
- .35 Civil defense
- .351 Training
- .352 Protection of population

- .353 Protection of property
- .356 Detection and warning systems
- [.36] Prevention of violence
 - Number discontinued; class in 363.3
- .37 Fire prevention and control
- .4 **Control of factors affecting public morals**
 - Add to 363.4 the numbers following 350.76 in 350.761–350.765, e.g., control of drugs 363.45
- .5 **Public works**
 - Including public housing
 - Class communication and transportation facilities in 380
- .6 **Public utilities**
 - Class communication and transportation services in 380
- .61 Water supply
- [.612–.613] Activities and facilities
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 363.61
- .62 Electric power
- .63 Gas
- 364 **Crime and its alleviation (Criminology)**
 - Class here comprehensive works on criminology and criminal law
 - For criminal law, see 345*
 - .019 Psychological principles
 - Class criminal psychology in 364.3
 - .09 Historical and geographical treatment of criminology as a discipline
 - Class historical and geographical treatment of crime and its alleviation in 364.9

SUMMARY

- 364.1 **Offenses**
 - .2 Causes of crime and delinquency
 - .3 Offenders
 - .4 Prevention of crime and delinquency
 - .6 Correction of crime and delinquency
 - .8 Treatment of discharged offenders
 - .9 Historical and geographical treatment of crime and its alleviation

.1 Offenses

- .106 Organized crime [*formerly* 364.1406]
 - Including Mafia
- .106 6 Gang criminality (Gangsterism)
 - Organized groups engaged in piracy, robbery, theft, hijacking
- .106 7 Racketeering
 - Organized groups engaged in extortion from legitimate or illegitimate enterprises thru intimidation and force
 - Including union racketeering [*formerly* 364.143]
- .106 8 Syndicated crime
 - Organized groups engaged in furnishing illegal goods or services

SUMMARY

- 364.12 Criminal investigation (Detection)
 - .13 Offenses against constituted authority
 - .14 Offenses against public health, safety, order
 - .15 Offenses against the person
 - .16 Offenses against property
 - .17 Offenses against public morals
 - .18 Miscellaneous offenses
- .12 Criminal investigation (Detection)
 - Accumulation, preservation, presentation of evidence tending toward identification, apprehension, conviction of criminals
 - [.120 28] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use, class in 364.128

364.121–364.127 Evidence

- Class comprehensive works in 364.12
- .121 Indirect (Circumstantial) evidence
 - Facts or circumstances from which existence or nonexistence of facts in issue may be inferred
 - Class indirect evidence of identity in 364.126
 - For documentary evidence, see 364.122; characteristics of human body as evidence, 364.125*
- .122 Documentary evidence
 - Including analysis of handwriting and typing
- .125 Characteristics of human body as evidence
 - Examples: fingerprints, pores, retina patterns, ear configurations, hair, blood

- .126 Evidence of identity
 - Photographs, artists' sketches (*portraits parlé*), lineups
 - For characteristics of human body as evidence, see 364.125*
- .127 Direct evidence
 - Class direct evidence of identity in 364.126
- .127 2 Evidence of eyewitnesses
- .127 4 Evidence of secret agents
- .127 6 Evidence of informers
- .127 8 Evidence of expert witnesses
- [.127 9] Interrogation
 - Class in 364.128
- .128 Methods of investigation
 - Interrogation [*formerly 364.1279*], surveillance, search and seizure, interception of communication, laboratory procedures
 - Including wiretapping, lie detection

364.13–364.18 Specific types of offenses

Class here offenders group by type of offense but not by age or sex [*formerly 364.3*]

Class comprehensive works in 364.1, offenders of specific ages and sexes group by type of offense in 364.36–364.37

For military offenses, see 355.1334

- .13 Offenses against constituted authority
 - Class offenses against public order in 364.143
- .131 Against the state
 - Treason, espionage, conspiracy, seditious libel, subversion, incitement, rebellion, sabotage
 - Class industrial sabotage in 364.164
- .132 Against public administration
 - Graft, bribery, illegal voting, offenses against postal laws
 - For offenses against administration of justice, see 364.134*
- .133 Against public revenue
 - Counterfeiting, smuggling, bootlegging, tax evasion
- .134 Against administration of justice
 - Perjury, collusion, contempt of court, lynching
- .135 International crimes
 - Including piracy
 - For war crimes, see 364.138; genocide, 364.151*

- .138 War crimes
- .14 Offenses against public health, safety, order
 - Use 364.14001–364.14009 for standard subdivisions
- [.140 6] Organized crime
 - Class in 364.106
- .142 Against public health
- .143 Against public order
 - Rioting, unlawful assembly, disorderly conduct, illegal carrying of weapons
 - Class union racketeering [*formerly* 364.143] in 364.1067
- .147 Against traffic and communications safety
- .148 Vagrancy
- .15 Offenses against the person
 - For lynching, see* 364.134
- .151 Genocide
- .152 Homicide and suicide
 - For genocide, see* 364.151
- .152 2 Suicide
- .152 3 Murder
 - For assassination, see* 364.1524
- .152 4 Assassination
- .152 5 Manslaughter
- .153 Sex offenses
 - Rape, adultery, prostitution, seduction, acts of perversion
- .154 Abduction (Kidnaping)
- .155 Other crimes of violence
 - Robbery, assault and battery
 - Class criminal abortion [*formerly* 364.155] in 364.185
- .156 Criminal libel, slander, invasion of privacy
- .157 Traffic in drugs
- .16 Offenses against property
- .162 Larceny (Theft)
 - Examples: embezzlement [*formerly* 364.163], burglary
 - For robbery. see* 364.155: *frauds.* 364.163

- .163 **Frauds (Swindles)**
 - Including forgery
 - Class embezzlement in 364.162, extortion and blackmail in 364.165 [*all formerly* 364.163]
- .164 **Wilful damage and destruction**
 - Arson, depredation, industrial sabotage, vandalism
- .165 **Extortion and blackmail** [*both formerly* 364.163]
- .17 **Offenses against public morals**
 - For sex offenses, see* 364.153
- .172 **Gambling**
- .173 **Public drunkenness**
- .174 **Obscenity and pornography**
- [.178] **Cruelty to animals**
 - Class in 364.187
- .18 **Miscellaneous offenses**
- .183 **Bigamy**
- .185 **Criminal abortion** [*formerly* 364.155]
- .187 **Cruelty to animals** [*formerly* 364.178]
- .188 **Offenses against religion**
 - Offenses defined and penalized by the state
 - Examples: witchcraft, blasphemy, heresy, sacrilege
 - Class offenses in church law in 262.935
- .2 **Causes of crime and delinquency**
 - Class here criminal anthropology
- .22 **Natural physical factors**
 - Influence of climate, weather, topography, soil, seasons, time of day upon number and types of crimes
- .24 **Characteristics of the individual**
 - Class here hereditary characteristics
- .242 **Physical characteristics**
 - Correlation of physical typology and endocrine factors with tendency to crime
- .243 **Psychological characteristics**
 - Including influence of physical abnormality on attitudes and mental states
- .25 **Social factors**
- .253 **Influence of family and social groups**

- .254 **Cultural factors**
 Influence of theater, motion pictures, art, literature, comic books,
 radio, television
- .255 **Leisure and recreation**
 Influence of amusement and public parks, public dance halls,
 poolrooms, bars, cabarets, automobiles
- .256 **Social conflicts**
 Individual social maladjustments, immigration, class and racial
 conflicts, feuds, vendettas
- .26 **Economic factors**
 Industry, labor, capital, employment, unemployment, strikes,
 standards and cost of living, poverty

.3 Offenders

- Class here criminal psychology
- Class offenders group by type of offense but not by age or sex
 [formerly 364.3] in 364.13-364.18
- Class causes of crime and delinquency in 364.2, prevention in 364.4,
 correction in 364.6
- .32 **Criminal types**
 Recidivists, habitual and professional offenders, criminally insane,
 occasional offenders, one-time offenders
- .35 **Predelinquents**
 Potential, near, quasi-delinquents

364.36-364.37 Offenders by age and sex

Class here categories of offenders by type of offense, e.g., women murderers

Class comprehensive works in 364.3, individual crimes and criminals in 364.1

- .36 **Juvenile delinquents**
- .363 Boys
- .364 Girls
- .37 **Adult offenders**
- .373 Men
- .374 Women

.4 Prevention of crime and delinquency

- .42 **Control of population**
 Thru eugenic practices, immigration, emigration, segregation
- .43 **Control of economic conditions**

- .44 **Control of social factors**
 - Welfare services, law enforcement
 - For preventive police work, see 364.46*
- .46 **Preventive police work**
- .6 **Correction of crime and delinquency**
 - Including pardon, amnesty
 - Class here welfare services to offenders
 - For treatment of discharged offenders, see 364.8; welfare services to prison inmates, 365.66*
- .61 **Imprisonment and detention**
 - Class deportation [*formerly 364.61*] in 364.68
 - For penal institutions, see 365*
- .62 **Parole and indeterminate sentence**
- .63 **Probation, suspended sentence, reprieve**
 - Class here comprehensive works on probation and parole
 - For parole, see 364.62*
- [.64] **Pardon and amnesty**
 - Number discontinued; class in 364.6
- .65 **Commutation of sentence**
- .66 **Capital punishment**
- .67 **Corporal punishment**
- .68 **Economic, civil, political penalties**
 - Deportation [*formerly 364.61*], loss of citizenship, loss of franchise, fines
- [.682–.684] **Specific penalties**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 364.68
- [.7] **Correctional institutions**
 - Class in 365
- .8 **Treatment of discharged offenders**
 - Rehabilitation, other welfare services
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment of crime and its alleviation**
- .901–.904 **Historical periods**
 - Add to 364.90 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., crime in 18th century 364.9033
- .91–.99 **Geographical treatment**
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 364.9

365 Penal institutions

Class here correctional institutions [*formerly* 364.7], institutions for detention

[.09] **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 365.9

.2 Prison systems

Congregate, solitary confinement, silent, progressive

.3 Kinds of penal institutions

Jails [*formerly also* 363.243], detention homes, prisons, penitentiaries, reformatories, workhouses, prison farms, road camps, penal colonies, concentration camps, pre-release guidance centers

Class specific kinds of institutions for specific classes of persons in 365.4, specific institutions in 365.91–365.99

.4 Institutions for specific classes of persons

Class specific institutions in 365.91–365.99

.42 Juveniles and youthful offenders

Reformatories, borstals, reform, industrial, training schools

.43 Women offenders

.45 Prisoners of war and political offenders

Class military prisons in 355.13325

For concentration camps, see 365.3

.46 Other classes

Criminally insane, debtors

.5 Prison plant

Grounds, buildings, equipment as related to prison functions

Class prison architecture in 725.6

.6 Inmates

Class military prisoners in 355.1295

.64 Treatment

.641 Security measures

Including escapes

.642 Reception and classification

.643 Discipline

Rules and regulations, routine, rights of inmates, restrictions, privileges

.644 Punishments of refractory inmates

.647 Release and discharge

- .65 **Convict labor**
 - Employment of inmates, lease system, chain gangs, contract system
- .66 **Welfare services**
 - Educational work, religious and character training, health, recreation
- .7 **Reform of penal system**
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .901-.904 **Historical periods**
 - Add to 365.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., penal institutions in 19th century 365.9034
- .91-.99 **Geographical treatment**
 - Class here specific institutions
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 365.9

366 **Association**

Organizations formed for common purposes of a fraternal nature or for mutual assistance

For general clubs, see 367; miscellaneous kinds of associations, 369

- .001-.008 **Standard subdivisions**
- .009 **Historical and geographical treatment** [*formerly* 366.9]
- .01-.09 **Standard subdivisions of esoteric associations and societies**

366.1-366.5 Esoteric (Secret and semisecret) associations and societies

Class comprehensive works in 366, standard subdivisions in 366.01-366.09

For orders of knighthood, see 929.71

- .1 **Freemasonry**
- .17 **Order of DeMolay**
- .18 **Women in Freemasonry**
 - Including Order of the Eastern Star, Job's Daughters, Order of the Rainbow
- .2 **Knights of Pythias**
- .3 **Independent Order of Odd Fellows**
- .38 **Daughters of Rebekah**
- .4 **Rosicrucians**
- .5 **Benevolent and Protective Order of Elks**
- [.9] **Historical and geographical treatment of association**
 - Class in 366.009

367 General clubs

Examples: social clubs, study clubs

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 367.9

.9 **Historical and geographical treatment**

.901-.904 Historical periods

Add to 367.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., general clubs in 1960-1970 367.9046

.91-.99 Geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 367.9

368 Insurance

Class here comprehensive works on insurance companies

Class credit and loan functions of insurance companies in 332.38

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 368.9

.01 General principles

Class here actuarial science

.011 Rates and rate making

.012 Underwriting

Including reinsurance

.014 Claims

Adjustment of claims, settlement of losses, fraudulent claims

[.014 5] Fraudulent claims

Number discontinued; class in 368.014

.015 Finance

.016 Lapsation, persistence, termination



368.06-368.08 Specific forms of risk

Class comprehensive works in 368

.06 **Property risks**

Risk of loss from impairment or destruction of property

.062 Tangible risks

.063 Intangible risks

- .07 Personal risks
 - Risk of loss of income or augmented expenditure due to hazards to the person
- .08 Other risks
 - Including risk of consequential loss
- .09 Conventional comprehensive sales groupings
- .092 Automobile insurance
- .093 Aviation insurance
- .096 Real property insurance

SUMMARY

- 368.1 Insurance against damage to and loss of property
- .2 Insurance against damage to and loss of property in transit (Transportation insurance)
- .3 Insurance against death, old age, illness, injury
- .4 Government-sponsored insurance
- .5 Liability insurance
- .6 Insurance against glass breakage
- .7 Insurance against industrial casualties
- .8 Other casualty insurance
- .9 Insurance by continent, country, locality in modern world

368.1–368.8 Specific kinds of insurance

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01 General principles

Add to 01 the numbers following 368.01 in 368.011–368.016, e.g., underwriting 012

Class comprehensive works in 368

- .1 ***Insurance against damage to and loss of property**
 - For transportation insurance, see 368.2; casualty insurance, 368.5–368.8*
- .11 ***Fire insurance**
- .12 ***Allied fire insurance lines**
- .122 ***Disaster insurance**
 - Against damage and loss from storms, earthquakes, floods
- .125 ***Riot and civil commotion insurance**
- .129 ***Extended coverage insurance**
- .14 ***War risk insurance**

¹ Add as instructed under 368.1–368.8

**.2 *Insurance against damage to and loss of property in transit
 (Transportation insurance)**

Including postal insurance

Class here insurance against damage to and loss of instrumentalities
of transportation

.22 *Ocean marine insurance

.23 *Inland marine insurance

For air transportation insurance, see 368.24

.232 *Automobile insurance

Including truck and bus insurance

.233 *Railroad insurance

.24 *Air transportation insurance

.3 *Insurance against death, old age, illness, injury

Class here group insurance

For government-sponsored insurance, see 368.4

.32 *Life insurance

For special fields of life insurance, see 368.36

.36 Special fields of life insurance

.362 *Industrial life insurance

.363 *Fraternal insurance

.364 *War risk life insurance

Example: National Service Life Insurance

.37 *Annuities

.375 *Variable annuities

.38 *Accident and health insurance

.382 *Prepaid health care

.382 2 *Medical and surgical

.382 3 *Dental

.382 7 *Hospital

.384 *Accident insurance

.386 *Disability income insurance

.4 *Government-sponsored insurance

Class here social security

.41 *Workmen's compensation insurance

Protection against losses incurred thru disablements caused by the job

* Add as instructed under 368.1-368.8

- .42 ***Accident and health insurance**
 For workmen's compensation insurance, see 368.41
- .424 ***Maternity insurance**
- .426 ***Accident and health insurance for the aged**
- .43 ***Old-age and survivors' insurance**
 For accident and health insurance for the aged, see 368.426
- .44 ***Unemployment insurance**
- .48 ***Insurance against crimes of violence**



368.5–368.8 Against casualties (Casualty insurance)

Class comprehensive works in 368.5

- .5 ***Liability insurance**
 Class here comprehensive works on casualty insurance
 For insurance against glass breakage, see 368.6; against industrial casualties, 368.7; other casualty insurance, 368.8
- .56 **Miscellaneous lines**
 Livestock, owners', landlords', tenants', contractual, elevator, personal
- .57 ***Instrumentalities of transportation**
- .572 ***Automobile**
- .576 ***Aviation**
- .6 ***Insurance against glass breakage**
 Plate glass, windows, neon and fluorescent signs and lamps
- .7 ***Insurance against industrial casualties**
 Boiler, machinery, power-plant, nuclear-accident, power-interruption insurance
- .8 **Other casualty insurance**
- .81 ***Business insurance**
- .815 ***Business interruption insurance**
 Including strike insurance
- .82 ***Burglary, robbery, theft insurance**
- .83 ***Fidelity bonds**
 Guarantee against loss to employers because of dishonesty of employees
- .84 ***Surety bonds**
 Guarantee against loss due to failure to perform an obligation or fulfil a contract

¹ Add as instructed under 368.1–368.8

- .85 Other guarantees
 - For credit insurance, see 368.87; title insurance, 368.88*
- .852 *Mortgage insurance
- .853 *Investment guarantees
- .854 *Bank deposit insurance
- .87 *Credit insurance
 - Insurance of creditor against loss due to debtor's insolvency
- .88 *Title insurance
- .9 **Insurance by continent, country, locality in modern world**
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 368.9

369 **Miscellaneous kinds of associations**

- .1 **Hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States**
 - Including state and local societies
 - (If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to hereditary, military, patriotic societies of a specific country, it is optional to class them here; in that case class hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States in 369.273)
- .11 General
 - Military and naval orders, Medal of Honor Legion, Military Order of Foreign Wars of the United States, Veterans of Foreign Wars
- .12 Colonial
 - Society of Colonial Wars, Colonial Dames, Mayflower Descendants
- .13 Revolutionary
 - Including Society of the Cincinnati, Sons of the American Revolution
- .135 Daughters of the American Revolution
- .14 Commemorating events of 1789-1861
- .15 Union Civil War
 - Grand Army of the Republic, Society of the Army of the Cumberland
- .16 Auxiliary Union societies of Civil War
- .17 Confederate Civil War
 - United Confederate Veterans, United Daughters of the Confederacy
- .18 Wars of 1898 and later
- .181 Spanish-American War
- .186 World Wars I and II and later
- .186 1 American Legion

* Add as instructed under 368.1-368.8

- .186 2 Amvets
- .186 3 Disabled American Veterans
- .2 **Hereditary, military, patriotic societies**
 - If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to hereditary, military, patriotic societies of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., hereditary, military, patriotic societies of France 369.F (preceding 369.1)
- .209 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 369.23–369.29
- .21 International
- .23–.29 Specific continents, countries, localities
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 369.2
 - For hereditary, military, patriotic societies of United States, see 369.1*
- .4 **Young people’s societies**
- .42 Boys’
 - For Boy Scouts, see 369.43*
- .43 Boy Scouts
- .46 Girls’
 - For Camp Fire Girls, see 369.47*
- .463 Girl Scouts and Girl Guides
- .47 Camp Fire Girls
- .5 **Service clubs**
 - Including Rotary, Kiwanis, Lions

370 Education

Class study and teaching of a specific subject at elementary level in 372.3–372.8; at higher levels with the subject using “Standard Subdivisions” notation 07 from Table 1, e.g., study of agriculture 630.7

- .1 **Philosophy, theories, principles**

SUMMARY

- 370.11 Aims, objectives, value
 - .12 Classification and other philosophical foundations
 - .13 Scientific principles
 - .15 Educational psychology
 - .19 Education and society
- .11 Aims, objectives, value
- .112 Humanistic education (Liberal education)
- .113 Education for vocational effectiveness

- .114 Moral, ethical, character education
- .115 Education for social responsibility [*formerly* 370.19334]
 - Including education for international understanding
- .116 Education for effective use of leisure
 - Including education for individual fulfilment [*formerly* 370.19332]
- .118 Education for creativity
- .12 Classification and other philosophical foundations
 - Examples: idealism, realism, pragmatism
- .13 Scientific principles
 - Add to 370.13 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., somatological aspects 370.1373
 - Class psychological principles in 370.15, value in 370.11
- .15 Educational psychology
 - Investigation of psychological problems involved in education, together with practical application of psychological principles to education
 - Class scientific principles in 370.13
- .152 Memory, learning, reason, other cognitive processes
- .153 Emotion and behavior
 - Relation of behavior patterns, feelings, emotions to learning process and to classroom situation
 - For motivation, see* 370.154
- .154 Motivation
- .156 Psychology of learning specific subjects
- .158 Psychological effects of education
 - Effects on students of school situation, teaching methods, other factors
- .19 Education and society
 - Class psychological principles in 370.15
- .193 Educational sociology
 - Influence of social factors on nature and operation of education, influence of school on society
- .193 1 Influence of community on education
 - Including parent-teacher associations
 - For specific social and cultural factors, see* 370.1934
- [.193 3] Role of school in fostering society
 - Class education for individual fulfilment [*formerly* 370.19332] in 370.116, education for social responsibility [*formerly* 370.19334] in 370.115

- .193 4 **Specific social and cultural factors**
 - .193 41 **Economic and cultural situation of students**
 - Class education of culturally deprived students in 371.967
 - .193 42 **Racial and ethnic factors**
 - Including integration
 - For segregation of racial and ethnic groups, see 370.19344*
 - .193 44 **Segregation of racial and ethnic groups**
-
- 370.193 46–370.193 48 **Ecological factors**
 - Class comprehensive works in 370.1934
 - .193 46 **Rural environments**
 - .193 48 **Urban environments**
 - .194 **Fundamental education**
 - Preparation of educationally underprivileged children and adults for effective participation in community life
 - .195 **Comparative education**
 - .196 **Intercultural education**
 - Programs to promote mutual understanding among nations and cultures thru exchange of instructional materials, techniques, students, teachers, technicians
 - Class education within a country for international understanding in 370.115
 - .196 2 **Exchange of students** [*formerly also 371.391*]
 - .196 3 **Exchange of teachers** [*formerly also 371.142*]
 - Including exchange of college and university teachers [*formerly also 378.123*]
 - .196 5 **Educational aid**
 - Including establishment of schools in other countries
 - .7 **Study and teaching of education**
 - .71 **Professional education of teachers**
 - Including training classes, teachers' and faculty meetings
 - Class schools and courses in 370.73, in-service training in 371.146
 - .712 **For specific grades or levels**
 - .712 2 **Kindergarten and elementary**
 - .712 3 **Secondary**
 - .712 4 **Higher**

- .72 Teachers' conferences, institutes, workshops
 - Class research in 370.78
- .73 Institutions of higher education
 - Class students, learners, apprentices, novices in 370.773
- .730 1–.730 9 Standard subdivisions
- .732 Courses and programs
 - .732 6 For specific grades or levels
 - .732 62 Kindergarten and elementary
 - .732 63 Secondary
 - .732 64 Higher
- .733 Practice teaching
 - Facilities and programs
- [.75] Collecting and collections of objects
 - Do not use; class in 370.775
- .76 Professional education of administrators
 - Class review and exercise in 370.776
- .77 Miscellany
- .773 Students, learners, apprentices, novices
- .775 Collecting and collections of objects
- .776 Review and exercise
- .777 Programed teaching and learning
- .778 Use of apparatus and equipment
- .78 Educational research
 - Add to 370.78 the numbers following 072 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 07201–0724 from Table 1, e.g., surveys and appraisals 370.783
 - Class use of apparatus and equipment in 370.778

371 The school

Use 371.001–371.009 for standard subdivisions

Class schools of specific levels in 372–374, relation of state to school in 379

- .01 The public school
- .02 The private school

SUMMARY

- 371.1 Teaching and teaching personnel
- .2 Educational administration
- .3 Methods of instruction and study
- .4 Guidance and counseling
- .5 School discipline
- .6 Physical plant
- .7 School health and safety
- .8 The student
- .9 Special education

.1 Teaching and teaching personnel

Use 371.1001–371.1009 for standard subdivisions

Class personnel management in 658.3

.102 Teaching

Classroom management and control, authority and influence of teacher

Including teacher-student relations

Class evaluation of teachers in 371.144

For methods of instruction, see 371.3

371.103–371.106 Teacher relations

Class comprehensive works in 371.104

.103 Teacher-parent relations

Class parent-teacher associations in 370.1931

.104 Relation of teachers to society

Including relation to immediate community, academic freedom; rights, obligations, public status of teachers

Class here comprehensive works on teacher relations

For teacher-student relations, see 371.102; teacher-parent relations, 371.103; relation of teachers to school administration and staff, 371.106

[.104 2–.104 6] Specific aspects

Numbers discontinued; class in 371.104

.106 Relation of teachers to school administration and staff

.11 Personal characteristics and qualifications of teachers

.12 Professional qualifications of teachers

Class examination and certification in 379.157

.122 Training

.123 Participation in professional organizations and activities

- [.13] Examination, certification, registration of teachers
 - Class in 379.157
- .14 Organization of teaching force in the school
- .141 Duties and responsibilities
- .141 2 Teaching load
 - Including use of teacher aides
 - For team teaching, see 371.148*
- .141 4 Nonteaching activities
- [.142] Exchange of teachers
 - Class in 370.1963
- .144 Evaluation of teachers
- .146 In-service training
 - Including staff handbooks
- .148 Team teaching
- .2 Educational administration
 - Management activities related to function
 - Use 371.2001–371.2009 for standard subdivisions
- .201 Nonteaching personnel
 - Duties and responsibilities
 - For nonadministrative personnel, see 371.202*
- .201 1 Superintendents
- .201 2 Principals
- .201 3 Supervisors
- .202 Nonadministrative personnel
 - Duties and responsibilities
 - Examples: school psychologists, social workers, guidance personnel
- .204 Standards and accreditation
- .207 Planning

SUMMARY

- 371.21 Matriculation (Admission)
- .22 Tuition
- .23 School year
- .24 School day
- .25 Grouping of pupils for instruction
- .26 Educational tests and measurements
- .27 School and classroom evaluation of pupils' progress
- .28 Promotion and failure
- .29 Other topics

-
- .21 Matriculation (Admission)
 - .216 Admission methods and standards
 - For entrance requirements, see 371.217*
 - .217 Entrance requirements
 - Class examinations in 371.264
 - .218 Articulation
 - .219 School enrolment
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 371.219
 - .22 Tuition
 - Including scholarships
 - .23 School year
 - Including school calendar
 - .232 Summer school
 - [.235] School calendar
 - Number discontinued; class in 371.23
 - .236 All-year school
 - .24 School day
 - .242 Schedules and scheduling
 - Individual, class, all-school
 - .242 1 Class schedules and periods
 - .242 2 Homeroom periods
 - .242 4 Activity periods
 - .244 Length of school day
 - .25 Grouping of pupils for instruction
 - .251 Class size
 - .252 Heterogeneous grouping
 - Without consideration for interests, abilities, achievements
 - .254 Homogeneous grouping
 - On basis of similar interests, abilities, achievements
 - Including non-graded schools
 - [.255] Plans using a combination of factors
 - Number discontinued; class in 371.25

- .26 Educational tests and measurements
 - Measurement of students' academic growth and progress
 - For school and classroom evaluation of pupils' progress, see 371.27*
- .260 1 Philosophy and theory
- .260 13 Validity and reliability of tests
- .261 Test construction
- .262 Standardized and other mass examinations
 - Examinations conducted by authorities or organizations external to the individual school to determine general educational level and academic achievement
 - For use of tests, see 371.264*
- .264 Academic prognosis and placement
 - Use of tests of academic achievement and general education for prediction of future academic achievement, for admission to educational institutions
 - Including vocational interest tests
- [.264 2--.264 6] Educational quotient, academic prognosis, vocational interest tests
 - Numbers discontinued, class in 371.264
- .27 School and classroom evaluation of pupils' progress
- .271 Tests and examinations
 - Types, value, methods of construction
 - Including construction of tests by teachers
- .272 Marking systems
 - Methods used for recording and reporting achievement of pupils in school studies
- .272 1 Grades and grading
- .272 2 Reporting progress to parents
 - Thru school marks and conferences
- .28 Promotion and failure
 - Including acceleration and retardation
- [.281--.282] Credit and failures
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 371.28
- .29 Other topics
- .291 Student mobility
- .291 2 School completion
- .291 3 Dropouts
 - Class student failures in 371.28

.291 4 Transfers

.3 Methods of instruction and study

Class here lesson plans and planning

Class methods used in teaching exceptional students in 371.9043; methods used in teaching specific subjects at elementary level in 372.3–372.8, at higher levels with the subject using “Standard Subdivisions” notation 07 from Table 1, e.g., methods used in teaching mathematics 510.7

.302 8 Techniques

Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 371.3078

.302 81 Techniques of study

.302 812 For students

.302 813 For parents

Manuals designed to help parents teach their children
desirable study methods

.302 814 For teachers

Teaching methods of study

.302 82 Classroom techniques

.307 8 Teaching aids, materials, devices

Class specific aids in 371.32–371.33

[.307 81–.307 82] Curriculum laboratories and courses of study

Numbers discontinued, class in 371.3078

► **371.32–371.33 Specific teaching aids, materials, devices**

Methods, use, value

Class comprehensive works in 371.3078

For teaching machines, see 371.39445

.32 Textbooks and other printed media

.33 Audio and visual materials for teaching

.330 4 General special

.330 42 Classroom creation and design

.331 Administration

Evaluation, planning for and coordination of use

.332 Teaching methods

Including use of drama

Class methods of teaching with a specific aid with the subject, e.g.,
teaching with television 371.3358

.333 Audio materials and devices

.333 1 Radio

- .333 2 Phonograph and phonograph records
- .333 3 Tape recorder and recordings
- .335 Visual and audiovisual materials and devices
- .335 2 Pictures
- .335 22 Slides and filmstrips
- .335 23 Motion pictures
- .335 6 Bulletin boards
- .335 8 Television
- .335 82 Effectiveness
- .335 84 Teaching methods
- .335 87 Administration
 - Scheduling, planning for use
 - Including interinstitutional teaching
- .335 89 Production of programs and specific programs

► 371.36-371.39 Specific methods of teaching

Class comprehensive works in 371.3

- .36 Project (Unit) method
- .37 Recitation and discussion methods
- [.371-.373] Specific methods
 - Numbers discontinued, class in 371.37
- .38 Laboratory method
 - Including work-study programs, field trips
- [.381-.383] Specific methods
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 371.38
- .39 Other methods
- [.391] Exchange of students
 - Class in 370.1962
- .394 Individualized instruction
 - Including private tutoring
- .394 2 Honors work
- .394 3 Independent study plans
- .394 4 Auto-instructional methods
- .394 42 Programed learning
 - For use of teaching machines, see 371.39445*
- .394 422 Programing
 - Design and preparation of programed courses of instruction

-
- .394 424 Teaching methods with programed learning
 - .394 426 Effectiveness
 - .394 45 Use of teaching machines
 - Computer-based instruction
 - .396 Lecture method
 - .4 Guidance and counseling**
 - Formal and informal
 - For guidance of exceptional students, see 371.9*
 - .404 General special
 - .404 2 Administration of guidance programs
 - Planning, implementing, evaluating guidance programs
 - Including compilation and maintenance of students' personnel records
 - .404 4 Guidance methods
 - Including group guidance [*formerly 371.48*]
 - .404 6 Role of teachers in guidance
 - .42 Educational and vocational guidance
 - .422 Intellectual and educational
 - .425 Vocational
 - Class choice of vocation in 331.702, characteristics of a specific occupation with the subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 023 from Table 1, e.g., law as a profession 340.023
 - [.425 1-.425 3] Job selection, placement, follow-up
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 371.425
 - .46 Personal guidance
 - Social guidance, assistance with emotional and other personal problems
 - Including services of school social workers and psychologists
 - Class student mental health in 371.71
 - [.48] Group guidance
 - Class in 371.4044
 - .5 School discipline**
 - For classroom control, see 371.102*
 - .51 General regulations for student conduct
 - Including objectives, policy
 - .53 Incentives
 - Including rewards
 - For punishments, see 371.54*

- .54 Punishments
 - .59 Student participation in maintenance of discipline
 - Monitorial and prefectorial systems, honor systems, student government
 - .6 Physical plant**
 - .61 Locations, sites, grounds
 - .62 Buildings
 - Requirements based on educational functions
 - Examples: requirements for non-graded instructional programs, for team teaching
 - Class architecture of buildings for educational purposes in 727
-
- 371.621–371.625 Rooms and buildings for specific purposes
- Class here furnishings, apparatus, equipment, supplies
 - Class comprehensive works in 371.62
 - For facilities for exceptional students, see 371.9*
 - .621 Instructional spaces
 - General-purpose classrooms, study rooms, auxiliary facilities
 - Examples: auditoriums, projection, television, radio rooms
 - For special-purpose instructional spaces, see 371.623*
 - .623 Special-purpose instructional spaces
 - Rooms, laboratories, observatories, workshops for study of music, art, business and commerce, home economics, science, industrial arts and shopwork, agriculture, language
 - For physical and health education facilities, see 371.624*
 - .624 Physical and health education facilities
 - Examples: gymnasiums, swimming pools
 - .625 Noninstructional facilities
 - Facilities for student societies, student unions, dormitories, infirmaries, food services
 - [.626–.628] Environmental engineering of educational buildings
 - Class in 690.7
 - .63 Furnishings
 - Class furnishings for specific rooms and purposes in 371.621–371.625
 - .67 Apparatus, equipment, supplies
 - Class apparatus, equipment, supplies for specific purposes in 371.621–371.625

- .7 School health and safety**
 - .71 Physical and mental health of students**
 - Promotion and maintenance
 - .712 Medical care**
 - Including services of school nurses and psychologists
 - .716 Nutrition**
 - Lunch and milk programs
 - .77 Safety programs**
 - .774 Fire safety**
 - .775 Safety in specific situations**
 - Examples: in athletics, in laboratories
- .8 The student**
 - Nonacademic life and welfare
 - .805 Student periodicals**
 - Class school journalism in 371.897
 - [.806] **Organizations**
 - Do not use; class in 371.83–371.85
 - .81 Attitudes and behavior**
 - Class school discipline in 371.5; guidance and counseling in 371.4
 - .83 Student organizations**
 - For student organizations in specific fields, see 371.84; Greek-letter societies, 371.85*
 - .84 Student organizations in specific fields**
 - Add 001–999 to base number 371.84, e.g., literary societies 371.848
 - For Greek-letter societies in specific fields, see 371.854*
 - .85 Greek-letter societies**
 - .852 Honorary**
 - Not in a specific subject field
 - Example: Phi Beta Kappa
 - .854 In specific fields**
 - Add 001–999 to base number 371.854, e.g., Greek-letter societies in social sciences 371.8543
 - .855 Men's social societies and fraternities**
 - .856 Women's social societies and sororities**

- .87 Housing and transportation of students
- [.871--.872] Housing and transportation
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 371.87
- .89 Activities
 - Programs and events sponsored or maintained by schools or student organizations, carrying partial or no academic credit
- [.891--.895] Specific activities
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 371.89
- .897 School journalism
 - Class here photography
- .897 4 Student newspapers
- .897 5 Student magazines
- .897 6 Yearbooks
- .9 **Special education**
 - Education employing special curriculums, methods, facilities for exceptional students
 - Class here guidance of exceptional students, study and teaching of specific subjects
- [.902 8] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use; class techniques in 371.9043; apparatus, equipment, materials in 371.9045
- .904 General special
- .904 2 Administration
- .904 3 Teaching methods
- .904 4 Special subjects
 - Mathematics, language, arts, crafts, shop, music, physical education
- .904 5 Facilities
 - Buildings, rooms, furnishings, apparatus, equipment, supplies

SUMMARY

- 371.91 Students with physical handicaps
- .92 Retarded students and slow learners
- .93 Delinquent and problem students
- .94 Emotionally disturbed students
- .95 Gifted students
- .96 Students exceptional because of class distinction
- .97 Students exceptional because of national, racial, ethnic origin

-
- .91 Students with physical handicaps
 - .911 Blind and partially sighted students
 - .911 2-.911 5 General principles
 - Add to 371.911 the numbers following 371.904 in 371.9042-371.9045, e.g., teaching methods 371.9113
 - .912 Deaf and hard-of-hearing students
 - Class education of deaf-blind in 371.911
 - .912 2-.912 5 General principles
 - Add to 371.912 the numbers following 371.904 in 371.9042-371.9045, e.g., teaching methods 371.9123
 - .912 7 Instruction in visual communication
 - Lip reading, manual alphabet
 - .914 Students with linguistic handicaps
 - Including students with aphasia, dyslexia
 - .916 Crippled students
 - Including brain-damaged students
 - Class students with linguistic handicaps due to brain damage in 371.914, students mentally retarded because of brain damage in 371.928
 - .92 Retarded students and slow learners
 - .922-.925 General principles
 - Add to 371.92 the numbers following 371.904 in 371.9042-371.9045, e.g., teaching methods 371.923
 - Class general principles applied to slow learners in 371.926, to mentally retarded in 371.928
 - .926 Slow learners
 - .928 Mentally retarded
 - .928 2 Educable
 - .928 3 Trainable
 - .928 4 Severely retarded
 - .93 Delinquent and problem students
 - Students whose conduct is troublesome
 - .94 Emotionally disturbed students
 - For delinquent and problem students, see 371.93*
 - .95 Gifted students
 - .952 Identification
 - .953 Programs and curriculums

- .956 Teaching methods and practices
 - Including motivation of gifted underachievers
- .96 Students exceptional because of class distinction
- .962 Upper classes
 - Royalty, nobility, gentry
- .967 Socially and culturally deprived
 - Class students socially deprived because of racial, ethnic, national origin in 371.97
- .967 2 Urban and slum students
- .967 5 Migrants
- .97 Students exceptional because of national [*formerly* 371.98], racial, ethnic origin
 - Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01-99 from Table 5 to base number 371.97, e.g., education of Jews 371.97924; then add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 for place located, e.g., education of Jews in France 371.97924044
 - Class study and teaching of languages at secondary and higher levels in 400
- [.98] Students exceptional because of national origin
 - Class in 371.97



372-374 Levels of education and schools

Class comprehensive works on education in 370, on schools in 371

For higher education, see 378

372 Elementary education

Class special education at elementary level in 371.9

- [.09] Historical and geographical treatment
 - Do not use; class in 372.9

SUMMARY

- 372.1 The elementary school
- .2 Levels of elementary schools
- .3 Science and health
- .4 Reading
- .5 Creative and manual arts
- .6 Language arts (Communication skills)
- .7 Mathematics
- .8 Other studies
- .9 Historical and geographical treatment of elementary education and schools

-
- .1 **The elementary school**
 - Class specific levels in 372.2
 - .104 **General special**
 - .104 2 **Control**
 - .104 21 **Public**
 - .104 22 **Private**
 - [.109] **Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Do not use; class in 372.9
 - .11--.18 **Organization and administration**
 - Add to 372.1 the numbers following 371 in 371.1--371.8, e.g., elementary school day 372.124
 - .19 **Curriculums**
 - Class here comprehensive works on elementary school subjects
 - Class courses of study in specific elementary school subjects in 372.3--372.8
 - .2 **Levels of elementary schools**
 - .21 **Preschool institutions**
 - .216 **Nursery schools**
 - .218 **Kindergartens**
 - When not considered part of elementary grades
 - .24 **Elementary schools**
 - Including elementary sections of all-age schools
 - Class post-elementary, advanced elementary sections, upper sections of all-age schools in 373.23
 - .241 **Lower level**
 - Primary grades (1-3), infant schools (Great Britain)
 - .242 **Upper level**
 - Intermediate grades (4-6), junior schools (Great Britain)



372.3–372.8 Specific elementary school subjects

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 01–03 Standard subdivisions
- 04 General special
 - 042 Place of subject in education
 - 043 Curriculums
 - Courses of study, content, **emphasis**
 - 044 Teaching
 - Methods, materials, aids, sources
 - 044 2 Works for parents
 - Works designed to help parents instruct their children
 - 045 Textbooks
 - Works for students directly embodying the subject matter involved
 - If preferred, class with the subject
 - 049 Specific levels of instruction
 - Example: music for primary grades
 - Class a specific aspect of instruction at a given level with the aspect, e.g., curriculums for primary grades
 - 043

05–09 Other standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works in 372.19

.3 Science and health

.35 *Science

.357 Nature study

.37 Health and hygiene

.4 Reading

.41 General reading instruction

.412 Readers

Class readers on a specific subject with the subject using notation 045 as shown under 372.3–372.8, e.g., science readers 372.35045

[.413] Remedial reading

Class in 372.43

.414 Methods of instruction

.414 2 Fostering and determining readiness

.414 4 Whole word methods (Word recognition)

.414 5 Part methods

Phonics, alphabet, structural analysis

Including special teaching alphabets

.414 7 Individualized (Personalized) reading instruction

.43 Remedial reading [formerly 372.413]

• Add as instructed under 372.3–372.8

-
- .5 ***Creative and manual arts**
 - .52 Drawing, painting, design
 - .53 Modeling and sculpturing
 - .54 Sewing
 - .55 Handicrafts
 - Including paper work (cutting, pasting, modeling, origami)
 - For sewing, see 372.54*
 - .6 ***Language arts (Communication skills)**
 - Oral and written
 - Including listening
 - For reading, see 372.4*
 - .61 Grammar and word study
 - .62 Expression
 - .622 Phonetics and speech
 - Class phonics in 372.4145
 - .623 Composition
 - .63 Spelling and handwriting
 - .632 Spelling
 - .634 Handwriting (Penmanship)
 - .64 Literature (Belles-lettres)
 - Including storytelling
 - For drama, see 372.66*
 - .65 Foreign languages
 - Including English as a foreign language
 - Add "Languages" notation 1-9 from Table 6 to base number 372.65
 - .66 Drama
 - .7 **Mathematics**
 - .72 ***Arithmetic**
 - .73 ***Modern mathematics ("The new math")**
 - Unified approach to mathematics as a whole
 - Including algebra and geometry
 - For arithmetic, see 372.72*

* Add as instructed under 372.3-372.8

-
- .8 Other studies**
 - .83 *Social studies**
 - For history and geography, see 372.89*
 - .832 Civics (Citizenship)**
 - .86 *Physical education**
 - .87 *Music**
 - .872 Appreciation**
 - .873 Performance**
 - Vocal and instrumental
 - Including music reading
 - .874 Composition**
 - .89 History and geography**
 - .890 1-.890 3 Standard subdivisions of history**
 - .890 4 General special**
 - .890 42-.890 44 Special subdivisions of history**
 - Add 042-044 from special table under 372.3-372.8 to base number 372.89
 - .890 45 Textbooks of general history**
 - Class history textbooks on specific continents, countries, localities in 372.893-372.899
 - .890 49 Specific levels of instruction in history**
 - .890 5-.890 9 Other standard subdivisions of history**
 - .891 Geography**
 - .891 01-.891 03 Standard subdivisions**
 - .891 04 General special**
 - .891 042-.891 044 Special subdivisions of geography**
 - Add 042-044 from special table under 372.3-372.8 to base number 372.891
 - .891 045 Textbooks of general geography**
 - Class geography textbooks on specific places in 372.8911-372.8919
 - .891 049 Specific levels of instruction in geography**
 - .891 05-.891 09 Other standard subdivisions**

* Add as instructed under 372.3-372.8

- .891 1-.891 9 **Geography textbooks on specific places**
 Class in 372.8913-372.8919 comprehensive geography and history textbooks on specific continents, countries, localities
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 372.891
 For history textbooks on specific continents, countries, localities, see 372.893-372.899
- .893-.899 **History textbooks on specific continents, countries, localities**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 372.89
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment of elementary education and schools**
- .901-.904 **Historical periods**
 Add to 372.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., elementary schools in modern period 372.903
- .91-.99 **Geographical treatment**
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 372.9

373 **Secondary education**

- Class special education at secondary level in 371.9
- .09 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 373.3-373.9
- .1 **The secondary school**
- .109 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 373.3-373.9
- .11 .18 **Organization and administration**
 Add to 373.1 the numbers following 371 in 371.1-371.8, e.g., professional qualifications of teachers 373.112
- .19 **Curriculums**
 Class courses of study in specific subjects in 375.01-375.99, educational programs of secondary schools offering specific types of curriculum in 373.24-373.26
- .2 **Types and levels of secondary education and schools**
 Class continuation schools in 374.8
- .22 **Public and private**
- .222 **Private schools**
 Boarding and day schools regardless of level or type of curriculum
 Example: public schools (Great Britain)
 Including military academies basically academic in nature [*formerly* 373.243]
 For schools supported by religious groups, see 377.8-377.9

- .224 Public schools
 Class specific levels of public secondary schools in 373.23, public secondary schools offering specific types of curriculum in 373.24–373.26
- .23 Levels of secondary schools
 Class here upper sections of all-age schools, comprehensive works on all-age schools, e.g., ten-year schools (Soviet Union)
 Class schools offering specific types of curriculum regardless of level in 373.24–373.26, private schools regardless of level in 373.222
 For elementary sections of all-age schools, see 372.24
- [.231] Organizational plans
 Number discontinued; class in 373.23
- .236 Lower level
 Example: junior high schools
 Including advanced and post-elementary classes of elementary schools, transition classes
- .238 Upper level
 Examples: senior high schools, sixth forms (Great Britain)
- 373.24–373.26 Schools offering specific types of curriculum
 Class comprehensive works in 373.2, private schools regardless of type of curriculum in 373.222
- .24 Academic and vocational schools
 373.241–373.242 Academic schools
 Schools preparing for higher education
 Examples: grammar schools (Great Britain), lycées (France), gymnasiums (Germany and others)
 Class comprehensive works in 373.24
- .241 Modern academic
 Schools emphasizing sciences and modern languages
- .242 Classical (Traditional)
 Schools emphasizing Latin and Greek

373.243–373.246 Vocational schools

Class comprehensive works in 373.24

.243 Military schools

Schools offering professional military education at secondary levels
Including naval schools
Class military academies basically academic in nature [*formerly*
373.243] in 373.222

.246 Other vocational schools

.246 3 Agriculture

.246 4 Home economics

.246 5 Business and commerce (Distributive education)

.246 7 Industrial arts

.25 Comprehensive schools

Schools offering academic, vocational, general programs
Known also as multilateral secondary schools
Example: high schools (United States)
Including bilateral schools

.26 General secondary schools

Schools offering nonvocational, general terminal education
Example: secondary modern schools (Great Britain)

.27 Apprenticeship training

Conducted as part of educational system, sometimes combined with
part-time general education
Including apprenticeship centers
Class economic aspects of apprenticeship training offered by industry
in 331.25922, managerial aspects in 658.3124

.3–.9 Secondary education and schools by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 373

374 Adult education

Voluntary, purposeful efforts toward self-development of adults
Class special education of adults in 371.9

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions

Class techniques in 374.02

.01 Aims and objectives

.012 Remedial

To fill gaps in prior education, reduce illiteracy

- .013 Vocational and occupational
- .014 Liberal and recreational
- .02 Methods of instruction and study
- [.09] Historical and geographical treatment
 - Do not use; class in 374.9
- .1 **Self-education**
- .2 **Group education**
- .21 Special interest groups
- .22 Reading and discussion groups
- .26 Use of radio
- .27 Use of mass media
 - For use of radio, see 374.26*
- .28 Community centers for adult education
- .29 Institutions and agencies
 - Private and governmental
 - Class libraries and library services in 020
 - For community centers, see 374.28; schools, 374.8*
- [.291-.292] **Kinds**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 374.29
- .4 **Correspondence schools and instruction**
- .409 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 374.44-374.49
- .44-.49 Treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 374.4
- .8 **Schools**
 - Continuation schools, night schools
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 374.8
 - For college extension departments, see 378.1554; correspondence schools, 374.4*
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .901-.904 Historical periods
 - Add to 374.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., adult education in 20th century 374.904
- .91-.99 Geographical treatment
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 374.9

375 Curriculums

Programs of study offered, proposed, suggested

Use 375.0001–375.0008 for standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works on curriculums at a specific level with the level, e.g., secondary 373.19

.001 Construction and design

Theory, sources, development

.002 Required courses

.004 Elective courses

.006 Evaluation and revision

.009 Historical and geographical treatment

.01–.99 Courses of study in specific subjects

Proposals, suggestions, specifications on content, order, emphasis of topics

Add 010–990 to base number 375, e.g., history 375.9

Class courses of study on specific subjects at elementary level in 372.3–372.8

376 Education of women

Including coeducation versus separate education for women

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 376.9

.5 Convent education

.6 Education of women by level

Class elementary education of girls in 372

.63 Secondary

Class specific schools in 373.3–373.9

.65 Higher

For colleges for women, see 376.8

[.7] Coeducation versus separate education for women

Number discontinued; class in 376

.8 Colleges for women

Class specific topics in 378.01–378.38, specific colleges for women in 378.4–378.9

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

.901–.904 Historical periods

Add to 376.90 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., education of women in 19th century 376.9034

.91-.99 Geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 376.9

377 Schools and religion

.1 **Religious instruction and exercises in nonsectarian schools**

.3 **Monastic schools**

.6 **Mission schools**

Schools operated by religious bodies as part of their missionary work

► 377.8-377.9 Schools supported by religious groups

Class comprehensive works in 377, schools for women supported by religious groups in 376, a specific school with its level, e.g., a specific secondary school in the appropriate subdivision of 373.3-373.9

For monastic schools, see 377.3; mission schools, 377.6

.8 **Schools supported by Christian groups**

Add to 377.8 the numbers following 28 in 281-289, e.g., Roman Catholic schools 377.82

.9 **Schools supported by other groups**

Add to 377.9 the numbers following 29 in 292-299, e.g., schools of Islamic faith 377.97

378 Higher education

Class special education at higher levels in 371.9

.001 Philosophy and theory

.002 Miscellany

.002 5 Directories

Class directories of institutions by continent, country, locality in modern world in 378.4-378.9

.003-.008 Other standard subdivisions

.009 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 378.4-378.9

.01 Aims and objectives

Including evaluation of effects and effectiveness

Add to 378.01 the numbers following 370.11 in 370.112-370.118, e.g., professional education 378.013

.02 Finance

378.04–378.05 Ownership and control of colleges and universities

Class comprehensive works in 378

.04 Privately operated colleges and universities

Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9

For schools supported by religious groups, see 377.8–377.9

.05 Publicly operated colleges and universities

Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9

.052 Institutions maintained by municipalities and other local governments

Example: community colleges

.053 Institutions maintained by central governments

Example: state colleges and universities

For land-grant institutions, see 378.054; institutions maintained by national governments, 378.055

.054 Land-grant institutions

.055 Institutions maintained by national governments

.1 Institutions of higher education

Organization and administration

Use 378.1001–378.1008 for standard subdivisions

Class institutions for the study and teaching of a specific occupation or subject with the subject using “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0711 from Table 1, e.g., Christian theological seminaries 207.11

.100 9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 378.4–378.9

.101 Government

.101 1 Personnel

Boards, trustees, faculty senates and councils

.101 2 Policies and regulations

.102] Financial management of institutions of higher education

Class in 658.15932

.103 College-community relations

.104 Cooperation among colleges and universities

- .105 **Matriculation**
 Including advanst placement
 Add to 378.105 the numbers following 371.21 in 371.216–371.219,
 e.g., entrance requirements 378.1057

- .107 **Planning**

SUMMARY

- 378.11 **Administrative personnel**
 .12 **Faculty**
 .14 **College year**
 .15 **Types and levels of institutions**
 .16 **Educational measurement and student placement**
 .17 **Methods of instruction and study**
 .18 **School discipline**
 .19 **Other aspects**
- .11 **Administrative personnel**
 Functions and duties
- .111 **Academic**
- .112 **Nonacademic**
- .12 **Faculty**
 Teachers and teaching
 For methods of instruction and study, see 378.17
- .121 **Academic privileges, prerogatives, immunities, responsibilities**
 Including academic freedom
- .122 **Organization**
 Hierarchy, work load, tenure
- [.123] **Exchange of college and university teachers**
 Class in 370.1963
- .124 **Personal and professional qualifications**
- .14 **College year**
 Including school calendar
- .142 **Summer school**
- .146 **All-year school**
- .15 **Types and levels of institutions**
 Class specific institutions in 378.4–378.9
- .154 **Lower-level institutions**
 Nonprofessional academic institutions, generally not awarding
 advanst degrees
- .154 2 **Four-year colleges**

-
- .154 3 Junior colleges
 - .154 4 Evening colleges
 - .155 Higher-level institutions (Universities)
 - Institutions offering a wide range of academic and professional studies, generally awarding advanced degrees
 - .155 2 Undergraduate departments
 - Departments offering programs leading to lower degrees, e.g., bachelor's degrees
 - .155 3 Graduate departments and schools
 - Departments and schools offering programs leading to advanced degrees
 - .155 4 Extension departments
 - For evening colleges, see 378.1544*
 - .16 Educational measurement and student placement
 - .166-.167 Educational tests, measurements, marking systems
 - Add to 378.16 the numbers following 371.2 in 371.26-371.27, e.g., college entrance board examinations 378.1664
 - .168 Credit and credit systems
 - .169 Other topics
 - Add to 378.169 the numbers following 371.29 in 371.2912-371.2914, e.g., dropouts 378.16913
 - .17 Methods of instruction and study
 - Add to 378.17 the numbers following 371.3 in 371.3028-371.396, e.g., seminars 378.177
 - .18 School discipline
 - Add to 378.18 the numbers following 371.5 in 371.51-371.59, e.g., student government 378.189
 - .19 Other aspects
 - .194 Guidance and counseling
 - Add to 378.194 the numbers following 371.4 in 371.42-371.46, e.g., educational guidance 378.19422
 - .196-.198 Physical plant, health and safety, the student
 - Add to 378.19 the numbers following 371 in 371.6-371.8, e.g., student unrest 378.1981
 - .199 Curriculums
 - Class courses of study in specific subjects in 375.01-375.99

.2 Academic degrees**.24 Earned degrees****.241 Course, residence, subject requirements****.242 Thesis and dissertation requirements**

Class preparation of theses in 808

.25 Honorary degrees**.28 Costumes and symbols****.3 Student finances**

Costs, expenditures, sources of income

378.33–378.36 Sources of income

Class comprehensive works in 378.3, veterans' education benefits in 355.1152

.33 Fellowships**.34 Scholarships****.35 Educational exchanges**

Financing of college study thru grants for international study

Class comprehensive works on educational exchange in 370.1962

.36 Loans and employment**.362 Loans****.365 Employment****.38 Costs and expenditures**

.4-.9 Higher education and institutions by continent, country, locality in modern world

Class here directories, specific colleges for women

Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 378

If preferred, arrange specific colleges and universities alphabetically under each continent, and under specific countries requiring local emphasis

If it is desired to give local emphasis to a specific college or university, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., University of South Africa 378.S (preceding 378.4)

(It is optional to class here publications of specific colleges and universities; prefer specific subjects. If option is chosen, subarrange according to the following table:

- A Charter and statutes
- B Trustees and regents
- C Administrative officers
- D Finances
- E History
- F Biographies and necrologies
- G General catalogs
- H Annual catalogs, attendance lists, registers
- I Handbooks and circulars of information
- J Bulletins and official periodicals
- K Commencements, inaugurals, baccalaureate and other addresses
- L Programs, tickets, memorabilia
- M Faculty
- N Lectures, class manuals, examination questions
- O Student theses, orations, essays
- P Student catalogs and society annuals
- Q Student periodicals
- R Student societies and their periodicals
- S Student miscellany
 - Including songs, class days
- T Alumni
- U Classes
- V Pictures and class albums
- W Buildings and grounds
- Z Professional, graduate, other schools)

379 Education and the state [*formerly also* 350.85]

Regulation, control, support

.1 State financial support, control, supervision of public education

379.12–379.13 Financial support

Class comprehensive works in 379.1

.12 Financial support by governmental level**.121 Support at national level****.121 2 Of elementary and secondary education****[.121 22] Public education**

Number discontinued; class in 379.1212

[.121 24] Private education

Class in 379.322

.121 4 Of higher education**[.121 42] Public education**

Number discontinued; class in 379.1214

[.121 44] Private education

Class in 379.324

.122 Support at state and provincial level**.123 Support at local level****.13 Revenue sources for public schools***For national support, see 379.121; state and provincial support, 379.122; local support, 379.123***[.132–.134] Bonds and taxation**

Numbers discontinued; class in 379.13

.15 Supervision and control

Class here school evaluation, educational planning

Class supervision and control of private education [*formerly* 379.15] in 379.34

379.151–379.153 By governmental level

Class comprehensive works in 379.15, elements of supervision and control regardless of level in 379.155–379.158

.151 National [*formerly* 379.152]

- .152 **State, regional, provincial**
 Class national supervision and control [*formerly* 379.152] in 379.151
- [.152 1] **School standards and accreditation**
 Class in 379.158
- [.152 2] **Surveys and evaluation**
 Number discontinued; class in 379.15

- .153 **Local**
- .153 1 **School boards**
- .153 5 **School districts**
 Including centralization and consolidation

- 379.155–379.158 **Elements of supervision and control**
 Class comprehensive works in 379.15
- .155 **Supervision and control of curriculum and courses of study**
- .156 **Supervision of textbook selection**
- .157 **Supervision of teachers, administrators, their activities**
 Including examination, certification, registration [*all formerly* 371.13], appointment of teachers
- .158 **School standards and accreditation [*formerly* 379.1521]**

.2 Public education

For financial support, control, supervision, see 379.1

- .201 **Theory**
 Aims, objectives, values; effect of political process on quantity and quality of education
- .209 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class treatment by continent, country, locality in modern world in 379.4–379.9

- 379.23–379.24 **Educational policy**
 Class comprehensive works in 379.2

- .23 **Compulsory education**
- .24 **Reduction of illiteracy**
- .3 **Relation of state to private education**
- .32 **Financial assistance**
- .322 **Elementary and secondary education**

 Including support at national level [*formerly* 379.12124]

- .324 Higher education
 - Including support at national level [*formerly* 379.12144]
- .34 Supervision and control [*formerly* 379.15]
- .342 Elementary and secondary education
- .344 Higher education
- .4-.9 **Public education by continent, country, locality in modern world**
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 379

380 Commerce, communications, transportation

Class here marketing

Use 380.01-380.09 for standard subdivisions

Class public regulation and control in 350.8

- .1 **Exchange of goods and services (Trade)**
 - Class domestic trade in 381, foreign trade in 382
- .101 Philosophy and theory
- .102 Miscellany
- .102 5 Directories of dealers
- .103-.109 Other standard subdivisions
- .13 Commercial policy
 - Class commercial policy with respect to specific commodities and services in 380.14
- .14 Specific commodities and services
- 380.141-380.143 Products of primary (extractive) industries
 - Class comprehensive works in 380.14
- .141 Products of agriculture
 - Add to 380.141 the numbers following 63 in 633-638, e.g., rice 380.141318
- .142 Products of mineral industries
 - Add to 380.142 the numbers following 553 in 553.2-553.9, e.g., petroleum 380.142282
- .143 Products of other extractive industries
- .143 1 Products of culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates
 - Add to 380.1431 the numbers following 639 in 639.3-639.7, e.g., oysters 380.143141
 - Class products of insect culture in 380.1418

- .143 2-.143 9 **Products of fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping**
 Add to 380.143 the numbers following 59 in 592-599, e.g.,
 bearskins 380.143974446
- .144 **Human beings (Slave trade)**
- .145 **Products of secondary industries and services**
 Use 380.1450001-380.1450009 for standard subdivisions
 Add 001-999 to base number 380.145, e.g., clothing 380.145687
- .3 **Communication services [*formerly also* 338.4]**
 Class specific kinds in 383-384
- .301-.309 **Standard subdivisions**
- .34 **Activities**
- .35 **Facilities**
- .5 **Transportation services [*formerly also* 338.4]**
 Class specific kinds in 385-388
- .501-.509 **Standard subdivisions**
- .51 **Comparative studies of kinds of transportation**
- .52 **Activities**
- .53 **Facilities**
- .58 **Mergers and consolidations of systems**

► **381-382 General internal and international
commerce (Trade)**

Class comprehensive works in 380.1

381 Internal commerce (Domestic trade)

- .3 **Commercial policy**
 Class commercial policy with respect to specific commodities and
 services in 381.4
- .4 **Specific commodities and services**

► **381.41-381.43 Products of primary (extractive) industries**

Class comprehensive works in 381.4

- .41 **Products of agriculture**
 Add to 381.41 the numbers following 63 in 633-638, e.g., rice 381.41318
- .42 **Products of mineral industries**
 Add to 381.42 the numbers following 553 in 553.2-553.9, e.g., petroleum
 381.42282

- .43 Products of other extractive industries
- .431 Products of culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates
 - Add to 381.431 the numbers following 639 in 639.3–639.7, e.g., oysters 381.43141
 - Class products of insect culture in 381.418
- .432–.439 Products of fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping
 - Add to 381.43 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., bearskins 381.43974446
- .44 Human beings (Slave trade)
- .45 Products of secondary industries and services
 - Use 381.450001–381.450009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add 001–999 to base number 381.45, e.g., clothing trade 381.45687

382 International commerce (Foreign trade)

Class here trade between nations and their colonies, protectorates, trusts

- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 382.09, e.g., international trade of United Kingdom 382.0942; then, for trade between two countries, regions, areas, places, add 0 and again add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., trade between United Kingdom and communist bloc 382.094201717
 - Give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations
 - If preferred, give priority in notation to the country, region, area, place requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States class trade between United Kingdom and United States in 382.0973042

SUMMARY

- 382.1 General international economic relations
 - .3 Commercial policy
 - .4 Specific commodities and services
 - .5 Import trade
 - .6 Export trade
 - .7 Tariff policy
 - .9 Trade agreements
- .1 General international economic relations
 - Class international banks and banking in 332.15, international monetary exchange in 332.45, international exchange of securities in 332.65, international investment in 332.673, international loans in 336.3435, international organization of business in 338.88, production programs and policies in 338.91
- .101 Philosophy and theory
 - Class theories in 382.104

-
- .104 Theories
 - .104 2 Specialization and comparative advantage
 - Advantages enjoyed by an area for engaging in certain kinds of production, e.g., climate; supply of capital, labor, land and other natural resources; transportation, access to markets
 - .104 4 Price determination in international markets
 - .17 Balance of payments
 - Relation between payments and receipts resulting from all commercial and financial transactions carried on between the citizens and government of a country and the citizens and governments of all other countries
 - Class here balance of trade [*formerly* 382.3]
 - .172 Current transactions
 - Relation between payments and receipts from exchange of merchandise, shipping, travel, interest and dividends on investment
 - .173 Capital transactions
 - Relation between receipts and payments on long- and short-term loans and credit
 - .174 Gold movements
 - .3 Commercial policy
 - Class a specific element of commercial policy with the subject, e.g., balance of trade 382.17 [*formerly* 382.3], commercial policy with respect to specific commodities and services 382.4
 - .4 Specific commodities and services
-
- 382.41–382.43 Products of primary (extractive) industries
 - Class comprehensive works in 382.4
 - .41 Products of agriculture
 - Add to 382.41 the numbers following 63 in 633–638, e.g., rice 382.41318
 - .42 Products of mineral industries
 - Add to 382.42 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g., petroleum 382.42282
 - .43 Products of other extractive industries
 - .431 Products of culture of invertebrates and cold-blooded vertebrates
 - Add to 382.431 the numbers following 639 in 639.3–639.7, e.g., oysters 382.43141
 - Class products of insect culture in 382.418

- .432-.439 **Products of fishing, whaling, hunting, trapping**
 Add to 382.43 the numbers following 59 in 592-599, e.g., bearskins
 382.43974446
- .44 **Human beings (Slave trade)**
- .45 **Products of secondary industries and services**
 Use 382.450001-382.450009 for standard subdivisions
 Add 001-999 to base number 382.45, e.g., clothing trade 382.45687
- .5 **Import trade**
 Class import of specific products in 382.4
 For tariff policy, see 382.7
- .52 **Import quotas**
- .53 **Embargoes on imports**
- .54 **Licensing of imports**
- .6 **Export trade**
 Including subsidies, licensing of exports
 Class export of specific products in 382.4
- .7 **Tariff policy**
 Class customs taxes in 336.26, tariff policy with respect to specific
 commodities in 382.4
- .71 **Free trade (No tariff)**

382.72- 382.73 Kinds of tariffs

Class comprehensive works in 382.7

For other kinds of tariffs, see 382.75

- .72 **Tariff for revenue (Fiscal tariff)**
- .73 **Protective and prohibitive tariff**
- .74 **Subsidies and drawbacks**
- .75 **Other kinds of tariffs**
- .752 **Single column tariffs**
 Single rates for each commodity
- .753 **Multiple column tariffs**
 Varying rates on the same commodity designed to favor certain
 countries of origin
- .78 **Exemptions**
- .782 **Personal and institutional**
 Examples: commodities used for educational purposes, privileges for
 foreign-service personnel, for tourists

.788 On relief supplies

.9 Trade agreements

Class here agreements on tariffs

Class agreements on other specific subjects in 382.3–382.6, texts and discussions of treaties in 341.754

.909 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment of specific countries in 382.93–382.99, multilateral agreements in 382.91

.91 Multilateral agreements and customs unions

Class bilateral agreements in 382.93–382.99

.911 In areas, regions, places in general

Add “Areas” notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 382.91, e.g., western hemisphere 382.911812

.913 The ancient world

Add “Areas” notation 3 from Table 2 to base number 382.91, e.g., ancient Greece 382.9138

382.914–382.919 The modern world

Class comprehensive works in 382.91

.914 In Europe

.914 2 European Economic Community (European Common Market)

.914 3 European Free Trade Association

.914 7 East European Economic Organization

.915–.919 In other continents and regions

Add “Areas” notation 5–9 from Table 2 to base number 382.91

.93–.99 By specific countries

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 382.9, e.g., trade agreements of United Kingdom 382.942; then, for bilateral agreements, add 0 and again add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., agreements between United Kingdom and France 382.942044

Give priority in notation to the country emphasized. If emphasis is equal, give priority to the one coming first in the sequence of area notations

If preferred, give priority in notation to the country requiring local emphasis, e.g., libraries in United States; class agreements between United Kingdom and United States in 382.973042



383–384 Communication services

Class comprehensive works in 380.3

383 Postal communication

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class national systems in 383.49

.1 Mail handling

.12 Classes of mail

Use 383.12001–383.12009 for standard subdivisions



383.120 2–383.120 5 Special classes

Class comprehensive works in 383.12

.120 2 Free mail

Example: franking privileges

.120 5 Nonmailable matter

Examples: obscene and subversive material, fraudulent promotion and advertising

.122 Letters, postcards, sealed material

.123 Newspapers and periodicals

.124 Miscellaneous material

Books, catalogs, circulars, other printed matter, bulk mailings

.125 Other parcels

.14 Collection, transportation systems, delivery



383.141–383.144 Transportation systems

Class comprehensive works in 383.14

.141 Instantaneous facsimile transmission

.142 Sea mail

.143 Overland mail

Railroad, highway, inland waterway

[.143 5–.143 8] Kinds

Numbers discontinued; class in 383.143

.144 Air mail and mail carried thru space

Including transportation by missile

[.144 7–.144 8] Kinds

Numbers discontinued; class in 383.144

- .145 Collection and delivery
 - Class star routes in 383.143
- .18 Other services
- .182 Insurance and registry of mail
- .183 Special delivery and special handling
- .184 Collection of charges on delivery (COD)
- .185 Bulk mail
- .186 Dead letters
- .2 Economic aspects of postal service
- .23 Rates and costs
 - Including use of postage stamps
- .24 Efficiency of operation
 - Including use of mechanization and automation
- .4 Postal organization
- .41 International systems and conventions
- .42 Post offices
- .46 Internal services
 - Examples: dispatching and routing, postal inspection
- .49 National systems
 - Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 383.49

384 Other systems of communication Telecommunication

Including recordings

SUMMARY

- 384.1 Telegraphy
 - .4 Submarine cable telegraphy
 - .5 Wireless communication
 - .6 Telephony
 - .7 Alarm and warning systems
 - .8 Motion pictures
 - .9 Visual signaling

384.1-384.7 Telecommunication

Class comprehensive works in 384

- .1 Telegraphy
 - For radiotelegraphy, see 384.52; submarine cable telegraphy, 384.4*
- .102 8 Techniques
 - Class apparatus and equipment in 384.15

- .13 **Economic aspects**
 - Costs, rates, income, finance, efficiency, systems of ownership
- .14 **Activities**
 - Morse and other code telegraphy, printing telegraphy (teletype, facsimile, stock tickers)
 - For postal facsimile transmission, see 383.141*
- .15 **Facilities**
 - Apparatus and stations
- .4 **Submarine cable telegraphy**
 - Add to 384.4 the numbers following 384.1 in 384.13–384.15, e.g., rates 384.43
- .5 **Wireless communication**
- .52 **Radiotelegraphy**
 - Add to 384.52 the numbers following 384.1 in 384.13–384.15, e.g., apparatus 384.525
- .53 **Radiotelephony**
 - Class here ship-to-shore communication, portable telephones
 - Add to 384.53 the numbers following 384.6 in 384.63–384.65, e.g., transmitting and receiving equipment 384.535
- .54 **Radiobroadcasting**
 - Class here comprehensive works on radio- and television broadcasting
 - For television broadcasting, see 384.554*
- .543 **Economic aspects**
 - Costs, income, finance, systems of ownership
- .544 **Activities**
- .544 2 **Scheduling**
 - Including sale of time
- .544 3 **Presentation of programs**
 - Sustaining and commercial
 - Class radio journalism in 070.19, public entertainment in 791.4
- .545 **Facilities**
- .545 2 **Broadcasting channels**
 - Clear, regional, local
- .545 3 **Kinds of stations**
 - Noncommercial, nonaffiliated commercial, network affiliates, AM, FM
- .545 5 **Networks**
- .545 6 **Satellites**

- .55 **Television**
 - Class here videotapes
- .554 **Broadcasting**
- .554 3–.554 5 **Economic aspects, activities, facilities**
 - Add to 384.554 the numbers following 384.54 in 384.543–384.545, e.g., television networks 384.55455
- .554 7 **Pay (Subscription) television**
- .555 **Closed circuit communication**
 - Add to 384.555 the numbers following 384.1 in 384.13–384.15, e.g., activities 384.5554
- .6 **Telephony**
 - Class here comprehensive works on wire and cable communication
 - For telegraphy, see 384.1; radiotelephony, 384.53*
- .63 **Economic aspects**
 - Costs, rates, income, finance, efficiency, systems of ownership
- .64 **Activities**
 - Local, long-distance, overseas service
 - Including conference calls
- .65 **Facilities**
 - Stations, lines, switchboards, dialing systems, transmitting and receiving equipment
- .7 **Alarm and warning systems**
 - Against fires, air raids, storms, floods
- .8 **Motion pictures**
 - Add to 384.8 the numbers following 384.1 in 384.13–384.15, e.g., activities 384.84
- .9 **Visual signaling**

385–388 Transportation services

Class comprehensive works in 380.5

For postal transportation, see 383.141–383.144

35 **Railroad transportation**

385.1–385.3 Specific aspects

Class comprehensive works in 385, specific aspects of special-duty railway systems in 385.5

- .1 **Economic aspects**
 - Costs, rates, income, finance, efficiency, systems of ownership

.2 Activities**.204 General special****.204 2 Basic activities**

Routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control

385.22–385.24 Transportation activities

Class comprehensive works in 385.2

.22 Transportation of passengers

Including sleeping facilities, meal services, passenger amenities, baggage services

.23 Express services**.24 Transportation of goods***For express services, see 385.23***.26 Terminal activities**

Including fueling, victualing

.262 Passenger services

Examples: booking services, passenger amenities

.264 Freight services

Examples: freight handling, warehousing, storage

[.29] Free services

Number discontinued; class in 385.2

.3 Facilities**.31 Stationary****.312 The way**

Tracks, roadway, bridges, tunnels

.314 Terminal facilities

Stations, yards, roundhouses, train sheds, shop buildings

.316 Communication facilities

Example: signals

.32–.34 CarsAdd to 385.3 the numbers following 625.2 in 625.22–625.24, e.g.,
diners 385.33Add to 385.36 the numbers following 625.26 in 625.261–625.266,
e.g., steam locomotives 385.361

- .5 **Special-duty railway systems**
Narrow-gage, industrial, interurban; monorailways
For inclined and mountain railway systems, see 385.6; local rail transit systems, 388.42
- .6 **Inclined and mountain railway systems**
Funicular, rack, cable
- .7 **Railroad combined with other transportation systems**
- .72 **Unitized cargo**
Including piggyback (trucks, trailers, buses, private automobiles on flatcars)
For container-ship operations, see 387.544
- .77 **Ship railway systems**
Railways transporting vessels overland between bodies of water

▶ 386–387.5 Water transportation

Class comprehensive works in 387

386 **Inland waterway transportation**

SUMMARY

- 386.1 **Economic aspects**
- .2 **Activities and facilities**
- .3 **River transportation**
- .4 **Canal transportation**
- .5 **Lake transportation**
- .6 **Ferry transportation**
- .8 **Ports**
- .1 **Economic aspects**
Costs, rates, income, finance, efficiency, systems of ownership
- .2 **Activities and facilities**
Except for ships and ports, class activities and facilities of specific types of inland waterway systems in 386.3–386.6
Class activities and facilities of ports in 386.8
- .22 **Ships**
Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification
Including air-cushion vehicles
Add to 386.22 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., tugboats 386.2232

- .24 Activities
- .240 4 General special
- .240 42 Basic activities
 - Routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control
- .242 Transportation of passengers
 - Including sleeping facilities, meal services, passenger amenities, baggage services
- .244 Transportation of freight

▶ 386.3–386.6 Specific kinds of inland waterway transportation

Activities and facilities

Class comprehensive works in 386, economic aspects of specific kinds of inland waterway transportation in 386.1, ships for specific kinds of inland waterway transportation in 386.22, ports for specific kinds of inland waterway transportation in 386.8

▶ 386.3–386.5 Specific kinds of waterways

Class comprehensive works in 386, ferry transportation on specific kinds of waterways in 386.6

.3 River transportation

Class here transportation by canalized rivers

Class combined river, lake, canal systems in 386.5

.32 The way

.35 Activities

Add to 386.35 the numbers following 386.24 in 386.2404–386.244, e.g., transportation of freight 386.354

.4 Canal transportation

Class canalized rivers in 386.3; combined river, lake, canal systems in 386.5

.404 General special

.404 2 Activities

Add to 386.4042 the numbers following 386.24 in 386.2404–386.244, e.g., transportation of freight 386.40424

▶ 386.42–386.48 Specific canals and kinds of canals

Existing and proposed

Class comprehensive works in 386.4

.42 InterOceanic canals

For canals connecting specific oceans, see 386.43–386.45

- 386.43–386.45 Canals connecting specific oceans
 Class comprehensive works in 386.42
- .43 Canals connecting Indian and Atlantic Oceans (Suez Canal)
- .44 Canals connecting Atlantic and Pacific Oceans
- .444 Panama Canal
- .445 Nicaragua Canal
- .447 Tehuantepec Canal
- .45 Canals connecting Pacific and Indian Oceans
- .46 Noninteroceanic canals
 Including canals connecting parts of one ocean
 For kinds of noninteroceanic canals, see 386.47–386.48
- 386.47–386.48 Kinds of noninteroceanic canals
 Class here specific canals
 Class comprehensive works in 386.46
- .47 Ship canals
- .48 Small craft and barge canals
- .5 **Lake transportation**
 Class here transportation on combined river, lake, canal systems, e.g.,
 Saint Lawrence Seaway
- .52 The way
- .54 Activities
 Add to 386.54 the numbers following 386.24 in 386.2404–386.244,
 e.g., transportation of passengers 386.542
- .6 **Ferry transportation**
 For passengers, freight, vehicles, trains
- .8 **Ports**
 Add to 386.8 the numbers following 387.1 in 387.12–387.16, e.g., freight
 terminals 386.853
- 387 **Water, air, space transportation**
 For inland waterway transportation, see 386
- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions of water transportation
- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions of ocean (marine) transportation

SUMMARY

- 387.1 Seaports
- .2 Ships
- .5 Maritime transport (Merchant marine services)
- .7 Air transportation
- .8 Space transportation

387.1–387.5 Ocean (Marine) transportation

Class comprehensive works in 387, standard subdivisions in 387.01–387.09

- .1 Seaports
 - Activities and facilities
 - .109 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class here specific ports
 - .12 Physiographic types
 - In natural bays, river mouths, tidal rivers, estuaries, roadsteads
 - Class specific ports in 387.109
 - [.122–.125] Specific types
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 387.12
 - .13 Free ports
 - Class specific ports in 387.109
 - .15 Port facilities
 - Including docks, quays, piers
 - .152 Passenger terminals
 - .153 Freight terminals
 - .155 Navigational aids
 - .16 Port activities
 - .162 Passenger services
 - Examples: booking services, other amenities
 - .164 Freight services
 - Freight handling, warehousing, storage, connection with land transportation
 - .166 Operational services
 - Examples: ship-to-shore communication, piloting, towing, tug services
 - .168 Auxiliary services
 - Examples: fueling, victualing

- .2 Ships**
 - Description, history, rating, tonnage, classification
 - Including air-cushion vehicles
 - Add to 387.2 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., cargo ships 387.245
- .5 Maritime transport (Merchant marine services)**
 - .51 Economic aspects**
 - Costs, rates, income, finance, efficiency, systems of ownership
 - .52 Routes**
 - .522 Intercoastal**
 - .523 Auxiliary, irregular, tramp**
 - .524 Coastwise**
 - .54 Activities**
 - .540 4 General special**
 - .540 42 Basic activities**
 - Routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control
 - .542 Passenger services**
 - Including sleeping and meal facilities, other amenities, baggage services
 - .544 Freight services**
 - Including container-ship operations
 - [.549] Free services**
 - Number discontinued; class in 387.54
- .55 Salvage**
- .7 Air transportation**
 - .71 Economic aspects**
 - Costs, rates, income, finance, efficiency, systems of ownership
 - .72 Routes**
 - International, domestic trunk, limited range and local services
 - Including helicopter routes to and from airports
 - .73 Facilities**
 - .732–.733 Aircraft**
 - Add to 387.73 the numbers following 629.133 in 629.1332–629.1333, e.g., helicopters 387.7335

- .736 Airports and landing fields
- .736 2 Facilities
 - Terminal buildings, control towers, hangars, runways, warehouses
- .736 4 Services
 - Booking, passenger amenities, fueling, victualing
- .74 Activities
 - Class activities of airports and landing fields in 387.7364
- .740 4 General special
- .740 42 Basic activities
 - Routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control
- .742 Passenger services
 - Including meal services, other amenities, baggage services
- .744 Freight services
 - Including all-cargo plane services
- [.749] Free services
 - Number discontinued; class in 387.74

.8 Space transportation

388 Ground transportation

Class nonlocal rail transportation in 385

- .1 Roads and highways
 - For urban roads and streets, see 388.411*
- .11 Economic aspects
 - Costs, finance, effects
- .12 Kinds of roads and highways
 - Expressways (motorways, freeways, parkways), primary and secondary roads
 - Including beltways
- .13 Special highway and road features
 - Bridges, tunnels, access roads, intersections, grade separations
- .3 Vehicular transportation
 - Class urban vehicular transportation in 388.41
- .31 Traffic flow and maintenance
- .312 Highway services
 - Examples: lighting, traffic control (signs and signals), roadside park facilities

- .314 Highway use
 - Load, peak hours, speed, traffic patterns, use by specific kinds of vehicles; accidents
- .32 Vehicular services
- .321 Services of private passenger automobiles [*formerly* 388.322]
- .322 Bus services
 - Class here stagecoach services
 - Class services of private passenger automobiles [*formerly* 388.322] in 388.321
 - Class services of terminals in 388.33
- .322 04 General special
- .322 042 Basic services
 - Routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control
- .322 1 Routes
 - Trunk, other intercity
- .322 2 Services
 - Standard passenger, charter, small package and express services, sightseeing
 - Including meal service, other passenger amenities, baggage services
- .324 Trucking services
 - Class services of terminals in 388.33
- .324 04 General special
- .324 042 Basic services
 - Routing, scheduling, dispatching, traffic control
- .324 2 Routes
 - Long-haul, line-haul, intercity
- .324 3 Kinds of carriers
 - Private, contract, common (for-hire) carriers
- [.329] Free services
 - Number discontinued; class in 388.32
- .33 Terminals and stops
 - Activities and facilities: vehicle sheds, docks, booking and other passenger facilities
- .34 Vehicles
 - For air-cushion vehicles, see* 388.35
- .341 Carts, wagons, carriages, stagecoaches
 - Including rickshaws, animal-drawn omnibuses

- .342–.348 Gasoline-, oil-, man-powered
 Add to 388.34 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.228,
 e.g., taxicabs 388.34232
For rickshaws, see 388.341

- [.349] Other
 Number discontinued; class in 388.34

- .35 Air-cushion vehicles
 Class here comprehensive works on air-cushion vehicles
For air-cushion ships for inland waterways, see 386.22; for ocean, 387.2

.4 Urban transportation

Former heading: Local rail and trolley transit systems

- .404 General special

- .404 2 Economic aspects
 Rates, costs, income, effects, efficiency, finance, systems
 of ownership

388.41–388.46 Specific kinds

Class comprehensive works in 388.4, terminals and parking facilities for
 specific kinds of transportation in 388.47

.41 Vehicular and pedestrian traffic

Activities and facilities

Including moving street belts for pedestrian traffic

Class vehicles in 388.34–388.35

.411 Urban roads and streets

Parkways, expressways, arterial and side streets, sidewalks

Including intersections, traffic circles

.413 Activities

.413 1 Traffic flow and maintenance

Add to 388.4131 the numbers following 388.31 in 388.312–
 388.314, e.g., peak hours 388.41314

.413 2 Vehicular services

.413 21 Services by private passenger automobiles

Including taxicabs

.413 22 Bus services

Including trolleybuses [*formerly* 388.46], animal-drawn
 omnibuses

.413 24 Trucking services

- .42 **Local rail transit systems**
 - Including underground (subway) systems
 - For elevated rail transit systems, see 388.44; surface rail systems, 388.46*
- .44 **Elevated rail transit systems**
 - Including elevated monorail systems
- .46 **Surface rail transit systems**
 - Class trolleybuses [*formerly* 388.46] in 388.41322
- .47 **Terminals and parking facilities**
- .472 **Rail terminals**
- .473 **Truck and bus terminals**
 - Including bus stops
- .474 **Parking facilities and services**
 - On- and off-street parking facilities, facilities located above and below street level, perimeter parking
 - Class here interdisciplinary works on parking
 - Class a specific aspect of parking with the subject, e.g., city planning 711.73
- .5 **Pipeline transportation**
- 389 **Metrology and standardization**
 - For horology, see 529.7*
 - .1 **Mass and dimension**
 - Weights and measures used in commerce and daily life
 - .15 **Systems**
 - Class here conversion tables
 - .152 **Metric system**
 - .153 **Imperial (British) system**
 - .159 **Other systems**
 - Including proposed systems
 - .16 **Standards and standardization**
 - .6 **Standardization**
 - For standardization of weights and measures, see 389.16*
 - .62 **Of quantity and size**
 - For interchangeability
 - .63 **Of quality**
 - For performance

390 Customs and folklore

Class cultural anthropology [*formerly* 390] in 301.2

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions of customs

▶ 390.1-390.5 Customs of specific economic and social classes

Class comprehensive works in 390

.1 Customs of people of specific economic statuses

.2 Customs of people of specific ranks

.22 Royalty

.23 Nobility

.24 Free commoners

.25 Slaves and serfs

.4 Customs of people of specific occupations

Add "Persons" notation 09-99 from Table 7 to base number 390.4, e.g.,
customs of lawyers 390.4344

.5 Customs of people of specific levels of education

▶ 391-395 Customs

Rites, ceremonies, other external and formalized patterns of social behavior accompanying social functions; ways and means of carrying out social functions

Class comprehensive works in 390, customs of specific economic and social classes in 390.1-390.5

For customs of war and diplomacy, see 399

391 Costume and personal appearance

Class here fashion

Use 391.001-391.009 for standard subdivisions

.01-.05 Costumes of specific economic and social classes

Add to 391.0 the numbers following 390 in 390.1-390.5, e.g.,
costumes of lawyers 391.04344

.07 Costumes of specific age and sex groups

Add to 391.07 the numbers following 391 in 391.1-391.3, e.g.,
costumes of men 391.071

Class costumes of specific economic and social classes regardless
of age or sex in 391.01-391.05



391.1–391.3 Outer garments

Dresses, suits, coats, trousers, shirts, blouses, skirts, overcoats, topcoats, raincoats, stoles, cloaks

Class comprehensive works in 391

For costumes for specific occasions, see 391.8

- .1 **Outer garments for men**
- .2 **Outer garments for women**
- .3 **Outer garments for children**
- .4 **Other garments and auxiliaries**
 - .41 **Hand-, foot-, neckwear**
 - Including muffs, hosiery, mittens
 - .412 **Gloves**
 - .413 **Shoes**
 - .42 **Underwear and nightclothes**
 - .43 **Headgear**
 - .44 **Accessories**
 - Fans, parasols, canes, eyeglasses, flowers
 - For jewelry, see 391.7*
 - .45 **Buttons**



391.5–391.6 Care and adornment of the body

Class comprehensive works in 391

- .5 **Hair styles**
 - Including beards, wigs
- .6 **The person**
 - .62 **Body contours**
 - .63 **Use of cosmetics and perfume**
 - .64 **Personal cleanliness and hygiene**
 - Former heading: Bathing
 - .65 **Tattooing [*formerly* 391.7] and mutilation**
- .7 **Jewelry**
 - Class tattooing [*formerly* 391.7] in 391.65
- .8 **Costumes for specific occasions**
 - Examples: weddings, funerals, festivals

392 Customs of life cycle and domestic life*For death customs, see 393***.1 Birth, puberty, majority****.12 Birth customs**

Examples: couvade, infanticide, name giving, baptism

.13 Child-rearing customs**.14 Customs relating to attainment of puberty**

Example: initiation rites

.15 Customs relating to attainment of majority

Example: debuts

.3 The home and domestic arts

Former heading: Family and home

[.32] Kinship

Class in 301.421

[.33] Totemism

Class in 301.421

.36 Dwelling places

Class here heating, lighting, furnishings, sanitation

Use 392.36001–392.36009 for standard subdivisions

.360 1–.360 5 Of specific classes of peopleAdd to 392.360 the numbers following 390 in 390.1–390.5, e.g.,
dwelling places of royalty 392.36022**.37 Cookery**Class food and meals [*formerly* 392.37] in 394.1**.38 Other domestic arts and sciences****.4 Courtship and betrothal**

Examples: bundling, infant betrothal, bride purchase

.5 Wedding and marriage**.6 Relations between sexes**

Former heading: Sex outside marriage

Example: chaperonage

*For courtship and betrothal, see 392.4; wedding and marriage, 392.5***.9 Treatment of aged****393 Death customs****.1 Burial****.2 Cremation**

.3 **Embalming**

.4 **Exposure**

.9 **Mourning** •

Examples: wake, suttee

394 **General customs**

Former heading: Public and social customs

Including swearing

.1 • **Eating, drinking, using tobacco**

Use situations, methods of use, prohibited uses

Class here food and meals [*formerly also 392.37*]

Including narcotics

.12 **Eating and drinking**

For drinking of alcoholic beverages, see 394.13

.13 **Drinking of alcoholic beverages**

.14 **Use of tobacco**

.15 **Specific meals**

Example: tea

.16 **Food taboos**

.2 **Special occasions**

Including fast days

.25 **Carnivals**

.26 **Holidays**

[.260 9] **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 394.269 •

.268 **Specific holidays**

.268 2 **Religious**

.268 28 **Christian**

Holidays of the church year

.268 282 **Christmas**

.268 283 **Easter**

.268 29 **Other**

Add to 394.26829 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,
religious holidays of Judaism 394.268296

.268 3 **Seasonal**

Examples: Thanksgiving, New Year, May Day, Halloween

- .268 4 Patriotic
 Examples: Independence Day, Bastille Day
 Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 394.2684
- .269 Historical and geographical treatment
- .269 01–.269 04 Historical periods
 Add to 394.2690 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., holidays in 1st–5th centuries 394.269015
- .269 1–.269 9 } Geographical treatment
 Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 394.269
- .3 Games, toys, dances
- .4 Official ceremonies and observances
 Coronations, inaugurations, jubilees, state visits, triumphs
- .5 Pageants, processions, parades
 For carnivals, see 394.25
- .6 Fairs
- .7 Customs of chivalry
- .8 Dueling and suicide
- .9 Cannibalism [*formerly 399*]

395 Etiquette

Prescriptive and practical works on social relations

Unless other instructions appear, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last in the schedule, e.g., table manners for children 395.54 (not 395.122)

For military etiquette, see 355.1336; protocol of diplomacy, 341.33

- .1 For specific groups
 Add to 395.1 the numbers following 170.202 in 170.2022–170.2024, e.g., etiquette for children 395.122
- .2 For specific occasions
- .22 Engagements and weddings
- .23 Funerals
- .24 Christenings, confirmations, bar mitzvahs, debuts
- .3 Hospitality and entertainment
 Including table decor
 Class table manners [*formerly 395.3*] in 395.54
- .4 Social correspondence

- .5 **In specific situations**
- .52 Business and office etiquette
- .53 Public behavior
 Examples: in church, at theater, in stores and shops
- .54 Table manners [*formerly* 395.3]
- .59 Other
 Sports, dances, school, on the telephone, conversation
- 396 **[Unassigned]**
 Most recently used in Edition 16
- 397 **[Unassigned]**
 Most recently used in Edition 16
- 398 **Folklore**
 Class belles-lettres by identifiable authors in 800
- .01 Philosophy and theory
 Class specific theories in 398.1
- .02-.03 Miscellany, dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances
- .04 General special
- .042 Sociology and criticism
 Origin, role, function of folklore as a cultural and social phenomenon
 Class here comprehensive works on sociological and literary criticism
 Class purely literary criticism in 398.2, sociology of specific
 subjects of folklore in 398.3-398.4
- .05-.07 Serial publications, organizations, study and teaching
- .08 Collections of sociology of folklore
 Class collections of folk literature in 398.208
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment of sociology of folklore
 Class historical and geographical treatment of folk literature in 398.209

SUMMARY

- 398.1 **Specific theories of folklore**
- .2 **Folk literature**
- .3 **The natural and physical as subjects of folklore**
- .4 **The paranatural and legendary as subjects of folklore**
- .5 **Chapbooks**
- .6 **Riddles**
- .8 **Rimes and games**
- .9 **Proverbs**

- .1 Specific theories of folklore**
 - Including primitive traditions
- .12 Philological**
 - Folklore based on linguistic analysis
- .13 Anthropological**
 - Folklore as survival of ancient beliefs and rituals
- .14 Etiological**
 - Folklore as explanation of causation
- .15 Psychoanalytic**
- .16 Symbolic**
 - Folklore as symbolic of natural phenomena
- .17 Historical**
 - Folklore as allegorical treatment of forgotten historical events
- .18 Social role and function of folklore**
- .19 Origin and diffusion of folklore**
- .192 Pan-Babylonian**
- .193 Pan-Indian**
- .2 Folk literature**
 - Class here literary appraisal and criticism
 - Unless other instructions appear, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., tales of heroes in real places 398.22 (not 398.232)
 - For religious mythology, see 200.4; minor forms of folk literature, 398.5–398.9*
- .21 Tales and lore of paranatural and legendary beings of human and semihuman form**
 - Examples: ogres, fairies, giants, vampires, mermaids and mermen, centaurs
- .22 Tales and lore of historical and quasi-historical persons and events**
 - Examples: heroes, kings, witches
- .23 Tales and lore of places and times**
- .232 Real places**
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 398.232
 - Class tales originating in specific places in 398.209, tales of real places at special times in 398.236
- .234 Legendary places**
 - Example: Atlantis

- .236 Special times
 - Examples: seasons, special days
- .24 Tales and lore of plants and animals
- .242 Plants
 - Real and legendary
- .245 Animals
- .245 2 Real
 - Add to 398.2452 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g.,
cats 398.2452974428
- .245 4 Legendary
 - Examples: dragons, phoenixes, unicorns, werewolves
- .25 Ghost stories
- .26 Tales and lore involving physical phenomena
 - Heavenly bodies, weather, fire, water, real and legendary minerals,
other real and legendary materials and things
- .27 Tales and lore of everyday human life
 - Birth, love, marriage, death, occupations, recreation, dwellings, food



398.3–398.4 Sociology of specific subjects of folklore

Origin, role, function of themes and subjects of folklore as cultural and social phenomena

Class comprehensive works in 398.042

- .3 The natural and physical as subjects of folklore
- .32 Place
 - .322 Physiographic regions
 - [.323] Haunted places
 - Class in 398.47
 - [.324] Buried treasure
 - Class in 398.356
 - .329 Specific places
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 398.329
- .33 Time
 - Seasons, special days, parts of the day, e.g., darkness, dawn
- .35 Human existence
- .352 Persons
 - Examples: heroes, kings, witches

-
- .353 The human body, its parts and functions
 - Including medical folklore
 - .354 Life cycle
 - Birth, love, marriage, death
 - .355 Everyday life
 - Examples: food, dwellings, occupation, recreation
 - .356 Things and materials
 - Examples: buried treasure [*formerly* 398.324], nets, rings, wheels, ships, paper
 - .36 Physical phenomena
 - .362 Heavenly bodies
 - Class weather [*formerly* 398.362] in 398.363
 - .363 Weather [*formerly* 398.362]
 - .364 Fire and water
 - .365 Minerals
 - .368 Plants
 - Add to 398.368 the numbers following 58 in 582–589, e.g., flowers 398.368213
 - .369 Animals
 - Add to 398.369 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., snakes 398.369812
 - [.37] Superstitions
 - Class in 398.41
 - .4 **The paranatural and legendary as subjects of folklore**
 - .41 Folk beliefs
 - Including superstitions [*formerly* 398.37]
 - .42 Legendary places
 - Example: Atlantis
 - .45 Beings of human and semihuman form
 - Examples: ogres, fairies, giants, vampires
 - .46 Legendary minerals, plants, animals
 - .465 Minerals
 - Example: philosopher's stone
 - .468 Plants
 - .469 Animals
 - Examples: dragons, phoenixes, unicorns, werewolves

.47 **Ghosts**

Including haunted places [*formerly* 398.323]

► **398.5–398.9 Minor forms of folk literature**

Class comprehensive works in 398.2

.5 **Chapbooks**

.6 **Riddles**

.8 **Rimes and games**

Nursery rimes, counting-out rimes, street cries and songs

.9 **Proverbs**

Add “Languages” notation 1–9 from Table 6 to base number 398.9

399 Customs of war and diplomacy

Examples: dances, peace pipe, treatment of captives, e.g., scalping

Class cannibalism [*formerly* 399] in 394.9

400 Language

Expression and comprehension of ideas thru systematic symbolism

Class nonverbal language in 001.56; language of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 014 from Table 1, e.g., language of science 501.4

The following options give preferred treatment to, or make available more and shorter numbers for the classification of, any specific language that it is desired to emphasize

A. Class in 410, where full instructions appear

B. Give preferred treatment by placing before 420 thru use of a letter or other symbol. Full instructions appear under 420-490

401 Philosophy and theory

Including value

.3 Universal languages

Class value in 401

.9 Psycholinguistics

402 Miscellany

403 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

404 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

405 Serial publications

406 Organizations

407 Study and teaching

408 Collections

409 Historical and geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 409, e.g., languages of India 409.54

Class specific languages and groups of languages in 420-490

410 Linguistics

Science and structure of spoken and written language

Class here comprehensive works on Indo-European languages

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific language, e.g., Russian, it is optional to class it here and add to base number 41 as instructed under 420–490; in that case class linguistics in 400, its subdivisions in 401–409, standard subdivisions of language in 400.1–400.9)

Class linguistics of specific languages in 420–490

For specific Indo-European languages, see 420–480

411 Notations (Alphabets and ideographs)

412 Etymology

Phonetic, graphic, semantic development of words and morphemes

For notations, see 411; phonology, 414

413 Polyglot dictionaries

.028

Lexicography

Technique of recording lexical knowledge

414 Phonology

415 Structural systems (Grammar)

Morphology and syntax

416 Prosody

417 Dialectology and paleography

.2

Dialectology

.7

Historical linguistics (Paleography)

Study of early writings

Class history of specific elements in 411–416

418 Usage (Applied linguistics)

Use 418.001–418.009 for standard subdivisions

For polyglot dictionaries, see 413

.02

Translation and interpretation

[.022]

By person

Number discontinued; class in 418.02

[.028]

Mechanized translation

Class in 029.756

419 Verbal language other than spoken and written

Example: manual alphabet (deaf mute) language

Class nonverbal language [*formerly* 419] in 001.56

420–490 Specific languages

Class here comprehensive works on specific languages and their literatures

Arrange as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific language, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Arabic language 4A0 (preceding 420), for which base number is 4A

Under each language identified by *, add to designated base number “Subdivisions of Individual Languages” notation 01–86 from Table 4

Class comprehensive works in 410

For literatures of specific languages, see 810–890

420–480 Specific Indo-European languages

Class comprehensive works in 410

For East Indo-European and Celtic languages, see 491

420 *English and Anglo-Saxon languages

Base number for English: 42

Special interpretations of and exceptions to “Subdivisions of Individual Languages” notation from Table 4 for use with English appear below under 421–428

421 Written and spoken codes of standard English

.5 Phonology

.52 Spelling and pronunciation

*For standard American spelling and pronunciation, see 421.54;
standard British spelling and pronunciation, 421.55*

.54 Standard American spelling and pronunciation

.55 Standard British spelling and pronunciation

422 Etymology of standard English

423 Dictionaries of standard English

424 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

425 Structural system (Grammar) of standard English

426 Prosody of standard English

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

427 Nonstandard English

Description, analysis, usage

Use 427.001–427.009 for standard subdivisions

*For Old English, see 429***.02 Middle English, 1100–1500****.09 Modern nonregional variations**

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

.1–.8 Regional variations in England

Add to 427 the numbers following 42 in “Areas” notation 421–428 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of London 427.1

.9 Regional variations in other places

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 427.9

428 Standard English usage (Applied linguistics)

Class here Basic English

429 *Anglo-Saxon (Old English)**430 Germanic (Teutonic) languages *German**

Use 430.01–430.09 for standard subdivisions of Germanic languages

Base number for German: 43

*For English and Anglo-Saxon languages, see 420***431 Written and spoken codes of standard German****432 Etymology of standard German****433 Dictionaries of standard German****434 [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

435 Structural system (Grammar) of standard German**436 Prosody of standard German****437 Nonstandard German**

Description, analysis, usage

Use 437.001–437.009 for standard subdivisions

.01 Old High German to 1100**.02 Middle High German, 1100–1500****.09 Modern nonregional variations**

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

.1–.6 Regional variations in Germany and Austria

Add to 437 the numbers following 43 in “Areas” notation 431–436 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Bavaria 437.3

.9 Regional variations in other places

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 437.9, e.g., Yiddish 437.947 [*formerly* 492.49]

438 Standard German usage (Applied linguistics)**439 Other Germanic (Teutonic) languages**

► **439.1–439.4 West Germanic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 439

.1 Old Low Germanic languages

Old Saxon, Old Frisian, Old Low Franconian, Old Low German

► **439.2–439.4 Modern Low Germanic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 439

.2 *Frisian**.3 Netherlandish languages****.31 *Dutch****.32 *Flemish****.36 *Afrikaans****.4 *Low German (Plattdeutsch)****.5 Scandinavian (North Germanic) languages**

For specific Scandinavian languages, see 439.6–439.8

► **439.6–439.8 Specific Scandinavian languages**

Class comprehensive works in 439.5

.6 West Scandinavian languages *Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

Use 439.6001–439.6009 for standard subdivisions of West Scandinavian languages

Base number for Old Norse (Old Icelandic): 439.6

.69 Modern West Scandinavian languages *Modern Icelandic

Use 439.69001–439.69009 for standard subdivisions of modern West Scandinavian languages

Base number for Modern Icelandic: 439.69

.699 *Faeroese

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490



439.7–439.8 East Scandinavian languages

Class comprehensive works in 439.5

.7 ***Swedish**

.8 **Danish and Norwegian**

.81 ***Danish**

Class here Dano-Norwegian (Early Common Danish)

.82 ***Norwegian (Bokmaal)**

.83 ***New Norse (Landsmaal)**

.9 **East Germanic**

Gothic, Vandalic, Burgundian

440 Romance languages [*formerly also 479.1*] ***French**

Use 440.01–440.09 for standard subdivisions of Romance languages

Base number for French: 44

For Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic, see 450; Spanish and Portuguese, 460

441 **Written and spoken codes of standard French**

442 **Etymology of standard French**

443 **Dictionaries of standard French**

444 **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

445 **Structural system (Grammar) of standard French**

446 **Prosody of standard French**

447 **Nonstandard French**

Description, analysis, usage

Use 447.001–447.009 for standard subdivisions

.01 **Old French to 1400**

.02 **Middle French, 1400–1600**

.09 **Modern nonregional variations**

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

.1–.8 **Regional variations in France**

Add to 447 the numbers following 44 in “Areas” notation 441–448 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of southern France (Langue d’oc) 447.8

Class dialects of southeastern France (Provençal) in 449

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

.9 Regional variations in other places

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 447.9

448 Standard French usage (Applied linguistics)**449 *Provençal and Catalan**

Base number for Provençal: 449

.9 *Catalan**450 *Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages**

Base number for Italian: 45

451 Written and spoken codes of standard Italian**452 Etymology of standard Italian****453 Dictionaries of standard Italian****454 [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

455 Structural system (Grammar) of standard Italian**456 Prosody of standard Italian****457 Nonstandard Italian**

Description, analysis, usage

Use 457.001–457.009 for standard subdivisions

.01 Old Italian to 1300**.02 Middle Italian, 1300–1600****.09 Modern nonregional variations**

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

.1–.7 Regional variations in continental Italy

Add to 457 the numbers following 45 in "Areas" notation 451–457 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Lombardy 457.2

.8 Regional variations in Sicily

Add to 457.8 the numbers following 458 in "Areas" notation 4581–4582 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Palermo 457.823

.9 Other regional variations**.91–.93 In Sardinia**

Add to 457.9 the numbers following 459 in "Areas" notation 4591–4593 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Cagliari 457.91

.95 In Corsica**.99 In other places**

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 457.99

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

458 Standard Italian usage (Applied linguistics)**459 *Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic**

Base number for Romanian: 459

.9 Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Romansh, Ladin, Friulian

460 *Spanish and Portuguese languages

Use 460.01–460.09 for standard subdivisions

Base number for Spanish: 46

461 Written and spoken codes of standard Spanish**462 Etymology of standard Spanish****463 Dictionaries of standard Spanish****464 [Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

465 Structural system (Grammar) of standard Spanish**466 Prosody of standard Spanish****467 Nonstandard Spanish**

Description, analysis, usage

Use 467.001–467.009 for standard subdivisions

.01 Old Spanish to 1100**.02 Middle Spanish, 1100–1600****.09 Modern nonregional variations**

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

.1–.8 Regional variations in Spain

Add to 467 the numbers following 46 in “Areas” notation 461–468 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Andalusia 467.8

.9 Regional variations in other places

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 467.9, e.g., Judeo-Spanish (Ladino) 467.9496

468 Standard Spanish usage (Applied linguistics)

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

469 *Portuguese**.7 Nonstandard Portuguese**

Description, analysis, usage

Use 469.7001–469.7009 for standard subdivisions

.701 Old Portuguese to 1100**.702 Middle Portuguese, 1100–1600****.709 Modern nonregional variations**

Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions

.71–.76 Regional variations in continental Portugal

Add to 469.7 the numbers following 469 in “Areas” notation 4691–4696 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of Lishon 469.742

.78 Regional variations in Madeira**.79 Other regional variations****.791 In Azores****.794 In Spain**

Galician (Gallegan)

.798 In Brazil

Add to 469.798 the numbers following 81 in “Areas” notation 811–817 from Table 2, e.g., dialects of São Paulo 469.7986

.799 In other places

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 469.799

470 Italic languages *Latin

Use 470.01–470.09 for standard subdivisions of Italic languages

Base number for Latin: 47

Special interpretations of and exceptions to “Subdivisions of Individual Languages” notation from Table 4 for use with Latin appear below under 471–478

*For Romance languages, see 440***► 471–476 Description and analysis of classical Latin**

Class here classical revival (medieval and modern) Latin

Class comprehensive works in 470

*For classical Latin usage, see 478***471 Written and spoken codes of classical Latin****472 Etymology of classical Latin****473 Dictionaries of classical Latin**

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

474 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

475 Structural system (Grammar) of classical Latin

476 Prosody of classical Latin

477 Old (Preclassical), Postclassical, Vulgar Latin

Description, analysis, usage

478 Classical Latin usage (Applied linguistics)

Class here classical revival (medieval and modern) Latin usage

479 Other Italic languages

[.1] Romance languages

Class in 440

.4–.9 Specific languages

Add "Languages" notation 794–799 from Table 6 to base number 4, e.g., Umbrian 479.9

480 Hellenic languages *Classical Greek

Class here comprehensive works on classical languages

Use 480.01–480.09 for standard subdivisions of classical languages

Base number for classical Greek: 48

Special interpretations of and exceptions to "Subdivisions of Individual Languages" notation from Table 4 for use with Greek appear below under 480.1–488

For Latin, see 470

.1–.9 Standard subdivisions of Hellenic languages and classical Greek

481 Written and spoken codes of classical Greek

.7 Paleography

Including Minoan Linear B

482 Etymology of classical Greek

483 Dictionaries of classical Greek

484 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

485 Structural system (Grammar) of classical Greek

486 Prosody of classical Greek

487 Postclassical Greek

Description, analysis, usage of Hellenistic and Byzantine Greek

.4 Biblical Greek (Koine)

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

488 Classical Greek usage (Applied linguistics)

489 Other Hellenic languages

.3 *Modern Greek

Katharevusa and Demotic

490 Other languages

491 East Indo-European and Celtic languages

SUMMARY

491.1 Indo-Iranian (Aryan) languages

.2 Sanskrit

.3 Middle Indic languages (Secondary Prakrits)

.4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)

.5 Iranian languages

.6 Celtic languages

.7 East Slavic languages Russian

.8 Balto-Slavic languages Slavic languages

.9 Baltic and other languages

.1 Indo-Iranian (Aryan) languages

For Indic (Indo-Aryan) languages, see 491.2–491.4; Iranian languages, 491.5

▶ 491.2–491.4 Indic (Indo-Aryan) languages

Class comprehensive works in 491.1

.2 *Sanskrit

Vedic (Old Indic) and classical

.3 Middle Indic languages (Secondary Prakrits)

.37 Pali

.4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)

.41 *Sindhi and Lahnda

Base number for Sindhi: 491.41

.419 *Lahnda

.42 *Panjabi

.43 Western Hindi languages *Hindi

Use 491.43001–491.43009 for standard subdivisions of Western Hindi languages

Base number for Hindi: 491.43

.439 *Urdu

.44 *Bengali

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

- .45 Assamese, Bihari (Bhojpuri, Magahi, Maithili), Oriya
- .46 *Marathi
- .467 Nonstandard Marathi
- Description, analysis, usage
- Including Konkani dialect
- .47 *Gujarati and Rajasthani
- Base number for Gujarati: 491.47
- .479 *Rajasthani
- .479 7 Nonstandard Rajasthani
- Description, analysis, usage
- Including Jaipuri, Marwari dialects
- .48 *Sinhalese
- .487 Nonstandard Sinhalese
- Description, analysis, usage
- Including Mahl dialect
- .49 Other
- Including Nepali, Pahari, Eastern Hindi (Awadhi, Bagheli, Chattisgarhi)
- .499 Dard languages
- Shina, Khowar, Kafiri, Kohistani, Kashmiri, Romany (Gipsy)
- .5 Iranian languages
- .51 *Old Persian (West Iranian)
- .52 *Avestan (East Iranian)
- .53 Middle Iranian languages
- Pahlavi (Middle Persian), Sogdian, Khotanese (Saka)
- .55 *Modern Persian (Farsi)
- .59 Other modern Iranian languages
- Kurdish, Baluchi, Tajiki, Pashto (Afghan), Ossetic, Pamir (Galcha), Yaghnobi
- .6 Celtic languages
- Including Gaulish, Cornish
- .62 *Irish Gaelic
- .63 *Scottish Gaelic
- .64 *Manx
- .66 *Welsh (Cymric)
- .68 *Breton

* Add to base number as instructed under 420-490

- .7 East Slavic languages *Russian**
 Use 491.7001–491.7009 for standard subdivisions of East Slavic languages
 Base number for Russian: 491.7
- .77 Nonstandard Russian**
 Description, analysis, usage
 Use 491.77001–491.77009 for standard subdivisions
- .770 1 Old Russian to 1550**
- .770 2 Middle Russian, 1550–1750**
- .770 9 Modern nonregional variations**
 Slang, ephemera, picturesque and exaggerated expressions
- .774–.779 Regional variations**
 Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 491.77
- .79 *Ukrainian and Belorussian**
 Base number for Ukrainian: 491.79
- .799 *Belorussian**
- .8 Balto-Slavic languages Slavic languages**
 Including Common Slavic
For East Slavic languages, see 491.7; Baltic languages, 491.9
- .81 South Slavic languages *Bulgarian**
 Use 491.81001–491.81009 for standard subdivisions of South Slavic languages
 Base number for Bulgarian: 491.81
For Serbo-Croatian, see 491.82; Slovenian, 491.84
- .817 Nonstandard Bulgarian**
 Description, analysis, usage
 Use 491.817001–491.817009 for standard subdivisions
- .817 01 Old Bulgarian (Church Slavonic)**
- .819 *Macedonian**
- .82 *Serbo-Croatian**
- .84 *Slovenian**

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

► **492.2–492.9 West Semitic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 492

► **492.2–492.6 Northwest Semitic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 492

.2 Aramaic languages

For Eastern Aramaic languages, see 492.3

.29 Biblical Aramaic, Samaritan, Chaldee

.3 Eastern Aramaic languages

Example: Syriac

► **492.4–492.6 Canaanitic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 492.6

.4 *Hebrew

.47 Nonstandard Hebrew

Including Ammonite, Moabite dialects

[.49] Yiddish

Class in 437.947

.6 Canaanite-Phoenician languages

Including Punic, Ugaritic, Minoan Linear A

Class here comprehensive works on Canaanitic languages

For Hebrew, see 492.4

► **492.7–492.9 Southwest Semitic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 492

.7 North Arabic languages *Arabic

Base number for Arabic: 492.7

.77 Nonstandard Arabic

Description, analysis, usage

Including Maltese dialect

.8 Ethiopic languages

Examples: Geez, Tigre, Tigrinya, Amharic, Argobba, Harari, Gurage

.9 South Arabic languages

Examples: Mahri, Sokotri, Qarawi, Shkhauri

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

493 Hamitic and Chad languages

Add "Languages" notation 93 from Table 6 to base number 4

Base number for *Coptic: 493.2

Base number for *Hausa: 493.72 [*formerly* 496.91]

494 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian languages**.1–.3 Altaic languages**

Add "Languages" notation 941–943 from Table 6 to base number 4

Base number for *Turkish: 494.35

► 494.4–494.5 Uralic languages

Class comprehensive works in 494

.4 Samoyedic languages

Examples: Yenisei, Yurak, Kamasin, Ostyak Samoyed

.5 Finno-Ugric languages**.51 Ugric languages**

Including Ostyak, Vogul

.511 *Hungarian (Magyar)**.53 Permian languages**

Examples: Votyak (Udmurt), Zyrian

.54 Finnic languages

Including Karelian, Livonian, Veps

For Lapp, see 494.55; Middle Volga languages, 494.56

.541 *Finnish (Suomi)**.545 *Estonian****.55 *Lapp****.56 Middle Volga languages**

Examples: Mordvin, Cheremis

.6 Paleosiberian languages

Luorawetlin, Yukaghir, Gilyak, Yeniseian families; Ainu (relationship not clear)

.8 Dravidian languages**.81 Dravida group**

Including Malto, Kota, Kurukh (Orâon), Toda

.811 *Tamil**.812 *Malayalam**

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

.814 ***Kanarese (Kannada)**

.82 **Andhra group**

.823 ***Gondi**

.824 ***Khond (Kandh)**

.827 ***Telugu**

.83 ***Brahui**

495 Languages of East and Southeast Asia Sino-Tibetan languages

.1 ***Chinese**

Base number for standard written Chinese (Mandarin): 495.1

.17 **Nonstandard Chinese**

Description, analysis, usage

Including commercial Chinese; Amoy, Cantonese, Foochow, Hakka, Pekingese, Swatow, Wu dialects

.4 **Tibeto-Burman languages *Tibetan**

Use 495.4001–495.4009 for standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman languages

Base number for Tibetan: 495.4

For Burmese, see 495.8

.49 **Himalayan dialects**

.6 ***Japanese**

.7 ***Korean**

.8 ***Burmese**

.9 **Other languages of Southeast Asia**

Class Malayan languages in 499.2

.91 **Thai languages *Thai (Siamese)**

Use 495.91001–495.91009 for standard subdivision of Thai languages

Base number for Thai (Siamese): 495.91

.919 **Other**

Including Lao, Shan, Khaniti, Ahom, Karen

Class Annam-Muong languages in 495.92

.92–.95 **Annam-Muong, Mon-Khmer, Munda languages**

Add "Languages" notation 9592–9595 from Table 6 to base number 4

Base number for *Vietnamese (Annamese): 495.922

Base number for *Cambodian: 495.932

* Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

496 African languages

Add "Languages" notation 961–965 from Table 6 to base number 4

Base number for *Ibo: 496.332

Base number for *Yoruba: 496.333

Base number for *Swahili: 496.392 [*formerly* 496.92]

For Afro-Asiatic languages, see 492

.9 Commercial languages

Class a specific language with its family, e.g., Swahili 496.392

[.91] Hausa

Class in 493.72

[.92] Swahili

Class in 496.392

497 American aboriginal languages

Add "Languages" notation 97 from Table 6 to base number 4, e.g., Macro-Penutian languages 497.4

For South American aboriginal languages, see 498

498 South American aboriginal languages**499 Other languages**

Add "Languages" notation 99 from Table 6 to base number 4

Base number for *Tagalog (Filipino): 499.211

Base number for *Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia): 499.221

Base number for *Javanese: 499.222

Base number for *Malay (Pidgin Malay, Bazaar Malay): 499.28

Base number for *Malagasy: 499.3

Base number for *Esperanto: 499.992

Base number for *Interlingua: 499.993

' Add to base number as instructed under 420–490

500 Pure sciences

Class here comprehensive works on pure and applied sciences

Class scientific principles of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 015 from Table 1, e.g., scientific principles of photography 770.15

For applied sciences, see 600

- .1 **Natural sciences**
- .2 **Physical sciences**
- .5 **Space sciences**
- .9 **Natural history**

Comprehensive description of phenomena in nature

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 500.9

501 **Philosophy and theory**

502 **Miscellany**

- .8 **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- Including microscopy [*formerly* 578]

503 **Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**

504 **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 16

505 **Serial publications**

506 **Organizations**

507 **Study and teaching**

508 **Collections, travels, surveys**

- .1 **Collections**
- .3 **Travels and surveys**

For geographical treatment of travels and surveys, see 508.4–508.9

- .4–.9 **Geographical treatment of travels and surveys**

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 508

509 **Historical and geographical treatment**

510 Mathematics

This schedule is completely new, prepared with little or no reference to earlier editions and assigning new meanings to many numbers. Such numbers are italicized

Class here finite mathematics

.1 Philosophy and theory

Including metamathematics

Class mathematical logic in 511.3

511 Generalities

Class generalities applied to a specific branch of mathematics with the branch, e.g., arithmetic approximation 513.24

.2 Inductive and intuitive mathematics

.3 Symbolic (Mathematical) logic [*formerly* 164]

Class here sets, logic operators; axioms, postulates, proof, hypotheses

Class proof for inductive and intuitive mathematics in 511.2

.32 Algebra of sets (Boolean algebra)

.33 Relations and partially ordered systems

Examples: point sets, functions, lattices, ordered systems

.4 Approximations and expansions

.42 Methods

Example: interpolation

.43 Error theory

.5 Theory and construction graphs

Including nomography

.6 Combinatorial analysis

.62 Enumeration

.64 Permutations and combinations

.65 Choice (Decision theory)

.66 Maxima and minima

.7 Numerical analysis

Class here numerical solutions

For calculus of finite differences, see 515.62

.8 Mathematical models (Mathematical simulation)

Theory and methods of modelmaking

Including algorithms

512 Algebra

Class here universal algebra, modern algebra

Use 512.001–512.009 for standard subdivisions

For arithmetic, see 513

.02 Abstract algebra**SUMMARY****512.1 Algebra combined with other branches of mathematics****.2 Groups****.3 Fields****.4 Rings, integral domains, ideals****.5 Linear, multilinear, multidimensional algebras****.7 Number theory****.9 Pedagogical algebra****.1 Algebra combined with other branches of mathematics**

Class here precalculus

For arithmetic and algebra, see 513.12; analysis and linear algebra, 515.14

.12 Algebra and Euclidean geometry**.13 Algebra and trigonometry****.14 Algebra and analytic geometry****.15 Algebra and calculus****.2 Groups**

Class here subgroups, cosets, semigroups; partitions; permutative, cyclic, Abelian (commutative) groups

.22 Group theory**.24 Algebras based on group properties**

Examples: commutative, associative, nonassociative algebras

Class algebras defined by dimension in 512.53, topological algebras in 512.55

.3 Fields**.32 Field theory**

Class here Galois theory

Class linear algebra in 512.5, number theory in 512.7, theory of equations in 512.94

.33 Abstract algebraic geometry

Curves, varieties, polytopes over fields and other rings

.4 Rings, integral domains, ideals

Including subrings, extension theory

For fields, see 512.3

-
- .5 **Linear, multilinear, multidimensional algebras**
 - Class here vector algebra, comprehensive works on geometry of numbers
 - Class geometry of rational numbers in 512.72, pedagogical algebra in 512.9
 - .52 **Modules and vector spaces**
 - .522 **Modules**
 - .523 **Vector spaces**
 - Class topological vector spaces in 515.73
 - .53 **Algebras defined by dimension of space and other geometric algebras**
 - Examples: quaternion, Cayley, Jordan, symmetric algebras
 - .55 **Topological and related algebras**
 - Including homological algebra, categories, morphisms; Banach, uniform, Stein, Lie, Frechet, operator algebras
 - For differential and difference algebras, see 512.56; factor algebras, 512.57*
 - .56 **Differential and difference algebras**
 - .57 **Factor algebras**
 - Examples: tensor, exterior, spinor, Clifford algebras
 - .7 **Number theory**
 - Including transfinite numbers
 - Class here lattices
 - For theory of equations, see 512.94*
 - .72 **Elementary**
 - Representations, operations, transformations, combinations, other functions; congruences; numbers, roots, indices
 - Including geometry of rational numbers
 - .73 **Analytic**
 - Transcendental numbers, continued fractions, additive number theory, distribution theory of primes, partitions, number theoretic functions, power residues, diophantine inequalities
 - .74 **Algebraic**
 - Field theory of numbers, field extensions, algebraic numbers, p-adic numbers, diophantine analysis
 - .9 **Pedagogical algebra**
 - Basic secondary-school and college algebra
 - Use 512.9001–512.9009 for standard subdivisions
 - .904 2 **Elementary and intermediate algebra**
 - .904 4 **Advanced algebra**

- .92 Algebraic operations
 - Class here addition, subtraction, multiplication, division
- .922 Exponents and logarithms
- .923 Root extraction
 - Example: factoring
- .924 Approximation, ratio, proportion
- .925 Combinations, permutations, distributions
- .93 Simple algebraic and geometric progressions
- .94 Theory of equations
 - Equations and systems of equations, radical theory
- .942 Specific types and systems of equations
 - Polynomial, quadratic, cubic, quartic, mixt
- .943 Matrices and determinants
- .944 Quantics (Theory of forms) and algebraic invariant theory
- .96 Algebra of non-equation functions
 - Example: rational functions
 - Class quantics in 512.944
 - For inequalities, see 512.97*
- .97 Inequalities

513 Arithmetic

SUMMARY

- 513.1 Arithmetic combined with other branches of mathematics
 - .2 Arithmetic operations
 - .4 Arithmetic and geometric progressions
 - .5 Digital representations (Numeration systems)
 - .6 Non-weighted systems
 - .9 Special-purpose arithmetics
- .1 Arithmetic combined with other branches of mathematics
 - .12 Arithmetic and algebra
 - .122 Separate treatment
 - .123 Combined treatment
 - .13 Arithmetic and geometry
 - .132 Separate treatment
 - .133 Combined treatement
 - .14 Arithmetic, algebra, geometry
 - .142 Separate treatment

.143 Combined treatment

.2 Arithmetic operations

Class here addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, decimal representations

.22 Exponents and logarithms

.23 Root extraction

Example: factoring

.24 Approximation, ratio, proportion

.25 Combinations, permutations, distributions

.26 Fractions

.4 Arithmetic and geometric progressions

.5 Digital representations (Numeration systems)

For decimal representations, see 513.2

.52 Binary

.54 Octal

.56 Duodecimal

.6 Non-weighted systems

Example: modular arithmetic

.9 Special-purpose arithmetics

.92 Rapid calculations and short cuts

.93 Business arithmetic

514 Topology

Class here analysis situs, homogeneous spaces, homeomorphisms

Class analysis combined with topology in 515.13

.2 Algebraic topology

.22 Combinatorial topology

.223 Combinatorial elements

Examples: simplexes, complexes, nets, topological manifolds

.224 Structures and spaces

Examples: sheaves, fiber bundles (fiber spaces), knots, links, braids, path spaces

.23 Homology and cohomology groups

.24 Homotopy theory

Including retracts

- .3 Differential calculus and equations**
 Class differential topology in 514.7, differential operators in 515.724, differential geometry in 516.36
- .33 Differential calculus**
 Ordinary, partial, total differentiation; total and directional derivatives, maxima and minima, mean value theorems, differentials
 Class numerical differentiation in 515.623, vector differentiation in 515.63, probability differentiation in 519.2
- .35 Differential equations**
 Class here orders, degrees, linear and nonlinear differential equations, comprehensive works on boundary-value problems
 Class boundary-value problems of finite differences in 515.62
- .352 Ordinary differential equations**
- .353 Partial differential equations**
- .36 Differential inequalities**
- .37 Differential forms**
- .38 Mixt equations**
 Examples: integro-differential, difference-differential equations
- .4 Integral calculus and equations**
 Class special functions in 515.5, integral transforms in 515.723, integral geometry in 516.362
- .42 Theory of measure and integration**
- .43 Integral calculus**
 Integration, summability, rectification, cubature, quadrature; line, surface, definite, improper, proper, Riemann, Lebesgue, Denjoy, Cauchy, Poisson, Poisson-Stieltjes, Haar integrals
 Class vector integration in 515.63, numerical integration in 515.624, probability integration in 519.2
- .45 Integral equations**
- .46 Integral inequalities**
- .5 Special functions**
- .52 Eulerian integrals**
 Examples: gamma functions, beta functions
- .53 Harmonic functions**
 Examples: Bessel, Hankel, Neumann, Legendre functions
- .54 Mathieu functions**

- .55 **Orthogonal polynomials**
 - Examples: Legendre, Chebyshev, Lagrange, Jacobi, Laguerre, Hermite, hypergeometric polynomials
- .56 **Zeta function**
- .6 **Other analytic methods**
 - For functional analysis, see 515.7*
- .62 **Calculus of finite differences**
 - Class here boundary-value problems
- .623 **Numerical differentiation**
- .624 **Numerical integration**
- .625 **Difference equations**
 - Class difference-differential equations in 515.38
- .63 **Vector, tensor, spinor analysis**
 - Including vector and tensor calculus
 - Class algebraic vector analysis in 512.523, geometric vector analysis in 516.182
- .64 **Calculus of variations**
 - Including maximal principle methods
- .7 **Functional analysis**
 - Including abstract analysis (topological algebra)
 - Class here real and complex valued functions
 - For topological algebras, see 512.55; functions of real variables, 515.8; functions of complex variables, 515.9*
- .72 **Operational calculus**
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., generalized function as a linear functional 515.74
- .722 **Spectral and representation theories**
- .722 2 **Spectral theory**
- .722 3 **Representation theory**
 - Including forms, generalized functions
 - Class abstract harmonic analysis in 515.785
- .723 **Transforms**
 - Examples: Z, Laplace, Fourier, Legendre, Hilbert transforms
- .724 **Differential operators**

-
- .73 **Topological vector spaces**
 - Examples: Banach, Hilbert, Hermitian (unitary) spaces
 - Including mappings between spaces; spaces of continuous functions; spaces of measurable functions, e.g., L^p spaces, Orlicz spaces
 - For functionals, see 515.74*
 - .74 **Functionals**
 - .78 **Special topics**
 - .782 **Distribution theory**
 - Including duality, distribution spaces
 - .783 **Abstract measure theory**
 - .784 **Valuation theory**
 - .785 **Abstract harmonic analysis**
 - .8 **Functions of real variables**
 - Class theory of measure and integration in 515.42
 - .82 **Generalities**
 - Add to 515.82 the numbers following 515.2 in 515.22–515.26, e.g., expansion of functions 515.8234
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., expansion of functions of several real variables 515.84
 - .83 **Functions of one real variable**
 - .84 **Functions of several real variables**
 - .88 **Specific types of real variable functions**
 - Example: real variable analytic functions
 - .9 **Functions of complex variables**
 - Class here classical theory of functions, conformal mapping, automorphic functions
 - Class theory of measure and integration in 515.42
 - .92 **Generalities**
 - Add to 515.92 the numbers following 515.2 in 515.22–515.26, e.g., expansion of functions 515.9234
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., expansion of functions of several complex variables 515.94
 - .93 **Functions of one complex variable**
 - .94 **Functions of several complex variables**
 - .98 **Specific types of complex variable functions**
 - Including pseudoanalytic and entire functions
 - .982 **Meromorphic functions**

- .983 **Elliptic functions**
 Class special elliptic functions in 515.5

- .984 **Theta function**

516 **Geometry**

Use 516.001–516.009 for standard subdivisions

Class algebra combined with geometry in 512.1, arithmetic combined with geometry in 513.1, analysis combined with geometry in 515.1

For topology, see 514

- .02 **Classical geometry**
- .04 **Modern geometry**
- .05 **Planes**
- .06 **Solids**
- .07 **Manifolds**
- .08 **Convex sets**

SUMMARY

- 516.1 **Generalities**
 - .2 **Euclidean geometry**
 - .3 **Analytic geometries**
 - .4 **Affine geometry**
 - .5 **Projective geometry**
 - .6 **Abstract descriptive geometry**
 - .9 **Non-Euclidean geometries**

.1 **Generalities**

Class here metric geometry, transformations, automorphisms, other foundations

Class generalities applied to a specific geometry with the geometry, e.g., angles in Euclidean geometry 516.215

- .12 **Incidence geometry**
- .13 **Combinatorial and constructive geometry**
- .15 **Configurations**
 Including curves, surfaces, angles, squares, cubes, polyhedrons
- .16 **Coordinate systems**
 Including Cartesian, curvilinear, homogeneous systems
- .17 **Geometry of inequalities**
- .18 **Non-point base geometries**
- .182 **Vector geometry**
- .183 **Line geometry**

- .184 Circle geometry
- .185 Modular geometry
- .186 Geometries over algebras, groups, rings
- .2 Euclidean geometry**
 - Including imbedding of Euclidean spaces in other geometries
 - Class here congruences, similarity, metric geometry
 - Use 516.2001–516.2009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class a specific type of Euclidean geometry with the subject, e.g., Euclidean analytic geometry 516.3
- .204 Famous problems
- .21 Generalities**
 - Add to 516.21 the numbers following 516.1 in 516.12–516.18, e.g., angles 516.215
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., angles in plane geometry 516.22
- .22 Plane geometry
- .23 Solid geometry
- .24 Trigonometry
 - Plane and solid
- .3 Analytic geometries**
 - Class analytic affine geometry in 516.4, analytic projective geometry in 516.5
- .32 Plane
- .33 Solid
- .34 Analytic trigonometry
 - Plane and solid
- .35 Classical algebraic geometry
 - Geometries based on linear algebra
 - Class here birational and conformal transformations, intersections, connections, dual geometries, bilinear and sesquilinear forms, comprehensive works on algebraic geometry
 - Class abstract algebraic geometry in 512.33
- .352 Curves and surfaces on projective and affine planes
- .353 Algebraic varieties

- .36 **Differential and integral geometry**
 Class here surfaces, curves, differentiable manifolds
 Use 516.36001–516.36009 for standard subdivisions
 For metric differential geometries, see 516.37
- .360 2 **Classical differential geometry**
 Inner relations of a structure on a differentiable manifold
- .360 4 **Modern differential geometry**
 Relations between structure and manifold as a whole
- .362 **Global differential geometry (Integral geometry)**
 Analytic, developable, convex, ruled, minimal surfaces; fiber spaces
 (fiber bundles), tangent space at a point, arc length, curvature,
 involutes, evolutes, geodesics; asymptotic, minimal, analytic
 curves
- .363 **Local and intrinsic differential geometry**
 Curvature and torsion
- .37 **Metric differential geometries**
- .372 Euclidean
- .373 Riemannian
- .374 Minkowski
- .375 Finsler
- .376 Cartan
- .377 Kawaguchi
- .4 **Affine geometry**
 Class affine differential geometry in 516.36
- .5 **Projective geometry**
 Class projective differential geometry in 516.36
- .6 **Abstract descriptive geometry**
- .9 **Non-Euclidean geometries**
 Including hyperbolic, inversive, Lobachevski, Bolyai, Gauss geometries;
 imbeddings of non-Euclidean spaces in other geometries
 Class a specific type of non-Euclidean geometry with the subject, e.g.,
 non-Euclidean analytic geometries in 516.3
- .92 Riemannian geometry
- .93 Minkowski geometry

517 **[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 17

518 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 15

519 Probabilities and applied mathematics

Class here random processes

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., game theory in gambling
795.01

SUMMARY

- 519.2 Probabilities**
- .3 Game theory**
- .4 Applied numerical analysis**
- .5 Statistical mathematics**
- .7 Programing**
- .8 Special topics**

.2 Probabilities

Mathematical theory of random phenomena (stochastic processes)

Class here probability calculus, conditional probabilities, independent and dependent trials

Class probabilities applied to statistical mathematics in 519.5

.23 Probabilistic processes**.232 Stationary processes**

Including time series analysis

.233 Markov processes

Including Markov chains

.234 Branching processes**.24 Descriptive probabilities****.26 Probabilities over rings, algebras, other algebraic structures****.28 Special topics****.282 Random walks (Monte Carlo)****.287 Expectation and prediction**

Examples: martingales, Markov risk; reliability, renewal, estimation theories

.3 Game theory**.4 Applied numerical analysis**

Including computer mathematics, coding theory

Class information theory in 001.539, statistical mathematics in 519.5

-
- .5 Statistical mathematics [formerly also 311.2]**
 - Class here numerical data, statistical inferences
 - .52 Theory of sampling**
 - .53 Descriptive statistics**
 - .532 Frequency distributions**
 - .533 Measures of central tendency**
 - Examples: median, mean, mode
 - .534 Measures of deviation**
 - Example: standard deviation
 - .535 Analysis of variance, covariance**
 - .536 Regression analysis**
 - .537 Correlation analysis**
 - .54 Statistical inference**
 - Decision theory, estimation theory
 - Including expectation, prediction
 - .7 Programing**
 - Use 519.7001–519.7009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class information theory [formerly 519.7] in 001.539
 - .702 Single-stage programing**
 - .703 Multistage programing**
 - Including dynamic programing
 - .72 Linear programing**
 - .76 Nonlinear programing**
 - Examples: convex and quadratic programing
 - Class integer programing in 519.77
 - .77 Integer programing**
 - .8 Special topics**
 - .82 Queuing**
 - Including congestion, order
 - .83 Inventory and storage**
 - .84 Success runs**
 - .85 Epidemics and fluctuations**
 - .86 Quality control and other statistical adjustments**

520 Astronomy and allied sciences

.1-.9 Standard subdivisions

Class theoretical astronomy in 521.5–521.8; astronomical techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 522.1–522.6



521–525 Astronomy

Class comprehensive works in 520

For geodetic and positional astronomy, see 526.6

521 Theoretical astronomy and celestial mechanics

Including quasar theory, pulsar theory

For theories of universe, see 523.12–523.19

.1 Celestial mechanics

Including motion, equilibrium, universal gravitation, problems of three and n bodies

Class applications to theory of specific celestial bodies and kinds of bodies in 521.5–521.7, to description of specific celestial bodies and kinds of bodies in 523

For orbits, see 521.3; perturbations, 521.4; precession and nutation, 521.9

[.11–.16] Specific topics

Numbers discontinued; class in 521.1

.3 Orbits

Including Kepler's laws, orbit determination and prediction

.4 Perturbations



521.5–521.8 Theoretical astronomy

Class comprehensive works in 521

.5 Theory of planets, stars, galaxies

.54 Of planets

Including solar system

.541–.548 Specific planets

Add to 521.54 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.41–523.48, e.g., Mars 521.543

Class theory of earth in 525.01

.57 Of sun (Solar theory)

.58 Of stars and galaxies

For theory of sun, see 521.57

.582 Galaxies

Including Milky Way, nebulae, interstellar matter

- .584–.585 **Star systems and aggregations**
 Add to 521.58 the numbers following 523.8 in 523.84–523.85, e.g.,
 variable stars 521.5844
- .6 **Theory of satellites**
- .62 **Of moon (Lunar theory)**
- .63–.68 **Of other specific satellites**
 Add to 521.6 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.43–523.48, e.g.,
 satellites of Mars 521.63
- .7 **Theory of meteors and comets**
- .75 **Of meteors**
- .76 **Of comets**
- .8 **Theory of eclipses, transits, occultations**
 Class theory of eclipses, transits, occultations of specific bodies and kinds
 of bodies in 521.5–521.7
- .9 **Precession and nutation**
 Class corrections of precession and nutation in 522.9

522 **Practical and spherical astronomy**

Class here computations



522.1–522.6 Practical astronomy

Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 522, applications to specific celestial bodies
 and phenomena in 523

For corrections, see 522.9

- .1 **Observatories**
- .109 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class specific observatories in 522.19
- .19 **Specific observatories**
 Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 522.19



522.2–522.5 Instruments

Class comprehensive works in 522.2

- .2 **Optical telescopes and their use**
 Class here accessories, comprehensive works on astronomical instruments
 For meridional instruments, see 522.3; extrameridional instruments,
 522.4; auxiliary instruments, 522.5
- .209 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class specific telescopes in 522.29

-
- [.21-.27] **Specific kinds and accessories**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 522.2
 - .29 **Specific telescopes**
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 522.29
 - .3 **Meridional instruments and their use**
 - For zenith telescopes, see 522.4*
 - .4 **Extrameridional instruments and their use**
 - Examples: sextants, quadrants, reflecting circles, astrolabes, zenith and equatorial telescopes
 - [.41-.46] **Specific instruments**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 522.4
 - .5 **Auxiliary instruments and their use**
 - Examples: sidereal clocks, chronometers, chronographs, micrometers, personal equation machines, spectroheliographs, photoheliographs, coronagraphs, heliostats
 - Class use of auxiliary instruments in special methods of observation in 522.6
 - [.51-.58] **Specific instruments**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 522.5
 - .6 **Special methods of observation**
 - Apparatus and techniques
 - Including X-ray methods
 - .62 **Photometry**
 - .622 **Photographic**
 - .623 **Photoelectric**
 - .63 **Photography**
 - For photographic photometry, see 522.622*
 - .65 **Polarimetry**
 - .67 **Spectroscopy**
 - .68 **Radio and radar astronomy** [*formerly 523.016-523.017*]
 - .682 **Radio**
 - .684 **Radar**
 - .7 **Spherical astronomy**
 - Celestial sphere and coordinates, interpolation, meridian lines and variation of compass, use of globes and models
 - [.71-.78] **Specific topics**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 522.7

.9 Corrections

Of parallax, astronomical refraction, aberration, precession, nutation, personal equation, instrumental errors

[.91–.98] Specific corrections

Numbers discontinued; class in 522.9

523 Descriptive astronomy

Including quasars, pulsars, zodiac

Class here comprehensive works on specific celestial bodies, groupings, phenomena

Use 523.001–523.009 for standard subdivisions, classing planetariums [*formerly* 523.28] in 523.0074

Class “earth” sciences of other worlds in 550

For theoretical astronomy, see 521.5–521.8

.01 Astrophysics

Physics and chemistry of celestial bodies and phenomena

.013 Heat

Add to 523.013 the numbers following 536 in 536.1–536.7, e.g., heat transfer 523.0132

.015 Visible light and paraphotic phenomena

Add to 523.015 the numbers following 535 in 535.01–535.89, e.g., ultraviolet radiation 523.015014

[.016–.017] Radio and radar astronomy

Class in 522.68

.018 Electricity and magnetism

Add to 523.018 the numbers following 53 in 537–538, e.g., magnetism 523.0188

.019 Molecular, atomic, nuclear physics

Add to 523.019 the numbers following 539 in 539.1–539.7, e.g., cosmic rays 523.0197223

SUMMARY**523.1 Universe (Cosmology)**

.2 Solar system

.3 Moon

.4 Planets

.5 Meteors and zodiacal light

.6 Comets

.7 Sun

.8 Stars

.9 Transits, satellites, occultations

.1 Universe (Cosmology)**.101 Philosophy and theory**

Class theories in 523.12–523.19

.11 Description of structure and phenomena**.111 Space****.112 Galaxies**

Including nebulas, interstellar matter

*For Milky Way, see 523.113***.113 Milky Way****.113 5 Nebulas and interstellar matter**

523.12–523.19 Theories

Class comprehensive works in 523.101

.12 Cosmogony

Theories of origin and development of universe

*For expanding universe theories, see 523.18***[.13] Astrobiology**

Class in 574.999

.18 Expanding universe theories**.19 Destruction of universe theories****.2 Solar system**

Structure, motion, physical properties

*For specific parts, see 523.3–523.7***.207 8 Apparatus and equipment for study and teaching**Including orreries [*formerly* 523.28]**[.24] Motion**

Number discontinued; class in 523.2

[.28] Planetariums and orreries

Class planetariums in 523.0074, orreries in 523.2078

[.29] Zodiac

Number discontinued; class in 523

523.3–523.7 Specific parts of solar system

Class comprehensive works in 523.2

.3 Moon**.302 Miscellany**

Class spectroscopy in 523.37; charts, photographs, tables in 523.39

- .31 Constants and dimensions
 - Size, shape, mass, gravitation, location, parallax
- .32 Optical, thermal, electromagnetic, radioactive phenomena
 - Including phases, brightness
- .33 Orbit and motions
 - Including sidereal month, perigee and apogee, librations
- [.34] Selenography
 - Class in 919.91
- [.35] Theories of atmosphere
 - Number discontinued; class in 523.3
- .37 Spectroscopy
- .38 Eclipses
- .39 Charts, photographs, tables
- .4 Planets
 - Locations, motions, orbits, physical properties
 - For earth, see 525; satellites, 523.98*
- .402 Miscellany
 - Class charts, photographs, tables in 523.49

523.41–523.48 Specific planets

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 523.3 in 523.31–523.37, e.g., orbit of Mars 523.433

Class comprehensive works in 523.4

- .41 *Mercury
- .42 *Venus
- .43 *Mars
- .44 Minor planets (Asteroids, planetoids)
- .45 *Jupiter
- .46 *Saturn
- .47 *Uranus
- .48 Transuranian planets
- .481 *Neptune
- .482 *Pluto
- .49 Charts, photographs, tables

* Add as instructed under 523.41–523.48

- .5 Meteors and zodiacal light**
- .51 Meteorites and meteoroids
- .53 Meteoric showers and radiant points
- .57 Spectroscopy of meteors
- .59 Zodiacal light and counter glow
- .6 Comets**
- .602 Miscellany
 - Class spectroscopy in 523.67; charts, photographs, tables in 523.69
- .63 Motion and orbits
 - Class motion and orbits of specific comets [*both formerly* 523.63] in 523.64
- .64 Specific comets
 - Motion and orbits [*both formerly* 523.63], physical constitution [*formerly* 523.66], spectroscopy [*formerly* 523.67], physical properties
- .66 Physical phenomena and constitution
 - Class physical constitution of specific comets [*formerly* 523.66] in 523.64
- .67 Spectroscopy
 - Class spectroscopy of specific comets [*formerly* 523.67] in 523.64
- .69 Charts, photographs, tables
- .7 Sun**
- .702 Miscellany
 - .702 1 Tabulated and related materials
 - .702 12 Formulas, specifications, statistics
 - Class tables in 525.38
 - .702 2 Illustrations and models
 - Class charts and photographs in 523.79
 - .702 8 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Class heliographs, coronagraphs, heliostats in 522.5, spectroscopy in 523.77
- .71 Constants and dimensions
 - Size, mass, gravitation, location, parallax
- .72 Optical, thermal, electromagnetic, radioactive phenomena
- .73 Apparent motion and rotation
- .74 Photosphere, sunspots, faculae
- .75 Prominences, chromosphere, flares, corona

- .76 Internal constitution
- .77 Spectroscopy
- .78 Eclipses
- .79 Charts and photographs

.8 Stars

Class galaxies in 523.112

For sun, see 523.7

.802 Miscellany

Class spectroscopy in 523.87; charts, photographs, tables in 523.89

523.81–523.83 Properties and phenomena

Class properties of specific systems and aggregations [*formerly* 523.81–523.83] in 523.84–523.85

Class comprehensive works in 523.8

For physical constitution, see 523.86

- .81 Constants and dimensions
 - Size, mass, gravitation, location, parallax
- .82 Optical, thermal, electromagnetic, radioactive phenomena
- .822 Magnitudes
- .83 Motion and velocity

523.84–523.85 Systems and aggregations

Properties [*formerly* 523.81–523.83], physical constitution [*formerly* 523.86], spectroscopy [*formerly* 523.87]

Class comprehensive works in 523.8

- .84 Binary, multiple, variable stars
- .841 Binary and multiple stars
 - Class here visual binaries
 - For spectroscopic binaries, see 523.842; astrometric binaries, 523.843; eclipsing binaries, 523.844*
- .842 Spectroscopic binaries
- .843 Astrometric binaries
- .844 Variable stars
 - .844 2 Intrinsic variables
 - For eruptive variables, see 523.8446*
 - .844 25 Pulsating variables
 - Class here cepheids and cluster-type variables
 - For long-period and semi-regular variables, see 523.84426*

- .844 26 Long-period and semi-regular variables
- .844 4 Eclipsing binaries (Extrinsic variables)
- .844 6 Eruptive variables
 - Examples: novae, supernovae, recurrent novae, flare stars
- .85 Clusters
- .852 Open and moving clusters
- .855 Globular clusters
- .86 Physical constitution
 - Class physical constitution of specific systems and aggregations [formerly 523.86] in 523.84–523.85
- .87 Spectroscopy
 - Class spectroscopy of specific systems and aggregations [formerly 523.87] in 523.84–523.85
- .89 Charts, photographs, tables
- .890 3 Observers' atlases of constellations
- .890 8 Star catalogs
- .9 Transits, satellites, occultations
- .91 Transits of Mercury
- .92 Transits of Venus
 - Including methods of observation and recording
 - For transits of 1761, 1769, 1874, see 523.96; of 1882, 523.97
- .96 Venus transits of 1761, 1769, 1874
- .97 Venus transit of 1882
- .98 Satellites
 - For moon, see 523.3
- .983–.988 Of specific planets
 - Add to 523.98 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.43–523.48, e.g., satellites of Mars 523.983
- .99 Occultations

524 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

525 Earth (Astronomical geography)

- .1 Constants and dimensions
 - Size, shape, mass, location, parallax
 - For determination of size and shape, see 526.1
- .2 Optical, thermal, radioactive properties

- .3 **Orbit and motions**
- .35 Rotation
- .36 Foucault's pendulum
- .38 Tables of the sun
- .5 **Seasons and zones**
- .6 **Tides**
- .602 1 Tabulated and related materials
 - Class tables in 525.69
- .69 Tide tables
- .7 **Astronomical twilight and twilight tables**

526 **Mathematical geography**

Class here cartography (map-making)

For astronomical geography, see 525

SUMMARY

- 526.1 **Determination of size and shape**
- .3 Geodetic surveying
- .6 Geodetic and positional astronomy
- .7 Gravity determinations (Physical geodesy)
- .8 Map drawing and projections
- .9 Surveying

► 526.1–526.7 Geodesy

Class comprehensive works in 526

- .1 **Determination of size and shape**
- .3 **Geodetic surveying**
 - Surveys in which curvature of earth is considered in measurement and computation
- .31 Reconnaissance (Preliminary surveys)
- .32 Bench marks
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 526.32
- .33 **Triangulation, traversing, trilateration**

► 526.36–526.38 Leveling

Class comprehensive works in 526.3

For bench marks, see 526.32

- .36 **Spirit leveling**
 - Differential and precise spirit leveling

- .37 Barometric leveling
- .38 Trigonometric leveling (Geodetic refraction)
- .6 **Geodetic and positional astronomy**
 - Application of spherical astronomy to geodesy



526.61–526.63 Coordinates

Theory, computation, determination of geodetic (geographic, topographic) coordinates

Class comprehensive works in 526.6

- .61 Latitude
- .62 Longitude
- .63 Azimuth
- .64 Geographic position
 - Including effect of irregularities of earth's surface on determination of position
- .7 **Gravity determinations (Physical geodesy)**
- .8 **Map drawing and projections**
 - Class map reading in 912.014
- .82 Conformal (Orthomorphic) projections
- .85 Equal-area (Equivalent) projections
- .86 Map drawing [*formerly* 744.428]
- .9 **Surveying**
 - Class engineering surveys in 622–628
 - For geodetic surveying, see* 526.3



526.92–526.99 Plane surveying

Surveys in which curvature of earth is disregarded in measurement and computation

Class comprehensive works in 526.9

- .92 Boundary surveying (Land surveys)
- .98 Topographic surveying
- .981 Contour surveying
- .982 Photogrammetry
 - .982 3 Aerial surveying
 - .982 5 Ground (Terrestrial) surveying
- .99 Hydrographic surveying

527 Celestial navigation

Determination of geographic position and direction from observation of celestial bodies

.1 **Latitude**

.2 **Longitude**

.3 **Fixes**

Sumner's and line-of-position methods

.5 **Direction and course**

.53 Rhumb line course

.55 Great circle course

528 Ephemerides (Nautical almanacs)

Class tables of specific celestial bodies in 523

.1–.8 **In specific countries**

Add to 528 the numbers following 06 in 061–068, e.g., English ephemerides 528.2

.9 **Ephemeris making**

529 Chronology (Time)

.1 **Sidereal and solar day**

Apparent and mean time, equation of time, causes of inequality

.2 **Intervals of time**

Kinds of years, months, weeks, days

.3 **Calendars**

For Christian calendars, see 529.4; calendar reforms, 529.5

.32 **Ancient and non-Christian calendars**

Add to 529.32 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Jewish calendar 529.326

.4 **Christian calendars**

.42 Julian

.43 Gregorian

.44 Church

Determination of movable feast and fast days

.5 **Calendar reforms**

.7 Horology

Finding and measuring time

.75 Time systems and standards

Universal, standard, daylight-saving time; conversion tables

.78 Instruments for measuring time

Dials, hourglasses, clocks, watches

530 Physics

Class here matter and antimatter

Class astrophysics in 523.01; physical chemistry in 541.3; physics of specific elements, compounds, mixtures in 546

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions

Class theories in 530.1, instrumentation in 530.7

.1 Theories

Class applications to specific states of matter in 530.4

.11 Relativity theoryIncluding fourth dimension, space and time, mass-energy equivalence ($E = mc^2$)

Class relativistic quantum mechanics in 530.12, relativistic statistical and kinetic theories in 530.13, relativistic field theories in 530.14

.12 Quantum mechanics (Quantum theory)

Relativistic and non-relativistic

*For quantum statistics, see 530.133; quantum kinetic theories, 530.136; quantum field theory, 530.143***.122 Matrix mechanics (Heisenberg representation)****[.123] Quantum mechanics**

Number discontinued; class in 530.12

.124 Wave mechanics (Schrödinger representation)

Including Schrodinger wave equation

.13 Statistical and kinetic theories

Relativistic and non-relativistic

.132 Classical statistical mechanics (Boltzmann statistics)**.133 Quantum statistics (Quantum statistical mechanics)****.133 2 Bose-Einstein statistics****.133 4 Fermi-Dirac statistics****.136 Kinetic theories**

Quantum and combined quantum-classical

Class classical kinetic theory in 531.113

-
- .14 **Field and wave theories**
 - Quantum and classical, relativistic and non-relativistic
 - For wave mechanics, see 530.124*
 - .141 **Electromagnetic theory [*formerly 537.12*]**
 - Fields and waves
 - Including Maxwell's equations [*formerly 537.11*]
 - Class electromagnetic spectrum in 539.2
 - .142 **Unified field theory**
 - For electromagnetic theory, see 530.141*
 - .143 **Quantum field theory**
 - .144 **Problem of many bodies**
 - .15 **Mathematical physics**
 - Mathematical description of physical phenomena
 - Add to 530.15 the numbers following 51 in 511–519, e.g., analysis 530.155
 - .16 **Measurement theory**
 - .4 **States of matter**
 - Physical properties and behavior of matter as states: molecular, atomic, nuclear physics; sound and related vibrations, visible light, paraffotic phenomena, heat, electricity, electronics, magnetism, quantum mechanics
 - Including superfluidity
 - Class classical mechanics in 531–533
 - .41 **Solid-state physics**
 - Including thin films, electron theory of metals
 - For crystallography, see 548*
 - .42 **Liquid-state physics**
 - .43 **Gaseous-state physics**
 - Including ionization of gases
 - Class ionization of gases in electronic tubes in 537.532, plasma physics in 530.44
 - .44 **Plasma (Ionized gas) and plasma physics [*both formerly 537.16*]**
 - .7 **Instrumentation**
 - For measurement, control, recording
 - .8 **Physical units, dimensions, constants**

531 Mechanics*For mechanics of fluids, see 532***.01-.09 Standard subdivisions**

Class tables, review, exercise for solid mechanics in 531.9

SUMMARY

- 531.1 Dynamics, statics, particle mechanics**
 - .2 Statics of solids**
 - .3 Dynamics of solids (Solid kinetics and kinematics)**
 - .4 Friction and viscosity of solids**
 - .5 Mass and gravity of solids; projectiles**
 - .6 Energy**
 - .7 Transport phenomena in solids**
 - .8 Simple machines**
 - .9 Tables, review, exercise for solid mechanics**

.1 Dynamics, statics, particle mechanics*For statics of solids, see 531.2, dynamics of solids, 531.3***.11 Dynamics**

Motion and forces affecting it

Including flow

.112 Kinematics (Pure motion, Abstract motion)

Motion apart from considerations of mass and force

Including linear and relative motion, velocity, acceleration, vector quantities

.113 Kinetics

Effects of forces on motion

Including effects of centrifugal and centripetal forces

.113 3 Waves

Origin, properties, effects

Including shock waves

.113 4 Friction and viscosity**.113 7 Transport phenomena****.12 Statics**

Equilibrium and forces affecting it

Including inertia, graphic statics

.14 Mass and gravity

Including density, specific gravity, terrestrial gravitation

For universal gravitation, see 521.1

.16 Particle mechanics

.162 Statics ✓

.163 Dynamics

Including Brownian motion, torque

► **531.2–531.5 Solids (Rigid bodies)**

Class comprehensive works in 531

For transport phenomena, see 531.7

.2 Statics of solids

Equilibrium of solids and forces affecting it

Including inertia, graphic statics

[.23–.25] Moments of inertia and graphic statics

Numbers discontinued; class in 531.2

.3 Dynamics of solids (Solid kinetics and kinematics)

Motion of solids and forces affecting it

Including flow, torque

For friction and viscosity, see 531.4; ballistics, 531.55; simple machines, 531.8

.31 Trajectories

.32 Vibrations

Periodic motion

.322 Oscillations

Complete periods of vibration

.324 Pendulum motion

.33 Waves

Origin, properties, effects

Including shock waves

.34 Gyrodynamics

.35 Centrifugal and centripetal forces

.38 Elastic constants, stresses, deformation

.381 Elastic constants and their measurement

Young's modulus, Poisson's ratio, bulk modulus, shear modulus
(modulus of rigidity)

.382 Stresses and deformation (strain)

Including Hooke's law

.382 2 Stresses

Tensile, compressive, shearing, bending, torsional stresses

-
- .382 3 Temporary deformation (Elasticity)
 - Including elastic limit, coefficient of restitution
 - .382 5 Permanent deformation (Plasticity)
 - Including yield point
 - .383 Vibrations
 - .4 Friction and viscosity of solids**
 - .5 Mass and gravity of solids; projectiles**
 - Including laws of falling bodies
 - [.52] Laws of falling bodies
 - Number discontinued; class in 531.5
 - .54 Density and specific gravity ,
 - .55 Projectiles
 - Class here ballistics
 - For trajectories, see 531.31*
 - .552 In air
 - .555 In space
 - .555 2 Escape velocity (Parabolic velocity)
 - .555 4 Orbital velocity
 - .555 8 Re-entry problems
 - .6 Energy**
 - .62 Conservation of energy
 - Including law of conservation of mass-energy
 - .64 Types of energy
 - .642 Potential
 - .643 Kinetic
 - .68 Transformation
 - Change in form of energy
 - Class a specific transformation with the resultant form, e.g., potential to kinetic 531.643
 - .7 Transport phenomena in solids**
 - .8 Simple machines**
 - Lever, wheel and axle, cord and pulley, geared wheel, inclined plane, wedge, screw
 - .9 Tables, review, exercise for solid mechanics**

532 Mechanics of fluids

Use 532.001–532.009 for standard subdivisions

For mechanics of gases, see 533

.02 Statics

Equilibrium of fluids and forces affecting it

Including inertia, transmission of pressure, buoyancy

.04 Mass, density, specific gravity**.05 Dynamics (Kinetics and kinematics)**

Motion of fluids and forces affecting it

Including centrifugal and centripetal forces

532.051–532.053 Flow

Class comprehensive works in 532.051

.051 General principles and theories of flow

Class here comprehensive works on flow

For types of flow, see 532.052; flow properties and their measurement, 532.053

.052 Types of flow

Including uniform, steady, rotational, streamline

Class properties of specific types of flow in 532.053

.052 5 Laminar**.052 6 Transitional****.052 7 Turbulent****.053 Flow properties and their measurement****.053 2 Velocity****.053 3 Viscosity and friction****.053 5 Elasticity and compressibility****.057 Transport phenomena**

Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis

.059 Waves, vortex motions, cavitation**.059 3 Waves**

Origin, properties, effects

Including shock waves

.059 5 Vortex motions and cavitation

.1 Mechanics of liquids (Hydromechanics)*For specific aspects, see 532.2–532.7***.101–.109 Standard subdivisions**

Class tables, review, exercise in 532.9

► 532.2–532.7 Specific aspects of hydromechanics

Class comprehensive works in 532.1

.2 Hydrostatics

Equilibrium of liquids and forces affecting it

Including buoyancy, inertia, transmission of pressure

*For surface phenomena, see 532.6***.4 Mass, density, specific gravity of liquids****.5 Hydrodynamics (Kinetics and kinematics of liquids)**

Motion of liquids and forces affecting it

Including centrifugal and centripetal forces

*For transport phenomena, see 532.7***► 532.51–532.58 Flow**

Class comprehensive works in 532.51

.51 General principles and types of flow

Examples: uniform, steady, rotational, streamline flow

Class here comprehensive works on flow

*For flow variations, see 532.52–532.56; flow velocity and its measurement, 532.57, flow viscosity, friction, elasticity, compressibility, 532.58***.511 General principles and theories****.515 Laminar flow****.516 Transitional flow****.517 Turbulent flow****► 532.52–532.56 Flow variations**

Class comprehensive works in 532.51

.52 Flow thru orifices and nozzles**.53 Flow over weirs and spillways****.54 Flow thru pipes and open channels****.55 Flow thru bends and irregular enclosures**

- .56 **Flow when pressure is variable**
Including flow over and around submerged bodies, multiphase flow
- .57 **Flow velocity and its measurement**
- .58 **Flow viscosity, friction, elasticity, compressibility**
Including viscous, elastic flow
- .59 **Waves, vortex motions, cavitation**
Add to 532.59 the numbers following 532.059 in 532.0593–532.0595, e.g.,
cavitation 532.595
- .6 **Surface phenomena of liquids**
Surface tension, capillarity, thin films, bubbles
- .7 **Transport phenomena of liquids**
Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis
- [.8] **Special developments**
Number discontinued; class in 532
- .9 **Tables, review, exercise for hydromechanics**

533 **Mechanics of gases**

- .01–.09 **Standard subdivisions**
Class tables, review, exercise for gases in general in 533.9



533.1–533.5 Gases in general

Class comprehensive works in 533, aspects of gases in general not provided for here in 533.7–533.9

- .1 **Statics and other phenomena of gases in general**
Including absorption and adsorption
For vacuums and vacuum production, see 533.5
- .12 **Statics**
Equilibrium of gases and forces affecting it
Including inertia, transmission of pressure, buoyancy
- .13 **Transport phenomena**
Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis
- [.14] **Absorption and adsorption**
Number discontinued; class in 533.1
- .15 **Mass, density, specific gravity**

- .2 Dynamics (Kinetics and kinematics) of gases in general**
 - Motion of gases and forces affecting it
 - For transport phenomena, see 533.13; kinetic theory of gases, 533.7*
- .21 Types of flow**
 - Add to 533.21 the numbers following 532.052 in 532.0525–532.0527, e.g., turbulent flow 533.217
- .27 Velocity**
- .273 Subsonic**
- .274 Transonic**
- .275 Supersonic**
- .276 Hypersonic**
- .28 Viscosity, elasticity, compressibility**
 - Including friction; viscous, elastic, compressible flow
- .29 Waves, vortex motions, cavitation**
 - Add to 533.29 the numbers following 532.059 in 532.0593–532.0595, e.g., cavitation 533.295
- .5 Vacuums and vacuum production**
- .52 Rarefaction of gases**
- .54 High-vacuum production**
- .6 Aeromechanics**
 - For vacuums and vacuum production, see 533.5*
- .61 Acrostatics**
 - Equilibrium of air and forces affecting it
 - Including buoyancy
- .62 Aerodynamics**
 - Motion of air and forces affecting it
 - Add to 533.62 the numbers following 533.2 in 533.21–533.29, e.g., cavitation 533.6295
 - For transport phenomena, see 533.63*
- .63 Transport phenomena**
 - Diffusivity, permeability, osmosis
- .7 Kinetic theory of gases**
- [.8] Special developments**
 - Number discontinued; class in 533
- .9 Tables, review, exercise for gases in general**

534 Sound and related vibrations

Class properties of specific states of matter as states in 530.4

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

Class tables, review, exercise in 534.9

SUMMARY

- 534.1 Generation of sound**
- .2 Propagation (Transmission) of sound**
- .3 Characteristics of sound**
- .4 Measurements, analysis, synthesis of sound**
- .5 Vibrations related to sound**
- .9 Tables, review, exercise**

534.1–534.4 Sound

Class comprehensive works in 534

.1 Generation of sound**[.12–.15] Kinds of vibration**

Numbers discontinued, class in 534.1

.2 Propagation (Transmission) of sound

Use 534.2001–534.2009 for standard subdivisions

- .202 Velocity**
- .203 Directionality**
- .204 Reflection (Echoes)**
- .205 Refraction**
- .206 Diffraction**
- .207 Polarization**
- .208 Absorption (Damping)**

534.22–534.24 Transmission in specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 534.2

- .22 In solids**
- .23 In liquids**
- .24 In gases**
- .3 Characteristics of sound**
- .32 Frequency and pitch**
 - Including Doppler effect
- .33 Intensity and loudness**
- .34 Amplitude and timbre**

- .35 Irregular and discordant frequencies
- .352 Dissonance
- .355 Noise
- .4 Measurements, analysis, synthesis of sound**
- .42 Measurement techniques

534.44–534.45 Analysis

Class comprehensive works in 534.4

For graphic and optical representations, see 534.46

- .44 Qualitative analysis
- .45 Quantitative analysis
- .46 Graphic and optical representations
 - Of analysis and synthesis
- .47 Synthesis
 - Compounding sound waves
 - Including superposition principles, interference, beats
 - For graphic and optical representations, see 534.46*
- .5 Vibrations related to sound**
 - Generation, transmission, characteristics, measurements, analysis, synthesis
- .52 Subsonic
- .55 Ultrasonic
- [.8] Special developments**
 - Number discontinued, class in 534
- .9 Tables, review, exercise**

535 Visible light (Optics) and paraphotic phenomena

Class properties of specific states of matter as states in 530.4

- .01 Spectral regions
 - Class theories in 535.1
- .012 Infrared
 - For heat radiation, see 536.33*
- .013 Visible
 - Class specific elements in 535.2–535.6
- .014 Ultraviolet
- .02–.09 Standard subdivisions
 - Class spectroscopy in 535.84; tables, review, exercise in 535.9

SUMMARY

- 535.1 Theories
 - .2 Physical optics
 - .3 Transmission, absorption, emission of visible light
 - .4 Dispersion, interference, diffraction of visible light
 - .5 Beams and their modification
 - .6 Color
 - .8 Special developments
 - .9 Tables, review, exercise

- .1 Theories
- .12 Corpuscular (Emission) theory
- .13 Mechanical wave theory
- .14 Electromagnetic theory
- .15 Quantum theory



535.2–535.6 Specific elements of visible light

Class comprehensive works in 535.013, visual spectroscopy in 535.843

- .2 **Physical optics**
 - Including coherent optics
 - For special aspects of physical optics, see 535.4–535.5; color, 535.6*
 - .22 Intensity of visible light
 - Including photometry and photometers
 - .24 Velocity of visible light
- .3 **Transmission, absorption, emission of visible light**
 - .32 Geometrical optics
 - .322 Rectilinear propagation
 - .323 Reflection
 - Including mirrors
 - .324 Refraction
 - Including lenses, refracting prisms
 - .326 Absorption
- .33 **Optical instruments**
 - Physical principles and theoretical design
 - Class here photooptical instruments
 - Class instruments for a specific function with the subject, e.g., diffraction gratings 535.4, telescopes 522.2
 - .332 Microscopes [*formerly also 578.1*]
 - .332 2 Simple microscopes

- .332 3 Compound microscopes
- .332 4 Ultramicroscopes
- .332 5 Electron microscopes
- .35 Luminescence
 - Including fluorescence and phosphorescence

535.4–535.5 Special aspects of physical optics

Class comprehensive works in 535.2

- .4 **Dispersion, interference, diffraction of visible light**
 - Including interferometers, diffraction gratings, dispersing prisms
 - Class here comprehensive works on prisms
 - For refracting prisms, see 535.324*
- .5 **Beams and their modification**
 - .52 Polarization
 - Class here polarimeters
 - .523 Plane
 - .524 Rotary
 - .58 Amplification
 - Example. amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (lasers)
- .6 **Color**
- .8 **Special developments**
 - .84 Optical and paraphotic spectroscopy
 - Class here comprehensive works on spectroscopy
 - Class each kind of spectroscopy not provided for here with the subject, e.g., radiofrequency spectroscopy 537.534, a specific application with the subject, e.g., Raman qualitative analysis 544.64
 - .842 Infrared
 - .843 Visible (Chromatic)
 - .844 Ultraviolet
 - .845 Vacuum ultraviolet
 - .846 Raman
 - Including Raman effect
 - .89 Fiber optics
- .9 **Tables, review, exercise**

536 Heat

Class properties of specific states of matter as states in 530.4

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions

Class theories in 536.1; tables, review, exercise in 536.9

SUMMARY**536.1 Theories**

- .2 Transmission (Heat transfer)**
- .3 Radiation and effects of matter on heat**
- .4 Effects of heat on matter**
- .5 Temperature**
- .6 Calorimetry**
- .7 Thermodynamics**
- .9 Tables, review, exercise**

.1 Theories**.2 Transmission (Heat transfer)**

Use 536.2001–536.2009 for standard subdivisions

For radiation, see 536.33

.201 Material properties

Class specific heats in 536.63–536.65

.201 2 Conductivity**.201 4 Diffusivity****.23 In solids (Conduction)****.25 In fluids (Convection)****.3 Radiation and effects of matter on heat****.31 Reflection****.32 Refraction****.33 Radiation****.34 Absorption****.4 Effects of heat on matter**

Use 536.4001–536.4009 for standard subdivisions

.401 Change of state (Phase changes)

Including triple points

Class specific transformations in 536.42–536.44

.41 Expansion and contraction

Pressure-volume-temperature relationships, coefficients of expansion

.412 Of gases

For liquefaction of gases, see 536.56

- .413 Of liquids
- .414 Of solids
- .42 Fusion and solidification (Melting and freezing)
 - Solid-to-liquid and liquid-to-solid transformations
 - Including freezing and melting points, latent heats of fusion
- .44 Vaporization and condensation
- .443 Liquid-to-gas and gas-to-liquid transformations
 - Critical points, heats of vaporization, dew points, boiling points
- .445 Solid-to-gas and gas-to-solid transformations
 - Sublimation
- .45 Incandescence
- .5 **Temperature**
 - 536.51–536.54 Measurement
 - Class comprehensive works in 536.5
 - .51 Measurement of normal-range temperatures
 - Including liquid-in-glass thermometry
 - For electrical resistance thermometry, see 536.53*
 - .52 Measurement of high temperatures (Pyrometry)
 - Including pyrometers, thermocouples
 - .53 Electrical resistance thermometry
 - .54 Measurement of low temperatures (Cryometry)
 - .56 Cryogenics and low temperatures
 - Including liquefaction of gases, properties of matter at low temperatures
 - Class here absolute temperature
 - Class a specific property with the subject, e.g., conduction of electricity at low temperatures 537.62
 - For measurement of low temperatures, see 536.54*
 - .57 High temperatures
 - Including plasma temperatures
 - For measurement of high temperatures, see 536.52*
- .6 **Calorimetry**
 - Measurement of heat quantities and thermal capacity
 - Class heats of transformation in 536.42–536.44
- .62 Calorimeters
- .63 Specific heats of solids and liquids

- .65 Specific heats of gases and vapors
- .7 **Thermodynamics**
 - Mathematical and physical relations between mechanical work and heat energy
 - For calorimetry, see 536.6*
 - .701 Philosophy and theory
 - Class theories in 536.71
 - .71 Theories
 - Three laws of thermodynamics, Joule's law, Maxwell's four thermodynamic formulas, Carnot cycle
 - .73 Entropy
 - Measurement of unavailable energy in thermodynamic systems
- [.8] **Special developments**
 - Number discontinued; class in 536
- .9 **Tables, review, exercise**
- 537 **Electricity and electronics**
 - Class here electromagnetism
 - Class properties of specific states of matter as states in 530.4, electromagnetic theory in 530.141
 - For magnetism, see 538*
 - .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
 - Class theories in 537.1; tables, review, exercise in 537.9

SUMMARY

- 537.1 Theories
 - .2 Electrostatics
 - .5 Electronics
 - .6 Electrodynamics (Electric currents) and thermoelectricity
 - .9 Tables, review, exercise
- .1 Theories
- [.11] Maxwell's equations
 - Class in 530.141
- .12 Microwave circuit and waveguide theories
 - Class electromagnetic theory [*formerly 537.12*] in 530.141
- .123 Microwave circuit theory
- .125 Waveguide theory
- .14 Corpuscular theory
- [.16] Plasma and plasma physics
 - Class in 530.44

- .2 Electrostatics**
- .21 Electric charge and potentials**
 - Including triboelectricity
- .23 Static generators**
- .24 Dielectrics**
- .242 Capacitors (Condensers)**
- .243 Dipole moments**
- .244 Pyroelectricity, piezoelectricity, ferroelectricity**
- .245 Electrocapillarity**
- .246 Electrostriction**
- .5 Electronics**
 - Including exploding wire phenomena
 - For semiconductors, see 537.622*
- .52 Disruptive discharge**
 - Luminous discharge produced by the disruptive passage of high-voltage electricity thru gases or vapors at atmospheric pressure
 - Including electric arc, coronas
- .53 Discharge of electrons thru rarefied-gas and high-vacuum tubes**
- .532 Ionization of gases**
 - Including electron ballistics
- .533 Thermionic emission**
- .534 Radiowave and microwave electronics**
 - Class here spectroscopy, circuitry, specific tubes, waveguides
 - Class waveguide theory in 537.125
- .534 2 Long waves**
 - Frequency ranges between 10^0 and 10^6 cycles per second
- .534 3 Short waves**
 - Frequency ranges between 10^7 and 10^8 cycles per second
- .534 4 Microwaves (Ultra-high-frequency waves)**
 - Frequency ranges between 10^9 and 10^{12} cycles per second
 - Including amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (masers)
 - Class microwave circuit theory in 537.123

- .535 X-ray and gamma-ray electronics
 - Frequencies over 10^{17} cycles per second
- .535 2 Spectroscopy
 - Including Mössbauer spectroscopy and effect
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., qualitative analysis 544.66
- .535 3 Circuitry
- .535 5 Specific tubes
- .54 Photoelectric phenomena
 - Photoemissivity, photovoltaism, photoconductivity
- .56 Electron and ion optics
 - Focusing and deflecting streams of charged particles by means of electrostatic and magnetic lenses and fields
- .6 **Electrodynamics (Electric currents) and thermoelectricity**
- .61 Direct currents and circuitry
- .62 Conduction and resistance
 - Class here conductivity and resistivity
 - For dielectrics, see 537.24*
- .622 Semiconductivity and semiconductors
- .623 Superconductivity and superconductors
- .624 Thermal effects of currents
- .63 Alternating currents and circuitry
- [.64] Electrodynamics
 - Number discontinued, class in 537.6
- .65 Thermoelectricity
 - Electricity produced by direct action of heat
- [.8] **Special developments**
 - Number discontinued; class in 537
- .9 **Tables, review, exercise**

538 Magnetism

- Class properties of specific states of matter as states in 530.4
- .01-.09 Standard subdivisions
 - Class tables, review, exercise in 538.9, electromagnetic theory in 530.141

SUMMARY

- 538.2 Magnets and magnetic induction
 - .3 Magnetic properties and phenomena
 - .4 Magnetic substances and their characteristic phenomena
 - .6 Magnetohydrodynamics
 - .7 Geomagnetism and allied phenomena
 - .9 Tables, review, exercise
- .2 Magnets and magnetic induction
 - .22 Permanent magnets
 - .23 Temporary magnets (Induced magnetism)
 - Example: electromagnets
 - .24 Magnetic induction
- .3 Magnetic properties and phenomena
 - Magnetic susceptibility, flux, relaxation, moment, potential, attraction, repulsion, reluctance; electron paramagnetic resonance (electron spin resonance), nuclear magnetic resonance, magnetic resonance spectroscopy; magnetization, magnetostriction, hysteresis, piezomagnetism, pyromagnetism
 - Class permeability, specific magnetic substances and their characteristic phenomena in 538.4
- .4 Magnetic substances and their characteristic phenomena
 - Class here permeability
 - .42 Diamagnetic substances and diamagnetism
 - .43 Paramagnetic substances and paramagnetism
 - .44 Ferromagnetic substances and ferromagnetism
 - .45 Ferrimagnetic substances and ferrimagnetism
- .6 Magnetohydrodynamics
 - Motion of electrically conducting fluids in magnetic fields
- .7 Geomagnetism and allied phenomena
 - .72 Permanent magnetic field
 - Theory, analysis, secular variations of magnetism of earth's crust and interior
 - .74 Transient magnetism
 - .742 Diurnal variations
 - .743 Other periodic variations
 - .744 Magnetic storms and pulsations
 - .746 Sunspot effects
 - .748 Earth currents

- .76 **Magnetosphere, ionosphere, auroras**
- .766 **Magnetosphere**
- .767 **Ionosphere**
 - Class here atmospheric ionization
- .767 2 **D region**
- .767 3 **E region**
 - E and sporadic E layers (Kennelly-Heaviside layers)
- .767 4 **F region**
 - F₁ and F₂ layers (Appleton layers)
- .767 5 **Van Allen radiation belts**
- .768 **Auroras**
- .78 **Magnetic surveys**
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 538.78
- .79 **Magnetic observations at permanent stations**
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 538.79

[.8] Special developments

Number discontinued; class in 538

.9 Tables, review, exercise

539 Modern physics

Molecular, atomic, nuclear physics

Class here chemical physics

Class properties of specific states of matter as states in 530.4; molecular, atomic, nuclear physics of sound and related vibrations, of visible light and paraphotic phenomena, of heat, of electricity, of magnetism with the specific subject, e.g., magnetic resonance 538.3

For electronics, see 537.5

.01-.09 Standard subdivisions

Class theories in 530.1; tables, review, exercise in 539.9

.1 Structure of matter

Class here theory, models, interpretation thru spectroscopy

For nuclear structure, see 539.74

.12 Molecular structure

.14 Atomic structure

.2 Radiations (Radiant energy)

Including electromagnetic spectrum and radiations

Class a specific radiation or class of radiations with the subject, e.g., ultraviolet radiation 535.014, ionizing radiation 539.72

.6 Molecular physics

Intermolecular physics; intramolecular physics above atomic level, i.e., atom-atom relationships

For molecular structure, see 539.12

.7 Atomic and nuclear physics

Intra-atomic and intranuclear physics

For atomic structure, see 539.14

SUMMARY**539.72 Particles; X, gamma, cosmic rays; nuclei**

.73 Particle acceleration

.74 Nuclear structure

.75 Nuclear reactions and interactions

.76 Reactions emitting high energy

.77 Detection and measurement of particles and radioactivity

.72 Particles; X, gamma, cosmic rays; nuclei

Mass, charge, size, motion, velocity, orbits, spin, angular momentum, energy levels

Class here ionizing radiation

Class scattering [*formerly* 539.72] in 539.754

Class nuclear reactions and interactions between two or more different kinds of particles in 539.75

For particle acceleration, see 539.73; detection and measurement of particles and radioactivity, 539.77

.721 Particles

Class here antiparticles, relativistic particles, particle radiations; quarks, bosons, fermions; Regge poles

.721 1 Leptons

For neutrinos and antineutrinos, see 539.7215; photons, 539.7217

.721 12 Electrons

Including beta particles

Class positrons in 539.7214

.721 14 Muons (Mu-mesons) [*formerly* 539.7216]**.721 2 Nucleons**

Including protons, antiprotons

For neutrons and antineutrons, see 539.7213

.721 3 Neutrons and antineutrons**.721 4 Positrons****.721 5 Neutrinos and antineutrinos**

- .721 6 **Hadrons**
 Class here "strange" particles
 Class muons (mu-mesons) [*formerly* 539.7216] in 539.72114
- .721 62 **Mesons**
 Pions (pi-mesons), kaons (K-mesons)
- .721 64 **Baryons**
 Including hyperons
 For nucleons, see 539.7212
- .721 7 **Photons and phonons**
- [.721 9] **Other particles**
 Number discontinued; class in 539.721
- .722 **X, gamma, cosmic rays**
- .722 2 **X and gamma rays**
 Including bremsstrahlung (secondary X rays), gamma particles
 For X-ray and gamma-ray electronics, see 537.535
- .722 3 **Cosmic rays**
 For mesons, see 539.72162
- .723 **Nuclei**
 Including deuterons, alpha particles
 Class nuclear structure in 539.74, component particles of nucleus in 539.7212
- .73 **Particle acceleration**
 Including particle beams
- .732 **In high-voltage accelerators**
 Use of voltage multipliers and Van de Graaff electrostatic generators
- .733 **In resonance accelerators**
 Use of linear accelerators and cyclotrons
- .734 **In induction accelerators**
 Use of betatrons
- .735 **In synchronous accelerators**
 Use of synchrocyclotrons and synchrotrons (betatron-synchrotrons)
- .737 **Acceleration of specific particles**
 Add to 539.737 the numbers following 539.721 in 539.7211–539.7217, e.g., electron acceleration 539.73712
 Class acceleration of specific particles in specific accelerators in 539.732–539.735

- .74 Nuclear structure
 Class here isotope and nuclide structure, nuclear models
- .742 Liquid-drop model
- .743 Shell model
- .744 Interpretation thru spectroscopy
- .75 Nuclear reactions and interactions
 Reactions between two or more different kinds of particles
 Class here reaction cross sections
 For reactions emitting high energy, see 539.76
- 539.752–539.753 Radioactivity
- Decay schemes, half-life periods, element and nucleus disintegration
 Class here radioisotopes, radioelements, radionuclides
 Class comprehensive works in 539.75
For detection and measurement, see 539.77
- .752 Natural radioactivity
- .752 2 Alpha decay
- .752 3 Beta decay
- .752 4 Gamma decay
- .753 Artificial (Induced) radioactivity
 Including radioactive fallout
- .754 Interactions
 Interactions of particles with other particles and with nuclei,
 of nuclei with nuclei
 Examples: scattering [*formerly* 539.72], coupling, bombardment,
 collision, capture, creation, annihilation
- .756 Photonuclear reactions
- .76 Reactions emitting high energy
- .761 Chain reactions
- .762 Nuclear fission
- .764 Nuclear fusion (Thermonuclear reactions)
- .77 Detection and measurement of particles and radioactivity
 Class here monitoring, dosimetry
 Class application to a specific subject with the subject, e.g.,
 Geiger counter detection of uranium ores 622.18493
- .772 In ionization chambers
- .773 In proportional counters

- .774 In Geiger-Müller counters
- .775 In scintillation counters
- .776 In crystal conduction counters
- .777 In Wilson cloud chambers
- .778 Thru photographic means
- .9 **Tables, review, exercise**

540 Chemistry and allied sciences

Class astrophysics in 523.01

- .1 **Philosophy and theory**
 - Including ancient and medieval theories of chemistry, e.g., alchemy, phlogiston theory, philosopher's stone
 - Class theoretical chemistry in 541.2
- .18 **Methodology**
 - Class analytical chemistry in 543–545
- .2 **Miscellany**
 - Class chemical apparatus and equipment in 542, analytical chemistry in 543–545
- .7 **Study and teaching**
- .72 **Research**
- [.724] **Experimental research**
 - Do not use; class in 543–545



541–547 Chemistry

Class comprehensive works in 540



541–545 General chemistry

Inorganic and combined inorganic-organic
 Class comprehensive works on general chemistry in 540, comprehensive works on inorganic chemistry in 546, organic chemistry in 547

541 Physical and theoretical chemistry

Class physical and theoretical chemistry of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings [*both formerly* 541] in 546

- .04 **General special**
- .042 **States of matter**
 - Add to 541.042 the numbers following 530.4 in 530.41–530.44, e.g., solid-state chemistry 541.0421

-
- .2 Theoretical chemistry**
 - For periodicity and periodic law, see 541.901*
 - .22 Molecular structure**
 - For quantum chemistry, see 541.28*
 - .221 Structural formulas**
 - .222 Molecular weights**
 - .223 Stereochemistry**
 - Spatial molecular arrangement and bond distances
 - .224 Molecular bonds and valences**
 - Including linkages (conjugations), radicals
 - Class here comprehensive works on bonds and bondings
 - For homopolar and heteropolar bonds, see 541.244;*
 - bond distances, 541.223*
 - .224 2 Coordination chemistry**
 - Including coordination numbers, ligands, molecular complexes
 - Class specific coordination compounds in 546–547
 - For chelates, see 541.2253*
 - .225 Structural variations**
 - .225 2 Isomers and tautomerism**
 - Structural and geometrical isomers and their equilibrium states
 - .225 3 Chelates**
 - .225 4 Polymers**
 - .226 Intermolecular forces**
 - .24 Atomic structure**
 - For radiochemistry, see 541.38; quantum chemistry, 541.28*
 - .242 Atomic constants**
 - Atomic weights, numbers, mass
 - .243 Spatial atomic arrangements**
 - .244 Homopolar and heteropolar bonds**
 - .246 Interatomic forces**
 - .26 Stoichiometry**
 - Numerical relationship between elements and compounds, determination of proportions in which elements combine, weight relations in reactions

- .28 **Quantum chemistry**
 Use of wave and other quantum mechanics for study of chemical structure and reactions in terms of motion of electrons
 Including molecular and atomic orbitals, magnetic resonance spectroscopy, other spectroscopy used for study of chemical structure and reactions
- .3 **Physical chemistry**
 Class chemical physics in 539
 For optical activity, see 541.7

SUMMARY

- 541.34 **Solutions**
 .35 **Photochemistry**
 .36 **Thermochemistry and thermodynamics**
 .37 **Electro- and magnetochemistry**
 .38 **Radiochemistry (Nuclear chemistry)**
 .39 **Chemical reactions and synthesis**
- .34 **Solutions**
 General and nonelectrolytic
 For electrolytic solutions, see 541.372–541.374
- .341 **Properties**
 .341 3 **Mechanical**
 .341 4 **Optical**
 .341 5 **Colligative**
 Freezing-point depression, boiling-point elevation, vapor-pressure lowering, osmotic pressure
- .341 6 **Thermal**
- .342 **Solutions by type of solvent**
 Class here solubility
- .342 2 **Water (Aqueous) solutions**
 .342 3 **Nonaqueous solutions**
- .343 **Solutions by concentration of solute**
 .343 2 **Dilute**
 .343 3 **Normal and molar**
 .343 4 **Saturated**
 .343 5 **Supersaturated**

- .345 Colloids and surface phenomena
 - Including Liesegang rings
 - .345 1 Colloid chemistry
 - .345 13 Matter in solid disperoids
 - Solids, liquids, gases disperst in solids, e.g., gels, solid foams
 - .345 14 Hydrosols
 - Solids, liquids, gases disperst in liquids, e.g., suspensions, emulsions, foams (lathers, froths)
 - .345 15 Aerosols
 - Solids and liquids disperst in gases, e.g., smokes, fogs, mists
 - .345 3 Surface phenomena (Surface chemistry)
 - Surface tension, capillarity, interfacial tensions, films, bubbles, electric double layers, adsorption, chemisorption, absorption, adhesion, cohesion
 - [.345 4] Other
 - Number discontinued; class in 541.345
 - .348 Solution components
 - .348 2 Solvents
 - .348 3 Solutes
 - .348 5 Precipitates
 - .35 Photochemistry
 - Reactions due to visible light and paraphotic radiations
 - .351 Energy transformations
 - .353 Specific radiations
 - Add to 541.353 the numbers following 535.01 in 535.012–535.014, e.g., chemical reactions due to ultraviolet radiation 541.3534
 - .36 Thermochemistry and thermodynamics
-
- 541.361–541.368 Thermochemistry

Class comprehensive works in 541.36
- .361 Combustion
 - Including ignition, flame
 - .362 Exothermic and endothermic reactions
 - Heat liberated or absorbed during neutralization, formation, dilution, combustion, solution
 - .363 Change of state (Phase changes)
 - Including triple points
 - .364 Thermal dissociations

.368 Reactions under temperature extremes

.368 6 Low temperatures

Reactions below -100°C

.368 7 High temperatures

Reactions above critical temperatures

.369 Thermodynamics

.37 Electro- and magnetochemistry

541.372–541.377 Electrochemistry

Class comprehensive works in 541.37

.372 Electrolytic solutions

Including electrolyte conductivity

Class here ions

For non-electrical properties, see 541.374

.372 2 Ionization (Electrolytic dissociation)

.372 3 Ion exchange and ionic equilibria

.372 4 Electrodes and electrode phenomena

.372 8 Hydrogen-ion concentration

Including pH

.374 Non-electrical properties of electrolytic solutions

Add to 541.374 the numbers following 541.341 in 541.3413–541.3416,
e.g., optical properties 541.3744

.377 Semiconductors

.378 Magnetochemistry

.38 Radiochemistry (Nuclear chemistry)

.382 Radiolysis

.388 Isotopes

.388 2 Stable

.388 4 Radioactive

[.389] Radiochemistry of specific elements

See note at 541

.39 Chemical reactions and synthesis [*both formerly also 546.1*]

Class here reaction kinetics and mechanisms

Class reactions and synthesis of specific elements of specific inorganic
compounds and mixtures in 546

.392 Chemical equilibria

Including law of mass action, Le Chatelier's principle

- .393 **Specific reactions**
 Addition, substitution, polymerization, condensation, hydrolysis,
 oxidation, reduction; chain, reversible, irreversible, homogeneous,
 heterogeneous reactions
- .394 **Reaction rates**
- .395 **Catalysis**
 Acceleration and retardation of chemical reactions by means of
 catalysts
- .7 **Optical activity**
 Optical rotation, racemization, mutarotation
 Including polarimetry
- .9 **Other topics**
- .901 **Periodicity and periodic law**

542 **Laboratories, apparatus, equipment**

Class here general procedures, manipulation of equipment

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., apparatus for volumetric analysis 545.2

- .1 **Laboratories**
 Layouts, installations, basic equipment
 For specific types of apparatus, see 542.2–542.8

542.2–542.8 Specific types of apparatus

Class comprehensive works in 542

- .2 **Receptacles and accessory equipment**
 Beakers, flasks, retorts, test tubes, funnels, crucibles, supports, stoppers,
 tubing
 Class receptacles and accessory equipment for measuring in 542.3, for
 distilling in 542.4, gas apparatus in 542.7
- .3 **Measuring apparatus**
 Gravimetric and volumetric
 Class gas measuring apparatus in 542.7
- .4 **Heating and distilling apparatus**
- .5 **Blowpipes**
- .6 **Filters and dialyzers**
- .7 **Gas apparatus**
 For producing, collecting, washing, dissolving, storing, measuring,
 rarefying, compressing, liquefying, solidifying gases

.8 **Electrical and electronic apparatus**

[.9] **Other apparatus**

Number discontinued; class in 542



543–545 Analytical chemistry

Class analytical chemistry of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings [*formerly* 543–545] in 546

Class comprehensive works in 543

543 **General analysis**

Use 543.001–543.009 for standard subdivisions

For qualitative analysis, see 544; quantitative analysis, 545

.01 **Reagents**

.02 **Sample preparation**

.07 **Instrumentation**

.08 **Instrumental methods**

.081 **Micro and semimicro analysis**

.083 **Mechanical analysis**

.085 **Optical and spectroscopic analysis**

Class spectroscopic interpretation of chemical structure in 541.2

.086 **Thermal analysis**

.087 **Electrical analysis**

.088 **Radiochemical analysis**

[.1–.6] **Specific product groups**

Class a specific product with the technology, e.g., municipal water supply
628.161

544 **Qualitative analysis**

Systematic macro and semiquantitative methods and procedures for detecting and identifying constituents of a substance

Use 544.001–544.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.07 **General principles**

Add to 544.0 the numbers following 543.0 in 543.01–543.07, e.g.,
instrumentation 544.07

[.08] **Instrumental methods**

Number discontinued; class in 544

SUMMARY

- 544.1 Systematic separations
 - .2 Pyrolysis and combustion
 - .3 Blowpipe analysis
 - .4 Gas analysis
 - .5 Diffusion analysis
 - .6 Spectrochemical (Spectroscopic) analysis
 - .8 Micro and semimicro methods
 - .9 Other methods
- .1 Systematic separations
- .12 Cation separation and identification
- .13 Anion separation and identification
- [.16] Separation of groups of elements and their components
 - See note at 543-545
- .2 Pyrolysis and combustion
- .3 Blowpipe analysis
 - Flame tests, bead tests, reactions on charcoal and plaster of paris in conjunction with blowpipe
- .4 Gas analysis
- .5 Diffusion analysis
 - Including ultrafiltration methods (dialysis)
- .6 Spectrochemical (Spectroscopic) analysis
 - .62 Microwave
 - .63 Infrared
 - .64 Visible light
 - Including Raman spectroscopy
 - .65 Ultraviolet
 - .66 X-ray and gamma-ray
- .8 Micro and semimicro methods
 - .82 Microscopical analysis
 - Use of compound, electron and ultramicroscopes for identification
 - .83 Microchemical analysis
 - Reactions performed with small quantities, e.g., micrograms and microliters, and using small apparatus
 - .832 Systematic
 - .834 Spot tests
 - .85 Semimicro analysis
 - Small-scale adaptations of existing macro methods

- .9 **Other methods**
- .92 **Chromatographic analysis**
- .922 Adsorption analysis
- .923 Ion-exchange separations
- .924 Liquid-liquid chromatography
- .925 Paper chromatography
- .926 Gas-liquid partition chromatography (Gas chromatography)
- .94 **Biochemical methods**
- Identification by means of microorganisms

545 **Quantitative analysis**

Determination of amount of a constituent in a substance

Use 545.001–545.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01–.07 **General principles**
- Add to 545.0 the numbers following 543.0 in 543.01–543.07, e.g., instrumentation 545.07
- .08 **Mechanical analysis**
- Class optical analysis [*formerly* 545.085] in 545.81, thermogravimetric analysis [*formerly* 545.086] in 545.4, electroanalysis [*formerly* 545.087] in 545.3, radiochemical analysis [*formerly* 545.088] in 545.82

SUMMARY

- 545.1 **Gravimetric analysis of precipitates**
- .2 **Volumetric analysis**
- .3 **Electroanalysis**
- .4 **Thermogravimetric methods**
- .7 **Gasometric methods**
- .8 **Other methods**
- .1 **Gravimetric analysis of precipitates**
- .2 **Volumetric analysis**
- Determination of elements and compounds in a substance by titration with standard solutions and indicators
- .22 Neutralization methods (Alkalimetry and acidimetry)
- .23 Oxidation-reduction methods (Oxidimetry and iodometry)
- .24 Precipitation methods
- .3 **Electroanalysis [*formerly also* 545.087]**
- .31 Conductometric and potentiometric titrations
- .311 Conductometric methods
- .312 Potentiometric methods

-
- .32 Polarographic methods
 - Analysis based on current-voltage curves obtained in electrolysis with a slowly dropping mercury cathode (polarimetric titration)
 - .33 Mass spectrographic methods
 - .34 Electrodeposition
 - .4 Thermogravimetric methods [*formerly also* 545.086]
 - .42 Pyrolysis and combustion
 - .43 Blowpipe analysis
 - .46 Volatilization
 - .7 Gasometric methods
 - .8 Other methods
 - .81 Optical methods [*formerly also* 545.085]
 - For spectroscopic analysis, see* 545.83
 - .812 Photometric analysis
 - Colorimetric, nephelometric, turbidimetric, fluorophotometric methods
 - .813 Refractometric and interferometric analysis
 - .816 Polarimetric analysis (Polariscopic analysis)
 - .82 Radiochemical methods [*formerly also* 545.088]
 - .822 Activation analysis (Radioactivation analysis)
 - .824 Tracer techniques
 - .83 Spectroscopic analysis
 - Add to 545.83 the numbers following 544.6 in 544.62–544.66, e.g., microwave analysis 545.832
 - .84 Micro and semimicro methods
 - Add to 545.84 the numbers following 544.8 in 544.83–544.85, e.g., semimicro quantitative analysis 545.845

546 Inorganic chemistry

Chemistry of elements, of inorganic compounds and mixtures

Class here physical and theoretical chemistry [*both formerly* 541], analytical chemistry [*formerly* 543–545], physics of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings; comprehensive works on inorganic and organic chemistry of specific elements, compounds, mixtures, groupings

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 1 The element
- 2 Compounds
 - 22 Acids and bases
 - 24 Salts
 - 25 Complex compounds
- 3 Molecular and colloidal mixtures
- 4 Theoretical chemistry
 - Of element, compounds, mixtures
 - Add to 4 the numbers following 541.2 in 541.22–541.28, e.g., molecular structure 42
- 5 Physical chemistry
 - Of element, compounds, mixtures
 - Add to 5 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.34–541.39, e.g., radiochemistry 58
- 6 Analytical chemistry
 - Of element, compounds, mixtures
- 64 Qualitative methods
- 65 Quantitative methods

For organic chemistry, see 547

SUMMARY

- 546.2 Hydrogen and its compounds
- .3 Metals, their compounds and mixtures
- .4 Group 3B
- .5 Groups 4B, 5B, 6B, 7B
- .6 Groups 8, 1B, 2B, 3A, 4A
- .7 Groups 5A, 6A, 7A, O
- .8 Periods of periodic table

[.1] Reactions and synthesis

Class in 541.39

[.11] Elements

Number discontinued; class in 546

.2 Hydrogen and its compounds

.21 The element

.212 Deuterium

.213 Tritium



546.22–546.24 Compounds

Class comprehensive works in 546.2

.22 Water

Including deuterium oxide (heavy water)

.24 Acids

Class a specific acid with its nonmetallic element, e.g., boric acid
546.67122

.3 Metals, their compounds and mixtures

Class metals, their compounds and mixtures, of groups other than 1A and
2A in 546.4–546.7

.31 Metallic elements

Class a specific element or grouping with the subject, e.g., lanthanides
546.41

546.32–546.34 Compounds

Class comprehensive works in 546.3, a specific metallic compound with
its metallic element

.32 Bases

.34 Salts

.342 Simple

Neutral, acidulous, alkaline, amphoteric, binary salts

.343 Double (Molecular compounds)

Salts formed by union of two simple salts

.345 Complex

Double salts which do not form their component simple salts on
solution

.37 Alloys

Molecular and colloidal mixtures



546.38–546.39 Alkali and alkaline earth metals

Class comprehensive works in 546.3

.38 Alkali metals (Group 1A)

.381 *Lithium

.382 *Sodium (Natrium)

.383 *Potassium (Kalium)

.384 *Rubidium

* Add as instructed under 546

- | | |
|------|---|
| .385 | *Cesium (Caesium) |
| .386 | *Francium |
| .39 | Alkaline earth metals (Group 2A) |
| .391 | *Beryllium (Glucinium) |
| .392 | *Magnesium |
| .393 | *Calcium |
| .394 | *Strontium |
| .395 | *Barium |
| .396 | *Radium |
| .4 | Group 3B |
| | Also known as group 3A |
| | Class here rare-earth elements |
| | Use 546.4001–546.4009 for standard subdivisions |
| .401 | *Scandium |
| .403 | *Yttrium |
| .41 | Lanthanide series |
| .411 | *Lanthanum |
| .412 | *Cerium |
| .413 | Praseodymium and neodymium |
| .414 | *Promethium (Illinium) |
| .415 | Samarium and europium |
| .416 | Gadolinium and terbium |
| .417 | Dysprosium and holmium |
| .418 | Erbium and thulium (aldebaranium) |
| .419 | Ytterbium and lutetium (cassiopeium, lutecium) |
| | 546.42–546.44 Actinide series |
| | Class comprehensive works in 546.4 |
| .42 | Terrestrially occurring actinides |
| | For uranium, see 546.431 |
| .421 | *Actinium |
| .422 | *Thorium |
| .424 | *Protactinium (Protoactinium) |

* Add as instructed under 546

- .43 Uranium, neptunium, plutonium
- .431 *Uranium
- .432 *Neptunium
- .434 *Plutonium
- .44 Transuranium elements
 - Use 546.44001–546.44009 for standard subdivisions
 - For neptunium, see 546.432; plutonium, 546.434*
- [.440 1–.440 2] Special subdivisions
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 546.44
- .441 Americium
- .442 Curium
- .444 Berkelium
- .448 Californium
- .449 Other
 - Einsteinium, fermium, mendelevium, nobelium, lawrencium
- .5 **Groups 4B, 5B, 6B, 7B**
 - Also known as groups 4A, 5A, 6A, 7A
- .51 Titanium group
 - Group 4B, also known as 4A
- .512 *Titanium
- .513 *Zirconium
- .514 *Hafnium (Celtium)
- .52 Vanadium group
 - Group 5B, also known as 5A
- .522 *Vanadium
- .524 *Niobium (Columbium)
- .526 *Tantalum
- .53 Chromium group
 - Group 6B, also known as 6A
- .532 *Chromium
- .534 *Molybdenum
- .536 *Tungsten (Wolfram)

* Add as instructed under 546

- .54 Manganese group
Group 7B, also known as 7A
- .541 *Manganese
- .543 Technetium
- .545 *Rhenium (Bohemium)
- .6 Groups 8, 1B, 2B, 3A, 4A
Groups 3A and 4A also known as 3B and 4B

SUMMARY

- 546.62 Iron series
- .63 Ruthenium series
- .64 Osmium series
- .65 Copper group (Group 1B)
- .66 Zinc group (Group 2B)
- .67 Boron group
- .68 Carbon group



546.62–546.64 Transition metals (Group 8)

Class comprehensive works in 546.6

- .62 Iron series
- .621 *Iron (Ferrum)
- .623 *Cobalt
- .625 *Nickel
- .63 Ruthenium series
- .632 *Ruthenium
- .634 *Rhodium
- .636 *Palladium
- .64 Osmium series
- .641 *Osmium
- .643 *Iridium
- .645 *Platinum
- .65 Copper group (Group 1B)
- .652 *Copper (Cuprum)
- .654 *Silver (Argentum)
- .656 *Gold (Aurum)

* Add as instructed under 546

-
- .66 Zinc group (Group 2B)
 - .661 *Zinc
 - .662 *Cadmium
 - .663 *Mercury (Hydrargyrum)
 - .67 Boron group
 - Group 3A, also known as 3B
 - .671 *Boron
 - .673 *Aluminum
 - .675 *Gallium
 - .677 *Indium
 - .678 *Thallium
 - .68 Carbon group
 - Group 4A, also known as 4B
 - .681 *Carbon
 - .683 *Silicon
 - .684 *Germanium
 - .686 *Tin (Stannum)
 - .688 *Lead (Plumbum)
 - .7 **Groups 5A, 6A, 7A, O**
 - Class here nonmetals
 - Class a specific nonmetal not provided for here with the subject, e.g.,
silicon 546.683
 - .71 Nitrogen group
 - Group 5A, also known as 5B
 - .711 *Nitrogen
 - .712 *Phosphorus
 - .715 *Arsenic
 - .716 *Antimony (Stibium)
 - .718 *Bismuth
 - .72 Oxygen group
 - Group 6A, also known as 6B
 - .721 *Oxygen
 - .723 *Sulfur
 - .724 *Selenium

† Add as instructed under 546

.726	*Tellurium
.728	*Polonium
.73	Halogen group Group 7A, also known as 7B
.731	*Fluorine
.732	*Chlorine
.733	*Bromine
.734	*Iodine
.735	*Astatine
.75	Rare gases (Group O)
.751	*Helium
.752	*Neon
.753	*Argon
.754	*Krypton
.755	*Xenon
.756	*Radon (Niton)
.8	Periods of periodic table Bohr's arrangement of elements according to atomic number Class hydrogen and its compounds in 546.2, other specific elements and their compounds in 546.38–546.75
.81	Period 1 Hydrogen and helium
.82	Period 2 Lithium, beryllium, boron, carbon, nitrogen, oxygen, fluorine, neon
.83	Period 3 Sodium, magnesium, aluminum, silicon, phosphorus, sulfur, chlorine, argon
.84	Period 4 Potassium, calcium, scandium, titanium, vanadium, chromium, manganese, iron, cobalt, nickel, copper, zinc, gallium, germanium, arsenic, selenium, bromine, krypton
.85	Period 5 Rubidium, strontium, yttrium, zirconium, niobium, molybdenum, technetium, ruthenium, rhodium, palladium, silver, cadmium, indium, tin, antimony, tellurium, iodine, xenon

* Add as instructed under 546

- .86 Period 6
Cesium, barium, lanthanide series, hafnium, tantalum, tungsten, rhenium, osmium, iridium, platinum, gold, mercury, thallium, lead, bismuth, polonium, astatine, radon

- .87 Period 7
Francium, radium, actinide series

547 Organic chemistry

Chemistry of nonpolar compounds

For biochemistry, see 574.192

- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
Class theoretical chemistry in 547.12



547.01-547.08 General groupings of compounds

Unless other instructions appear, class complex compounds with components in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming last in the schedule, e.g., sulfonamides 547.067 (not 547.042)

Class comprehensive works in 547, natural compounds in 547.7-547.8

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------|-----------------------------|
| 547.01 | Hydrocarbons |
| .02 | Halogenated compounds |
| .03 | Oxy and hydroxy compounds |
| .04 | Nitrogen compounds |
| .05 | Organometallic compounds |
| .06 | Sulfur compounds |
| .07 | Phosphorus compounds |
| .08 | Silicon compounds |
| .01 | Hydrocarbons |
| .02 | Halogenated compounds |
| .03 | Oxy and hydroxy compounds |
| .031 | Alcohols |
| .035 | Ethers |
| .036 | Aldehydes and ketones |
| .037 | Acids |
| .038 | Esters |
| .04 | Nitrogen compounds |
| .041 | Nitro and nitroso compounds |
| .042 | Amines and amides |
| .043 | Azo compounds |

- .044 Nitriles and isonitriles
- .05 Organometallic compounds
 - Add to 547.05 the numbers following 546 in 546.38–546.68, e.g., organoaluminum compounds 547.05673
- .06 Sulfur compounds
 - .061 Sulfites (Thioethers)
 - .063 Hydrosulfites (Thioalcohols, mercaptans)
 - .064 Thioacids
 - .065 Oxy derivatives of thioethers
 - Sulfones, sulfoxides, thioaldehydes, thioketones
 - .066 Sulfinic acids
 - .067 Sulfonic acids
- .07 Phosphorus compounds
 - .071 Phosphonium compounds, phosphines
 - .073 Phosphoalcohols
 - .074 Phosphoacids
 - .075 Phosphoaldehydes, phosphoketones
 - .076 Phosphinic acids
 - .077 Phosphonic acids
- .08 Silicon compounds
- [.09] Other
 - Number discontinued; class in 547

SUMMARY

- 547.1 Physical and theoretical chemistry
 - .2 Synthesis and named reactions
 - .3 Analytical chemistry
 - .4 Aliphatic compounds
 - .5 Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds
 - .6 Aromatic compounds
 - .7 Natural products
 - .8 Other organic substances
- .1 Physical and theoretical chemistry
 - Add to 547.1 the numbers following 541 in 541.2–541.7, e.g., electrochemistry 547.137
 - Class synthesis and named reactions in 547.2, physical and theoretical chemistry of specific compounds and groups of compounds in 547.01–547.08, 547.4–547.8

-
- .2 **Synthesis and named reactions**
 - .21 Alkylation, acylation, aromatization
 - Examples: Friedel-Crafts, Würtz-Fittig, Wittig reactions
 - .22 Halogen and hydroxy addition and substitution
 - .223 Halogenation
 - .225 Hydrolysis and saponification
 - .23 Oxidation and reduction
 - Hydrogenation, dehydrogenation, peroxidation, quinonization
 - .24 Esterification
 - .25 Amination and diazotization
 - .26 Nitration and nitrosation
 - .27 Sulfonation
 - .28 Polymerization and condensation
 - Polycondensation, copolymerization, addition and condensation polymerization
 - .29 Fermentation processes
 - .3 **Analytical chemistry**
 - Use 547.3001–547.3009 for standard subdivisions
 - .301–.308 General principles
 - Add to 547.30 the numbers following 543.0 in 543.01–543.08, e.g., reagents 547.301
 - |.33| General analysis of specific product groups
 - Class a specific product with the technology, e.g., dairy products 637
 - .34 Qualitative analysis
 - Use 547.34001–547.34009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add to 547.34 the numbers following 544 in 544.01–544.94, e.g., microscopical analysis 547.3482
 - .35 Quantitative analysis
 - Use 547.35001–547.35009 for standard subdivisions
 - Add to 547.35 the numbers following 545 in 545.01–545.84, e.g., electroanalysis 547.353

► **547.4–547.6 Aliphatic and cyclic compounds**

Class comprehensive works in 547, macromolecular compounds in 547.7–547.8

.4 Aliphatic compounds

Observe table of precedence under 547.01–547.08

.41 Hydrocarbons

.411 Paraffins (Alkanes)

.412 Olefins (Alkenes)

.413 Acetylenics (Alkynes)

.42–.48 Other compounds

Add to 547.4 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.02–547.08, e.g., carboxylic acids 547.437

For proteins, see 547.75

[.49] Other

Number discontinued; class in 547.4

► **547.5–547.6 Cyclic compounds**

Class comprehensive works in 547.5

.5 Alicyclic and heterocyclic compounds

Class here comprehensive works on cyclic compounds

For aromatic compounds, see 547.6

► **547.51–547.58 Alicyclic compounds**

Nonaromatic compounds with ring structure

Observe table of precedence under 547.01–547.08

Class comprehensive works in 547.5

.51 Alicyclic hydrocarbons

Add to 547.51 the numbers following 547.41 in 547.411–547.413, e.g., cycloparaffins 547.511

.52–.58 Other alicyclic compounds

Add to 547.5 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.02–547.08, e.g., alicyclic acids 547.537

.59 Heterocyclic compounds

Cyclic compounds containing other than carbon atoms in the ring

.592 With hetero oxygen atoms

Furans, pyrans, oxazoles

-
- .593 With hetero nitrogen atoms
Pyrroles, porphyrins, chlorophylls, pyridines, pyrazoles, imidazoles, diazines
- .594 With hetero sulfur atoms
Thiophenes, thiazoles
- .595 With several different hetero atoms
Oxazines, oxdiazines, oxdiazoles
- .596 With fused hetero rings
Quinolines, purines, nucleic acids
- .6 Aromatic compounds**
Observe table of precedence under 547.01–547.08
- .61 Hydrocarbons
- .611 Benzenes
- .613 Polyphenyl hydrocarbons
Including diphenyl hydrocarbons
- 547.615–547.616 Fused hydrocarbons
Class comprehensive works in 547.61
- .615 Naphthalenes
- .616 Anthracenes
- .62 Halogenated compounds
- .63 Oxy and hydroxy compounds
- .631 Alcohols
- .632 Phenols
Including monohydric hydroxy aromatics
- .633 Polyhydroxy aromatics
Dihydroxy and trihydroxy aromatics, catechols, resorcinols, hydroquinones
- .635–.638 Other
Add to 547.63 the numbers following 547.03 in 547.035–547.038, e.g., aromatic esters 547.638
- .64–.68 Other compounds
Add to 547.6 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.04–547.08, e.g., amines 547.642

547.7–547.8 Macromolecular and related compounds

Class comprehensive works in 547.7

.7 Natural products

Substances directly derived from living organisms

Class here comprehensive works on macromolecular compounds

Class fossil substances, polymers, man-made fibers, dyes, pigments in 547.8

.71 Terpenes and essential oils

Including camphors

.72 AlkaloidsBasic, nitrogenous plant products having strong physiological activity,
e.g., nicotine, quinine, strychnine, cocaine, caffeine, atropine**.73 Steroids****.731 Sterols**Cholesterol, ergosterol, phytosterol, other solid alcohols derived from
plant and animal sources**.734 Hormones****.734 2 Gibberellins and other auxins****.734 3 Sex hormones**

Progesterone, estrone, testosterone, androsterone

.734 5 Other hormones

Adrenalin, thyroxin, insulin, oxytocin, cortin, vasopressin

.737 Bile acids (Cholic acids)**.74 Vitamins****.75 Proteins**

547.752–547.756 By structure

Class comprehensive works in 547.75

.752 Simple proteins

Albumins, globulins, histones

.754 Conjugated proteins

Nucleoproteins, phosphoproteins, hemoglobins, chromoproteins

.756 Derived proteins

Peptones and peptides

.758 EnzymesProteins having strong catalytic properties, e.g., trypsin, pepsin,
coenzyme A, dehydrogenases, hexokinases, phosphorylases,
amylases

- .76 Antibiotics
- .77 Lipids
- .78 Carbohydrates
- .781 Sugar
- .781 3 Monosaccharides
 - Examples: glucose, fructose, levulose, dextrose, galactose, mannose, hexose, ribose
- .781 5 Oligosaccharides
 - Disaccharides (sucrose, maltose, lactose, cellobiose) and trisaccharides (raffinose)
- .782 Polysaccharides
 - Examples: starches, inulin, glycogen, cellulose, cotton derivatives, pentosans, dextrans, pectin
- .783 Tannins
- .8 Other organic substances

547.82–547.83 Fossil substances

Class comprehensive works in 547.8; specific compounds derived from a fossil substance with the subject, e.g., synthetic rubber 547.84272

- .82 Coal tar
- .83 Petroleum
- .84 Polymers
- .842 Elastic polymers (Elastomers)
- .842 5 Latexes
 - Natural and synthetic
- .842 6 Natural rubber
- .842 7 Synthetic polymers
 - For synthetic latexes, see 547.8425*
- .842 72 Synthetic rubber
- .842 73 High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)
- .843 Flexible polymers
 - Polymers with high tensile strength without elasticity of rubber
- .843 2 Plastics
 - Add to 547.8432 the numbers following 668.4 in 668.42–668.45, e.g., polyethylene plastics 547.8432234
- .843 4 Gums and resins

- .85 **Man-made fibers**
 Add to 547.85 the numbers following 677.4 in 677.46–677.47, e.g.,
 nylon 547.8573

- .86 **Dyes and pigments**

547.862–547.867 **Dyes**

Class comprehensive works in 547.86

- .862 **Nitro and nitroso dyes**
 .863 **Azo-oxy and azo-tetrazo dyes**
 .864 **Di- and triphenylmethane dyes**
 .866 **Hydroxyketone dyes**
 Examples: quinoidals, alizarines
 .867 **Indigoid dyes**
 [.868] **Other dyes**

Number discontinued; class in 547.86

- .869 **Pigments**

548 **Crystallography**

- .1 **Geometrical crystallography**
 .12 **External shape of crystals**
 .14 **Fundamental systems**
 Isometric, tetragonal, orthorhombic, monoclinic, triclinic, hexagonal,
 trigonal systems
 .3 **Chemical crystallography**
 Relationship between structure and bondings
 Including isomorphism, polymorphism, pseudomorphism
 .5 **Crystallization and crystal growth**
 .7 **Mathematical crystallography**
 Goniometric measurements and calculations
 .8 **Physical and structural crystallography**
 .81 **Structural crystallography**
 Study of internal structure of crystals
 Including crystal lattices, structural diagrams and models, specific
 substances

For diffraction methods, see 548.83

- [.812–.814] **Molecular and atomic structure**
 Numbers discontinued; class in 548.81

- .83 **Diffraction methods**
 Study of internal structure of crystals by X-ray, neutron, electron diffraction
 Including crystallograms
-
- 548.84–548.86 Physical properties of crystals
 Class comprehensive works in 548.8
 For optical properties, see 548.9
- .84 **Mechanical properties**
- .842 **Stresses, deformation, strength properties**
 Examples: elasticity, plasticity, fracture, dislocation, hardness;
 stresses of tension, compression, shear, torsion, bending
- .843 **Cleavage and cohesion**
- .845 **Density and specific gravity**
- .85 **Electrical, electronic, magnetic properties**
 Examples: conductivity, semiconductivity, dielectricity, piezoelectricity,
 pyroelectricity
- .86 **Thermal properties**
 Example: fusibility
- .9 **Optical crystallography**
 Optical properties of crystals and optical methods of crystal study
 Including isotropy, anisotropy, refractivity, reflectivity, liquid crystals,
 crystal rotation

549 **Mineralogy**

Occurrence, description, classification, identification of naturally-occurring elements and compounds formed by inorganic processes

Class economic geology in 553

For crystallography, see 548

- .09 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Class geographical distribution of minerals in 549.9

SUMMARY

- 549.1 **Determinative mineralogy** .
- .2 **Native elements**
- .3 **Sulfides, sulfosalts, related minerals**
- .4 **Halides**
- .5 **Oxides**
- .6 **Silicates**
- .7 **Other minerals**
- .9 **Geographical distribution of minerals**

.1 Determinative mineralogy*For specific minerals, see 549.2–549.7***.11 Minerals in specific structures****.112 In meteorites****.113 In placers****.114 In rocks**Add to 549.114 the numbers following 552 in 552.1–552.5, e.g.,
minerals in clay 549.1145**.116 In pegmatite dikes****[.118] In association with other minerals**

Number discontinued; class in 549.11

.119 In veins and lodes**.12 Physical mineralogy****.121 Mechanical properties**Examples: cleavage, parting, fracture, hardness, tenacity, specific
gravity**.125 Optical properties**Examples: luster, color, streak, iridescence, luminescence,
fluorescence, refractivity**.127 Electrical, electronic, magnetic properties**

Examples: pyroelectricity, piezoelectricity

.13 Chemical mineralogy**.131 Composition, properties, reactivity****.133 Analysis and identification**

Examples: blowpipe analysis, microchemical reactions, etch tests

.18 Crystallographic mineralogy

Study of crystalline structure and properties of minerals

549.2–549.7 Specific minerals

Class comprehensive works in 549

.2 Native elements**.23 Metals**Gold, silver, copper, lead, platinum, palladium, iridium, osmium, iron,
mercury, tantalum, tin, zinc**.25 Semimetals**

Arsenic, antimony, bismuth, selenium, tellurium

.27 Nonmetals

Carbon (diamonds, graphite), sulfur

- .3 Sulfides, sulfosalts, related minerals**
- .32 Sulfides, selenides, tellurides, antimonides**
 - Galena, stannite, cinnabar, stibnite, bismuthinite, pyrite, calaverite, smaltite (skutterudite), argentite, chalcocite, molybdenite, sphalerite, niccolite
- .35 Sulfosalts (Double sulfides)**
 - Enargite, polybasite, stephanite, proustite, pyrargyrite, tetrahedrite, jamesonite, bournonite
- .4 Halides**
 - Halite, cryolite, fluorite (fluorspar), sylvite, cerargyrite, atacamite, carnallite
- .5 Oxides**
 - .52 Simple and multiple oxides**
 - .522 Cuprite, ice, zincite**
 - .523 Hematite group**
 - Corundum, hematite, ilmenite
 - .524 Rutile group**
 - Rutile, pyrolusite, cassiterite
 - .525 Goethite group**
 - Diaspore and goethite
 - .526 Spinel group**
 - Spinel, gahnite, magnetite, franklinite, chromite
 - .528 Other groupings**
 - Uraninite, chrysoberyl, columbite
 - .53 Hydroxides**
 - Manganite, limonite, bauxite, brucite, psilomelane
 - .6 Silicates**
 - .62 Nesosilicates**
 - Phenacite, willemite, olivine, garnet, zircon, andalusite, sillimanite, kyanite, topaz, staurolite, chondrodite, sphene, dumortierite
 - .63 Sorosilicates**
 - Hemimorphite, lawsonite, epidote, idocrase, prehnite
 - .64 Cyclosilicates**
 - Axinite, beryl, cordierite, tourmaline, chrysocolla
 - .66 Inosilicates**
 - Pyroxenes, spodumene, rhodonite, wollastonite, pectolite, amphiboles

- .67 **Phyllosilicates**
Apophyllite, kaolinite, serpentine, garnierite, pyrophyllite, talc, micas, chlorite, sepiolite
- .68 **Tectosilicates**
Quartz, opal, feldspars, leucite, lazurite, scapolites, zeolites
- .7 **Other minerals**
- .72 **Phosphates, vanadates, arsenates**
Monazite, triphylite, apatites, vanadinite, lazulite, scorodite, turquoise, vivianite, erythrite
- .73 **Nitrates and borates**
- .732 **Nitrates**
Soda niter (Chile saltpeter) and niter (saltpeter)
- .735 **Borates**
Boracite, borax, kernite, ulexite, colemanite
- .74 **Tungstates and molybdates**
Wolframite, scheelite, wulfenite
- .75 **Chromates and sulfates**
- .752 **Chromates and anhydrous sulfates**
Crocoite, glauberite, barite, celestite, anglesite, anhydrite
- .755 **Hydrous and basic sulfates**
Antlerite, polyhalite, gypsum, epsomite, chalcantite, alunite
- .78 **Carbonates**
- .782 **Calcite group**
Calcite, dolomite, magnesite, siderite, rhodochrosite, smithsonite
- .785 **Aragonite group**
Aragonite, witherite, strontianite, cerussite, malachite, azurite
- .9 **Geographical distribution of minerals**
Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 549.9

550 Sciences of the earth and other worlds

Class here geology

For physical geography, see 910.02

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 554-559

551 Physical and dynamic geology

Lithosphere, hydrosphere, atmosphere

Class here geophysics

*For astronomical geography, see 525; geodesy, 526.1–526.7; mineralogy, 549; petrology, 552***SUMMARY****551.1 Gross structure and properties of earth and other worlds****.2 Plutonic phenomena****.3 Surface and exogenous processes and their agents****.4 Geomorphology****.5 Meteorology****.6 Climatology and weather****.7 Historical geology (Stratigraphy)****.8 Structural geology (Tectonophysics)****.9 Geochemistry****.1 Gross structure and properties of earth and other worlds***For geomagnetism, see 538.7***.11 Interior**

Core, mantle, Mohorovicic discontinuity

*For properties, see 551.12***.12 Properties of interior**

Heat, temperature ranges, isostasy

.13 Crust*For properties, see 551.14***.14 Properties of crust**

Heat, temperature ranges, thermal conductivity, elasticity, deformation

.2 Plutonic phenomena**.21 Volcanoes****.22 Earthquakes**

Class here seismology

.23 Fumaroles, hot springs, geysers**.3 Surface and exogenous processes and their agents**

Including mass wasting

Use 551.3001–551.3009 for standard subdivisions

.302 Erosion and weathering**.303 Transporting and depositing of materials****.304 Transported materials**

.305 New formations

Example: soil formation

551.31–551.34 Ice

Class comprehensive works in 551.31

For geologic work of frost, see 551.38

.31 Glaciology

Class here interdisciplinary works on ice

Class a specific aspect of ice with the subject, e.g., ice manufacture
621.58

For other ice forms, see 551.34

.312 Glaciers

Nourishment, advances, recessions, oscillations

For icebergs, shelf ice, growlers, see 551.342

.313 Glacial action

.314 Glacial debris

Example: moraines

.315 New formations

Cirques, drumlins, kettles, kames, roches moutonnées

.34 Other ice forms

551.342–551.343 Ice in the sea

Class comprehensive works in 551.34

.342 Icebergs, shelf ice, growlers

.343 Sea ice (Frozen seawater)

.344 Anchor and frazil ice

.345 Ice cover

Lake and river ice

.35 Geologic work of water

Surface and subsurface waters

Class here geologic work of precipitation

Add to 551.35 the numbers following 551.30 in 551.302–551.305, e.g.,
deltas 551.355

For geologic work of marine waters, see 551.36

.36 Geologic work of marine waters

Wave action, beach erosion, coastal changes

- .37 Geologic work of wind
 Add to 551.37 the numbers following 551.30 in 551.302–551.305, e.g.,
 dune formations 551.375
- .38 Geologic work of frost
- .382 Fragmentation of rocks
- .383 Nivation
- .384 Permafrost phenomena
- .4 **Geomorphology**
 Creation and modification of topographic land and water features
 Class land formations created and modified by a specific exogenous agent
 in 551.3, geomorphology of ice in 551.31–551.34

SUMMARY

- 551.41–.44 Specific land forms
- .45 Plane and coastal regions
- .46 Oceans and seas (Oceanography)
- .47 Dynamic oceanography
- .48 Fresh waters
- .49 Ground waters (Subsurface waters)
- .41–.44 Specific land forms
 Add to 551.4 the numbers following 14 in “Areas” notation 141–144
 from Table 2, e.g., caves 551.44
 For plane and coastal regions, see 551.45
- .45 Plane and coastal regions
 Including prairies, steppes, plains, tundras, pampas, beaches, deltas
- 551.46–551.49 Water bodies
 Class comprehensive works in 551.4
 For geologic work of water, see 551.35
- .46 Oceans and seas (Oceanography)
 Class here salt-water bodies
 Use 551.46001–551.46009 for standard subdivisions
 For dynamic oceanography, see 551.47; biological oceanography,
 574.921–574.928
- .460 1 Composition and properties of sea water
 Examples: salinity, density, temperature distribution, color,
 transparency
- .460 7 Deep-sea surveys and explorations
- .460 8 Submarine geology
- .460 83 Composition of ocean floor

- .460 84 Topography of ocean floor
 Elevations, depressions, openings, plane regions
- .460 9 Special salt-water forms
 Inland seas, salt-water lagoons, coastal pools, estuaries, salt lakes
-
- 551.461–551.469 Specific oceanic bodies
 Class comprehensive works in 551.46
- .461 Atlantic Ocean
 For Mediterranean Sea, see 551.462; south Atlantic Ocean, 551.464; North Polar Sea, 551.468
- .461 3–.461 4 North Atlantic
 Add to 551.461 the numbers following 163 in “Areas” notation
 1633–1634 from Table 2, e.g., Chesapeake Bay 551.46147
- .462 Mediterranean Sea
 Add to 551.462 the numbers following 1638 in “Areas” notation
 16381–16389 from Table 2, e.g., Black Sea 551.4629
- .463 Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico
 Add to 551.463 the numbers following 1636 in “Areas” notation
 16364–16365 from Table 2, e.g., Gulf of Darien 551.4635
- .464 South Atlantic Ocean
 Add to 551.464 the numbers following 163 in “Areas” notation 1636–
 1637 from Table 2, e.g., Sargasso Sea 551.46462
 Class Atlantic sector of Antarctic waters in 551.4693
 For Caribbean Sea and Gulf of Mexico, see 551.463
- .465 Pacific Ocean
 Add to 551.465 the numbers following 164 in “Areas” notation 1644–
 1649 from Table 2, e.g., South China Sea 551.46572
 Class Pacific sector of Antarctic waters in 551.4694
 For east Pacific Ocean, see 551.466
- .466 East Pacific Ocean
 Add to 551.466 the numbers following 164 in “Areas” notation 1641,
 1643 from Table 2, e.g., San Francisco Bay 551.46632
- .467 Indian Ocean
 Add to 551.467 the numbers following 165 in “Areas” notation 1652–
 1657 from Table 2, e.g., Red Sea 551.46733
 Class Indian Ocean sector of Antarctic waters in 551.4695
- .468 North Polar Sea (Arctic Ocean)
 Add to 551.468 the numbers following 1632 in “Areas” notation
 16324–16327 from Table 2, e.g., Hudson Bay 551.4687

- .469 **Antarctic waters**
 Add to 551.469 the numbers following 167 in "Areas" notation 1673–1675 from Table 2, e.g., Drake Passage 551.4693
- .47 **Dynamic oceanography**
 Use 551.47001–551.47009 for standard subdivisions
- .470 1 **Ocean currents**
 Theories, circulation, observational methods
 Class specific ocean currents in 551.471–551.479
- .470 2 **Waves**
- .470 22 **Ocean waves**
- .470 23 **Seiches**
- .470 24 **Tidal waves**
- .470 8 **Tides and tidal currents**
- .471–.479 **Specific ocean currents**
 Add to 551.47 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469, e.g., Gulf Stream 551.471
- .48 **Fresh waters**
 Class here hydrology
 For ground waters, see 551.49; hydrometeorology, 551.57
- .482 **Lakes, ponds, fresh-water lagoons**
- .483 **Rivers and streams**
- .484 **Waterfalls**
- .49 **Ground waters (Subsurface waters)**
- .492 **Water table**
- .498 **Specific manifestations**
 Wells, springs, runoff
- .5 **Meteorology**
 Properties and phenomena of atmosphere
 For climatology and weather, see 551.6

SUMMARY

- 551.51 **Composition, regions, mechanics of atmosphere**
 .52 **Thermodynamics, temperatures, radiations**
 .54 **Atmospheric pressure**
 .55 **Atmospheric formations and disturbances**
 .56 **Atmospheric electricity and optics**
 .57 **Hydrometeorology**

.51 Composition, regions, mechanics of atmosphere

.511 Composition

.511 2 Gases

.511 3 Dust and other particulates

551.513–551.514 Regions of atmosphere

Structure, properties, phenomena

Class comprehensive works in 551.51; a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., upper-atmosphere pressures 551.547

.513 Troposphere

.514 Upper atmosphere

.514 2 Stratosphere

.514 5 Ionosphere

.515 Mechanics

.515 1 Kinematics

.515 2 Statics

.515 3 Dynamics

For circulation, see 551.517

.517 Circulation

For wind systems, see 551.518; atmospheric formations and disturbances, 551.55

.518 Wind systems

551.518 3–551.518 5 Systems in troposphere

Class comprehensive works in 551.518

.518 3 Planetary and terrestrial systems

Trade winds, prevailing westerlies, polar easterlies, doldrums, horse latitudes

Including jet stream

.518 4 Continental systems (Monsoons)

.518 5 Local systems

Examples: drainage winds, mountain and valley breezes, land and sea winds

.518 7 Systems in upper atmosphere

.52 Thermodynamics, temperatures, radiations

.522 Thermodynamics



551.523–551.525 Temperatures

Distribution, variations, frequencies, gradients

Class comprehensive works in 551.52

- .523 Earth temperatures
- .523 2 Surface temperatures
- .523 4 Vertical distribution
- .523 8 Permafrost
- .524 Water temperatures
- .524 6 Oceans and seas
 - Add to 551.5246 the numbers following 16 in "Areas" notation
163–167 from Table 2, e.g., temperatures of Indian Ocean
551.52465
- .524 8 Lakes and rivers
- .525 Air temperatures
- .525 2 Distribution at earth's surface
- .525 3 Variations at earth's surface
 - Diurnal and annual variations, maximums and minimums, frosts
- .525 4 Vertical distribution in troposphere
- .525 7 Upper-atmosphere temperatures
- .527 Radiations
 - Absorption, emission, reflection, scattering, transmission
 - Class optical phenomena in 551.565–551.567
- .527 1 Solar radiations
- .527 2 Terrestrial radiations
- .527 3 Atmospheric radiations
- .527 6 Cosmic and corpuscular radiations
- .54 Atmospheric pressure
 - Distribution, variations, frequencies, gradients
- .542 Distribution at earth's surface
- .543 Variations at earth's surface
- .547 Upper-atmosphere pressures
- .55 Atmospheric formations and disturbances
- .551 Formations
- .551 2 Air masses and fronts
- .551 3 Cyclones and cyclogenesis
- .551 4 Anticyclones and anticyclogenesis



551.552–551.559 Disturbances

Class comprehensive works in 551.55

- .552 **Hurricanes**
 Known also as typhoons, cyclones (in India), baguios, willy-willies
- .553 **Tornadoes (Twisters)**
 Known also as cyclones (Midwest of United States)
 Including waterspouts
- .554 **Thermal convective storms**
 Thunderstorms, thermal convective showers, hailstorms
 For tornadoes, see 551.553
- .555 **Snowstorms**
- .557 **Upper-atmosphere storms**
- .559 **Other storms**
 Including dust storms
- .56 **Atmospheric electricity and optics**
 Class auroras and magnetic phenomena in 538.7



551.561–551.564 Electricity

Class comprehensive works in 551.56

- .561 **Electricity in stable atmosphere**
 Ionization, conductivity, charge potential gradient
- .563 **Electricity in unstable atmosphere**
- .563 2 **Disruptive discharges**
 Chain, heat, sheet lightning
- .563 3 **Silent discharges (Saint Elmo's fire)**
- .563 4 **Ball lightning**
- .564 **Electricity of aerosols**
 Electricity of snow, ice crystals, water droplets, dust, other
 particulates



551.565–551.567 Optics

Class comprehensive works in 551.56

- .565 **Optical phenomena produced by refraction**
 Mirages, scintillation, distortion of celestial bodies
- .566 **Optical phenomena produced by absorption and scattering**
 Twilight, night skies, sky color

- .567 Optical phenomena produced by condensation products
 - Halos, rainbows, cloud coloration
- .568 Visibility
- .57 Hydrometeorology

SUMMARY

- 551.571 Humidity
 - .572 Evaporation and evapotranspiration
 - .574 Condensation and deposits
 - .575 Fogs and mists
 - .576 Clouds
 - .577 Precipitation
 - .578 Specific forms of precipitation
 - .579 Snow surveys
- .571 Humidity
 - .571 2 Horizontal distribution in troposphere
 - .571 3 Variations in troposphere
 - .571 4 Vertical distribution in troposphere
 - .571 7 In upper atmosphere
- .572 Evaporation and evapotranspiration
- .574 Condensation and deposits
 - .574 1 Condensation processes
 - Nucleation, formation of cloud particles, change of state
 - .574 4 Deposits on earth's surface
 - Dew, rime, hoarfrost, glaze
 - .574 7 Deposits on objects in upper atmosphere
- .575 Fogs and mists
 - Structure, formation, dissolution, composition, distribution, variations, gradients
- .576 Clouds
 - Structure, formation, dissolution, composition, distribution, variations, gradients
- .577 Precipitation
 - Class geologic work of precipitation in 551.35
 - For specific forms of precipitation, see 551.578*
- .577 1 Structure, composition, temperature
- 577 2 Distribution

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 551.5772

-
- .577 3 **Variations**
 - Including droughts
 - .577 5 **Factors affecting precipitation**
 - Influences of topography, vegetation, population concentrations, bodies of water
 - .578 **Specific forms of precipitation**
 - .578 1 **Liquid precipitation (Rain and rainfall)**
 - Add to 551.5781 the numbers following 551.577 in 551.5771–551.5773, e.g., variations in rain and rainfall 551.57813
 - .578 4 **Crystalline precipitation (Snow and snowfall)**
 - .578 41–.578 43 **Propertes, distribution, variations**
 - Add to 551.5784 the numbers following 551.577 in 551.5771–551.5773, e.g., variations in snow and snowfall 551.57843
 - .578 46 **Snow cover**
 - For snow surveys, see 551.579*
 - .578 461 **Duration**
 - .578 464 **Ablation**
 - .578 465 **Firnification**
 - .578 466 **Stratification**
 - 551.578 47–551.578 48 **Snow formations**
 - Class comprehensive works in 551.57847
 - .578 47 **Drifts and cornices**
 - Class here comprehensive works on snow formations
 - For avalanches, see 551.57848*
 - .578 48 **Avalanches**
 - .578 7 **Solid amorphous precipitation**
 - Hail, graupel, hailstones
 - .579 **Snow surveys**
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 551.579
 - .6 **Climatology and weather**
 - .62 **Weather belts and general types of climate**
 - Class climate of specific areas in 551.69
 - .63 **Weather forecasting**
 - For forecasting specific elements and phenomena, see 551.64; forecasts for specific areas, 551.65*
 - .631 **Historic methods**
 - Weather lore

- .632 Reports
- .633 Statistical forecasting
- .634 Numerical forecasting
- .635 Thru special instrumentation
- .635 2 Radiosondes
- .635 3 Radar
- .635 4 Weather satellites
- .636 Types of forecasts
 - Class specific methods of forecasting regardless of type in 551.631–551.635
- .636 2 Short-range
 - Predictions for a maximum of three days
- .636 5 Long-range
 - Predictions more than three days in advance
- .64 Forecasting specific elements and phenomena
 - Add to 551.64 the numbers following 551.5 in 551.51–551.57, e.g., hurricane warnings 551.6452
 - Class forecasts of specific elements and phenomena for specific areas in 551.65
- .65 Weather forecasts and reports for specific areas
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 551.65
- .66 Microclimatology
 - Climatology of small areas
- .68 Artificial modification and control of weather
 - Including artificial precipitation and cloud seeding
- .69 Climate of specific areas
 - Conditions, variations, changes
 - Class here paleoclimatology of specific areas
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 551.69
 - Class microclimatology of specific areas in 551.66
- .7 **Historical geology (Stratigraphy)**
 - Use 551.7001–551.7009 for standard subdivisions
 - For paleontology, see 560*
- .701 Geologic time and age measurements
- .71 Pre-Cambrian eras
- .712 Archcozoic (Lower Pre-Cambrian) era
 - Keewatin and Timiskaming periods

-
- .715 Proterozoic (Upper Pre-Cambrian) era
Huronian and Keeweenawan periods
-
- 551.72–551.75 Paleozoic era
Class comprehensive works in 551.72
- .72 Cambrian period
Class here comprehensive works on Paleozoic era
*For Silurian period, see 551.73; Devonian period, 551.74;
Carboniferous and Permian periods, 551.75*
- .73 Silurian period
- .731 Lower Silurian epoch
Known also as Ordovician period
- .732 Upper Silurian epoch
Known also as Silurian period
- .74 Devonian period
- .75 Carboniferous and Permian periods
-
- 551.751–551.752 Carboniferous periods
Class comprehensive works in 551.75
- .751 Mississippian (Lower Carboniferous) period
- .752 Pennsylvanian (Upper Carboniferous) period
- .756 Permian period
-
- 551.76–551.77 Mesozoic era
Class comprehensive works in 551.76
- .76 Triassic and Jurassic periods
Class here comprehensive works on Mesozoic era
For Cretaceous period, see 551.77
- .77 Cretaceous period
-
- 551.78–551.79 Cenozoic era
Class comprehensive works in 551.78
- .78 Tertiary period
Paleocene, Eocene, Oligocene, Miocene, Pliocene epochs
Class here comprehensive works on Cenozoic era
For Quaternary period, see 551.79

- .79 Quaternary period
- .792 Pleistocene epoch (Ice age)
- .793 Recent (Postglacial) epoch
- .8 **Structural geology (Tectonophysics)**
 - Forms, position, deformation of rocks
- .81 Stratifications
- .84 Joints and cleavages
- .85 Dips, outcrops, strikes
- .86 Synclines and antisynclines
- .87 Faults, folds, dislocations
- .88 Other deformations
 - Veins, dikes, necks, bosses, laccoliths, sills

.9 **Geochemistry**

Class a specific material with the subject, e.g., composition of rocks 552.06

552 Petrology (Rocks)

Class here petrography, lithology

Use 552.001–552.009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical distribution of rocks in 552.09

Class economic geology in 553

For geochemistry, see 551.9

- [.01–.02] Theoretic, interpretive, descriptive, systematic petrology

Numbers discontinued; class in 552

- .03 Petrogenesis (Origin of rocks)

- .06 Properties, composition, analysis, structure of rocks

Class mineral content of rocks in 549.114

- .09 Geographical distribution of rocks

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 552.09



552.1–552.5 Macroscopic petrology

Class comprehensive works in 552

- .1 **Igneous rocks**

For specific igneous rocks, see 552.2–552.3



552.2–552.3 Specific igneous rocks

Class comprehensive works in 552.1

.2 Volcanic rocks

Lavas, pumice, felsites, basalt, obsidian, rhyolite, andesite, tuff, volcanic ashes and tufa

.3 Plutonic rocks

Granites, syenites, porphyries, gabbros, dolerites, diorites, norites, peridotites

.4 Metamorphic rocks

Gneisses, schists, slates, quartzites, serpentines, chrysolitic rocks, crystalline limestones (marbles)

.5 Sedimentary rocks

Sandstones, shales, gypsum, limestones, dolomites, oolites, greensands, and their components, e.g., sand, clay, silt, glauconite, diatomaceous earth, salt

.8 Microscopic petrology

Study of rocks in thin sections and fragments

553

Economic geology

Quantitative occurrence and distribution of geological materials of economic utility

Class here interdisciplinary works on specific nonmetallic materials

Class a specific aspect of specific nonmetallic materials with the subject, e.g., prospecting 622.18; interdisciplinary works on specific metals in 669

SUMMARY

553.1 Formation and structure of deposits

.2 Carbonaceous materials Coal

.3 Iron (Ferrum)

.4 Nonferrous metals and semimetals

.5 Stony materials

.6 Earthy materials

.7 Water and aqueous deposits

.8 Gems

.9 Other economic materials

.1 Formation and structure of deposits

Class formation and structure of deposits of specific materials in 553.2–553.9

.13 Placers

.14 Stratified layers and beds

.16 Pegmatite dikes

.19 Veins and lodes



553.2–553.9 Specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 553

.2 Carbonaceous materials Coal

For industrial diamonds, see 553.65; gem diamonds, 553.82



553.21–553.25 Coal

Class comprehensive works in 553.2

- .21 Peat and peat coal
- .22 Lignite, brown coal, jet
- .23 Cannel coal and bituminous shale
- .24 Bituminous and semibituminous coal
- .25 Anthracite and graphitic anthracite coal
- .26 Graphite (Plumbago, Black lead)
- .27 Pitch
 - Asphalt, bitumen, ozocerite, ceresin, paraffin
- .28 Oil and gas
- .282 Petroleum
- .285 Natural gas
- .29 Fossil gums and resins



553.3–553.4 Metals

Class comprehensive works in 553

- .3 Iron (Ferrum)
- .4 Nonferrous metals and semimetals

SUMMARY

- 553.41 Gold (Aurum)
- .42 Precious metals
- .43 Copper (Cuprum)
- .44 Lead (Plumbum)
- .45 Zinc, tin, mercury
- .46 Ferroalloying and related metals
- .47 Antimony (Stibium), arsenic, bismuth
- .48 Nickel and cobalt
- .49 Other

-
- .41 Gold (Aurum)
 - .42 Precious metals
 - For gold, see 553.41*
 - .421 Silver (Argentum)
 - .422 Platinum
 - .43 Copper (Cuprum)
 - .44 Lead (Plumbum)
 - .45 Zinc, tin, mercury
 - .452 Zinc
 - .453 Tin (Stannum)
 - .454 Mercury (Hydrargyrum)
 - .46 Ferroalloying and related metals
 - For nickel and cobalt, see 553.48*
 - .462 Titanium, vanadium, manganese
 - .464 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten (wolfram)
 - .465 Zirconium and tantalum
 - .47 Antimony (Stibium), arsenic, bismuth
 - .48 Nickel and cobalt
 - .49 Other
 - .492 Light metals
 - Beryllium (glucinium), aluminum, magnesium
 - .493 Fissionable metals
 - Uranium, radium, thorium
 - .494 Rare-earth metals
 - Class here lanthanide series
 - .494 2 Scandium
 - .494 3 Cerium group
 - Lanthanum, cerium, praseodymium, neodymium, promethium (illinium), samarium, europium
 - .494 7 Yttrium group
 - Yttrium, gadolinium, terbium, dysprosium, holmium, erbium, thulium (aldebaranium), ytterbium, lutetium (cassiopeium, lutecium)
 - .495 Platinum group
 - Ruthenium, rhodium, palladium, osmium, iridium
 - For platinum, see 553.422*

- .499 **Other**
 Lithium, sodium (natrium), potassium (kalium), rubidium, cesium
 (caesium), calcium, strontium, barium, hafnium (celtium), niobium
 (columbium), rhenium (bohemia), cadmium, gallium, indium,
 thallium, germanium, selenium, tellurium
- .5 **Stony materials**
- .51 **Marbles and limestones**
 For onyx and verd antique marbles, see 553.55
- .52 **Granites and syenites**
- .53 **Sandstones, bluestones, flagstones**
- .54 **Slates**
- .55 **Serpentines, soapstones, and their variants**
 Including onyx and verd antique marbles
- .6 **Earthy materials**
 Class here soils
- .61 **Clays**
 Kaolin, bentonite, fuller's earth, diaspore clay
- .62 **Sands and gravels**
- .63 **Salts**
 For mineral waters, see 553.73; soda niter and niter, 553.64
- .632 **Rock salt (Sodium chloride)**
- .633 **Borax and other borates**
- .635 **Gypsum**
 Including alabaster
- .636 **Potash salts**
- .64 **Nitrate and phosphate fertilizers**
 Soda niter (Chile saltpeter), niter (saltpeter), apatites
- .65 **Abrasive materials**
 Emery, corundum, pumice, garnet, flint, carbonado, industrial
 diamonds, tripoli
 For sands, see 553.62
- .66 **Sulfur and earth pigments**
- .662 **Pigment materials**
 Barite (heavy spar), ochers, umber, sienna, rutile
- .668 **Sulfur**

.97

Rare gases

Helium, neon, argon, krypton, xenon, radon (niton)

**554–559 Regional geology**

Geology of specific continents, countries, localities

Class comprehensive works in 550, a specific geological aspect of a region with the subject, e.g., geomorphology of England 551.40942

554**Geology of Europe**

Add "Areas" notation 41–49 from Table 2 to base number 55, e.g., geology of England 554.2

555**Geology of Asia**

Add "Areas" notation 51–59 from Table 2 to base number 55, e.g., geology of Japan 555.2

556**Geology of Africa**

Add "Areas" notation 61–69 from Table 2 to base number 55, e.g., geology of South Africa 556.8

557**Geology of North America**

Add "Areas" notation 71–79 from Table 2 to base number 55, e.g., geology of Ohio 557.71

558**Geology of South America**

Add "Areas" notation 81–89 from Table 2 to base number 55, e.g., geology of Brazil 558.1

559**Geology of other parts of world and other worlds**

Add "Areas" notation 93–99 from Table 2 to base number 55, e.g., geology of Australia 559.4, of moon 559.91

560**Paleontology****Paleozoology****.1****Philosophy and theory****.17****Stratigraphic paleontology, paleobotany, paleozoology**

Class specific fossils or groups of fossils in 561–569

.171**Archeozoic and Proterozoic (Pre-Cambrian) paleontology****.172****Paleozoic paleontology**

Fossils of Cambrian, Silurian, Devonian, Carboniferous, Permian periods

.176**Mesozoic paleontology**

Fossils of Triassic, Jurassic, Cretaceous periods

.178**Cenozoic paleontology**

Fossils of Tertiary and Quaternary periods

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class historical and geographical treatment of stratigraphic paleontology and paleozoology in 560.17

.901-.904 Historical periods**.909-.999 Geographical treatment**

Add to 560.9 the numbers following 574.9 in 574.909-574.999, e.g., cave fossils 560.90944

Class persons in 560.9

561 Paleobotany

Class stratigraphic paleobotany in 560.17

.09 Historical treatment

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 561.19

SUMMARY**561.1 General principles**

.2 Fossil Spermatophyta (Fossil seed plants)

.3 Fossil Dicotyledones (Fossil dicotyledons)

.4 Fossil Monocotyledones (Fossil monocotyledons)

.5 Fossil Gymnospermae (Fossil naked-seed plants)

.6 Fossil Cryptogamia (Fossil seedless plants)

.7 Fossil Pteridophyta

.8 Fossil Bryophyta (Fossil moss plants)

.9 Fossil Thallophyta

.1 General principles

Class specific classes, orders, families, genera, species in 561.2-561.9

.13 Fossil pollen and spores**.14 Fossil fruit and seeds****.19 Geographical treatment**

Add to 561.19 the numbers following 574.9 in 574.909-574.999, e.g., fresh-water fossil plants 561.1929

**561.2-561.9 Specific plants and groups of plants**

Class here taxonomic paleobotany

Class comprehensive works in 561

.2 Fossil Spermatophyta (Fossil seed plants)

For *Angiospermae*, see 561.3-561.4; *Gymnospermae*, 561.5

.21 Trees and petrified wood

Class specific trees in 561.3-561.5

► **561.3–561.4 Fossil Angiospermae (Flowering plants)**

Class comprehensive works in 561.2

- .3 **Fossil Dicotyledones' (Fossil dicotyledons)**
- .4 **Fossil Monocotyledones (Fossil monocotyledons)**
- .45 Palmaceae (Palms)
- .49 Gramineae (Grasses)
- .5 **Fossil Gymnospermae (Fossil naked-seed plants)**
- .51 Gnetales
- .52 Coniferales (Conifers)
 - Araucariaceae, Cephalotaxaceae, Cupressaceae, Pinaceae, Podocarpaceae, Taxaceae, Taxodiaceae
- .55 Cordaitales
 - Cordaiteae, Pityeae (Callixylon), Potoxyleae
- .57 Ginkgoales (Ginkgo trees)
- .59 Cycadophyta and related orders
- .591 Cycadales (True cycads)
- .592 Cycadeoidales
 - Cycadeoidaceae, Williamsoniaceae
- .595 Pteridospermae (Seed ferns)
 - Calamopityaceae, Lyginodendraceae, Medullosaceae
- .597 Fernlike fossils of uncertain taxonomic position
 - Alethopteris, Alliopteris, Archaeopteris, Callipteris, Cyclopteris, Glossopteris, Linopteris, Mariopteris, Megalopteris, Neuropteris, Odontopteris, Pecopteris, Rhacopteris, Sphenopteris, Taeniopteris
- .6 **Fossil Cryptogamia (Fossil seedless plants)**
 - For Pteridophyta, see 561.7; Bryophyta, 561.8; Thallophyta, 561.9*
- .7 **Fossil Pteridophyta**
- .71 Isoetales
- .72 Sphenopsida (Scouring rushes)
 - Calamitales, Equisetales, Hyeniales, Pseudoborniales, Sphenophyllales
- .73 Filicineae (Ferns)
 - Coenopteridales, Filicales, Marattiales, Ophioglossales
- .74 Psilopsida
 - Psilophytales, Psilotales

- .79 **Lycopsidea (Lycopods)**
 Lepidodendrales, Lycopodiales, Pleuromeiales, Selaginellales
 For Isoetales, see 561.71
- .8 **Fossil Bryophyta (Fossil moss plants)**
- .9 **Fossil Thallophyta**
- .92 **Fungi**
- .93 **Algae**

► **562–569 Specific animals and groups of animals**

Class here taxonomic paleozoology

Class comprehensive works in 560

562 Fossil invertebrates

Including conodonts

For Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa, see 563; Mollusca and molluscoidea,
564; other invertebrates, 565

563 Fossil Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa

- .1 **Protozoa (Plasmodroma and Ciliophora)**
- .4 **Porifera and other sponges**
 Including Calcispongiae, Demospongiae, Hyalospongiae
- .47 **Archaeocyatha**
 Cambrian fossils with characteristics of sponges and corals
- .5 **Coelenterata**
 For Anthozoa, see 563.6; Hydrozoa and related orders, 563.7
- .6 **Anthozoa (Corals)**
 For Archaeocyatha, see 563.47
- .7 **Hydrozoa and related orders**
- .71 **Hydrozoa**
 Graptolitoidea, Hydroida, Milleporina, Siphonophora, Stylasterina,
 Trachylina
- .73 **Scyphozoa**
 Charybdeidea, Corona, Lucernariidea, Semaestomeae
- .78 **Stromatoporoidea**
- .8 **Ctenophorae**
 Nuda, Tentaculata

.9 Echinodermata, Enteropneusta, Linguatula

Including Blastoidea, Cystoidea

563.91–563.96 Echinodermata

Class comprehensive works in 563.9

.91 Crinoidea

Adunata, Articulata, Camerata, Comatulida, Flexibilia, Inadunata

.93 Asteroidea (Starfish)

Forcipulata, Phanerozonia, Spinosus

.94 OphiuroideaAganasterida, Chilophiurida, Gnathophiurida, Laemophiurida,
Lysophiurida, Ophiocystida, Phrynophiurida**.95 Echinoidea**Bothriocidaroida, Centrechinoida, Cidaroida, Echinocystoida,
Exocycloidea, Perischoechinoida**.96 Holothurioidea**

Apoda, Aspidochirota, Dendrochirota, Elasipoda, Molpadonia

.99 Linguatula and Enteropneusta**.992 Linguatula****.993 Enteropneusta (Balanoglossida)****564 Fossil Mollusca and molluscoidea**

564.1–564.5 Mollusca (Mollusks)

Class comprehensive works in 564

.1 Pelecypoda and Crepipoda**.11 Pelecypoda (Bivalve mollusks)**

Anomalodesmacea, Prionodesmacea, Teleodesmacea

.19 Crepipoda (Amphineura, Polyplacophora)Aplacophora, Eoplacophora, Isoplacophora, Mesoplacophora,
Teleoplacophora**.2 Scaphopoda (Toothshells)****.3 Gastropoda**

Common names: slugs, snails, whelks

.32 Prosobranchia

Archaeogastropoda, Mesogastropoda, Neogastropoda

.35 Pteropoda and Sacoglossa

Common names: sea hares, sea lemons, sea slugs

- .36 **Acoela**
 - Notaspidea, Nudibranchia
- .37 **Tectibranchia**
- .38 **Pulmonata**
 - Basommatophora, Stylommatophora

.5 **Cephalopoda**

- .52 Nautiloidea (Nautilus)
- .53 Ammonitoidea
- .55 Vampyromorpha
- .56 Octopoda
- .58 Decapoda

.6 **Molluscoidea**

For specific classes, orders, families of molluscoidea, see 564.7–564.8

► 564.7–564.8 **Specific classes, orders, families of molluscoidea**

Class comprehensive works in 564.6

For Phoronidea, see 565.1

- .7 **Bryozoa and Pterobranchia**
- .8 **Brachiopoda (Lamp shells)**

565 **Other fossil invertebrates**

SUMMARY

- 565.1 **Worms and related animals**
 - .2 **Arthropoda**
 - .3 **Crustacea and related classes**
 - .4 **Arachnida**
 - .5 **Onychophora**
 - .6 **Progoneata**
 - .7 **Insecta (Insects)**

.1 **Worms and related animals**

Acanthocephala, Annelida, Aschelminthes, Eucoelomata, Gastrotricha, Gephyrea, Nematodea, Nematomorpha, Nemertea, Phoronidea, Platyhelminthes, Tardigrada

.2 **Arthropoda**

For Crustacea and related classes, see 565.3; Progoneata, 565.6

.3 **Crustacea and related classes**

.32 **Branchiopoda**

Anostraca, Cladocera, Conchostrata, Notostraca

-
- .33 **Ostracoda**
 - Cladocopa, Myodocopa, Platycopa, Podocopa
 - .34 **Copepoda**
 - Branchiura, Eucopepoda
 - .35 **Cirripedia (Barnacles)**
 - Apoda, Ascothoracica, Rhizocephala, Thoracica
 - .36 **Leptostraca**
 - Ceratiocarina, Hymenocarina, Nahecarida, Nebaliacea, Rhinocarina
 - .37 **Eumalacostraca**
 - Including Amphipoda, Isopoda, Tanaidacea, Thermosbaenacea
 - For Cumacea and related orders, see 565.38*
 - .38 **Cumacea and related orders**
 - Decapoda, Euphausiacea, Mysidacea, Stomatopoda
 - .39 **Chelicerata and Trilobita**
 - For Arachnida, see 565.4*
 - .391 **Eurypterida and Synxiphosura**
 - .392 **Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)**
 - .393 **Trilobita**
 - .394 **Pycnogonida**
 - .4 **Arachnida**
 - .49 **Architarbi**
 - .5 **Onychophora**
 - .6 **Progoncata**
 - For Insecta, see 565.7*
 - .61 **Diplopoda (Millipedes)**
 - Chilognatha, Pselaphognatha
 - .62 **Opisthogoncata**
 - Chilopoda (centipedes)
 - .63 **Symphyla**
 - .64 **Pauropoda**
 - .7 **Insecta (Insects)**
 - .71 **Synaptera**
 - Collembola, Entotrophi, Protura, Thysanura
 - .72 **Orthoptera and Dermaptera**

-
- .73 **Thysanoptera and related orders**
Corrodentia, Embioptera, Ephemeroptera, Isoptera, Odonata,
Plecoptera, Zoraptera
 - .74 **Neuroptera and related orders**
Mecoptera, Megaloptera, Strepsiptera, Trichoptera
 - .75 **Hemiptera and related orders**
Anoplura, Heteroptera, Homoptera, Mallophaga
 - .76 **Coleoptera**
Adephaga, Colydioidea, Curculionoidea, Elateroidea, Mordelloidea,
Polyphaga
 - .77 **Diptera and related orders**
Cyclorrhapha, Orthorrhapha, Siphonaptera
 - .78 **Lepidoptera**
 - .79 **Hymenoptera**
 - 566 **Fossil Chordata (Fossil vertebrates)**
For Anamnia, see 567; Sauropsida, 568; Mammalia, 569
 - 567 **Fossil Anamnia Fossil fishes**
 - .2 **Agnatha and Placodermi**
Cephalaspidomorphi, Pteraspidomorphi
 - .3 **Chondrichthyes (Rays, sharks, skates)**
Batoidea, Bradyodonti, Chimaerae, Cladoselachii, Pleuracanthodii,
Selachii
 - .4 **Actinopterygii and Holostei**
Aspidorhynchoidea, Palaeoniscoidea, Pholidophoroidea, Pycnodontoidea,
Semionotoidea, Subholostei
 - .5 **Teleostei**
Acanthopterygii, Apodes, Heteromi, Isospondyli, Mesichthyes,
Ostariophysi
Class here Osteichthyes
For Actinopterygii and Holostei, see 567.4
 - .6 **Amphibia (Amphibians)**
Including Labyrinthodontia, Lepospondyli
For Apoda, see 567.7; Anura, 567.8; Urodela, 567.9
 - .7 **Apoda**
 - .8 **Eoanura, Proanura, Anura (Salientia)**
 - .9 **Urodela**
Amblystomoidea, Cryptobranchioidea, Proteidea, Salamandroidea

568 Fossil Sauropsida (Fossil reptiles and birds)**.1 Reptilia (Reptiles)****.11 Lepidosauria**

Eosuchia, Rhynchocephalia, Squamata

*For Serpentes, see 568.12***.12 Serpentes (Snakes)****.13 Anapsida**

Chelonia, Cotylosauria

.14 Crocodilia

Eusuchia, Mesosuchia, Protosuchia, Sebecosuchia

.15 Ichthyopterygia**.16 Synaptosauria**

Protorosauria, Sauropterygia

.17 Synapsida

Ictidosauria, Pelycosauria, Therapsida

.18 Pterosauri

Pterodactyloidea, Rhamphorhynchoidea

.19 Archosauria

Ornithischia, Saurischia, Thecodontia

*For Crocodilia, see 568.14; Pterosauri, 568.18***.2 Aves (Birds)****.22 Archaeornithes****.23 Neornithes**

Including Hesperornithiformes, Ichthyornithiformes

*For other orders of Neornithes, see 568.3–568.9***568.3–568.9 Other orders of Neornithes**

Class comprehensive works in 568.23

.3 Gruiformes and related orders

Charadriiformes, Ciconiiformes, Diatrymiformes, Phororhaci

.4 Anseriformes and related orders

Colymbiformes, Gaviiformes, Pelecaniformes, Procellariiformes, Sphenisciformes

.5 Palaeognathae

Aepyornithiformes, Apterygiformes, Caenagnathiformes, Casuariiformes, Dinornithiformes, Rheiformes, Struthioniformes, Tinamiformes

-
- .6 **Galliformes and Columbiformes**
 - .7 **Psittaciformes, Piciformes, Trogoniformes, Cuculiformes**
 - .8 **Passeriformes, Coraciiformes, Apodiformes**
 - .9 **Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes**
 - 569 **Fossil Mammalia (Fossil mammals)**
 - .1 **Prototheria, Allotheria, Pantotheria**
 - .12 **Monotremata**
 - .17 **Multituberculata and Triconodonta**
 - .18 **Pantotheria and Symmetrodonta**
 - .2 **Marsupialia**
 - .3 **Unguiculata**
 - For Chiroptera, see 569.4; Primates, 569.8*
 - .31 **Edentata**
 - Palaeonodonta, Pholidota, Xenarthra*
 - .32 **Lagomorpha and Rodentia**
 - .33 **Insectivora**
 - .34 **Dermoptera**
 - .35 **Tillodontia**
 - .36 **Taeniodontia**
 - .4 **Chiroptera**
 - Megachiroptera, Microchiroptera*
 - .5 **Cetacea and Sirenia**
 - Archaeoceti, Desmostyliiformes, Mysticeti, Odontoceti, Trichechiformes*
 - .6 **Paenungulata**
 - Dinocerata, Embrithopoda, Hyracoidea, Pantodonta, Proboscidea, Pyrotheria*
 - For Sirenia, see 569.5*
 - .7 **Mesaxonia, Paraxonia, Ferungulata**
 - For Paenungulata, see 569.6*
 - .72 **Perissodactyla**
 - Ceratomorpha, Hippomorpha*
 - .73 **Artiodactyla**
 - Ruminantia, Suiformes, Tylopoda*
 - .74 **Carnivora**
 - Creodonta, Fissipeda, Pinnipedia*

- .75 **Protungulata**
Astrapotheria, Condylarthra, Litopterna, Notoungulata, Tubulidentata
- .8 **Primates**
Anthropoidea, Prosimii
For Hominidae, see 569.9
- .9 **Hominidae (Man)**
For prehistoric man, see 573.3

570 Life sciences

For paleontology, see 560

571 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 16

572 Human races

Class here ethnology

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class origins in 572.2, geographical distribution in 572.9

.2 Origins and physical characteristics of races

For specific races, see 572.8, causes of physical differences, 572.3

.3 Causes of physical differences

Environmental and genetic factors

[.7] Primitive races

Class in 301.2

.8 Specific races

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 572.8

.9 Geographical distribution of races

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 572.9

Class specific races in specific places in 572.8

573 Physical anthropology

Class here human biological ecology

For human races, see 572

.2 Organic evolution and genetics of man

Add to 573.2 the numbers following 575 in 575.1–575.2, e.g., cytogenetics 573.221

.3 Prehistoric man

Antiquity, distribution, physical characteristics of early hominids

Examples: Pithecanthropus (Java man), Cro-Magnon, Neanderthal, Rhodesian, Peking man

For anthropometry, see 573.6

.4 Environmental effects on physique**.5 Pigmentation****.6 Anthropometry**

Add to 573.6 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., comparative studies of hair 573.678

For craniology, see 573.7; abnormal dimensions, 573.8

.7 Craniology**.8 Abnormal dimensions**

Dwarfs, midguts, giants

574 Biology

For botanical sciences, see 580; zoological sciences, 590; special biological fields and techniques, 575–579

.07 Study and teaching**.072 Research****.072 4 Experimental biology**

Including tissue and organ culture, use of plants and animals combined to study general biology

.09 Historical treatment

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 574.9

SUMMARY**574.1 Physiology****.2 Pathology****.3 Development and maturation****.4 Anatomy and morphology****.5 Ecology****.6 Economic biology****.8 Tissue, cellular, molecular biology****.9 Geographical treatment**

.1 Physiology

Class here comprehensive works on physiology and anatomy

Class microphysiology in 574.8

For anatomy, see 574.4; pathological physiology, 574.21; development and maturation, 574.3

SUMMARY

- 574.11 Circulation
- .12 Respiration
- .13 Nutrition and metabolism
- .14 Secretion and excretion
- .16 Reproduction
- .17 Histogenesis
- .18 Movements and control mechanisms
- .19 Biophysics and biochemistry

- .11 Circulation
- .113 Circulatory fluids
- .116 Organs of circulation
- .12 Respiration
- .121 Aerobic
- .124 Intercellular
- .128 Anaerobic
- .13 Nutrition and metabolism
- .132 Ingestion and digestion
- .133 Metabolism
 - Anabolism and catabolism
 - Including assimilation and storage
- .14 Secretion and excretion
- .16 Reproduction
- .162 Parthenogenesis
- .163 Alternation of generations (Metagenesis)
- .165 Vegetative generation
- .166 Sexual reproduction
 - For alternation of generations, see 574.163*
- .166 2 Conjugation
- .166 7 Hermaphroditism
- .17 Histogenesis
 - Formation and differentiation of tissues

- .18 **Movements and control mechanisms**
 Locomotion, response to stimuli, control of functions,
 physiological balance
 Class control of a specific function with the subject, e.g., control of
 respiration 574.12
- .19 **Biophysics and biochemistry**
 Class physics and chemistry of a specific process or part of living
 organisms with the process or part, e.g., physics of respiration
 574.12, chemistry of nuclei 574.8732
- .191 **Biophysics**
 Physical phenomena in organisms, effects of physical agents on
 organisms

SUMMARY

- 574.191 2 **Physical phenomena in organisms**
 .191 3 **Effects of mechanical forces**
 .191 4 **Effects of sound and related vibrations**
 .191 5 **Effects of radiations (Radiobiology)**
 .191 6 **Effects of thermal forces (Thermobiology)**
 .191 7 **Effects of electricity**
 .191 9 **Extraterrestrial biophysics (Bioastronautics)**
- .191 2 **Physical phenomena in organisms**
 .191 21 **Bioenergetics**
 .191 25 **Bioluminescence**
 .191 27 **Bioelectricity**
 Including electrophysiology
-
- 574.191 3–574.191 7 **Effects of external forces**
 Class comprehensive works in 574.191
- .191 3 **Effects of mechanical forces**
 .191 32 **Gravitational forces**
 .191 33 **Velocity and speed**
 .191 34 **Acceleration and deceleration**
 .191 35 **Pressures**
 .191 36 **Impact**
 .191 4 **Effects of sound and related vibrations**
 .191 42 **Subsonic vibrations**
 .191 43 **Sound**
 .191 45 **Ultrasonic vibrations**

- .191 5 **Effects of radiations (Radiobiology)**
- .191 51 **Radio waves (Hertzian waves) and microwaves**
- .191 52 **Infrared radiation**
- .191 53 **Visible light**
- .191 54 **Ultraviolet radiation**
- .191 55 **X rays**
- .191 56 **Particle radiations**
 - Examples: alpha, beta, gamma, proton, neutron radiations
- .191 57 **Cosmic rays**
- .191 6 **Effects of thermal forces (Thermobiology)**
- .191 62 **Heat and high temperatures**
- .191 65 **Cold and low temperatures**
 - For cryogenic temperatures, see 574.19167*
- .191 67 **Cryogenic temperatures (Cryobiology)**
- .191 7 **Effects of electricity**
- .191 9 **Extraterrestrial biophysics (Bioastronautics)**
 - Effects of physical agents in environments other than the earth
 - Add to 574.1919 the numbers following 574.191 in
574.1913–574.1917, e.g., gravitational forces 574.191932
- .192 **Biochemistry**
- .192 01 **Philosophy and theory**
 - Class theoretical biochemistry in 574.19282

SUMMARY

- 574.192 1 **Fluids, pigments, inorganic constituents**
- .192 4 **Organic compounds**
- .192 5 **Enzymes**
- .192 6 **Vitamins**
- .192 7 **Hormones**
- .192 8 **Physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry**
- .192 9 **Biosynthesis**



574.192 1–574.192 7 Constituents of living matter

Composition, reactions, effects

Class comprehensive works in 574.192

For biosynthesis, see 574.1929

- .192 1 **Fluids, pigments, inorganic constituents**
- .192 12 **Fluids**
 - Example: water

-
- .192 14 Minerals
 - .192 18 Pigments
 - .192 4 Organic compounds
 - For vitamins, see 574.1926; pigments, 574.19218*
 - .192 42 Alkaloids
 - .192 43 Steroids
 - For hormones, see 574.1927*
 - .192 45 Proteins
 - For enzymes, see 574.1925*
 - .192 46 Antibiotics
 - .192 47 Lipids
 - .192 48 Carbohydrates
 - .192 5' Enzymes
 - .192 53 Lipolytic
 - Lipases, esterases, phosphatases
 - .192 54 Saccharolytic
 - Carbohydrases, amylases, cellulases, maltases, emulsins
 - .192 56 Proteolytic
 - Proteases, cathepsins
 - .192 58 Oxidizing and reducing
 - Oxidases, dehydrogenases, zymases, catalases
 - .192 6 Vitamins
 - .192 7 Hormones
 - .192 8 Physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry
 - Class physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry of specific constituents in 574.1921–574.1927
 - .192 82 Theoretical
 - .192 83 Physical
 - .192 85 Analytical
 - .192 9 Biosynthesis
 - .192 93 Lipids
 - .192 94 Carbohydrates
 - .192 96 Proteins
 - .192 97 Pigments
 - [.192 99] Other substances
 - Number discontinued; class in 574.1929

- .2 Pathology**
 Class here pathogenicity [*formerly 576.4*], degeneration and death [*both formerly 577.7*]
For histopathology, see 574.828; cell pathology, 574.8765
- .21 Pathological physiology**
 Add to 574.21 the numbers following 574.1 in 574.11–574.19, e.g., nutrition diseases 574.213
- .22 Pathological anatomy**
 Class here teratology
 Add to 574.22 the numbers following 574.4 in 574.41–574.47, e.g., deformations of circulatory organs 574.221
- .23 Diseases induced by living organisms**
 Class diseases of specific systems and organs in 574.21
- .232 Diseases due to parasitic plants**
- .232 2 Bacterial diseases**
- .232 6 Fungus diseases**
- .233 Diseases due to parasitic animals**
- .234 Viral and rickettsial diseases**
- .24 Diseases and injuries caused by physical and chemical factors**
 Examples: weather, radiations
 Class diseases and injuries of specific systems and organs in 574.21
- .29 Immunity [*formerly 576.2*]**
 Class here autoimmunity, immunology
- .292 Antigens**
- .293 Antibodies**
- .295 Immune reactions**
 Examples: agglutination, precipitation
 Class here serology
- .3 Development and maturation**
For histogenesis, see 574.17
- .31 Growth and regeneration**
- .32 Gametogenesis**
 Formation and maturation of gametes (*sex cells, germ cells*)
- .33 Embryology**
- .332 Anatomy**
 Including morphogenesis
- .333 Physiology**

- .334 **Developmental stages**
 - Class developmental stages of anatomy in 574.332, of physiology in 574.333
- .36 **Sex [formerly 577.8]**
 - Differentiation, development
 - For gametogenesis, see 574.32*
- .37 **Aging and longevity**
- .372 **Aging**
- .374 **Longevity**
 - Including rejuvenation
- .4 **Anatomy and morphology**
 - Class microanatomy in 574.8
 - For pathological anatomy, see 574.22; anatomical embryology, 574.332*
- .41 **Circulatory organs**
- .42 **Respiratory organs**
- .43 **Nutritive and metabolic organs**
- .44 **Secretory and excretory organs**
- .46 **Reproductive organs**
- .47 **Motor and integumentary organs**
- .5 **Ecology**
 - Interrelation of organisms to environment and to each other
 - Class here adaptations
- .52 **Specific relationships and environments**
 - Class here migrations, biogeochemistry, bioclimatology, paleoecology
 - Class specific adaptations to specific relationships and environments in 574.53–574.57
- .522 **Autecology**
 - Ecology of individual organisms, species, genera, families, orders, classes
 - Class autecology in specific environments in 574.526
- .522 2 **Effects of environment on organisms**
- .522 3 **Effects of organisms on environment**
- .524 **Synecology**
 - Ecology of communities [*formerly also 574.55*], groups, populations (societies, consocieties, clans, colonies, symbioses), e.g., interrelations of species to species
 - Including parasitism
 - Class synecology in specific environments in 574.526

- .526 Specific environments
- .526 3 Aquatic environments
- .526 32 Fresh-water
 - Ponds, lakes, rivers, swamps, marshes, heaths, bogs, moors
- .526 36 Salt-water
 - Oceans, seas, salt lakes
- .526 4 Land environments with significant vegetation
 - Forests, grasslands, mountains, cultivated areas
- .526 5 Land environments without significant vegetation
 - Alkaline, arid, semiarid environments, e.g., deserts, salt flats, dunes, rocks

574.53–574.57 Specific adaptations

Class comprehensive works in 574.5

- .53 Nutritive adaptations
- .54 Adaptations to weather, climate, seasons
- .542 Weather and climate
 - Examples: acclimation, temperature adaptations
- .543 Seasonal changes
- [.55] Communities
 - Class in 574.524
- .56 Reproductive adaptations
- .57 Protective adaptations
- .6 **Economic biology**
- .61 Organisms beneficial to man's interests
- .65 Organisms deleterious to man's interests
- .8 **Tissue, cellular, molecular biology**
- .82 Tissue biology
 - For histogenesis, see 574.17*
- .821 Histophysiology
 - Including histochemistry
- .824 Histology
 - Study of minute structure of tissues
- .828 Histopathology

-
- .87 Cytology (Cell biology)
 - .872 Cell structure
 - Including atomic and molecular structure
 - For specific components of cell anatomy, see 574.873–574.875*
 - 574.873–574.875 Specific components of cell anatomy and physiology
 - Class comprehensive works in 574.87
 - .873 Protoplasm
 - .873 2 Nucleus
 - Chromosomes, nucleolus, chromatin, linin network, nuclear membrane
 - Including DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), RNA (ribonucleic acid)
 - .873 3 Plastids
 - Chromoplasts, leucoplasts
 - .873 4 Cytoplasm
 - Centrosomes, mitochondria, endoplasmic reticulum, ribosomes, Golgi bodies, blepharoplasts
 - For plastids, see 574.8733*
 - .874 Non-protoplasmic components
 - Pigmentation, vacuoles, aleurone grains
 - For membranes and cell wall, see 574.875*
 - .875 Membranes and cell wall
 - .876 Cell physiology
 - Class here chemistry (cytochemistry) and physics
 - Class specific components of cell physiology in 574.873–574.875
 - .876 1 Nutrition, metabolism, growth, regeneration
 - .876 2 Reproduction
 - .876 22 Direct division (Amitosis)
 - .876 23 Indirect division (Mitosis)
 - Prophase, metaphase, anaphase, telophase stages of cell division
 - .876 4 Other functions
 - Examples: respiration, excretion
 - .876 5 Pathology (Cytopathology)
 - Including degeneration and death
 - .876 6 Colonies

- .878 **Comparative cytology**
 Comparison of plant cells with animal cells
- .88 **Molecular biology**
 Study of ultimate physicochemical nature of living matter
 Class molecular biology of a specific process or part of the living organism with the process or part, e.g., bioenergetics 574.19121
- .9 **Geographical treatment**
- .909 **Treatment by areas, regions, places in general**
 Add to 574.909 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 11-19 from Table 2, e.g., desert biology 574.90954 - - -
 Class insular biology in 574.91, hydrographic biology in 574.92
- .91 **Insular biology**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 574.91
- .92 **Hydrographic biology Marine biology**
 Class here plankton
- .921-.928 **Marine biology (Biological oceanography)**
 Add to 574.92 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461-551.468, e.g., Mediterranean Sea life 574.922
 Class Antarctic waters of Atlantic Ocean in 574.924, of Pacific Ocean in 574.9258, of Indian Ocean in 574.927; comprehensive works on Antarctic waters in 574.924
- .929 **Fresh-water biology (Limnetic biology)**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 574.929
- .93-.99 **Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 574.9, e.g., astrobiology 574.999 [*formerly* 523.13]



575-579 Special biological fields and techniques

Class comprehensive works in 574

575 **Organic evolution and genetics**

Organic evolution: origin of species thru historic descent with modification

For organic evolution of man, see 573.2; of plants, 581.38; of animals, 591.38

- .001-.009 **Standard subdivisions**
 Class theories in 575.01

- .01 Theories
- .016 Modern theories
 - .016 2 Darwinian and neo-Darwinian theories
 - Theories on natural selection and survival of the fittest
 - .016 3 Orthogenesis
 - Evolution along seemingly predetermined lines
 - .016 5 Mutation theories
 - Theories on abrupt hereditary changes
 - .016 6 Lamarckian and neo-Lamarckian theories
 - Theories on inheritance of acquired characteristics, on hereditary effects of use and disuse of organs
- .1 Genetics
 - Heredity and variation
 - For variation and physiological genetics, see 575.2; genetics of plants, 581.15; of animals, 591.15; of man, 573.21*
 - .11 Laws of genetics
 - Examples: laws of Weismann, Mendel, Galton
 - .12 Genes and genetic makeup
 - Former heading: Hereditary characteristics
 - Including genotypes, phenotypes
 - .13 Factors affecting heredity and variation
 - For environmental factors, see 575.22*
 - .131 Radiations (Radiogenetics)
 - Including creation of radiation chimeras and artificial mutations
 - .132 Outbreeding
 - .133 Inbreeding
 - .134 Species interfertility
 - .137 Atavism
- .2 Variation and physiological genetics
 - .21 Physiological genetics
 - Chemical and embryological genetics, cytogenetics
 - For DNA, RNA, see 574.8732*
 - .22 Environmental factors in heredity and variation
 - 575.28–575.29 Variations (Genetic deviations)
 - Class comprehensive works in 575.2
- .28 Hybrids

- .29 Abrupt deviations
- .292 Mutations
 - Inheritable abrupt deviations
 - For artificial mutations, see 575.131*
- .293 Sports
 - Noninheritable abrupt deviations



575.5–575.9 Organic evolution

Class comprehensive works in 575, role of genetics in evolution
in 575.1–575.2

- .5 Evolution thru sexual selection
- .7 Evolutionary cycles
 - Degeneration, extinction, regeneration of species
- .9 Origin and evolution of sexes
- 576 Microbes
 - Class here microbiology
 - For Schizomycetes, see 589.9; fungi, 589.2; Protozoa, 593.1*
 - .09 Historical treatment
 - Class historical treatment in specific areas in 576.19
 - .1 General principles
 - .11 Physiology
 - Add to 576.11 the numbers following 574.1 in 574.11–574.19, e.g.,
anaerobic respiration 576.1128
 - .14 Anatomy and morphology
 - .15 Ecology
 - .16 Economic microbiology
 - .162 Beneficial microorganisms
 - .163 Food microbiology
 - Microorganisms occurring in food
 - [.164] Industrial microbiology
 - Class in 660.62
 - .165 Deleterious microorganisms
 - Toxic, pathogenic, obnoxious
 - .19 Geographical treatment
 - Add to 576.19 the numbers following 574.9 in 574.909–574.999, e.g.,
fresh-water microorganisms 576.1929

[.2] **Immunity**

Class in 574.29, 581.29, 591.29

[.4] **Pathogenicity**

Class in 574.2, 581.2, 591.2

.6 **Ultramicrobes**

.62 **Rickettsiae**

.64 **Viruses**

Including interferons

Class here virology

.648 **Types of viruses**

.648 2 **Bacterial viruses (Bacteriophages)**

.648 3 **Plant viruses**

For bacterial viruses, see 576.6482

.648 4 **Animal viruses**

577 General nature of life

Origin and beginnings of life, conditions needed for life, differences between living and nonliving substances

[.011-.013] **Origin, beginnings, abiogenesis**

Numbers discontinued; class in 577

[.2-.6] **Specific topics**

Numbers discontinued; class in 577

[.7] **Degeneration and death**

Class in 574.2, 581.2, 591.2

[.8] **Sex**

Class in 574.36

578 Microscopy in biology

Class comprehensive works on microscopy [*formerly* 578] in 502.8

[.1] **Microscopes**

Class in 535.332

.4 **Use of microscopes**

Including photomicrography

Add to 578.4 the numbers following 535.332 in 535.3322-535.3325, e.g., use of electron microscopes 578.45

[.46] **Photomicrography**

Number discontinued; class in 578.4

.6 Slide preparation*For slide preparation of plant tissues, see 578.8; of animal tissues, 578.9***.62 Fixation techniques**

Chemical and freezing-drying techniques

.63 Microtomes and microtomy

Frozen-section and section-cutting techniques

.64 Stain techniques**.65 Mounting techniques****.8 Slide preparation of plant tissues**

Add to 578.8 the numbers following 578.6 in 578.62–578.65, e.g., staining plant tissues 578.84

.9 Slide preparation of animal tissues

Add to 578.9 the numbers following 578.6 in 578.62–578.65, e.g., fixation of animal tissues 578.92

579 Collection and preservation of biological specimens**.1 Preparing skeletons****.2 Preserving total specimens**

Embalming, mummification, pickling

.4 Taxidermy**.6 Techniques of collecting and transporting****[.7–.8] Display and maintenance**

Class in 069.53

580 Botanical sciences*For paleobotany, see 561***.7 Study and teaching****.74 Exhibits****.742 Herbariums**

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 580.742

.744 Botanical gardens

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 580.744

581 Botany

Class herbariums in 580.742, botanical gardens in 580.744

For specific plants and groups of plants, see 582-589

.07 Study and teaching

.072 Research

.072 4 Experimental botany

Including tissue and organ culture, use of specific plants and groups of plants to study general botany

.09 Historical treatment

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 581.9

SUMMARY

- 581.1 Physiology of plants
- .2 Pathology of plants
- .3 Development and maturation of plants
- .4 Anatomy and morphology of plants
- .5 Ecology of plants
- .6 Economic botany
- .8 Tissue, cellular, molecular botany
- .9 Geographical treatment

.1 Physiology of plants

Class here comprehensive works on physiology and anatomy

Class pathological physiology in 581.21, microphysiology in 581.8,

For development and maturation, see 581.3; anatomy, 581.4

SUMMARY

- 581.11 Circulation
- .12 Respiration and transpiration
- .13 Nutrition and metabolism
- .14 Secretion and excretion
- .15 Genetics
- .16 Reproduction (Propagation)
- .17 Histogenesis
- .18 Movements and control mechanisms
- .19 Biophysics and biochemistry

.11 Circulation

.113 Circulatory fluids

.116 Organs of circulation

.12 Respiration and transpiration

Class catabolism [*formerly* 581.12] in 581.133

.121 Aerobic respiration

.124 Intercellular respiration

-
- .128 Anaerobic respiration
 - .129 Transpiration
 - .13 Nutrition and metabolism
 - .132 Ingestion and digestion
 - .133 Metabolism
 - Catabolism [*formerly* 581.12] and anabolism
 - Including assimilation
 - .133 4 Food synthesis
 - .133 42 Photosynthesis
 - Sugar and starch synthesis by autotrophic plants
 - .133 43 Chemosynthesis
 - Food synthesis by heterotrophic plants
 - .133 45 Protein synthesis
 - .133 46 Lipid synthesis
 - .133 5 Mineral metabolism
 - .133 54 Macronutrient elements
 - Utilization of sulfur, phosphorus, iron, calcium, potassium, magnesium, sodium salts
 - .133 56 Micronutrient elements (Trace elements)
 - Utilization of manganese, copper, zinc, boron, molybdenum, aluminum, silicon, selenium compounds
 - .133 8 Food storage
 - [.134] Growth processes
 - Class in 581.31
 - [.135] Development
 - Class in 581.3
 - [.139] Longevity
 - Class in 581.374
 - .14 Secretion and excretion
 - For transpiration, see* 581.129
 - .15 Genetics
 - Heredity and variation
 - .151 Physiological genetics
 - Chemical and embryological genetics, cytogenetics
 - Class DNA and RNA in 581.8732
 - .152 Environmental factors

-
- .158 **Hybrids**
 - .159 **Abrupt deviations**
 - .159 2 **Mutations**
 - Inheritable abrupt artificial and natural deviations
 - Including effects of radiations (radiogenetics)
 - .159 3 **Sports**
 - Noninheritable abrupt deviations
 - .16 **Reproduction (Propagation)**
 - Add to 581.16 the numbers following 574.16 in 574.162–574.166, e.g., conjugation 581.1662
 - .17 **Histogenesis**
 - Formation and differentiation of tissues
 - Class regeneration [*formerly* 581.17] in 581.31
 - [.172] **Histogenesis**
 - Number discontinued; class in 581.17
 - .18 **Movements and control mechanisms**
 - Class here response to stimuli
 - .182 **Hydration movements**
 - Movements in nonliving plant tissues or organs resulting from hydration or dehydration of cell walls, e.g., splitting of pods, opening of capsules
 - .183 **Growth movements**
 - .183 2 **Tropisms**
 - .183 3 **Nastic movements**
 - .184 **Turgor movements**
 - Movements caused by reversible changes in cell volume, e.g., wilting, opening and closing of stomates
 - .185 **Nutation and circumnutation**
 - Movements caused by unequal rates of growth, e.g., twining
 - .188 **Control mechanisms**
 - Including physiological balance
 - Class control of a specific function with the subject, e.g., control of respiration 581.12
 - .19 **Biophysics and biochemistry**
 - Add to 581.19 the numbers following 574.19 in 574.191–574.192, e.g., enzymes 581.1925
 - Class physics and chemistry of a specific process or part of plants with the process or part, e.g., chemistry of metabolism 581.133

.2 Pathology of plants

Including galls

Class here pathogenicity [*formerly* 576.4], degeneration and death [*both formerly* 577.7]Add to 581.2 the numbers following 574.2 in 574.21–574.29, e.g., immunity 581.29 [*formerly* 576.2]

Class histopathology in 581.828, cell pathology in 581.8765

|.27] **Galls**

Number discontinued; class in 581.2

|.28] **Control methods**

Class in 632

.3 Development [*formerly also* 581.135] and maturation of plants*For histogenesis, see* 581.17**.31 Growth processes [*formerly* 581.134] and regeneration [*formerly* 581.17]****.32–.37 Gametogenesis, embryology, sex, aging, longevity**Add to 581.3 the numbers following 574.3 in 574.32–574.37, e.g., longevity 581.374 [*formerly* 581.139]**.38 Evolution**

Class genetics in 581.15

.4 Anatomy and morphology of plants

Class pathological anatomy in 581.22, anatomical embryology in 581.332, microanatomy in 581.8

.41 Circulatory organs

Fibrovascular bundles, xylem, phloem, cambium layer, veins

.42 Respiratory organs

Stomates, lenticels, guard cells, intercellular systems

.43 Nutritive and metabolic organs*For leaves and fronds, see* 581.497**.44 Secretory and excretory organs***For stomates and lenticels, see* 581.42**.46 Reproductive organs****.47 Motor and integumentary organs**

Epidermis; surface protuberances, e.g., thorns, tentacles

.49 Regional and topographic anatomy**.495 Stems****.497 Leaves and fronds****.498 Roots**

.5 Ecology of plants

Interrelation of plants to environment and to each other

Class here adaptations

Add to 581.5 the numbers following 574.5 in 574.52–574.57, e.g., communities 581.524 [*formerly also* 581.55]

[.522 5–.522 6] Structural adaptation and dissemination and migration

Numbers discontinued; class in 581.522

[.524 2–.524 5] Invasion, succession, zonation, alternation

Numbers discontinued; class in 581.524

[.533] Nutritive specialization

Number discontinued; class in 581.53

.6 Economic botany

.61 Plants beneficial to man's interests

For edible and medicinal plants, see 581.63; plants of industrial and technological value, 581.64

.63 Edible and medicinal plants

.632 Edible plants

.634 Medicinal plants

.64 Plants of industrial and technological value

.65 Plants deleterious to man's interests

Including weeds

For allergenic plants, see 581.67; poisonous plants, 581.69

.67 Allergenic plants

.69 Poisonous plants

.8 Tissue, cellular, molecular botany

Add to 581.8 the numbers following 574.8 in 574.82–574.88, e.g., cytology 581.87

For histogenesis, see 581.17

.9 Geographical treatment

Add to 581.9 the numbers following 574.9 in 574.909–574.999, e.g., desert plants 581.90954

582–589 Specific plants and groups of plants

Class here taxonomic botany

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01–03 Standard subdivisions

04 General principles

Add to 04 the numbers following 581 in 581.1–581.8,
e.g., genetics 0415

Class geographical treatment in 09

05–09 Other standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works in 581

582 Spermatophyta (Seed-bearing plants)

Use 582.001–582.009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical treatment in 582.09

For Angiospermae, see 583–584; Gymnospermae, 585

582.01–582.09 General principles

Class comprehensive works in 582

.01–.03 Physiology, pathology, development and maturation

Add to 582.0 the numbers following 581 in 581.1–581.3, e.g.,
reproduction 582.016

.04 Anatomy and morphology

Class pathological anatomy in 582.022, anatomical embryology in
582.0332, microanatomy in 582.08

.041–.044 Circulatory, respiratory, nutritive, metabolic, secretory,
excretory organs

Add to 582.04 the numbers following 581.4 in 581.41–581.44, e.g.,
respiratory organs 582.042

.046 Reproductive organs

.046 3 Flowers and their parts

Including pollen, stamens, pistils, ovaries

.046 4 Fruit

.046 7 Seeds

.047–.049 Motor and integumentary organs; regional and topographic
anatomy

Add to 582.04 the numbers following 581.4 in 581.47–581.49,
e.g., stems 582.0495

.05–.09 Other general principles

Add to 582.0 the numbers following 581 in 581.5–581.9, e.g.,
ecology 582.05

- .1 **Special groupings**
Class specific classes, orders, families, genera, species in 583–585
- .12 ***Herbaceous plants**
Seed plants without persistent woody tissue
For herbaceous flowering plants, see 582.13; herbaceous shrubs and vines, 582.14
- .13 ***Herbaceous flowering plants**
Class here wild flowers, comprehensive works on flowering plants
For woody flowering plants, see 582.15
- .14 **Herbaceous shrubs and vines**
Succulent, carpet, mat, cushion, bush
- .15 ***Woody plants**
Flowering and nonflowering
For trees, see 582.16; woody shrubs, 582.17; woody vines, 582.18
- .16 **Trees**
Class here dendrology
Use 582.16001–582.16009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical treatment in 582.1609
- .160 1–.160 9 **General principles**
Add to 582.160 the numbers following 581 in 581.1–581.9, e.g., ecology 582.1605
- .17 ***Woody shrubs**
Class here comprehensive works on shrubs
For herbaceous shrubs, see 582.14
- .18 ***Woody vines**
Class here comprehensive works on vines
For herbaceous vines, see 582.14

* Add as instructed under 582–589



583–584 Angiospermae (Flowering plants)

Families listed under orders are based on Hutchinson, John, *The Families of Flowering Plants*, 1959

Class comprehensive works in 582.13

583 *Dicotyledones (Dicotyledons)

Arrange by orders as below; but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically by families

SUMMARY

- 583.1 Primitive orders
 - .2 Discifloral plants
 - .3 Leguminales and related orders
 - .4 Myrtales and related orders
 - .5 Rubiales and related orders
 - .6 Ericales and related orders
 - .7 Apocynales and related orders
 - .8 Personales and related orders
 - .9 Monochlamydeae (Apetalae)

.1 Primitive orders

SUMMARY

- 583.11 Ranales and related orders
 - .12 Sarraceniales and related orders
 - .13 Capparidales, Violales, Bixales
 - .14 Pittosporales and Polygalales
 - .15 Caryophyllales and Tamaricales
 - .16 Guttiferales, Theales, Ochnales
 - .17 Malvales
 - .19 Tiliales

.11 Ranales and related orders

.111 *Ranales

Cabombaceae, Ceratophyllaceae (hornwort family), Helleboraceae, Nymphaeaceae (water-lily family), Paeoniaceae, Podophyllaceae, Ranunculaceae (buttercup family)

.112 *Dilleniales

Dilleniaceae (dillenia family), Crossosomataceae

For *Brunelliaceae*, see 583.397; *Connaraceae*, 583.28

.114 *Magnoliales

Magnoliaceae (magnolia family), Cercidiphyllaceae, Himantandraceae, Illiciaceae, Lactoridaceae, Schisandraceae, Trochodendraceae, Winteraceae

For *Canellaceae*, see 583.138

* Add as instructed under 582–589

- .115 ***Annonales**
 Annonaceae (custard-apple family), Eupomatiaceae
- .117 ***Berberidales**
 Berberidaceae (barberry family), Circaeasteraceae, Lardizabalaceae,
 Menispermaceae, Nandinaceae, Sargentodoxaceae
- .12 **Sarraceniales and related orders**
- .121 ***Sarraceniales**
 Sarraceniaceae (pitcher-plant family), Droseraceae
- .122 ***Rhoeadales**
 Fumariaceae, Papaveraceae (poppy family)
- .123 ***Cruciales**
 Cruciferae (mustard family)
- .124 ***Resedales**
 Resedaceae (mignonette family) [*formerly* 583.135]
- .13 **Capparidales, Violales, Bixales**
- .131 ***Capparidales**
 Capparidaceae, Moringaceae, Tovariaceae
- .135 ***Violales**
 Violaceae (violet family)
 Class Resedaceae (mignonette family) [*formerly* 583.135] in 583.124
- .138 ***Bixales**
 Bixaceae (annatto family), Achatocarpaceae, Canellaceae (wild
 cinnamon family), Cistaceae, Cochlospermaceae, Flacourtiaceae,
 Hoplestigmataceae, Samydaceae
 For Lacistemaceae, see 583.925
- .14 **Pittosporales and Polygalales**
- .141 ***Pittosporales**
 Pittosporaceae (hedge laurel family), Byblidaceae,
 Stegnospemaceae, Tremandraceae, Vivianiaceae
- .143 ***Polygalales**
 Polygalaceae, Krameriaceae, Trigoniaceae, Vochysiaceae
 (San Juan family)
- .15 **Caryophyllales and Tamaricales**
- .152 ***Caryophyllales**
 Caryophyllaceae (pink family), Elatinaceae (waterwort family),
 Ficoidaceae, Molluginaceae, Portulacaceae (purslane family)

¹ Add as instructed under 582–589

- .158 ***Tamaricales**
 Tamaricaceae (tamarisk family), Fouquieriaceae, Frankeniaceae
- .16 **Guttiferales, Theales, Ochnales**
- .163 ***Guttiferales**
 Guttiferae (balsam fig family), Clusiaceae, Eucryphiaceae,
 Hypericaceae (Saint-John's-wort family), Quinaceae
- .166 ***Theales**
 Theaceae (tea, camellia family), Actinidiaceae, Bonnetiaceae,
 Caryocaraceae, Chlaenaceae, Marcgraviaceae, Medusagynaceae,
 Pellicieraceae, Pentaphyllaceae, Saurauaceae, Tetrameristaceae
- .167 ***Ochnales**
 Ochnaceae (red ironwood family), Ancistrocladaceae,
 Dipterocarpaceae, Sarcolaenaceae, Sphaerosepalaceae,
 Strasburgeriaceae
- .17 ***Malvales**
 Malvaceae (mallow, cotton family)
- .19 ***Tiliales**
 Tiliaceae (linden family), Bombacaceae (silk-cotton tree family),
 Dirachmaceae, Gonystylaceae, Peridiscaceae, Scyttopetalaceae,
 Sterculiaceae (coco family)
- .2 **Discifloral plants**
- .21 **Malpighiales and Geraniales**
- .214 ***Malpighiales**
 Malpighiaceae, Balanitaceae, Ctenolophonaceae, Erythroxylaceae,
 Huaceae, Humiriaceae, Irvingiaceae, Ixonanthaceae, Ledocarpaceae,
 Lepidobotryaceae, Linaceae (flax family), Zygophyllaceae (lignum
 vitae family)
- .216 ***Geraniales**
 Geraniaceae (geranium family), Balsaminaceae (jewelweed family),
 Limnanthaceae (false-mermaid family), Oxalidaceae (wood-sorrel
 family), Tropaeolaceae (nasturtium family)
- .24 ***Rutales**
 Rutaceae (rue family), Averrhoaceae, Burseraceae (torchwood family),
 Simaroubaceae (ailanthus family)
- .25 ***Meliales**
 Meliaceae (mahogany family)
- .26 ***Olacales**
 Olacaceae, Aptandraceae, Dipentodontaceae, Medusandraceae,
 Octoknemaceae, Opiliaceae

* Add as instructed under 582-589

- .27 **Celastrales and Rhamnales**
- .271 ***Celastrales**
 Celastraceae (staff-tree family), Aextoxicaceae, Aquifoliaceae (holly family), Capusiaceae, Cardiopteridaceae, Cneoraceae, Corynocarpaceae, Cyrillaceae, Empetraceae (crowberry family), Erythropalaceae, Goupiaceae, Hippocrateaceae, Icacinaceae, Koeberliniaceae, Pandaceae, Pentadiplandraceae, Salvadoraceae, Stackhousiaceae
 For Scyphostegiaceae, see 583.962
- .279 ***Rhamnales**
 Rhamnaceae (buckthorn family), Elaeagnaceae, Heteropyxidaceae, Vitaceae (Ampelidaceae, grape family)
- .28 ***Sapindales**
 Sapindaceae (soapberry family), Aceraceae (maple family), Akaniaceae, Anacardiaceae (cashew, sumac family), Connaraceae, Didiereaceae, Hippocastanaceae, Melianthaceae, Podoaceae, Sabiaceae, Staphyleaceae
 For Julianiaceae, see 583.973
- .29 ***Coriariales**
 Coriariaceae
- .3 **Leguminales and related orders**
- .32 ***Leguminales**
- .321 ***Mimosaceae (Mimosa family)**
- .322 ***Papilionaceae (Pea family)**
- .323 ***Caesalpiniaceae (Senna family)**
- .37 ***Rosales**
- .372 ***Rosaceae (Rose family)**
- .373 ***Chailletiaceae**
- .374 ***Calycanthaceae**
- .38 ***Saxifragales**
 Saxifragaceae (saxifrage family), Adoxaceae, Cephalotaceae (Australian pitcher-plant family), Crassulaceae, Donatiaceae, Eremosynaceae, Francoaceae, Parnassiaceae, Valiliaceae
- .39 **Hamamelidales and Cunoniales**
- .394 ***Hamamelidales**
 Hamamelidaceae (witch-hazel family), Bruniaceae, Buxaceae, Daphniphyllaceae, Eucommiaceae, Myrothamnaceae, Platanaceae, Stachyuraceae, Tetracentraceae

* Add as instructed under 582-589

- .397 ***Cunoniales**
 Cunoniaceae, Baueraceae, Brunelliaceae, Escalloniaceae, Greyiaceae,
 Grossulariaceae, Hydrangeaceae, Philadelphaceae, Pterostemonaceae
 For Crypteroniaceae, Oliniaceae, see 583.44
- .4 **Myrtales and related orders**
- .42 ***Myrtales**
 Myrtaceae (myrtle family), Combretaceae (myrobalan family), Lecythi-
 daceae (Brazil-nut family), Melastomaceae (meadow-beauty family),
 Rhizophoraceae (mangrove family)
 For Punicaceae, Sonneratiaceae, see 583.44
- .44 ***Lythrales**
 Lythraceae (loosestrife family), Callitrichaceae, Crypteroniaceae, Halor-
 rhagaceae, Oliniaceae, Onagraceae, Punicaceae (pomegranate family),
 Sonneratiaceae, Trapaceae (Hydrocaryaceae)
- .45 **Loasales and Passiflorales**
- .453 ***Loasales**
 Loasaceae, Turneraceae
- .456 ***Passiflorales**
 Passifloraceae (passionflower family), Achariaceae, Malesherbiaceae
- .46 ***Cucurbitales**
 Cucurbitaceae (gourd family), Begoniaceae (begonia family), Caricaceae
 (papaya family), Datisceae (false hemp family)
- .47 ***Cactales**
 Cactaceae (cactus family)
- .48 ***Umbellales**
 Umbelliferae (carrot family)
 Class Alangiaceae, Araliaceae (ginseng family), Cornaceae (dogwood
 family), Nyssaceae (tupelo family) [*all formerly 583.48*] in 583.687
- .5 **Rubiales and related orders**
- .52 ***Rubiales**
 Rubiaceae (madder family), Caprifoliaceae (honeysuckle family),
 Dialypetalanthaceae
- .53 ***Valerianales**
 Valerianaceae (valerian family), Calyceraceae, Dipsacaceae
 (teasel family)
- .54 ***Bignoniales**
 Bignoniaceae (catalpa family), Pedaliaceae (Pedalium, unicorn-
 plant family) [*both formerly 583.8*], Cobacaceae, Martyniaceae

* Add as instructed under 582-589

- .55 ***Asterales (Compositae)**
 Common names: asters, calendulas, camomiles, chicory, chrysanthemums, everlasting flowers, groundsels, ironweed, lettuce, ragweed, sneezeweed, sunflowers, thistles
- .57 ***Campanales**
 Campanulaceae (bluebell, bellflower family), Lobeliaceae (lobelia family)
 Class Goodeniaceae, Stylidiaceae [*both formerly* 583.57] in 583.58
- .58 ***Goodeniales**
 Goodeniaceae, Stylidiaceae [*both formerly* 583.57], Brunoniaceae
- .6 **Ericales and related orders**
- .62 ***Ericales**
 Ericaceae (heath family), Clethraceae (white-alder family), Diapensiaceae (flowering-moss family), Epacridaceae, Lenoaceae, Monotropaceae (Indian-pipe family), Pyrolaceae, Vacciniaceae (huckleberry, winter-green family)
- .67 **Primulales and Myrsinales**
- .672 ***Primulales**
 Primulaceae (primrose family), Plumbaginaceae (plumbago family)
- .677 ***Myrsinales**
 Myrsinaceae (marlberry family), Aegicerataceae, Theophrastaceae
- .68 **Ebenales, Styracales, Araliales**
- .685 ***Ebenales**
 Ebenaceae (ebony family), Sapotaceae (sapodilla family), Sarcospermaceae
- .686 ***Styracales**
 Styracaceae (storax family), Diclidanthaceae, Lissocarpaceae, Symplocaceae (sweetleaf family)
- .687 ***Araliales**
 Araliaceae (ginseng family), Alangiaceae, Cornaceae (dogwood family), Nyssaceae (tupelo family) [*all formerly* 583.48]
 For *Caprifoliaceae*, see 583.52; *Garryaceae*, 583.982
- .7 **Apocynales and related orders**
- .72 ***Apocynales**
 Apocynaceae (dogbane family), Asclepiadaceae (milkweed family), Periplocaceae, Plocospermaceae
- .74 ***Loganiales**
 Loganiaceae, Antoniaceae, Buddleiaceae, Oleaceae (olive family), Potaliaceae, Spigeliaceae, Strychnaceae

* Add as instructed under 582–589

- .75 ***Gentianales**
 Gentianaceae (gentian, buck-bean family), Menyanthaceae
- .76 ***Polemoniales**
 Polemoniaceae (phlox family), Cuscutaceae, Hydrophyllaceae
 (waterleaf family)
- .77 ***Boraginales**
 Boraginaceae (borage, forget-me-not family)
- .79 ***Solanales**
 Solanaceae (nightshade family), Convolvulaceae (morning-glory
 family), Nolanaceae
- .8 **Personales and related orders**
 Class Bignoniaceae (catalpa family), Pedaliaceae (Pedalium, unicorn-
 plant family) [*both formerly* 583.8] in 583.54
- .81 ***Personales**
 Acanthaceae (acanthus family), Columelliaceae, Gesneriaceae (gloxinia,
 African violet, flame violet), Lentibulariaceae (bladderwort family),
 Orobanchaceae, Scrophulariaceae (snapdragon family)
- .87 ***Lamiales**
 Labiatae (mint family) [*formerly* 583.89], Globulariaceae (globe daisy
 family), Myoporaceae, Selaginaceae
 Class Phrymaceae (lopseed family) [*formerly* 583.87] in 583.88
- .88 ***Verbenales**
 Phrymaceae (lopseed family) [*formerly* 583.87], Verbenaceae (vervain
 family), Chloanthaceae, Elrethaceae, Stilbeaceae
- .89 ***Plantaginales**
 Plantaginaceae (plantain family)
 Class Labiatae (mint family) [*formerly* 583.89] in 583.87
- [.899] **Plantaginales**
 Number discontinued; class in 583.89
- .9 **Apetalae**

SUMMARY

- 583.91 Chenopodiales and Polygonales
 .92 Podostemales, Aristolochiales, Piperales
 .93 Laurales, Proteales, Thymelaeales
 .94 Santalales
 .95 Euphorbiales
 .96 Balanopsidales and Urticales
 .97 Leitneriales and related orders
 .98 Salicales and Garryales

* Add as instructed under 582-589

- .91 **Chenopodiales and Polygonales**
- .913 ***Chenopodiales**
 Chenopodiaceae (goosefoot family), Agdestidaceae, Amaranthaceae
 (amaranth family), Barbeuiaceae, Basellaceae, Batidaceae, Cyno-
 crabaceae (dog cabbage family), Gyrostemonaceae, Petiveriaceae,
 Phytolaccaceae (pokeweed family)
- .917 ***Polygonales**
 Polygonaceae (buckwheat family), Illecebraceae
- .92 **Podostemales, Aristolochiales, Piperales**
- .921 ***Podostemales**
 Podostemaceae (riverweed family), Hydrostachyaceae
- .922 ***Aristolochiales**
 Aristolochiaceae, Cytinaceae, Hydnoraceae, Nepenthaceae (Indian
 pitcher-plant family)
- .925 ***Piperales**
 Piperaceae (pepper family), Chloranthaceae, Lacistemaceae,
 Saururaceae (lizard's-tail family)
- .93 **Laurales, Proteales, Thymelaeales**
- .931 ***Laurales**
 Lauraceae (laurel family), Austrobaileyaceae, Gomortegaceae,
 Hernandiaceae, Monimiaceae, Myristicaceae, Trimeniaceae
- .932 ***Proteales**
 Proteaceae (honeysuckle family)
- .933 ***Thymelaeales**
 Thymelaeaceae, Aquilariaceae, Geissolomataceae, Nyctaginaceae
 (four-o'clock family), Penaeaceae
 For Gonystylaceae, see 583.19
- .94 ***Santalales**
 Santalaceae (sandalwood family), Balanophoraceae (Cynomorium),
 Grubbiaceae, Loranthaceae (mistletoe family), Myzodendraceae
- .95 ***Euphorbiales**
 Euphorbiaceae (spurge family)
- .96 **Balanopsidales and Urticales**
- .961 ***Balanopsidales**
 Balanopsidaceae

* Add as instructed under 582-589

- .962 ***Urticales**
 Urticaceae (nettle family), Barbeyaceae, Cannabiaceae, Moraceae
 (mulberry family), Scyphostegiaceae, Ulmaceae (elm family)
 For Eucommiaceae, see 583.394
- .97 **Leitneriales and related orders**
- .972 ***Leitneriales**
 Leitneriaceae (corkwood family)
- .973 ***Juglandales**
 Juglandaceae (walnut family), Julianiaceae, Picrodendraceae,
 Rhoipteleaceae
- .974 ***Myricales**
 Myricaceae (bayberry family)
- .975 ***Casuarinales**
 Casuarinaceae (beefwood family)
- .976 ***Fagales**
 Fagaceae (beech, oak family), Betulaceae (birch family), Corylaceae
- .98 **Salicales and Garryales**
- .981 ***Salicales**
 Salicaceae (willow family)
- .982 ***Garryales**
 Garryaceae (feverbush)

584 ***Monocotyledones (Monocotyledons)**

Arrange by orders as below; but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically
 by families

SUMMARY

- 584.1 **Burmanniales and Orchidales**
- .2 **Zingiberales and related orders**
- .3 **Liliales, Xyridales, Commelinales**
- .4 **Alstroemeriales, Agavales, Juncales**
- .5 **Palmales**
- .6 **Pandanales and related orders**
- .7 **Triuridales and related orders**
- .8 **Eriocaulales and Cyperales**
- .9 **Graminales**
- .1 **Burmanniales and Orchidales**
- .13 ***Burmanniales**
 Burmanniaceae, Corsiaceae, Thismiaceae

* Add as instructed under 582-589

- .15 ***Orchidales**
 Orchidaceae (orchid family)
- .2 **Zingiberales and related orders**
- .21 ***Zingiberales**
 Zingiberaceae (ginger family), Cannaceae (canna family), Lowiaceae,
 Marantaceae (arrowroot family), Musaceae (banana family),
 Strelitziaceae
- .22 ***Bromeliales**
 Bromeliaceae (pineapple family)
- .24 ***Iridales**
 Iridaceae (iris family)
- .25 ***Amaryllidales**
 Amaryllidaceae (amaryllis family)
- .27 ***Dioscoreales**
 Dioscoreaceae (yam family), Roxburghiaceae, Stenomeridaceae,
 Trichopodaceae
- .29 ***Haemodorrals**
 Haemodoraceae (bloodwort family), Apostasiaceae, Hypoxidaceae,
 Philydraceae, Taccaceae, Velloziaceae (tree lily family)
- .3 **Liliales, Xyridales, Commelinales**
- .32 ***Liliales**
 Including Pontederiaceae, Ruscaceae, Tecophilaeaceae
- .323 ***Smilacaceae** (Cat briers)
- .324 ***Liliaceae** (Lily family)
- .325 ***Trilliaceae** (Trillium family)
- .36 ***Xyridales**
 Xyridaceae (yellow-eyed grass family), Rapateaceae
- [.37] **Mayacaceae** (Mayaca family)
 Class in 584.38
- .38 ***Commelinales**
 Mayacaceae (mayaca family) [*formerly* 584.37], Commelinaceae
 (spiderwort family), Cartonemataceae, Flagellariaceae
- .4 **Alstroemeriales, Agavales, Juncales**
- .42 ***Alstroemeriales**
 Alstroemeriaceae, Petermanniaceae, Philesiaceae

* Add as instructed under 582–589

- .43 ***Agavales**
 Agavaceae, Xanthorrhoeaceae
- .45 ***Juncales**
 Juncaceae (rush family), Centrolepidaceae, Restionaceae, Thurniaceae
- .5 ***Palmales**
 Palmae (palm family)
- .6 **Pandanales and related orders**
- .61 Pandanales and Typhales
- .611 ***Pandanales**
 Pandanales (hala family)

584.612–584.613 Typhales

Class comprehensive works in 584.61

- .612 ***Sparganiaceae** (Bur-reed family)
- .613 ***Typhaceae** (Cattail family)
- .62 ***Cyclanthales**
 Cyclanthaceae
- .64 ***Arales**
 Araceae (arum family), Lemnaceae (duckweed family)
- .7 **Triuridales and related orders**
- .71 ***Triuridales**
 Triuridaceae
- .72 Alismatales and Najadales
- .721 ***Alismatales**
 Alismataceae (water-plantain family), Petrosaviaceae,
 Scheuchzeriaceae
- .722 ***Najadales**
 Najadaceae (najas family), Zannichelliaceae
- .73 ***Butomales**
 Butomaceae (water poppy family), Hydrocharitaceae (frogbit family)
- .74 Potamogetonales, Aponogetonales, Juncaginales
- .742 ***Potamogetonales**
 Potamogetonaceae (pondweed family), Ruppiaceae
- .743 ***Aponogetonales**
 Aponogetonaceae (lattice-plant family), Zosteraceae

* Add as instructed under 582–589

- .744 ***Juncaginales**
 Juncaginaceae (arrow-grass family), Lilaeaceae, Posidoniaceae
- .8 Eriocaulales and Cyperales**
- .81 ***Eriocaulales**
 Eriocaulaceae (pipewort family)
- .84 ***Cyperales**
 Cyperaceae (sedge family)
- .9 *Graminales**
 Gramineae and its tribes
 For Cyperaceae, see 584.84
- .92 ***Panicoideae**
 Paniceae (millet grasses), Andropogoneae (sugar cane, kafir corn grasses), Maydeae (Indian corn grasses)
- .93 ***Pooideae**
 Agrostae (fodder grasses), Anomochloae, Arundineae, Arundinelleae, Aveneae (oat grasses), Bambuseae (bamboo family), Chlorideae (gama grasses), Eragrostae, Festuceae (fescue grasses), Hordeae (wheat, barley, rye grasses), Leptureae, Lygeae, Nardeae, Olyreae, Oryzae (rice grasses), Pappophoreae, Parianeae, Phalarideae (canary grasses), Phareae, Sporoboleae, Stipeae, Streptochaeteae, Thysanolaeneae, Zoysiae
- 585 *Gymnospermae (Naked-seed plants)**
 Arrange by orders as below, but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically by families
- .1 ***Gnetales**
 Gnetaceae (gnetum family), Ephedraceae (ephedra, Mormon tea family), Welwitschiaceae (welwitschia family)
- .2 ***Coniferales (Conifers)**
 Araucariaceae (araucaria family), Cephalotaxaceae, Cupressaceae (cypress family), Phyllocladaceae (phyllocladus family), Pinaceae (pine family), Podocarpaceae (podocarp family), Taxaceae (yew family), Taxodiaceae (bald cypress family)
- .7 ***Ginkgoales**
 Ginkgoaceae (maidenhair trees, ginkgo trees)
- .9 ***Cycadales (Cycads)**
 Cycadaceae, Zamiaceae (sage palm family)

* Add as instructed under 582–589

586 Cryptogamia (Seedless plants)

Use 586.001–586.009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical treatment in 586.09

For Pteridophyta, see 587; Bryophyta, 588; Thallophyta, 589

.01–.09 General principles

Add to 586.0 the numbers following 581 in 581.1–581.9, e.g., anatomy 586.04

587 *Pteridophyta (Vascular cryptogams)**.1 *Isoetales (Quillworts)**

Isoetes

.2 *Sphenopsida

Equisetales (horsetail family)

.3 *Filicineae**.31 *Filicales (Ferns)**

Cyatheaceae (cyathea family), Dicksoniaceae (Dicksonia family), Gleicheniaceae (gleichenia family), Hymenophyllaceae (filmy fern family), Marsiliaceae (water clover family), Osmundaceae (flowering fern family), Polypodiaceae (polypody family), Salviniaceae (salvinia family), Schizaeaceae (curly grass family)

.33 *Eusporangiated ferns

Marattiales, Ophioglossales (adder's tongue, grape, rattlesnake ferns)

.4 *Psilopsida

Psilotales

.9 *Lycopsidea (Club mosses)

Lycopodiales, Selaginellales

For Isoetales, see 587.1

588 *Bryophyta**.1 *Sphagnales**

Sphagnaceae (peat and bog mosses)

.2 *Musci (True mosses)

Andreaeales (black mosses), Bryales (common mosses)

For Sphagnales, see 588.1

.3 Anthocerotales and Hepaticae**.32 *Anthocerotales (Hornworts)****.33 *Hepaticae (Liverworts)**

Jungermanniaceae (scale mosses), Marchantiaceae (great liverworts), Ricciaceae

* Add as instructed under 582–589

589 ***Thallophyta****SUMMARY**

- 589.1 **Lichenes (Lichens)**
 - .2 **Fungi**
 - .3 **Algae (Phycology)**
 - .4 **Specific types of algae**
 - .7 **Schizophyta (Fission plants)**
 - .9 **Schizomycetes**

 - .1 ***Lichenes (Lichens)**
 - Symbiotic associations of fungi and algae
 - .2 ***Fungi**
 - Class here mycology
 - For Lichenes, see 589.1*
-
- 589.22–589.25 **Eumycophyta (True fungi)**
- Class comprehensive works in 589.2
- .22 ***Basidiomycetes (Basidium fungi)**
 - .221 ***Lycoperdales (Puffballs and related fungi)**
 - Hymenogasterales (false tubers), Nidulariales (bird's-nest fungi),
Phallales (stinkhorn fungi)
 - .222 ***Agaricales (Mushrooms and related fungi)**
 - Agaricaceae (gill fungi), Polyporaceae (pore fungi)
 - .225 ***Uredinales (Rust fungi)**
 - .227 ***Ustilaginales (Smut fungi)**
 - .23 ***Ascomycetes (Sac fungi)**
 - Plectomycetes, Discomycetes, Pyrenomycetes
 - Common names: black rot, cup fungi, ergot, mildews, *Penicillium*, yeasts
 - For downy mildews, see 589.252*
 - .24 ***Deuteromycetes (Imperfect fungi)**
 - Melanconiales, Moniliales (Hypomycetales), Sphaeropsidales
 - .25 ***Phycomycetes (Molds)**
 - .252 ***Peronosporales (Downy mildews)**
 - .256 ***Saprolegniales (Water molds) [*formerly 589.26*]**
 - .258 **Mucorales and other Phycomycetes [*both formerly 589.28*]**
 - Mucorineae (black mold), Chytridiales (chytrids),
Entomophthorales (fly fungi)

¹ Add as instructed under 582–589

- [.26] **Saprolegniales (Water molds)**
 Class in 589.256
- [.28] **Mucorales and other Phycomycetes**
 Class in 589.258
- .29 ***Myxomycophyta (Slime molds)**
 Arcyriaceae, Stemonitaceae
- .3 **Algae (Phycology)**
 For specific types of algae, see 589.4; Lichenes, 589.1
- .309 **Historical treatment**
 Class historical treatment in specific places in 589.39
- .31--.39 **General principles**
 Add to 589.3 the numbers following 581 in 581.1–581.9, e.g.,
 industrial algae 589.364
- .4 **Specific types of algae**
 Class here phytoplankton [*formerly* 589.62]
- .41 ***Rhodophyta (Red algae)**
 Bangioideae, Florideae (red seaweeds, sea mosses)
- .43 ***Pyrrophyta (Dinoflagellates)**
 Amphilothes, Desmomonadales, Dinococcales, Dinophysiales,
 Dinotrichales, Gymnodiniales, Kolkwitzellales, Peridinales,
 Prorocentrales, Rhizodinales
- .44 ***Euglenophyta (Euglenoids)**
 Astasiaceae, Colaciaceae, Euglenaceae, Peranemaceae
- .45 ***Phacophyta (Brown algae)**
 Chordariales, Cutleriales, Desmarestiales, Dictyosiphonales, Ectocarpales
 (kelps), Fucales (seaweeds, rockweeds), Laminariales, Sphacelariales,
 Sporocninales, Tilopteridales
- .46 ***Cyanophyta (Blue-green algae) [*formerly* 589.8]**
 Chamaesiphonaceae, Chroococcaceae, Clastidiaceae, Nostocaceae,
 Oscillatoriaceae, Rivulariaceae, Seytonemataceae, Stigonemataceae
 Also called Cyanophyceae, Myxophyceae, Schizophyceae
- .47 ***Chlorophyta (Green algae)**
 Chaetophorales, Charales, Chlorococcales, Cladophorales, Conjugales,
 Oedogoniales, Siphonales, Ulotrichales, Volvocales
- .48 ***Chrysophyta (Golden algae)**
- .481 ***Bacillariophyceae (Diatoms) [*formerly* 589.62]**
 Centrales, Pennales

* Add as instructed under 582–589

- .486 ***Xanthophyceae (Yellow-green algae)**
- .487 ***Chrysophyceae**
- [.62] **Phytoplankton and Bacillariophyceae (diatoms)**
 Class phytoplankton in 589.4, Bacillariophyceae (diatoms) in 589.481
- .7 ***Schizophyta (Fission plants)**
 For *Schizomycetes*, see 589.9; *Eumycophyta*, 589.22–589.25;
 Cyanophyta, 589.46
- [.8] **Cyanophyta (Blue-green algae)**
 Class in 589.46
- .9 **Schizomycetes**
 Class here bacteriology
 Use 589.9001–589.9009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical
 treatment in 589.909
- .901–.909 **General principles**
 Add to 589.90 the numbers following 581 in 581.1–581.9, e.g.,
 anaerobic respiration 589.90128
- .92 ***Actinomycetales**
 Actinomycetaceae, Mycobacteriaceae
 Including Streptomyces
- .93 ***Chlamydobacteriales**
 Chlamydobacteriaceae
- .94 ***Caulobacteriales**
 Caulobacteriaceae, Gallionellaceae, Nevskiaceae, Pasteuriaceae
- .95 ***Eubacteriales**
 Acetobacteriaceae, Azotobacteriaceae, Bacillaceae, Bacteriaceae, Entero-
 bacteriaceae, Lactobacteriaceae, Micrococcaceae, Neisseriaceae, Nitro-
 bacteriaceae, Parvobacteriaceae, Pseudomonadaceae, Rhizobiaceae
- .96 ***Thiobacteriales**
 Achromatiaceae, Beggiatoaceae, Rhodobacteriaceae
- .98 ***Myxobacteriales**
 Archangiaceae, Myxococcaceae, Polyangiaceae, Sorangiaceae
- .99 ***Spirochaetales**
 Spirochaetaceae

¹ Add as instructed under 582–589

590 Zoological sciences*For paleozoology, see 560***.7 Study and teaching****.74 Exhibits****.742 Museums**

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 590.742

.744 Zoological gardens

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 590.744

591 Zoology

Class zoological gardens in 590.744

*For specific animals and groups of animals, see 592-599***.04 General special****.042 Rare, vanishing, extinct animals****.07 Study and teaching****.072 Research****.072 4 Experimental zoology**

Including tissue and organ culture, use of specific animals and groups of animals to study general zoology

.09 Historical treatment

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 591.9

SUMMARY**591.1 Physiology of animals****.2 Pathology of animals****.3 Development and maturation of animals****.4 Anatomy and morphology of animals****.5 Ecology of animals****.6 Economic zoology****.8 Tissue, cellular, molecular zoology****.9 Geographical treatment****.1 Physiology of animals**

Class here comprehensive works on physiology and anatomy

Class physiological psychology in 156.2, microphysiology in 591.8

*For pathological physiology, see 591.21; anatomy, 591.4; development and maturation, 591.3***.11-.13 Circulation, respiration, nutrition, metabolism**

Add to 591.1 the numbers following 574.1 in 574.11-574.13, e.g., circulatory fluids 591.113

- .14 Secretion and excretion
- .142 Endocrine secretion
- .143 Exocrine secretion
- .149 Excretion
- .15 Genetics
 - Add to 591.15 the numbers following 581.15 in 581.151–581.159, e.g., mutations 591.1592
- .16 Reproduction
 - Add to 591.16 the numbers following 574.16 in 574.162–574.166, e.g., parthenogenesis 591.162
- .17 Histogenesis
 - Formation and differentiation of tissues
- .18 Movements, senses, control mechanisms
- .182 Response to external stimuli
 - Class here sensory functions, physiology of sense organs
- .182 3 To light
- .182 5 To sound and other vibrations
- .182 6 To chemical stimuli
 - Including olfaction and gustation
- .182 7 To touch
 - Including irritability
- .185 Motor system and integument
- .185 2 Motor system
 - Muscles, connective tissue, skeletal system
 - Including locomotion, biomechanics
- .185 8 Integument
- .188 Control mechanisms
 - Nervous system and physiological balance
 - Class control of a specific organ or function with the subject, e.g., control of muscles 591.1852
- .19 Biophysics and biochemistry
 - Add to 591.19 the numbers following 574.19 in 574.191–574.192, e.g., radiobiology 591.1915
 - Class physics and chemistry of a specific process or part of animals with the process or part, e.g., sensory biophysics 591.182

.2 Pathology of animals

Class here pathogenicity [*formerly* 576.4], degeneration and death [*both formerly* 577.7]

Class histopathology in 591.828, cell pathology in 591.8765

.21 Pathological physiology

Add to 591.21 the numbers following 591.1 in 591.11–591.19, e.g., pathological physiology of excretion 591.2149

.22 Pathological anatomy

Class here teratology

Add to 591.22 the numbers following 591.4 in 591.41–591.49, e.g., pathological anatomy of excretory organs 591.224

.23–.29 Causes and immunity

Add to 591.2 the numbers following 574.2 in 574.23–574.29, e.g., immunity 591.29 [*formerly* 576.2]

.3 Development and maturation of animals

For histogenesis, see 591.17

.31–.37 Growth, regeneration, gametogenesis, embryology, sex, aging, longevity

Add to 591.3 the numbers following 574.3 in 574.31–574.37, e.g., sex 591.36

Number 591.34 for metamorphoses discontinued, class in 591.3

.38 Evolution

Class genetics in 591.15

.39 Young of animals**.4 Anatomy and morphology of animals**

Class anatomical embryology in 591.332, microanatomy in 591.8

For pathological anatomy, see 591.22

.41 Circulatory organs**.42 Respiratory organs****.43 Nutritive and metabolic organs****.44 Secretory and excretory organs****.46 Reproductive organs****.47 Muscular, skeletal, integumentary organs; connective tissues****.48 Nervous system and sense organs****.49 Regional and topographic anatomy**

Examples: anatomy of legs, of abdomens

.5 Ecology of animals

Interrelation of animals to environment and to each other ,

Class here adaptations, habits, behavior patterns

[.51] Behavior patterns

Number discontinued; class in 591.5

.52-.57 Specific relationships, environments, adaptations, habits, behavior, patterns

Add to 591.5 the numbers following 574.5 in 574.52-574.57, e.g., communities 591.524 [*formerly also* 591.55]

.59 Communication and production of sound**.6 Economic zoology**

Animals beneficial and deleterious to man's interests

.61 Beneficial animals**.65 Deleterious animals**

For poisonous animals, see 591.69

.69 Poisonous animals**.8 Tissue, cellular, molecular zoology**

Add to 591.8 the numbers following 574.8 in 574.82-574.88, e.g., cytology 591.87

For histogenesis, see 591.17

.9 Geographical treatment

Add to 591.9 the numbers following 574.9 in 574.909-574.999, e.g., marine zoology 591.92

592-599 Specific animals and groups of animals

Class here taxonomic zoology

Add to notation for each term identified by * as follows:

01-03 Standard subdivisions

04 General principles

Add to 04 the numbers following 591 in 591.1-591.8, e.g., genetics 0415

Class geographical treatment in 09

05-09 Other standard subdivisions

Class comprehensive works in 591

592 Invertebrates

Class here animal plankton

Use 592.001-592.009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical treatment in 592.09

For Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa, see 593; *Mollusca and molluscoidea*, 594; *other invertebrates*, 595

.01-.09 General principles

Add to 592.0 the numbers following 591 in 591.1-591.9, e.g.,
poisonous invertebrates 592.069

593 Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa**SUMMARY**

- 593.1 Protozoa Plasmodroma**
 .4 Porifera (Sponges)
 .5 Coelenterata
 .6 Anthozoa
 .7 Hydrozoa and Scyphozoa
 .8 Ctenophorae
 .9 Echinodermata, Enteropneusta, Linguatula

.1 *Protozoa *Plasmodroma**.11 *Sarcodina**

Class here Rhizopoda

For Foraminifera, see 593.12; Actinopoda, 593.13

.113 *Proteomyxa**.115 *Mycetozoa**

Eumycetozoa, Sorophora

.117 *Amoebina**.118 *Testacea****.12 *Foraminifera****.13 *Actinopoda**

For Radiolaria, see 593.14

.132 *Heliozoa**.14 *Radiolaria****.17 *Ciliophora****.172 *Ciliata**

Chonotricha, Euciliata, Holotricha, Peritricha, Protociliata

.175 *Suctoria**.18 *Mastigophora**

Chloromonadina, Chysomonadina, Cryptomonadina, Dinoflagellata,
Euglenoidina, Hypermastigina, Phytomonadina, Polymastigina,
Protomonadina, Rhizomastigina

.19 *Sporozoa

Acnidosporidia, Cnidosporidia, Telosporidia

* Add as instructed under 592-599

- .4 ***Porifera (Sponges)**
- .42 ***Calcispongiae**
 - Asconosa, Syconosa
- .44 ***Hyalospongiae**
 - Amphidiscophora, Hexasterophora
- .46 ***Demospongiae**
 - Carnosa, Choristida, Epipolasida, Hadromerina, Haplosclerina, Keratosa, Poecilosclerina
- .5 ***Coelenterata**
 - For Anthozoa, see 593.6, Hydrozoa and Scyphozoa, 593.7*
- .6 ***Anthozoa**
 - Alcyonaria, Zoantharia
 - Common names: corals, sea anemones, sea fans, sea pens
- .7 **Hydrozoa and Scyphozoa**
- .71 ***Hydrozoa**
 - Hydroida, Milleporina, Siphonophora, Stylasterina, Trachylina
 - Common names: hydras, hydroid polyps, jellyfish, medusas
- .73 ***Scyphozoa**
 - Charybdeidea, Corona, Lucernariidea, Rhizostomaeae, Semaestomaeae
- .8 ***Ctenophorae**
 - Nuda, Tentaculata
 - Common names: comb jellies, sea walnuts
- .9 ***Echinodermata, Enteropneusta, Linguatula**
 - 593.91–593.96 Echinodermata
 - Class comprehensive works in 593.9
- .91 ***Crinoidea (Sea lilies)**
 - Articulata, Comatulida, Flexibilia
- .93 ***Asteroidea (Starfish)**
 - Forcipulata, Phanerozoona, Spinulosa
- .94 ***Ophiuroidea**
 - Chilophiurida, Gnathophiurida, Laemophiurida, Phrynophiurida
 - Common names: basket stars, brittle stars

* Add as instructed under 592–599

.1 *Worms and related animals

Class here helminthology

.12 *Platyhelminthes and Nemertea**► 595.121–595.123 Platyhelminthes (Flatworms)**

Class comprehensive works in 595.12

.121 *Cestoidea

Cestoda (tapeworms), Cestodaria

.122 *Trematoda (Flukes)

Aspidogastrea, Digenea, Monogenea

.123 *Turbellaria (Planarians)

Acoela, Alloicoela, Polycladida, Rhabdocoela, Tricladida

.124 *Nemertea

Anopla, Enopla

.13 *Acanthocephala

Eoacanthocephala, Metacanthocephala

Class Nematodea (roundworms) [*formerly* 595.13] in 595.182**[.131] Nematomorpha (Horsehair worms)**

Class in 595.184

[.133] Acanthocephala

Number discontinued; class in 595.13

[.135] Chaetognatha and Entoprocta

Class Chaetognatha in 595.186, Entoprocta in 595.188

.14 *Annelida (Segmented worms)**.142 *Archannelida****.145 *Hirudinea (Leeches) [*formerly* 595.15]**

Gnathobdellida, Pharyngobdellida, Rhynchobdellida

.146 *Oligochaeta (Earthworms) [*formerly* 595.16]

Opisthopora, Plesiopora, Prosopora

.147 *Polychaeta [*formerly* 595.17]

Aplacophora, Errantia, Sedentaria

.148 *Myzostoma [*formerly* 595.178]**[.15] Hirudinea (Leeches)**

Class in 595.145

[.16] Oligochaeta (Earthworms)

Class in 595.146

*** Add as instructed under 592–599**

-
- .17 **Gephyrea and Phoronidea**
 Class Polychaeta [*formerly* 595.17] in 595.147
 - [.174-.176] **Gephyrea and Phoronidea**
 Numbers discontinued; class in 595.17
 - [.178] **Myzostoma**
 Class in 595.148
 - .18 ***Aschelminthes and other groups**
 - .181 ***Rotatoria (Rotifera, Wheel animalcules)**
 - .182 ***Nematoidea (Roundworms) [*formerly* 595.13]**
 - .183 ***Gastrotricha**
 - .184 ***Nematomorpha (Horsehair worms) [*formerly* 595.131]**
 - .185 ***Echinodera**
 - .186 ***Chaetognatha [*formerly* 595.135]**
 - .187 ***Tardigrada (Water bears)**
 - .188 ***Entoprocta [*formerly* 595.135]**
 - .2 ***Arthropoda**
 For Crustacea and related classes, see 595.3; *Progoneata*, 595.6
 - .3 ***Crustacea and related classes**
 - .32 ***Branchiopoda**
 Anostraca, Cladocera, Conchostraca, Notostraca
 - .33 ***Ostracoda**
 Cladocopa, Myodocopa, Platycopa, Podocopa
 - .34 ***Copepoda**
 Branchiura, Eucopepoda
 Common names: cyclops, fish lice
 - .35 ***Cirripedia (Barnacles)**
 Apoda, Ascothoracica, Rhizocephala, Thoracica
 - .36 ***Leptostraca**
 - .37 ***Eumalacostraca**
 For Cumacea and related orders, see 595.38
 - .371 ***Amphipoda (Sand fleas)**
 Caprellidea, Gammaridea, Hyperidea, Ingolfiellidea

* Add as instructed under 592-599

- .372 ***Isopoda**
 Asellota, Epicaridea, Flabellifera, Oniscoidea (sow bugs, wood lice), Phreatoicoidea, Valvifera
- .373 ***Thermosbaenacea**
- .374 ***Tanaidacea**
- .38 **Cumacea and related orders**
- .381 ***Cumacea**
- .382 ***Stomatopoda**
 Common names: glass crabs, mantis shrimps, sea mantles, sea onions, squillas
- .383 ***Mysidacea (Opossum shrimps)**
- .384 ***Decapoda**
- .384 1 ***Macrura (Lobsters, crayfish)**
- .384 2 ***Brachyura (Crabs)**
- .384 3 ***Natantia (Shrimps, prawns)**
- .384 4 ***Anomura (Hermit crabs, king crabs)**
- .385 ***Euphausiacea**
- .39 ***Chelicerata**
 For Arachnida, see 595.4
- .392 ***Xiphosura (Horseshoe crabs)**
- .394 ***Pycnogonida (Sea spiders)**
 Ascorhynchomorpha, Colossendeomorpha, Nymphonomorpha, Pycnogonomorpha
- .4 ***Arachnida**
- .42 ***Acari (Mites, ticks)**
 Holothyroidea, Notostigmata, Parasitiformes, Sarcopitiformes, Tetrápoduli, Trombidiformes
- .43 ***Phalangida (Harvestmen, daddy longlegs)**
- .44 ***Araneida (Araneae, True spiders)**
- .45 **Palpigradi and Pedipalpi**
- .452 ***Palpigradi**
- .453 ***Pedipalpi (Whip scorpions)**
- .46 ***Scorpiones (Scorpions)**
- .47 ***Pseudoscorpiones (Fake scorpions)**
- .48 ***Solifugae (Weasel spiders, sun spiders)**
- .5 ***Onychophora**

* Add as instructed under 592-599

- .6 ***Progoneata**
 For Insecta, see 595.7
- .61 ***Diplopoda (Millipedes)**
 Chilognatha, Pselaphognatha
- .62 ***Opisthogoneata**
 Chilopoda (centipedes)
- .63 ***Symphyla**
- .64 ***Paupoda**
- .7 **Insecta (Insects)**
 Class here entomology
 Use 595.7001–595.7009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical
 treatment in 595.709
- .701–.709 General principles
 Add to 595.70 the numbers following 591 in 591.1–591.9, e.g.,
 morphology 595.704

SUMMARY

- 595.71 Synaptera
- .72 Orthoptera and Dermaptera
- .73 Thysanoptera and related orders
- .74 Neuroptera and related orders
- .75 Hemiptera and related orders
- .76 Coleoptera (Beetles)
- .77 Diptera and related orders
- .78 Lepidoptera
- .79 Hymenoptera
- .71 ***Synaptera**
 Collembola (springtails), Entotrophi, Protura, Thysanura
 (bristletails)
- .72 Orthoptera and Dermaptera
- .721 ***Dermaptera (Earwigs)**
- .722 ***Blattariae (Cockroaches)**
- .724 ***Phasmatodea (Walking sticks)**
- .725 ***Mantodea (Mantises)**
- .726 ***Orthoptera**
 Common names: crickets, grasshoppers, katydids, locusts
 For Blattariae, see 595.722; Phasmatodea, 595.724; Mantodea,
 595.725

¹ Add as instructed under 592–599

- .73 Thysanoptera and related orders
- .731 *Thysanoptera (Thrips)
- .732 *Corrodentia (Book lice, bark lice)
- .733 *Odonata (Dragonflies, damselflies)
- .734 *Ephemeroptera (Mayflies)
- .735 *Plecoptera (Stoneflies)
- .736 *Isoptera (Termites)
- .737 *Embiopoda
- .738 *Zoraptera
- .74 Neuroptera and related orders
- .742 *Megaloptera (Ant lions)
- .744 *Mecoptera (Scorpion flies)
- .745 *Trichoptera (Caddis flies)
- .746 *Strepsiptera
- .747 *Neuroptera
 - Common names: dobson flies, lacewings, snake flies
- .75 *Hemiptera and related orders
- .751 *Apterous insects (Lice)
- .751 2 *Anoplura (True lice)
- .751 4 *Mallophaga (Bird lice)
- .752 *Homoptera
 - Common names: aphids, cicadas, leaf hoppers, scale insects
- .754 *Heteroptera (True bugs)
- .76 *Coleoptera (Beetles)
- .762 *Adephaga
 - Caraboidea, Cupoidea, Gyrinoidea, Rhysodidae
- .764 *Polyphaga
 - Cantharoidea, Cerambycoidea, Cucujoidea, Dasyloidea,
 - Dryopoidea, Histeroidea, Hydrophilidae, Scarabaeidae,
 - Staphylinidae, Tenebrionidae
 - Common names: burying beetles, dung beetles, fireflies, glowworms,
 - June beetles, larder beetles, leaf beetles, rose chafers
- .765 *Elateridae (Wireworms, click beetles)

¹ Add as instructed under 592-599

- .768 ***Curculionoidea (Weevils)**
- .769 ***Colydioidea (Powder-post and ladybird beetles)**
- .77 ***Diptera and related orders**
- .771 ***Orthorrhapha**
 Common names: gnats, midges, mosquitoes; bee, crane, horse,
 moth, robber flies
- .774 ***Cyclorrhapha**
 Common names: blow, fruit, house, louse, Tachina, vinegar flies
- .775 ***Siphonaptera (Fleas)**
- .78 ***Lepidoptera**
 Subdivisions of Lepidoptera not firmly established
- .781 ***Heterocera (Moths)**
- .784 ***Hesperioidea (Skippers)**
- .789 ***Rhopalocera (Butterflies)**
- .79 ***Hymenoptera**
- .796 ***Formicidae (Ants)**✓
- .798 ***Vespidae (True wasps)**
- .799 ***Apidae (Bees)**

596 **Chordata (Vertebrates)**

Use 596.001–596.009 for standard subdivisions; but class geographical treatment in 596.09

For Anamnia, see 597; reptiles and birds, 598; Mammalia, 599

.01–.09 **General principles**

Add to 596.0 the numbers following 591 in 591.1–591.9, e.g., comparative anatomy 596.04

.2 ***Tunicata (Sea squirts and sea grapes)**

Ascidacea, Larvacea, Thaliacea

597 **Anamnia Fishes**

Use 597.001–597.009 for standard subdivisions

Class geographical treatment of fishes in 597.09

.01–.08 **General principles of fishes**

Add to 597.0 the numbers following 591 in 591.1–591.8, e.g., reproduction 597.016

* Add as instructed under 592–599

- .09 Geographical treatment of fishes
- .092 By specific place
- .092 01-.092 09 General
- Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number
597.0920, e.g., fishes of New Hampshire 597.0920742
- .092 1-.092 8 Marine fishes
- Add to 597.092 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461-551.468,
e.g., fishes of Indian Ocean 597.0927
- .092 9 Fresh-water fishes
- Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 597.0929,
e.g., fresh-water fishes of New Hampshire 597.0929742
- .2 ***Cyclostomata (Cyclostomes)**
- Hagfish, lampreys

597.3-597.5 Pisces (Fishes)

Class here ichthyology

Class comprehensive works in 597, general principles in 597.01-597.09

.3 ***Chondrichthyes**

597.31-597.35 Elasmobranchii

Class comprehensive works in 597.3

- .31 ***Selachii (Sharks)**
- Galeoidea, Heterodontoidea, Notidanoidea, Squaloidea
- .35 ***Batoidea**
- Common names: guitarfishes, rays, sawfishes, skates, torpedoes
- .38 ***Chimaerae (Chimeras)**
- .4 ***Actinopterygii and related orders**
- Including Holostei
- .41 ***Amioidea (Bowfins, river dogfishes)**
- .42 ***Polypterini (Ganoids)**
- .44 ***Acipenseroidae**
- Common names: paddlefishes, spoonbills, sturgeons
- .46 ***Crossopterygii (Lobe-finned fishes)**
- For *Lepisosteidae*, see 597.47
- .47 ***Lepisosteidae (Gars)**
- .48 ***Dipnoi (Lung fishes)**

* Add as instructed under 592-599

.5 *Teleostei

Class here Osteichthyes

Arrange by orders as below; but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically

For Actinopterygii and related orders, see 597.4

.51 *Apodes (Morays and true eels)**.52 *Ostariophysi**

Cyprinoidea, Siluroidea

Common names: barbels, carps, catfishes, loaches, suckers

.53 *Mesichthyes

Cyprinodontes, Haplomi, Iniomi, Salmopercae, Synentognathi, Thoracostei

Common names: flying fishes, garfishes, halfbeaks, killifishes, pikes, pipefishes, pirate perch, sea horses, sticklebacks, top minnows

.55 *Isospondyli

Clupeoidea, Conorhynchoidea, Opisthoproctoidea, Osteoglossoidea, Salmonoidea, Stomiatoidea

Common names: arapaimas, dragonfishes, herrings, lantern fishes, lizard fishes, salmon, tarpons, trout

.58 *Acanthopterygii

Allotriognathi, Ammodytoidea, Anabantoidea, Anacanthini, Batrachoidea, Berycoidea, Blennioidea, Carangoidea, Chaetodontidea, Echeuoidea, Gobioides, Heterosomata, Mugiloidea, Opisthomi, Pediculati, Percoidea, Plectognathi, Polynemoidea, Scombroidea, Scorpaenoidea, Synbranchii, Trachinoidea, Xenopterygii, Zeoidea

Common names: albacores, basses, blennies, bonitos, gobies, John Dorys, mackerels, perches, pompanos, snappers, swordfishes, tunas

.6 *Amphibia (Amphibians)

Class comprehensive works on Amphibia and Reptilia in 598.1

For Apoda see 597.7; Anura, 597.8; Urodela, 597.9

.7 *Apoda (Caecilians)**.8 *Anura (Salientia)**

Amphicoela, Anomocoela, Diplasiocoela, Opisthocoela, Procela

Common names: frogs, toads

.9 *Urodela (Salamanders, newts, mud puppies)

Amblystomoidea, Cryptobranchoidea, Proteidea, Salamandroidea

* Add as instructed under 592–599

598 Reptiles and birds

SUMMARY

- 598.1 Reptilia (Reptiles)
 - .2 Aves (Birds)
 - .3 Gruiformes and related orders
 - .4 Anseriformes and related orders
 - .5 Palaeognathae
 - .6 Galliformes and Columbiformes
 - .7 Psittaciformes and related orders
 - .8 Passeriformes, Coraciiformes, Apodiformes
 - .9 Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes
- .1 *Reptilia (Reptiles)
 - Class here herpetology
 - For Amphibia, see 597.6*
- .11 *Lepidosauria
 - For Serpentes, see 598.12*
- .112 *Lacertilia (Lizards)
- .119 *Rhynchocephalia (Tuataras)
- .12 *Serpentes (Snakes)
- .13 *Chelonina (Turtles, tortoises)
 - Cryptodira, Pleurodira
- .14 *Crocodilia (Crocodiles, alligators)
- .2 Aves (Birds)
 - Class here ornithology
 - For specific orders of birds, see 598.3–598.9*
- .201 Philosophy and theory
- .201 3 Value
 - Class protective measures [*formerly* 598.2013] in 639.9782
- .207 Study and teaching
- .207 2 Research
- .207 23 Birdbanding and census taking
- .207 3 Bird watching
- .209 Historical treatment
 - Class historical treatment in specific areas in 598.29
- .21–.28 General principles
 - Add to 598.2 the numbers following 591 in 591.1–591.8, e.g., birdsong 598.259

* Add as instructed under 592–599

- .29 Geographical treatment
- .291 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general
 Add "Areas" notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 598.29, e.g.,
 forest birds 598.29152
 For land birds, see 598.2922; shore birds, 598.2923; water birds,
 598.2924
- .292 Special groupings
 Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in
 598.293–598.299
- .292 2 Land birds
- .292 3 Shore birds
- .292 4 Water birds
- .293–.299 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities
 Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 598.29



598.3–598.9 Specific orders of birds

Class comprehensive works in 598.2

- .3 **Gruiformes and related orders**
- .31 ***Gruiformes**
 Grues, Cariamae, Eurypygae, Heliornithes, Mesoenatides, Otides,
 Rhynocheti, Turnices
 Common names: coots, cranes, gallinules, limpkins, rails
- .33 ***Charadriiformes**
 Charadrii, Alcae, Lari
 Common names: auks, avocets, curlews, gulls, jacanas, murre, oyster
 catchers, phalaropes, plovers, puffins, sandpipers, skimmers, snipe,
 stilts, terns, turnstones, woodcock
- .34 ***Ciconiiformes**
 Ardeae, Balaenicipities, Ciconiae, Phoenicopter
 Common names: bitterns, egrets, flamingos, herons, ibises,
 spoonbills, storks
- .4 **Anseriformes and related orders**
- .41 ***Anseriformes**
 Anseres, Anhimae
 Common names: ducks, geese, mergansers, screamers, swans
- .42 ***Procellariiformes**
 Common names: albatrosses, fulmars, petrels, shearwaters

Add as instructed under 592–599

- .43 ***Pelecaniformes**
 Pelecani, Fregatae, Odontopteryges, Phaethontes
 Common names. boobies, cormorants, darters, gannets, man-o'-war
 birds, pelicans, snakebirds, tropic birds
- .44 **Sphenisciformes, Gaviiformes, Colymbiformes**
- .441 ***Sphenisciformes (Penguins)**
- .442 ***Gaviiformes (Loons)**
- .443 ***Colymbiformes (Grebes)**
- .5 ***Palaeognathae**
- .51 ***Struthioniformes (Ostriches)**
- .52 ***Rheiformes (Rheas)**
- .53 ***Casuariiformes (Cassowaries, emus)**
- .54 ***Apterygiformes (Kiwis)**
- .55 ***Tinamiformes (Tinamous)**
- .6 **Galliformes and Columbiformes**
- .61 ***Galli**
 Common names: curassows, domestic chickens, grouse, guans,
 pheasants, quails, turkeys
- .64 ***Opisthocomo (Hoatzins)**
- .65 ***Columbiformes**
 Columbae, Pterocletes
 Common names: doves, pigeons, sand grouse
- .7 **Psittaciformes and related orders**
- .71 ***Psittaciformes**
 Common names: lorics, macaws, parakeets, parrots
- .72 ***Piciformes**
 Pici, Galbulae
 Common names. barbets, flickers, honey guides, jacamars, piculets,
 puffbirds, toucans, woodpeckers
- .73 ***Trogoniformes (Trogon)**
- .74 ***Cuculiformes**
 Cuculi, Musophagi
 Common names: ans, cuckoos, plantain eaters, roadrunners

* Add as instructed under 592-599

.8 ***Passeriformes, Coraciiformes, Apodiformes**

SUMMARY

- 598.81 Tyrannidae, Alaudidae, Hirundinidae
- .82 Sittidae, Certhiidae, Paridae
- .83 Cinclidae, Troglodytidae, Chamaeidae
- .84 Mimidae, Turdidae, Sylviidae
- .85 Bombycillidae, Ptilogonatidae, Motacillidae
- .86 Laniidae and related families
- .87 Vireonidae, Parulidae, Ploceidae
- .88 Icteridae, Thraupidae, Fringillidae
- .89 Coraciiformes and Apodiformes



598.81–598.88 Passeriformes (Passerine, Perching birds)

Arrange by families as below, but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically

Class comprehensive works in 598.8

- .81 Tyrannidae, Alaudidae, Hirundinidae
- .811 *Tyrannidae (Flycatchers)
- .812 *Alaudidae (Larks)
- .813 *Hirundinidae (Swallows)
- .82 Sittidae, Certhiidae, Paridae
- .822 *Sittidae (Nuthatches)
- .823 *Certhiidae (Creepers)
- .824 *Paridae (Titmice)
- .83 Cinclidae, Troglodytidae, Chamaeidae
- .832 *Cinclidae (Dippers)
- .833 *Troglodytidae (Wrens)
- .834 *Chamaeidae (Wren-tits)
- .84 Mimidae, Turdidae, Sylviidae
- .841 *Mimidae (Thrashers and mockingbirds)
- .842 *Turdidae (Thrushes)
- .843 *Sylviidae (Gnatcatchers and kinglets)
- .85 Bombycillidae, Ptilogonatidae, Motacillidae
- .852 *Bombycillidae (Waxwings)
- .853 *Ptilogonatidae (Silky flycatchers)
- .854 *Motacillidae (Wagtails and pipits)

* Add as instructed under 592–599

- .86 Laniidae and related families
- .862 *Laniidae (Shrikes)
- .863 *Sturnidae (Starlings)
- .864 *Corvidae (Crows, magpies, jays)
- .865 *Paradisacidae (Birds of paradise)
- .87 Vireonidae, Parulidae, Ploceidae
- .871 *Vireonidae (Vireos)
- .872 *Parulidae (Wood warblers)
- .873 *Ploceidae (Weaver-finches)
- .88 Icteridae, Thraupidae, Fringillidae
- .881 *Icteridae (Blackbirds)
- .882 *Thraupidae (Tanagers)
- .883 *Fringillidae
Common names: buntings, finches, grosbeaks, sparrows
- .89 Coraciiformes and Apodiformes
- .892 *Coraciiformes
Coracii, Alcedines, Bucerotes, Meropes
Common names: bee eaters, hoopoes, hornbills, kingfishers, motmots, rollers, todies
- .899 *Apodiformes
Apodi, Trochili
Common names: hummingbirds, swifts
- .9 **Falconiformes, Strigiformes, Caprimulgiformes**
- .91 *Falconiformes (Birds of prey)
Falcones, Cathartae
Common names: falcons, buzzards, eagles, hawks, ospreys, vultures
- .97 *Strigiformes (Owls)
- .99 *Caprimulgiformes
Caprimulgi, Steatornithes
Common names: frogmouths, goatsuckers, oilbirds, *potoos*

* Add as instructed under 592-599

- .33 ***Insectivora**
 Common names: desmans, hedgehogs, moles, shrews, &
 tenrecs
- .34 ***Dermoptera (Flying lemurs)**
- .4 ***Chiroptera (Bats)**
 Megachiroptera, Microchiroptera
- .5 ***Cetacea and Sirenia**
- .51 ***Mysticeti**
 Common names: balcen whales, finbacks, humpback whales,
 whale-bone whales
- .53 ***Odontoceti**
 Common names: beakt whales, cowfish, dolphins, narwhals, porpoises,
 sperm whales, wltue whales
- .55 ***Sirenia (Sea cows)**
 Common names: dugongs, manatees
- .6 ***Paenungulata**
 For Sirenia, see 599.55
- .61 ***Proboscidea (Elephants)**
- .62 ***Hyracoidea**
 Common names: comies, dassies, rock hyraxes, tree hyraxes
- .7 **Mesaxonia, Paraxonia, Ferungulata**
 For Paenungulata, see 599.6
- .72 ***Perissodactyla**
- .725 ***Equidae (Horses, asses, zebras)**
- .727 ***Tapiridae (Tapirs)**
- .728 ***Rhinocerotidae (Rhinoceroses)**
- .73 ***Artiodactyla**
- .734 ***Suiformes**
 Common names: babirussas, boars, hippopotamuses, peccaries,
 pigs, wart hogs
- .735 ***Ruminantia (Ruminants)**
- .735.5 ***Tragulida (Chevrotains)**
- .735.7 ***Cervoidea**
 Common names: caribou, deer, elk, giraffes, moose, okapis,
 reindeer

* Add as instructed under 592-599

- .735 8 *Bovoidea
 Common names: antelopes, bison, bongos, buffaloes, cattle, elands, gazelles, goats, kudus, musk oxen, oxen, sheep, zebus
- .736 *Tylopoda
 Common names: alpacas, camels, guanacos, llamas, vicuñas
- .74 *Carnivora
- .744 *Fissipeda (Land carnivores)
- .744 2 *Feloidea
- .744 22 *Viverridae
 Common names: civets, fossa, genets, mongooses
- .744 26 *Proteles (Aardwolves)
- .744 27 *Hyaenidae (Hyrnas)
- ✓.744 28 *Felidae (Cats)
- .744 4 *Canoidea
- .744 42 *Canidae
 Common names: coyotes, dogs, foxes, jackals, wolves
- .744 43 *Procyonidae
 Common names: bassarisks, coatis, kinkajous, pandas, raccoons
- .744 46 *Ursidae (Bears)
- .744 47 *Mustelidae
 Common names: badgers, martens, minks, otters, polecats, skunks, weasels, wolverines
- .745 *Pinnipedia (Marine carnivores)
 For specific families, see 599.746–599.748
-
- 599.746–599.748 Specific families of marine carnivores
 Class comprehensive works in 599.745
- .746 *Otariidae (Eared seals)
 Common names: fur seals, sea bears, sea lions
- .747 *Odobenidae (Walruscs)
- .748 *Phocidae (True seals)
 Common names: earless seals, elephant seals

* Add as instructed under 592–599

- .8 ***Primates**
- .81 ***Prosimii**
 - Lemuriformes, Lorisiformes, Tarsiiformes
- .82 Cebidae, Callithricidae, Cercopithecidae
 - Common names: marmosets, monkeys, tamarins
- .88 ***Pongidae (Apes)**
 - Class here comprehensive works on Hominoidea
 - For Hominidae, see 599.9*
- .882 ***Hylobatinae**
 - Common names: gibbons, siamangs
- .884 ***Ponginae**
 - Common names: baboons, chimpanzees, gorillas, orangutans
- .9 **Hominidae (Man)**
 - For physical anthropology, see 573, medical sciences, 610*

* Add as instructed under 592-599

600 Technology (Applied sciences)

601 Philosophy and theory

602 Miscellany

Class patents in 608.7

603 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

604 General technologies

.2 Technical drawing [*formerly* 744]

Class here engineering graphics

For architectural drawing, see 720.28; *map drawing, 526.86*

.201 516 Geometric aspects

Example: concrete descriptive geometry [*formerly* 515]

.22 Generalities

Arrangement and organization of drafting rooms, preservation and storage of drawings, supplies, equipment

.24 Drafting procedures and conventions

.242 Production illustration

Nontechnical graphic representations

.243 Lettering, titling, dimensioning, shades, shadows

.245 Projections

Orthographic, isometric, spheric

.25 Preparation and reading of copies

Blueprints, photostats

.26 Drafting specific subjects

Add to 604.26 the numbers following 6 in 610–690, e.g., aeronautical drafting 604.262913

.6 Waste technology

Methods and equipment for salvaging and utilizing waste materials; products manufactured from waste materials [*formerly* 679.9]

Class utilization of a specific waste material, manufacture of a specific product with the subject, e.g., scrap metals 669.042

.7 Hazardous materials technology

Methods of extracting, manufacturing, processing, utilizing, handling, transporting, storing solids, liquids, gases of explosive, flammable, corrosive, radioactive, toxic, infectious nature

Class technology of a specific material or situation with the subject, e.g., manufacture of explosives 662.2, public health aspects of fireworks 614.832

605 Serial publications**606 Organizations****607 Study and teaching****.2 Industrial research (Products research)**

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 607.2

.3 Other educational aspects

.33 Students, learners, apprentices, novices

.34 Museums, exhibits, fairs, expositions

Collections, guidebooks, catalogs

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 607.34

.35-.39 Other

Add to 607.3 the numbers following 07 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 075-079 from Table 1, e.g. questions and answers 607.36

.4-.9 In specific continents, countries, localities in modern world

Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 607

608 Collections and patents**.7 Descriptions of inventions and their patents**

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 608.7

Class history of inventions in 609

609 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here history of inventions, industrial (technological) archeology

610 Medical sciences - Medicine

For veterinary medicine, see 636.089

[.23] Medicine as a profession

Do not use; class in 610.69

.28 Medical instrumentation

Class here comprehensive works on biomedical engineering

Class biological instrumentation in 574.028

- .6 Organizations and personnel**
 - .65 Medical business organizations**
 - Including group practice
 - .69 Medical personnel**
 - Class medical personnel, other than nurses, of a specific specialty with the subject, using notation as directed, e.g., obstetricians 618.20232, critical appraisal and description of work, single and collected biography of individuals with the subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 092 from Table 1, e.g., biography of psychiatrists 616.890092
 - .695 Specific medical personnel**
 - Nature of duties, characteristics of professions
 - Class medical records librarians in 651.5, medical missionaries in 266.025, medical secretaries in 651.3741
 - For nursing personnel, see 610.73069*
 - .695 2 Physicians**
 - Class surgeons [*formerly* 610.6952] in 617.0232
 - .695 3 Medical technicians and assistants**
 - .696 Medical relationships**
 - Relationships between medical personnel and patients, between medical personnel and public, within medical professions
- .7 Study, teaching, nursing practice**
 - .72 Research**
 - Class experimental medicine in 619
 - .73 Nursing, and medical students**
 - Class here general medical nursing
 - For home nursing, see 649.8*
 - .730 1--730 5 Standard subdivisions of nursing**
 - .730 6 Nursing organizations and personnel**
 - .730 69 Nursing personnel**
 - Nature of duties, characteristics of profession, relationships
 - .730 692 Professional nurses and nursing**
 - .730 693 Practical nurses and nursing**
 - .730 698 Auxiliary personnel**
 - Attendants, aides, orderlies, volunteers
 - .730 7--730 9 Other standard subdivisions of nursing**
 - .732 Private duty nursing**
 - .733 Institutional nursing and ward management**

- .734 Red Cross and other public health nursing
If preferred, class in 614.073
- .734 3 Community and district nursing
Including work of visiting nurses
- .734 6 Occupational health nursing (Industrial nursing)
- .734 9 Disaster nursing
- .736 Specialized nursing
If preferred, class with the specialty, e.g., surgical nursing 617.073
- .736 2 Pediatric nursing
Class pediatric surgical nursing in 610.73677
- .736 5 Geriatric nursing
- .736 7 Surgical, obstetrical, gynecological nursing
- .736 77 Surgical nursing
Example. ophthalmic nursing
- .736 78 Obstetrical and gynecological nursing
- .736 8 Psychiatric and neurologic nursing
Example: nursing for mentally retarded
- .736 9 Communicable disease nursing
- .739 Medical students, learners, apprentices, novices

Human anatomy, cytology, tissue biology

For pathological anatomy, see 616.07

- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions of human anatomy
- .01 Anatomic embryology, cytology, tissue biology
Class here specific systems, organs, regions
- [.012] Teratology
Class in 616.043
- .013 Anatomic embryology
- .018 Cytology and tissue biology
- .018 1 Cytology (Cell biology)
- 611.018 2-611.018 9 Tissue biology
- Histogenesis, histology, histophysiology, histopathology, tissue regeneration
- Class comprehensive works in 611.018
- .018 2 Connective tissue
Areolar, collagenous, elastic, reticular, adipose, pigmented cells, fibers, ground substances

- .018 3 **Cartilaginous tissue**
 Hyaline, elastic, fibrous cartilage
- .018 4 **Osseous tissue**
 Spongy and compact bone tissues, red and yellow bone marrow (medulla), periosteum, endosteum
- .018 5 **Blood and lymph elements**
 Blood plasma, red corpuscles (erythrocytes), white corpuscles (leucocytes), platelets (thrombocytes), lymph plasma, lymphocytes
- .018 6 **Muscular tissue**
 Smooth (nonstriated, involuntary), skeletal (striated, voluntary), cardiac (striated, involuntary) muscle tissues
- .018 7 **Epithelial tissue**
 Serous and mucous membranes, simple squamous, columnar, stratified squamous epithelia
- .018 8 **Nerve tissue**
 Neurons, interstitial nerve tissue (neuroglia, neurilemma, satellite cells), meninges, sheaths
- .018 9 **Tissue biology of specific systems, organs, regions**
 Add to 611.0189 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., pathology of tooth tissue 611 0189314
 Class tissues of motor and integumentary organs in 611.0182–611.0184, 611.0186–611.0187, nerve tissue in 611.0188, blood and lymph elements in 611.0185



611.1–611.9 Gross anatomy

Class here comprehensive works on gross anatomy and tissue structure

Class comprehensive works in 611, tissue structure in 611.0182–611.0189

SUMMARY

- 611.1 **Cardiovascular organs**
- .2 **Respiratory organs**
- .3 **Digestive organs**
- .4 **Lymphatic and glandular organs**
- .6 **Urogenital organs**
- .7 **Motor and integumentary organs**
- .8 **Nervous system and sense organs**
- .9 **Regional anatomy**
- .1 **Cardiovascular organs**
- .11 **Pericardium**

- .12 **Heart**
 Ventricles, auricles, endocardium, myocardium
 For pericardium, see 611.11



611.13-611.15 Blood vessels

Class comprehensive works in 611.1, blood vessels of a specific system or organ with the subject, e.g., cerebral blood vessels 611.81

- .13 **Arteries**
 .14 **Veins**
 .15 **Capillaries**
 .2 **Respiratory organs**
 .21 Nose and nasal accessory sinuses
 .22 Larynx
 Epiglottis, glottis, laryngeal muscles

- .23 Trachea and bronchi
 .24 Lungs
 .25 Thoracic pleura
 .26 Diaphragm
 .27 Mediastinum

.3 **Digestive organs**

- .31 Mouth
 .313 Tongue
 .314 Teeth
 .315 Palate
 .316 Salivary glands
 .317 Lips
 .318 Checks
 .32 Pharynx, tonsils, esophagus
 .33 Stomach and pylorus

Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs

For intestines, see 611.34

- .34 **Intestines**
 For rectum, see 611.35

- .341 Small intestines
 Duodenum, jejunum, ileum

-
- .345 Cecum and vermiform appendix
 - .347 Large intestines
 - Colon, sigmoid flexure
 - For cecum, see 611.345*
 - .35 Rectum, anus, perineum
 - .36 Biliary tract
 - Liver, gall bladder, bile ducts
 - .37 Pancreas and islands of Langerhans
 - .38 Peritoneum
 - Mesentery, omentum, coelum
 - .4 Lymphatic and glandular organs**
 - .41 Spleen
 - .42 Lymphatic system
 - For lymphatic glands, see 611.46*
 - .43 Thymus gland
 - .44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands
 - .45 Adrenal glands
 - .46 Lymphatic glands
 - .47 Carotid, pituitary, pineal glands
 - .49 Breasts and mammary glands
 - .6 Urogenital organs**
 - .61 Kidneys and ureters
 - .62 Bladder and urethra
 - .63 Testicles, prostate, scrotum
 - Class here comprehensive works on male genital organs
 - For penis, see 611.64*
 - .64 Penis
 - .65 Ovaries and Fallopian tubes
 - Class here comprehensive works on female genital organs
 - For uterus and cervix, see 611.66; vagina, hymen, vulva, 611.67*
 - .66 Uterus and cervix
 - .67 Vagina, hymen, vulva
 - .7 Motor and integumentary organs**
 - .71 Bones
 - .711 Of spinal column

-
- .712 Of chest
 - Including ribs
 - For sternum, see 611.713*
 - .713 Sternum
 - .715 Of brainpan
 - .716 Of face
 - .717 Of upper extremity
 - Scapula, clavicle, humerus, radius, ulna, phalanges of hands, carpal and metacarpal bones
 - .718 Of lower extremity
 - Hipbone, femur, patella, tibia, fibula, phalanges of feet, tarsal and metatarsal bones
 - .72 Articulations (Ligaments and joints)
 - .73 Muscles
 - Class muscles of a specific system or organ with the subject, e.g., heart muscles 611.12
 - .731 Of back
 - .732 Of head
 - .733 Of neck
 - .734 Of tongue
 - .735 Of chest
 - .736 Of abdomen and pelvis
 - .737 Of upper extremity
 - Muscles of shoulders, arms, forearms, hands
 - .738 Of lower extremity
 - Muscles of hips, buttocks, thighs, legs, feet
 - .74 Connective tissue
 - Tendons and fasciae
 - For ligaments, see 611.72*
 - .75 Bursae and sheaths of tendons
 - .77 Integument
 - For hair and nails, see 611.78*
 - .78 Hair and nails
 - .8 **Nervous system and sense organs**
 - Class here neuroanatomy
 - .81 Brain

- .82 Spinal cord
- .83 Nerves and ganglions
 - Class nerves of a specific system or organ with the subject, e.g., optic nerves 611.84

611.84-611.88 Sense organs

Class comprehensive works in 611.8

- .84 Eye
- .85 Ear
- .86 Olfactory organs
- .87 Gustatory organs
- .88 Tactile organs
- .9 Regional anatomy
 - Class a specific system or organ in a region with the system or organ, e.g., lymphatic system in the neck 611.42
- .91 Head
 - For face, see 611.92*
- .92 Face
- .93 Neck
- .94 Thorax
- .95 Abdomen
 - Epigastric thru lumbar regions
- .96 Pelvic and perineal region
- .97 Upper extremities
- .98 Lower extremities

612 Human physiology

Class here comprehensive works on anatomy and physiology

Use 612.001-612.009 for standard subdivisions

Class physiological psychology in 152

For human anatomy, cytology, tissue biology, see 611; pathological physiology, 616.07

- .01 Biophysics and biochemistry
- .014 Biophysics
 - Physical phenomena in humans, effects of physical agents on humans
- .014 2 Physical phenomena in humans
- .014 21 Bioenergetics

- .014 26 Body heat [*formerly* 612.5]
 Production, maintenance, regulation, measurement
- .014 27 Bioelectricity
 Including electrophysiology
- .014 4 Effects of terrestrial agents
- .014 41 Mechanical forces
 Add to 612.01441 the numbers following 574.1913 in
 574.19132–574.19136, e.g., pressures 612.014415
- .014 42 Electricity
- .014 44 Visible light
- .014 45 Sound and related vibrations
- .014 452 Subsonic vibrations
- .014 453 Sound
- .014 455 Ultrasonic vibrations
- .014 46 Heat and cold [*both formerly* 612.59] (Thermal forces)
- .014 48 Radiations (Radiobiology)
 Class here dosimetry
 Add to 612.01448 the numbers following 574.1915 in
 574.19151–574.19157, e.g., gamma radiation 612.014486
 For visible light, see 612.01444
- .014 5 Effects of extraterrestrial agents (Bioastronautics)
 Add to 612.0145 the numbers following 574.191 in
 574.1913–574.1917, e.g., gravitation 612.014532
- .015 Biochemistry
 Class metabolism in 612.39, hormones in 612.405
- .015 01 Philosophy and theory
 Class theoretical biochemistry in 612.0158
- .015 1 Enzymes
 Add to 612.0151 the numbers following 574.1925 in 574.19253–
 574.19258, e.g., saccharolytic enzymes 612.01514
- .015 2 Fluids, pigments, inorganic constituents
- .015 22 Fluids
 Example: water
- .015 24 Minerals
- .015 28 Pigments
 Class biochemistry of skin pigmentation in 612.7927

- .015 4 Biosynthesis
 Add to 612.0154 the numbers following 574.1929 in 574.19293–574.19297, e.g., biosynthesis of proteins 612.01546
- .015 7 Organic compounds
 Add to 612.0157 the numbers following 574.1924 in 574.19242–574.19248, e.g., carbohydrates 612.01578
 For hormones, see 612.405; *enzymes*, 612.0151; *vitamins*, 612.399; *pigments*, 612.01528
- .015 8 Physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry
 Class physical, theoretical, analytical biochemistry of a specific constituent with the subject, e.g., physical chemistry of carbohydrates 612.01578
- .015 82 Theoretical
- .015 83 Physical
- .015 85 Analytical
- [.018] Tissue and organ culture
 Class in 612.028
- .02 Control mechanisms and tissue and organ culture
- .022 Control mechanisms
 Including homeostasis
- .028 Tissue and organ culture [*both formerly* 612.018]
- .04 Physiology of specific activities
- .042 Work
- .044 Sports and other recreation



612.1–612.8 Specific functions, systems, organs

Biophysics and biochemistry, muscular, circulatory, glandular, neural activities

Class comprehensive works in 612

SUMMARY

- 612.1 Blood and circulation
- .2 Respiration
- .3 Nutrition and metabolism
- .4 Secretion, excretion, related functions
- .6 Reproduction, development, maturation
- .7 Motor functions and integument

.1 Blood and circulation

Class circulation in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., brain 612.824

For lymph and lymphatics, see 612.42

SUMMARY

- 612.11 Blood**
 - .12 Blood chemistry**
 - .13 Blood vessels and vascular circulation**
 - .14 Blood pressure and sphygmomanometry**
 - .17 Heart**
 - .18 Vasomotors**

.11 Blood

For blood chemistry, see 612.12, spleen, 612.41; bone marrow, 612.491

.111 Red corpuscles (Erythrocytes)**.111 1 Biochemistry**

Including hemoglobins

.111 2 Counts and counting**.112 White corpuscles (Leucocytes)****.112 1 Biochemistry****.112 2 Biophysics****.112 7 Counts and counting****.115 Coagulation (Clotting)**

Including plasma, fibrin, fibrinoplastin, thrombin, other coagulation products

.117 Platelets and hemoconia**.118 Biophysics and biological properties****.118 1 Biophysics**

Physical properties and phenomena, effect of physical agents

Class biophysics of specific components or functions in 612.111–612.117

.118 2 Biological properties**.118 22 Immunity (Immunology)**

Antigens, antibodies, immune reactions (serology), immunoglobulins

.118 25 Blood types (groups) and typing

-
- .12 **Blood chemistry**
 - Components and reactions
 - Including cholesterol, minerals, carbohydrates, lipids, enzymes, other proteins
 - Class chemistry of specific components or functions in 612.111–612.117
 - .13 **Blood vessels and vascular circulation**
 - For vasomotors, see 612.18*
 - .133 **Arteries and arterial circulation**
 - .134 **Veins and venous circulation**
 - .135 **Capillaries and capillary circulation**
 - .14 **Blood pressure and sphygmomanometry**
 - .17 **Heart**
 - .171 **Biophysics**
 - Contraction and dilation of heart cavities, valvular activity, recording methods
 - For blood pressure, see 612.14*
 - .173 **Biochemistry**
 - Chemical composition and reactions
 - .178 **Innervation**
 - .18 **Vasomotors**
 - Nerves causing dilation (vasodilators) and constriction (vasoconstrictors) of blood vessels
 - .2 **Respiration**
 - .21 **Biophysics**
 - Respiratory movements, rhythm, sounds, other physical phenomena
 - [.215] **Of specific organs**
 - Number discontinued; class in 612.21
 - .22 **Biochemistry**
 - Oxygen supply, gas exchange, carbon dioxide removal
 - .26 **Tissue respiration**
 - Class catabolism [*formerly* 612.26] in 612.39
 - .28 **Innervation of respiratory apparatus ,**

- .3 Nutrition and metabolism**
 Ingestion, digestion, absorption, assimilation, conversion of food
- 612.31–612.38 Physiology of digestive system
 Class comprehensive works in 612.3
- .31 Mouth and esophagus
 Ingestion and start of digestion
- .311 Teeth
 Including mastication
- .312 Tongue and tonsils
- .313 Salivary glands and saliva
- .315 Esophagus
- .32 Stomach and gastric secretions
 Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal organs and secretions
For intestines and intestinal secretions, see 612.33
- .33 Intestines and intestinal secretions
For large intestines, see 612.36
- .34 Pancreas and pancreatic secretions
- .35 Biliary tract
 Liver, gall bladder, bile and bile ducts
- .36 Large intestines and defecation
- .38 Absorption
 Transfer of digested food from alimentary canal into blood stream
 Class absorption in a specific part of the alimentary canal with the part, e.g., intestines 612.33
- .39 Metabolism
 Assimilation of digested food into tissue (anabolism), conversion of food into energy (catabolism) [*formerly* 612.26], energy metabolism (basal metabolism) [*formerly* 612.57]
- .391 Hunger and thirst mechanisms
- .392 Metabolism of minerals and other inorganic substances
- .392.3 Water
- .392.4 Elements
 Examples: sulfur, iron, phosphorus, strontium
- .392.6 Compounds other than water
 Example: salts
- .396 Carbohydrate metabolism

-
- .397 Lipid metabolism
 - Including fats
 - .398 Protein metabolism
 - .399 Vitamins in the body
 - .4 **Secretion, excretion, related functions**
 - Class here endocrine system
 - Use 612.4001–612.4009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class glands and glandular activity in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., salivary glands 612.313
 - .405 Hormones in the body
 - .41 Spleen
 - .42 Lymph and lymphatics
 - .43 Thymus gland
 - .44 Thyroid and parathyroid glands
 - .45 Adrenal glands
 - .46 Excretion
 - Class here urinary system
 - For defecation, see 612.36*
 - .461 Urine
 - Including chemical composition, reactivity, analysis
 - Class use of urinalysis in diagnosis in 616.07566
 - .463 Kidneys
 - .467 Ureters, bladder, urethra
 - .49 Other glands and bone marrow
 - .491 Bone marrow
 - .492 Carotid, pituitary, pineal glands
 - [.5] **Body heat**
 - Class in 612.01426
 - [.57] Energy metabolism (Basal metabolism)
 - Class in 612.39
 - [.59] Effects of heat and cold
 - Class in 612.01446

- .6 Reproduction, development, maturation**
 - Class here interdisciplinary works on sex
 - Use 612.6001–612.6009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class a specific aspect of sex with the subject, e.g., sex psychology 155.3
- .61 Male reproductive system**
 - Including hormones, function in sexual activity and at rest
- .62 Female reproductive system**
 - Including hormones, function in sexual activity and at rest
- .63 Pregnancy**
 - Class physiology of embryo in 612.64
- .64 Physiology of embryo**
 - Class here comprehensive works on embryology
 - Use 612.64001–612.64009 for standard subdivisions
 - For anatomic embryology, see 611.013*
- .640 1 Development of specific systems and organs**
 - Add to 612.6401 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.8, e.g., development of eye 612.640184
- .646 Development of embryo**
 - Intra-uterine development from conception thru three months
- .647 Development of fetus**
 - Intra-uterine development from end of embryonic period to birth
- .65 Child development**
- .652 Development of newborn**
 - First month of postnatal development
- .654 Development from infancy to puberty**
- .66 Adult development and maturity**
 - For aging, see 612.67*
- .661 Adolescence**
 - Development from puberty to full maturity
- .662 Menstruation**
- .663 Full maturity**
- .664 Mammary glands and lactation**
- .665 Climacteric development**
 - Male and female climacteric changes
- .67 Aging**
 - Class here physical gerontology

- .68 Longevity factors
 - .7 **Motor functions and integument**
 - .74 Muscles
 - Class muscles of a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., eye muscles 612.846
 - .741 Biophysics
 - Contractions, elasticity, tonus, irritability
 - .743 Innervation
 - .744 Biochemistry
 - Chemical composition and reactions, fatigue products
 - .75 Bones, joints, connective tissues
 - .76 Locomotion, exercise, rest
 - .78 Voice and speech
 - Larynx, mouth, nose, lips, palate as organs of speech
 - .79 Integument, hair, nails
-
- 612.791-612.798 Skin
- Class comprehensive works in 612.79
- .791 Biophysics of skin
 - Contractions, tonus, irritability, absorbency, resistivity
 - .792 Biochemistry of skin
 - .792 1 Glands and glandular secretions
 - Including perspiration
 - .792 7 Pigmentation
 - .798 Innervation of skin
 - .799 Nails and hair
 - .8 **Neurophysiology and sensory physiology**
 - .801 Philosophy and theory of neurophysiology, of sensory physiology
 - Class here principles of innervation
 - .802-.803 Miscellany, dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of neurophysiology, of sensory physiology
 - .804 General special
 - .804 2 Neurochemistry
 - Including cerebrospinal fluid
 - .804 3 Physics of nervous system

- .805--.809 Other standard subdivisions of neurophysiology, of sensory physiology

SUMMARY

- 612.81 Nerves and nerve fibers
 - .82 Brain
 - .83 Spinal cord
 - .84 Eye and vision
 - .85 Ear and hearing
 - .86 Olfactory organs and olfaction
 - .87 Gustatory organs and gustation
 - .88 Other sense organs and sensory functions
 - .89 Autonomic nervous system
- .81 Nerves and nerve fibers
 - Class innervation and neural activity in a specific system or organ with the system or organ, e.g., heart innervation 612.178
 - For autonomic nervous system, see 612.89*
- .811 Motor and sensory nerves
 - [.811 5--.811 6] Motor and sensory nerves
 - Numbers discontinued, class in 612.811
- .813 Biophysics
 - Including electrophysiology
 - For irritability, see 612.816*
- .814 Biochemistry
- .816 Irritability
- .819 Cranial and spinal nerves
- .82 Brain
 - Class here central nervous system
 - For spinal cord, see 612.83*
- .821 Sleep phenomena
 - Physiology of brain during sleep and dreams
- .822 Biochemistry and biophysics
- .824 Circulation
- .825 Cerebrum
 - Cerebral hemispheres, convolutions, cortex
 - For cerebral commissures and peduncles, see 612.826*
- .825 2 Localization of motor functions
- .825 5 Localization of sensory functions

-
- .826 Brain stem
 - Thalamus, cerebral commissures and peduncles, geniculate bodies, corpora quadrigemina, pons Variolii
 - For medulla oblongata, see 612.828*
 - .827 Cerebellum
 - .828 Medulla oblongata
 - .83 Spinal cord
-
- 612.84-612.88 Sense organs and sensory functions
 - Class comprehensive works in 612.8
 - .84 Eye and vision
 - Class here physiological optics
 - .841 Fibrous tunics
 - Cornea, conjunctiva, anterior chamber, sclera
 - .842 Uvea
 - Ciliary body, iris, choroid
 - .843 Optic nerve and retina
 - .844 Eyeball
 - Crystalline lens, aqueous humor, vitreous humor
 - .846 Movements
 - Class here ocular muscular mechanism
 - .847 Eyelids and tear ducts
 - Palpebral and lacrimal mechanism
 - .85 Ear and hearing
 - .851 External ear
 - .854 Middle ear
 - Tympanic membrane, eustachian tube, ossicles, mastoid processes
 - .858 Internal ear
 - Cochlea, labyrinth, semicircular canals, vestibule
 - .86 Olfactory organs and olfaction
 - Class here chemical senses
 - For gustation, see 612.87*
 - .87 Gustatory organs and gustation

- .88 Other sense organs and sensory functions
 - Tactile and proprioceptive organs and senses; sense of movement (motion)
 - Including pain sensations and reactions
- .89 Autonomic nervous system
 - Sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems

613 General and personal hygiene

Including inherited diseases as a factor

For public health, see 614

- .04 Hygiene for specific sex and age groups
- .042 Hygiene for specific sex groups
 - .042 3 Males
 - .042 32 Boys under twelve
 - .042 33 Adolescents
 - .042 34 Adult men
 - .042 4 Females
 - .042 42 Girls under twelve
 - .042 43 Adolescents
 - .042 44 Adult women
- .043 Hygiene for specific age groups [*formerly 613.97*]
 - Class hygiene for specific age groups of specific sexes in 613.042
 - .043 2 Infants and children
 - .043 3 Adolescents
 - .043 4 Mature adults
 - Adults of period between adolescence and middle age
 - Including college-age persons
 - .043 7 Middle-aged
 - .043 8 Aged

SUMMARY

- 613.1 Hygiene in natural environments
 - .2 Dietetics
 - .3 Beverages
 - .4 Personal cleanliness and related topics
 - .5 Hygiene in artificial environments
 - .6 Special topics
 - .7 Physical fitness
 - .8 Addictions
 - .9 Birth control and sex hygiene

- .1 **Hygiene in natural environments**
 - Class here acclimation
- .11 **Weather and climate**
 - For seasonal changes, see 613.13, humidity, 613.14*
- [.110 911] Arctic climates
 - Do not use; class in 613.111
- [.110 913] Tropical climates
 - Do not use; class in 613.113
- .111 Cold weather and climates
 - Including arctic climates
- .113 Hot weather and climates
 - Including tropical climates
- [.119] Acclimation
 - Number discontinued; class in 613.1
- .12 Physiographic and other regions
 - Examples: mountains, seashores
 - Including health resorts
- .13 Seasonal changes
- .14 Humidity
- [.18] Indoor temperatures and air conditioning
 - Class in 613.5
- .19 Air and light
- .192 Breathing
- .193 Sun bathing
- .194 Nudism

► **613.2–613.4 Factors in establishing and maintaining health**

Class comprehensive works in 613

For air and light, see 613.19

- .2 **Dietetics**
 - For beverages, see 613.3*
- .24 Weight gaining programs
- .25 Weight losing programs

- .26 **Specific foods**
 - Examples: vegetarianism, all-meat diets
 - Class weight modification programs involving specific foods in 613.24–613.25
- .28 **Specific nutritive elements**
 - Examples: diets high and low in proteins, fats, carbohydrates, salt
 - Class weight modification programs involving specific nutritive elements in 613.24–613.25
- .3 **Beverages**
 - For alcoholic beverages, see 613.81*
- .31 **Water**
- .36 **Cold beverages**
 - Including iced coffee and tea
 - Class cold carbonated beverages in 613.38
- .37 **Beverages at specific temperatures**
 - Including coffee, tea
 - For cold beverages, see 613.36*
- .38 **Mineral waters and carbonated beverages**
 - Examples: ginger ale, colas
- .4 **Personal cleanliness and related topics**
- .41 **Bathing**
- .48 **Clothing and cosmetics**
- .482 **Clothing**
 - Cleanliness, materials, warmth
- .488 **Cosmetics**
- .5 **Hygiene in artificial environments**
 - In homes and other enclosed spaces
 - Including indoor temperatures and air conditioning [*both formerly 613.18*]
- .6 **Special topics**
- .62 **Industrial hygiene**
- .66 **Self-defense**
- .67 **Military and camp hygiene**
- .68 **Travel hygiene**
 - Including shipboard hygiene

- .69 **Survival**
 - After accidents and disasters, in other unfavorable circumstances
 - For self-defense, see 613.66*
- .7 **Physical fitness**
 - Class here physical yoga
 - For breathing, see 613.192*
 - .704 For specific age and sex groups
 - .704 2 For children
 - .704 3 For adolescents
 - .704 4 For adult men
 - .704 5 For adult women
 - .71 Exercise and sports activities
 - Including hygiene of athletes
 - .78 Correct posture
 - .79 Relaxation, rest, sleep
- .8 **Addictions**
 - .81 Alcoholic beverages
 - .83 Narcotics
 - .84 Amphetamine, ephedrine, other similar stimulants
 - .85 Tobacco
- .9 **Birth control and sex hygiene**
 - [.92 .93] Inherited diseases
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 613
 - .94 Birth control (Family planning, Contraception)
 - .942 Sterilization
 - .943 Other methods
 - .943 2 Chemical
 - Example: pills (oral contraceptives)
 - .943 4 Rhythm
 - .943 5 Mechanical
 - .95 Sex hygiene
 - .952 For adult men
 - .953 For boys and male adolescents
 - .954 For adult women
 - .955 For girls and female adolescents

[.97] Hygiene for specific age groups

Class in 613.043

614 Public health

.07 Study and teaching

.073 Students, learners, apprentices, novices

(It is optional to class here Red Cross and other public health nursing; prefer 610.734)

SUMMARY

614.1 Registration and certification

.3 Adulteration and contamination control

.4 Incidence, distribution, control of disease

.5 Incidence, distribution, control of specific diseases

.6 Disposal of the dead

.7 Environmental sanitation and comfort

.8 Safety

.1 Registration and certification

Class vital statistics in 312.1–312.4

.11 Birth certification

.12 Death certification

.14 Registration of reports on death causes

.15 Registration of reports on morbidity (illness)

.17 Premarital examinations and certification

.19 Forensic medicine (Medical jurisprudence) [*formerly* 340.6]

Examples: determination of time of death, of causes of death and injuries, of nature and extent of injuries

Including forensic psychiatry

[.2] Licensure and registration of medical personnel

Class in 350.8243

.3 Adulteration and contamination control

Inspection, certification, standardization, labeling, distribution, control of food, drugs, other commodities for human use to ensure purity and quality

Use 614.3001–614.3009 for standard subdivisions

.301–.309 Standard subdivisions of food and drug control

.31 Food

For dairy products, see 614.32; food additives, 614.33; beverages, 614.34

.32 Dairy products

- .33 Food additives
 - Permissible and prohibited additives
- .34 Beverages
 - For dairy products, see 614.32*
- .35 Drugs and cosmetics
 - Including ensurance of drug potency
- [.351–.354] Cosmetics, specific kinds of drugs
 - Numbers discontinued, class in 614.35
- .36 Tobacco and tobacco products
- [.37] Other commodities
 - Number discontinued; class in 614.3
- .4 **Incidence, distribution, control of disease**
 - Contemporary and historical
 - Class here epidemiology
 - For incidence, distribution, control of specific diseases, see 614.5*
- .409 Historical treatment
 - Class historical treatment of incidence and distribution in specific places in 614.42, history of epidemics in 614.49
- .42 Incidence and distribution
 - Health surveys, medical geography
- .422 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general
 - Add to 614.422 the numbers following 1 in “Areas” notation 11–19 from Table 2, e g., diseases in the tropics 614.4223
- .423–.429 Treatment by continent, country, locality
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 614.42
- .43 Disease carriers (Vectors) and their control
 - Class diseases transmitted by animals in 614.56
- .432 Insects
 - .432 2 Flies
 - .432 3 Mosquitoes
 - .432 4 Lice and fleas
 - .432 9 Other insects
- .433 Ticks and other arachnids
- .434 Birds
- .438 Rodents
- .439 Other disease carriers

- .44 Preventive medicine
 Public measures for preventing disease
 For specific control measures, see 614.45–614.48
- 614.45–614.48 Specific control measures
 Class comprehensive works in 614.44
- .45 Isolation
 Prevention of spread of disease in homes, hospitals, schools, public places thru isolation
- .46 Quarantine
 Maritime, land, air quarantine regulations at frontiers and ports of entry
- .47 Immunization
 Public measures for preventing disease thru protective inoculation
- .48 Disinfection, fumigation, sterilization
- .49 History of epidemics
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 614.49
- .5 Incidence, distribution, control of specific diseases
 Contemporary and historical

SUMMARY

- 614.51 Bacillary, enteric, influenzal diseases
- .52 Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata) and rickettsial diseases
- .53 Protozoan diseases
- .54 Miscellaneous diseases
- .55 Parasitic diseases
- .56 Zoogenous diseases (Zoonoses)
- .57 Bacterial and viral diseases
- .58 Mental illness
- .59 Other diseases
- .51 Bacillary, enteric, influenzal diseases
- .511 Eberthella and salmonella diseases
- .511 2 Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)
- .511 4 Paratyphoid fever
- .512 Bacillary diseases
 For bacillary dysentery, see 614.516
- .512 3 Diphtheria
- .512 5 Botulism
- .512 8 Tetanus (Lockjaw)

-
- .514 Cholera
 - Asian, Indian, epidemic, malignant, pestilential cholera
 - .516 Amoebic and bacillary dysentery
 - .517 Epidemic diarrhea
 - .518 Influenzas
 - Spanish and Asian influenzas, other acute influenzalike diseases in epidemic form
 - .52 Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata) and rickettsial diseases
 - .521 Smallpox (Variola major) and attenuated forms
 - .522 Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)
 - .523 Measles (Rubeola)
 - .524 German measles (Rubella, Roetheln)
 - .525 Chicken pox (Varicella)
 - .526 Rickettsial diseases
 - Add to 614.526 the numbers following 616.922 in 616.9222–616.9226, e.g., typhus 614.5262
 - .53 Protozoan diseases
 - Add to 614.53 the numbers following 616.936 in 616.9362–616.9364, e.g., malaria 614.532
 - For amoebic dysentery, see 614.516*
 - .54 Miscellaneous diseases
 - .541 Yellow fever
 - .542 Tuberculosis
 - .543 Whooping cough (Pertussis)
 - .544 Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)
 - .545 Puerperal septicemia and pyemia
 - .546 Leprosy (Hansen's disease)
 - .547 Venereal diseases
 - .547 2 Syphilis
 - .547 8 Gonorrhea
 - .549 Poliomyelitis
 - .55 Parasitic diseases
 - Add to 614.55 the numbers following 616.96 in 616.962–616.969, e.g., schistosomiasis 616.553

- .56 Zoogenous diseases (Zoonoses)
 - For tularemia, see 614.5739*
- .561 Anthrax (Charbon)
 - Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever
- .562 Trichinosis
- .563 Rabies (Hydrophobia)
- .564 Glanders (Equinia)
 - Including farcy
- .565 Undulant fever (Brucellosis)
- .566 Parrot fever (Psittacosis)
- .57 Bacterial and viral diseases
- .571-.576 General
 - Add to 614.57 the numbers following 616.92 in 616.921, 616.923-616.926, e.g., tularemia 614.5739
- .577 Bacterial blood diseases
 - Erysipelas, septicemia, pyemia
- .58 Mental illness
 - Incidence and distribution of mental disorders, public measures to prevent mental illness (mental hygiene)
- .580.9 Historical treatment
 - . Class geographical treatment in 614.589
- .582 Factors affecting mental health
- .582.2 Mental factors
 - Anxiety, fear, insecurity
- .582.3 Physical factors
 - Fatigue, illness, disablement
- .582.4 Social, economic, environmental factors
 - Housing, neighborhoods, war, personal relationships, poverty, wealth
- .582.5 Leisure and recreational factors
- .582.6 Cultural, educational, occupational factors
- .582.7 Religious factors
- .583 Mental health of specific age groups
- .583.2 Infants
- .583.3 Children
- .583.4 Adolescents
- .583.5 Mature adults

- .583 6 Middle-aged and aged
- .584 Mental health of specific religious, socioeconomic, occupational groups
Add "Persons" notation 06-99 from Table 7 to base number 614.584
- .585 Mental health of groups based on marital and family status
- .585 2 Married people
- .585 3 Parents
- .585 32 Fathers
- .585 33 Mothers
- .585 4 Unmarried men
- .585 5 Unmarried women
- .586 Mental health of specific racial, ethnic, national groups
Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01-99 from Table 5 to base number 614.586
- .589 Geographical treatment of mental disorders and of mental hygiene
Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 614.589
- .59 Other diseases
- .591-.598 Diseases of regions, systems, organs
Add to 614.59 the numbers following 616 in 616.1-616.8, e.g., heart disease 614.5912
Class cancer of regions, systems, organs in 614.5999, allergies affecting specific regions, systems, organs in 614.5993
- .599 Other miscellaneous diseases
- .599 2 Gynecological, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric disorders
- .599 3 Allergies and autoimmune diseases
- .599 6 Dental diseases
Including fluoridation of water supply and other dental programs
- .599 7 Eye diseases
- .599 8 Ear diseases
- .599 9 Neoplasms (Tumors)
Benign and malignant
- .6 Disposal of the dead
- .61 Interment and cemeteries
- .62 Cremation and crematories
- .63 Transportation of the dead
- .64 Embalming and undertaking

.68 Morgues

.7 **Environmental sanitation and comfort**

614.71–614.77 Pollution

Pollution as a threat to health, regulation of factors causing pollution

Class comprehensive works in 614.7

.71 Air pollution

.712 By smoke, fumes, gases

Example. smog

.715 By radioactive substances

.716 By microbes

.76 Wastes and offensive materials

Regulation of sewage and garbage disposal, dumps and dumping,
storage and transportation of malodorous materials

.77 Soil and water pollution

.772 Water and water supply

.776 Soil

.78 Noise

Effect on health, control by regulation

.79 Public buildings and assembly places

Sanitary regulation of operations, operating personnel, maintenance
of premises and equipment

.791 Eating places

.792 Dwelling places

.793 Hospitals and other health facilities

.794 Public comfort stations

.796 Recreational facilities

Example. swimming pools

.797 Barbershops and beauty shops

.799 Public carriers

.8 Safety

Causes of accidents; prevention of accidents thru inspection and regulation, rescue operations

Class safety engineering in 620.86, safety equipment and engineering measures of a specific technology with the technology, e.g., space rescue operations 629.4585

.81 Water safety

For water transportation safety, see 614.864

[.82] Safety from gas suffocation

Number discontinued, class in 614.8

.83 Safety in use of machinery and hazardous materials**.831 Flammable materials****.831 2 Chemicals**

Examples: gasolines, natural and synthetic gases, cryogenic fluids

For explosives and fireworks, see 614.832

.831 5 Fabrics and similar materials**.832 Explosives and fireworks****.836 Electrical equipment and appliances****.838 Machinery**

For electrical equipment and appliances, see 614.836

.839 Radioactive materials**.84 Fire safety****.841 Fire prevention****[.843-.846] Fire extinction methods**

Class in 628.9252-628.9254

.847 Regulation and inspection of safety equipment and structures

Fire escapes and exits, fire-resistant construction

.85 Industrial and domestic safety

Class specific aspects in 614.83-614.84

.852 Industrial**.853 Domestic****.86 Travel (Transportation) safety****.862 Highway safety****.863 Railroad and streetcar safety****.864 Water transportation safety****.869 Air and space transportation safety**

- .87 Safety under other conditions
- .875 Catastrophic events of natural origin
 - Safety measures and rescue operations connected with hurricanes, tornadoes, earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, floods, snowstorms
- .877 Sports and other recreational activities
 - Class safety in water sports in 614.81
- .88 First aid
 - Nonprofessional emergency treatment to accident victims before regular medical or surgical care can be given
 - Class first aid in specific situations in 614.81–614.87

615 Pharmacology and therapeutics

SUMMARY

- 615.1 Drugs (*Materia medica*)
 - .2 Inorganic drugs
 - .3 Organic drugs
 - .4 Practical pharmacy
 - .5 Therapeutics
 - .6 Methods of medication
 - .7 Pharmacodynamics
 - .8 Physical and other therapies
 - .9 Toxicology (*Poisons and poisoning*)
- .1 Drugs (*Materia medica*)
 - Class here pharmacology
 - For specific drugs and groups of drugs, see 615.2–615.3; pharmacy, 615.4, physiological and therapeutic action of drugs, 615.7*
- .11 Pharmacopeias
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 615.11
- .12 Dispensatories
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 615.12
- .13 Formularies (*Collected prescriptions*)
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 615.13
- .14 Posology
 - Prescription writing, dosage determination, incompatibilities
- .18 Drug preservation technique
 - Proper packaging and other methods of preserving drug quality and potency

- .19 **Pharmaceutical chemistry**
 - Manufacture, preparation, analysis of drugs
 - Use 615.19001–615.19009 for standard subdivisions
- .190 1 **Analysis**
- .190 15 **Chemical analysis**
- .190 18 **Assay methods**
- .191 **Manufacture and preparation**



615.2–615.3 Specific drugs and groups of drugs

Pharmaceutical chemistry, preservation, general therapeutics
Class comprehensive works in 615.1

- .2 **Inorganic drugs**
 - Add to 615.2 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., calomel 615.2663
 - If preferred, arrange specific inorganic drugs alphabetically
- .3 **Organic drugs**
 - Arrange by kind and source as below; but, if preferred, arrange specific organic drugs alphabetically
- .31 **Synthetic drugs**
 - Add to 615.31 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., sulfonamides 615.3167
 - Class synthetic vitamins in 615.328
- .32 **Drugs of vegetable origin**
 - Class enzymes of vegetable origin in 615.35
- .321 **Pharmacognosy**
 - Crude drugs and simples, alkaloids, herbals
 - For drugs derived from specific plants, see 615.323–615.327*
- .323–.327 **Drugs derived from specific plants**
 - Add to 615.32 the numbers following 58 in 583–587, e.g., belladonna 615.32379
 - For drugs derived from thallophytes, see 615.329*
- .328 **Vitamins**
- .329 **Drugs derived from thallophytes**
 - Class here antibiotics
 - Add to 615.329 the numbers following 589 in 589.1–589.9, e.g., streptomycin 615.32992
- .34 **Fish-liver oils**

- .35 Enzymes
 - Pepsin, diastase, trypsin, chymotrypsin, papain
- .36 Drugs of animal origin
 - Class each drug of animal origin not provided for here with the subject, e.g., fish-liver oils 615.34
- .362 Thyroid and parathyroid extracts
- .363 Pituitary hormones
- .364 Adrenal hormones
 - ACTH, cortisone, adrenalin
- .365 Insulin
- .366 Sex hormones
- .367 Liver extracts
- [.369] Extracts and secretions of other organs
 - Number discontinued, class in 615.36
- .37 Serums
 - .372 Vaccines, bacterins, sero-bacterins
 - .373 Toxins and toxoids
 - .375 Antitoxins, toxin-antitoxins, convalescent serums
- .39 Human blood products
 - Example: gamma globulins
 - For convalescent serums, see 615.375*
- .4 Practical pharmacy
 - Preparing prescriptions and dispensing drugs
- .42 Solutions and extracts
 - Decoctions, infusions, tinctures, elixirs, sirups, glycerites, collodions
- .43 Pills, capsules, tablets, troches, powders
- .45 Ointments and emulsions
- [.49] Other preparations
 - Number discontinued; class in 615.4
- .5 Therapeutics
 - Class therapies applied to specific diseases or groups of diseases in 616–618
 - For first aid, see 614.88, physical and other therapies, 615.8*
- .53 General therapeutic systems
 - Class drug therapy regardless of system in 615.58
- .531 Allopathy
- .532 Homeopathy

- .533 Osteopathy
- .534 Chiropractic
- .535 Naturopathy
- .537 Eclectic and botanic medicine
- .54 Age and therapeutics
- .542 Pediatric therapeutics
- .547 Geriatric therapeutics
- .58 Drug therapy
 - Methods and processes
 - Including chemotherapy
 - Class general therapeutics of a specific drug or group of drugs in 615.2–615.3; general therapeutic action of drugs in 615.7
 - For methods of medication, see 615.6*
- .6 **Methods of medication**
- .61 Oral medication
- .62 Rectal medication
- .63 Parenteral medication
 - Subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous, intra-arterial injections
 - For blood and blood plasma transfusions, see 615.65*
- .64 Inhalatory medication
- .65 Blood and blood plasma transfusions
 - Use 615.65001–615.65009 for standard subdivisions
- .650 7 Blood and blood plasma banks
- .66 Medication thru serous and mucous membranes
- .67 External medication
- .7 **Pharmacodynamics**
 - Physiological and therapeutic action of drugs
 - For toxicology, see 615.9*
- .704 Special effects of drugs
- .704 2 Side effects
- .704 3 Aftereffects

SUMMARY

- 615.71 Drugs affecting cardiovascular system
- .72 Drugs affecting respiratory system
- .73 Drugs affecting digestive system and metabolism
- .74 Drugs affecting secretion
- .75 Antipyretics (Febrifuges)
- .76 Drugs affecting urogenital system
- .77 Drugs affecting motor and integumentary systems
- .78 Drugs affecting nervous system
- .71 Drugs affecting cardiovascular system
- .711 Heart stimulants
- .716 Heart depressants
- .718 Drugs affecting blood and blood-forming organs
- .72 Drugs affecting respiratory system
 - Expectorants, errhines, cough remedies
- .73 Drugs affecting digestive system and metabolism
- .731 Emetics
- .732 Cathartics, laxatives, purgatives
- .733 Anthelmintics
- .734 Digestants
- .735 Demulcents
- .739 Drugs affecting metabolism
- .74 Drugs affecting secretion
- .75 Antipyretics (Febrifuges)
- .76 Drugs affecting urogenital system
- .761 Drugs affecting urinary system
 - Diuretics and antidiuretics
- .766 Drugs affecting reproductive system
- .77 Drugs affecting motor and integumentary systems
- .778 Skin
 - Astringents, counterirritants, emollients, deodorants, antiseptics, disinfectants
- .779 Nails and hair
- .78 Drugs affecting nervous system
 - For antipyretics, see 615.75*
- 781 Anesthetics

- .782 Hypnotics
 - Nerve depressants, narcotics, sedatives
- .783 Analgesics
- .784 Antispasmodics
- .785 Stimulants
- .788 Psychotropic drugs
 - .788 2 Tranquilizers
 - .788 3 Hallucinogenic and psychedelic drugs
- .8 Physical and other therapies
 - .804 General special
 - .804 3 Therapies directed toward a specific objective
 - Example: resuscitation

SUMMARY

- 615.82 Therapeutic manipulations and exercises
 - .83 Other physical therapies
 - .84 Radiotherapy and electrotherapy
 - .85 Other therapies
 - .88 Empirical and historical remedies
 - .89 Primitive, ancient, medieval remedies
- .82 Therapeutic manipulations and exercises
 - .822 Mechanotherapy and therapeutic massage
 - Class here comprehensive works on massage
 - Class reducing and slenderizing massage in 646.75
 - .824 Medical gymnastics
 - .83 Other physical therapies
 - For hydrotherapy and balneotherapy, see 615.853, radiotherapy and electrotherapy, 615 84*
 - .831 Phototherapy
 - .831 4 Heliotherapy
 - .831 5 Ultraviolet-ray therapy
 - [.831 9] Other phototherapies
 - Number discontinued; class in 615.831
 - .832 Thermotherapy
 - .832 2 Infrared-ray therapy
 - .832 3 Diathermy (Thermopenetration)
 - .832 5 Fever therapy
 - .832 9 Cryotherapy (Hypothermia)

- .834 Climatotherapy
- .836 Acrotherapeutics
 - Oxygen and carbon dioxide therapies, pneumatotherapy
- .837 Music therapy
- .84 Radiotherapy and electrotherapy
- .842 Radiotherapy (Radiation therapy, Actinotherapy)
 - For phototherapy, see 615.831*
- .842 2 X-ray therapy
- .842 3 Radium therapy
- .842 4 Radioactive isotope therapy
 - Class radium therapy in 615.8423
- .845 Electrotherapy
 - Including magnetic and electronic therapies
- .85 Other therapies
- .851 Mental therapies
 - For faith healing, see 615.852*
- .851 2 Hypnotherapy (Suggestion therapy)
- .851 5 Occupational and recreational therapies
- .851 6 Biblio- and educational therapies
- .852 Religious therapy (Hicrotherapy)
 - Including faith healing
- .853 Hydrotherapy and balneotherapy
- .854 Dietotherapy and vitamin therapy
- .856 Spurious therapies
 - Quackery, e.g., Perkinism
- .88 Empirical and historical remedies
 - Class here home remedies
 - For primitive, ancient, medieval remedies, see 615.89*
- .882 Folk medicine
- .886 Patent medicines
- .89 Primitive, ancient, medieval remedies
 - Example. acupuncture

-
- .9 **Toxicology (Poisons and poisoning)**
 - Use 615.9001–615.9009 for standard subdivisions
 - .902 Industrial toxicology
 - .905 Prevention of poisoning
 - .907 Tests, analysis, detection of poisons and poisoning
 - .908 Treatment of poisoning
 - .91 Gaseous poisons
 - Asphyxiating and lethal gases
 - .92 Inorganic poisons
 - Class gaseous inorganic poisons in 615.91
 - .921 Acids
 - Class specific acids in 615.925
 - .922 Alkalis
 - Class specific alkalis in 615.925
 - .925 Specific inorganic poisons
 - Add to 615.925 the numbers following 546 in 546.2–546.7, e.g., mercurial poisons 615.925663
 - .94 Animal poisons
 - .942 Venoms
 - Snake, scorpion, spider, bee, other venoms
 - .945 Poisonous food animals
 - Poisonous mussels, fish, mammalian organs
 - .95 Organic poisons
 - Arrange by kind as below; but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically
 - Class gaseous organic poisons in 615.91
 - For animal poisons, see 615.94*
 - .951 Synthetic and manufactured poisons
 - Add to 615.951 the numbers following 547.0 in 547.01–547.08, e.g., ethers 547.95135
 - .952 Vegetable and vegetable-derived poisons
 - Add to 615.952 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g., opium 615.9523122
 - .954 Food poisons and poisoning
 - Class pathology and treatment of a specific kind of food poisoning with the subject, e.g., botulism 616.9315; poisonous food animals in 615.945; vegetable and vegetable-derived poisons in 615.952

616 Diseases

Causes (etology), effects, diagnoses, prognoses, treatment

Class wounds and injuries, surgical treatment of diseases, diseases by body region, diseases of teeth, eyes, ears in 617; gynecological, obstetrical, pediatric, geriatric diseases in 618

For incidence, distribution, control of disease, see 614.4; general therapeutics, 615.5

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Class case histories in 616.09

SUMMARY

- 616.01** Medical microbiology
- .02 Special topics
- .04 Special medical conditions
- .07 Pathology
- .08 Psychosomatic medicine
- .09 Case histories

.01 Medical microbiology

Pathogenic microorganisms and their relation to disease

.014 Bacteria

Add to 616.014 the numbers following 589.9 in 589.92–589.99, e.g.,
Enterobacteriaceae 616.0145

.015 Fungi

.016 Protozoa

.019 Ultramicrobes

.019 2 Rickettsiae

.019 4 Viruses

.02 Special topics

For psychosomatic medicine, see 616.08

.024 Domestic medicine

Diagnosis and treatment of ailments without direction of physician

.025 Medical emergencies

.026 Internal medicine

.04 Special medical conditions

.042 Inherited diseases

.043 Congenital diseases (Birth defects)

Including teratology [formerly 611.012]

- .047 **Manifestations of disease**
 Pathology, diagnosis, treatment of symptoms and syndromes, e.g., headache, vertigo
 Class manifestations of disease as symptoms in 616.072, symptoms of a specific disease or class of diseases with the subject, e.g., symptoms of neurological diseases 616.84
- .07 **Pathology**
 Causes, effects, diagnoses, prognoses of pathological physiology and anatomy
 For medical microbiology, see 616.01
- .071 **Etiology**
- .072 **Symptomatology (Semiology)**
 Manifestations of diseases
 Aches and pains, fevers, infections, necrosis (gangrene), inflammation, atrophies, hypertrophies, edemas
 For interpretation of symptoms, see 616.075
- .075 **Diagnoses and prognoses**
 Examination of patient, interpretation of symptoms, prediction of course of disease
 Including differential diagnosis, ultrasonic diagnosis
 Class nonprofessional diagnosis in 616.024
- .075 4 **Physical diagnosis**
 Diagnosis of sounds, mechanical and electrical phenomena, visual signs, other physical phenomena
- [.075 5] **Clinical diagnosis**
 Number discontinued; class in 616.075
- .075 6 **Chemical diagnosis**
- .075 61 **Blood analysis**
- .075 63 **Analysis of gastroenteric contents**
- .075 66 **Urinalysis**
 Class radioscopic urinalysis in 616.0757
- .075 7 **Radioscopic diagnosis (Medical radiography and roentgenology)**
 Including radioscopic urinalysis
 Class here comprehensive works on medical radiology
 For radiotherapy, see 615.842
- .075 72 **X-ray and fluoroscopic examinations**
- .075 75 **Radioisotope scanning**

- .075 8 Microscopy in diagnosis
 - Class here biopsies
- .075 81 Bacteriological examinations
- .075 82 Cytological examinations
- .075 83 Histological and histochemical examinations
- .075 9 Autopsies (Post-mortem examinations)
- .079 Immunity (Immunology)
 - Add to 616.079 the numbers following 574.29 in 574.292–574.295, e.g., immune reactions 616.0795
- .08 Psychosomatic medicine
- .09 Case histories
- [.092] Case histories
 - Number discontinued, class in 616.09

616.1–616.9 Specific diseases

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001–009 Standard subdivisions
 - Class the subject as a profession in 023, experimental medicine in 027
- 01 Microbiology
 - Add to 01 the numbers following 616.01 in 616.014–616.019, e.g., fungi 015
- 02 Special topics
- 023 Personnel
 - Nature of duties, characteristics of professions, relationships
- 023 2 Physicians
- 023 3 Technicians and assistants
- 024 Domestic medicine
- 025 Medical emergencies
- 027 Experimental medicine
 - Study of pathology and treatment of diseases induced in laboratory animals
- 04 Special classes of diseases
- 042 Inherited diseases
- 043 Congenital diseases
- 05 Preventive measures
 - By individuals and by medical personnel
 - Class public measures for preventing specific diseases in 614.5
- 06 Specific therapies
- 061 Drug therapy
- 062–069 Other therapies
 - Add to 06 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., X-ray therapy 06422
- 07–09 Other general aspects
 - Add to 0 the numbers following 616.0 in 616.07–616.09, e.g., diagnoses 075

Class comprehensive works in 616

SUMMARY

- 616.1 Diseases of cardiovascular system
- .2 Diseases of respiratory system
- .3 Diseases of digestive system Gastroenterology
- .4 Diseases of blood-forming, lymphatic, endocrine systems
- .5 Diseases of integument, hair, nails
- .6 Diseases of urogenital system
- .7 Diseases of musculoskeletal system
- .8 Diseases of nervous system
- .9 Other diseases

616.1–616.8 Diseases of specific systems and organs

Class comprehensive works in 616, neoplasms of specific systems and organs in 616.992, tuberculosis of specific systems and organs in 616.995

.1 *Diseases of cardiovascular system

SUMMARY

- 616.11 Of cardiac membranes
- .12 Of heart
- .13 Of blood vessels
- .14 Of veins and capillaries
- .15 Of blood
- .11 *Of cardiac membranes
- .12 *Of heart
 - Class here cardiology
 - .122 *Angina pectoris
 - .123 *Coronary diseases
 - .124 *Myocarditis
 - .125 *Valvular diseases
 - Diseases of the mitral, tricuspid, pulmonary valves
 - .126 *Necrosis and other degenerative diseases
 - .127 *Rheumatic heart diseases
 - .128 *Arrhythmia
 - .13 *Of blood vessels
 - For diseases of veins and capillaries, see 616.14
 - .131 *Peripheral vascular diseases
 - For cerebrovascular diseases, see 616.81
 - .132 *Hypertension
 - Arterial and essential

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .133 *Arterial aneurysms
- .135 *Arterial embolisms and thromboses
- .136 *Arteriosclerosis
- .138 *Diseases of the aorta
- .14 *Of veins and capillaries
- .142 *Phlebitis and thrombophlebitis
- .143 *Varicose veins (Varix)
- .145 *Venous embolisms and thromboses
- .148 *Telangiectasis, telangitis, other capillary diseases
- .15 *Of blood
 - Arrange by kind as below, but, if preferred, arrange alphabetically by disease
 - Class here hematology
 - For bacterial blood diseases, see 616.94*
- .152 *Anemias
- .153 *Polycythemias
- .154 *Agranulocytoses
- .155 *Leukemias
 - If preferred, class in 616.994
- .156 *Reticuloses
- .157 *Hemorrhagic diseases
 - Including hemophilia
- [.159] Other
 - Number discontinued, class in 616.15

.2 Diseases of respiratory system

- .200 1-.200 3 Standard subdivisions
- .200 4 General considerations •
 - Add to 616.2004 the numbers following 0 in notation 01-09 under 616.1-616.9, e.g., diagnosis of respiratory diseases 616.200475
- .200 5-.200 9 Other standard subdivisions
- .201 *Croup
- .202 *Hay fever
- .203 *Influenzas
- .204 *Whooping cough (Pertussis)
- .205 *Common cold (Coryza, rhinitis)

* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

- .208 ***Hyperventilation (Overbreathing)**
- .21 ***Of nose, larynx, accessory organs**
 Class here otorhinolaryngology; comprehensive works on eye, ear, nose, throat
 For otology, see 617.81–617.88, ophthalmology, 617.7, laryngology, 616.22
- .212 ***Of nose, nasopharynx, accessory sinuses**
 Class here rhinology
 Class common cold in 616.205
- .22 ***Of larynx, glottis, vocal cords, epiglottis**
 Class here laryngology
- .23 ***Of trachea and bronchi**
 Trachitis, bronchitis, bronchiectasis, bronchial asthma
 Class here comprehensive works on asthma
 Class cardiac asthma in 616.12, bronchopneumonia in 616.241
- .24 ***Of lungs**
- .241 ***Pneumonias**
 For necropneumonia, see 616.245
- .244 ***Pneumoconiosis**
 Silicosis, cholecosis, pulmonary abscesses
- .245 ***Necropneumonia**
- .246 ***Pulmonary tuberculosis**
 If preferred, class in 616.995
- .248 ***Emphysema**
- .25 ***Of pleura**
 Class pleural pneumonia in 616.241
- .27 ***Of mediastinum**
- .3 ***Diseases of digestive system Gastroenterology**

SUMMARY

- 616.31 **Of mouth and throat**
- .32 **Of pharynx and esophagus**
- .33 **Of stomach**
- .34 **Of intestines**
- .35 **Of rectum and anus**
- .36 **Of biliary tract**
- .37 **Of pancreas**
- .38 **Of peritoneum**
- .39 **Nutritional and metabolic diseases**

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .31 *Of mouth and throat
 - For laryngology, see 616.22, dentistry, 617.6; diseases of pharynx, 616.32*
- .312 *Trench mouth (Vincent's angina)
- .313 *Mumps (Epidemic parotitis)
- .314 *Diseases of tonsils
- .32 *Of pharynx and esophagus
- .33 *Of stomach
 - Class here comprehensive works on gastrointestinal diseases
 - For diseases of intestines, see 616.34*
- .332 *Functional disorders
 - Dyspepsia, disorders of secretion, gastric indigestion
- .333 *Gastritis
- .334 *Gastric ulcers
- .339 Other diseases
 - Merycism, gastroenteritis, gastropotosis
- .34 *Of intestines
- .342 *Functional disorders
 - Diarrhea, constipation, obstructions
- .343 *Peptic ulcers
 - For gastric ulcers, see 616.334*
- .343 3 *Duodenal ulcers
- .343 4 *Gastrojejunal ulcers
- .344 *Enteritis
 - Ileitis, colitis, Crohn's disease, duodenitis, jejunitis
- .35 *Of rectum and anus
 - Class here proctology
- .36 *Of biliary tract
- .362 *Liver disorders
 - .362 3 *Hepatitis
 - .362 4 *Cirrhosis
 - .362 5 *Hepatic jaundice
- .365 *Gall bladder and bile duct disorders
- .37 *Of pancreas
 - Class diabetes in 616.462

* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

- .444 ***Hypothyroidism**
 For cretinism and myxedemism, see 616.858848
- .445 ***Hyperparathyroidism and hypoparathyroidism**
- .45 ***Of adrenal glands**
 Hyperadrenalism, hypoadrenalism, Addison's disease
 Including Cushing's syndrome
- .46 ***Of pancreatic internal secretion (Of islands of Langerhans)**
- .462 ***Diabetes (Diabetes mellitus)**
 Class diabetes insipidus in 616.47
- .466 ***Hypoglycemia**
- .47 ***Of pituitary glands**
 Examples: acromegaly, gigantism, dwarfism, Simmonds' disease, diabetes insipidus
- .48 ***Of other glands**
 Including hyperpinealism, polyglandular disorders
- .49 ***Of male breast**
 Class comprehensive works on diseases of breast [*formerly 616.49*] in 618.19
- .5 ***Diseases of integument, hair, nails**
 Class here dermatology
 For venereal diseases, see 616.951
- .51 ***Papular eruptions**
 Including urticaria (hives)
- .52 ***Vesicular and pustular eruptions**
- .521 ***Eczema (Herpes)**
- .522 ***Shingles (Herpes zoster)**
- .523 ***Boils and carbuncles (Furuncles)**
- .524 ***Impetigo**
- .526 ***Psoriasis**
- .53 ***Diseases of sebaceous glands**
 Acne, blackheads, wens, seborrhea
- .54 ***Skin hypertrophies, scalp diseases, related disorders**
 For pigmentary changes, see 616.55
- .544 ***Skin hypertrophies**
 Corns, callosities, warts (verrucae), ichthyosis, scleroderma, xeroderma, keratosis

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .545 ***Skin ulcerations**
 Trophic, decubitus, indolent, phagedenic ulcers
- .546 ***Diseases of scalp, hair, hair follicles**
 Baldness (alopecia), hair whiteness (leucotrichia), excessive
 hairiness (hypertrichosis), dandruff
- .547 ***Diseases of nails**
- .55 ***Pigmentary changes**
 Examples: albinism, nevi, moles
- .56 ***Diseases of sweat glands**
 Examples: heat rash, prickly heat, anhidrosis
- .57 ***Parasitic skin diseases**
- .58 Chilblains, frostbite, chapping
- .6 ***Diseases of urogenital system**
 For gynecology, see 618.1

616.61–616.63 Diseases of urinary system

Class here urology

Class comprehensive works in 616.6

- .61 ***Of kidneys and ureters**
 Class here nephrology
- .612 ***Bright's disease (Nephritis)**
- .613 ***Pyelitis, pyelocystitis, pyelonephritis**
- .62 ***Of bladder and urethra**
 For diseases of male urethra, see 616.64
- .622 ***Kidney stones (Urinary calculi)**
 Renal and vesical calculi
- .623 ***Cystitis**
- .624 ***Urethritis**
- .63 ***Urinary manifestations**
- .633 ***Pyuria**
- .635 ***Uremia**



616.64–616.69 Diseases of male genital organs

Class comprehensive works in 616.6

- .64 ***Diseases of male urethra**

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .65 ***Diseases of prostate**
- .66 ***Diseases of penis**
- .67 ***Diseases of scrotum**
- .68 ***Diseases of testicles and accessory organs**
- .69 ***Functional disorders of male genital organs**
- .692 ***Impotence and sterility**
- .693 ***Climacteric disorders**
- [.699] **Other functional disorders**
 - Number discontinued, class in 616.69
- .7 ***Diseases of musculoskeletal system**
- .71 ***Of bones**
 - For diseases of spine, see 616.73; rickets, 616.395*
- .712 ***Osteitis**
 - Osteitis deformans, osteochondritis, periostitis
- .715 ***Osteomyelitis**
- .72 ***Of joints**
 - Hypertrophic and rheumatoid arthritis
 - Class here rheumatology, comprehensive works on rheumatism
 - For gout, see 616.399; muscular rheumatism, 616.742; rheumatic fever, 616.991*
- .73 ***Of spine**
- .74 ***Of muscles**
- .742 ***Muscular rheumatism**
- .743 ***Myositis**
- .744 ***Myasthenia gravis**
- .748 ***Progressive muscular dystrophy**
- .749 **Other muscular atrophies**
- .75 ***Of tendons and fasciae**
- .76 ***Of bursae and sheaths of tendons**
- .77 ***Of connective tissue (Collagen diseases)**
 - For diseases of tendons and fasciae, see 616.75*

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.8 Diseases of nervous system

Class here neurology

Use 616.8001–616.8009 for standard subdivisions

.801–.803 Standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases**.804 General considerations of neurology, of brain diseases**Add to 616.804 the numbers following 0 in notation 01–09 under
616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnosis 616.80475**.805–.809 Other standard subdivisions of neurology, of brain diseases****SUMMARY****616.81 Cerebrovascular diseases****.82 Meningeal diseases****.83 Other organic diseases of central nervous system****.84 Symptoms of neurological diseases****.85 Neuroses and related disorders****.86 Neurotic addictions and intoxications****.87 Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves****.88 Diseases of autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic)
system****.89 Psychiatry**

616.81- 616.84 Neurology Brain diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.8

*For diseases of cranial and spinal nerves, see 616.87, of autonomic
nervous system, 616.88***.81 *Cerebrovascular diseases**

Cerebral hemorrhages, aneurysms, embolisms, thromboses

Including apoplexy (stroke)

.82 *Meningeal diseases**.83 Other organic diseases of central nervous system**

Including diseases of basal ganglia

*For chorea, see 616.851, epilepsy, 616.853, senile dementias, 616.8983***.832 *Encephalitis****.833 *Parkinson's disease (Paralysis agitans)****.834 *Multiple sclerosis****.835 *Poliomyelitis****.836 *Cerebral palsy****.837 *Paraplegia****.838 *Locomotor ataxia (Tabes dorsalis)**

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .84 Symptoms of neurological diseases
- .841 Dizziness (Vertigo)
- .842 Paralysis
- .844 Spinal irritation
- .845 Convulsions
- .849 Other symptoms
 - Including enuresis, pain, coma, reflex disturbances, insomnia, other sleep disturbances
- .85 Neuroses and related disorders
 - For neurotic addictions and intoxications, see 616.86*

SUMMARY

- 616.851 Chorea
- .852 Hysteria and related disorders
- .853 Epilepsy
- .855 Speech and language disorders
- .856 Cutaneous sensory disorders
- .857 Migraine
- .858 Disorders of personality, character, intellect
- .851 *Chorea
- .852 *Hysteria and related disorders
 - Class speech and language disorders in 616.855
- .852 1 *War neuroses (Combat fatigue)
- .852 2 *Obsessive-compulsive neuroses
 - Phobias and anxiety neuroses
- .852 3 *Dissociative reactions
 - Amnesias, fugues, multiple personalities
- .852 8 *Asthenic reactions
 - Chronic fatigue and depression, formerly known as neurasthenia
- .853 *Epilepsy
- .855 *Speech and language disorders
- .855 2 *Neurological language disorders (Aphasias)
 - Diminution or loss of faculty of language in any of its forms due to cerebral lesions, e.g., agraphia, agnosia, apraxia
 - For dyslexia and other written language disorders, see 616.8553*
- .855 3 *Dyslexia and other written language disorders
- .855 4 *Psychoneurotic speech disorders
 - Examples: stammering, stuttering

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .86 *Neurotic addictions and intoxications
- .861 *Alcoholism
- .862 *Metallic intoxication
- .863 Addiction to narcotics
- .864 Addiction to amphetamine, ephedrine, other similar stimulants
- .865 *Addiction to tobacco
- .87 *Diseases of cranial and spinal nerves
 - Neuritis and neuralgias, e.g., polyneuritis, sciatica, neuritis of peripheral nerves, trigeminal and glossopharyngeal neuralgias
 - For herpes zoster, see 616.522*
- .88 *Diseases of autonomic (sympathetic and parasympathetic) system
- .89 *Psychiatry
 - Mental, emotional, behavioral disorders (neuroses and psychoses)
 - For neuroses, see 616.85; puerperal psychoses, 618.76*
- .890 073 Students, learners, apprentices, novices
 - (It is optional to class here psychiatric nursing, prefer 610.7368)
- [.890 6] Specific therapies
 - Do not use, class in 616.891
- .891 Specific therapies
 - For psychosurgery, see 617.481*
- .891 2 Shock therapy
- .891 3 Physical therapies
- .891 4 Psychotherapy
 - For branches of psychotherapy, see 616.8915-616.8917*
- 616.891 5-616.891 7 Branches of psychotherapy
 - Class comprehensive works in 616.8914
- .891 5 Group therapy and psychodrama
 - Including family psychotherapy
- .891 6 Mental therapies
 - Add to 616.8916 the numbers following 615.851 in 615.8512-615.8516, e.g., hypnotherapy 616.89162
- .891 7 Psychoanalysis
- .891 8 Drug therapy

¹ Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

616.892–616.898 Specific psychoses

Class comprehensive works in 616.89

- .892 ***General paresis (Neurosyphilis)**
- .895 ***Manic-depressive psychoses**
 - Manic, depressive, circular and alternating manic-depressive psychoses; depressive reactions, involuntional psychoses
- .897 ***Paranoia and paranoid conditions**
- .898 Schizophrenia and senile dementias
- .898 2 ***Schizophrenia (Dementia praecox)**
- .898 3 ***Senile dementias**
- .9 **Other diseases**
- .901–.906 Standard subdivisions of communicable diseases
- .907 Study and teaching of communicable diseases
- .907 3 Students, learners, apprentices, novices
 - (It is optional to class here communicable disease nursing; prefer 610.7369)
- .908–.909 Other standard subdivisions of communicable diseases

SUMMARY

- 616.91 **Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)**
- .92 **Bacterial, viral, rickettsial diseases**
- .93 **Bacillary, enteric, protozoan diseases**
- .94 **Bacterial blood diseases**
- .95 **Venereal and zoonogenous diseases (zoonoses)**
- .96 **Parasitic diseases**
- .97 **Allergies and autoimmune diseases**
- .98 **Noncommunicable diseases**
- .99 **Other communicable and noncommunicable diseases**



616.91–616.96 Communicable diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.9, communicable diseases predominantly affecting a specific part of the body with the part affected, e.g., mumps 616.313

For leprosy, see 616.998

- .91 ***Eruptive fevers (Exanthemata)**
- .912 ***Smallpox (Variola major)**
- .913 ***Attenuated forms of smallpox**
 - Human vaccinia (“cowpox”), parasmallpox (alastrim, amas), Cuban itch, Kaffir milkpox

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .914 *Chicken pox (Varicella)
- .915 *Measles (Rubeola)
- .916 *German measles (Rubella, Roetheln)
- .917 *Scarlet fever (Scarlatina)
- .92 *Bacterial, viral, rickettsial diseases
 - For bacterial blood diseases, see 616.94*
- .921 *Dengue fever
- .922 *Rickettsial diseases
 - .922 2 *Typhus group
 - Classic epidemic (louse-borne) typhus, murine (flea-borne) typhus, Brill's disease
 - .922 3 *Spotted-fever group
 - Rickettsialpox, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, boutonneuse fever, other tick-bite spotted fevers
 - .922 4 *Scrub typhus (Tsutsugamushi disease)
 - Japanese river fever
 - .922 5 *Q fever
 - .922 6 Other rickettsial diseases
 - Including trench fever, Bullis fever, North Queensland tick typhus
- .923 *Pasteurella diseases
 - .923 2 *Bubonic plague
 - .923 9 *Tularemia
- .924 *Tick-borne viral diseases
 - For lymphocytic choriomeningitis, see 616.925*
 - .924 2 *Tick fever (Colorado tick fever)
 - American mountain fever, nonexanthematous tick fever
 - .924 4 *Relapsing fevers
 - Including bacterial and spirochetal relapsing fevers
- .925 *Lymphocytic choriomeningitis
- .926 *Fevers
 - Class a specific fever with the subject, e.g., scarlet fever 616.917
- .927 *Eberthella and salmonella diseases
 - .927 2 *Typhoid fever (Enteric fever)
 - .927 4 *Paratyphoid fever

* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

[.927 9] Other salmonella diseases
 Number discontinued; class in 616.927

.928 *Yellow fever

.93 Bacillary, enteric, protozoan diseases

.931 *Bacillary diseases

.931 3 *Diphtheria

.931 5 *Botulism

.931 8 *Tetanus (Lockjaw)

616.932–616.935 Enteric diseases

Class comprehensive works in 616.93

For typhoid fever, see 616.9272

.932 *Asian (Pestilential) cholera

.933 *European cholera

Sporadic cholera and cholera morbus

.935 *Dysenteries

.935 3 *Amoebic dysentery (Amoebiasis)

.935 5 *Bacillary dysentery (Shigella diseases)

.936 *Protozoan diseases

For amoebic dysentery, see 616.9353

.936 2 *Malaria

.936 3 *Trypanosomiasis

Gambian and Rhodesian trypanosomiasis, Chagas' disease, African sleeping sickness

.936 4 *Leishmaniasis

Visceral leishmaniasis (kala-azar), cutaneous leishmaniasis (oriental sores), mucocutaneous leishmaniasis (forest yaws)

.94 *Bacterial blood diseases

.942 *Erysipelas

.944 *Septicemia and pyemia

.95 Venereal and zoonous diseases (zoonoses)

For tularemia, see 616.9239

.951 *Venereal diseases

.951 3 *Syphilis

For neurosyphilis, see 616.892

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .951 5 *Gonorrhea
- .951 8 Other venereal diseases
 - Chancroid, lymphadenoma inguinale, lymphogranuloma venereum
- .953 *Rabies (Hydrophobia)
- .954 *Glanders (Equinia)
- .956 *Anthrax (Charbon)
 - Woolsorters' disease, splenic fever
- .957 *Undulant fever (Brucellosis)
- .958 *Parrot fever (Psittacosis)
- .96 *Parasitic diseases
 - Class here medical parasitology
 - For parasitic skin diseases, see 616.57*
- .962 *Diseases due to endoparasites
 - For diseases due to worms, see 616.963–616.965*

616.963–616.965 Diseases due to worms

Class here medical helminthology

Class comprehensive works in 616.96

- 963 *Diseases due to flukes (Trematoda)
 - Schistosomiasis, bilharziasis, distomatosis
- .964 *Diseases due to tapeworms (Cestoda)
 - Tapeworm infestations, hydatid diseases (echinococcosis)
- .965 *Diseases due to roundworms (Nematoda)
- .965 2 *To filariae
 - Filariasis, elephantiasis, wuchereriosis, onchocerciasis
- .965 4 To other nematodes
 - Including trichinosis, enterobiasis, acariasis, hookworm infestations
- .968 *Diseases due to ectoparasites
 - Class here medical entomology
 - Class a specific entomological disease with the disease, e.g., Colorado tick fever 616.9242
- .969 *Diseases due to fungi
 - Class here medical mycology
- .97 *Allergies and autoimmune diseases
 - Class a specific disease with the subject, e.g., hay fever 616.202
- .973 *Contact allergies

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .975 ***Food and drug allergies**
- .977 ***Physical allergies**
 - Hypersensitivity to physical agents, e.g., heat, sunlight, cold, humidity
- .978 ***Autoimmune diseases**
 - Diseases caused by immune reactions to the body's own tissues
- .98 **Noncommunicable diseases**
 - Use 616 98001–616.98009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class a disease of a specific organ or system with the subject, e.g., psychological disorders 616.89
 - For allergies and autoimmune diseases, see 616.97; neoplasms, 616.992*
- .980 2 **Specialized medical services**
 - For industrial and occupational medicine, see 616.9803*
- .980 21 **Aerospace medicine**
- .980 213 **Aviation medicine**
- .980 214 **Space medicine**
- .980 22 **Submarine medicine**
 - Class diseases due to compression and decompression in 616.9894
- .980 23 **Military medicine**
 - For military surgery, see 617.99*
- .980 24 **Naval medicine**
- .980 3 **Industrial and occupational medicine**
- .988 **Diseases due to climate and weather**
 - Class here medical climatology and meteorology
 - Add to 616.988 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 11–13 from Table 2, e.g., tropical diseases 616.9883
- .989 **Diseases due to physical agents**
- .989 2 ***To motion**
- .989 3 ***To altitude**
- .989 4 ***To compression and decompression**
- .989 6 ***To sound and other vibrations**
- .989 7 ***To radiations**
 - For injuries from radiation, see 617.124*

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .99 Other communicable and noncommunicable diseases
- .991 *Rheumatic fever
- .992 *Neoplasms and neoplastic diseases (Tumors)
- Medical and surgical treatment
- Class here oncology
- Add to 616.992 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., brain tumors 616.99281
- For specific kinds of neoplasms, see 616.993–616.994*



616.993–616.994 Specific kinds of neoplasms

Class comprehensive works in 616.992

- .993 *Benign neoplasms
- Medical and surgical treatment
- Add to 616.993 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., benign skin tumors 616.99377
- .994 *Malignant neoplasms (Cancers)
- Medical and surgical treatment of carcinomas, melanomas, adenomas, sarcomas
- (It is optional to class here leukemias and Hodgkin's disease; prefer 616.155 and 616.42 respectively)
- Add to 616.994 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., cancer of the stomach 616.99433
- .995 *Tuberculosis
- (It is optional to class here pulmonary tuberculosis; prefer 616.246)
- Add to 616.995 the numbers following 611 in 611.1–611.9, e.g., tuberculosis of the bones 616.99571
- .998 *Leprosy (Hansen's disease).

* Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

617 Surgery and related topics

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001-008 Standard subdivisions

Class the subject as a profession in 023, experimental medicine in 027

01 Surgical complications and sequelae

02 Special topics

023 Personnel

Nature of duties, characteristics of professions, relationships

023 2 Physicians

023 3 Technicians and assistants

026 Emergencies

027 Experimental medicine

05-09 Other general aspects

Add to 0 the numbers following 617.0 in 617.05-617.09, e.g., pathology 07

Class surgical treatment of tumors in 616.992-616.994, gynecological and obstetrical surgery in 618, resuscitology in 615.8043

.001-.008 Standard subdivisions of surgery

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 617.9, surgery as a profession in 617.023

.01 Surgical complications and sequelae

.02 Special topics

.023 Personnel

Nature of duties, characteristics of professions, relationships

.023 2 Surgeons [*formerly* 610.6952]

.023 3 Surgical technicians and assistants

.024 Minor surgery

.025 Major surgery

.026 Emergency surgery

.05 Surgery by instrument and technique

Example: cryosurgery

.07 Surgical pathology

.072 Symptomatology (Semiology)

Manifestations of diseases

Aches and pains, fevers, infections, necrosis (gangrene), inflammation, atrophies, hypertrophies, edemas

For interpretation of symptoms, see 617.075

.073 Surgical nursing

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 610.73677)

- .075 Diagnoses and prognoses
 Examination of patient, interpretation of symptoms, prediction of
 course of disease
 Add to 617.075 the numbers following 616.075 in 616.0754–616.0758,
 e.g., X-ray diagnosis 617.07572
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment of surgery

SUMMARY

- 617.1 Wounds and injuries
 .2 Results of injuries
 .3 Orthopedic surgery
 .4 Surgical operations by systems
 .5 Regional surgery
 .6 Dentistry
 .7 Ophthalmology
 .8 Otology and audiology
 .9 Techniques and surgical specialties

617.1–617.5 Surgery

Class comprehensive works in 617

For techniques and surgical specialties, see 617.9

- .1 **Wounds and injuries**
 Use 617.1001–617.1009 for standard subdivisions
 Class amputations in 617.57–617.58, wounds and injuries of eye in 617.713
- .102 Special topics
- .102 7 Athletic wounds and injuries
 Including sports medicine
 Class a specific branch of sports medicine with the subject, e.g.,
 hygiene of athletes 613.71
- .102 8 Crash wounds and injuries
 Injuries resulting from transportation accidents
- .11 *Burns and scalds
 Class burns and scalds resulting from injuries from electricity and
 radiations in 617.12
- .12 *Injuries from electricity and radiations
- .122 *From electricity
- .124 *From radiations
- .13 *Abrasions and contusions

* Add as instructed under 617

- .14 ***Wounds**
 - For abrasions and contusions, see 617.13*
- .143 ***Lacerated, incised, punctured wounds**
- .145 ***Gunshot wounds**
- .146 ***Removal of foreign bodies from wounds**
- .15 **Fractures**
 - Add to 617.15 the numbers following 611.71 in 611.711–611.718, e.g., fracture of femur 617.158
- .16 ***Dislocations**
- .17 ***Sprains and strains**
- .18 ***Asphyxiation**
 - Choking, hanging, strangulation, suffocation, drowning
- .19 ***Blast injuries**
- .2 **Results of injuries**
- .21 Traumatic and surgical shock
- .22 Inflammation, infection, fever
- .3 **Orthopedic surgery**
 - Correction of acquired and congenital deformities, treatment of chronic diseases of skeletal system
 - Use 617.3001–617.3009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class chronic diseases of skeletal system in 617.47
 - For fractures, see 617.15*
- .307 Orthopedic appliances
- .37 ***Deformities**
 - For deformities of the extremities, see 617.39*
- .371 ***Head and neck**
- .374 ***Chest**
- .375 ***Spine**
- .376 ***Hip and pelvis**
- .39 ***Deformities of the extremities**
 - Class amputations in 617.57–617.58
- .397 ***Upper extremities**
- .398 ***Lower extremities**
 - Class podiatry in 617.585

* Add as instructed under 617

617.4–617.5 Surgery by systems and regions

Class here plastic surgery of specific systems and regions [*formerly* 617.951–617.959]

Class comprehensive works in 617

.4 Surgical operations by systems

For respiratory system, see 617.54

.41 *Cardiovascular system**.412 *Heart****.413 *Arteries****.414 *Veins****.43 *Digestive system**

Class treatment of a specific organ with the organ, e.g., stomach 617.553

.44 *Glands and lymphatic system

Class treatment of a specific gland with the gland, e.g., thyroid gland 617.5395

.46 *Urogenital system

Class gynecological and obstetrical surgery in 618

.461 *Kidneys, adrenal glands, ureters**.462 *Bladder and urethra****.463 *Male genital organs****.47 *Motor and integumentary systems**

For amputations, see 617.57–617.58

.471 *Bones**.472 *Joints**

For jaws, see 617.522

.473 *Muscles**.474 *Tendons****.475 *Bursae****.477 *Skin**

* Add as instructed under 617

- .48 ***Nervous system**
 Class here neurosurgery
 Class ophthalmological surgery in 617.7, otological surgery in 617.81-617.88
- .481 ***Brain**
 Psychosurgery, topectomy
- .482 ***Spinal cord**
- .483 ***Nerves**
- .5 **Regional surgery**
 Class here diagnosis and medical treatment of diseases by region
 Class diagnosis and medical treatment of specific systems or organs in 616

SUMMARY

- 617.51 **Head and neck**
- .52 **Face**
- .53 **Throat and neck**
- .54 **Thorax and respiratory system**
- .55 **Abdominal and pelvic cavities**
- .57 **Upper extremities**
- .58 **Lower extremities**
- .51 ***Head and neck**
 Class ophthalmological surgery in 617.7, otological surgery in 617.8
 For neck, see 617.539; face, 617.52
- .514 ***Skull**
- .52 ***Face**
- .522 ***Oral surgery**
 Lips, tongue, palate, jaws
 For dental surgery, see 617.64-617.67
- .523 ***Nose**
 Class here comprehensive works on nose and throat
 For throat, see 617.53
- .53 ***Throat and neck**
- .532 ***Pharynx and tonsils**
 Including adenoidectomies
- .533 ***Larynx, vocal cords, epiglottis, trachea**
- .539 ***Neck**
- .539 5 ***Thyroid and parathyroid glands**

Add as instructed under 617

- .54 *Thorax and respiratory system
 For surgery of heart, see 617.412, of nose and throat, 617.523
- .542 *Lungs
- .543 *Thoracic pleura
- .544 *Bronchi
- .545 *Mediastinum
- .546 *Thymus gland
- .547 *Diaphragm
- .548 *Esophagus
- .549 *Male breast
 Class comprehensive works on surgery of breast [*formerly 617.549*]
 in 618.19
- .55 *Abdominal and pelvic cavities
 For urogenital system, see 617.46
- .551 *Spleen
- .553 *Stomach and pylorus
- .554 *Intestines
- .554 1 *Small intestines
 Including duodenum, jejunum, ileum
- .554 5 *Cecum and vermiform appendix
- .554 7 *Large intestines
 Colon and sigmoid flexure
 For cecum, see 617.5545
- .555 *Rectum, anus, perineum
- .556 *Biliary tract
 Liver, gall bladder, bile ducts
- .557 *Pancreas and islands of Langerhans
- .558 *Peritoneum
 Mesentery, omentum, coelum
- .559 *Abdominal hernias

Add as instructed under 617

617.57-617.58 Extremities

Amputations, excisions, restorative surgery, artificial limbs, medical treatment

Class comprehensive works in 617.58

.57 *Upper extremities

.572 *Shoulder

.574 *Arm, elbow, wrist

.575 *Hand

.58 *Lower extremities

Class here comprehensive works on extremities

For upper extremities, see 617.57

.582 *Thigh and knee

.584 *Leg and ankle

.585 *Foot Podiatry, Chiropody)

.6 Dentistry

Use 617.6001-617.6009 for standard subdivisions

.601 Oral hygiene and preventive dentistry

[.601 8] Asepsis and antisepsis

Number discontinued, class in 617.601

.602 Special topics

.602 3 Personnel

Nature of duties, characteristics of professions, relationships

.602 32 Dentists

.602 33 Dental technicians and assistants

.602 6 Dental emergencies

.604 Special classes of diseases

.604 2 Inherited diseases

.604 3 Congenital diseases

.606 Therapeutics

.606 1 Drug therapy

.606 2-.606 9 Other therapies

Add to 617.606 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82-615.89,
e.g., vitamin therapy 617.60654

* Add as instructed under 617

- .607 Pathology
Add to 617.607 the numbers following 616.07 in 616.071–616.075,
e.g., X-ray diagnosis 617.607572
- .63 *Dental diseases
- .632 *Of gums and tooth sockets (Periodontics)
Alveolar abscesses, pyorrhea, gingivitis, periodontitis
- .634 *Of tooth tissues
Diseases of dental pulp (endodontics), dentine, cementum, enamel
For cavities, see 617.67



617.64–617.67 Dental surgery

Class comprehensive works in 617.6

- .64 Orthodontics and pedodontics
- .643 *Orthodontics
Treatment of disorders of occlusion and dentition
- .645 *Pedodontics
- .66 *Extractions (Exodontics)
- .67 *Cavities (Caries)
Preparation and treatment
- .672 Preparation and treatment
- .675 Fillings and inlays
Amalgam, other metallic, cement, porcelain, plastic fillings and inlays
- .69 Prosthetic dentistry
- .692 Dentures, crowns, bridges
- .695 Materials
- .7 *Ophthalmology
Treatment of ocular diseases and correction of refractive errors
- .704 Special classes of diseases
- .704 2 Inherited diseases
- .704 3 Congenital diseases
- .706 Specific therapies
- .706 1 Drug therapy
- .706 2–.706 9 Other therapies
Add to 617.706 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89,
e.g., vitamin therapy 617.70654

* Add as instructed under 617

[.707]

Pathology

Do not use; class in 617.71

SUMMARY

617.71 Pathology and surgery**.72 Diseases of uvea****.73 Diseases of retina and optic nerve****.74 Diseases of eyeball****.75 Functional disorders of vision****.76 Diseases of ocular muscular and lacrimal mechanisms****.77 Diseases of conjunctiva and eyelids****.78 Diseases of orbit****.79 Prosthetic ophthalmology****.71 Pathology and surgery**

Class pathology and surgery of specific diseases and parts of eye with the subject, e.g., diagnosis of glaucoma 617.741075

.712 *Loss of function

Blindness and partial blindness

.713 *Wounds and injuries**.719 Diseases of cornea and sclera**

Use 617.719001-617.719009 for standard subdivisions

.719 07 Eye banks**.72 *Diseases of uvea**

Diseases of iris, choroid, ciliary body

.73 *Diseases of retina and optic nerve**.74 *Diseases of eyeball***For diseases of cornea and sclera, see 617.719***.741 *Glaucoma****.742 *Diseases of crystalline lens****.746 *Diseases of vitreous body****.75 Functional disorders of vision**

Class here optometry

.752 Optical work

Setting and adjusting lenses, mechanical work of opticians

.752 2 Eyeglasses*For contact lenses, see 617.7523***.752 3 Contact lenses**

* Add as instructed under 617



617.755–617.759 Specific disorders

Class comprehensive works in 617.75

- .755 Disorders of refraction and accommodation
 - Examples: myopia, hypermetropia, astigmatism, presbyopia
- .758 Aniseikonia
- .759 Color blindness
- .76 Diseases of ocular muscular and lacrimal mechanisms
- .762 *Of ocular neuromuscular mechanism
 - Examples: strabismus, binocular imbalance, diplopia
- .762 2 Orthoptics
- .764 *Of lacrimal glands and ducts
- .77 Diseases of conjunctiva and eyelids
- .771 *Of eyelids
- .772 *Trachoma
- .773 Conjunctivitis
 - For trachoma, see 617.772*
- .78 *Diseases of orbit
- .79 Prosthetic ophthalmology
 - Fitting of artificial eyes
- .8 *Otology and audiology
- .804 Special classes of diseases
- .804 2 Inherited diseases
- .804 3 Congenital diseases
- .806 Specific therapies
- .806 1 Drug therapy
- .806 2–.806 9 Other therapies
 - Add to 617.806 the numbers following 615.8 in 615.82–615.89, e.g., thermotherapy 617.80632



617.81–617.88 Otology

Class comprehensive works in 617.8

- .81 *Diseases of external ear
 - For diseases of specific parts of external ear, see 617.82–617.83*

Add as instructed under 617

617.82–617.83 Diseases of specific parts of external ear

Class comprehensive works in 617.81

.82 *Diseases of auricle

.83 *Diseases of auditory canal

.84 *Diseases of middle ear

For diseases of specific parts of middle ear, see 617.85–617.87

617.85–617.87 Diseases of specific parts of middle ear

Class comprehensive works in 617.84

.85 *Diseases of tympanic membranes

.86 *Diseases of eustachian tubes

.87 *Diseases of mastoid processes

.88 *Diseases of internal ear

Diseases of cochlea, labyrinth, semicircular canals, vestibule

.89 Audiology

Correction of impaired hearing thru fitting and adjusting hearing devices

Techniques and surgical specialties

617.91–617.96 Techniques

Class comprehensive works in 617.9, techniques of dealing with a specific system, organ, region with the subject, e.g., preoperative care in heart surgery 617.412

.91 Operative surgery

Use 617.91001–617.91009 for standard subdivisions; but class instruments, apparatus, materials in 617.9178

For anesthesiology, see 617.96

.910 1 Asepsis and antisepsis

.917 Operating room

.917 2 Preparation of operating room

.917 8 Surgical instruments, apparatus, materials

For surgical dressings, see 617.93

.919 Preoperative and postoperative care

.93 Surgical dressings and their use

' Add as instructed under 617

- .95 **Plastic surgery (Cosmetic and restorative surgery)**
 Restoration of lost parts and repair of defects by tissue **grafting**, organ transplants, use of artificial organs and tissue
 Use 617.95001–617.95009 for standard subdivisions
 Class plastic surgery of specific systems and regions [*formerly* 617.951–617.959] in 617.4–617.5
- .950 7 Tissue and organ banks
- .96 **Anesthesiology**
 Methods and techniques of inducing anesthesia, management of accidents and complications resulting from it
- 617.962–617.966 Types of anesthesia
- Class comprehensive works in 617.96, anesthesiology regardless of type for specific kinds of surgery in 617.967
- .962 **General anesthesia**
 Inhalation, rectal, intravenous anesthetics
- .964 **Regional anesthesia**
 Spinal, saddle-block, caudal, peridural anesthetics
- .966 **Local anesthesia**
- .967 **Anesthesiology for specific kinds of surgery**
 General, regional, local anesthesia
 Add to 617.967 the numbers following 617 in 617.1–617.9, e.g., dental anesthesia 617.9676
For anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics, see 617.968
- .968 **Anesthesiology for gynecology and obstetrics**
- .968 1 Gynecology
- .968 2 Obstetrics



617.97–617.99 Surgical specialties

Class comprehensive works in 617.9; specific surgical techniques regardless of specialty in 617.91–617.96; surgery of a specific organ, system, disorder with the subject, e.g., fractures 617.15

- .97 ***Geriatric surgery**
- .98 ***Pediatric surgery**
- .99 ***Military surgery**

* Add as instructed under 617

618 Other branches of medicine Gynecology and obstetrics

Add to each subdivision identified by * as instructed under 616.1–616.9

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of gynecology and obstetrics

618.1–618.8 Gynecology and obstetrics

Medical and surgical

Class comprehensive works in 618

SUMMARY

618.1 Gynecology

.2 Obstetrics

.3 Diseases and complications of pregnancy

.4 Normal labor (Parturition)

.5 Complicated labor (Dystocia)

.6 Normal puerperium

.7 Puerperal diseases

.8 Obstetrical surgery

.9 Pediatrics and geriatrics

.1 *Gynecology

Class neoplasms of genital tract in 616.992–616.994

.100 73 Students, learners, apprentices, novices

(It is optional to class here gynecological nursing; prefer 610.73678)

.11 *Diseases of ovaries

.12 *Diseases of Fallopian tubes

.13 *Periuterine diseases

.14 *Diseases of uterus and cervix

.142 *Infections

Cervicitis, endometritis, pyometra

For leucorrhea, see 618.173

.143 *Erosions

.144 *Malformations

Atrophies, hypertrophies, prolapse of uterus

.145 Surgical therapeutics

.145 3 Hysterectomies

.145 8 Dilation and curettage

.15 *Diseases of vagina

.16 *Diseases of vulva

' Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .17 ***Functional and systemic disorders**
- .172 ***Menstruation disorders**
 - Amenorrhea, menorrhagia, dysmenorrhea, oligomenorrhea
- .173 ***Leucorrhea**
- .175 ***Menopause disorders**
- .178 ***Sterility**
 - Class here comprehensive works on male and female sterility
 - For male sterility, see 616.692*
- .19 ***Diseases of breast**
 - Class here comprehensive works on diseases of breast [*formerly 616.49*], surgery of breast [*formerly 617.549*]
 - For diseases of male breast, see 616.49; surgery of male breast, 617.549*
- .2 ***Obstetrics**
 - For diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium, see 618.3–618.8*
 - .200 73 Students, learners, apprentices, novices
 - (It is optional to class here obstetrical nursing; prefer 610.73678)
 - [.207 2] Symptomatology
 - Do not use; class in 618.22
 - [.207 5] Diagnosis
 - Do not use; class in 618.22
 - .22 Symptomatology and diagnosis
 - .24 Prenatal care and preparation for childbirth
 - Including exercises to aid childbirth
 - .25 ***Multiple pregnancy and childbirth**
- **618.3–618.8 Diseases, disorders, management of pregnancy, parturition, puerperium**
 - Class comprehensive works in 618.2
- .3 ***Diseases and complications of pregnancy**
- .31 Extruterine pregnancy (Ectopic pregnancy)
 - Tubal, ovarian, cervical, abdominal pregnancies
- .32 Fetal abnormalities
 - Fetal degeneration, calcification, pathology and its treatment

† Add as instructed under 616.1–616.9

- .33 Spontaneous abortion
 - Delivery prior to fourth month of pregnancy
- .39 Miscarriage and premature delivery
- .392 Miscarriage
 - Delivery during fourth to sixth month of pregnancy
- .397 Premature delivery
 - Delivery after sixth month and before full term
- .4 **Normal labor (Parturition)**
 - Mechanism and management of normal labor and childbirth
 - Class here comprehensive works on labor and childbirth
 - Class a specific aspect not provided for here with the subject, e g., Caesarean section 618.86
- .42 Presentations
 - Position of fetal body during labor
- .45 Painless childbirth
 - Induced amnesia, hypnotic and other psychological techniques, controlled relaxation
- .5 **Complicated labor (Dystocia)**
 - .51 Maternal dystocia
 - Difficult labor due to anomalies of expellant forces and mechanical obstructions
 - .53 Fetal dystocia
 - Difficult labor due to size of fetus
 - .54 Uterine hemorrhage
 - .56 Placental dystocia
 - .58 Complications from umbilical cord
- .6 **Normal puerperium**
 - Postpartum management and care
- .7 ***Puerperal diseases**
 - .71 *Diseases of lactation
 - .73 *Puerperal metritis and peritonitis
 - .74 *Puerperal septicemia and pyemia
 - .75 *Puerperal eclampsia
 - .76 *Puerperal psychoses
 - .77 *Hemic disorders

* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

- [.78] **Other puerperal disorders**
 - Number discontinued; class in 618.7
- .79 **Maternal death**
- .8 Obstetrical surgery**
- .82 **Version and extraction**
- .83 **Embryotomy and craniotomy**
 - Mutilation of fetus to facilitate delivery when impossible by natural means
- .85 **Minor surgery**
 - Symphysiotomy, vaginoperineotomy, repair of lacerations of genital tract
- .86 **Caesarean section**
- .87 **Surgical removal of placenta**
- .88 **Surgical abortion**
- .89 **Asepsis and antisepsis**
- .9 Pediatrics and geriatrics**
- .92 **Pediatrics**
 - Diseases of infants and children up to puberty
 - Use 618.920001–618.920009 for standard subdivisions
 - For orthodontics and pedodontics, see 617.64, pediatric surgery, 617.98*
- .920 007 3 **Students, learners, apprentices, novices**
 - (It is optional to class here pediatric nursing; prefer 610.7362)
- .920 01-.920 09 **General aspects**
 - Add to 618.9200 the numbers following 0 in 01–09 under 616.1–616.9, e.g., diagnoses 618.920075
- .920 1 **Newborn infants (Neonates)**
- .920 11 **Premature infants**
 - Infants weighing less than 5½ pounds
- .920 12 **Full-term infants**
- .920 9 **Special diseases**
 - Add to 618.9209 the numbers following 61 in 617–618, e.g., eye diseases 618.920977
- .921 -.929 **Diseases**
 - Add to 618.92 the numbers following 616 in 616.1–616.9, e.g., cardiac diseases in children 618.9212
 - Class diseases not provided for here in 618.9209

.97 ***Geriatrics**

Diseases of the aged

For geriatric surgery, see 617.97.970 073 **Students, learners, apprentices, novices**(It is optional to class here geriatric nursing;
prefer 610.7365).976-.978 **Specific diseases**Add to 618.97 the numbers following 61 in 616-618, e.g.,
mental illness in the aged 616.97689**619 Experimental medicine**

Study of pathology and treatment of diseases induced in laboratory animals

Class experimental study of specific diseases in 616-618

.5 **Domestic fowl**.7 **Dogs**.8 **Cats**.9 **Other mammals**.93 **Rodents and rabbits**

Examples: rats, mice, hamsters, guinea pigs

.98 **Primates**

Monkeys, apes, man

620 Engineering and allied operations*For chemical engineering, see 660.2*.001-.003 **Standard subdivisions**.004 **General concepts**.004 2 **Engineering analysis, synthesis, design**

Mathematical and nonmathematical

.004 4 **Testing and measurement**

Techniques, equipment, facilities

Including inspection

.004 5 **Quality and reliability**

Systems and components

Class testing and measurement for quality and reliability in
620.0044.004 6 **Maintenance and repair**

Techniques, equipment, facilities

* Add as instructed under 616.1-616.9

.005-.009 Other standard subdivisions

Class engineering for specific geographical regions in 620.41

SUMMARY

620.1 Engineering mechanics (Applied mechanics) and materials

.2 Sound and related vibrations

.3 Mechanical vibration

.4 Miscellaneous general engineering technologies

.7 Systems engineering

.8 Biotechnology (Environmental engineering)

.1 Engineering mechanics (Applied mechanics) and materials

Use 620.1001-620.1009 for standard subdivisions

Class principles of aerial flight in 629.132

For fine particle technology, see 620.43

.103 Applied statics

For applied solid statics, see 620.1053, applied fluid statics, 620.1063

.104 Applied dynamics

For applied solid dynamics, see 620.1054; applied fluid dynamics, 620.1064

.105 Applied solid mechanics

Class structural theory in 624.17, physical principles of machinery in 621.811

For mechanical vibration, see 620.3

.105 3 Statics

.105 4 Dynamics

.106 Applied fluid mechanics

Class here applied hydromechanics, comprehensive works on fluid-power technology

Class specific fluid-power technologies in 621.1-621.2, hydraulic engineering in 627

For applied gas mechanics, see 620.107

.106 3 Statics

.106 4 Dynamics

Including water hammer

.107 Applied gas mechanics

Class steam engineering in 621.1, pneumatic and vacuum technology in 621.5, air-conditioning engineering in 697.93

.107 3 Statics

.107 4 Dynamics

SUMMARY

- 620.11 Engineering materials
 - .12 Wood
 - .13 Masonry materials
 - .14 Ceramic and allied materials
 - .15 Masonry adhesives
 - .16 Metals and their alloys
 - .17 Ferrous metals
 - .18 Nonferrous metals
 - .19 Other engineering materials
- .11 Engineering materials
 - Class here composite materials
 - For specific engineering materials, see 620.12–620.19*
- .112 General materials science
 - Strength and other properties of materials; characteristics and actions of destructive forces; measures to restore, maintain, improve properties; tests

SUMMARY

- 620.112 1 Resistance of materials to thermal forces
- .112 2 Resistance of materials to deterioration, decay, decomposition
- .112 3 Resistance of materials to mechanical deformation (strain)
- .112 4 Resistance of materials to specific stresses
- .112 5 Properties of materials affecting change of form
- .112 6 Properties of materials affecting penetration and breaking
- .112 7 Nondestructive testing of materials
- .112 9 Other properties of materials
- 620.112 1–620.112 6 Specific strength properties of materials
 - Class comprehensive works in 620.112
- .112 1 Resistance of materials to thermal forces
 - Class thermal radiation in 620.11228
- .112 15 Sudden changes in temperature
- .112 16 Low and cryogenic temperatures
- .112 17 High temperatures
- .112 2 Resistance of materials to deterioration, decay, decomposition
 - Physicochemical actions not basically thermal or mechanical
 - Including action of pests
- .112 23 Corrosion, rot, weathering
 - Examples: rust, mildew
- .112 28 Radiations

620.112 3–620.112 6 Resistance of materials to mechanical forces
(Mechanics of materials)

Class comprehensive works in 620.112

.112 3 Resistance of materials to mechanical deformation (strain)

Class here strain gages, fatigue

For resistance to specific stresses, see 620.1124; specific properties affecting resistance to mechanical forces, 620.1125–620.1126

.112 32 Temporary deformation (Elasticity)

Including elastic limit

.112 33 Permanent deformation (Plasticity)

Including plastic flow, creep

.112 4 Resistance of materials to specific stresses

Class specific properties affecting resistance to mechanical forces, regardless of stress, in 620.1125–620.1126

.112 41 Tension

.112 42 Compression

.112 43 Torsion (Twisting)

.112 44 Flexure (Bending)

.112 45 Shearing

.112 48 Vibrations

620.112 5–620.112 6 Specific properties of materials affecting
resistance to mechanical forces

Class comprehensive works in 620.112

.112 5 Properties of materials affecting change of form

Examples: rigidity, impact strength, shock resistance, ductility, malleability

.112 6 Properties of materials affecting penetration and breaking

Examples: hardness, fracture strength, rupture strength, crack resistance, brittleness, fatigue strength

.112 7 Nondestructive testing of materials

.112 72 Radiographic (X-ray)

.112 73 Tracer

.112 74 Ultrasonic

.112 78 Magnetic

- [.112 8] **Strength tests of specific mechanisms and structural elements**
 Class mechanisms in 621.8, structural elements in
 624.1772–624.1779
- .112 9 **Other properties of materials**
- .112 92 **Mechanical**
 Example: friction resistance
- .112 94 **Acoustical**
- .112 95 **Optical**
 Examples: luminescence, refractivity, photelasticity
- .112 96 **Thermal**
 Example: heat conductivity
- .112 97 **Electric, electronic, magnetic**
- .112 972 **Semiconductivity**
- .112 973 **Superconductivity**
- .112 99 **Microphysical**
 Atomic, molecular, nuclear, crystallographic properties
 Including microstructure
 For electronic properties, see 620.11297

620.12–620.19 Specific engineering materials

Properties and tests

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 620.112 in 620.1121–620.1129, e.g., fracture strength of plastics 620.19236

Class comprehensive works and composite materials in 620.11

- .12 ***Wood**
 Including laminated wood
- .13 **Masonry materials**
 For masonry adhesives, see 620.15; brick, tile, terra cotta, 620.142
- .132 ***Natural stones**
 Granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, slate, serpentine,
 soapstone, flagstone
- .135 ***Cement**
- .136 ***Concretes**
 *For ferroconcrete and prestressed concrete, see 620.137;
 concrete blocks, 620.139*
- .137 ***Ferroconcrete and prestressed concrete**

* Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

- .139 **Artificial stones**
 - Cinder and concrete blocks
- .14 **Ceramic and allied materials**
- .142 **Brick, tile, terra cotta**
- .143 ***Refractory materials**
 - Fire-clays, alumina, zirconia, chrome, talc, mica
 - Class refractory metals in 620.16
 - For asbestos, see 620.195*
- .144 ***Glass**
 - Including fiberglass
- .146 **Porcelain and enamel**
- .15 **Masonry adhesives**
- .16 ***Metals and their alloys**
 - For specific metals and their alloys, see 620.17–620.18*



- 620.17–620.18 **Specific metals and their alloys**
 - Class comprehensive works in 620.16
- .17 ***Ferrous metals**
- .18 **Nonferrous metals**
- .182 ***Copper**
 - Brass, bronze, Muntz metal, phosphor bronze, gunmetal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze
- .183 ***Lead**
- .184 **Zinc and cadmium**
 - For brass, Muntz metal, see 620.182*
- .185 ***Tin**
 - For bronze, gunmetal, see 620.182*
- .186 ***Aluminum**
 - For aluminum bronze, copper-aluminum alloys, see 620.182*
- .187 ***Magnesium**
- .188 ***Nickel**
- .189 **Other**
- .189 1 **Mercury**

• Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

- .189 2 Precious and lanthanide and actinide series metals
 Add to 620.1892 the numbers following 669.2 in 669.22–669.29,
 e.g., gold 620.18922
- .189 3 Ferroalloying metals
 Add to 620.1893 the numbers following 669.73 in 669.732–669.735,
 e.g., chromium 620.18934
 For nickel, see 620.188
- .189 4 Beryllium
 For copper-beryllium alloys, see 620.182
- .189 5 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
- .189 6 Alkali and alkaline earth metals
 Including sodium, potassium, lithium, strontium, calcium, barium
- .189 9 Minor metals
 Niobium, hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium,
 tellurium, thallium
- .19 Other engineering materials
- .191 Soils
 Including clays and sand
 Class foundation soils in 624.151
- .192 *Polymers
 For rubber and other elastomers, see 620.194
- .192 3 *Plastics
 Including laminates
- .192 4 *Gums and resins
- .193 Nonmetallic elements
 Examples: silicon, carbon, phosphorus, sulfur, inert gases,
 hydrogen, oxygen, nitrogen
 For phosphor bronze, see 620.182
- .194 *Rubber and other elastomers
- .195 Insulating materials
 Rock wool, corkboard, asbestos, kapok, diatomaceous earth
- .196 Bituminous materials
 Asphalt, synthetic and rock asphalts, tar
- .197 Materials of animal and vegetable fibers
 Textiles, paper, paperboard, cellulose, ropes

¹ Add as instructed under 620.12–620.19

.198 **Other natural and synthetic minerals**

Examples: gems, corundum, graphite, oil, gas, feldspar,
water, quartz

.199 **Adhesives and sealants**

Class plastics and their laminates in 620.1923

For masonry adhesives, see 620.15

.2 Sound and related vibrations

620.21-620.25 Applied acoustics (Acoustical engineering)

Class comprehensive works in 620.2, electroacoustical devices in 621.382-
621.389

.21 **General principles of applied acoustics**

Sound sources, radiating and vibratory systems

.22 **Architectural acoustics**

.23 **Noise and countermeasures**

.25 **Acoustics in specific physical environments**

Example: underwater acoustics

.28 **Applied ultrasonics and subsonics**

For ultrasonic testing of materials, see 620.11274

.3 Mechanical vibration

Class effects of vibrations on materials in 620.11248

For sound and related vibrations, see 620.2

.31 **Generation and transmission**

.32 **Measurements**

.37 **Effects and countermeasures**

[.39] **Special developments**

Number discontinued, class in 620.3

.4 Miscellaneous general engineering technologies

.41 **Engineering for specific geographical regions**

Engineering filling the special needs of specific regions

Class a specific technology with the subject, e.g., agricultural
irrigation in deserts 631.709154

.411-.417 **Engineering for terrestrial areas, regions, places in general**

Add "Areas" notation 11-17 from Table 2 to base number 620.4, e.g.,
engineering for Arctic regions 620.411, oceanographic engineering
620.4162

Class hydraulic engineering in 627

- .419 Engineering for other worlds and space
- .43 Fine particle technology
- .46 Remote control and telecontrol
- .7 **Systems engineering**
 - Engineering of large, complex, integrated combinations of elements and subsystems
- .72 Systems analysis, synthesis, design
 - Including system stability
- .73 Systems construction, operation, performance
- .8 **Biotechnology (Environmental engineering)**
 - Engineering for human comfort, convenience, efficiency, health, safety
 - Class a specific aspect with the technology involved, e.g., anthropometric design of home kitchens 643.3
- .82 Design anthropometry (Human engineering, Ergonomics)
 - Designing for optimum man-equipment and man-machine psychological and physical relationships in human environments
- .85 Environmental health engineering
 - Equipment, structures, engineering techniques to provide optimum environments for preservation of health
 - For safety engineering, see 620.86*
- .86 Safety engineering
 - Equipment, structures, engineering techniques to provide optimum environmental safety

621

Applied physics

Mechanical, electrical, electronic, electromagnetic, heat, light, nuclear engineering

Class applied mechanics in 620.1, applied acoustics in 620.2, a specific application with the subject, e.g., military engineering 623

SUMMARY

- 621.1 Steam engineering
- .2 Hydraulic-power technology
- .3 Electrical, electronic, electromagnetic engineering
- .4 Heat engineering and prime movers
- .5 Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technology
- .6 Fans, blowers, pumps
- .7 Factory operations engineering
- .8 Machine engineering
- .9 Tools and fabricating equipment

621.1–621.2 Fluid-power technologies

Class comprehensive works in 620.106

.1 Steam engineering**[.11] Engines**

Number discontinued; class in 621.1

[.13] Locomotives

Class in 625.261

[.14] Tractors and rollers

Class in 629.2292

.15 Portable engines**.16 Stationary engines****.164 Reciprocating**

Simple, compound, triple-expansion, quadruple-expansion engines

.165 TurbineImpulse, single-stage impulse, velocity-compounded,
pressure-compounded, reaction turbines**[.165 1–.165 3] Specific topics**

Numbers discontinued, class in 621.165

.166 Other

Rotary, colipile, aerosteam, cycloidal engines

.18 Generation and transmission of steam*For portable engines, see 621.15; stationary engines, 621.16;
central stations, 621.19***621.182–621.184 Generation**

Class comprehensive works in 621.18

.182 Fuels and fuel consumption**.183 Boiler furnaces**

Mechanical stokers, stacks, chimneys, flues, dampers

[.183 6–.183 8] Mechanical stokers and draft appliances

Numbers discontinued, class in 621.183

.184 BoilersThermodynamics, design, construction, maintenance, repairs,
accessories**[.184 1–.184 7] Specific topics**

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.184

- .185 **Circulation (Transmission)**
 - Including steam pipes, safety valves, pressure regulators, insulation
- .19 **Central stations**
- .194 **Boiler operations (Boiler-house practices)**
 - Firing, feeding, feed-water treatment
- [.194 1–.194 3] **Firing, feeding, feed-water treatment**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 621.194
- .197 **Accessories**
 - Feed-water appliances, traps, separators, superheaters, condensers, instrumentation
- [.197 2–.197 7] **Specific accessories**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 621.197
- .2 **Hydraulic-power technology**
 - Class hydraulic control in 629.8042
- .204 **General special**
- .204 2 **Specific liquids**
- .204 22 **Water**
- .204 24 **Oil**
- .21 **Waterwheels**
- .24 **Turbines**
- .25 **Pumps and accumulators**
- .252 **Pumps**
- .254 **Accumulators**
- .26 **Machinery and appliances**
 - Including hydraulic transmission of energy
 - For rams, see 621.27*
- .27 **Rams**
- [.28] **Liquid-pressure measuring instruments**
 - Class in 681.2
- .3 **Electrical, electronic, electromagnetic engineering**
- .301–.309 **Standard subdivisions of electrical engineering, of combined electrical and electronic engineering, of electromagnetic engineering**

SUMMARY

- 621.31 Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power
 - .32 Illumination and lighting
 - .33 Traction
 - .35 Applied electrochemistry
 - .36 Applied optics (Engineering optics) and paraphotic engineering
 - .37 Electrical testing and measurement
 - .38 Electronic and communication engineering
 - .39 Other branches of electrical engineering
- .31 Generation, modification, storage, transmission of electric power
- .310 4 General special
- .310 42 Electrical machinery and other equipment
 - Theory, design, construction, installation, maintenance, repair, testing
 - Including eddy currents
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., refrigerators 621.57

SUMMARY

- 621.312 Generation, modification, storage
 - .313 Generating machinery and converters
 - .314 Transformers
 - .315 Capacitors (Condensers)
 - .316 Details and parts of generators
 - .317 Control devices
 - .319 Transmission (Distribution)
- .312 Generation, modification, storage
 - For equipment for generation and modification, see 621.313–621.317, nuclear generation of electric power, 621.481*
- .312 1 Mechanical generation
 - Class here special-purpose generating stations [formerly 621.3122–621.3123]
- .312 13 Central generating stations
 - .312 132 Steam-powered
 - .312 133 Internal-combustion-engine powered
 - .312 134 Hydroelectric and tidal
 - Class engineering of dams for hydroelectric power in 627.8
 - .312 136 Wind-powered
 - .312 137 Fuel-cell-powered

- .312 139 Other types
 - Stations powered by thermoelectric, thermionic, magnetohydrodynamic generators
- .312 14 Auxiliary generating units
 - Examples: field and emergency units
- [.312 2--.312 3] Special-purpose generating stations
 - Class in 621.3121
- .312 4 Nonmechanical generation (Direct energy conversion)
 - For applied electrochemistry, see 621.35; thermoelectricity, 621.392; solar batteries and cells, 621.475*
- .312 6 Modification and storage
 - Including operation of transformer, converter, accumulator substations
 - For applied electrochemistry, see 621.35; solar batteries and cells, 621.475*

621.313–621.317 Equipment for generation and modification

Class comprehensive works in 621.31042

- .313 Generating machinery and converters
 - Class here comprehensive works on generators and motors
 - For details and parts of generators, see 621.316; electric motors, 621.462*
- [.313 1] Construction, installation, maintenance, testing
 - Number discontinued; class in 621.313
- .313 2 Direct-current machinery
 - Dynamos, dynamotors, direct-current motors, converters to alternating current, compensators, boosters
- .313 3 Alternating-current machinery
 - For synchronous machinery, see 621.3134–621.3135; asynchronous machinery, 621.3136*
- 621.313 4–621.313 5 Synchronous machinery
 - Class comprehensive works in 621.3133
- .313 4 Synchronous generators and motors
- .313 5 Synchronous converters to direct current
 - Phase, frequency, motor converters
 - For rectifiers, see 621.3137*
- .313 6 Asynchronous machinery
 - Generators, phase and frequency converters
 - For rectifiers, see 621.3137*

- .313 7 **Rectifiers**
 - Mechanical, electronic, electrolytic converters supplied with commutators
- .314 **Transformers**
 - Power, distribution, instrument transformers for converting alternating-current power from one voltage to another
- .315 **Capacitors (Condensers)**
- .316 **Details and parts of generators**
 - Including commutators, armatures and armature winding, contactors, electromagnets (field cores), brushes
 - Class a specific part not provided for here with the subject, e.g., transformers 621.314
- .317 **Control devices**
 - Switching equipment and protective devices
 - Examples: relays, contacts, fuses, circuit breakers, rheostats, meters, panels, lightning arresters, grounding devices
- [.317 2--317 8] **Specific devices**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 621.317
- .319 **Transmission (Distribution)**
 - Including protective devices
- .319 1 **Systems**
- .319 12 **Direct-current**
- .319 13 **Alternating-current**
 - Single-phase, two-phase, polyphase current systems
- .319 15 **Composite current**
 - Direct and alternating currents combined
- .319 16 **Polycyclic current**
- .319 2 **Lines and circuitry (Networks)**
 - Interconnected systems of transmission lines providing multiple connections between loads and sources of generation
- .319 21 **Physical phenomena in circuits**
 - Heat losses in lines, transient currents, induction capacity of parallel lines
- .319 22 **Overhead lines and their components**
- [.319 223--319 225] **Specific kinds**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 621.31922
- .319 23 **Underground lines and their components**

- .319 24 Apparatus at service end of line [*formerly* 621.328]
 Including interior wiring, outlets, sockets, junctions,
 extension cords, protective devices
 For exterior wiring and its components, see 621.31925
- .319 25 Exterior wiring and its components
 Examples: outlets, sockets, junctions, extension cords
- .319 3 Equipment and components
 Class use in lines and wiring in 621.3192
- .319 32 Uninsulated wires
- .319 33 Insulated wires
- .319 34 Cables
- .319 37 Insulators and insulation
- [.319 8] Protective devices
 Number discontinued; class in 621.319
- .32 Illumination and lighting
- .321 Illumination
- .321 1 Determinative procedures
 Layouts, calculations, photometry
- .321 2 Direct lighting
- .321 3 Indirect and semi-indirect lighting
- .321 4 Flood (Directed) lighting
- .321 5 Transillumination
- .322 Lighting
 For public lighting, see 628.95; *specific forms of lighting,*
 621.323–621.327
- .322 5–.322 8 Interior
 Add to 621.322 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g.,
 lighting for libraries 621.32278
- .322 9 Exterior
 Examples: garden and patio lighting, advertising and
 display lighting
- 621.323–621.327 Specific forms of lighting
 Class comprehensive works in 621.322
- .323 Historic forms of lighting
 Torches, candles, oil-burning devices
 For gas lighting, see 621.324
- .324 Gas lighting

621.325–621.327 Electric lighting

Systems, bulbs, tubes, filaments, electrodes, manufacturing details

Class comprehensive works in 621.322

.325 Arc lighting

For enclosed-arc lighting, see 621.327

.326 Incandescent lighting

.327 Luminous-tube (Enclosed-arc) lighting

.327 3 Fluorescent

.327 4 Mercury-vapor

.327 5 Neon

.327 6 Sodium-vapor

.328 | Apparatus at service end of line

Class in 621.31924

.329 | Laser technology

Class in 621.366

.33 Traction

Electric power transmission for railroads

Including electrification of railroads

.35 Applied electrochemistry

Generation and storage of electrical energy by chemical methods

.353 Primary batteries

Voltaic and dry cells

.354 Secondary batteries (Storage batteries)

For specific types of storage batteries, see 621.355–621.356

621.355–621.356 Specific types of storage batteries

Class comprehensive works in 621.354

.355 Lead-acid batteries

.356 Alkaline batteries

.359 Fuel cells

- .36 Applied optics (Engineering optics) and paraphotic engineering
 - Class manufacture of optical instruments in 681.4
 - For illumination and lighting, see* 621.32
- .361 Applied spectroscopy (Industrial and engineering spectroscopy)
 - .361 2 Infrared
 - .361 3 Visible (Chromatic)
 - Including Raman
 - .361 4 Ultraviolet
 - Including vacuum ultraviolet
 - .361 5 Radiofrequency and microwave
 - .361 6 X-ray and gamma-ray
 - .361 7 Magnetic resonance

621.362–621.364 Paraphotic technology

Generation, transmission, detection, systems, applications of radiant energy adjacent to luminous spectrum

Class comprehensive works in 621.36, paraphotic spectroscopy in 621.361, paraphotic photography in 621.3672

- .362 Infrared technology
 - Example, infrared amplification by stimulated emission of radiation (irasers)
- .364 Ultraviolet technology
- .366 Laser technology [*formerly* 621.329]
 - Light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
 - For laser communication devices, see* 621.3896
 - .366 1 Solid-state lasers
 - Examples: ruby lasers, semiconductor lasers, crystal lasers
 - .366 2 Fluid-state lasers
 - For gaseous-state lasers, see* 621.3663
 - .366 3 Gaseous-state lasers
 - .367 Technological photography and photooptics
 - Including spectrography, stroboscopic photography
 - For optical communication, see* 621.380414; *photoelectric and photoelectronic devices*, 621.381542
 - .367 2 Infrared [*formerly also* 778.34] and ultraviolet photography
 - .367 3 Radiography (X-ray and gamma-ray photography) [*formerly also* 778.33]

- .369 Other branches of applied optics
- .369 2 Fiber optics technology
- .37 Electrical testing and measurement
 - Class testing and measurement of a specific apparatus, part, or function with the subject, e.g., testing overhead lines 621.31922
- .372 Units and standards of measurement
 - Primary (absolute) and secondary standards of resistance, voltage, inductance, capacitance, frequency
 - Including calibration of electrical instruments
- .373 Recording meters
- .374 Measurement of electric quantities
 - For recording meters, see 621.373*
- .374 2 Resistance, capacitance, inductance measurement
 - Bridges, ohmmeters, resistance boxes, shunts
 - Class here comprehensive works on electrical bridges (bridge circuits)
 - For frequency bridges, see 621.3747*
- .374 3 Potential measurement
 - Electrometers, voltmeters, potentiometers, voltage detectors
- .374 4 Current measurement
 - Voltmeters, ammeters, milliammeters, coulometers, ampere-hour meters, galvanometers
- .374 5 Energy measurement
 - Watt-hour meters, demand meters, electric supply meters
- .374 6 Power measurement
 - Wattmeters, electrodynometers, voltmeters
- .374 7 Frequency measurement
 - Oscillographs, frequency bridges, other frequency meters
 - Class electric phasemeters in 621.3749
- .374 9 Phase measurement
 - Synchrosopes, power-factor meters, other phasemeters
- .379 Measurement of nonelectrical quantities
 - Example: telemetry
- .38 Electronic and communication engineering
- .380 2 Miscellany
- .380 28 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
- .380 282 Microphones and loudspeakers
- .380 283 Antennas (Aerials)

- .380 4 General special
- .380 41 General types of communication
- .380 412 Electrical
 - Including electroacoustical
 - For electrooptical, see 621.380414*
- 380 413 Electronic
 - Including microwave
- 380 414 Optical
 - Including electrooptical
- 380 42 Special types of communication
- 380 422 Relay communication
 - Including relay by satellite
- 380 423 Space communication
- 380 43 Signals
- 380 432 Signal frequencies
 - Examples: very high frequency (VHF), ultrahigh frequency (UHF), other radio frequencies
- 380 433 Analysis and synthesis
- 380 436 Interference
 - Example: noise

SUMMARY

- 621.381 Electronic engineering
 - .382 Wire telegraphy
 - .383 Specific instruments and apparatus of wire telegraphy
 - .384 Radio and radar engineering
 - .385 Wire telephony
 - .386 Wire telephone terminal equipment
 - .387 Wire telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment
 - .388 Television
 - .389 Other communication devices
- .381 Electronic engineering
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., radio engineering 621.3841
 - For laser technology, see 621.366*
- .381 04 General special
- .381 042 Analysis, synthesis, design
- .381 043 Measurements
- .381 044 Power supplies
- .381 046 Packaging

SUMMARY

- 621.381 1 Systems
 - .381 3 Microwave electronics
 - .381 5 Short- and long-wave electronics
 - .381 6 X-ray and gamma-ray electronics
 - .381 7 Microelectronics (Miniaturization and microminiaturization)
 - .381 9 Special developments
- .381 1 Systems
 - Communication, control, combined communication-control systems; large, complex, integrated combinations of systems or components from more than one branch of electronics
 - Example: combined radio and radar systems
- .381 3 Microwave electronics
- .381 31 Wave propagation and transmission
 - Including interference
- .381 32 Circuits
 - Analysis, design, components, functions
 - Add to 621.38132 the numbers following 621.38153 in 621.381532–621.381537, e.g., amplifiers 621.381325
- .381 33 Components and apparatus
 - Class components for a specific circuit in 621.38132
- .381 331 Waveguides
- .381 332 Resonators
 - Example: resonant cavities (cavity resonators)
- .381 333 Klystrons
- .381 334 Magnetrons
- .381 335 Traveling-wave tubes
- .381 336 Masers
 - Microwave amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
- .381 336 1 Solid-state masers
- .381 336 2 Fluid-state masers
- .381 37 Testing, measurements, standardization
 - Class applications to a specific circuit, component, apparatus, function with the subject, e.g., interference measurements 621.38131

- .381 5 Short- and long-wave electronics
 Class here comprehensive works on specific components, on
 groups of components, on apparatus, on functions, on techniques
 Class a specific application with the subject, e.g.,
 microwave amplifiers 621.381325
- .381 51 Components (Valves)
 Class here electronic tubes, thermionic and cold-cathode
 tubes
 Class components for a specific circuit in 621.38153
 For semiconductor devices, see 621.38152
- .381 512 Vacuum tubes
- .381 512 2 Diodes
- .381 512 3 Triodes
- .381 512 4 Tetrodes
- .381 512 5 Pentodes
- .381 512 8 Other multielement tubes
- .381 513 Gas tubes
 Class here thyratrons
 Add to 621.381513 the numbers following 621.381512
 in 621.3815122–621.3815128, e.g., tetrodes 621.3815134
- .381 52 Semiconductor (Crystal) devices
- .381 522 Diodes
 Examples: junction, tunnel (Esaki), Zener diodes;
 varactors
- .381 528 Transistors
 Example: thyristors
- .381 53 , - Circuits
 Analysis, design, components, functions
- .381 530 4 General special
- .381 530 42 Semiconductor circuits
- .381 530 422 Transistor (Transistorized) circuits
- .381 530 423 Semiconductor diode circuits
- .381 532 Converters (Rectifiers and inverters), filters,
 interference eliminators
- .381 533 Oscillators

-
- .381 534 **Pulse circuits**
 Examples: pulse generators, counting circuits
 Including pulse processes
 Class modulation, demodulation, detection of pulses
 in 621.3815365
- .381 535 **Amplifiers and feedback circuits**
 Example: rasers (radio amplification by stimulated
 emission of radiation)
- 381 536 **Modulators, demodulators, detectors**
 Class here modulation, demodulation, detection
- 381 536 2 **Amplitude**
 Including attenuators
- 381 536 3 **Frequency**
- 381 536 4 **Phase**
- 381 536 5 **Pulse**
- 381 537 **Switching, control, trigger circuits, relays**
 Including switching theory
- 381 54 **Supplementary components and apparatus (Instrumentation)**
 Devices not intrinsic to circuits
- 381 542 **Photoelectric and photoelectronic devices**
 Examples: electron-ray tubes, cathode-ray tubes, photo-
 tubes, electric eyes, photoemissive cells, photovoltaic cells,
 photoconductive cells, photomultipliers
- .381 548 **Testing and measuring devices and their use**
 Examples: signal, sweep, square-wave generators; probes,
 thermistors, oscillographs, oscilloscopes, indicators, gages,
 meters, bridges (bridge circuits)
 Class here standardization of electronic devices
 Class testing and measuring of a specific component, circuit,
 apparatus, function with the subject, e.g., pulse measure-
 ments 621.381534
- .381 6 **X-ray and gamma-ray electronics**
- .381 7 **Microelectronics (Miniaturization and microminiaturization)**
 Class here comprehensive works on thin film technology
 Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., computers
 621.38195
- .381 71 **Microelements**
 Modules and wafers; transistors, diodes, resistors employed
 in microelectronic circuits
 Including thin film components
 Class components for specific circuits in 621.38173

- .381 73 Microelectronic circuits
 - Analysis, design, components, functions
 - Class here integrated and thin film circuits
 - Add to 621.38173 the numbers following 621.38153 in 621.381532–621.381537, e.g., amplifiers 621.381735
 - For microelements, see 621.38171; printed circuits, 621.38174*
- .381 74 Printed circuits
 - Analysis, design, functions
- [.381 76] Other minaturized devices
 - Number discontinued, class in 621.3817
- .381 79 Special developments
- .381 792 Electronic eavesdropping devices (“Bugging” equipment)
- .381 9 Special developments
- .381 95 Computers
- [.381 950 151] Mathematical principles
 - Do not use; class in 621.381952
- 621.381 952–621.381 954 Computers in general
 - Class comprehensive works in 621.38195, applications to specific computers and computer-like machines in 621.381957–621.381959
- .381 952 Fundamentals of computers in general
 - Mathematical principles (computer theory), analysis, synthesis, design, construction
- .381 953 Components of computers in general
- .381 953 2 Input-output equipment
 - Examples: punch cards, paper and magnetic tapes
 - Class optical scanning devices as computer input equipment in 621.3819598
 - For print-out equipment, see 621.3819534*
- .381 953 3 Storage and memory equipment
- .381 953 4 Print-out equipment
- .381 953 5 Circuitry
 - For storage and memory circuitry, see 621.3819533*
- .381 954 Operation, maintenance, repair of computers in general
- .381 957 Analog computers
 - Add to 621.381957 the numbers following 621.38195 in 621.381952–621.381954, e.g., analog theory 621.3819572

- .381 958 Digital computers
 - Add to 621.381958 the numbers following 621.38195 in 621.381952–621.381954, e.g., circuits 621.38195835
- .381 959 Computer combinations, computer-like machines, computer-related equipment
- .381 959 2 Computer combinations
 - Including hybrid computers
- .381 959 4 Turing machines and infinite-state machines
- .381 959 6 Analog-to-digital and digital-to-analog converters
- .381 959 8 Character and pattern recognition devices
 - Examples: optical scanning devices, MICR (magnetic ink character recognition) equipment
- 621.382–621.389 Communication engineering
 - Electrical, electronic, other
 - Class comprehensive works in 621.38
- .382 Wire telegraphy
 - Including codes
 - For specific instruments and apparatus, see 621.383*
- .382 3 Acoustic systems
 - Hand-operated systems, e.g., simplex, duplex, quadruplex, multiplex
- .382 4 Automatic systems
 - Systems of Bain, Morse, Wheatstone, Delany
- .382 5 Printing telegraphy
 - Stockticker, teleprinter, teletype
- .382 6 Writing telegraphy (Telautography)
- .382 7 Facsimile telegraphy
- .382 8 Submarine cable telegraphy
- .383 Specific instruments and apparatus of wire telegraphy
 - Keys, transmitters, receivers, calling apparatus, relays, repeaters, switches, recorders

.384 Radio and radar engineering

SUMMARY

- 621.384 1 Radio
- .384 2 Radiotelegraphy
- .384 3 Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy
- .384 5 Radiotelephony
- .384 6 Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony
- .384 8 Radar

.384 1 Radio

For radiotelegraphy, see 621.3842; radiotelephony, 621.3845

SUMMARY

- 621.384 11 Wave propagation and transmission
- .384 12 Circuits
- .384 13 Components and apparatus
- .384 15 Communication systems
- .384 16 Stations
- .384 17 Measurements and standardization
- .384 18 Manufacture and servicing of receiving sets
- .384 19 Special developments

.384 11 Wave propagation and transmission

Including interference

.384 12 Circuits

Analysis, design, components, functions

Examples: rectifiers, oscillators, amplifiers, modulation circuits

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., receiving set circuits 621.3841361

For filters and interference eliminators, see 621.384133

[.384 121–.384 128] Kinds of circuits and circuit functions

Numbers discontinued; class in 621.38412

.384 13 Components and apparatus

.384 131 Transmitters

Design, circuits, components

.384 132 Tubes

Class tubes for a specific circuit in 621.38412

.384 133 Supplementary devices

Condensers (capacitors), microphones, inductors, resistors, filters, interference eliminators, grounding devices, testing equipment

-
- .384 134 Semiconductor devices
 Transistors and diodes
 Class transistors and diodes for a specific circuit in
 621.38412
- 384 135 Antennas
- 384 135 1 Transmitting
- 384 135 2 Receiving
- 384 135 5 Directional
- 384 136 Receiving sets
 For manufacture and servicing, see 621.38418
- 384 136 1 Circuits and components
 Class circuits and components for specific types of
 sets in 621.3841366
- 384 136 6 Types of sets
 Crystal, radio-tube, transistorized, regenerative, tuned
 radio-frequency, superheterodyne sets
- 384 15 Communication systems
- 384 151 Short-wave systems
 VHF (very high frequency), UHF (ultrahigh frequency),
 other high frequency systems
 *For FM systems, see 621.384152; relay and satellite
 systems, 621.384156*
- 384 152 FM (Frequency modulation) systems
 Including stereo-multiplex systems
- 384 153 Long-wave systems
 Examples: AM (amplitude modulation), VLF (very low
 frequency), single-sideband systems
 For relay systems, see 621.384156
- 384 156 Relay and satellite systems
 Long- and short-wave
- 384 16 Stations
- 384 162 Clear-channel broadcasting
- 384 163 Regional broadcasting
- 384 164 Local broadcasting
- 384 165 Mobile
 Vehicle-to-station, vehicle-to-vehicle
 For portable stations, see 621.384168
- 384 166 Amateur (Ham)

- .384 168 Portable
 - Example: walkie-talkies
- .384 17 Measurements and standardization
 - Of impedance, frequency, wavelength, modulation, signal intensity, capacitance, inductance, resistance
 - Including measuring devices, frequency allocation
- .384 18 Manufacture and servicing of receiving sets
 - Class here testing of receiving sets
- .384 185 Assembling
- .384 186 Installation
- .384 187 Repairs
- .384 19 Special developments
- .384 191 Direction and position finding
 - Radio beacons, radio compasses, loran
- .384 196 Radiocontrol
 - Telecontrol and remote control
- .384 197 Space communication
- .384 2 Radiotelegraphy
 - Systems, stations, types
 - Including radiofacsimile
 - For specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy, see 621.3843*
- .384 3 Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelegraphy
- .384 5 Radiotelephony
 - Systems, stations, types
 - For specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony, see 621.3846*
- .384 54 Citizen's band radio
- .384 6 Specific instruments and apparatus of radiotelephony
- .384 8 Radar
- .384 81 Fundamentals
 - Signal propagation, transmission, reflection, reception; mathematical principles; analysis, synthesis, design, construction circuitry
- .384 83 Specific instruments and apparatus
 - Example: antennas
- .384 85 Systems
 - Examples: continuous, pulse-modulated

- .384 86 Stations
- .384 88 Scanning patterns
- .384 89 Special developments
- .384 892 Racon
- .384 893 Shoran
- .385 Wire telephony
 - For wire telephone equipn*
621.386–621.387
 - .385 1 Network analysis
 - .385 3 Intercommunication svst
 - Systems without central stations
 - .385 4 Stations
 - For private exchanges, see* 621.3858
 - .385 41 Substations
 - .385 43 Central stations
 - .385 5 Manual switchboard systems
 - For manual trunking systems, see* 621.3856
 - .385 6 Manual trunking systems (transfer systems)
 - .385 7 Automatic and semiautomatic switchboard systems
 - Example: direct-distant-dialing systems
 - .385 8 Private exchanges
 - Private automatic exchanges (PAX) and private board exchanges (PBX)

621.386–621.387 Wire telephone equipment and transmission

Class comprehensive works in 621.385

- .386 Wire telephone terminal equipment
 - Dialing, transmitting, receiving equipment
 - [.386 2–.386 3] Transmitters and receivers
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 621.386
 - .386 7 Recording telephones (Mechanical telephones)
 - Telephonographs, telegraphones
 - .386 9 Public pay telephones
 - [.386 92] Pay stations
 - Number discontinued; class in 621.3869
 - [.386 93] Private stations
 - Number discontinued; class in 621.386

- .387 Wire telephone transmission and nonterminal equipment
- .387 3 Manual switchboards
 - For manual trunk switchboards, see 621.3874; manual switchboard components, 621.3875*
- .387 4 Manual trunk (transfer) switchboards
 - For manual switchboard components, see 621.3875*
- .387 5 Manual and automatic switchboard components
- .387 6 Power-supply equipment
 - Examples: auxiliary generators, batteries
- .387 7 Semiautomatic and automatic switchboards
 - For automatic switchboard components, see 621.3875*
- .387 8 Transmission
 - .387 82 Long-distance systems
 - .387 83 Local systems
 - .387 84 Transmission lines and cables
 - Including poles, auxiliary line equipment
- .387 9] Other central station equipment
 - Number discontinued; class in 621.387
- .388 Television
 - Use 621.388001–621.388009 for standard subdivisions
 - .388 02 Black-and-white television
 - .388 04 Color television
 - .388 1 Fundamentals
 - .388 11 Wave propagation and transmission
 - Including interference
 - .388 12 Circuits
 - Analysis, design, components, functions
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., transmitter circuits 621.38831
 - For filters and interference eliminators, see 621.38833*
 - .388 13 Optics
 - .388 3 Components and apparatus
 - .388 31 Transmitters
 - Design, circuits, components
 - .388 32 Tubes, transistors, semiconductor diodes
 - Class tubes, transistors, semiconductor diodes for a specific circuit in 621.38812

-
- .388 33 Supplementary devices
 - Condensers (capacitors), microphones, inductors, resistors, filters, interference eliminators, grounding devices
 - .388 34 Cameras and components
 - .388 35–.388 36 Antennas and receivers
 - Add to 621.3883 the numbers following 621.38413 in 621.384135–621.384136, e.g., television sets 621.38836
 - For manufacturing and servicing of receiving sets, see 621.3888*
 - .388 5 Communication systems
 - Examples: relay and satellite systems, VHF (very high frequency), UHF (ultrahigh frequency)
 - .388 6 Stations
 - .388 62 Broadcasting
 - .388 63 Closed-circuit
 - .388 64 Mobile
 - .388 7 Measurements and standardization
 - Of impedance, frequency, wavelength, modulation, signal intensity, capacitance, inductance, resistance
 - Including measuring devices, frequency allocation
 - .388 8 Manufacture and servicing of receiving sets
 - Add to 621.3888 the numbers following 621.38418 in 621.384185–621.384187, e.g., repairs 621.38887
 - .388 9 Special developments
 - Example: space communication
 - .389 Other communication devices
 - .389 2 Public-address and related systems
 - Examples: sound reinforcing, electric megaphone, intercommunicating, announce, paging, call systems
 - .389 3 Sound recording and reproducing systems
 - .389 32 Records and recorders
 - Cylinder, disc, wire, tape, film records and recorders
 - .389 33 Reproducers
 - Phonographs, radiophonographs, high-fidelity and stereophonic systems
 - .389 4 Language translators
 - .389 5 Underwater devices
 - .389 52 Projectors and hydrophones
 - .389 53 Sonar

- .389 6 Laser communication devices
- .39 Other branches of electrical engineering
 - Including superconductivity
- .392 Thermoelectricity
 - Electricity produced by direct action of heat
- .393 Rural electrification
- .394 Electrification
 - For rural electrification, see 621.393; electrification for railroads, 621.33*
- .396 Conduction and induction heating
 - Examples: arc, resistance, electromagnetic, dielectric furnaces
- .4 Heat engineering and prime movers**
 - Class here engines, power plants, propulsion technology
 - Use 621.4001–621.4009 for standard subdivisions
 - For steam engineering, see 621.1; hydraulic power technology, 621.2*
- .402 Heat (Thermal) engineering
 - For low-temperature technology, see 621.56–621.59*
- .402 1 Thermodynamics
- .402 2 Transmission (Heat transfer)
 - Conduction, convection, radiation, heat exchangers
- .402 3 Fuels and combustion
- .402 4 Insulation
- .402 5 Equipment
 - Examples: furnaces, heat engines, heat pumps
- .402 8 Thermal systems
 - Generation and distribution of heat
- .406 Turbines
 - Theory, design, construction, operation, maintenance, repair

SUMMARY

- 621.42 Air motors and propulsion technology
 - .43 Internal-combustion engines and propulsion technology
 - .45 Wind engines and propulsion technology
 - .46 Electric propulsion technology
 - .47 Solar-energy engineering
 - .48 Nuclear engineering
- [.41] External combustion engines
 - Number discontinued; class in 621.4

- .42 Air motors and propulsion technology
 - Reciprocating air motors, rotary vane positive expansion motors, air turbine engines
 - For wind engines and propulsion technology, see 621.45*
- .43 Internal-combustion engines and propulsion technology
 - 621.433–621.436 Specific internal-combustion engines
 - Class comprehensive works in 621.43, parts and accessories of specific engines in 621.437
- .433 Gas-turbine engines
 - For turbojet engines, see 621.435.2*
- .433.2 Simple gas-turbine engines
 - Continuous-combustion, intermittent-combustion, exhaust-driven, closed-cycle turbines
- .433.5 Free-piston-turbine engines
- .434 Spark-ignition engines
 - Nondiesel piston engines
 - Examples: reciprocating, rotary
- .435 Jet and rocket engines
- .435.2 Jet engines and propulsion
 - Including turbojet engines
- .435.6 Rocket engines and propulsion
 - Rocketry
- .436 High-compression-ignition engines
 - Diesel and semidiesel engines
- .436.1 General principles
 - Combustion, breathing, injection, compression, cooling, exhaust
- .436.2 Design and construction
- .436.8 Operation, maintenance, repair
- .437 Parts and accessories of internal combustion engines
 - Cylinders, carburetors, pistons, valves, ignition devices, connecting rods, governors
- .438] Special developments
 - Number discontinued; class in 621.43
- .45 Wind engines and propulsion technology
 - Windmills, wind wheels, Flettner rotors
- .46 Electric propulsion technology
- .462 Electric motors

- .465 Ion motors
- .466 Plasma motors
- .47 Solor-energy engineering
- .471 General principles
 - Thermodynamics, radiation, heat storage
- .473 Solar engines and propulsion technology
- .475 Generation and storage of electrical energy by utilization of solar radiation
 - Including use of solar batteries and cells
- .477 Solar furnaces
 - Utilization of solar radiation for attainment of high temperatures
- .48 Nuclear engineering
 - Fission and fusion technology
- .481 Generation of thermal and electric power
 - Including radionisotope-powered generators
- .483 Nuclear reactors, power plants, by-products
 - For fusion reactors, power plants, by-products, see 621.484, nuclear generation of thermal and electric power, 621.481*
- .483 1 Reactor physics
 - Theory, description, testing of physical phenomena occurring within reactors
 - Including reactor core, critical size
 - Class physics of a specific component, material, process with the subject, e.g., nuclear reactions in fuel elements 621.48335
- .483 2 Design, construction, shielding
- .483 3 Materials
 - Structural materials
 - Fuels (Fissionable materials)
 - Coolants
 - Moderators
- .483 4 Specific types
 - Classified by neutron energy (thermal, intermediate, fast), moderator, fuel and fuel conversion, coolant
- .483 5 Operation, control, safety measures

- .483 7 **Radioactive isotopes**
 Class here comprehensive works on technological applications of radioisotopes
 Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., radioisotope therapy 615.8424
- .483 8 **Waste technology**
 Treatment, disposal, utilization of radioactive waste
- .484 **Fusion (Thermonuclear) reactors, power plants, by-products**
 Including physics of fusion reactors
 Class generation of thermal and electric power in fusion reactors in 621.481
- .485 **Nuclear propulsion technology**
- [.489] **Special developments**
 Number discontinued, class in 621.48
- [.49] **Central power stations**
 Number discontinued, class in 621 4
- .5 **Pneumatic, vacuum, low-temperature technology**
 For fans, blowers, pumps, see 621.6
- 621.51–621.54 Pneumatic technology (Air compression technology)
 Class here pneumatic transmission of energy
 Class comprehensive works in 621.5, pneumatic control in 629.8045
- 51 **Air compressors**
 Reciprocating, rotary, jet compressors
- 53 **Comprest air transmission**
 Systems and equipment
- 54 **Cleaners, carriers, sandblasts**
- 55 **Vacuum technology**
 Techniques and apparatus
-
- 621.56–621.59 Low-temperature technology
 Class comprehensive works in 621.5
- 56 **Refrigeration**
 For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57
- 563 **Heat pumps**
- 564 **Refrigerants and coolants**
- 567 **Systems**

- .57 Refrigerators and freezers
- .58 Ice manufacture
- .59 Cryogenic technology
 - Technology of extremely low temperatures
 - Including liquefaction and solidification of gases having low boiling points
- .6 **Fans, blowers, pumps**
 - 621.61–621.63 Fans and blowers
 - Class comprehensive works in 621.6
 - .61 Piston fans and blowers
 - .62 Rotary fans and blowers
 - .63 Centrifugal fans and blowers
 - Example: exhaust fans
 - 621.64–621.69 Pumps
 - Class comprehensive works in 621.6
 - For hydraulic pumps, see 621.252*
 - .64 Hand pumps
 - .65 Reciprocating (Piston and plunger) pumps
 - .66 Rotary pumps
 - .67 Centrifugal pumps
 - Turbopumps, axial-flow pumps
 - [.68] Fire pumpers
 - Class in 628.9252
 - .69 Other pumps
 - .691 Jet (Injectors and ejectors)
 - .692 Vacuum
 - .699 Miscellaneous
 - Examples: density pumps, direct-fluid-pressure displacement pumps

- .7 Factory operations engineering**
 Engineering of manufacturing processes
 Class manufacturing techniques of a specific product with the subject,
 e.g., automobiles 629.234
- .75 Shop and assembly-line technology**
 Methods and equipment for forming, assembling, inspecting,
 packaging finishit and semi-finishit products
 Including machine-shop practice
For mechanization and automation of factory operations, see
621.78, tools and fabricating equipment, 621.9
- .756 Inspection technology**
 Equipment and techniques
- .757 Packaging technology**
 Materials, equipment, techniques
 Class containers made of a specific material with the subject,
 e.g., paper containers 676.3
- .78 Mechanization and automation of factory operations**
- .8 Machine engineering**
 Theory, design, construction, installation, maintenance, repairs, testing
 of machinery, mechanical systems, related mechanisms
 Class here strength tests of mechanisms [*formerly* 620.1128]
 Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., hydraulic machinery
 621.2

SUMMARY

- 621.81 Generalities of machinery**
.82 Machine parts
.83 Gears, ratchets, cams
.84 Valves, pistons, cocks
.85 Transmission by pulleys and drives
.86 Materials-handling equipment
.87 Cranes, derricks, elevators, and their components
.88 Fasteners
.89 Friction and its elimination
- .81 Generalities of machinery**
- .811 Physical principles**
 Statics, dynamics, other physical phenomena in machinery
 Including kinematics, vibration
- .812 Speed and power control devices**
- .815 Machine design**

- .816 Maintenance and repair
 - Including balancing
 - .82 Machine parts
 - For gears, ratchets, cams, see 621.83; valves, pistons, cocks, 621.84*
 - .821 Journals
 - .822 Bearings
 - Plain, ball, roller, gas-lubricated, sliding, adjustable bearings
 - .823 Shafts and shafting
 - .824 Springs
 - .825 Couplings, clutches, universal joints
 - .827 Connecting rods, cranks, eccentrics
 - .83 Gears, ratchets, cams
 - .833 Gears and gearing
 - .833 1 Spur gears
 - .833 2 Bevel and skew bevel gears
 - .833 3 Worm and spiral gears
 - .837 Ratchets and ratchet wheels
 - .838 Cams
 - .84 Valves, pistons, cocks
 - .85 Transmission by pulleys and drives
 - Class materials-handling equipment using pulleys and drives in 621.86
 - .852 By belt
 - .853 By rope
 - .854 By wire
 - .859 By chain
 - .86 Materials-handling equipment
 - For cranes, derricks, elevators, and their components, see 621.87*
 - .862 Hoisting equipment
 - For specific kinds of hoisting equipment, see 621.863 621.865*
-
- 621.863–621.865 Specific kinds of hoisting equipment
- Class comprehensive works in 621.862
 - .863 Chain hoists, mechanical and hydraulic tackles, fork lifts
 - .864 Windlasses, winches, capstans
 - .865 Power shovels

- .867 Conveying equipment
 - For telpherage, see 621.868*
- .867 2 Pipes and pipelines
- .867 5 Belt conveyors
- .867 6 Escalators
- .868 Telpherage
 - Examples: ski tows, chair lifts
- .87 Cranes, derricks, elevators, and their components
- .872 Derricks
- .873 Cranes
 - Mobile and stationary
- .877 Elevators
 - Hand-powered, belt-driven, steam, hydraulic, electric
 - Including jacks
- .88 Fasteners
- .882 Screws, nuts, bolts
- .883 Cotters and cotter pins
- .884 Rivets and nails
- .885 Sealing devices
- .89 Friction and its elimination
 - Machine friction, lubrication, lubricants
 - For bearings, see 621.822*
- .9 **Tools and fabricating equipment**
 - Design, construction, maintenance, repair, operation
 - Use 621.9001-621.9009 for standard subdivisions
- .902 Machine tools
 - Including numerical control and other automation techniques
- .904 Pneumatic tools
- .908 Hand tools

SUMMARY

- 621.91 Planing and milling tools
- .92 Abrading and grinding tools
- .93 Cutting, sawing, disassembling tools
- .94 Turning and boring tools
- .95 Perforating and tapping tools
- .96 Punching tools
- .97 Fastening and joining equipment
- .98 Molding, impressing, pressing equipment
- .99 Other tools and equipment
- .91 Planing and milling tools
- .912 Planers, shapers, slotters
- .914 Crushing tools
- .92 Abrading and grinding tools
- .922 Lapping tools
 - Examples, polishing and buffing tools
- .923 Emery wheels and grindstones
- .924 Filing tools
- .93 Cutting, sawing, disassembling tools
 - Examples, shears, saws, sheers, trimmers, crowbars, axes
- .94 Turning and boring tools
- .942 Lathes
- .943 Chucks
- .944 Screw-cutting, gear-cutting, pipe-threading tools
 - For tapping tools, see 621.955*
- .945 Boring tools
- .95 Perforating and tapping tools
 - For boring tools, see 621.945; punching tools, 621.96*
- .952 Drilling tools
- .954 Reaming and broaching tools
- .955 Tapping tools
- .96 Punching tools
 - For die punches, see 621.984*
- .97 Fastening and joining equipment
- .972 Wrenches and screwdrivers
- .973 Hand hammers
- .974 Power hammers

- .977 Welding and soldering equipment
- .978 Riveting equipment
- .98 Molding, impressing, pressing equipment
- .982 Bending tools
- .983 Straightening tools
- .984 Molding and impressing equipment
 - Examples: molds, dies (punches and matrixes), stamping equipment
- .99 Other tools and equipment
- .992 Holding, guiding, safety equipment
 - Clamps, vises, jigs, shields, guards, other fixtures
- .994 Measuring tools

622 Mining engineering and related operations

SUMMARY

- 622.1 Prospecting and exploratory operations
 - .2 Subsurface mining
 - .3 Types of mining
 - .4 Mine environment technology
 - .5 Drainage and drainage systems
 - .6 Mine transport systems
 - .7 Ore dressing (Ore processing)
 - .8 Mine health and safety
- .1 **Prospecting and exploratory operations**

622.12–622.17 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 622.1, general principles applied to specific ores and deposits in 622.18

- .12 Surface exploration
 - Geological, biogeochemical, geobotanical prospecting
- .13 Mineral surveys
 - Qualitative and quantitative measurements of mineral content
- .14 Mine surveys
 - Determination of size, depth, shape of mines
- .15 Geophysical exploration
- .152 Gravitational methods
- .153 Magnetic methods

- .154 **Electrical methods**
 - Self-potential, galvanic, inductive, resistivity
- .159 **Other methods**
 - Acoustic, vibration, radioactivity, geothermal, gas-detection methods
- .17 **Underwater prospecting**
- .18 **Prospecting for specific minerals**
 - Add to 622.18 the numbers following 553 in 553.2–553.9, e.g.,
for petroleum 622.18282
- .19 **Prospecting and exploring for treasure**
 - Methods and equipment for underground and underwater
treasure hunting
- .2 **Subsurface mining**
 - Underground and underwater
 - Class subsurface mining of specific minerals and their ores in
622.33–622.39
 - 622.23–622.28 Underground mining
 - Class comprehensive works in 622.2
- .23 **Underground blasting and drilling**
- .24 **Underground boring**
- .25 **Underground shafts and shaft sinking**
- .26 **Underground tunnels and tunneling**
- .28 **Underground supporting structures and their erection**
- .29 **Underwater mining**
- .3 **Types of mining**
 - For subsurface mining, see 622.2*
 - 622.31–622.32 Surface mining
 - Class comprehensive works in 622.3, surface mining of specific ores and
deposits in 622.33–622.39
- .31 **Open pit and strip mining**
- .32 **Alluvial mining**
 - Placer, hydraulic, drift mining

622.33–622.39 Mining specific minerals and their ores

Extraction and processing

Class comprehensive works in 622.3, prospecting for specific minerals in 622.18, mine environment technology for mining specific minerals in 622.4, mine transport systems for mining specific minerals in 622.6

.33 Mining carbonaceous minerals

Add to 622.33 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21–553.29, e.g., anthracite coal 622.335

.34 Mining metals and their ores

.341 Iron and iron ores

622.342–622.349 Nonferrous metals and their ores

Class comprehensive works in 622.34

.342 Gold, silver, platinum

.343–.349 Other nonferrous metals and their ores

Add to 622.34 the numbers following 553.4 in 553.43–553.49, e.g., uranium ores 622.3493

.35–.39 Mining other minerals and their ores

Add to 622.3 the numbers following 553 in 553.5–553.9, e.g., gem diamonds 622.382

.4 Mine environment technology

For drainage and drainage systems, see 622.5; mine health and safety, 622.8

.42 Ventilation and air conditioning

For temperature control, see 622.43

.43 Temperature control

.47 Illumination

.473 Portable lamps

.474 Electric lighting systems

.48 Electricity

Class electricity applied to a specific operation with the operation, e.g., temperature control 622.43

.49 Sanitation

.5 Drainage and drainage systems

.6 Mine transport systems

Haulage and hoisting

.65 Hand and animal haulage

- .66 **Mechanical haulage**
 - Gravity planes, shuttle cars, conveyors, locomotives, scrapers
- .67 **Direct- and gear-driven hoists**
- .68 **Elevators**
 - Cages, skips, buckets
- .69 **Surface transportation**
 - Loading, unloading, transshipment
- .7 **Ore dressing (Ore processing)**
 - Class processing of specific ores and groups of ores in 622.33–622.39
- .73 **Crushing and grinding**
- .74 **Sizing**

- ▶ 622.75–622.77 **Ore concentration (separation)**
 - Removal of waste and mineral separation of milled ore
 - Class comprehensive works in 622.7
- .75 **Mechanical separation**
- .751 **Gravity concentration**
 - Utilization of differences in specific gravity between minerals
 - Examples: sink-float concentration, jigging
- .752 **Flotation**
 - Utilization of differences in chemical composition of minerals to bring about attachment of mineral grains to air bubbles in water
- .77 **Electrical and magnetic separation**
 - Utilization of differences in magnetic permeability or surface electrical conductivity between different mineral varieties
- .79 **Milling plants**
 - Class specific milling-plant operations in 622.73–622.77
- .8 **Mine health and safety**
 - Hazards, accidents, rescue operations, inspection, regulation, safety engineering
- [.81–.86] **Causes, prevention, rescue operations**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 622.8

623 **Military and nautical engineering**

- .04 **Miscellaneous general branches of military engineering**
- .042 **Optical and paraphotic engineering**
 - Visible light, infrared, ultraviolet technology
- .043 **Electronic engineering**

- .044 Nuclear engineering
- .045 Mechanical engineering
- .047 Construction engineering

SUMMARY

- 623.1 Fortifications (Forts and fortresses)
- .2 Demolition operations
- .3 Engineering of defense
- .4 Ordnance
- .5 Ballistics and gunnery
- .6 Military transportation technology
- .7 Other operations of military engineering
- .8 Nautical engineering and seamanship

623.1–623.7 Military engineering

Application of principles and practices of engineering to needs of military forces in peace and war

Planning, structural analysis and design, construction, operation, maintenance, repair of defenses, ordnance, communication; demolition operations

Class comprehensive works in 623, naval engineering in 623.8

- .1 **Fortifications (Forts and fortresses)**
 - .109 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class specific permanent fortifications in 623.19
 - .12 Permanent
 - For specific permanent fortifications, see 623.19*
 - .15 Temporary
 - .19 Specific permanent fortifications
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 623.19
- .2 **Demolition operations**
 - .26 Mine laying
 - .262 On land
 - .263 In water
 - .27 Demolition of specific structures and systems
 - .271 Of communication facilities
 - .275 Of roads, railroads, bridges
 - .277 Of buildings

.3 Engineering of defense

Class ordnance in 623.4

.31 Against direct invasion

Examples: flooding, mechanical barriers, traps

*For fortifications, see 623.1; demolition operations, 623.2***[.34] In trenches**

Number discontinued; class in 623.3

.36 Against mines (Countermining)**.37 Against indirect warfare**

Artillery and aerial

*For protective construction, see 623.38***.371 Conventional bombardment**

Class measures against aerial delivery of gas, biological, nuclear projectiles in 623.372–623.375

.372 Gas warfare**.374 Biological warfare****.375 Nuclear warfare****.376 Missile warfare**

Class measures against missile delivery of gas, biological, nuclear projectiles in 623.372–623.375

.377 Space bombardment

Class measures against delivery of gas, biological, nuclear projectiles from space in 623.372–623.375

.38 Protective construction

Example: underground shelters

.4 Ordnance*For combat vehicles, see 623.74***SUMMARY**

- 623.41 Artillery**
 - .42 Specific pieces of artillery**
 - .43 Gun mounts**
 - .44 Small arms and other weapons**
 - .45 Ammunition and other destructive agents**
 - .46 Accessories**
 - .48 Maintenance and repairs**

- .41 Artillery
 - Large-caliber, crew-served mounted firearms
 - For specific pieces of artillery, see 623.42; artillery projectiles, 623.4513*
- 412 Field
 - Including railroad-borne
- 417 Coast
- 418 Naval
- 419 Other
- 419 3 Airborne
- 419 4 Space
- 42 Specific pieces of artillery
 - Guns, howitzers, cannons, mortars, rocket launchers
- 43 Gun mounts
- 44 Small arms and other weapons
 - For ammunition and other destructive agents, see 623.45*
- 441 Primitive weapons
 - Weaponry of pre-firearm origin normally not employed in modern warfare; primitive firearms
 - Examples: boomerangs, bows and arrows, maces, tomahawks, catapults, spears, shields, armor
 - Class a specific primitive firearm with the subject, e.g., muskets 623.4425
- .442 Portable firearms
 - For pistols and revolvers, see 623.443*
- .442 4 Automatic firearms
 - Automatic and machine rifles, machine and submachine guns
- .442 5 Rifles, muskets, carbines
- .442 6 Portable rocket launchers (Bazookas)
- .443 Pistols and revolvers
- .444 Modern side arms
 - Swords, bayonets, daggers, lances, trench knives
- .445 Chemical devices
 - Flame throwers, mortars for smoke and gas projectiles, tear gas devices
- .446 Devices emitting destructive radiations
 - Examples: laser weapons, thermal weapons

- .447 Devices generating destructive vibrations
 - Example: ultrasonic weapons
- .45 Ammunition and other destructive agents

SUMMARY

- 623.451 Delivery devices
 - .452 Explosives
 - .454 Detonators, rockets, demolition charges
 - .455 Small-arms ammunition
 - .459 Nonexplosive agents
- .451 Delivery devices
 - Projectiles, bombs, missiles
 - For tactical rockets, see 623.4543*
 - .451 1 Grenades, mines, nuclear weapons
 - Class special-purpose grenades, mines, nuclear weapons in 623.4514- 623.4518
 - .451 14 Rifle and hand grenades
 - .451 15 Mines
 - .451 19 Nuclear weapons
 - Bombs and artillery projectiles
 - For nuclear missiles, see 623.4519*
 - .451 3 Artillery projectiles
 - Class special-purpose artillery projectiles in 621.4514-621.4518
 - For nuclear artillery projectiles, see 623.45119*
 - 623.451 4-623.451 8 Special-purpose delivery devices
 - Bombs, mines, grenades, other projectiles
 - Class comprehensive works in 623.451
 - .451 4 Antipersonnel devices
 - Including shrapnel devices
 - For chemical and biological devices, see 623.4516*
 - .451 6 Chemical and biological devices
 - Incendiary, gas, smoke, microbe devices
 - .451 7 High-explosive (HE) devices
 - Examples: torpedoes, blockbusters, high-explosive-antitank (HEAT) projectiles
 - For bangalore torpedoes, see 623.4545*
 - .451 8 Armor-piercing (AP, APC, HVAP) devices

- .6 Military transportation technology**
 - For vehicles, see 623.74*
- .62 Roads**
- .63 Railroads and their rolling stock**
- .631 Permanent way**
 - Earthwork and track
- .633 Rolling stock**
- .64 Naval facilities**
 - Docks, artificial harbors, naval bases
- .66 Air facilities**
 - Airports and associated facilities
 - Add to 623.66 the numbers following 629.136 in 629.1361–629.1368, e.g., airstrips 623.6612
 - Use 623.6613 for air bases
- .67 Bridges**
- .68 Tunnels**
- .69 Space facilities**
- .7 Other operations of military engineering**

SUMMARY

- 623.71 Intelligence and reconnaissance topography**
 - .72 Photography and photogrammetry**
 - .73 Communication technology**
 - .74 Vehicles**
 - .75 Health engineering**
 - .76 Electrical engineering**
 - .77 Camouflage and concealment**
- .71 Intelligence and reconnaissance topography**
 - Including sketching and map-making
 - For photography and photogrammetry, see 623.72*
- .72 Photography and photogrammetry**
- .73 Communication technology**
- .731 Visual signals**
 - .731 2 Semaphore, heliograph, flag signals**
 - .731 3 Pyrotechnical devices**
 - .731 4 Electrooptical devices**
 - Example: blinkers
- .732 Wire telegraphy**

- .733 Wire telephony
- .734 Radiocommunication and radar
 - .734 1 Short-wave radio
 - .734 2 Radiotelegraphy
 - Class short-wave radiotelegraphy in 623.7341
 - .734 5 Radiotelephony
 - Class short-wave radiotelephony in 623.7341
 - .734 8 Radar
- .735 Television
- .737 Air-raid warning systems
- .74 Vehicles
 - Combat and support
 - Class warships in 623.82

SUMMARY

- 623.741 Lighter-than-air aircraft
 - .742 Free balloons
 - .743 Airships (Dirigible balloons)
 - .744 Barrage balloons
 - .746 Heavier-than-air aircraft
 - .747 Motor land vehicles
 - .748 Air-cushion vehicles
 - .749 Spacecraft

623.741-623.746 Aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 623.74

- .741 Lighter-than-air aircraft
 - For specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft, see 623.742-623.744*

623.742-623.744 Specific types of lighter-than-air aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 623.741

- .742 Free balloons
- .743 Airships (Dirigible balloons)
 - .743 5 Rigid
 - .743 6 Semirigid
 - .743 7 Nonrigid
- .744 Barrage balloons

- .746 Heavier-than-air aircraft
 - .746 04 General types
 - Class pilotless aircraft in 623.7469
 - .746 042 Piston-driven planes
 - .746 044 Jet planes
 - .746 045 Rocket planes
 - .746 047 Vertical-lift (VTOL) craft
 - Example: helicopters
 - .746 2 Trainers
 - .746 3 Bombers and fighter-bombers
 - Class pilotless bombers and fighter-bombers in 623.7469
 - .746 4 Fighters
 - .746 5 Personnel and cargo transports
 - .746 6 Rescue aircraft
 - .746 7 Reconnaissance aircraft
 - For pilotless reconnaissance aircraft, see 623.7469*
 - .746 9 Pilotless aircraft (Guided aircraft)
 - Reconnaissance and combat
- .747 Motor land vehicles
 - .747 2 For transporting personnel
 - .747 22 Jeeps and similar vehicles
 - .747 23 Buses
 - .747 24 Ambulances
 - .747 4 For transporting supplies
 - .747 5 For combat
 - Tanks, armored cars, other armored vehicles
- .748 Air-cushion vehicles
 - .748 2 Overland
 - .748 4 Overwater
 - .748 5 Amphibious
- .749 Spacecraft
- .75 Health engineering
 - Sanitation and safety
- .751 Water supply
- .753 Sewage treatment and disposal
- .754 Garbage and refuse treatment and disposal

- .76 Electrical engineering
- .77 Camouflage and concealment
- .8 **Nautical engineering and seamanship**
 - Nautical engineering: planning, design, construction, operation, maintenance, repair of ships and boats and their component parts

SUMMARY

- 623.81 Naval architecture (Naval design)
 - .82 Nautical craft
 - .83 Shipyards
 - .84 Hulls of nautical craft
 - .85 Engineering systems of nautical craft
 - .86 Equipment and outfit of nautical craft
 - .87 Power plants of nautical craft
 - .88 Seamanship
 - .89 Navigation
- .81 Naval architecture (Naval design)
 - Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., design of battleship hulls in steel 623.81252
 - Design of specific craft
 - Design of specific parts
 - Design in specific materials
 - Design tests
 - Structural theory
- .812 Design of specific craft
 - Theory, materials, tests
 - Add to 623.812 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., design of sailboats 623.8122
- .814 Design of specific parts
 - Theory, materials, tests
- .814 4 Hulls
 - Including hydrofoils
- .814 5–.814 7 Design of other parts
 - Add to 623.814 the numbers following 623.8 in 623.85–623.87, e.g., design of power plants 623.8147
- .817 Structural theory
 - Add to 623.817 the numbers following 624.17 in 624.171–624.177, e.g., deflections 623.81714
- .818 Design in specific materials
 - Theory and tests
 - Add to 623.818 the numbers following 624.18 in 624.182–624.189, e.g., design in metal 623.8182
- .819 Design tests

- .82 **Nautical craft**
 Design, construction, maintenance, repairs of ships, boats, other vessels
 Use 623.82001–623.82009 for standard subdivisions; but class models
 of all types of craft in 623.8201
 For design, see 623.81; parts and details, 623.84–623.87
- .820 1 **Models**
 Add to 623.8201 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829,
 e.g., battleship models 623.820152
- 623.820 2–623.820 5 General types
- Class comprehensive works in 623.82, general types of craft in specific
 materials in 623.8207, specific types of craft in 623.821–623.829
- .820 2 **Small craft**
- .820 3 **Sailing craft**
- .820 4 **Power-driven craft**
 Example: steamships
- .820 5 **Submersible craft**
- .820 7 **Craft of specific materials**
 Add to 623.8207 the numbers following 624.18 in
 624.182–624.189, e.g., fiberglass boats 623.820738
- .820 8 **Maintenance and repair**

623.821–623.829 Specific types

Class comprehensive works in 623.82

SUMMARY

- 623.821 **Ancient and medieval craft**
- .822 **Modern wind-driven craft**
- .823 **Small and medium power-driven craft**
- .824 **Power-driven merchant ships**
- .825 **Power-driven warships**
- .826 **Support warships and other government vessels**
- .827 **Non-military submersible craft**
- .828 **Other power-driven vessels**
- .829 **Hand-propelled and towed craft**
- .821 **Ancient and medieval craft**
 Examples: caravels, galleys, biremes, triremes
- 623.822–623.829 Modern craft
- Class comprehensive works in 623.82
- .822 **Modern wind-driven craft**
 Examples: clipper ships, sailing yachts, sailboats, rotor ships, frigates

- 623.823–623.828 Power-driven craft
- Class comprehensive works in 623.8204
- .823 Small and medium power-driven craft
- .823 1 Motorboats
- Class here speedboats
- .823 13 Outboard
- .823 14 Inboard
- Examples: motor yachts, hydroplanes
- .823 15 Inboard-outboard
- .823 2 Tugboats and towboats
- .823 4 Ferryboats
- .824 Power-driven merchant ships
- .824 3 Passenger
- Lake, river, ocean liners
- .824 5 Cargo
- Freighters, bulk carriers, tankers
- .824 8 Factory
- Whaleboats and ship canneries
- .825 Power-driven warships
- For support warships, see 623.826*
- .825 2 Battleships
- .825 3 Cruisers
- .825 4 Destroyers and destroyer escorts
- .825 5 Aircraft carriers
- .825 6 Landing craft
- Example: amphibious landing craft
- .825 7 Submarines
- .825 72 Diesel-engine and electric-motor powered
- .825 74 Nuclear-powered
- .825 8 Light combat craft
- Examples: torpedo boats, armed junks
- .826 Support warships and other government vessels
- .826 2 Minelayers and minesweepers
- .826 3 Police boats, revenue cutters, coast guard craft
- .826 4 Hospital ships and military transports

-
- .826 5 Military supply ships
 - .827 Non-military submersible craft
 - Examples: bathyspheres, bathyscaphes
 - .828 Other power-driven vessels
 - Icebreakers, trawlers, dredgers, drilling ships
 - .829 Hand-propelled and towed craft
 - Canoes, lifeboats, barges, scows, rowboats, towed canalboats, coracles
 - .83 Shipyards
 - Appliances and facilities used in construction, maintenance, repair of ships
 - 623.84–623.87 Parts and details of nautical craft
 - Class comprehensive works in 623.82
 - .84 Hulls of nautical craft
 - .842 Lofting
 - .843 Metalwork
 - .843 2 Welding and riveting
 - .843 3 Shipfitting
 - .844 Carpentry (Shipwrights' work)
 - .848 Resistant construction
 - Fire-, heat-, pest-, corrosion-, sound-, shock-resistant construction
 - .85 Engineering systems of nautical craft
 - Use 623 85001–623.85009 for standard subdivisions
 - For power plants, see 623.87*
 - .850 1 Mechanical
 - .850 3 Electrical
 - .850 4 Electronic
 - .852 Electric lighting
 - .853 Air conditioning and temperature controls
 - .853 5 Refrigeration
 - .853 7 Heating and air conditioning
 - .854 Water supply and sanitation
 - 623.854 2–623.854 3 Water supply
 - Class comprehensive works in 623.854
 - .854 2 Potable water

- .854 3 **Sea water**
 - For sanitation and fire fighting
- .854 6 **Sanitation**
- .856 **Communication systems**
 - Add to 623.856 the numbers following 623.73 in 623.731–623.735, e.g., flag systems 623.85612
- .86 **Equipment and outfit of nautical craft**
 - Including flares, other portable lights
- .862 **Gear and rigging**
 - Rope, masts, spars, rudder, sails, cordage, anchors
- .863 **Nautical instruments**
- .864] **Flares and other portable lights**
 - Number discontinued, class in 623.86
- .865 **Safety equipment**
 - Examples: lifesaving, fire-fighting equipment
- .866 **Furniture**
- .87 **Power plants of nautical craft**
 - Class here marine engineering
- .872 **Engines**
- .872 2 **Steam**
- .872 3 **Internal-combustion**
 - Inboard and outboard
 - Add to 623.8723 the numbers following 621.43 in 621.433–621.437, e.g., diesel engines 623.87236
- .872 6 **Electric**
- .872 7 **Solar**
- .872 8 **Nuclear**
- .873 **Engine auxiliaries**
 - Boilers, piping, condensers, blowers, pumps, propellers, shafting
- .874 **Fuels**

-
- .88 Seamanship
 - Art and science of handling nautical craft
 - For navigation, see 623.89*
 - .882 Handling specific types of craft
 - Add to 623.882 the numbers following 623.82 in 623.821–623.829, e.g., handling power-driven warships 623.8825
 - Class safety and related topics in handling specific types of craft in 623.888
 - .888 Safety technology and related topics
 - For safety equipment, see 623.865*
 - .888 2 Knotting and splicing ropes and cables
 - Class here interdisciplinary works on knotting and splicing
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., knotting in camping 796.545
 - .888 4 Prevention of collision and grounding
 - .888 5 Wreckage studies
 - Determination of causes of accidents thru examination of remains
 - .888 6 Fire-fighting technology
 - .888 7 Rescue operations
 - .89 Navigation
 - Selection and determination of course
 - Class navigation procedures to prevent collision and grounding in 623.8884
 - For celestial navigation, see 527*
 - .892 Geonavigation
 - For aids to geonavigation, see 623.893–623.894*
 - .892 2 Piloting
 - Positioning craft by visual observation of objects of known position
 - For approach and harbor piloting, see 623.8929*
 - .892 3 Dead reckoning
 - .892 9 Approach and harbor piloting
 - Class here pilot guides
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 623.8929

623.893–623.894 Aids to geonavigation

Class comprehensive works in 623.892

.893 Electronic aids to geonavigation

▶ 623.893 2–623.893 3 Direction- and position-finding devices

Class comprehensive works in 623.893

.893 2 Radio aids

Radio beacons, radio compasses, loran

.893 3 Microwave aids

Radar, racon, shoran

.893 8 Sounding devices

Sonar, other echo and sound-ranging devices

.894 Other aids to geonavigation

.894 2 Lighthouses

.894 3 Lightships

.894 4 Beacons, buoys, daymarks

.894 5 Light lists

.894 9 Tide and current tables

624 Civil engineering

Class specific branches of civil engineering in 625–629

For military construction engineering, see 623.047

SUMMARY

624.1 Structural engineering

.2 Bridges

.3 Trussed and girder bridges

.4 Tubular and box-girder bridges

.5 Suspension bridges

.6 Arch bridges

.7 Compound bridges

.8 Movable bridges

.1 Structural engineering

For bridges, see 624.2; buildings, 690

.101 Philosophy and theory

Class structural theory in 624.17

SUMMARY

- 624.15 Foundation engineering
 - .16 Other supporting structures
 - .17 Structural theory
 - .18 Design and construction in specific materials
 - .19 Tunnels
- .15 Foundation engineering
- .151 Foundation soils and engineering geology
 - Properties of soils supporting structures, geological studies for civil engineering purposes
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., highway soil surveys 625.732
- .151 09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class soil surveys in 624.1517
- .151 3 Soil mechanics
 - Including rock mechanics, permeability, drainage properties, permafrost, tests of strength and stability
- .151 4 Soil content analysis
- .151 7 Soil surveys
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 624.1517
- .152 Excavation
 - Earthwork, shoring, rock excavation
- .153 Foundation materials
 - Add to 624.153 the numbers following 620.1 in 620.12-620.19, e.g., iron 624.1537
 - Class foundation materials for specific types of foundations in 624.154-624.158
 - 624.154-624.158 Specific types of foundations
 - Planning, analysis, design, construction
 - Class comprehensive works in 624.15
- .154 Pile foundations
- .156 Floating foundations
 - Platform and cantilever foundations
- .157 Underwater (Subaqueous) foundations
 - .157 1 Cofferdam construction methods
 - .157 2 Crib and open-caisson construction methods
 - .157 3 Pneumatic-caisson construction methods
 - .157 4 Freezing methods of construction

- .157 5 Pneumatic forcing construction methods
- .157 6 Dredging construction methods
- .158 Pier foundations
- .16 Other supporting structures
 - Planning, structural analysis and design, construction of piers, abutments, embankments, retaining walls
- .17 Structural theory
 - Class here interdisciplinary works on structural theory
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., structural analysis of aircraft 629.1341
- .171 Structural analysis
 - Statics, dynamics, stability, strength of structures
 - For loads, stresses, strains, see 624.172–624.176, specific structural elements, 624.1772–624.1779*
- .171 2 Graphic statics
- .171 3 Statical determinacy and indeterminacy
 - Including statically indeterminate structures
- .171 4 Deflections
- .171 5 Moments and moment distribution
 - 624.172–624.176 Loads, stresses, strains
 - Class comprehensive works in 624.171
- .172 Loads
 - For wind loads, see 624.175*
- .175 Wind loads
- .176 Stresses and strains (Deformation)
 - Produced by loads, winds, earthquakes, vibrations, impacts, blasts, temperature changes
- .177 Structural design and specific structural elements
- .177 1 Structural design
 - For design of specific structural elements, see 624.1772–624.1779; design in specific materials, 624.18*
 - 624.177 2–624.177 9 Specific structural elements
 - Strength tests [*formerly* 620.1128], analysis, design
 - Class comprehensive works in 624.177, design of specific structural elements in specific materials in 624.18
- .177 2 Beams, girders, cylinders, columns, slabs
- .177 3 Trusses and frames

- .177 4 Cables, wires, bars, rods
- .177 5 Arches and domes
- .177 6 Shells and plates
- .177 9 Sandwich and honeycomb constructions
- .18 Design and construction in specific materials
- .182 Metals
 - .182 1 Ferrous metals
 - .182 2-.182 9 Nonferrous metals
 - Add to 624.182 the numbers following 620.18 in 620.182-620.189, e.g., construction in aluminum 624.1826
- .183 Masonry, and ceramic and allied materials
 - .183 2 Artificial and natural stones
 - Examples: marble, concrete and cinder blocks
 - .183 3 Cement
 - .183 4 Concretes
 - .183 6 Brick and tile
 - .183 8 Glass
- .184 Wood and laminated wood
- .189 Other materials
 - Add to 624.189 the numbers following 620.19 in 620.191-620.199, e.g., design in plastics 624.18923
- .19 Tunnels
 - Planning, analysis, design, construction, ventilation, repair, maintenance
- .192 Mountain
- .193 Underground
- .194 Underwater
- [.199] Other
 - Number discontinued; class in 624.19
- .2 Bridges**
 - For specific types of bridges, see 624.3-624.8*
 - .25 Structural analysis and design
 - .252 Loads, stresses, strains
 - .253 Floor systems
 - .257 Structural elements and materials
 - .28 Construction, maintenance, repairs

624.3–624.8 Specific types of bridges

Planning, structural analysis, design, construction, maintenance, repairs

Class comprehensive works in 624.2

.3 **Trussed and girder bridges**

624.32–624.35 Trussed

Class comprehensive works in 624.3

For trussed arch bridges, see 624.7

.32 **Trestle**

.33 **Continuous**

Bridges consisting of beams, girders, or trusses extending uninterruptedly over more than two supports

.35 **Cantilever**

.37 **Girder**

.372 **Simple**

.375 **Covered**

.378 **Plate and lattice**

*For plate-girder suspension bridges, see 624.7;
box-girder bridges, 624.4*

.4 **Tubular and box-girder bridges**

.5 **Suspension bridges**

For plate-girder suspension bridges, see 624.7

.52 **Primitive**

Rope bridges of hammock and basket types

.55 **Modern**

Wire-cable, self-anchored, eyebar-chain, rope-strand cable suspension bridges

.6 **Arch bridges**

Hinged and hingeless

For trussed arch bridges, see 624.7

.63 **Of masonry**

.67 **Of metal**

.7 **Compound bridges**

Plate-girder suspension bridges and trussed arch bridges

.8 **Movable bridges**

.82 **Bascule**

- .83 Swing
- .84 Vertical-lift
- .86 Transporter
- .87 Pontoon

[.9] **Roofs**

Class in 690.15

625 **Engineering of railroads, roads, highways**

Planning, analysis, design, construction, maintenance, repairs

Class military transportation engineering in 623.6, tunnel engineering in 624.19, bridge engineering in 624.2

SUMMARY

- 625.1 Railroads
 - .2 Railroad rolling stock
 - .3 Inclined, mountain, ship railways
 - .4 Rapid transit systems
 - .5 Cable and aerial railways
 - .6 Surface rail and trolley systems
 - .7 Roads and highways
 - .8 Artificial road surfaces

.1 **Railroads**

Use 625.1001–625.1009 for standard subdivisions, but class models in 625.19

Class electrification of railroads in 621.33

*For railroad rolling stock, see 625.2, special-purpose railways,
625.3–625.6*

- .101 Standard-gage railroads
- .102 Narrow-gage railroads
- .103 Monorailroads
- .11 Surveying and design

Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys,
determination of grades, curves, switchbacks, right-of-way

625.12–625.17 Permanent way

Class comprehensive works in 625.1

.12 **Earthwork**

- .122 Foundation soils and engineering geology
 - Surveys, tests, analysis, soil mechanics and other properties

.123 **Roadbed preparation**

Clearing and grubbing, compaction, excavation, rock cutting, earth
and rock haulage, grading; formation of embankments, cuts, fills

- .13 Protective structures
 - Examples: snow fences, permanent snowsheds, retaining walls
- .14 Track
 - For rails and rail fastenings, see 625.15; track accessories, 625.16*
- .141 Ballast
- .143 Ties (Sleepers) and tie plates
- .144 Track laying
 - Class laying of monorail tracks in 625.146, of tracks over ice cover in 625.147
- .146 Monorail tracks
- .147 Tracks over ice cover
- .15 Rails and rail fastenings
- .16 Track accessories
 - Design, construction, installation
- .163 Turnouts and crossings
 - Switches, frogs, sidings
- .165 Signals, signs, other control devices
- .17 Maintenance and repairs
 - Example, snow removal operations
 - Class maintenance and repairs of railroad yards in 625.18
- .18 Railroad yards (Terminal layouts)
- .19 Model railroads and trains
- .2 **Railroad rolling stock**
 - Planning, analysis, design, construction, maintenance, repairs
 - Class rolling stock for special-purpose railways in 625.3–625.6, models in 625.19
 - 625.21–625.26 For standard- and narrow-gage railroads
 - Class comprehensive works in 625.2
- .21 Running gear
 - Wheels, axles, bearings, springs

625.22–625.24 Specific types of cars

Class comprehensive works in 625.2, running gear for specific types of cars in 625.21, accessory equipment for specific types of cars in 625.25

- .22 **Work cars (Nonrevenue rolling stock)**
 - Locomotive cranes and shovels, handcars, railroad snowplows, ditchers, flangers, derrick cars, cabooses, wrecking cars
- .23 **Passenger-train cars**
 - Coaches, chair cars, diners, club cars, lounge cars, sleeping cars, baggage cars, mail cars
- .24 **Freight cars**
 - Refrigerator cars, automobile cars, boxcars, cattle cars, tank cars, hoppers, gondola cars, flatcars
- .25 **Accessory equipment**
 - Examples: brakes, couplings, buffers
- .26 **Locomotives**
 - Class running gear in 625.21, accessory equipment in 625.25
- .261 **Steam [formerly 621.13]**
- .262 **Gas-turbine**
- .263 **Electric**
 - For diesel electric, see 625.2662*
- .265 **Air-compression powered**
- .266 **Diesel and semidiesel**
 - .266 2 Diesel electric
 - .266 4 Diesel hydraulic
- .27 **Mechanical operation**
- .28 **Monorail rolling stock**

625.3–625.6 Special-purpose railways

Roadbeds, tracks and accessories, rolling stock

Class comprehensive works in 625.1

- .3 **Inclined, mountain, ship railways**
 - .32 Funicular
 - .33 Rack
 - .39 Ship

- .4 Rapid transit systems**
 - For surface systems, see 625.6*
- .42 Underground (Subways)**
- .44 Elevated**
 - Including elevated monorail systems
- .5 Cable and aerial railways**
 - For funicular railways, see 625.32*
- .6 Surface rail and trolley systems**
 - Light interurban and local
- .65 Roadbeds, tracks, accessories**
- .66 Streetcars and trolleybuses**
 - Including horse-drawn streetcars
- .7 Roads and highways**
 - For artificial road surfaces, see 625.8*
- .704 General special**
- .704 2 Safety engineering**
 - Design, construction, maintenance, repairs, testing of roadways and auxiliary equipment to provide optimum safety
- [.71] Rural and urban road systems**
 - Number discontinued; class in 625.7
- .72 Surveying and design**
 - Reconnaissance, preliminary surveys, final location surveys, determination of grades, curves, bankings, exits, entrances
- .73 Earthwork**
- .732 Foundation soils and engineering geology**
 - Surveys, tests, analysis, soil mechanics and other properties
- .733 Foundation preparation**
 - Clearing and grubbing, compaction, excavation, rock cutting, earth and rock haulage, grading, formation of embankments, cuts, fills
- .734 Drainage**
 - Dikes, gutters, ditches, culverts, pipes, conduits
- .735 Subsurface highway materials**
 - Properties, tests, use of materials supporting road surfaces
- .74 Soil roads**
 - Stabilized and unstabilized
 - Including soil stabilization processes
 - For surfacing soil roads, see 625.75*

- .75 Surfacing soil roads
- .76 Maintenance and repairs
 - For maintenance and repairs of roadside areas, see 625.77; of traffic control equipment, 625.794; of protective roadside barriers, 625.795*
- .761 Damages and their repairs
 - Patching, blading, dragging, scarifying, resurfacing, resealing, shoulder maintenance
- .763 Snow and ice control measures
 - Use of snowplows, power graders, bank-slicers, sanders, stock-piled abrasives, snow guides, snow fences
 - Class municipal snow and ice removal in 628.466
- .77 Roadside areas
 - Design, construction, maintenance, repairs of highway rest areas, parking turnouts, picnic areas
- [.78] Subsurface structures
 - Number discontinued, class in 625.7
- .79 Other topics
- .792 Ice crossings
 - Ice and snow-compacted roads
- .794 Traffic control equipment
 - Design, construction, maintenance, repairs of signals, signs, markings, other control devices
- .795 Protective roadside barriers
 - Design, construction, maintenance, repairs of dividers, rails, fences
 - Class curbs in 625.888
- .8 Artificial road surfaces
 - Design, construction, materials
 - Class maintenance and repairs in 625.76
- 625.81–625.86 Pavements in specific materials
- Class comprehensive works in 625.8, sidewalks in specific materials in 625.881–625.886
- .81 Flagstones
- .82 Brick and stone
 - Including gravel and crushed stone pavements
- .83 Wood
- .84 Concretes
 - For bituminous concrete, see 628.85*

- .85 Bituminous materials
 - Asphalts, tar, bituminous concrete
 - For macadam, see 625.86*
- .86 Macadam and telford surfaces
- .88 Sidewalks and auxiliary pavements
- .881-.886 Sidewalks in specific materials
 - Add to 625.88 the numbers following 625.8 in 625.81-625.86, e.g., brick sidewalks 625.882
- .888 Curbs
- .889 Auxiliary pavements
 - Examples: driveways, parking aprons
 - For curbs, see 625.888*
- [.89] Other surfaces
 - Number discontinued; class in 625.8

626 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

627 Hydraulic engineering

The branch of engineering dealing with utilization and control of natural waters of the earth

Class here planning, analysis, design, construction, maintenance, repair of hydraulic structures, water resource engineering

Class water supply engineering in 628.1

- .04 General special
- .042 Applied hydrodynamics of waterways and water bodies
- .046 Engineering of recreational water resources

SUMMARY

- 627.1 Inland waterways and subsurface waters
 - .2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads
 - .3 Port installations
 - .4 Flood control
 - .5 Reclamation
 - .7 Underwater operations
 - .8 Dams and reservoirs
 - .9 Other hydraulic structures

- .1 **Inland waterways and subsurface waters**
 - For underwater operations, see 627.7*
 - .12 Rivers and other streams
 - .122 Silt and sediment
 - Measurement, analysis, preventive measures
 - .123 Water diversions for depth increase
 - Example: construction of barrages
 - .124 River mouths and estuaries
 - .125 Applied dynamics of rivers and streams
 - .13 Canals
 - Class bridges carrying canals in 624.2, tunnels carrying canals in 624.19
 - .131 Surveying and design
 - .132 Earthwork
 - Clearing and grubbing, excavation, rock cutting, earth and rock haulage, grading, formation of banks and embankments
 - .133 Protective measures
 - Bank protection and reinforcement
 - .134 Feeding
 - Water supply for canals
 - .135 Specific devices
 - .135 2 Locks, gates, sluices
 - .135 3 Lifts, inclines, ramps
 - [.135 9] Other
 - Number discontinued, class in 627.135
 - .136 Maintenance and repairs
- 627.137–627.138 Specific types of canals
- Class comprehensive works in 627.13, engineering and construction details of specific types of canals in 627.131–627.136
- .137 Ship canals
 - .138 Barge canals
 - .14 Lakes
 - .17 Subsurface waters
 - Engineering measures to control and manage groundwaters

- .2 Harbors, ports, roadsteads**
 - For port installations, see 627.3*
- .22 Anchorages and mooring grounds**
- .23 Channels and fairways**
- .24 Protective structures**
 - Examples: jetties, breakwaters, seawalls
- .3 Port installations**
 - For navigation aids, see 627.92*

 - 627.31-627.35 For large craft
 - Class comprehensive works in 627.3
- .31 Docks**
 - Structures for mooring vessels and handling cargo and passengers
- .312 Wharves, quays, berths**
 - Docks parallel to shore
- .313 Piers**
 - Docks projecting into water
- .32 Mooring structures (Dolphins)**
- .33 Port buildings**
- .34 Cargo-handling equipment**
- .35 Other terminal facilities**
 - Example: drydocks
- .38 Small-craft installations (Marinas)**
- .4 Flood control**
 - Class engineering of dams and reservoirs for flood control in 627.8
- .42 Water retention**
 - By erection of dikes, seawalls, levees
- .44 Water storage**
 - In ponds, lakes, other reservoirs
- .45 Water diversion**
 - Thru enlargement of natural channels and construction of auxiliary channels

.5 Reclamation

627.52–627.54 Land reclamation

Class comprehensive works in 627.5

For shore reclamation, see 627.58

.52 Land reclamation by irrigation

Construction and use of irrigation canals, flumes, conduits

For dams, see 627.8

.54 Land reclamation by drainage**.56 Water reclamation**

Artificial recharge to ground water thru surface spreading and subsurface injection

.58 Shore reclamation

Prevention of beach erosion by construction of seawalls and stabilization of dunes

.7 Underwater operations

Use 627.7001–627.7009 for standard subdivisions

627.702–627.705 General operations

Class comprehensive works in 627.7

.702 Construction operations**.703 Salvage operations****.704 Research operations****.705 Maintenance operations**

627.72–627.75 Specific operations

Class comprehensive works in 627.7

.72 Diving

Class here interdisciplinary works on diving

For diving sports, see 797.2

.73 Dredging**.74 Blasting****.75 Drilling****[.79] Other**

Number discontinued, class in 627.7

.8 Dams and reservoirs

Class a specific use with the subject, e.g., water storage and conservation 628.13

.81 General principles

Planning, surveying, earthwork, materials

Class general principles applied to specific dams and reservoirs in 627.82-627.86

627.82 627.85 Specific kinds of dams

Class comprehensive works in 627.8, ancillary structures of specific kinds of dams in 627.88

82 Masonry dams

Gravity, arch, arch-gravity, buttress dams

83 Earth- and rock-fill dams**84 Movable dams**

Beam-trap, bridge, shutter and wicket, roller, frame, curtain dams

85 Metal dams**86 Reservoirs**

Class ancillary structures of reservoirs in 627.88

88 Ancillary structures**882 Sluices, gates, penstocks****883 Spillways and weirs****9 Other hydraulic structures****92 Navigation aids****922 Lighthouses****923 Lightships****924 Beacons, buoys, daymarks****98 Artificial islands**

Radar and drilling platforms

628 Sanitary and municipal engineering

Planning, analysis, design, construction, maintenance, repairs

Class military health engineering in 623.75

For plumbing, see 696.1

SUMMARY

- 628.1 Water supply**
 - .2 Sewerage and sewage**
 - .3 Sewage treatment and disposal**
 - .4 Public sanitation**
 - .5 Pollution and industrial sanitation**
 - .7 Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely-populated areas**
 - .9 Other branches**

.1 Water supply

For water supply for rural and sparsely-populated areas, see 628.72

SUMMARY

- 628.11 Sources**
 - .13 Storage and conservation**
 - .14 Collection and distribution systems**
 - .15 Mains and service pipes**
 - .16 Analysis, treatment, pollution**
 - .17 Water requirements and use**
- .11 Sources**
 - Lakes, rivers, springs, wells, sea waters
- .13 Storage and conservation**
 - Reservoirs, storage tanks, water towers; evaporation control and other conservation measures
 - Class engineering of dams and reservoirs for water supply in 627.8
- .14 Collection and distribution systems**
 - For mains and service pipes, see 628.15*
- .142 Intakes**
 - Including intake conduits and aqueducts
- .144 Distribution systems**
- .15 Mains and service pipes**
- .16 Analysis, treatment, pollution**
- .161 Analysis**
 - Determination of constituents, purity, quality, pollution

628.162–628.167 Treatment

Class comprehensive works in 628.16

- .162 Sedimentation and coagulation
- .164 Filtration
- .165 Aeration and deaeration
- .166 Chemical treatment
- .166 2 Disinfection
 - Chlorination, superchlorination, dechlorination, ozone treatment, copper sulfate treatment, ultraviolet radiation
- .166 3 Fluoridation
- .166 6 Softening (Demineralization) processes
- .166 7 Defluoridation
- .167 Saline water conversion
- .167 2 By distillation
 - .167 23 Using nuclear energy
 - .167 25 Using solar energy
- .167 3 By electrolysis
- .167 6 With gas hydrates
- .168 Pollution and countermeasures

Class treatment in 628.162–628.167

- .168 09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class pollution in specific areas in 628.1686, countermeasures in specific areas in 628.1688

628.168 2–628.168 5 Pollution from specific sources

Class comprehensive works in 628.168

- .168 2 Pollution from sewage and domestic waste
- .168 3 Pollution from industrial waste
- .168 4 Pollution from agricultural waste
- .168 5 Pollution from radioactive isotopes
- .168 6 Pollution in specific areas
 - Class here pollution surveys
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 628.1686
 - Class pollution from specific sources in specific areas in 628.1682–628.1685

- .168 8 **Abatement programs**
 - Programs to reduce and eliminate pollution in specific areas
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 628.1688
- .17 **Water requirements and use**
- .172 **Domestic requirements and use**
- .173 **Industrial requirements and use**
- .174 **Agricultural requirements and use**
- .177 **Measurement of consumption**
 - Techniques and instruments
- .2 **Sewerage and sewage**
 - For sewage treatment and disposal, see 628.3*
- .21 **Sewerage systems**
 - 628.23-628.25 Sewers
 - Class comprehensive works in 628.2
- .23 **Ventilation and deodorization of sewers**
- .24 **Design, construction, maintenance of sewers**
- .25 **Appurtenances of sewers**
 - Manholes, house connections, flushing apparatus, inlets, catch basins, regulators, valves, penstocks, ventilators, traps
- .29 **Pumping stations**
- .3 **Sewage treatment and disposal**
 - For sewage disposal in rural and sparsely-populated areas, see 628.742*
- 628.32-628.35 Treatment
 - Class comprehensive works in 628.3
- .32 **Disinfection**
- .34 **Primary treatment**
 - Screening, skimming, primary sedimentation
- .35 **Secondary treatment**
- .352 **Filtration (Trickling filter process)**
- .353 **Secondary sedimentation**
- .354 **Activated sludge process**
 - Aeration, sludge and anaerobic digestion

- 628.36–628.39 Disposal
 Class comprehensive works in 628.3
- .36 Disposal on land
 Including sewage irrigation
- .39 Disposal into water
 Into streams, seas, other bodies of water
- .4 **Public sanitation**
 For water supply, see 628.1; sewerage and sewage, 628.2
- .44 Garbage and refuse
- .442 Collection
- .445 Treatment and disposal
 By conversion into fertilizers, burial, incineration, reduction
 For garbage and refuse disposal in rural and sparsely-populated areas, see 628.744
- .45 Comfort stations
- .46 Street cleaning
- .462 Sprinkling and sweeping
- .466 Snow and ice removal
- .5 **Pollution and industrial sanitation engineering**
 For water pollution, see 628.168
- .51 Industrial plant sanitation
- .53 Air pollution and countermeasures
 Add to 628.53 the numbers following 614.71 in 614.712–614.716,
 e.g., smog 628.532
- .54 Industrial waste treatment and disposal
 For treatment of radioactive wastes, see 621.4838
- .55 Soil pollution and countermeasures
- .7 **Sanitary engineering for rural and sparsely-populated areas**
- .72 Water supply
- .74 Sewage and other waste
- .742 Unsewered sewage disposal
- .744 Garbage and refuse disposal

.9 Other branches**.92 Fire-fighting and fire safety technology**

For urban, rural, sparsely-populated areas

Class forest-fire technology in 634.9618

.922 Fire safety technology

Equipment and measures to prevent and detect fires and to provide an optimum environment during fires

Examples: fireproofing, fire doors, fire escapes, fire alarms

For fireproof construction, see 693.82

.925 Fire-fighting technology

Buildings, vehicles, clothing, other equipment

628.925 2–628.925 4 Fire extinction methods
[formerly 614.843–614.846]

Class comprehensive works in 628.925

.925 2 Extinction with water

Fire pumpers [formerly 621.68], fire boats, hydrants, hoses, portable extinguishing units, automatic sprinkling devices

.925 4 Extinction with chemicals**[.93] Public gas lighting**

Class in 628.95

.95 Public lighting

Lighting for streets, parks, other public areas

Including public gas lighting [formerly 628.93]

.96 Public extermination of insects and rodents**629 Other branches of engineering**

Class here planning, analysis, design, construction, operation, maintenance, repairs

.04 Transportation engineering

Technology of vehicles and other transportation equipment, of trafficways and other transportation facilities

Class military transportation technology in 623.6

For railroads, roads, highways, see 625; nautical engineering and seamanship, 623.8; inland waterways, 627.1; harbors, ports, roadsteads, 627.2

.042 Health and safety engineering

Including signs, signals, markings, other control devices

.045

Navigation

For celestial navigation, see 527

SUMMARY

- 629.1 Aerospace engineering
 - .2 Motor land vehicles, and cycles
 - .3 Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)
 - .4 Astronautics
 - .8 Automatic control engineering

.1 Aerospace engineering

Engineering and operation of flight vehicles

For ground-effect machines, see 629.3; astronautics, 629.4

.13 Aeronautics

Use 629.13001–629.13009 for standard subdivisions

.130 1–.130 8

Standard subdivisions of flight

.130 9

Historical and geographical treatment of flight

Record of flying activities in all types of aircraft

.130 91

Transoceanic flights

Add to 629.13091 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469, e.g., transpacific flights 629.130915

Do not use for other regional treatment

130 92

Fliers

130 94–.130 99

Flight in specific continents, countries, localities

SUMMARY

- 629.132 Principles of aerial flight
 - .133 Aircraft types
 - .134 Aircraft components and general techniques
 - .135 Aircraft instrumentation and systems
 - .136 Airports

132

Principles of aerial flight

Mechanics and operational techniques

132 2

Aerostatics

132 3

Aerodynamics

Use 629.1323001–629.1323009 for standard subdivisions

132 303

Subsonic

132 304

Transonic

132 305

Supersonic

132 306

Hypersonic

132 31

Gliding, soaring, diving

- .132 32 Airflow
 - For boundary layers, see 629.13237*
- .132 322 Incompressible
- .132 323 Compressible
- .132 327 Air pockets (Air holes)
- .132 33 Lift and thrust
- .132 34 Drag (Air resistance)
- .132 35 Pressure distribution and aerodynamic load
- .132 36 Stability and control
- .132 362 Aeroclasticity, flutter, vibration
- .132 364 Moments of inertia
 - Roll, pitch, yaw
 - Including restoring torques and damping
- .132 37 Boundary layers
 - Region of retarded airflow near surface of moving aircraft due to viscosity of air
- .132 38 Propulsion principles
- .132 4 Weather conditions and aerodynamics
 - Aviation meteorology
- .132 5 Flying and related topics
- .132 509 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class flight guides in 629.13254
- .132 51 Navigation
 - Selection and determination of course
- .132 52 Piloting ✓
 - Class here comprehensive works on flight operations
 - For navigation, see 629.13251*
- .132 521 General topics
 - Class operation of specific types of aircraft in 629.132522–629.132528
- .132 521 2 Takeoff procedures
- .132 521 3 Landing procedures
- .132 521 4 Piloting under adverse conditions
 - Nighttime, bad weather, disablement of craft
- .132 521 6 Piloting commercial craft
 - For passengers and goods
- .132 521 7 Piloting private craft ✓

- .132 522 Operation of lighter-than-air aircraft
- .132 523-.132 528 Operation of heavier-than-air aircraft
 Add to 629.13252 the numbers following 629.1333
 in 629.13332-629.13338, e.g., gliders 629.132523
 Class kite flying as recreation in 796.15
- .132 54 Flight guides
 Maps, charts, logbooks, pilot guides
 Add "Arcas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number
 629.13254
- .132 55 Wreckage studies
 Determination of causes of accidents thru examination
 of remains
- .132 6 Command systems
 Geomagnetic, celestial, electronic systems of controlling
 guided aircraft*
- .133 Aircraft types
 Class components and general techniques of specific aircraft
 types in 629.134
- [.133 022 8] Models
 Do not use, class models of all types of aircraft
 in 629.1331
- .133 1 Models
 Add to 629.1331 the numbers following 629.133 in 629.1332-
 629.1333, e.g., models of helicopters 629.133135
- .133 2 Lighter-than-air aircraft =
- .133 22 Free and captive balloons
- .133 24 Airships (Dirigible balloons)
 For specific types of dirigibles, see 629.13325-629.13327
- 629.133 25-629.133 27 Specific types of dirigibles
 Class comprehensive works in 629.13324
- .133 25 Rigid dirigibles
- .133 26 Semirigid dirigibles
- .133 27 Nonrigid dirigibles
- .133 3 Heavier-than-air aircraft ,
- .133 32 Kites
- .133 33 Gliders

- .133 34 Airplanes
 - For rocket planes, see 629.13338*
- .133 340 4 General special
- .133 340 42 General topics
- .133 340 422 Private
- .133 340 423 Commercial
 - For passengers and goods*
- .133 340 426 Short-takeoff-and-landing (STOL)
- .133 343 Propeller-driven landplanes
 - Piston and turboprop
- .133 347 Seaplanes
- .133 348 Amphibian planes
- .133 349 Jet-propelled landplanes
- .133 35 Vertical-lift (VTOL) craft
 - Helicopters, autogyros, convertiplanes, flying jeeps, other craft taking off and landing vertically with or without separate provision for horizontal flight
- .133 36 Orthopters (Ornithopters)
- .133 38 Rocket planes
- [.133 39] Other
 - Number discontinued; class in 629.1333
- .134 Aircraft components and general techniques
 - For aircraft instrumentation and systems, see 629.135*

SUMMARY

- 629.134 1 Analysis and design
- .134 2 Manufacturing and assembling
- .134 3 Parts
- .134 4 Comfort and safety equipment
- .134 5 Tests, measurements, standards
- .134 6 Maintenance and repairs

629.134 1–629.134 2 General techniques

Class comprehensive works in 629.134

For aircraft tests, measurements, standards, maintenance, repairs, see 629.1345–629.1346

- .134 1 Analysis and design
- .134 2 Manufacturing and assembling
 - Methods, materials, equipment

- .134 3 **Parts**
 - Analysis, design, construction, maintenance, repairs
- .134 31 **Airframes**
 - Class a specific component part with the subject, e.g., fuselages 629.13434
- .134 32 **Airfoils**
 - Including wings and wing accessories
 - Class propeller and rotor blades in 629.13436
 - For movable airfoils, see* 629.13433
- .134 33 **Control surfaces (Movable airfoils)**
 - Fins, flaps, ailerons, elevators, rudders, stabilizers
- .134 34 **Fuselages**
- .134 35 **Engines, fuels, propellants**
- .134 351 **Fuels and propellants**
 - Chemical and nuclear
 - Class fuels and propellants for specific engines in 629.134352–629.134355
- 629.134 352–629.134 353 **Air-breathing engines**
 - Class comprehensive works in 629.13435
- .134 352 **Reciprocating and compound engines**
 - Piston and compound piston-turbine engines
- .134 353 **Gas-turbine and jet engines**
- .134 353 2 **Turboprop**
- .134 353 3 **Turbojet**
- .134 353 4 **Turboramjet**
- .134 353 5 **Ramjet**
- .134 353 6 **Pulse-jet**
- .134 353 7 **Fan-jet**
- .134 354 **Rocket engines**
- .134 355 **Nuclear power plants**
- .134 36 **Propellers (Air screws) and vertical-lift rotors**
- .134 37 **Rigging and bracing equipment**
- .134 38 **Other**
- .134 381 **Take-off and landing gear**
- .134 386 **Escape equipment**
 - Pilot-seat ejectors, capsule cockpits, parachutes

- .134 4 Interiors and special equipment
- .134 42 Comfort equipment
 - Soundproofing, heating, ventilating, air conditioning, pressurization
- .134 43 Safety equipment
 - Safety belts, life rafts, fire-prevention and first-aid equipment
- .134 45 Interiors
 - Including cabins
- 629.134 5–629.134 6 Aircraft tests, measurements, standards, maintenance, repairs
 - Class comprehensive works in 629.134; tests, measurements, standards, maintenance, repairs of parts in 629.1343
- 134 5 Tests, measurements, standards
- 134 52 Ground tests and inspection
 - Including wind and shock tunnels
- 134 53 Flight tests
- 134 57 Measurements and standards
 - Determination of weight, load capacity, center of gravity, handling qualities, other characteristics
- 134 6 Maintenance and repairs
- 135 Aircraft instrumentation and systems
- 135 1 Navigation instrumentation
 - Radio compasses (direction finders), air-mileage indicators, air-position indicators, landing and navigation lights
- .135 2 Flight instrumentation
 - Automatic pilots, altimeters, air-speed indicators, vertical-speed indicators, turn-and-bank indicators, accelerometers, Machmeters, gyrohorizons, directional gyros
- .135 3 Power-plant monitoring instrumentation
- .135 4 Electrical systems
- .135 5 Electronic systems
- [.135 9] Other
 - Number discontinued; class in 629.135
- .136 Airports
- .136 1 Specific types
 - Including floating airports (seadromes)
 - Class details of specific types of airports in 629.1363–629.1368
- .136 12 Airstrips

- .136 13 Commercial land airports
- [.136 14–.136 15] Floating airports (seadromes)
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 629.1361
- .136 16 Heliports
 - 629.136 3–629.136 8 Details
 - Class comprehensive works in 629.136
- .136 3 Runways
- .136 34 Pavements
- .136 35 Drainage systems
- .136 37 Snow removal and compaction
- .136 4 Terminal buildings
- .136 5 Lighting systems
 - Control-tower and boundary lighting systems
- .136 6 Air traffic control systems
 - Radio and radar control devices
- .136 8 Fire-fighting equipment
- .138] Special developments
 - Number discontinued, class in 629.13
- .14 Portable flight vehicles
 - Units intended to be carried by a single person, e.g., on the back
- .2 **Motor land vehicles, and cycles**
- .204 General special
- .204 2 Safety engineering of motor land vehicles
 - Class here comprehensive works on motor land vehicle and highway safety engineering
 - For highway safety engineering, see 625.7042*

SUMMARY

- 629.22 Types of vehicles
- .23 Design, materials, construction
- .24 Chassis
- .25 Power plants
- .26 Bodies and bodywork
- .27 Accessories and lighting equipment
- .28 Tests, operation, maintenance, repairs
- .29 Other topics

- .22 Types of vehicles
 Class here three-wheel vehicles
 Class specific details in 629.23–629.28
- [.220 228] Models
 Do not use; class models of all types of vehicles in 629.221
- .221 Models
 Add to 629.221 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.229,
 e.g., models of racing cars 629.2218
- 629.222–629.228 Gasoline-, oil-, man-powered vehicles
 Class comprehensive works in 629.22
- .222 Passenger automobiles
- .222 2 For private transportation
 Including sport cars, station wagons
 Arrange alphabetically by name of car
 Class racing cars in 629.228
- .222 3 For public transportation
- .222 32 Taxicabs
- .222 33 Buses
- .222 34 Ambulances
- .223 Light trucks
- .224 Trucks (Lorries)
 For light trucks, see 629.223
- .225 Nontrucking work vehicles
 Examples: tractors, bulldozers
- .226 Trailers and campers
- .227 Cycles
- .227 1 Monocycles
- .227 2 Bicycles and motor bicycles
- .227 3 Tricycles
- .227 5 Motorcycles and motorscooters
- .227 6 Tandems
- .228 Racing cars
 Conventional and converted
 Including karts, hot rods

-
- .229 Other types of vehicles
 - .229 2 Steam-powered
 - Including steam tractors and rollers [*formerly* 621.14]
 - .229 3 Electric-powered
 - .229 4 Air-compression-powered
 - .229 5 Solar energy-powered
 - .229 6 Nuclear-powered
 - .23 Design, materials, construction
 - Class materials for, design and construction of parts in 629.24–629.27
 - .231 Analysis and design
 - Including anthropometric and safety design
 - .232 Materials
 - Including specific tests of materials [*formerly* 629.233]
 - [.233] Specific tests of materials
 - Class in 629.232
 - .234 Manufacturing techniques
 - Including factory inspection
-
- 629.24–629.27 Parts
- Design, materials, construction, maintenance, repairs
 - Class comprehensive works in 629.2
- 24 Chassis
 - 242 Supporting frames
 - 243 Springs and shock absorbers
 - 244 Transmission devices
 - 245 Rear axles, differentials, drive shafts
 - 246 Brakes
 - Including brake fluids
 - 247 Front axles and steering gear
 - 248 Wheels
 - Rims, hubs, bearings, tires

- .25 Power plants**
 Use 629.25001–629.25009 for standard subdivisions
- 629.250 1–629.250 9 Specific types of engines
 Class comprehensive works in 629.25
- .250 1 Steam engines**
- .250 2 Electric power plants**
- .250 3–.250 6 Internal-combustion engines**
 Add to 629.250 the numbers following 621.43 in 621.433–621.436,
 e.g., diesel engines 629.2506
- .250 7 Air-compression engines**
- .250 8 Solar engines**
- .250 9 Nuclear power plants**
- 629.252–629.258 Parts and auxiliary systems of
 internal-combustion engines
 Class comprehensive works in 629.25
- .252 Motor parts of internal-combustion engines**
 Cylinders, piston assemblies, crankcases, bearings, valve mechanisms,
 manifolds, mufflers
- .253 Fuels and fuel systems of internal-combustion engines**
 Carburetors and carburetion, vaporizers, air and oil filters, fuel
 controls, fuel tanks, specific fuels
- .254 Ignition and electrical systems of internal-combustion engines**
 Batteries, generators, spark plugs, distributors, voltage regulators
For starting devices, see 629.257; lighting equipment, 629.271
- .255 Lubricants and lubricating systems of internal-combustion engines**
- .256 Cooling systems of internal-combustion engines**
 Radiators, fans, pumps, controls, antifreeze solutions
- .257 Starting devices of internal-combustion engines**
- .258 Control devices of internal-combustion engines**
 Valve, throttle, spark control devices
- .259 Parts and auxiliary systems of other kinds of power plants**
- .259 2 Of steam engines**
- .259 3 Of electric power plants**
- .259 4 Of air-compression engines**
- .259 5 Of solar engines**

- .259 6 Of nuclear power plants
- .26 Bodies and bodywork
 - Windshields, windows, running boards, fenders, doors, seats, convertible tops, interior and exterior decoration
- .27 Accessories and lighting equipment
- .271 Lighting equipment
- .273 Panel instrumentation
- .275 Hardware
 - Locks, handles, hinges
- .276 Safety accessories
 - Examples. bumpers, windshield wipers and washers, safety belts, mirrors
- .277 Comfort, convenience, entertainment equipment
 - Examples: heaters, air conditioners, radio receivers, television receivers, tape players, telephones, two-way radios, ashtrays, glove compartments
- .28 Tests, operation, maintenance, repairs
- .282 Tests and related topics
 - For factory inspection, see 629.234*
- .282 4 Road tests (Performance tests)
- .282 5 Periodic inspection and roadability tests
- .282 6 Wreckage studies
 - Determination of mechanical failure thru examination of remains
- .283 Operation (Driving)
 - Methods of driving, factors in safe driving
 - Add to 629.283 the numbers following 629.222 in 629.2222–629.2223, e.g., driving buses 629.28333
 - For operation of vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles, see 629.284*
- .284 Operation of vehicles other than internal-combustion passenger vehicles
 - Add to 629.284 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.223–629.229, e.g., driving trucks 629.2844
- .286 Garages and service stations
 - Tools, equipment, services
 - For maintenance and repairs, see 629.287*

- .287 Maintenance and repairs**
 Add to 629.287 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.229, e.g., repair of motorcycles 629.28775
 Subarrange each type by trade name of vehicle; but, if preferred, arrange all vehicles regardless of type alphabetically by trade name
 Class maintenance and repair of specific parts in 629.24–629.27
For maintenance and repairs by vehicle owners, see 629.288
- .288 Maintenance and repairs by vehicle owners**
 Class here restoration, conversion
 Add to 629.288 the numbers following 629.22 in 629.222–629.229, e.g., maintenance of private cars 629.28822
 Subarrange each type by trade name of vehicle; but, if preferred, arrange all vehicles regardless of type alphabetically by trade name
- .29 Other topics**
- .292 Non-surface motor land vehicles**
 Examples. subterranean, ocean-floor vehicles
- .295 Vehicles for extraterrestrial surfaces**
 Example. moon cars
- .3 Air-cushion vehicles (Ground-effect machines, Hovercraft)**
- .31 Generalities**
 Class generalities applied to specific types of vehicles in 629.32
- .313 Lift systems**
- .314 Propulsion systems**
- .317 Structural analysis and design**
- .32 Types of vehicles**
- .322 Overland**
- .324 Overwater**
- .325 Amphibious**
- .4 Astronautics**
 Techniques of space flight, engineering of spacecraft and related equipment

SUMMARY

- 629.41 Space flight**
.43 Unmanned flight
.44 Auxiliary spacecraft
.45 Manned flight
.46 Engineering of unmanned spacecraft
.47 Astronautical engineering

- .41 **Space flight**
 - Principles and problems
 - Class preparation for flight to a specific celestial body with the flight, e.g., preparation for manned lunar flight 629.454
 - For unmanned flight, see 629.43, manned flight, 629.45*
- .411 **Astromechanics**
 - Application of celestial mechanics to space flight
 - Add to 629.411 the numbers following 521 in 521.1–521.4, e.g., effects of gravitation 629.4111
- .415 **Planetary atmospheres**
 - Problems of entry to and exit from atmospheres of earth and other bodies
- .415 1 **Atmospheric aerodynamics**
- .415 2 **Atmospheric thermodynamics**
- .416 **Space environments affecting flight**
 - Examples: radiations, meteors
- .418 **Weightlessness and countermeasures**
- .42] **Propulsion systems**
 - Class in 629.475
- .43 **Unmanned flight**
- .432 **Launching**
- .433 **Guidance and homing**
- .434 **Flight of artificial satellites**
 - Class satellite flight for a specific purpose with the subject, e.g., weather satellites 551.6354
- .435 **Astronautical exploratory and data-gathering operations**
 - By use of artificial satellites
- .435 2 **Ionospheric and near-space**
- .435 3 **Lunar**
- .435 4 **Planetary**
 - Add to 629.4354 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.41–523.48, e.g., Venusian probes 629.43542
- .437 **Communication and tracking**
- .44 **Auxiliary spacecraft**
 - Operation and engineering
- .442 **Space stations**
- .445 **Space laboratories**

- .45 **Manned flight**
 Use 629.45001–629.45009 for standard subdivisions
- .450 1 **Projected accounts**
 Class projected accounts of flight to a specific celestial body in
 629.454–629.455
- .450 7 **Selection and training of astronauts**
- .452 **Launching and takeoff**
- .453 **Guidance, homing, navigation**
- .454 **Circumterrestrial and lunar flights**
- .454 2 **Preflight activities**
 Flight planning, preparation, training
- .454 3 **Takeoff and in-flight activities**
- .454 4 **Approach, orbiting, landing**
- .454 5 **Retakeoff and return flight**
- .455 **Planetary flights**
 Class here flights to planetary satellites
 Add to 629.455 the numbers following 523.4 in 523.41–523.48, e.g.,
 flights to Mars 629.4553, then add 0 and to the result add the
 numbers following 629.454 in 629.4542–629.4545, e.g., landing
 on Mars 629.455304
- .457 **Communication and tracking**
- .458 **Piloting and related activities**
- .458 2 **Piloting**
- .458 3 **Rendezvous with other spacecraft**
- .458 4 **Extravehicular activities**
 Example. space walks
- .458 5 **Rescue operations**
- .458 8 **Atmospheric entry and landing**
- .46 **Engineering of unmanned spacecraft**
 Examples. artificial satellites, photographic and surface exploratory
 vehicles
- .460 4 **General special**
- .460 44 **Environmental control in spacecraft**
 Sterilization, temperature, humidity, air pressure control
- .461–.468 **Analysis, design, construction, materials, parts, systems,
 facilities**
 Add to 629.46 the numbers following 629.47 in 629.471–629.478,
 e.g., guidance 629.4642

- .47 Astronautical engineering
 - Class here comprehensive works on spacecraft
 - For auxiliary spacecraft, see 629.44; engineering of unmanned spacecraft, 629.46*
- .470 4 General special
- .470 44 Environmental control in spacecraft
 - Sterilization, temperature, humidity, air pressure control
- .471 Structural analysis and design of spacecraft
- .472 Spacecraft materials and components
- .473 Spacecraft construction
- .474 Spacecraft engineering systems
 - For propulsion systems, see 629.475; life-support systems, 629.477*
- .474 2 Flight operations systems
 - Piloting, guidance, homing, navigation, landing systems
- .474 3 Communication and tracking systems
- .474 4 Auxiliary power systems
 - Examples. electrical and hydraulic power systems
- .475 Propulsion systems [*formerly 629.42*]
 - Power plants (rockets), fuels, auxiliary equipment and instrumentation
- 475 2 Chemical
 - 475 22 Liquid propellant
 - 475 24 Solid propellant
- 475 3 Nuclear
 - Fission and fusion
- 475 4 Photon
- 475 5 Electric and magnetohydrodynamic
 - Examples. plasma and ion propulsion
- 477 Life-support systems
 - 477 2 Space suits
 - 477 3 Food and water supply
 - 477 4 Sanitation
 - Sterilization, cleanliness, control of wastes
 - 477 5 Control of temperature, humidity, air supply and pressure
- 478 Terrestrial facilities
 - Examples: launching pads and equipment, space ports; spacecraft maintenance, ground testing, repair; other ground-support facilities

- [.49] Special developments
 - Number discontinued; class in 629.4
- .8 **Automatic control engineering**
 - Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., automation of machine tools 621.902
- .801 Philosophy and theory
 - Class control theory in 629.8312
- .804 General special
 - .804 2 Hydraulic control
 - .804 3 Electric and electronic control
 - .804 5 Pneumatic control
- .82 Open-loop systems
 - Mechanisms in which outputs have no effect on input signals
 - Example: vending machines
- .83 Closed-loop (Feedback) systems
 - Mechanisms which maintain prescribed relationships between the controlled outputs and the inputs
- .831 General principles
 - Class general principles of specific mechanisms and systems in 629.832–629.836
- .831 2 Control theory
 - Mathematical design, analysis, synthesis
 - Including optimal control
 - Class here comprehensive works on control theory
 - Class control theory for open-loop systems in 629.82
- .831 3 Circuitry
- .831 4 Feedback characteristics
- .831 5 System components
 - Error detectors, amplifiers, error correctors
- .831 7 Construction and assembly
- .831 8 Maintenance and repairs

- 629.832–629.836 Specific mechanisms and systems
 Theory, components, circuitry, construction, maintenance, repairs
 Class comprehensive works in 629.83
- .832 Linear mechanisms and systems
 Example: servomechanisms
For multiple-loop mechanisms and systems, see 629.833
- .833 Multiple-loop mechanisms and systems
- .836 Nonlinear mechanisms and systems
 Example: adaptive control systems
- .89 Special developments
- .891 Sequential machines
 Class a specific sequential machine with the subject, e.g.,
 computers 621.38195
- .892 Automata
 Automatically-controlled, relatively self-moving mechanisms
 often resembling living creatures
 Example: robots
- .895 Computer control
 Use of computers to regulate processes automatically

630 Agriculture and related technologies

- .1 Philosophy and theory
- [.11] Agricultural life
 Class agricultural sociology in 301.35, agricultural civilization in
 901.9
- [.15] Scientific principles
 Do not use; class in 630.21–630.29
- .2 Miscellany and scientific principles
- .201 Special treatment
- .201 1 Tabulated and related materials
- .201 12 Tables, formulas, specifications, statistics
- .201 16 Lists, inventories, catalogs of articles
- .201 2 Illustrations and models
- .201 22 Pictures, charts, designs
- .201 23 Plans and diagrams
- .201 28 Models

- .201 7 Humorous treatment
- .201 8 Audiovisual treatment
- .202 Synopses, outlines, manuals
- .203-.209 Other miscellany
 - Add to 630.20 the numbers following 02 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 023-029 from Table 1, e.g., agriculture as a profession 630.203
 - Class techniques, apparatus, equipment [*all formerly* 630.208] in 631
- .21-.29 Scientific principles
 - Add to 630.2 the numbers following 5 in 510-590, e.g., agricultural physics 630.23
 - Class miscellany in 630.201-630.209
- .7 **Study and teaching**
 - .71 In educational institutions and by agricultural agencies
 - .711 Colleges and universities
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 630.711
 - .712 Secondary schools
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 630.712
 - .715 Extension work
 - For extension work for young people, see 630.717*
 - .715 2 Institutes and workshops
 - .715 3 Radio and television classes
 - .715 4 Correspondence courses
 - .717 Extension work for young people

631 General agricultural techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials [*all formerly also* 630.208]

Class application to specific crops, products, groups of crops or products in 633-638, control methods for plant injuries, diseases, pests in 632

SUMMARY

- 631.2 Agricultural structures
 - .3 Agricultural tools, machinery, equipment
 - .4 Soil and soil conservation (Soil science)
 - .5 Cultivation and harvesting
 - .6 Soil reclamation and drainage
 - .7 Irrigation and water conservation
 - .8 Fertilizers and soil conditioners

- .2 **Agricultural structures**
 - Description, maintenance, use and place in agriculture
 - For greenhouses, see 631.34*
- .21 Farmhouses
- .22 Barns and other general-purpose buildings
- .23 Granaries, silos, grain elevators
- .25 Machine and equipment sheds
- .27 Fences, walls, hedges
- .28 Roads, bridges, dams
- .3 **Agricultural tools, machinery, equipment**
 - Description and maintenance
- .304 Workshops
 - Class here machine-shop practice
- .31 Soil-working tools and machines
- .312 Plows
- .313 Harrows
- .314 Rollers and crushers
- .315 Hand tools
 - Hoes, scrapers, weeders, rakes
- .316 Cultivators
- .33 Planting and sowing equipment
 - Seeders, planters, transplanters, fertilizer spreaders
- .34 Equipment for care and shelter of plants
 - Grafting and pruning equipment, greenhouses, cold frames, hotbeds, supports, receptacles
- .35 Harvesting equipment
 - Mowers, reapers, combines, pickers, strippers, toppers
- .36 Equipment used in preparing for storage and transport
 - Threshers, cleaning tools, silo machinery, balers, packers
- .37 Power and power machinery
- .371 Sources of power
 - Human, animal, mechanical, electric power
- .372 Tractors
- .373 Transport equipment
 - Wheelbarrows, wagons, trucks

-
- .4 Soil and soil conservation (Soil science)**
 - For soil improvement, see 631.6–631.8*
 - [.401 2] Classification of soils
 - Do not use, class in 631.44
 - [.409] Historical and geographical treatment
 - Do not use; class in 631.49
 - .41 Soil chemistry
 - Constituents, properties, reactions, analysis of soils
 - For soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity, see 631.42*
 - .416 Inorganic
 - .417 Organic
 - Including biochemistry
 - .42 Soil fertility, acidity, alkalinity
 - .43 Soil physics
 - Including soil micromorphology
 - .432 Moisture and hydromechanics
 - .433 Gas content and gas mechanics
 - .436 Thermal phenomena
 - .44 Soil classification
 - .45 Soil erosion and its control
 - .451 Mulch tillage
 - .452 Crop rotation and cover crops
 - .455 Contouring and terracing
 - .456 Strip cropping
 - [.459] Other measures
 - Number discontinued; class in 631.45
 - .46 Soil biology
 - Biological properties, phenomena, content
 - For biochemistry, see 631.417*
 - .47 Soil and land use surveys
 - Soil types, agricultural utilization of land in specific areas
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 631.47

- .49 Historical and geographical treatment
- .490 1-.490 4 Historical periods
 - Add to 631.490 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., soil conservation in 18th century 631.49033
- .491-.499 Geographical treatment
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 631.49
 - For soil and land use surveys, see 631.47*
- .5 **Cultivation and harvesting**

SUMMARY

- 631.51 Tillage (Soil preparation)
- .52 Propagational organisms
- .53 Plant propagation (Breeding)
- .54 Improvement of growth and development
- .55 Harvesting
- .56 Other harvesting and subsequent operations
- .57 Varieties of crops
- .58 Special cultivation methods
- 51 Tillage (Soil preparation)
- 52 Propagational organisms
- 521 Seeds
- 523 Hybrids and new varieties
- 526 Bulbs and tubers
- 53 Plant propagation (Breeding)
 - Class here planting
 - For propagational organisms, see 631.52, improvement of growth and development, 631.54*
- 531 With seeds
- 532 With bulbs, tubers, plant divisions
- 533 With suckers, runners, proliferous buds
- 534 By layering
- 535 With cuttings
- 536 By transplanting
- 537 With nursery stock
- 54 Improvement of growth and development
- 541 Grafting
- 542 Pruning
- 544 Forcing

-
- .545 Retarding
 - .546 Training on poles, trellises, walls
 - .55 Harvesting
 - Mowing, reaping, stacking
 - For other harvesting operations, see 631.56*
 - .558 Yields
 - .56 Other harvesting and subsequent operations
 - Threshing, husking, shelling, cleaning, winnowing, grading, storing, packing
 - .57 Varieties of crops
 - .58 Special cultivation methods
 - .581 Fallowing
 - .582 Crop rotation
 - .585 Soilless culture (Hydroponics)
 - .586 Dry farming
 - .587 Irrigation farming
 - .587 2 By furrow system
 - .587 3 By border system
 - .587 4 By ridge system
 - .587 5 By contour flood system

631.6–631.8 Soil improvement

Class comprehensive works in 631.4

- .6 Soil reclamation and drainage
 - For irrigation, see 631.7*
- .61 Clearing
 - Removal of natural cover to make land suitable for agricultural use
- .62 Drainage and ditching
- .7 Irrigation and water conservation

.8 Fertilizers and soil conditioners**SUMMARY**

- 631.81 Fertilizers**
 - .82 Soil conditioners**
 - .83 Potassium fertilizers**
 - .84 Nitrogen fertilizers**
 - .85 Phosphorus fertilizers**
 - .86 Animal manures**
 - .87 Vegetable manures and other organic fertilizers**

.81 Fertilizers

For specific kinds of fertilizers, see 631.83–631.87

.810 72 Fertilizer research [formerly 631.88]**[.810 9] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use, class in 631.819

.811 Nutritive principles**.813 Complete fertilizers**

Composition, proportions of nutrient elements

.816 Methods of application**.819 Historical and geographical treatment****.819 01–.819 04 Historical periods**

Add to 631.8190 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century fertilizers 631.819033

.819 1–.819 9 Geographical treatment

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 631.819

.82 Soil conditioners**.821 For control of acidity**

Examples: lime, dolomite, gypsum, plaster of paris, marl

.825 For control of alkalinity

Examples: ferrous sulfate, sulfur

.826 For texture

Use of sphagnum, peat, polyelectrolytes and other synthetic soil conditioners

631.83–631.87 Specific kinds of fertilizers

Class comprehensive works in 631.81

.83 Potassium fertilizers

Potassium chloride and sulfate

- .84 Nitrogen fertilizers
- .841 Ammonium, urea, cyanamide fertilizers
 - Including ammonium chloride and sulfate, calurea, calcium cyanamide
 - For ammonium nitrate, see 631.842*
- .842 Nitrate fertilizers
 - Examples: sodium, calcium, ammonium nitrates
- .843 Abattoir residues
 - For bone meal, see 631.85*
- .847 Other methods of soil nitrification
 - Soil inoculation with nitrifying bacteria, use of nitrifying crops
- .85 Phosphorus fertilizers
 - Examples: superphosphates, metaphosphates, bone meal, basic slag
- .86 Animal manures
 - Class here comprehensive works on organic fertilizers
 - For abattoir residues, see 631.843; vegetable manures and other organic fertilizers, 631.87*
- .861 Fannyard manures
- .866 Guano
- .869 Sewage sludge
- .87 Vegetable manures and other organic fertilizers
- .874 Green manures
- .875 Compost
- .877 Converted household garbage
- [.88] Fertilizer research
 - Class in 631.81072

632 Plant injuries, diseases, pests

Control methods [*formerly also* 581.28], causes, characteristics, effects on crops

Class injuries, diseases, pests of specific crops and groups of crops in 633–635 . . .

SUMMARY

- 632.1 Environmental injuries
- .2 Galls and pathological development
- .3 Bacterial diseases
- .4 Fungus diseases
- .5 Harmful plants
- .6 Animal pests
- .7 Insect pests
- .8 Viral and rickettsial diseases
- .9 Pest control

.1 Environmental injuries

- .11 From low temperatures
- .12 From high temperatures and drought
- .14 From hail
- .15 From lightning
- .16 From wind and rain
- .17 From floods
- .18 From fires
- .19 From air pollution and radiation

.2 Galls and pathological development

632.3–632.4 Diseases

Class comprehensive works in 632

For viral and rickettsial diseases, see 632.8

.3 Bacterial diseases

.4 Fungus diseases

Rusts, smuts, bunts, mildews, molds, rots

Add to 632.4 the numbers following 589.2 in 589.22–589.25, e.g., smuts 632.427 .

632.5–632.7 Pests

Class comprehensive works in 632.6

For pest control, see 632.9

.5 Harmful plants

.52 Parasites

.58 Weeds

.6 Animal pests

Class here comprehensive works on pests

Add to 632.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., snails 632.643

For harmful plants, see 632.5; insect pests, 632.7

.7 Insect pests

Add to 632.7 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.71–595.79, e.g., locusts 632.726

.8 Viral and rickettsial diseases

.9 Pest control

Class control of specific pests in 632.5–632.7

.93 Plant quarantine

.94 Control methods and apparatus

Examples: spraying, dusting, fumigating

For plant quarantine, see 632.93; control materials, 632.95; biological control, 632.96

.95 Control materials (Pesticides)

.950 4 General special

.950 42 Undesired effects

Properties and tests

.951 Insecticides, rodenticides, vermicides

.952 Fungicides and algicides

.953 Bactericides

.954 Herbicides (Weed killers)

.96 Biological control

Introduction of natural enemies of pests, e.g., praying mantis

633-635 Production of specific crops

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 1-8 Cultivation and harvesting
 - Add the numbers following 631.5 in 631.51-631.58, e.g., harvesting 5
- 9 Injuries, diseases, pests
 - Add to 9 the numbers following 632 in 632.1-632.9, e.g., injuries from low temperatures 911

Class comprehensive works in 631

633 Field crops

Large-scale production of crops, other than fruit, intended for agricultural purposes and industrial processing

Use 633.001-633.009 for standard subdivisions

Class garden crops in 635

.08 *General works

SUMMARY

- 633.1 Cereal grains (Cereals)
 - .2 Forage crops
 - .3 Legumes and other forage crops
 - .4 Root and tuber crops
 - .5 Fiber crops
 - .6 Sugar and starch plants
 - .7 Alkaloidal crops
 - .8 Other plants grown for industrial processing
- .1 Cereal grains (Cereals)
 - .104 *General special
 - .11 *Wheat (Triticum)
 - .12 *Buckwheat (Fagopyrum)
 - .13 *Oats (Avena)
 - .14 *Rye (Secale cereale)
 - .15 *Corn (Zea mays)
 - .16 *Barley (Hordeum)
 - .17 Millet and related crops
 - .171 *Millets (Panicum)
 - Panic grass, broomcorn millet, proso (Panicum miliaceum)
 - .174 *Grain sorghums (Andropogon)
 - Broomcorn, shallu, kafir corn, durra (Jerusalem corn)

* Add as instructed under 633-635

.18 ***Rice (Oryza sativa)**

.2 **Forage crops**

Use 633.2001–633.2009 for standard subdivisions

For legumes and other forage crops, see 633.3

.208 ***General works**

633.21–633.25 Pasture grasses

Class comprehensive works in 633.2

.21 ***Bluegrasses (Poa)**

.22 ***Orchard grass (Dactylis glomerata)**

.23 ***Redtop and other bent grasses (Agrostis)**

.24 ***Timothy (Phleum)**

.25 **Cereal grasses**

Add to 633.25 the numbers following 633.1 in 633.11–633.18, e.g.,
rye grasses 633.254

.3 **Legumes and other forage crops**

633.31–633.37 Pasture legumes

Class comprehensive works in 633.3

.31 ***Alfalfas (Medicago sativa)**

.32 ***True clovers (Trifolium)**

Red, white, crimson, alsike clovers

.33 ***Cowpeas (Vigna sinensis)**

.34 ***Soybeans (Soja max)**

.35 ***Vetches (Vicia sativa)**

.36 **Lespedeza and related legumes**

.364 ***Bush clovers (Lespedeza)**

.366 ***Sweet clovers (Melilotus)**

.367 ***Lupines (Lupinus)**

.368 ***Peanuts (Ground nuts, Arachis hypogaea)**

.369 ***Field peas (Pisum arvense)**

.37 **Other legumes**

.374 ***Trefoils (Lotus)**

.39 **Other forage crops**

* Add as instructed under 633–635

.4 Root and tuber crops**.41 Beets (Beta vulgaris)****.42 Turnips (Brassica rapa)****.43 *Carrots (Daucus carota)****.44 *Parsnips (Pastinaca sativa)****.49 Tubers****.491 *Potatoes (Solanum tuberosum)****.492 *Sweet potatoes (Ipomoea batatas)****.494 *Jerusalem artichokes (Helianthus tuberosus)****.5 Fiber crops****633.51–633.56 Soft fibers****Class comprehensive works in 633.5****.51 *Cotton (Gossypium)****.52 *Flax (Linum)****.53 *Hemp (Cannabis sativa)****.54 *Jute (Corchorus)****.55 *Ramie (Boehmeria)****.56 Other soft fibers**

Examples: China jute (Abutilon), Ambari hemp (Hibiscus cannabinus), Indian hemp (Apocynum)

.57 Hard fibers*For other hard fibers, see 633.58***.571 *Manila hemp (Musa textilis)****.576 *Pineapple fibers (Ananas sativus)****.577 Agave fibers (Agave sisalina)****.58 Other hard fibers**

Examples: coconut (coir), raffia, esparto, rush, reed, bamboo, willow (osier) fibers

Including basketwork and wickerwork plants

.59 Other fibers

' Add as instructed under 633–635

.6 Sugar and starch plants**633.61–633.64 Sugar plants**

Class comprehensive works in 633.6

.61 *Sugar cane (*Saccharum officinarum*)**.62 *Sweet sorghums (*Andropogon sorghum*)****.63 *Sugar beets (*Beta vulgaris*)****.64 *Sugar maples (*Acer saccharum*)****.68 Starch plants**

Arrowroot, sago palm, cassava

.7 Alkaloidal crops**.71 *Tobacco (*Nicotiana tabacum*)****.72 *Tea (*Thea sinensis*)****.73 *Coffee (*Coffea*)****.74 *Cacao, cocoa, chocolate (*Theobroma cacao*)****.75 *Poppies (*Papaver somniferum*)****.76 *Cola (*Cola acuminata*)****.77 *Maté (*Ilex paraguayensis*)****.78 *Chicory (*Cichorium intybus*)****.8 Other plants grown for industrial processing****.81 For perfumes****.82 For flavorings**

Including vanilla, mint, wintergreen, sassafras, hops

*For spices, see 633.83***.83 Spices**

Including ginger, allspice, clove, cinnamon, nutmeg, other sweet spices

*For hot spices, see 633.84***.84 Hot spices (Condiments)**

Examples: black pepper, paprika, chili, mustard, horseradish

.85 For nonvolatile oils**.86 For dyes****.87 For tannin**

Add as instructed under 633–635

- .88 For medicines
 - Add to 633.88 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g.,
digitalis 633.88381
 - For poppies, see 633.75*
- .89 For other purposes
- .895 For rubber and other resins
- .895.2 *Rubber trees
- .895.9 Other resin-producing plants
- .898 For insecticides

634 Orchards, fruits, forestry

For pepos, see 635.61–635.63; tomatoes, 635.642

- .04 *General special treatment of orchards and of fruits

SUMMARY

- 634.1 Pomaceous fruits
- .2 Drupaceous fruits
- .3 Citrus and moraceous fruits
- .4 Minor fruits
- .5 Nut fruits
- .6 Tropical and subtropical tree fruits
- .7 Berries and herbaceous fruits
- .8 Grapes
- .9 Forestry

634.1–634.6 Orchards and their fruits

Class comprehensive works in 634

- .1 Pomaceous fruits
- .11 *Apples (*Malus*)
- .13 *Pears (*Pyrus*)
- .14 *Quince (*Cydonia*)
- .15 *Medlar (*Eriobotrya*)
- .16 *Loquats (*Eriobotrya*)
- .2 Drupaceous fruits
- .21 *Apricots (*Prunus armeniaca*)
- .22 *Plums (*Prunus domestica*)
- .23 *Cherries (*Prunus cerasus*)

* Add as instructed under 633–635

.25 *Peaches (*Amygdalus persica*)

 Including nectarines

.3 **Citrus and moraceous fruits**

 634.31–634.34 Citrus fruits

 Class comprehensive works in 634.3

.31 *Oranges

.32 Grapefruit

.33 Citron group

.331 *Citrons (*Citrus medica*)

.334 *Lemons (*Citrus limonia*)

.337 *Limes (*Citrus aurantifolia*)

.34 *Kumquats (*Fortunella*)

► 634.37–634.39 Moraceous fruits

 Class comprehensive works in 634.3

.37 *Figs (*Ficus carica*)

.38 *Mulberries (*Morus*)

.39 *Breadfruit (*Artocarpus altilis*)

.4 **Minor fruits**

.41 Anonaceous fruits

 Cherinoya, northern papaws, custard apples

.42 Myrtaceous and passifloraceous fruits

.421 *Guavas (*Psidium*)

.425 *Passion fruit

.43 Sapotaceous fruits

 Star apples, sapodilla plums

.44 Anacardiaceous fruits

 Including mangoes, Spanish plums

For cashew nuts, see 634.573

.45 Ebenaceous fruits (*Persinimons*)

.46 Leguminous fruits

 Including tamarinds, carob beans (*Saint-John's-bread*)

For peanuts, see 635.6596

* Add as instructed under 633–635

.5 Nut fruits**.51 Walnuts (*Juglans*)****.52 Hickory nuts (*Hicoria*)**

Pecans, shagbarks

.53 Chestnuts (*Castanea*)**.54 *Filberts (*Corylus*)****.55 Almonds (*Prunus amygdalus*)****.57 Other nuts****.573 *Cashew nuts (*Anacardium occidentale*)****.574 *Pistachios (*Pistacia vera*)****.575 *Brazil nuts (*Bertholletia excelsa*)****.6 Tropical and subtropical tree fruits**

634.61–634.62 **Palmaceous fruits**

Class comprehensive works in 634.6

.61 *Coconuts (*Cocos nucifera*)**.62 *Dates (*Phoenix dactylifera*)****.63 *Olives (*Olea europaea*)****.64 *Pomegranates (*Punica granatum*)****.65 Other fruits****.651 *Papayas (*Carica papaya*)****.653 *Avocados (*Persea gratissima*)****.655 *Mangosteens (*Mangifera indica*)****634.7–634.8 Small fruit**

Class comprehensive works in 634.7

.7 Berries and herbaceous fruits

Class here comprehensive works on small fruit

*For grapes, see 634.8***.71 Cane fruits (*Rubus*)****.711 Raspberries****.713 *Blackberries****.714 *Loganberries****.717 Dewberries**¹ Add as instructed under 633–635

- .718 ***Boysenberries**
- .72 **Ribes**
- .721 ***Currants (Ribes rubrum)**
- .725 ***Gooseberries (Saxifragaceae)**
- .73 **Huckleberries and blueberries**
- .732 ***Huckleberries (Gaylussacia)**
- .737 ***Blueberries (Vaccinium)**
- .74 **Other bush fruits**
 - Juncherries, buffalo berries, barberries, elderberries
- .75 **Strawberries (Fragaria)**
- .76 ***Cranberries (Oxycoccus)**
- .77 **Herbaceous fruits**
- .772 ***Bananas (Musa sapientum)**
- .773 ***Plantains (Musa paradisiaca)**
- .774 ***Pineapples (Ananas sativus)**
- .775 **Cactaceous fruits**
- .8 **Grapes**
- .81 **Tillage (Soil preparation)**
- .82 **Injuries, diseases, pests**
 - Add to 634.82 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., injuries from drought 634.8212
- .83 **Varieties**
- .88 **Cultivation and harvesting**
 - Add to 634.88 the numbers following 631.5 in 631.52–631.58, e.g., harvesting grapes 634.885
 - For tillage, see 634.81, varieties, 634.83*
- .9 **Forestry**
 - Formation, maintenance, cultivation, exploitation of forests

SUMMARY

- 634.92 **Forest economy**
- .93 **Accessibility and safety features**
- .95 **Silviculture**
- .96 **Injuries, diseases, pests**
- .97 **Specific kinds of trees**
- .98 **Forest exploitation, utilization, products**
- .99 **Other aspects**

* Add as instructed under 633–635

634.92–634.96 General principles

Class comprehensive works in 634.9, general principles applied to specific kinds of trees in 634.97

For exploitation and utilization, see 634.98

- .92 Forest economy
- .928 Management
- .928 3 Regulation
 - Working plans for advance determination of cutting and planting cycles, yields per cycle, maximum increment
- .928 5 Mensuration
 - Determination of volume of timber stands, growth and yield
- .93 Accessibility and safety features
 - Maintenance of roads, bridges, trails, lookout towers, power lines
- .95 Silviculture
- .952 Harvesting methods (Cutting methods)
- .953 Maintenance cuttings
 - Improvement cuttings, thinnings, prunings
- .954 Marking methods
- .955 Brush disposal methods
- .956 Forestation
 - Reforestation and afforestation
 - Class here breeding
- .956 2 Seeds, seed collecting, seeding
- .956 4 Nursery practice
- .956 5 Cultivation at permanent site
- .96 Injuries, diseases, pests
 - Add to 634.96 the numbers following 632 in 632.1–632.9, e.g., forest fires 634.9618

- .97 **Specific kinds of trees**
 Add to each subdivision identified by † as follows:
 2-6 General principles
 Add the numbers following 634.9 in 634.92-634.96, e.g.,
 diseases 6
 7 Varieties
 8 Exploitation, utilization, products
 Add to 8 the numbers following 634.98 in 634.982-634.987,
 e.g., logs 83

~~.972~~ **Dicotyledons important as lumber**

Class here comprehensive works on dicotyledonous trees,
 on deciduous trees

For other dicotyledons, see 634.973

- .972 1 †Oak
 .972 2 †Maple
 .972 3 †Poplar
 .972 4 †Chestnut
 .972 5 †Beech
 .972 6 †Birch
 .972 7 Linden and basswood
 .972 8 †Elm

.973 **Other dicotyledons**

Add to 634.973 the numbers following 583 in 583.1-583.9, e.g.
 locust trees 634.97332

.974 **Monocotyledons**

Add to 634.974 the numbers following 584 in 584.1-584.9, e.g.
palm trees 634.9745

.975 **Gymnosperms**

634.975 1- 634.975 8 Coniferous trees

Class comprehensive works in 634.975

- .975 1 †Pine
 .975 2 †Spruce
 .975 3 †Hemlock
 .975 4 †Fir
 .975 5 †Cypress
 .975 6 †Cedar
 .975 7 †Larch
 .975 8 †Sequoia

† Add as instructed under 634.97

.975 9

Other gymnosperms

Add to 634.9759 the numbers following 585 in 585.1–585.9, e.g.,
ginkgo trees 634.97597

.98

Forest exploitation, utilization, products

Class exploitation and utilization of specific kinds of trees in 634.97

.982

Logging

Felling, transporting, sorting, grading operations

Class here comprehensive works on lumbering

For sawmill operations, see 674.2

634.983–634.987 Primary products

Class comprehensive works in 634.98

.983

Logs and pulpwood

.985

Barks

.986

Saps

.987

Fruits, seeds, nuts

[.989]

Other products

Number discontinued, class in 634.98

.99

Other aspects

Including grazing and pasture use

.999

Farm forestry

635

Garden crops (Horticulture)**Vegetables**

Market (truck) and home gardening

.04

*General special

SUMMARY

635.1 Edible roots

.2 Edible tubers and bulbs

.3 Asparagus, artichokes, cabbages

.4 Cooking greens and related vegetables

.5 Salad greens

.6 Edible fruits and seeds

.7 Aromatic and sweet herbs

.8 Mushrooms and truffles

.9 Flowers and ornamental plants

• Add as instructed under 633–635

635.1–635.8 Edible crops

Class comprehensive works in 635

.1 Edible roots

- .11 *Beets (*Beta vulgaris*)
- .12 Turnips and related crops
- .125 *Turnips (*Brassica rapa*)
- .126 *Rutabagas (*Brassica napobrassica*)
- .128 *Celeriac (*Apium graveolens rapaceum*)
- .13 Carrots (*Daucus carota*)
- .14 *Parsnips (*Pastinaca sativa*)
- .15 *Radishes (*Raphanus sativus*)
- .16 Salsify (*Tragopogon porrifolius*)

.2 Edible tubers and bulbs

- .21 *Potatoes (*Solanum tuberosum*)
- .22 *Sweet potatoes (*Ipomoea batatas*)
- .23 *Yams (*Dioscorea*)
- .24 *Jerusalem artichokes (*Helianthus tuberosus*)
- .25 *Onions (*Allium cepa*)
- .26 Alliaceous plants
 - Including leeks, shallots, chives, garlic
 - For onions, see 635.25*

**635.3–635.5 Edible leaves, flowers, stems**

Class comprehensive works in 635

.3 Asparagus, artichokes, cabbages

- .31 *Asparagus (*Asparagus officinales*)
- .32 Artichokes (*Cynara scolymus*)
- .34 Cabbages (*Brassica oleracea*)
 - Head cabbage, kale, collards, kohlrabi
- .35 Cauliflower and broccoli (*Brassica oleracea*)
- .36 *Brussels sprouts (*Brassica oleracea gemmifera*)

' Add as instructed under 633–635

.4 Cooking greens and related vegetables*For cabbages, see 635.34; dandelions, 635.51***.41 *Spinach (Spinacia oleracea)****.42 *Chard (Beta vulgaris cicla)****.48 *Rhubarb (Rheum rhaponticum)****.5 Salad greens****.51 *Dandelions (Taraxaceum officinale)****.52 *Lettuce (Lactuca sativa)****.53 *Celery (Apium graveolens)****.54 *Chicory (Cichorium intybus)****.55 *Endive (Cichorium endiva)****.56 Sorrel and cresses****.6 Edible fruits and seeds**

635.61–635.63 Pepos

Class comprehensive works in 635.6

.61 Melons**.611 *Muskmelons (Cucumis melo)***Honeydew and casaba melons, cantaloupes***.615 *Watermelons (Citrullus vulgaris)****.62 Squashes and pumpkins (Cucurbita)****.63 *Cucumbers (Cucumis sativus)****.64 Other fruits****.642 *Tomatoes (Lycopersicon esculentum)****.643 *Green peppers (Capsicum grossum)****.646 *Eggplants (Solanum melongena)****.648 *Okra (Hibiscus esculentus)****.65 Legumes****.651 *Broad beans (Vicia faba)****.652 *Garden beans (Phaseolus vulgaris)***Kidney, navy, pea, wax, snap, string beans***.653 *Lima beans (Phaseolus limensis)****.655 *Soybeans (Soja max)**

* Add as instructed under 633–635

- .656 ***Garden peas (Pisum sativum)**
- .657 ***Chick-peas (Cicer arietinum)**
- .658 ***Lentils (Lens culinaris)**
- .659 **Other legumes**
- .659 2 ***Black-eyed peas (Vigna sinensis)**
- .659 6 ***Peanuts (Ground nuts, Arachis hypogaea)**
- .67 **Corn**
- .672 ***Sweet corn (Zea mays saccharata)**
- .677 ***Popcorn (Zea mays everta)**
- .7 **Aromatic and sweet herbs**
 Class here herb gardens
- .8 **Mushrooms and truffles**
- .9 **Flowers and ornamental plants**
 Class here floriculture
- [.902 8] **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Do not use, class in 635.91

SUMMARY

- 635.91 **General operations, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- .92 **Injuries, diseases, pests**
- .93 **General and taxonomic groupings**
- .94 **Groupings by means of propagation**
- .95 **Groupings by environmental factors**
- .96 **Groupings by purpose**
- .97 **Other groupings**
- .98 **Special methods of cultivation**



635.91-635.92 General principles

Class comprehensive works in 635.9, general principles applied to general and taxonomic groupings in 635.93, to special groupings in 635.94-635.97

For special methods of cultivation, see 635.98

- .91 **General operations, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Add to 635.91 the numbers following 631 in 631.2-631.8, e.g.,
 fertilizers 635.9181
- .92 **Injuries, diseases, pests**
 Add to 635.92 the numbers following 632 in 632.1-632.9, e.g.,
 fungus diseases 635.924

* Add as instructed under 633-635

.93 General and taxonomic groupings

635.931–635.932 By life duration

Class comprehensive works in 635.93; specific families, genera, species regardless of life duration in 635.933–635.939

.931 Annuals and biennials

.932 Perennials

.933–.939 By families, genera, species

Add to 635.93 the numbers following 58 in 583–589, e.g.,
cactus 635.93347

For families, genera, species of trees, see 635.9773–635.9775

635.94–635.97 Special groupings

Class comprehensive works in 635.9; specific families, genera, species, other than trees, in 635.933–635.939

.94 Groupings by means of propagation

.942 From seeds

.944 From bulbs and tubers

.946 From runners and by layering

.948 From cuttings and slips

.95 Groupings by environmental factors

.952 Climatic factors

Examples: tropical, Temperate-Zone, arctic, alpine plants

.953 Seasonal and diurnal factors

Spring-, summer-, fall-, winter-flowering plants; morning-
and night-blooming plants

.954 Light factors

Plants favoring sunshine, shade, artificial light, darkness

.955 Soil factors

Plants favoring moist, dry, rich, sandy soils

Including succulent plants

.96 Groupings by purpose

.962 For flower beds

.963 For borders and edgings

.964 For ground cover

Examples: grass, turf, lawns

- .965 For houseplants
 - Including window-box gardening
- .966 For cutting
- .967 For special kinds of gardens
 - Class window-box gardening in 635.965
- .967 1 Roof, balcony, patio gardening
- .967 2 Rock gardens
- .967 4 Water gardens
 - Aquatic plants in pools, aquariums, natural bodies of water
- .967 6 Wild flower gardens
- .968 For fragrance and color
- .969 For nurseries
- .97 Other groupings,
 - .973 Everlastings
 - .974 Vines
 - .975 Foliage plants
 - .976 Shrubs and hedges
 - .977 Trees
 - .977 3-.977 5 Families, genera, species
 - Add to 635.977 the numbers following 58 in 583-585, e.g., elm 635.9773962
- .98 Special methods of cultivation
- .982 Greenhouse gardening
- .985 Bell-jar gardening

636 Animal husbandry

Production, maintenance, training of livestock and other domestic animals

Use 636.001-636.009 for standard subdivisions

Class culture of nondomesticated animals in 639

636.01-636.08 General principles

Class comprehensive works in 636

- .01 Ranches and farms
- .07 Young of animals
 - Class production, maintenance, training of young of animals in 636.08

.08 Production, maintenance, training

SUMMARY

636.081 Selection and acquisition

.082 Breeding

.083 Care, maintenance, treatment, training

.084 Feeding

.085 Feeds and applied nutrition

.086 Field crop feeds

.087 Other feeds

.088 Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes

.089 Veterinary sciences Veterinary medicine

.081 Selection and acquisition

.081 1 Judging

.081 2 Ownership marks

.082 Breeding

.082 1 Genetic factors

Species, races, breeds, strains in terms of heredity and variation

.082 2 Breeding records

Herdbooks, studbooks, flock books, pedigrees

.082 4 Breeding and reproduction methods

636.082 41--636.082 43 Breeding methods

Class comprehensive works in 636.0824

.082 41 Inbreeding and line breeding

.082 42 Outbreeding

For crossbreeding, see 636.08243

.082 43 Crossbreeding

.082 45 Artificial insemination

.083 Care, maintenance, treatment, training

*For maintenance and training for specific purposes, see 636.088;
veterinary sciences, 636.089*

.083 1 Housing

.083 3 Individual tending

Grooming, washing, dipping, shearing

.083 7 Harnesses and accessories

.084 Feeding

Methods, equipment, facilities

For feeds and applied nutrition, see 636.085

.085 Feeds and applied nutrition

.085 2 Applied nutrition

.085 5 Feeds

For specific feeds, see 636.086–636.087

.085 51 Green fodder

.085 52 Silage

.085 54 Dry fodder

.085 57 Formula feed

636.086–636.087 Specific feeds

Class comprehensive works in 636.0855

.086 Field crop feeds

.087 Other feeds

.087 4 Fruits

.087 5 Garden crops

.087 6 Meat, fish, eggs

.087 7 Mineral additives

.088 Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes

.088 1 For breeding

.088 2 For draft use (Beasts of burden)

.088 3 For consumption (Food animals)

.088 4 For special products

Examples: eggs, milk, hide, wool, feathers, fur

.088 5 For experiment

.088 6 For work

Including guarding, herding, hunting

For draft use, see 636.0882

.088 7 As pets

.088 8 For sports, stunts, exhibition

Examples: racing, circus, motion pictures, stage, fighting, shows

.088 9 For other purposes

.088 92 Multiple purposes

.088 99 Zoos

.089 Veterinary sciences Veterinary medicine

Add to 636.089 the numbers following 61 in 610–619, e.g.,
veterinary diseases 636.0896

SUMMARY

- 636.1 Equines Horses
- .2 Ruminants Bovines Cattle
- .3 Smaller ruminants Sheep
- .4 Swine
- .5 Poultry Chickens
- .6 Birds other than poultry
- .7 Dogs
- .8 Cats
- .9 Other warm-blooded animals

.1 Equines Horses

Use 636.1001–636.1009 for standard subdivisions

.101–.108 General principles

Add to 636.10 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g.,
training horses for exhibition 636.10888

Class general principles of specific breeds of horses in 636.11–636.17,
general principles of equines other than horses in 636.18

636.11–636.17 Specific breeds of horses

Class comprehensive works in 636.1

.11 Oriental horses

Arabian, Persian, Tartar, Turkish, Barb

.12 Racehorses and trotters

Class a specific breed with the subject, e.g., Thoroughbreds 636.13

.13 Saddle (Riding) horses

Examples: Thoroughbreds, American saddle horses, American quarter
horses, Tennessee Walking Horses, Palominos

For Oriental horses, see 636.11

.14 Carriage horses (Heavy harness horses)

Examples: Hackneys, Cleveland bay horses, Yorkshire coach horses

Class here comprehensive works on harness horses

For draft horses, see 636.15, light harness horses, 636.17

.15 Draft horses

Examples: Clydesdale, Percheron, Belgian, Shire, Suffolk
(Suffolk punch) horses

.16 Ponies

Examples: Shetland, Welsh, Hackney ponies

.17 Light harness horses

Examples: Morgan, Standardbred horses

- .18 Other equines
 Asses, mules, zebras
- .2 **Ruminants Bovines Cattle**
 Use 636.2001—636.2009 for standard subdivisions
 For smaller ruminants, see 636.3
- .201–.208 General principles
 Add to 636.20 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g.,
 heifers 636.207
 Class production, maintenance, training of cattle for specific purposes
 in 636.21, general principles of specific breeds of cattle in 636.22–
 636.28, of larger ruminants and bovines other than cattle in 636.29
- .21 Production, maintenance, training of cattle for specific purposes
 Add to 636.21 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g.,
 beef cattle 636.213
 Class production, maintenance, training of specific breeds of cattle for
 specific purposes in 636.22–636.28
- 636.22–636.28 Specific breeds of cattle
 Beef, dairy, dual-purpose breeds by geographical origin
 Class comprehensive works in 636.2
- .22 British breeds of cattle
- .222 English beef breeds
 Shorthorn, Hereford, Sussex
- .223 Scottish, Welsh, Irish beef breeds
 Aberdeen Angus, Galloway, Kyle, Black Welsh
- .224 Channel Island dairy breeds
 Alderney, Jersey, Guernsey
- .225 Scottish and Irish dairy breeds
 Ayrshire, Kerry, Dexter Shorthorn
- .226 Dual-purpose breeds
 Devon, Polled Durham, English Longhorn
- .23 German, Dutch, Danish, Swiss breeds of cattle
- .232 Beef breeds
- .234 Dairy breeds
 Examples: Holstein-Friesian, East Friesian, Oldenburg
- .236 Dual-purpose breeds
- .24 French and Belgian breeds of cattle
- .242 Beef breeds

- .244 Dairy breeds
- .246 Dual-purpose breeds
- .27 Other European breeds of cattle
- .28 Non-European breeds of cattle
- .29 Other larger ruminants
- .291 Zebus
- .292 Bison
- .293 Other Bovoidae
 - Examples: antelopes, water buffaloes, eland, bongos, kudus, gazelles, musk-oxen
- .294 Cervoidae
 - Examples: deer, elk, moose, reindeer, caribous, giraffes, okapis
- .295 Camels
- .296 Llamas, alpacas, vicuñas
- .3 **Smaller ruminants Sheep**
 - Use 636.3001–636.3009 for standard subdivisions
- .301–.308 General principles
 - Add to 636.30 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., sheep ranches 636.301
 - Class production, maintenance, training of sheep for specific purposes in 636.31, general principles of specific breeds of sheep in 636.32–636.38, general principles of goats in 636.3901–636.3908
- .31 Production, maintenance, training of sheep for specific purposes
 - Add to 636.31 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising sheep for wool 636.314
 - Class production, maintenance, training of specific breeds of sheep for specific purposes in 636.32–636.38
- 636.32–636.38 Specific breeds of sheep
 - Class comprehensive works in 636.3
- .32 British breeds of sheep
- .33 German, Dutch, Swiss breeds of sheep
- .34 French and Belgian breeds of sheep
- .35 Italian breeds of sheep
- .36 Spanish breeds of sheep (Merino breeds)
- .366 Spanish Merino breeds
- .367 Other European Merino breeds

- .368 **Non-European Merino breeds**
 American and Australian Merino breeds
- .37 **Other European breeds of sheep**
- .38 **Non-European breeds of sheep**
- .381 **American**
- .385 **Asian**
- .386 **African**
- .39 **Goats**
 Use 636.39001–636.39009 for standard subdivisions
- .390 1–.390 8 **General principles**
 Add to 636.390 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., breeding 636.39082
 Class production, maintenance, training for specific purposes in 636.391, general principles of specific breeds of goats in 636.392–636.398
- .391 **Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes**
 Add to 636.391 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., raising goats for hair 636.3914
 Class production, maintenance, training of specific breeds of goats for specific purposes in 636.392–636.398
- .392–.398 **Specific breeds of goats**
 Add to 636.39 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.38, e.g., Italian breeds 636.395
- .4 **Swine**
 Use 636.4001–636.4009 for standard subdivisions
- .401–.408 **General principles**
 Add to 636.40 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., diseases 636.40896
 Class production, maintenance, training for specific purposes in 636.41, general principles of specific breeds of swine in 636.42–636.48
- .41 **Production, maintenance, training for specific purposes**
 Add to 636.41 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889, e.g., swine production for bristles 636.414
 Class production, maintenance, training of specific breeds of swine for specific purposes in 636.42–636.48

636.42–636.48 Specific breeds of swine

Class comprehensive works in 636.4

.42–.47 European breeds of swine

Add to 636.4 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37, e.g.,
British breeds 636.42

.48 Non-European breeds of swine

636.482–636.484 American

Class comprehensive works in 636.48

.482 Poland-China

.483 Duroc-Jersey

.484 Other

Chester White, Hampshire, Cheshire, Victoria, mulefoot, razorback

.485 Asian

.486 African

.489 Oceanic

.5 Poultry Chickens

Use 636.5001–636.5009 for standard subdivisions

.501–.508 General principles

Add to 636.50 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g.,
poultry breeding 636.5082

Class production, maintenance, training of chickens for specific purposes in 636.51, general principles of specific breeds of chickens in 636.52–636.58, general principles of poultry other than chickens in 636.59

.51 Production, maintenance, training of chickens for specific purposes

Add to 636.51 the numbers following 636.088 in 636.0881–636.0889,
e.g., raising chickens for meat 636.513

Class production, maintenance, training of specific breeds of chickens for specific purposes in 636.52–636.58

636.52–636.58 Specific breeds of chickens

Class comprehensive works in 636.5

52–.57 European breeds of chickens

Add to 636.5 the numbers following 636.3 in 636.32–636.37, e.g.,
British breeds 636.52

Class special varieties in 636.587

-
- .58 Non-European breeds and special varieties of chickens
 - 636.581–636.584 American breeds
 - Class comprehensive works in 636.58, special varieties in 636.587
 - .581 Dominique, Jersey Blue, Bucks County, Java, Winnebago
 - .582 Plymouth Rock
 - .583 Wyandotte
 - .584 Rhode Island Red
 - .585 Asian breeds
 - Class special varieties in 636.587
 - .587 Special varieties
 - .587 1 Bantams
 - .587 2 Cornish
 - .59 Other poultry
 - .592 Turkeys
 - Use 636.592001–636.592009 for standard subdivisions
 - .592 01–.592 08 General principles
 - Add to 636.5920 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g., raising turkeys for meat 636.5920883
 - .593 Guinea fowl
 - .594 Pheasants
 - .595 Peafowl
 - .596 Pigeons
 - .597 Ducks
 - .598 Geese
 - .6 Birds other than poultry
 - .61 Birds raised for feathers
 - .68 Song and ornamental birds
 - For peafowl, see 636.595*
 - .681 Swans
 - .686 Cage and aviary birds
 - .686 2 Finches
 - Example: canaries
 - .686 4 Budgerigars (Shell parakeets)

- .686 5 **Parrots**
 Including macaws, cockatoos, lories, cockateels
 For budgerigars, see 636.6864
- .686 9 **Other cage and aviary birds**
 Examples: mynahs, toucans, hawks
- .7 **Dogs**
- .700 1–.700 9 **Standard subdivisions**
 Class illustrations in 636.77
- .701–.708 **General principles**
 Add to 636.70 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01–636.08, e.g.,
 kennels 636.701
 Class general principles of specific breeds of dogs in 636.72–636.76
- .71 **Breeds**
 For specific breeds, see 636.72–636.76
- 636.72–636.76 Specific breeds
- Class comprehensive works in 636.71, the miniature of any breed in 636.76
- .72 **Nonsporting dogs**
 Including Boston terriers, English and French bulldogs, chow chows,
 Dalmatians, Keeshonden, poodles, schipperkes
 For working dogs, see 636.73
- .73 **Working dogs**
 Alaskan malamutes, boxers, collies, Doberman pinschers, Eskimo dogs,
 German shepherds, Great Danes, Great Pyrenees, mastiffs, Newfound-
 lands, Samoyeds, schnauzers, sheepdogs, Siberian huskies, Saint Bernards,
 Welsh corgis
- .75 **Sporting dogs**
- .752 **Gun dogs**
 Pointers, retrievers, setters, spaniels, Weimaraners
- .753 **Hounds**
 Basenjis, beagles, borzois, dachshunds, harriers, salukis, whippets,
 named hounds
- .755 **Terriers**
 For Boston terriers, see 636.72
- .76 **Toy and miniature dogs**
 Affenpinschers, Australian terriers, Chihuahuas, English toy spaniels,
 Italian greyhounds, Maltese, Mexican hairless, papillons, Pekingese,
 Pomeranians, toy poodles, pugs, toy Manchester and Yorkshire terriers
- .77 **Illustrations**

.8 Cats**.800 1-.800 9 Standard subdivisions**

Class illustrations in 636.87

.801-.808 General principlesAdd to 636.80 the numbers following 636.0 in 636.01-636.08, e.g.,
breeding cats 636.8082Class general principles of specific breeds and kinds of cats in
636.82-636.83, 636.89

636.82-636.83 Domestic cats

Class comprehensive works in 636.8

.82 Short-haired domestic cats**.822 Common short-haired cats****.823 Manx cats****.825 Asian short-haired cats**

Siamese, Burmese, related breeds

.826 Other short-haired cats

Abyssinian, Russian blue cats

.83 Long-haired domestic cats

Angora, coon, chinchilla, Persian, Himalayan cats

.87 Illustrations**.89 Nondomestic cats**Ocelots, margays, cheetahs, lions, tigers, leopards, jaguars,
cougars, lynxes**.9 Other warm-blooded animals****.91 Monotremes and marsupials**

Platypuses, opossums, kangaroos, wallabies, koalas, wombats

.93-.98 Other mammalsAdd to 636.9 the numbers following 599 in 599.3-599.8, e.g.,
elephants 636.961**637 Dairy and related technologies****SUMMARY**

- 637.1 Milk production**
- .2 Butter production**
- .3 Cheese production**
- .4 Manufacture of frozen desserts**
- .5 Egg production**

.1 Milk production**637.12–637.14 Cows' milk**

Class comprehensive works in 637.1

.12 Milking and inspection of cows' milk**.124 Milking***For milking machinery and equipment, see 637.125***.125 Milking machinery and equipment****.127 Quality and purity determinations****.127 6 Butterfat tests****.127 7 Bacteriological counts****.13 Processing of cows' milk**

Class processing of specific varieties of cows' milk in 637.14

.131 Processing plants**.132 Processing machinery and equipment**

Class machinery for specific processes in 637.133

.133 Specific processes

Including cooling, filtration, vitamin-D treatment

.133 3 Pasteurization**.133 4 Homogenization****.133 5 Evaporation and sterilization****.133 6 Spray and vacuum drum processes****.135 Packaging, storage, transport****.14 Varieties of cows' milk****637.141–637.146 Whole milk**

Class comprehensive works in 637.14

.141 Fresh whole milk (Market milk)

Raw, certified, pasteurized, homogenized, vitamin-D treated

.142 Concentrated liquid forms of whole milk**.142 2 Evaporated milk****.142 3 Plain condens milk****.142 4 Sweetened condens milk****.143 Dried whole milk****.146 Cultured whole milk**

- .147 Skim milk
 - Add to 637.147 the numbers following 637.14 in 637.141–637.146, e.g., dried skim milk 637.1473
 - .148 Cream
 - .17 Milk other than cows' milk
 - .2 **Butter production**
 - .22 Quality determinations
 - .23 Processing
 - .24 By-products
 - .3 **Cheese production**
 - .32 Quality determinations
 - .33 Processing
 - Class processing of specific varieties of cheese in 637.35
 - .34 By-products
 - .35 Varieties
-
- ▶ 637.352–637.354 Rennet cheeses
 - Class comprehensive works in 637.35
 - .352 Unripened soft cheese (Cream cheese)
 - .353 Ripened soft cheeses
 - Examples: Limburger, Brie, Camembert, Neufchâtel, Gorgonzola
 - .354 Hard cheeses
 - Examples: cheddar, Stilton, Swiss, Edam, Gruyère, Parmesan
 - .356 Sour-milk cheeses
 - Cottage, Dutch, pot cheeses
 - .358 Cheese foods
 - .4 **Manufacture of frozen desserts**
 - Examples: ice cream, ice milk, frozen custards, sherbets, ices
 - .5 **Egg production**
 - .54 Chicken eggs
 - .541 Fresh eggs
 - .543 Dried whole eggs
 - .547 Dried egg whites
 - .548 Dried egg yolks

.59 **Other kinds of eggs**

Add to 637.59 the numbers following 636.59 in 636.592–636.598,
e.g., duck eggs 637.597

638 Insect culture

.1 **Honeybees (Apiculture)**

.11 Apiary establishment

.12 Races and varieties of bees

.13 Pasturage for bees

Nectar and pollen plants

.14 Hive management

.140 28 Techniques

Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 638.142

.142 Equipment and supplies

Hives, hive sections, smokers, protective equipment

.144 Supplementary feeding of bees

.145 Queen rearing

.146 Swarming control

.15 Injuries, diseases, pests

638.16–638.17 **Hive products**

Quality determination, processing, varieties

Class comprehensive works in 638.16

.16 **Honey**

Class here comprehensive works on hive products

For wax, see 638.17

.17 **Wax**

.2 **Silkworms**

.3 **Resin- and dye-producing insects**

.5 **Other insects**

.57 **Specific insects**

Add to 638.57 the numbers following 595.7 in 595.71–595.79, e.g.,
praying mantises 638.5725

639 Nondomesticated animals and plants

Hunting, fishing, culture, conservation practices

Class hunting and fishing as sport in 799

*For fur farming, see 636.0884***SUMMARY**

- 639.1 Hunting and trapping**
- .2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing**
- .3 Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates**
- .4 Fisheries and culture of mollusks**
- .5 Fisheries and culture of crustaceans**
- .7 Fisheries and culture of other invertebrates**
- .9 Conservation of biological resources**

.1 Hunting and trapping

Methods, equipment, catches, location and quantity of resources

.11 Fur-bearing and other mammals

Add to 639.11 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g., deer hunting and trapping 639.117357

*For whaling, see 639.28; sealing, 639.29***.12 Birds****639.122–639.124 Of specific habitats**

Class comprehensive works in 639.12, specific kinds of birds regardless of habitat in 639.128

.122 Land birds**.123 Bay and shore birds****.124 Waterfowl****.128 Specific kinds**

Add to 639.128 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., pheasants 639.12861

.13 Amphibians**.14 Reptiles**

Add to 639.14 the numbers following 598.1 in 598.11–598.14, e.g., hunting alligators 639.144

.2 Commercial fishing, whaling, sealing

Methods, equipment, catches; location and quantity of resources

Class here fisheries

Use 639.2001–639.2009 for standard subdivisions

*For fisheries of invertebrates, see 639.4***.201–.209 Standard subdivisions of commercial fishing, of fisheries**

639.21–639.22 Fishing in specific types of water

Class comprehensive works in 639.2, fishing for specific kinds of fish regardless of kind of water in 639.27

.21 Fishing in fresh water

.22 Fishing in salt and brackish waters

.27 Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Add to 639.27 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g.,
salmon fishing 639.2755

.28 Whaling

.29 Sealing

.3 **Culture of cold-blooded vertebrates**

Use 639.3001–639.3009 for standard subdivisions

.301–.309 Standard subdivisions of fish culture

639.31–639.34 Fish culture in specific environments

Class comprehensive works in 639.3, culture of specific kinds of fish regardless of environment in 639.372–639.375

.31 Fish culture in fresh water

Class indoor culture of ornamental fish in 639.34

.311 In natural and artificial ponds

.312 In lakes

.313 In rivers and other streams

.32 Fish culture in salt and brackish waters

Class indoor culture of ornamental fish in 639.34

.34 Fish culture in aquariums

.37 Amphibians and specific kinds of fish

.372–.375 Specific kinds of fish

Add to 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g.,
culture of sea horses 639.3753

.376–.379 Amphibians

Add to 639.37 the numbers following 597 in 597.6–597.9, e.g.,
culture of frogs 639.378

.39 Reptiles

Add to 639.39 the numbers following 598.1 in 598.11–598.14, e.g.,
culture of snakes 639.392

.4 Fisheries and culture of mollusks

Class here comprehensive works on fisheries and culture of invertebrates

For fisheries and culture of crustaceans, see 639.5; of other invertebrates, 639.7

.41 Oysters**.411 Edible oysters****.412 Pearl oysters****.42 Mussels****.44 Clams****.48 Other mollusks**

Add to 639.48 the numbers following 594 in 594.2–594.5, e.g., squid 639.4856

.5 Fisheries and culture of crustaceans**.54 Edible crustaceans**

Add to 639.54 the numbers following 595.384 in 595.3841–595.3844, e.g., lobsters 639.541

.7 Fisheries and culture of other invertebrates

For insect culture, see 638

.73 Protozoa, Parazoa, Metazoa

Add to 639.73 the numbers following 593 in 593.1–593.9, e.g., sponges 639.734

.75 Worms

Add to 639.75 the numbers following 595.1 in 595.12–595.18, e.g., earthworms 639.7546

.9 Conservation of biological resources

Programs aimed to maintain, increase, reduce populations of animals and plants in their natural habitat

639.92–639.96 General principles of animal conservation

Class comprehensive works in 639.9, general principles applied to specific kinds of animals in 639.97

.92 Habitat improvement for animals**.93 Animal species population controls****.95 Parks, reserves, other refuge areas for animals****.96 Injuries, diseases, predators of animals, and their control****.97 Specific kinds of animals**

Add to 639.97 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g., protective measures for birds 639.9782 [*formerly also* 598.2013]

.99 Plant conservation

640 Domestic arts and sciences (Home economics)

Care of household, family, person

Class personal hygiene in 613

.4 General topics

.42 Household finances [*formerly* 647.1]

Management of budgets and expenses

.46 Household employees [*formerly* 647.2–647.6]

Selection, training, hours, duties

Class personnel management of household employees in 658.3764

.7 Study and teaching

Including students, learners, apprentices, novices

.714 Agencies for adult education

Add to 640.714 the numbers following 0715 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 07152–07154 from Table 1, e.g., institutes and workshops 640.7142

[.715] Agencies for adult education

Do not use, class in 640.714

.73 Consumer education

Including guides to quality and value in products and services

Class consumer education on a specific kind of product or service with the subject, e.g., cameras 771.3

641 Food and drink

For food and meal service, see 642

.01 Philosophy and theory

.013 Pleasures of eating

SUMMARY

641.1 Applied nutrition

.2 Alcoholic beverages

.3 Foods and foodstuffs

.4 Preservation

.5 Cookery

.6 Cookery of and with specific materials

.7 Specific cookery processes and techniques

.8 Composite dishes

- .1 **Applied nutrition**
 - Study of nutrient constituents in foods in relation to body needs
 - Class nutritive values of specific foods and foodstuffs in 641.33–641.39
- [.11] **Organic constituents**
 - Number discontinued; class in 641.1
- .12 **Proteins**
- .13 **Carbohydrates**
- .14 **Fats and oils**
- [.15] **Inorganic constituents**
 - Number discontinued; class in 641.1
- .16 **Water**
- .17 **Minerals**
 - Elements and compounds
- .18 **Vitamins**
- .2 **Alcoholic beverages** [*formerly* 641.3]
 - Class here interdisciplinary works on alcoholic beverages
 - Class a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., manufacture (commercial preparation) 663.1–663.5, ethics 178.1
- .22 **Wines**
- .23 **Brewed and malted beverages**
- .25 **Distilled liquors**
- .252 **Grain whiskies**
- .253 **Brandies**
- .255 **Compound liquors**
 - Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, fruits, e.g., cordials (liqueurs), gin
- .259 **Other**
 - Mescal, tequila, rum, vodka, potato whisky

Foods and foodstuffs

Class here interdisciplinary works on production, manufacture, preservation, preparation, use

Use 641.3001–641.3009 for standard subdivisions

Class alcoholic beverages [*formerly* 641.3] in 641.2

Class production in 630, manufacture (commercial preparation and preservation) in 663–664, home preservation and preparation in 641.4–641.8, customs in 394.1, supply in 338.19

641.303–641.309 Classes of foodstuffs by origin

Class comprehensive works in 641.3

.303 Vegetable

.306 Animal

.309 Mineral

.31 Consumer education

Class consumer guides to specific foods and foodstuffs in 641.33–641.39

641.33–641.39 Specific foods and foodstuffs

Class comprehensive works in 641.3

.33 Foods and foodstuffs derived from field crops

.331 Cereals

Add to 641.331 the numbers following 633.1 in 633.11–633.18, e.g., rice and rice products 641.3318

.336 Sugars and sirups

.337 Alkaloidal products

Add to 641.337 the numbers following 633.7 in 633.72–633.78, e.g., coffee 641.3373

.338 Seasonings and flavorings

Add to 641.338 the numbers following 633.8 in 633.82–633.84, e.g., vanilla 641.3382

.34 Fruits and nuts

Add to 641.34 the numbers following 634 in 634.1–634.8, e.g., apples 641.3411

.35 Vegetables

Add to 641.35 the numbers following 635 in 635.1–635.8, e.g., potatoes 641.3521

- .36 **Meats**
 Class here comprehensive works on meats and seafood
 Add to 641.36 the numbers following 636 in 636.1–636.9, e.g.,
 turkey 641.36592
 For game and seafood, see 641.39
- .37 **Dairy and related products**
 Add to 641.37 the numbers following 637 in 637.1–637.5, e.g.,
 eggs 641.375
- .38 **Honey**
- .39 **Game and seafood**
- .391 **Game**
- .392 **Fish**
- .394 **Mollusks**
 Oysters, mussels, clams, squid, octopuses
- .395 **Crustaceans**
 Shrimps, crabs, lobsters

641.4–641.8 Preservation and preparation

Class comprehensive works in 641.3

.4 Preservation

641.41–641.47 Preservation techniques

Fruits and vegetables, food as a whole

Class comprehensive works in 641.4, preservation techniques for meats
 and allied foods in 641.49

- .41 **Preliminary treatment**
- .42 **Canning**
- .44 **Drying and dehydrating**
- .45 **Low-temperature techniques**
- .452 **Cold storage**
- .453 **Deep freezing**
- .46 **Brining, pickling, smoking**
- .47 **Use of additives**
- .49 **Meats and allied foods**
- .492 **Red meats**
 Add to 641.492 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g.,
 canning red meat 641.4922

- .493 Poultry
 - Add to 641.493 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g., freezing poultry 641.49353
- .494 Seafood
 - Add to 641.494 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.41–641.47, e.g., brining seafood 641.4946
- .495 Other
 - Frogs, turtles, snails, insects
- .5 Cookery
 - Preparation of food with and without use of heat
 - Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., outdoor cookery for children 641.5622
 - For special situations
 - Quantity, institutional, outdoor cookery
 - Time- and money-saving cookery
 - With specific appliances, utensils, fuels
 - For specific meals
 - Characteristic of specific geographical environments
 - For cookery of and with specific materials, see 641.6, specific cookery processes and techniques, 641.7; composite dishes, 641.8*
- .509 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class cookery characteristic of specific geographical environments in 641.59

SUMMARY

- 641.52 For breakfast
- .53 For luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks
- .54 For dinner
- .55 Time- and money-saving cookery
- .56 For special situations
- .57 Quantity, institutional, outdoor cookery
- .58 Cookery with specific appliances, utensils, fuels
- .59 Cookery characteristic of specific geographical environments

641.52–641.54 For specific meals

Class comprehensive works in 641.5

- .52 For breakfast
- .53 For luncheon, brunch, elevenses, tea, supper, snacks
- .54 For dinner
- .55 Time- and money-saving cookery
- .552 Money-saving cookery
- .555 Time-saving cookery

- .56 For special situations
- .561 For one or two persons
- .562 For persons of specific ages
 - .562 2 Infants and children
 - .562 7 Aged people
- .563 For health and appearance
 - .563 2 Cookery with specified vitamin and mineral content
 - Example: salt-free cookery
 - .563 4 High-calorie cookery
 - .563 5 Low-calorie cookery
 - .563 6 Vegetarian cookery
 - .563 8 Protein, fat, carbohydrate cookery
 - High and low
- .566 Under Christian church limitations
 - For Lent, other days of fast and abstinence
- .567 Under religious limitations
 - Add to 641.567 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,
cookery under Hindu limitations 641.56745
 - For cookery under Christian church limitations, see 641.566*
- .568 For special occasions
 - Holidays, birthdays, parties, celebrations
 - Class cookery for special religious occasions in 641.567
- .57 Quantity, institutional, outdoor cookery
 - Class here short-order cookery
- .571 For schools
- .572 For hotels and restaurants
- .573 For armed services
- .575 For travel
 - For cooking for railroad dining and buffet cars, see 641.576*
- .575 2 For motor buses
- .575 3 For ships
- .575 4 For airlines
- .576 For railroad dining and buffet cars
- .577 For canteens
 - Including emergency cooking for mass feeding

- .578 **Outdoor cookery**
 - Including camp, barbecue, cookout cookery
 - Class armed services outdoor cookery in 641.573
- .579 **For hospitals and other medical facilities**
- .58 **Cookery with specific appliances, utensils, fuels**
- .583 **With oil**
- .584 **With gas**
- .585 **With alcohol**
- .586 **With electricity**
 - Cookery with electric ranges and appliances, e.g., skillets, frying pans, roasters, grills, waffle irons
- .587 **With steam and pressure**
- .588 **Slow and fireless cookery**
 - Example, microwave cookery, cooking with Aladdin ovens
- .589 **With utensils not utilizing a specific fuel**
 - Examples: foils, specially coated utensils, blenders
- .59 **Cookery characteristic of specific geographical environments**

641.591–641.592 Of specific zones

Class comprehensive works in 641.59, cookery in specific zones characteristic of specific continents, countries, localities in 641.593–641.599

- .591 **Arctic and cold-weather**
- .592 **Tropical and hot-weather**
- .593–.599 **Specific continents, countries, localities**
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 641.59
 - Class general cookery in specific places in 641.509

Cookery of and with specific materials

Class composite dishes featuring specific materials in 641.8

- .61 **Preserved foods**
 - Add to 641.61 the numbers following 641.4 in 641.42–641.46, e.g., cookery using frozen foods 641.6153
 - Class cookery using specific preserved foods and foodstuffs in 641.62–641.69

641.62–641.69 Specific foods and foodstuffs

Class comprehensive works in 641.6

- .62 **Wines, beers, spirits**

- .63-.69 **Other specific foods and foodstuffs**
 Add to 641.6 the numbers following 641.3 in 641.33-641.39, e.g.,
 cookery of meats from domestic animals 641.66
 For ices and sherbets, see 641.863
- .7 **Specific cookery processes and techniques**
 Class specific processes applied to specific materials in 641.6, to
 composite dishes in 641.8
- .71 Baking and roasting
- .73 Boiling, simmering, stewing
- .76 Broiling, grilling, barbecuing
- .77 Frying, sautéing, braising
- .79 Preparation of cold dishes
- .8 **Composite dishes**

SUMMARY

- | | |
|--------|-----------------------|
| 641.81 | Auxiliary dishes |
| .82 | Main dishes (Entrées) |
| .83 | Salads |
| .84 | Sandwiches |
| .85 | Preserves and candies |
| .86 | Desserts |
| .87 | Beverages |
-
- | | |
|------|--|
| .81 | Auxiliary dishes |
| .812 | Appetizers, savories, relishes, hors d'oeuvres |
| .813 | Soups |
| .814 | Sauces and salad dressings |
| .815 | Breads |
| .82 | Main dishes (Entrées) |
| .821 | Casserole dishes |
| .822 | Pasta dishes |
| .823 | Stews |
| .824 | Meat and cheese pies |
| .83 | Salads |
| .84 | Sandwiches |
| .85 | Preserves and candies |
| .852 | Preserves |
| | Jams, jellies, marmalades |
| .853 | Candies |

- 86 Desserts
 - Class here comprehensive works on sweets
 - For preserves and candies, see 641.85*
- 862 Ice creams and ice milks
- 863 Ices and sherbets
- 864 Puddings and gelatins
- 865 Pastries
 - 865.2 Pies and tarts
 - 865.3 Cakes
 - 865.4 Cookies
 - 865.9 Other
 - Eclairs, cream puffs, French pastry
- 87 Beverages
 - 872 Wines
 - 873 Beers
 - 874 Alcoholic
 - Including bartenders' manuals and recipes
 - For wines, see 641.872; beers, 641.873*
 - .875 Nonalcoholic
 - Including juices, carbonated drinks, malted drinks, punches
 - For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 641.877*
 - .877 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages
 - Cocoa, coffee, teas; their concentrates and substitutes

642 Food and meal service

642.1–642.5 For specific situations

Class here menus

Class comprehensive works in 642, table service for specific situations in 642.6, table decor for specific situations in 642.7–642.8

For home and family

Including TV dinners

For camp, picnic, travel

Including packaged meals

For TV dinners, see 642.1

.4 In entertaining**.41 Private**

Class catering for private entertainment in 642.47

.45 Public

Banquets, receptions, church and community suppers

Class catering for public entertainment in 642.47

.47 Catering**.5 In public eating places and institutions**

Class food and meal service for entertaining in public eating places in 642.45

.56 Restaurants, cafés, dining rooms**.57 Lunch counters, cafeterias, snack bars, canteens, vending machines**

For lunchrooms and cafeterias of educational institutions, see 642.58

.58 Lunchrooms and cafeterias of educational institutions**.59 Food service in hospitals and other medical institutions****.6 Table service**

Setting places, carving, serving

642.7–642.8 Table decor

Class comprehensive works in 642.7

.7 Table furnishings

Linen, china, crystal, silver, cutlery

Class here comprehensive works on table decor

For table decorations, see 642.8

.8 Table decorations

Examples: flowers, colors, lights

643 The home and its equipment

Selection, purchase, rental, location, orientation, arrangement

For household utilities, see 644, household furnishings, 645

643.3–643.5 Specific areas

Class here equipment, improvement, remodeling

Class comprehensive works in 643

.3 Kitchens**.4 Eating and drinking areas**

Dining rooms, breakfast rooms, bars

.5 Other areas**.52 Bathrooms****.53 Bedrooms****.54 Living rooms****.55 Recreation areas**

Indoor and outdoor

.58 Study and work areas**.6 Appliances and laborsaving installations**

Description, selection, use, care, repair by members of household

Class appliances and installations for specific rooms in 643.3-643.5, for a specific purpose with the purpose, e.g., sewing machines 646.21

.7 Improvement and remodeling by members of household*For improvement and remodeling of specific areas, see 643.3-643.5; repair of appliances and laborsaving installations, 643.6***644 Household utilities**

Description, selection, operation, care of systems, appliances, fittings, fixtures, accessories

.1 Heating**.3 Lighting****.5 Ventilation and air conditioning****.6 Water supply**

Including hot-water supply

645 Household furnishings

Description, selection, installation by members of household, use, care, repair

Class design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings in 747

645.1-645.4 Interior furnishings of specific kinds

Class comprehensive works in 645

Floor coverings

Rugs, carpeting, linoleum, tiles

Wall and ceiling coverings

Wallpaper, paint, hangings

Window and door furnishings

Curtains, draperies, shades, blinds, accessories

Furniture and accessories

Including upholstery, slipcovers

.6 Furnishings for specific rooms

Class interior furnishings of specific kinds regardless of room in
645.1–645.4

.8 Outdoor furnishings

For gardens, patios, courts, balconies, roofs

646 Sewing, clothing, personal grooming**.01–.08 Standard subdivisions of clothing****.09 Historical and geographical treatment of clothing****.091 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general****.091 1 Clothing for Frigid Zones and cold weather****.091 3 Clothing for tropics and hot weather****SUMMARY****646.1 Sewing materials****.2 Sewing and related operations****.3 Clothing selection****.4 Clothing construction****.5 Construction of headgear****.6 Cleaning and dyeing clothing****.7 Personal grooming****.1 Sewing materials****.11 Textiles**

Add to 646.11 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.5, e.g.
cotton textiles 646.1121

.15 Leather**.16 Furs****.19 Notions**

Buttons, hooks and eyes, snaps, slide fasteners, needles, pins,
thread, padding, shields

.2 Sewing and related operations

For sewing materials, see 646.1

.21 Sewing operations

Hand and machine

For clothing construction, see 646.4

.212 Making draperies, hangings, curtains**.213 Making slipcovers****.214 Making table linen****.215 Making bedclothes**

- .216 Making towels and related equipment
- .25 Reweaving

646.3–646.6 Clothing

Class comprehensive works in 646, materials used for clothing in 646.1

Clothing selection

Guides to quality and value

- .32 Men's clothing
- .34 Women's clothing
- .36 Children's clothing

.4 Clothing construction

Patternmaking, cutting, sewing, fitting, remodeling

Use 646.4001–646.4009 for standard subdivisions

For construction of headgear, see 646.5

- .402 Men's clothing
- .404 Women's clothing
- .406 Children's clothing

646.42–646.48 Specific kinds of clothing

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

02 Men's clothing

04 Women's clothing

06 Children's clothing

Class comprehensive works in 646.4

- .42 *Underwear and hose



646.43–646.45 Outer garments

Class comprehensive works in 646.4

Class outer garments for special purposes in 646.47

For miscellaneous garments, see 646.48

- .43 *Outer house garments

Dresses, suits, coats, trousers, shirts, blouses, skirts

- .45 *Outdoor garments

Overcoats, topcoats, raincoats, sweaters, stoles, cloaks, jackets

* Add as instructed under 646.42–646.48

- .47 ***Garments for special purposes**
 - Examples: lounging garments, nightclothes, sportswear
 - Class miscellaneous garments for special purposes in 646.48
- .48 **Miscellaneous garments and accessories**
 - Neckwear, cuffs, belts, aprons, handkerchiefs, scarves, handwear
- .5 **Construction of headgear**
 - Use 646.5001–646.5009 for standard subdivisions
 - .502 For men
 - .504 For women (Millinery)
 - .506 For children
- .6 **Cleaning and dyeing clothing**
 - .62 Cleaning
 - For laundering, see 648.1
 - .63 Dyeing
- .7 **Personal grooming**
 - .71 Cleanliness
 - Bathing, showering, other measures
 - .72 Personal appearance
 - For improvement of body contours, see 646.75
 - .724 Care of hair
 - For men's and boys' hairdressing, see 646.74
 - .724 2 Professional hairdressing for women and girls
 - .724 3 Home hairdressing for women and girls
 - .724 8 Wigs
 - Selection, styling, cleaning, dyeing
 - .726 Care of skin, lips, eyes
 - .727 Manicuring and pedicuring
 - .74 Men's and boys' hairdressing (Barbering)
 - Including men's shaving
 - .75 Improvement of body contours
 - Reducing, slenderizing, body-building
 - Including massage, steam baths

647 **Public households**

[.1] **Household finances**

Class in 640.42

* Add as instructed under 646.42–646.48

647.2–647.6 Employees

Class comprehensive works on household employees [*formerly* 647.2–647.6] in 640.46

Class comprehensive works on public household employees in 647.2, personnel management in 658.3764

.2 Indoor employees

Class here comprehensive works on public household employees

For outdoor employees, see 647.3, *hours and duties*, 647.6

.3 Outdoor employees

For hours and duties, see 647.6

.6 Employee hours and duties**.9 Specific kinds of public households**

Class a specific aspect with the subject, e.g., laundering 648.1

.92 Multiple dwellings for long-term residents

Tenements, flats, apartments, apartment hotels

.94 Multiple dwellings for transients

Hotels, inns, hostels, clubs, motels, trailer camps

.940 9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 647.943–647.949

.943–.949 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Class here directories

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 647.94

.95 Eating and drinking places**.950 9 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 647.953–647.959

.953–.959 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Class here directories

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 647.95

.96 Other public households

Not used primarily for religious, educational, research purposes

Add to 647.96 the numbers following 725 in 725.1–725.9, e.g., office buildings 647.9623

.98 Households having religious purposes

Add to 647.98 the numbers following 726 in 726.1–726.9, e.g., Franciscan monasteries 647.98773

.99 Households having educational and research purposes

Add to 647.99 the numbers following 727 in 727.1–727.9, e.g.,
public libraries 647.99824

648 Household sanitation

Processes, equipment, supplies

.1 Laundering

Washing, starching, drying, ironing

.5 Housecleaning

Sweeping, dusting, washing, polishing

.52 Floors and walls

.53 Furnishings

.56 Dishes, cutlery, utensils

.7 Control and eradication of pests

.8 Storage and preparation for storage

649 Child rearing and home nursing

.1 Child rearing

Care, training, supervision

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., preschool boys 649.123

Exceptional children

Children of specific classes, types, relationships

Children of specific age groups

Children of specific sexes

Class specific elements of child rearing in 649.3–649.7

.102 Miscellany

.102 4 Works for specific types of users

.102 42 Works for expectant parents

.102 48 Works for baby-sitters

.12 Children of specific age groups

.122–.124 To age eleven

Add to 649.12 the numbers following 155.42 in 155.422–155.424,
e.g., infants 649.122

.125 Adolescents

Ages twelve to twenty

.13 Children of specific sexes

.132 Boys

.133 Girls

- .14 **Children of specific classes, types, relationships**
Add to 649.14 the numbers following 155.44 in 155.442–155.446,
e.g., the only child 649.142
- .15 **Exceptional children**
Add to 649.15 the numbers following 371.9 in 371.91–371.97, e.g.,
the gifted child 649.155

649.3–649.7 Specific elements of child care

Class comprehensive works in 649.1

- 3 **Feeding**
- 4 **Clothing and care of body**
- 5 **Supervised activities**
 - 51 Creative activities
Examples: paper work, painting, modeling, music
 - 55 Play with toys
 - 552 With dolls
 - 553 With games
 - 554 With mechanical devices
 - 57 Exercise, gymnastics, sports
 - 58 Reading and related activities
Examples: storytelling, reading aloud to children, supervision of
children's reading, listening
- 6 **Manners and habits**
Training in toilet, cleanliness, dressing and feeding self,
socially acceptable behavior
- 7 **Moral, religious, character training**
- 8 **Home nursing**
Care of sick and infirm

650 Managerial services

Use 650.01–650.09 for standard subdivisions

- .1 **Success in business**
Class managerial success in 658.409
- .12 Financial success
- .13 Personal improvement and success in business relationships
- .14 Success in obtaining jobs and promotions

651 Office services**.01-.09 Standard subdivisions**

Class data processing in 651.8, equipment in 651.2

SUMMARY**651.2 Equipment and supplies****.3 Office organization****.4 Operations (Office practice)****.5 Records management****.7 Communication** Creation and transmission of records**.8 Data processing****.9 Office services in specific kinds of enterprises****.2 Equipment and supplies**

Description, selection, acquisition, use, maintenance

Use 651.2001-651.2009 for standard subdivisions

.202 Maintenance of equipment**.23 Furniture****.26 Processing equipment**

Class a specific type of equipment [*formerly* 651.263-651.269]
with its use, e g., typewriters 652.3

.29 Supplies and forms**.3 Office organization****.32 Office management**

Management related to function

Including planning [*formerly* 651.41]

Class specific elements of management in 658

.37 Office personnel

Activities and functions

.371 Administrative personnel

Examples: office managers [*formerly* 651.372], executive and
administrative secretaries, administrative assistants

[.372] Office managers

Class in 651.371

.374 Clerical personnel**.374 1 Secretaries**

Personnel who handle correspondence and manage routine
and detail work for superiors

Class executive and administrative secretaries in 651.371,
stenographers in 651.3743

.374 2 Bookkeepers and financial clerks

.374 3

Other

Examples: stenographers, typists, filers, receptionists,
switchboard operators, messengers

.4

Operations (Office practice)

For information management, see 651.5–651.8; accounting, 657

[.41]

Planning

Class in 651.32

[.44]

Procedures

Number discontinued; class in 651.4

651.5–651.8 Information management

Class comprehensive works in 651.4

.5

Records management

Class here medical records management [*formerly 362.1*]

.51

Retention, maintenance, final disposition of records

.53

Filing systems and procedures

For storage, see 651.54–651.59

651.54–651.59 Storage

Space, equipment, control, protection, preservation

Class comprehensive works in 651.53

.54

Storage of original documents

In filing cabinets, visible and rotary files

For storage of inactive files, see 651.56

.56

Storage of inactive files

Original documents in permanent (dead) storage

.58

Microreproduction of files

Active and inactive

.59

Computerization of files

.7

Communication Creation and transmission of records

Class records management in 651.5, managerial communication in 658.45

.73

Oral communication

Including use of telephone

.74

Written communication

Including dictation and use of dictating equipment

Use 651.74001–651.74009 for standard subdivisions

*For specific types of written communication, see 651.75–651.78;
processes of written communication, 652*

.740 2

Style manuals

- 651.75–651.78 Specific types of written communication
Class comprehensive works in 651.74
- .75 Correspondence
Handling correspondence, letter arrangement and style, use of speed and form letters
- .759 Mail handling
Including equipment, e.g., mail openers and sealers, postage meters, addressing machines
- .77 Minutes
- .78 Reports
- .79 Internal communication
Examples: messenger services, pneumatic and mechanical conveyor systems, intercom systems, paging systems
Class internal written communication in 651.74, oral internal communication in 651.73
- .8 Data processing
Use in carrying out office functions
Class comprehensive works on data processing in 001.6
- .81 Nonmechanized
- .82 Mechanized
Including use of adding machines, comptometers, calculators
- .83 Automatic
Including puncht-card data processing
For electronic data processing, see 651.84
- .84 Electronic
Add to 651.84 the numbers following 001.64 in 001.642–001.644, e.g., programing 651.842
- [.85–.89] By use of other equipment
Numbers discontinued; class in 651.8
- .9 Office services in specific kinds of enterprises
Add 001–999 to base number 651.9, e.g., office services in libraries 651.902
Class specific elements of office services in specific kinds of enterprises in 651.2–651.8
- 652 Processes of written communication
For shorthand, see 653
- .1 Penmanship
Class calligraphy in 745.61

.3 Typewriting

Use 652.3001–652.3009 for standard subdivisions

.302 Typewriting manuals**.302 2 Description and maintenance of typewriters**

Including manuals for specific makes of typewriters

.302 4 Instructional manuals

For basic keyboard mastery

For speed and accuracy tests and drills, see 652.307

.307 Speed and accuracy

Tests, drills

.32 Specific kinds of typing

Examples: medical, technical, personal typing

Including style manuals

[.322–.324] Style manuals for specific kinds of typing

Numbers discontinued; class in 652.32

.8 Cryptography**653 Shorthand****.1 Basic shorthand practice**

Class basic practice in a specific system with the system, e.g.,
Gregg shorthand transcription 653.4270424

.13 General principles**.14 Taking dictation, and transcription****.15 Speed and accuracy**

Class speed and accuracy in transcription in 653.14

.18 Specific uses

Examples: reporting, medical, personal

653.2–653.4 Systems

Class comprehensive works in 653

.2 Abbreviated longhand systems

Systems using conventional letters

.3 Machine systems

Add to 653.3 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.13–653.18, e.g.,
general principles 653.33

.4 Handwritten systems

For abbreviated longhand systems, see 653.2

.41 Multilingual

- .42 English-language
- .421 Early forms
 - Systems devised before 1837
- .422 Essentially nonphonetic systems
 - Class early nonphonetic systems in 653.421
 - 653.423–653.428 Essentially phonetic systems
 - Class comprehensive works in 653.42, early phonetic systems in 653.421
- .423 Geometric disjoined vowel systems
 - For Pitman systems, see 653.424*
- .424 Pitman systems
 - .424 04 General special
 - .424 042 Basic shorthand practice
 - Add to 653.424042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.13–653.18, e.g., speed and accuracy 653.4240425
 - .424 2 Isaac Pitman
 - .424 3 Benn Pitman
 - .424 4 Graham
 - .424 5 Munson
- .425 Geometric joined vowel systems
 - Examples: Pernin, Sloan, Lindsley, Dewey (1922)
- .426 Semigeometric, script-geometric, senuiscript systems
 - Including Malone
 - For Gregg systems, see 653.427*
- .427 Gregg systems
 - .427 04 General special
 - .427 042 Basic shorthand practice
 - Add to 653.427042 the numbers following 653.1 in 653.13–653.18, e.g., transcription 653.4270424
 - .427 2 Conventional
 - .427 3 Simplified
- .428 Script systems
 - Example: Dewey (1936)
- .43–.49 Systems used in other languages
 - Add “Languages” notation 3–9 from Table 6 to base number 653.4

[655] Printing and related activities

Class book arts [*formerly* 655] in 686, printing [*formerly* 655.1–655.3] in 686.2, xerography [*formerly* 655.328] in 686.44, publishing [*formerly* 655.4–655.5] in 070.5, bookbinding [*formerly* 655.7] in 686.3

656 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

657 Accounting

- .04 Levels of accounting
- .042 Elementary
- .044 Intermediate
- .046 Advanst

657.1–657.9 Elements of accounting

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., accounting for cost of inventory in a corporation engaged in manufacturing 657.867072

- Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities
- Financial reporting (Financial statements)
- Accounting for specific phases of business activity
- Specific fields of accounting
- Constructive accounting
- Recording (Bookkeeping)
- Accounting for specific kinds of organizations
- Specific kinds of accounting

Class comprehensive works in 657

SUMMARY

- 657.1 Constructive accounting
 - .2 Recording (Bookkeeping)
 - .3 Financial reporting (Financial statements)
 - .4 Specific fields of accounting
 - .6 Specific kinds of accounting
 - .7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity
 - .8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities
 - .9 Accounting for specific kinds of organizations

Constructive accounting [*formerly* 657.2]

Development of accounting systems to fit the needs of individual organizations

Recording (Bookkeeping)

- Including secretarial bookkeeping and accounting
- Class constructive accounting [*formerly* 657.2] in 657.1
- Class elementary accounting in 657.042

Financial reporting (Financial statements)

Including consolidated statements

- .4 Specific fields of accounting**
 - For constructive accounting, see 657.1; bookkeeping, 657.2*
- .42 Cost accounting**
- [.422--.424] Specific costs**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 657.42
- .45 Auditing**
 - External [*formerly* 657.6] and internal
- .46 Tax accounting**
 - Including accounting for social security taxes
- .47 Fiduciary accounting**
 - Accounting for receiverships, estates, trusts
- .48 Analytical (Financial) accounting**
 - Measurement of profitability, of financial strength, of income, of liquidity, of flow of funds
- .6 Specific kinds of accounting**
 - Class external auditing [*formerly* 657.6] in 657.45
- .61 Public accounting**
- .63 Private accounting**
- .7 Accounting for specific phases of business activity**
- .72 Current assets**
 - Cash, accounts receivable, inventory
- .73 Fixt assets**
 - Valuation and revaluation, depreciation, retirement
 - Including insurance
- .74 Current liabilities**
 - Including accounts payable, notes payable, payroll
 - For tax accounting, see 657.46*
- .75 Fixt liabilities**
 - Examples: bonds payable, pension plans, leases, purchase contracts, mortgages
- .76 Capital accounting**
 - Accounting for ownership equity
 - Including accounting for stock and dividends
 - For measurement of profitability, of income, see 657.48*

.8 Accounting for enterprises engaged in specific kinds of activities

Add 0 to each subdivision identified by * and to the result add the numbers following 657 in 657.1–657.7, e.g., cost accounting for hotels and restaurants 657.837042

.83 Service and professional activities**.832 Welfare services**

Examples: churches, educational institutions, hospitals, prisons

.833 Finance and real estate

For insurance, see 657.836

.834 Professions**.835 *Government**

Class here military accounting [*formerly* 355.6223]

Class accounting for other specific government services in 657.832–657.834, 657.836–657.839

.836 *Insurance**.837 *Hotels and restaurants****.838 *Public utilities****.839 *Wholesale and retail trade****.84 Communications and entertainment media**

Examples: publishing houses, newspapers, periodicals, television and radio networks and stations, theaters, motion-picture producers and theaters, sports

.86 Other activities**.861 *Labor unions****.862 *Mining****.863 *Agriculture****.867 *Manufacturing**

Class here printing

.869 *Construction**.9 Accounting for specific kinds of organizations****.904 General special****.904 2 Small business****.91 Individual proprietorships****.92 Partnerships****.95 Corporations****.96 Combinations and mergers****.97 Cooperatives**

* Add as instructed under 657.8

.98 Nonprofit organizations

.99 Branches

Including agencies

658 General management (General administration)

The science and art of conducting organized enterprises, projects, activities

Planning, organizing, financing, staffing, directing, coordinating, reporting, other functions common to all types of enterprises

Class sociology of management in 301, principles of management in 658.4, management of manufacturing activities in 658.5–658.7, of marketing in 658.8

Except for management of manufacturing and of marketing, class management of activities related to one specific kind of enterprise with the subject, e.g., scheduling of classes in schools 371.2421

For public administration, see 350

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions

Class data processing in 658.05

.02 Management of enterprises of specific sizes and scopes

Class management of enterprises of specific forms regardless of size or scope in 658.04

.022 Small

.023 Large

[.023 2–.023 5] Specific kinds of organization

Numbers discontinued, class in 658.023

[.023 6] International

Class in 658.18

.04 Management of enterprises of specific forms

Add to 658.04 the numbers following 658.114 in 658.1141–658.1148, e.g., corporations 658.045

Class management of international enterprises and activities in 658.18

.05 Data processing

Add to 658.05 the numbers following 001.6 in 001.62–001.64, e.g., use of software systems 658.05425 [*formerly* 658.506], use of analog computers 658.054042 [*formerly* 658.507], use of digital computers 658.054044 [*formerly* 658.505]

Class systems analysis in 658.4032

SUMMARY

- 658.1 Organization and finance
 - .2 Management of plants
 - .3 Personnel management
 - .4 Principles of management Executive management
 - .5 Management of production
 - .7 Management of materials
 - .8 Management of distribution (Marketing)
 - .9 Management of specific kinds of enterprises

Organization and finance

Former heading: Management by control of structure

For internal organization, see 658.402

- .11 Initiation of business enterprises
 - For capitalization, see 658.152, reorganization, 658.16*
- .114 Forms of ownership organization
 - Class management of specific forms of ownership organization in 658.04

658.114 1–658.114 7 Profit organizations

Class comprehensive works in 658.114, international profit organizations in 658.1149

- .114 1 Individual proprietorships
- .114 2 Partnerships
 - General and limited
- .114 4 Unincorporated enterprises
 - Including partnership associations, joint ventures, syndicates, joint stock companies
 - For partnerships, see 658.1142; individual proprietorships, 658.1141*
- .114 5 Corporations
- .114 6 Combinations
 - Trusts, holding companies, interlocking directorates, subsidiaries, conglomerates
- .114 7 Cooperative organizations
- .114 8 Nonprofit organizations
 - Charitable, social, political, occupational, professional
 - Class international nonprofit organizations in 658.1149
- .114 9 International organizations
- .12 Legal administration
 - Management of business to secure compliance with law
 - Including use of legal counsel

- .15 Financial administration
 Class accounting in 657

SUMMARY

- 658.151 Financial planning and control
 .152 Capital management and capital structure
 .153 Control of disbursements
 .154 Budgeting
 .155 Management of profit and loss
 .159 Financial administration in specific kinds of enterprises
- .151 Financial planning and control
 Marshaling, analyzing, interpreting significant data to enable management to make intelligent decisions
- .151 1 Accounting policy
 Determination of types of information needed and kind of records to be included in central accounting records
- .151 2 Reports
 To stockholders, directors, top management
 Examples: balance sheets, profit-and-loss statements, income and expense statements, manufacturing cost statements
- .151 3 Financial analysis
 Use of accounting information to analyze performance, to match performance against budgetary requirements, to assess and evaluate variances
 Former heading: Performance
 Class control thru financial analysis in 658.1514
- .151 4 Control thru financial analysis
 Use of financial information to establish standards of performance
 Former heading: Decision
 For budgeting, see 658.154
- .152 Capital management and capital structure
 Class here capital flows [*formerly* 658.153], capitalization
- .152 2 Procurement of capital
 Capital: land, buildings, equipment necessary to operate an enterprise; the financial resources necessary to procure them
 Including costs and valuation of capital
 Class procurement of specific kinds of capital in 658.1524
- .152 24 External sources
 Issue and sale of stocks and bonds, other borrowing
 Class debt management in 658.1526

- .152 26 Internal sources
 - Reserves, savings, current operations
- .152 4 Kinds of capital
- .152 42 Long-term (Fixt)
 - Land, buildings, heavy equipment; stocks, bonds, long-term loans
 - Including leasing
- .152 44 Short-term (Working capital)
 - Equipment and financial resources for day-to-day operations
 - Examples: cash, accounts receivable, inventory, 30–90 day loans
 - Class credit management in 658.88
- .152 6 Debt management
- .152 7 Investment (Capital expenditure)
 - Class investment in land, buildings, heavy equipment in 658.15242
- .153 Control of disbursements
 - Former heading: Funds management
 - Including tax management, insurance, gifts and donations
 - Class capital flows [*formerly* 658.153] in 658.152
 - Class cost control in 658.1552
 - For capital expenditure, see* 658.1527
- .154 Budgeting
 - Including capital budgets
 - Class cost control in 658.1552, inventory control in 658.787 [*both formerly* 658.154]
- .155 Management of profit and loss
- .155 2 Cost control [*formerly* 658.154] and analysis
 - Determination of trends in unit costs of production to measure efficiency of performance and profitability of products
 - Class analysis and control of specific kinds of costs in 658.1553
- .155 3 Kinds of costs
 - Material, labor, overhead costs; fixt, variable costs
 - Including cost of shipment [*formerly* 658.7883]
 - For costs of capital, see* 658.1522
- .155 4 Analysis and promotion of profitability
 - Return on investment, cost-volume-profit analysis, break-even analysis
 - Including income measurement
- .155 5 Analysis and prevention of loss

- .155 6 Distribution of profit
 - Dividend policy
- .159 Financial administration in specific kinds of enterprises
 - Class specific elements of financial administration regardless of kind of enterprise in 658.151–658.155
- .159 04 General kinds
 - Small, large, foreign
- .159 3 Service and professional enterprises
- .159 32 Welfare services
 - Examples: churches, educational institutions, hospitals, prisons
 - Including financial management of institutions of higher education [*formerly also* 378.102]
- .159 33 Finance and real estate
 - For insurance, see* 658.15936
- .159 34 Professions
- .159 36 Insurance
- .159 37 Hotels and restaurants
- .159 38 Public utilities
- .159 39 Wholesale and retail trade
- .159 4 Communications and entertainment media
 - Examples: publishing houses, newspapers, periodicals, television and radio networks and stations, theaters, motion-picture producers and theaters, sports
- .159 6 Other
- .159 61 Labor unions
- .159 62 Mining
- .159 63 Agriculture
- .159 67 Manufacturing
 - Including printing
- .159 69 Construction
- .16 Reorganization
 - Mergers and consolidations
- .18 International enterprises and activities [*formerly also* 658.0236]
 - Including foreign licensing, management contracts
 - Class a specific element of management of international enterprises and activities with the subject, e.g., financial administration 658.15

.2 Management of plants

Management of buildings, grounds, equipment, facilities

Use 658.2001–658.2009 for standard subdivisions

.202 Maintenance**.21 Location**

In relation to transportation, markets, labor supply, raw materials

.23 Layout**658.24–658.28 Facilities and equipment**

Class comprehensive works in 658.2

.24 Lighting**.25 Heating, ventilating, air conditioning****.26 Utilities**

Examples: water, gas, electricity, power and power distribution

.27 Production equipment

Selection and evaluation

.28 Equipment for safety and comfort

Including equipment for sanitation, noise control

.3 Personnel management

Procedures for hiring, developing, utilizing the capacities of employees

Use 658.3001–658.3009 for standard subdivisions

Class industrial relations in 331

For management of executive personnel, see 658.407

.301 Personnel planning and policy**.302 Supervision****.303 Personnel management in enterprises of specific sizes**

Small and large

.304 Management of specific kinds of personnel**.304 2 Specific sexes and ages****.304 4 Personnel occupying specific types of positions**

Examples: office personnel, technical and scientific personnel

.304 5 Personnel with specific personal characteristics

Examples: handicapped personnel, high-talent personnel

.306 Job analysis and description

Including position classification [*formerly* 658.3123]; specifications of personal, educational, physical, mental qualifications required of personnel in each position

.31 Elements of personnel administration

SUMMARY

- 658.311 Recruitment and selection of personnel
 - .312 Utilization of personnel
 - .313 Separation from service
 - .314 Motivation
 - .315 Employer-employee relationships
- .311 Recruitment and selection of personnel
 - .311 1 Recruitment
 - .311 2 Selection
 - Determination of qualifications possess by prospective employees thru use of interviews, tests, personal and background investigations
 - Former heading: Qualification requirements
 - Including use of polygraph (lie detector), security clearance
 - Class here comprehensive works on selection and placement
 - Class placement and evaluation in 658.3125–658 3128
 - [.311 22–.311 23] Personal, professional, occupational qualifications
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 658.3112
- .312 Utilization of personnel
 - Former heading: Operations
 - For wage and salary administration, see 658.32; personnel health, safety, welfare, 658.38*
 - .312 1 Days and hours of work
 - Including lunch periods and breaks
 - .312 2 Leaves of absence
 - Paid vacations, sick leave, other
 - [.312 3] Position classification
 - Class in 658.306
 - .312 4 Education [*formerly also 658.386*] and training
 - .312 404 Development and administration of training programs
 - Methods, selection and training of training personnel
 - Including programed instruction, training devices
 - .312 42 Induction and orientation
 - .312 43 Job training
 - Including retraining, adjustment to automation
 - .312 44 Other
 - Rehabilitation training, attitude training, training in human relations, safety

- .312 45 Training of specific classes of employees
 - Examples: supervisors, office personnel
 - Class specific types of training regardless of class of employee in 658.31242–658.31244
- .312 5 Performance rating (Evaluation)
- .312 6 Promotion
- .312 7 Demotion
- .312 8 Placement
 - Assignment of workers to positions in which they can render most effective service and derive maximum job satisfaction
 - Including transfer
 - For performance rating, see 658.3125, promotion, 658.3126; demotion, 658.3127*
- [.312 9] Discipline
 - Class in 658.314
- .313 Separation from service
 - Add to 658.313 the numbers following 350.18 in 350.181–350.184, e.g., dismissal for cause 658.3133
- .314 Motivation
 - Promotion of productivity, efficiency, creativity
 - Former heading: Employee morale
 - Class here discipline [*formerly* 658.3129]
- .314 2 Positive incentives
 - Examples: recognition, status, promotion, competition, job satisfaction
 - For incentive payments, see 658.3225*
- .314 4 Negative incentives
 - Examples: reprimands, fines, demotion, layoffs
 - For dismissal for cause, see 658.3133*
- .314 5 Interpersonal relations
 - With superiors, equals, subordinates
- .315 Employer-employee relationships
 - Class informal relations in 658.3145
- .315 1 Industrial relations counseling
- .315 2 Employee representation in management
- .315 3 Labor unions and other employee organizations
 - Class role of employee organizations in grievances and appeals in 658.3155
 - For collective bargaining, see 658.3154*

- .315 4 Collective bargaining
 - Including strikes, arbitration, mediation
- .315 5 Grievances and appeals
- .32 Wage and salary administration
- .321 Payroll administration
- .322 Compensation plans
- .322 2 Wage and salary scales
 - Hourly or other periodic
 - Including overtime, severance, longevity pay
- .322 5 Incentive payments
 - Piecework rates, bonuses, profit sharing, stock ownership plans
 - For merit awards, see 658.3226*
- .322 6 Merit awards
- .325 Employee benefits
- .325 3 Pensions
- .325 4 Other benefits
 - Examples: insurance, workmen's compensation
- .37 Personnel management in specific kinds of enterprises and occupations
 - Add 001-999 to base number 658.37, e.g., personnel management in insurance agencies 658.37368
 - Class a specific element of personnel management in specific kinds of enterprises and occupations with the subject, e.g., pensions 658.3253
- .38 Personnel health, safety, welfare
- .382 Health and safety programs
 - Including mental health
- .383 Economic services
 - Housing, transportation, food services, discounts
- .385 Counseling services
 - Class mental health programs and services in 658.382
- [.386] Education
 - Class in 658.3124

- .4 Principles of management Executive management**
- Principles: planning, organizing, directing, coordinating, reporting, communication
- Use 658.4001–658.4009 for standard subdivisions
- Class a specific activity of executive management not provided for here with the subject, e.g., management of production 658.5
- .401 Planning and policy making
- .402 Internal organization
- Line, line and staff, functional
- Including organization by departments
- .403 Decision making
- Information analysis [*formerly* 658.501], sources of information, problem solving, techniques of analysis
- Including use of consultants
- .403 2 Systems analysis [*formerly* 658.502]
- Including network analysis, program evaluation review technique (PERT), critical path method (CPM)
- .403 3 Mathematical techniques
- Mathematical programing, econometrics
- .403 4 Operations research
- .403 5 Other techniques
- Examples: games, simulation
- .404 Project management
- .406 Managing change
- Expansion, modernization, systemization, simplification
- .407 Management of executive personnel
- Add to 658.407 the numbers following 658.3 in 658.31–658.38, e.g., executive training 658.407124
- .408 Social responsibility of management
- .409 Managerial success
- 658.42–658.43 Specific levels of executive management
- Positions and functions
- Class comprehensive works in 658.42
- .42 Top management**
- Including entrepreneurs, boards of directors
- Class here comprehensive works on levels of executive management
- For middle management, see 658.43*

-
- .43 Middle management
 - .45 Communication
 - .451 Methods
 - Example: use of audiovisual aids
 - .452 Oral
 - .453 Written
 - .455 Informational programs
 - Examples: house organs, bulletin boards
 - .456 Conduct of meetings and conferences
 - .46 Use of consultants
 - .47 Business intelligence and security
 - Use of unconventional techniques for securing information, protection of information and privacy, physical security
 - Example: industrial espionage
 - .5 **Management of production**
 - Use 658.5001–658.5009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class factory operations engineering in 621.7, management of marketing in 658.8, of specific transportation activities in 380.5
 - [.501] Information analysis
 - Class in 658.403
 - [.502] Systems analysis
 - Class in 658.4032
 - .503 General production planning
 - Determination of line of products or services, analysis of specific factors affecting planning
 - Including diversification
 - [.503 2–.503 5] Specific factors
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 658.503
 - [.505] Use of digital computers
 - Class in 658.054044
 - [.506] Use of software systems
 - Class in 658.05425
 - [.507] Use of analog computers
 - Class in 658.054042

- .51 **Programing of production**
 - Preparation and issuance of orders to use facilities, material, labor for the production of a required quantity of products or services
 - Including scheduling
 - For routing, see 658.53*
- [.511–.513] **Bases for programing**
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 658.51
- .516 **Standardization**
 - Equipment, procedures
 - Class standardization of products [*formerly* 658.516] in 658.562
- 658.53–658.54 **Methods of production** [*formerly also* 658.561]
 - Class here work simplification, work measurement
 - Class comprehensive works in 658.53
- .53 **Processes**
 - Sequences of operations performed by machines and workers
 - Including routing
 - Class here comprehensive works on methods of production
 - For operations, see 658.54*
- .533 **Kinds of processes**
 - Continuous, assembly, mixt, single-piece
- .534 **Process analysis**
- .54 **Operations**
 - Sequence of activities performed by a single machine or at a single work place
 - Including work load
- .542 **Operation studies**
- .542 1 Time studies
- .542 3 Motion studies
- .544 **Fatigue and monotony studies**
- .56 **Product control**
 - For research and development, see 658.57*
- [.561] **Methods of production**
 - Class in 658.53–658.54
- .562 **Standards and specifications**
 - Form, size, dimensions, quality, materials, performance
 - Including standardization [*formerly* 658.516]

- .564 **Packaging**
 - Class here interdisciplinary works on packaging
 - Class use of packaging in sales promotion in 658.823, for shipment in 658.7884, packaging technology in 621.757
- .566 **Product analysis**
 - Determination of materials, parts, subassemblies needed; how much of each to make or buy
- .567 **Waste control and utilization**
- .568 **Inspection**
 - Including statistical methods of quality control
- .57 **Research and development (R & D)**
- .571 **Fundamental research**
- .575 **New product development**
 - Class market research on new products in 658.83
- .576 **Product improvement research**
- .577 **Equipment and process research**
- .7 **Management of materials**
- .72 **Procurement**
 - Acquisition of materials, parts, subassemblies, supplies, tools, equipment
 - Class here procurement of office equipment and supplies
- .722 **Vendor selection**
- .723 **Subcontracting**
- .728 **Receiving**
 - Handling, documenting, inspecting incoming items
 - Including expediting, tracing
- .78 **Transportation of materials and inventory control**
- .781 **Materials handling (Internal transportation)**
 - Transportation of materials and parts within plant from one work station to another
- .785 **Storage**
- .787 **Inventory control** [*formerly also* 658.154]
 - For receiving, see* 658.728, *storage*, 658.785
- .788 **Shipment**
- .788 2 **Traffic management**
 - Selection of carrier and routing
- [.788 3] **Cost of shipment**
 - Class in 658.1553

- .788 4 Packaging for shipment
- .788 5 Loading and unloading
- .788 6 Expediting and tracing
- .8 Management of distribution (Marketing)**
 - Goods and services
 - Use 658.8001–658.8009 for standard subdivisions
 - For advertising, see 659.1*
- .809 Marketing specific kinds of goods and services
 - Add 001–999 to base number 658.809, e.g., marketing automobiles 658.8096292

SUMMARY

- 658.81 Sales management
 - .82 Sales promotion
 - .83 Market research and analysis
 - .84 Channels of distribution
 - .85 Personal selling (Salesmanship)
 - .86 Wholesale marketing
 - .87 Retail marketing
 - .88 Credit management
 - .89 Personal selling and retail marketing of specific kinds of goods and services
- .81 Sales management
 - Use 658.81001–658.81009 for standard subdivisions
 - For sales promotion, see 658.82*
- .810 1 Sales planning
 - Formulation of goals, objectives, standards for evaluation of sales performance; sales records and analysis
 - For market research, see 658.83*
- .810 2 Organization of sales force
 - For organization by area, see 658.8103; by product, 658.8104; by class and type of customer, 658.8105*
- .810 3 Organization of sales force by area
- .810 4 Organization of sales force by product
- .810 5 Organization of sales force by class and type of customer
- .810 6 Organization and conduct of sales meetings
- .812 Customer relations
 - Former heading: Sales policies
 - Including servicing of product, handling of inquiries and orders
- .816 Price determination
- .818 Sales forecasting

- .82 Sales promotion
 Auxiliary operations designed to reinforce and supplement advertising, direct sales efforts
 Including distribution of instruction and other booklets to consumers; gifts, prizes, samples, trading stamps
 For servicing of product, see 658.812
- .823 Packaging
- .827 Brands and trademarks
 Including producer and distributor brands
- .83 Market research and analysis
 Including use of consultants and research agencies
 Unless other instructions are given, class complex subjects with aspects in two or more subdivisions of this schedule in the number coming first in the schedule, e.g., research in France on consumer preferences in cosmetics 658.834 (not 658.83866855 or 658.83944)
 For sales forecasting, see 658.818
- [.830 9] Historical and geographical treatment
 Do not use; class in 658.839
- .834 Consumer research
 Studies of consumer preferences, attitudes, motivations, behavior
- .835 Market study
 Determination of extent of demand, location, nature, identification of market, extent and nature of competition; types of sales effort needed
- .838 Market research on specific products
 Add 001-999 to base number 658.838, e.g., cosmetics 658.83866855
- .839 Historical and geographical treatment
- .839 01-.839 04 Historical periods
 Add to 658.8390 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., market research in 1930s 658.839043
- .839 1-.839 9 Geographical treatment
 Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 658.839
- .84 Channels of distribution
 Including markets, fairs, auctions
 For wholesale marketing, see 658.86; retail marketing, 658.87
- .85 Personal selling (Salesmanship)
 Including retail salesmanship
 For personal selling of specific kinds of goods and services, see 658.89

- .86 Wholesale marketing
 - Including jobbers, manufacturers' outlets
 - Class management of wholesale businesses in 658.9165886
- .87 Retail marketing
 - Including second-hand stores, vending machines, peddlers
 - Use 658.87001–658.87009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class management of retail businesses in 658.9165887
 - For retail marketing of specific kinds of goods and services, see 658.89*
 - 658.870 1–658.870 7 Type of ownership and control
 - Class comprehensive works in 658.87
 - .870 1 Independent retail units
 - Class independent consumer cooperatives in 658.8707
 - 658.870 2–658.870 3 Retail chain-store units
 - Class comprehensive works in 658.87, chain-store consumer cooperatives in 658.8707
 - .870 2 Corporate retail chains
 - .870 3 Voluntary retail chains
 - .870 4 Sideline stores and markets
 - .870 5 Manufacturers' outlets
 - .870 6 Branch stores
 - .870 7 Consumer cooperatives
 - 658.871–658.879 Retail channels by merchandising pattern
 - Class comprehensive works in 658.87
 - .871 Department stores
 - .872 Mail-order houses
 - .873 Variety stores
 - .874 General stores
 - .875 Specialty shops
 - .876 Single-line outlets
 - .878 Supermarkets
 - .879 Discount stores
 - .88 Credit management
 - .882 Mercantile credit

- .883 Consumer (Retail) credit
- .89 Personal selling and retail marketing of specific kinds of goods and services
 - Add 001–999 to base number 658.89, e.g., personal selling of automobiles 658.896292
- .9 **Management of specific kinds of enterprises**
 - Class specific elements of management of specific kinds of enterprises in 658.1–658.8
- .91 Service and professional
 - Add 001–999 to base number 658.91, e.g., management of libraries 658.9102
- .92–.99 Other
 - Extractive, manufacturing, construction
 - Add to 658.9 the numbers following 6 in 620–690, e.g., management of apparel manufacture 658.987

659 Advertising and public relations

- .1 **Advertising**
 - Nonpersonal presentation and promotion of ideas, goods, services, paid for by an identified sponsor

SUMMARY

- 659.11 **General considerations**
 - .13 **Kinds**
 - .14 Advertising by broadcast media
 - .15 Display advertising
 - .17 Advertising by contests and lotteries
 - .19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services
- .11 General considerations
 - .111 Policies and goals
 - Including standards of performance and evaluation
 - .112 Organization
 - Management related to function
 - Class general management of advertising organizations in 658.91659112
 - .112 2 Advertising departments
 - .112 5 Advertising agencies
 - [.112 7] Research departments
 - Number discontinued; class in 659.112
 - .113 Campaigns

.13 **Kinds**

 Including specialty and entertainment advertising

.131 **General kinds**

.131 2 **National (General)**

.131 4 **Retail**

.131 5 **Advertising directed to vocational uses**

 Industrial, trade, professional, farm

659.132–659.136 **Advertising in specific media**

Class comprehensive works in 659.13

For broadcast media, see 659.14; display advertising, 659.15; contests and lotteries, 659.17

.132 **Advertising in printed media**

 Including directory advertising

For direct advertising, see 659.133

.132 2 **Copywriting**

.132 3 **Art**

 Including photography

.132 4 **Layout and typography**

.132 5] **Color**

 Number discontinued; class in 659.132

.133 **Direct advertising**

 Printed advertising delivered or handed directly to consumer

 Examples. circulars, letters, mail-order catalogs, broadsides

 Including direct-mail advertising

.134 **Advertising by position media**

 Former heading: Conventional sign

For point-of-sale advertising, see 659.157

.134 2 **Outdoor advertising**

 Billboards, roadside signs, painted displays, on-premise signs

For advertising by spectacular and other electric signs, see 659.136

.134 4 **Transportation advertising**

 Car cards, traveling displays on exteriors of vehicles, station posters

- .136 Advertising by spectacular and other electric signs
- [.137-.138] Specialty and entertainment
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 659.13
- .14 Advertising by broadcast media
- .142 Radio
- .143 Television
- .15 Display advertising
 - Including demonstrations
- .152 Exhibitions and shows
 - Including films, fashion modeling
- [.153] Demonstration
 - Number discontinued; class in 659.15
- .157 Point-of-sale advertising
 - Window, showcase, wall, counter displays
- .17 Advertising by contests and lotteries
 - Class audience participation in contests and lotteries in 790.134
- .19 Advertising specific kinds of organizations, products, services
 - Add 001-999 to base number 659.19, e.g., library advertising 659.1902
 - Class specific kinds of advertising regardless of kind of organization, product, service in 659.13-659.17
- .2 **Public relations**
 - Planned and sustained effort to establish and maintain mutual understanding between an organization and its public
 - Class here publicity
 - For advertising, see 659.1*
- .28 In specific kinds of organizations
 - Add to 659.28 the numbers following 658.114 in 658.1141-658.1148, e.g., corporations 659.285
 - Class public relations in organizations producing specific kinds of products and services regardless of kind of organization in 659.29, public relations in local Christian parish in 254.4
- .29 In organizations producing specific kinds of products and services
 - Add 001-999 to base number 659.29, e.g., public welfare agencies 659.293616

660 Chemical and related technologies

For pharmaceutical chemistry, see 615.19; elastomers and elastomer products, 678

- .01-.03 Standard subdivisions
- .04 Chemical technologies of specific states of matter
 - Add to 660.04 the numbers following 530.4 in 530.41-530.44, e.g.,
plasma technology 660.044
 - Class industrial gases in 665.7
- .05-.09 Other standard subdivisions
- .2 **Chemical engineering**
 - For industrial stoichiometry, see 660.7*
- .28 The chemical plant and its work
 - Use 660.28001-660.28009 for standard subdivisions
- .280 4 Safety technology
 - Safe engineering procedures; prevention and alleviation of
explosions and other hazards
- .280 7 Specific types of chemical plant
- .280 71 Bench-scale
- .280 72 Pilot
- .280 73 Full-scale

660.281-660.283 General considerations

Class comprehensive works in 660.28, applications to specific processes
in 660.284

- 281 Process design, assembly, automation
 - .282 Raw and auxiliary materials
 - .283 Process equipment
 - Instruments, apparatus, machinery
 - .284 Specific processes
 - Operations basically physical
 - .284 22 Crushing, grinding, screening
-
- 660.284 23-660.284 25 Mass transfer
 - Class comprehensive works in 660.2842
 - .284 23 Absorption and adsorption
 - Including gas chromatography
 - .284 24 Precipitation, filtration, solvent extraction
 - .284 25 Fractional distillation

.284 26 Evaporative and drying processes

.284 27 Heat transfer

.284 29 Other

.284 292 Momentum transfer

 Including mixing

.284 293 Humidification

.284 296 Melting

.284 298 Crystallization

.284 4 Operations basically chemical

 Add to 660.2844 the numbers following 547.2 in 547.21–547.29,
e.g., hydrogenation 660.28443

.29 Applied physical chemistry

 Add to 660.29 the numbers following 541.3 in 541.34–541.39, e.g.,
electrochemistry 660.297

.6 **Industrial biology**

.62 Industrial microbiology [*formerly also* 576.164]

.63 Industrial biochemistry

.7 **Industrial stoichiometry**

661 **Technology of industrial chemicals (heavy chemicals)**

Large-scale production of chemicals used as raw materials or reagents in
manufacture of other products

Use 661.001–661.009 for standard subdivisions

Class industrial gases in 665.7

661.03–661.08 Compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661; acids, bases, salts in 661.2–661.6;
organic compounds in 661.8

.03 **Metallic compounds**

Class metallic compounds other than those of alkali and alkaline earth
metals in 661.04–661.07

.038–.039 Alkali and alkaline earth

 Add to 661.03 the numbers following 546.3 in 546.38–546.39, e.g.,
sodium compounds 661.0382

.04–.07 **Other compounds**

 Add to 661.0 the numbers following 546 in 546.4–546.7, e.g., sulfur
compounds 661.0723

For hydrogen compounds, see 661.08

.08 **Hydrogen compounds**

 Examples: heavy water (deuterium oxide), hydrides

SUMMARY

- 661.1 Nonmetallic elements
 - .2 Acids
 - .3 Bases
 - .4 Salts
 - .5 Ammonium salts
 - .6 Sulfur and nitrogen salts
 - .8 Organic chemicals

Nonmetallic elements

Class gaseous elements in 665.8, carbon in 662.9

661.2–661.6 Acids, bases, salts

Class comprehensive works in 661, organic acids, bases, salts in 661.8

.2 Acids

- .22 Sulfuric
- .23 Hydrochloric (Muriatic)
- .24 Nitric
- .25 Phosphoric
- [.29] Other

Number discontinued; class in 661.2

.3 Bases

Class here alkalis

- .32 Sodas
 - .322 Caustic soda (Sodium hydroxide)
 - .323 Sodium bicarbonate
 - .324 Sodium carbonate
- .33 Potash and other potassium alkalis
 - .332 Caustic potash (Potassium hydroxide)
 - .333 Potassium bicarbonate
 - .334 Potassium carbonate
- .34 Ammonia and ammonium hydroxide
- .35 Other alkalis
 - Hydroxides and carbonates of lithium, rubidium, cesium, francium, alkaline earth metals

[.36] Other bases

Number discontinued; class in 661.3

- .4 Salts**
For ammonium salts, see 661.5; sulfur and nitrogen salts, 661.6
- .42 Halogen**
Chlorides, chlorites, chlorates, corresponding salts of other halogens
- .43 Phosphorus and silicon**
Phosphides, phosphites, phosphates, corresponding salts of silicon
- .5 Ammonium salts**
- .6 Sulfur and nitrogen salts**
For ammonium salts, see 661.5
- .63 Sulfur**
Sulfides, sulfites, sulfates
For plaster of paris, see 666.92
- .65 Nitrogen**
Nitrides, nitrites, nitrates
- .8 Organic chemicals**
Aliphatic and cyclic
Use 661.8001–661.8009 for standard subdivisions
Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 661.81 in 661.814–661.816, e.g., aliphatic esters 661.834
- 661.802–661.804 Derived chemicals
Class comprehensive works in 661.8
- .802 Cellulose derivatives**
- .803 Coal tar chemicals**
- .804 Petroleum chemicals**
- .805 Synthetic chemicals**
- 661.806–661.808 Special-purpose chemicals
Class comprehensive works in 661.8
- .806 Essential oils**
- .807 Solvents, diluents, extenders**
- .808 Photographic chemicals and photosensitive surfaces**
Including sensitometry [*formerly 771.534*]
Class here comprehensive works on organic and inorganic photographic chemicals
Class inorganic photographic chemicals in 661.1–661.6

- .81 Hydrocarbons
- .814 Aliphatic
- .815 Alicyclic and heterocyclic
- .816 Aromatic

661.82–661.89 Compounds based on specific elements other than carbon

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., phosphoric acids 661.87

- Sulfur compounds
- Phosphorus compounds
- Silicon compounds
- Organometallic compounds
- Nitrogen compounds
- Oxy and hydroxy compounds
- Halogenated compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

661.82–661.86 Oxy and hydroxy compounds

Class comprehensive works in 661.8

- .82 *Alcohols and phenols
 - For glycerin, see 668.2*
- .83 *Esters
- .84 *Ethers
- .85 *Aldehydes and ketones
- .86 *Acids
- .87 *Phosphorus compounds
- .88 *Silicon compounds
- .89 Other compounds
 - .891 *Halogenated compounds
 - .894 *Nitrogen compounds
 - .895 *Organometallic compounds
 - .896 *Sulfur compounds

* Add as instructed under 661.8

662 Technology of explosives, fuels, related products

SUMMARY

- 662.1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)
 - .2 Explosives
 - .4 Detonators
 - .5 Matches
 - .6 Fuels
 - .7 Coke and charcoal
 - .8 Other fuels
 - .9 Nonfuel carbons
- .1 Fireworks (Pyrotechnics)
- .2 Explosives
 - Chemicals for propelling, bursting, demolition charges
For fireworks, see 662.1
- .26 Propellants (Burning and deflagratory charges)
 - Black powder (gunpowder), smokeless powder, nitrocellulose (guncotton), cordite, flashless and coated powders
For rocket propellants, see 662.666
- .27 High explosives
 - Nitroglycerin, dynamite, nitroguanidine, TNT (trinitrotoluene), ammonium picrate and chlorate, PETN (pentaerythrite tetranitrate), RDX (cyclonite, hexagen), tetryl, HMTD (hexamethylenetriperoxidediamine)
Including primary explosives, e.g., mercury fulminate, lead azide and picrate, diazonitrophenol
- .4 Detonators
 - Fuses, primers, firing mechanisms, boosters, percussion caps
- .5 Matches
- .6 Fuels
 - Class petroleum in 665.5, gaseous fuels in 665.7, other fuels not provided for here in 662.8
- .62 Coal
 - For coke, see 662.72*
- .622 Properties, tests, analysis
- .622 09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class properties, tests, analysis of coal from specific places in 662.6229

- .622 1-.622 5 **Of specific types**
 - Add to 662.622 the numbers following 553.2 in 553.21-553.25, e.g., analysis of bituminous coal 662.6224
- .622 9 **Of coal from specific places**
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 662.6229
 - Class specific types of coal regardless of place in 662.6221-662.6225
- .623 **Mechanical treatment**
 - Washing, coloring, drying, grinding, sizing
- .624 **Storage, transportation, distribution**
- .625 **Uses**
 - Class a specific use with the subject, e.g., metallurgical use 669.81
- .65 **Bagasse, briquettes, wood, sawdust**
 - For charcoal, see 662.74*
- .66 **Synthetic fuels**
- .662 **Synthetic petroleum**
- .662 2 **Bergius process**
 - Production thru hydrogenation and liquefaction of coal
- .662 3 **Fischer-Tropsch processes**
 - Production thru hydrogenation of carbonaceous gases
- .666 **Rocket fuels (Rocket propellants)**
 - Liquid and solid
- .669 **Other liquid fuels**
 - Fuel alcohols, benzenes from waste products
- .7 **Coke and charcoal**
- .72 **Coke**
- .74 **Charcoal**
- .8 **Other fuels**
- .82 **Colloidal and mud fuels**
- .86 **High-energy boron fuels**
- .9 **Nonfuel carbons**
- .92 **Graphite and graphite products**
- .93 **Adsorbent carbons**
 - Activated carbons, animal black, bone char, carbon black, adsorbent charcoals, decolorizing carbons, lampblack

663 Beverage technology

Manufacture (commercial preparation and preservation), packaging

Class household preparation of beverages in 641.87

SUMMARY

- 663.1 Alcoholic beverages**
 - .2 Wines and wine making**
 - .3 Brewed and malted beverages**
 - .4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages**
 - .5 Distilled liquors**
 - .6 Nonalcoholic beverages**
 - .9 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages**

.1 Alcoholic beverages

For wines and wine making, see 663.2; brewed and malted beverages, 663.3; distilled liquors, 663.5

- .11 Raw and auxiliary materials**
- .12 Preliminary preparations**
- .13 Fermentation**
- .14 Packing**
- .15 Refrigeration and pasteurization**
- .16 Distillation**
- .17 Aging**
- .19 Bottling**

.2 Wines and wine making

Use 663.2001–663.2009 for standard subdivisions

.201–.209 General principles

Add to 663.20 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.203

663.22–663.29 Specific kinds of wines

Class comprehensive works in 663.2

- .22 Grape wines**
 - Natural and fortified
- .222 White**
- .223 Red**
- .224 Sparkling**
 - White and red
- .29 Wines from other fruits**

.3 Brewed and malted beverages

Add to 663.3 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., fermentation 663.33 .

For specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages, see 663.4

.4 Specific kinds of brewed and malted beverages

.42 Beers and ales

.49 Sake and pulque

.5 Distilled liquors

Use 663.5001–663.5009 for standard subdivisions

.501–.509 General principles

Add to 663.50 the numbers following 663.1 in 663.11–663.19, e.g., distillation 663.506

663.52–663.59 Specific kinds of liquors

Class comprehensive works in 663.5

.52 Grain whiskies

.53 Brandies

.55 Compound liquors

Distilled spirits flavored with various seeds, roots, leaves, flowers, fruits, e.g., gin, cordials (liqueurs)

.59 Other

Mescal, potato whisky, tequila, vodka, rum

.6 Nonalcoholic beverages

For nonalcoholic brewed beverages, see 663.9, milk, 637.1

.61 Potable water

Bottled and canned

.62 Mineralized and carbonated beverages

Artificial and natural

.63 Fruit and vegetable juices

.64 Milk substitutes

Beverages and beverage constituents from soybeans, coconuts, malted cereals

.9 Nonalcoholic brewed beverages

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 1 Raw and auxiliary materials
- 2 Preliminary preparations
- 3 Fermentation and oxidation
- 4 Firing, roasting, curing
- 5 Blending
- 7 Specific varieties
- 8 Concentrates
- 9 Packaging

.92 Cacao, cocoa, chocolate

.93 *Coffee

.94 *Tea

.96 Herb teas

Catnip, saffrafras, maté, other aromatic and medicinal teas

.97 Coffee substitutes

Chicory, acorns, cereal preparations

664 Food technology

Manufacture (commercial preparation and preservation), packaging of edible products for human and animal consumption

Class here comprehensive works on processing food and beverages

Use 664.001–664.009 for standard subdivisions

For dairy and related technologies, see 637; household preservation and preparation, 641.4–641.8, beverage technology, 663

.01 Raw and auxiliary materials

.02 Processes

.022 Extraction

.023 Refining

.024 Manufacture

.028 Preservation techniques

.028 1 Preliminary treatment

.028 2 Canning

.028 4 Drying and dehydrating

.028 42 By slow, thermal processes

.028 43 Thru pulverization and flaking

.028 45 By freeze-drying

* Add as instructed under 663.9

- .028 5 Low-temperature techniques
- .028 52 Cold storage
- .028 53 Deep freezing
- .028 6 Chemical preservation
 - Including brining, pickling, smoking
 - For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287*
- .028 7 Chemical preservation by use of additives
- .028 8 Treatment with electromagnetic radiations (Irradiation)
- .06 Additives
 - Production, properties, use
 - For chemical preservation by use of additives, see 664.0287*
- .07 Tests, analyses, quality controls
 - For texture, taste, odor, color, contaminants
- .08 By-products
- .09 Packaging

SUMMARY

- 664.1 Sugars, sirups, their derived products
 - .2 Starches and jellying agents
 - .3 Fats and oils
 - .4 Food salts
 - .5 Other flavoring aids
 - .6 Special-purpose foods and aids
 - .7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products
 - .8 Fruits and vegetables
 - .9 Meats and allied foods
 - .1 Sugars, sirups, their derived products
 - .102 8] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use, class in 664.11
-
- 664.11–664.13 Sugars and sirups
 - Class comprehensive works in 664.1
 - .11 General principles of sugars and sirups
 - Class general principles applied to specific sugars and sirups in 664.12–664.13
 - .111 Raw and auxiliary materials
 - .112 Preliminary preparations
 - .113 Extraction and purification

- .114 Concentration
 - Production of sirups
 - .115 Crystallization
 - Production of sugars
 - .116 Additives
 - .117 Tests, analyses, quality controls
 - For texture, taste, color, contaminants
 - .118 By-products
 - Example: molasses
 - Class utilization in 664.19
 - .119 Packaging
-
- 664.12–664.13 Specific sugars and sirups
- Class comprehensive works in 664.1
- .12 Cane and beet sugars and sirups
 - .122 Cane
 - Add to 664 122 the numbers following 664.11 in 664.111–664.119,
e.g., molasses 664.1228
 - .123 Beet
 - .13 Other sugars and sirups
 - For honey, see 638.16*
 - .132 Maple
 - .133 Corn and sorghum
 - .139 Jerusalem artichoke
 - .15 Sugar products
 - Jams, jellies, marmalades
 - .153 Candies
 - .19 By-product utilization
 - Class a specific use with the subject, e.g., molasses for rum 663.59
 - .2 **Starches and jelling agents**
 - 664.22–664.23 Starches
 - Class comprehensive works in 664.2
 - .22 Cornstarch and potato starch
 - .23 Cassava and arrowroot starches

[.24]

Other starches

Number discontinued; class in 664.2

664.25–664.26 **Jellying agents**

Class comprehensive works in 664.2

.25

Pectins

.26

Gelatins

Of animal and vegetable origin

.3

Fats and oils

Animal and vegetable

.32

Oleomargarins

[.33]

Other hydrogenated fats and oils

Number discontinued; class in 664.3

.34

Lard

.36

Salad and cooking oils

.362

Olive oil

.363

Cottonseed oil

.369

Other

Corn, soybean, peanut, safflower, sesame oils

.37

Salad dressings

Products in which oil is principal ingredient, e g., mayonnaise, french dressing

.4

Food salts

Table salt, monosodium glutamate, tenderizers, sodium-free and other dietetic salts

.5

Other flavoring aids

.52–.54

Essences, spices, condiments

Add to 664.5 the numbers following 633.8 in 633.82–633.84, e.g., vanilla extract 664.52

.55

Vinegar

.58

Composites

Examples: catsups, chutneys, sauces

.6 Special-purpose foods and aids**664.62–664.66 Special-purpose foods**

Class comprehensive works in 664.6, a specific food with the subject,
e.g., vegetables 664.8

.62 Baby foods**.63 Low-calorie foods****.64 Meatless high-protein foods****.65 Composites**

Complete meals, packaged ingredients for specific recipes

Class secondary cereal products in 664.75

.66 Pet foods**.68 Leavening agents and baking aids**

Baking powder, baking soda, cream of tartar, yeast

.7 Grains, other seeds, their derived products**.72 Milling and milling products**

Use 664.72001–664.72009 for standard subdivisions

For animal feeds, see 664.76

664.720 1–664.720 9 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 664.72

.720 1 Preliminary treatment**.720 3 Grinding and deflaking****.720 4 Sifting, grading, quality controls****.720 7 Products**

Refined grains, flours, meals

.720 8 By-products

Bran, siftings, millings

.720 9 Packaging**.722 Wheat****.722 7 Products****722 72 Flour****722 73 Meal****722 8 By-products**

Bran, siftings, millings

-
- .725 **Other cereal grains and their flours and meals**
 - Corn, oats, rye, rice, buckwheat, millet
 - .726 **Other seeds and their flours and meals**
 - Cottonseeds, soybeans, sunflowers, peanuts, nuts
 - .75 **Secondary products**
 - Manufacture and packaging
 - .752 **Bakery goods**
 - Breads, pastries, crackers
 - .753 **Mixes and prepared doughs**
 - .755 **Pastas**
 - Macaroni, spaghetti, vermicelli, noodles, and their variants
 - .756 **Ready-to-eat cereals**
 - .76 **Animal feeds**
 - Milling, manufacture, packaging
 - .762 **Cereal grains**
 - Individual and mixtures
 - .763 **Other seeds**
 - Individual and mixtures
 - .764 **Cereal grain and seed mixtures**
 - .768 **Formula feeds**
 - Pellets, cakes, flakes, granules, powders basically of cereal grains and other seeds and fortified with vitamins and minerals
 - .8 Fruits and vegetables**
 - .800 1–.800 9 **Standard subdivisions**
 - Class ancillary techniques in 664.807–664.809, preservation techniques in 664.81–664.88
 - .807–.809 **Ancillary techniques**
 - Add to 664.80 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.07–664.09, e.g., packaging vegetables 664.809
 - .81–.88 **Preservation techniques**
 - Add to 664.8 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., deep freezing fruits 664.853
 - .9 Meats and allied foods**
 - .900 1–.900 9 **Standard subdivisions**
 - Class specific techniques in 664.902–664.909

- .902 Preservation techniques and operating installations
- .902 8 Preservation techniques
 - Add to 664.9028 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., slaughtering 664.90281
- .902 9 Slaughterhouses
- .907–.909 Ancillary techniques
 - Add to 664.90 the numbers following 664.0 in 664.07–664.09, e.g., packaging meats and allied foods 664.909



664.92–664.95 Specific products

Class comprehensive works in 664.9

- .92 Red meats
 - Add to 664.92 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning red meats 664.922
- .93 Poultry
 - Add to 664.93 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., dressing poultry 664.931
- .94 Seafood
 - Fish and shellfish
 - Add to 664.94 the numbers following 664.028 in 664.0281–664.0288, e.g., canning seafood 664.942
- .95 Other
 - Frogs, turtles, snails, insects

665 Technology of industrial oils, fats, waxes, gases

Nonvolatile, saponifying, lubricating oils, fats, waxes of organic and mineral origin; natural, derived, manufactured gases

- .028 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
- .028 2 Extraction
 - Rendering, pressurizing, steam distilling
- .028 3 Refining
 - Purifying, bleaching, coloring, fractionating, blending
- .028 8 Tests, analyses, quality controls

SUMMARY

- 665.1 Waxes
 - .2 Animal fats and oils
 - .3 Vegetable fats and oils
 - .4 Mineral oils and waxes
 - .5 Petroleum
 - .7 Industrial gases
 - .8 Other industrial gases

- .1 **Waxes**
 - For mineral waxes, see 665.4*
- .12 **Vegetable**
 - Carnauba, candelilla (grass wax), laurel, myrtle, candleberry, bayberry waxes
- .13 **Animal**
 - Including spermaceti, lanolin (wool wax), insect waxes
 - For beeswax, see 638.17*
- .19 **Blended**
- .2 **Animal fats and oils**
 - Tallows, fish, whale, neat's-foot oils
- .3 **Vegetable fats and oils**
- .33 **Wood oils**
- .332 **Crude turpentine**
 - Class turpentine oils in 661.806
- .333 **Tung oil (Chinese wood oil)**
- .35 **Other**
- .352 **Linseed oil (Flaxseed oil)**
- .353 **Castor oil**
- .354 **Cacao butter (Cocoa butter)**
- .355 **Coconut oil**
- .4 **Mineral oils and waxes**
 - Including ozocerite, shale oils, naturally-occurring paraffins and asphalts
 - For petroleum, see 665.5*
- .5 **Petroleum**
 - Class here comprehensive works on petroleum and natural gas
 - For natural gas, see 665.7*
- .502 8 **Apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - Class techniques in 665.53
- .53 **Refinery treatment and products**
- .532 **Fractional distillation**
- .533 **Cracking processes**
 - Thermal and catalytic cracking, hydrogenation of residual petroleum distillates
- .534 **Purification and blending of distillates**

-
- .538 Refinery products and by-products
 - Tests, analyses, quality controls, specifications, additives
 - For petroleum chemicals, see 661.804*
 - .538 2 Highly volatile products
 - .538 24 Low-boiling naphthas
 - .538 25 Aviation fuels
 - High-octane-rating gasolines, jet and turbojet fuels
 - .538 27 Gasolines for land vehicles
 - .538 3 Kerosenes
 - For jet and turbojet fuels, see 665.53825*
 - .538 4 Heavy fuel oils
 - Gas oil, absorber oil, diesel fuels, fuel oils for heating
 - .538 5 Lubricating oils and greases
 - Petrolatums and paraffinic waxes
 - .538 8 Residues (Bottoms)
 - Asphalts, bunker and road oils, petroleum coke, pitch
 - .54 Storage, transportation, distribution
 - .55 Uses
 - Class a specific use with the subject, e.g., automobile engine lubricants 629.255
 - .7 Industrial gases**
 - Natural and manufactured
 - For other industrial gases, see 665.8*
 - .73 Processing natural gas
 - Including extraction of helium
 - .74 Storage, transportation, distribution
 - .75 Uses
 - Class a specific use with the subject, e.g., heating buildings 697.043
 - .77 Production of manufactured gases
 - .772 From coal and coke
 - Coal, producer, water, carbureted-blue, blast-furnace, city, coke-oven gases
 - .773 From petroleum and natural gas
 - Oil, refinery, reformed-refinery, reformed-natural, liquefied-hydrocarbon gases, e.g., butane, propane, pentane, butene and their mixtures
 - .779 By mixing fuel gases from several sources

.8 Other industrial gases*For ammonia, see 661.34***.81 Hydrogen****.82 Gases derived from liquefaction and fractionation of air****.822 Rare gases**

Helium, argon, neon, xenon, krypton

Class extraction of helium from natural gases in 665.73

.823 Oxygen**.824 Nitrogen****.83 Halogen gases****.84 Sulfur dioxide****.85 Acetylene****.89 Other**

Carbon dioxide, ozone, hydrogen sulfide

666 Ceramic and allied technologies

Class here ceramic-to-metal bonding

SUMMARY**666.1 Glass****.2 Enameling and enamels****.3 Pottery****.4 Pottery processes and equipment****.5 Porcelain (China)****.6 Earthenware and stoneware****.7 Refractories and structural clay products****.8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and stones****.9 Masonry adhesives****.1 Glass**

[.102 8] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use, class in 666.12

.104 General special**.104 2 Physicochemical phenomena occurring during glassmaking processes**

Examples: phase and structural transformations

666.12–666.13 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 666.1, generalities applied to specific types of glass in 666.15

.12 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

.121 Raw and auxiliary materials

666.122–666.129 Specific operations in glassmaking

Class comprehensive works in 666.12

For tests, analyses, quality controls, see 666.13

.122 Blowing

.123 Pressing

.124 Drawing

.125 Molding and casting

.126 Multiform processes

Cold-molding glass powder under pressure, and firing at high temperatures

.129 Annealing and tempering

.13 Tests, analyses, quality controls

.15 Specific types of glass

.152 Window

.153 Plate

.154 Laminated

.155 Heat-resistant

.156 Optical

.157 Fiber glass and foam glass

.19 Products

.2 Enameling and enamels

Vitreous glazes fused over metal, glass, pottery

.3 Pottery

Add "Standard Subdivisions" notation from Table 1, but omit 0, e.g., periodicals on pottery 666.35

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 666.4

For specific types of pottery, see 666.5–666.6

.4 Pottery processes and equipment

Add to 666.4 the numbers following 738.1 in 738.12–738.15, e.g., kilns 666.43

666.5–666.6 Specific types of pottery

Class comprehensive works in 666.3

.5 Porcelain (China)**.58 Specific products**

Examples: vases, tableware, figurines

.6 Earthenware and stoneware**.68 Specific products**

Examples: containers, tableware, figurines, industrial products

.7 Refractories and structural clay products**.72 Refractory materials**

Asbestos, fire-clays, alumina, zirconia, chrome, talc, mica

.73 Structural clay products**.732 Roofing tiles****.733 Tile drains and piping****.737 Solid bricks****.738 Hollow and perforated bricks****.8 Synthetic and artificial minerals and stones****666.86–666.88 Synthetic and artificial minerals**

Class comprehensive works in 666.8

.86 Synthetic and artificial earthy minerals

Examples: mica, feldspar, graphite, cryolite

.88 Synthetic and artificial gems and gem minerals

Examples: diamonds, garnets, rubies, sapphires

.89 Artificial stones**.894 Hollow concrete and cinder blocks****.895 Solid concrete blocks****.9 Masonry adhesives****.92 Gypsum plasters**

Examples: plaster of paris, cement plaster and mortar, Keene's cement

.93 Limes and lime mortars**.94 Portland cement****.95 Other cements**

Asbestos, magnesia, high-alumina cements

667 Cleaning, color and related technologies**SUMMARY**

- 667.1 Cleaning and bleaching**
- .2 Dyes and pigments**
- .3 Dyeing and printing**
- .4 Inks**
- .5 Printing inks**
- .6 Paints**
- .7 Varnishes and allied products**
- .8 Japans (Oil varnishes)**
- .9 Coating and coatings**

.1 Cleaning and bleaching

Of textiles, feathers, leathers, furs

.12 Dry cleaning**.13 Laundering and finishing operations****.14 Bleaching****.2 Dyes and pigments****667.25–667.26 Dyes**

Class comprehensive works in 667.2

.25 Synthetic dyes

Add to 667.25 the numbers following 547.86 in 547.862–547.867, e.g.,
manufacture of azo-oxy dyes 667.253

.26 Natural dyes**.29 Pigments****.3 Dyeing and printing**

For dyes, see 667.25–667.26

.31–.35 Dyeing specific textiles

Add to 667.3 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.5, e.g., dyeing
nylon 667.3473

.38 Textile printing**.4 Inks**

For printing inks, see 667.5

.5 Printing inks**.6 Paints****.62 Oil-soluble****.622 Oils, driers, plasticizers**

- .623 **Pigments and extenders**
 For carbon black, see 662.93
- .624 **Diluents (Thinners)**
- .63 **Water-soluble**
 Examples: whitewash and latex paints
- .69 **Special-purpose**
 Examples. fire-resistant, luminous, rust-resistant paints
- .7 **Varnishes and allied products**
 For japans, see 667.8
- .72 **Polishes**
- .75 **Lackers**
- .79 **Spirit varnishes**
 Shellacs and spar varnishes
- .8 **Japans (Oil varnishes)**
- .9 **Coating and coatings**
 Methods and materials for producing protective and decorative coatings,
 e.g., painting, varnishing, spraying, dipping, metalizing
 Including sign painting [*formerly 698.128*]
 Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., painting automobiles
 629.26, a specific coating with the subject, e.g., varnishes 667.7

668 **Technology of other organic products**

SUMMARY

- 668.1 **Surface-active materials (Surfactants)**
 - .2 Glycerin
 - .3 Adhesives and related products
 - .4 Plastics
 - .5 Perfumes and cosmetics
 - .6 Agricultural chemicals and related products
- .1 **Surface-active materials (Surfactants)**
- .12 **Soaps**
- .124 **Soluble**
 Framed and milled soaps, chips, powders, liquid concentrates
- .125 **Insoluble (Metallic)**
 Oleates and stearates of aluminum, copper, cobalt, magnesium,
 iron, calcium
- .127 **Scouring compounds**

- .14 Detergents and wetting agents
 - Non-soap materials that manifest surface activity, e.g., sulfated oils and hydrocarbons, fatty-alcohol sulfates
- .2 Glycerin
- .3 Adhesives and related products
 - .31 Synthetic glues
 - .32 Animal glues
 - Glues derived from meat-packing by-products, albumin, casein
 - .33 Vegetable glues
 - Starch pastes, mucilages, nitrocellulose and soybean glues
 - .34 Crude gelatin
 - .37 Gums and resins
 - .372 Natural
 - .374 Synthetic
 - Example: epoxy resins
 - .38 Sealants
- .4 Plastics
 - [.402 8] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use; class in 668.41
 - .404 General special
 - .404 2 Physicochemical phenomena occurring during processes of plastics manufacture

SUMMARY

- 668.41 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - .42 Polymerization plastics
 - .43 Protein plastics
 - .44 Cellulosics
 - .45 Plastics from natural resins
 - .49 Products
- .41 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for manufacturing specific kinds of plastics in 668.42–668.45
- .411 Raw and auxiliary materials
 - Linters, bagasse, fillers, lubricants, plasticizers

668.412–668.419 Specific operations

Class comprehensive works in 668.41

- .412 Molding and casting
- .413 Extrusion
- .414 Laminating
- .415 Welding
- .416 Reinforcing
- .419 Tests, analyses, quality control

668.42–668.45 Specific kinds of plastics

Class comprehensive works in 668.4

- 42 Polymerization plastics
- 422 Thermosetting
 - 422 2 Phenolics
 - 422 3 Ureas
 - 422 4 Melamines
 - 422 5 Polyesters
 - Example: polyurethanes
 - 422 6 Epoxies
 - 422 7 Silicones
- 423 Thermoplastic
 - 423 2 Acrylics (Polyacrylics)
 - 423 3 Styrenes (Polystyrenes)
 - 423 4 Polyolefins
 - Examples: polyethylenes, polypropylenes, polyisobutylenes
 - 423 5 Polyamides (Nylons)
 - 423 6 Vinyls (Polyvinyls)
 - 423 7 Vinyl chlorides
 - 423 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons
- 43 Protein plastics
 - Derived from casein, and from proteins of corn and soybeans
- 44 Cellulosics
- 45 Plastics from natural resins
 - Including shellac and lignin-derived plastics
 - For protein plastics, see 668.43*

- .49 **Products**
 - Class plastic fibers and fabrics in 677.46–677.47
- .492 Laminated plastics
- .493 Foamed plastics
- .494 Reinforced plastics
- .495 Plastic films
- .5 **Perfumes and cosmetics**
 - .54 Perfumes
 - .542 Natural
 - Floral oils and waters
 - .544 Synthetic
 - .55 Cosmetics
- .6 **Agricultural chemicals and related products**
 - .62 Fertilizers
 - Add to 668.62 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.83–631.85, e.g., superphosphates 668.625
 - For organic fertilizers, see 668.63*
 - .63 Organic fertilizers
 - Add to 668.63 the numbers following 631.8 in 631.86–631.87, e.g., processing farmyard manures 668.6361
 - .64 Soil conditioners
 - Manufactured and organic
 - .65 Pesticides
 - .651 Insecticides and rodenticides
 - Fumigants, contact and stomach poisons
 - .652 Fungicides
 - .654 Herbicides (Weed killers)

669 **Metallurgy**

- Class here interdisciplinary works on metals
- Use 669.001–669.009 for standard subdivisions
- Class a specific aspect of metals with the subject, e.g., chemistry 546.3
- .01 Philosophy and theory of extractive metallurgy

- .02 Miscellany of extractive metallurgy
- .028 Techniques, apparatus, equipment
 - Class materials in 669.042
- .028 2 Pyrometallurgy
 - Extraction by smelting, roasting, other furnace methods
- .028 3 Hydrometallurgy
 - Extraction by leaching methods
- .028 4 Electrometallurgy
 - Deposition, zone melting, vacuum metallurgy
- .03 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of extractive metallurgy
- .04 General special
- .042 Materials of extractive metallurgy
 - Scrap metals and prepared ores
 - Class furnace materials in 669.8
- .05–.09 Other standard subdivisions of extractive metallurgy

SUMMARY

- 669.1 Ferrous metals**
- .2 Precious metals, lanthanide and actinide series metals
- .3 Copper
- .4 Lead
- .5 Zinc and cadmium
- .6 Tin
- .7 Other nonferrous metals
- .8 Metallurgical furnaces
- .9 Physical and chemical metallurgy

669.1–669.7 Metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys

Class comprehensive works in 669

For physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.96

- .1 Ferrous metals**
- .14 Reduction and refining of ferrous ores
- .141 Production of commercial iron and iron alloys
 - For production of ingot iron, see 669.1423*
- .141 3 Blast furnace practice
 - Production of pig iron and crude cast iron
- .141 4 Puddling furnace practice
 - Production of wrought iron

- .141 9 Other iron alloy practices
 - Including production of iron powder and sponge iron
- .142 Production of commercial steel and alloy steels
- .142 2 Open-hearth furnace practice (Siemens process)
- .142 3 Bessemer converter practice
 - Production of Bessemer steel, ingot iron, duplex-process steel
- .142 4 Electric furnace practice
 - Production in arc and induction furnaces
- .142 9 Production of crucible steel

669.2–669.7 Nonferrous metals

Class comprehensive works in 669

.2 Precious metals, lanthanide and actinide series metals

669.22–669.24 Precious metals

Class comprehensive works in 669.2

For rhodium, ruthenium, iridium, osmium, palladium, see 669.7

- .22 Gold
- .23 Silver
- .24 Platinum
- .29 Lanthanide and actinide series metals
 - Add to 669.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.401–546.44, e.g., uranium 669.2931

.3 Copper

Brass, bronze, Muntz metal, gunmetal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze

.4 Lead

.5 Zinc and cadmium

For brass, Muntz metal, see 669.3

.6 Tin

For bronze, gunmetal, see 669.3

.7 Other nonferrous metals

Including rhenium, rhodium, ruthenium, iridium, osmium, palladium, selenium

.71 Mercury

- .72 Light metals
- .722 Aluminum
 - For aluminum bronze, copper-aluminum alloys, see 669.3*
- .723 Magnesium
- .724 Beryllium
 - For copper-beryllium alloys, see 669.3*
- .725 Alkali and alkaline earth metals
 - Including sodium, potassium, lithium, rubidium, cesium, francium, strontium, calcium, barium, radium
 - For magnesium, see 669.723, beryllium, 669.724*
- .73 Ferroalloying metals
- .732 Titanium, vanadium, manganese
- .733 Nickel and cobalt
- .734 Chromium, molybdenum, tungsten
- .735 Zirconium and tantalum
- .75 Antimony, arsenic, bismuth
- .79 Minor metals
 - Niobium, hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium, tellurium, thallium, columbium, boron
- .8 Metallurgical furnaces
 - Operation, maintenance, supplies
 - Class metallurgical furnaces used in a specific operation with the operation, e.g., extraction of nickel 669.733
- .81 Fuels
- .82 Refractory materials
- .83 Firing and heat control
- .84 Slags and fluxes
- .85 Physical processes
 - Example: heat exchange
- .9 Physical and chemical metallurgy
 - Physical and chemical phenomena occurring during metallurgical processes; physical and chemical analyses of metals, formation of alloys
 - Class fabrication of metals and manufacture of primary products in 671–673
- .92 Chemical analysis
 - Including assay practices
 - Class chemical analysis of specific metals and their alloys in 669.96

- .94 Physicochemical metallurgical phenomena
 Examples: alloy binary systems, solid solutions, intermetallic compounds
 Including phase diagrams
 Class physicochemical metallurgical phenomena of specific metals and
 their alloys in 669.96
- .95 Metallography
 Study of metal and alloy structure
- .950 28 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
- .950 282 Microscopical metallography
 Optical and electron metallography
- .950 283 X-ray metallography
- .951–.957 Of specific metals and their alloys
 Add to 669.95 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g.,
 aluminum 669.95722
- .96 Physical and chemical metallurgy of specific metals and
 their alloys
 Add to 669.96 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., titanium
 669.96732
 *For metallography of specific metals and their alloys, see 669.951–
 669.957*

670 Manufactures

- Planning, design, fabrication of products
 Class the arts in 700, manufactures based on chemical technologies in 660, other
 engineering products in 620
For miscellaneous manufactures, see 680

671 Metal manufactures

- Fabrication of metals and manufacture of primary products
For manufactures of specific metals, see 672–673

SUMMARY

- 671.2 Foundry practice (Hot-working operations)
- .3 Mechanical working and forming of metals
- .4 Electroforming of metals
- .5 Joining and cutting of metals
- .7 Finishing and surface treatment of metals
- .8 Primary products
- .2 Foundry practice (Hot-working operations)
- .22 Foundry equipment
- .23 Patternmaking and moldmaking

- .24 Melting
- .25 Molding and casting
 - Sand, die, centrifugal, other methods
- .3 **Mechanical working and forming of metals**
 - Class here cold-working operations
- .32 Rolling
- .33 Forging, pressing, stamping
- .34 Extruding and drawing
- .35 Machining and grinding
- .36 Heat treatment and hardening
 - Annealing, tempering, age-hardening
- .37 Powder metallurgical processes (Powder metallurgy)
- .4 **Electroforming of metals**
 - Shaping by electrodeposition on mold
- .5 **Joining and cutting of metals**
 - .52 Welding
 - .520 4 General special
 - .520 42 Welds (Welded joints)
 - .520 422 Weldability, weld stability, weld defects
 - .520 423 Inspection and testing
 - .521 Electric
 - .521 2 Arc
 - .521 3 Resistance
 - Spot, seam, projection, flash welding
 - .521 5 Induction
 - .522 Gas
 - .529 Other methods
 - Examples: forge, thermit, flow welding
 - .53 Cutting
 - .56 Soldering and brazing
 - .59 Riveting
- .7 **Finishing and surface treatment of metals**
 - Including cleaning
- .72 Buffing and polishing

- .73 Coating
 - Cladding, plating, other processes
- .732 Electroplating
- .733 Hot-metal dipping
- .734 Metal spraying
- .735 Vapor plating (Vacuum deposition)
 - Vacuum metalizing, vapor-phase deposition
- .736 Diffusion coating
- .739] Other finishing processes
 - Number discontinued; class in 671.73
- .8 Primary products
- .82 Rolled
 - .821 Patternmaking
 - .823 Strips and sheets
- .83 Forged, prest, stamp
 - Examples: tubes, pipes
- .84 Extruded and drawn
 - Examples: wires, cordage, cables
- .87 Powder metal



672–673 Manufactures of specific metals

Class comprehensive works in 671

672 Ferrous metals manufactures

Steel, iron and steel alloys

Add to 672 the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., galvanizing 672.73

673 Nonferrous metals manufactures

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 671 in 671.2–671.8, e.g., welding aluminum 673.72252

.2 Precious metals, lanthanide and actinide series metals



673.22–673.24 Precious metals

Class comprehensive works in 673.2

For rhodium, ruthenium, iridium, osmium, palladium, see 673.7

- .22 *Gold
- .23 *Silver

^ Add as instructed under 673

- .24 ***Platinum**
- .29 **Lanthanide and actinide series metals**
 - Add to 673.29 the numbers following 546.4 in 546.401–546.44, e.g., cerium 673.2912
- .3 ***Copper**
 - Class here brass, bronze, Muntz metal, gunmetal, copper-aluminum alloys, copper-beryllium alloys, aluminum bronze
- .4 ***Lead**
- .5 **Zinc and cadmium**
 - For brass, Muntz metal, see 673.3*
- .6 ***Tin**
 - For bronze, gunmetal, see 673.3*
- .7 **Other metals**
 - Including rhenium, rhodium, ruthenium, iridium, osmium, palladium, selenium
- .71 ***Mercury**
- .72 **Light metals**
- .722 ***Aluminum**
 - For aluminum bronze, copper-aluminum alloys, see 673.3*
- .723 ***Magnesium**
- .724 ***Beryllium**
 - For copper-beryllium alloys, see 673.3*
- .725 **Alkali and alkaline earth metals**
 - Including sodium, potassium, lithium, rubidium, cesium, francium, strontium, calcium, barium, radium
 - For magnesium, see 673.723; beryllium, 673.724*
- .73 **Ferroalloying metals**
 - Add to 673.73 the numbers following 669.73 in 669.732–669.735, e.g., nickel 673.733
- .75 **Antimony, arsenic, bismuth**
- .79 **Minor metals**
 - Niobium, hafnium, germanium, gallium, indium, tellurium, thallium, columbium, boron

* Add as instructed under 673

674 Lumber, cork, wood-using technologies

Use 674.001–674.009 for standard subdivisions

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions of lumber technology

Class specifications in 674.5

SUMMARY

- 674.1 Structure, properties, types of lumber**
- .2 Sawmill operations**
- .3 Storage and seasoning of lumber**
- .4 Production of finished lumber**
- .5 Grading lumber**
- .8 Wood-using technologies**
- .9 Cork technology**

674.1–674.5 Lumber technology

Class comprehensive works in 674

- .1 Structure, properties, types of lumber**
- .12 Structure**
 - Gross and microscopic
- .13 Properties and their tests**
- .132 Physical**
- .134 Chemical**
 - Including properties of wood extracts
- .14 Specific types**
 - Class structure of specific types in 674.12, properties of specific types and their tests in 674.13
- .142 Hardwoods**
 - Wood of broad-leaved, deciduous trees, e.g., oak, maple, cherry, chestnut, elm, basswood, beech, poplar
- .144 Softwoods**
 - Wood of coniferous trees, e.g., pine, spruce, fir, hemlock, cypress, cedar, larch, redwood
- .2 Sawmill operations**
 - Conversion of logs into rough lumber
- [.202 8] **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - Do not use; class in 674.22
- .22 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**

.28 Products

Rough lumber products and dimension stock (cut stock)

For wood waste and residues, see 674.84

[.282--.287] Specific products

Numbers discontinued; class in 674.28

.3 Storage and seasoning of lumber

.32 Storage in lumberyards

.38 Seasoning and drying

.382 By air

.384 In kiln

.386 By chemical treatment

.4 Production of finished lumber

.42 By planing mills

Production of surfaced lumber

.43 By other techniques

Production of pattern lumber, e.g., shiplap, sidings, tongue-and-groove products

.5 Grading lumber

Including inspection and specifications

.8 Wood-using technologies

Class here wood products

For pulp and paper technology, see 676; wooden furniture, 684.104

.82 Containers (Cooperage)

Crates, boxes, barrels, casks

.83 Veneers and composite woods

.833 Veneers

.834 Plywood

.835 Wood laminates (Specialty plywoods, sandwich panels)

.84 Wood waste and residues

Excelsior, wood flour, sawdust, wood shavings, other mill residues

.88 Minor products

Examples: wood-cased pencils, toothpicks, spools, woodenware, picture frames

.9 Cork technology

Including cork products

675 Leather and fur technologies*For leather and fur goods, see 685***.2 Processing of natural leather****.22 Preliminary operations**

Salting, fleshing, unhairing (liming), bating, washing hides and skins

.23 Tanning**.24 Dressing**

Fat liquoring (lubricating), stuffing, toggling, pasting

.25 Finishing

Dyeing, boarding, embossing, buffing (suede leather), glazing, moldproofing, production of patent leather

.29 Properties, tests, quality controls**.3 Fur technologies**

Processing of natural furs, manufacture of imitation furs

.4 Manufacture of imitation leathers**676 Pulp and paper technology**

Materials, machinery, manufacturing processes, properties, tests, recovery of waste products

SUMMARY**676.1 Pulp****.2 Paper and paper products****.3 Paper and paperboard containers****.4 Purified pulp****.5 By-products****.7 Papers from man-made and noncellulosic fibers****.1 Pulp**

676.12–676.14 Specific pulps

Class comprehensive works in 676.1

*For purified pulp, see 676.4***.12 Wood pulp****.121 Properties, tests, quality controls**

676.122–676.127 Specific processes

Class comprehensive works in 676.12

.122 Mechanical (Ground wood) process**.124 Soda process**

- .125 Sulfite process
- .126 Sulfate (Kraft) process
- .127 Semichemical process
- .13 Rag pulp
- .14 Other pulps
 - From straw, jute, hemp, bamboo, cornstalks, bagasse, wastepaper
- .17 Properties, tests, quality controls
 - Class properties, tests, quality controls of specific pulps in 676.12–676.14
- .18 Molded products and pulpboards
- .182 Molded products
- .183 Pulpboards
 - Wallboards, chip boards, fiberboards

676.2–676.5 Pulp products

Class comprehensive works in 676

For molded products and pulpboards, see 676.18

.2 **Paper and paper products**

676.22–676.27 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 676.2, generalities applied to specific types of paper and paper products in 676.28

- .22 Production by hand
- .23 Manufacture with machines
 - Materials, processes, equipment
- .232 Basic processes
- .234 Finishing
 - Calendering, coloring, creping
 - For coating, see 676.235*
- .235 Coating
- .27 Properties, tests, quality controls
- .28 Specific types
 - For paper and paperboard containers, see 676.3*
- .280 2 Miscellany
- .280 27 Watermarks

- .282 Graphic arts papers
 - For paper for school tablets, see 676.286*
- .282 3 Stationery
 - Including onionskin paper
- .282 4 Book
 - Class coated book papers in 676.283
- .282 5 Drawing and art
- .282 6 Currency
 - Papers for printing money, bonds, securities
- .283 Coated papers
- .284 Specialty papers
- .284 2 Tissue
 - Examples: cleansing and toilet tissues
 - Class onionskin paper in 676.2823
- .284 4 Blotting and saturating
- .284 5 Parchment and vulcanized
- .284 8 Wallpaper
- .286 Newsprint and other unsized papers
 - Papers for newspapers, school tablets, scratch pads, handbills
- .287 Wrapping and bag papers
 - Kraft wrapping, "brown wrapper," butcher paper, Manila paper, bogus wrapping
- .288 Paperboard
 - Pasteboard, Bristol board, cardboard, food board
- .289 Roofing and building papers
- .3 **Paper and paperboard containers**
- .32 Boxes and cartons
 - Folding boxes, corrugated and solid paperboard boxes
 - For food board containers, see 676.34*
- .33 Bags
- .34 Food board containers
 - Paper plates and cups, food cartons
- .4 **Purified pulp**
 - Production of alpha cellulose from wood pulp and cotton linters
- .5 **By-products**
 - Recovery of lignin, tall oil, turpentine, resins, fatty acids
- .7 **Papers from man-made and noncellulosic fibers**

677 Textiles

Production of fibers, manufacture of fabrics and cordage

- .001-.009 Standard subdivisions
 - Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 677.028
- .02 Generalities
- .022 Designs (Working patterns)
- .028 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - .028 2 Operations
 - .028 21 Carding and combing
 - .028 22 Spinning, twisting, reeling
 - .028 24 Weaving, knitting, felting
 - .028 25 Basic finishing
 - Physical and chemical processes
 - Including shearing, singeing, beeting, mercerizing, tentering, calendering, pressing, creping
 - For dyeing and printing, see 667.3*
 - .028 3 Materials
 - Raw materials, textile chemicals
 - .028 5 Power equipment
 - .028 52 Spinning machines
 - .028 54 Looms and loom equipment
 - .028 55 Basic finishing machines
 - .028 6 Products
 - For tests and quality controls of products, see 677.0287*
 - .028 62 Yarns and threads
 - .028 64 Fabrics
 - .028 7 Tests and quality controls of products

SUMMARY

- 677.1 Textiles of bast fibers
- .2 Textiles of seed-hair fibers
- .3 Textiles of animal fibers
- .4 Textiles of man-made fibers
- .5 Other textiles of specific fibers
- .6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition
- .7 Cordage, trimmings and allied products

677.1–677.5 Textiles of specific composition

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 677.028 in 677.0282–677.0287, e.g., linen fabrics 677.1164

Class comprehensive works in 677, special-process fabrics regardless of composition in 677.6

.1 **Textiles of bast fibers**

.11 *Flax

.12 Hemp

.13 Jute

.15 Ramie

.18 Coir

.2 **Textiles of seed-hair fibers**

.21 *Cotton

.23 Kapok

.3 **Textiles of animal fibers**

.31 *Sheep wool

.32 Llama, alpaca, vicuña, guanaco wools

.33 Goat hair

.34 Camel hair

.35 Rabbit hair

.36 Waste and reused wool and hair

.39 Silk

.391 *Cultivated

.392 Wild (Tussah)

.394 Waste and reused

[.399] Other animal fibers

Number discontinued; class in 677.3

.4 **Textiles of man-made fibers**

.46 Cellulosics (Rayons and acetates)

Use 677.46001–677.46009 for standard subdivisions

For textiles of paper fibers, see 677.57

.460 1–.460 9 Standard subdivisions of rayons

* Add as instructed under 677.1–677.5

677.461–677.463 Rayons

Class comprehensive works in 677.46

- .461 Nitrocellulose
- .462 Cuprammonium
- .463 Viscose
- .464 Cellulose acetates
- .47 Noncellulosics
 - For fiber glass, see 677.52*
- .472 Protein textiles (Azlons)
 - Derived from casein and proteins of corn, soybeans
- 473 Polyamides (Nylons)
- 474 Other polymerization textiles
- 474 2 Acrylics (Polyacrylics)
- 474 3 Polyesters
- 474 4 Vinyls (Polyvinyls)
 - Nitrils, sarans, vinyons
- 474 5 Olefins
 - Polyethylene, polypropylene
- 474 8 Polyfluoro hydrocarbons
 - Tetrafluoroethylene textiles
- .5 **Other textiles of specific fibers**
- .51 Asbestos
- .52 Fiber glass
- .53 Metal
- .54 Unaltered vegetable fibers
 - Raffia, rush, cane, bamboo, rattan
- .55 Elastic fibers
- .57 Paper

.6 Special-process fabrics regardless of composition

SUMMARY

- 677.61 Fancy-weave fabrics**
 - .62 Woven felts**
 - .63 Nonwoven felts**
 - .64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs**
 - .65 Openwork fabrics**
 - .66 Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics**
 - .68 Fabrics with functional finishes**
 - .69 Bonded and laminated fabrics**
- .61 Fancy-weave fabrics**
 - For openwork fabrics, see 677.65, tapestries, carpets, rugs, 677.64*
- .615 In dobby weave**
 - Examples: bird's-eye, sharkskin, huckaback, figured madras
- .616 In Jacquard weave**
 - Examples: damask, brocade, brocatelle, lamé, upholstery fabrics
- .617 In pile weave**
 - Examples: velvet, velveteen, velour, plush, chenille, corduroy, frieze, terry cloth
- .62 Woven felts**
- .624 Flannel and swanskin yard goods**
- .626 Blankets, lap robes, coverlets**
- .63 Nonwoven felts**
- .632 Yard goods and carpets**
- .635 Hats**
- .64 Tapestries, carpets, rugs**
 - Reversible and nonreversible
- .642 Tapestry yard goods**
- .643 Carpets and rugs**
 - For nonwoven felt carpets, see 677.632*
- .65 Openwork fabrics**
 - For chain-stitch and knotted fabrics, see 677.66*
- .652 In leno weave**
 - Marquisettes and grenadines
- .653 Laces**
 - Bobbin, needle, machine laces
- .654 Tulles**

- .66 Chain-stitch and knotted fabrics
- .661 Knitted
- .662 Crocheted
- .663 Tatted
- .664 Netted
- .68 Fabrics with functional finishes
 - Class specific types of special-process fabric regardless of finish in 677.61–677.66
- .681 Crease- and wrinkle-resistant
- .682 Waterproof and water-repellent
- .688 Shrinkage-controlled
- .689 Flameproof and flame-resistant
- .69 Bonded and laminated fabrics
- .7 **Cordage, trimmings and allied products**
- .71 Ropes, twines, strings
 - For passementerie, see 677.76*
- .76 Passementerie
 - Decorative cords, braids, lacings, ribbons, gimps, tinsel, tapes, bias bindings, upholstery trimmings
- .77 Machine embroidery
 - Including swivel (dotted Swiss), clip spot, lappet, Schiffl embroidery
 - Class laces in 677.653

678 **Elastomers and elastomer products**

SUMMARY

- 678.2 **Rubber**
 - .3 Rubber products
 - .4 Properties of rubber
 - .5 Latexes
 - .6 Natural elastomers
 - .7 Synthetic elastomers
- .2 **Rubber**
 - For rubber products, see 678.3; properties of rubber, 678.4, natural rubber, 678.62; synthetic rubber, 678.72,*
- .21 Raw and auxiliary materials
 - For reclaimed rubber, see 678.29*
- .22 Mastication
 - Mixing, milling, plasticizing crude rubbers

- .23 **Compounding**
 - Including use of solvents, antioxidants, accelerators, pigments
- .24 **Vulcanization**
- .27 **Molding, extruding, calendering**
- .29 **Reclaimed rubber**
 - Collecting, sorting, classifying, devulcanizing
- .3 **Rubber products**
 - For elastic fiber textiles, see 677.55*
- .32 **Tires**
- .33 **Overshoes**
- .34 **Articles molded and vulcanized in presses**
 - Examples: soles, heels, hot-water bottles, bathing caps, tiles, doorstops, hollow ware
- .35 **Extruded articles**
 - Examples: rubber bands, inner tubes, tubing, windshield wipers, gaskets, weatherstripping
- .36 **Articles made by dipping, spreading, electrodeposition**
 - Examples: conveyor and driving belts, hose, sheeting
- .4 **Properties of rubber**
- .5 **Latexes**
 - For natural latexes, see 678.61, synthetic latexes, 678.71*
- [.502 8] **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - Do not use, class in 678.52
- .52 **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
- .521 **Raw and auxiliary materials**
- .522 **Preliminary treatment**
 - Preservation, concentration, creaming, centrifuging, preparation of latex biscuits
- .524 **Vulcanization**
- .527 **Other operations**
 - Molding, coating, casting, dipping, spreading, electrodepositing
- .53 **Products**
- .532 **Foam articles**
- .533 **Articles made by dipping and casting**
 - Examples: balloons, surgeons' gloves, feeding-bottle nipples, pen sacs, cast toys and models
- .538 **Other**
 - Extruded, spread, sprayed, electrodeposited articles

- .54 Properties
- .6 **Natural elastomers**
 - .61 Natural latexes
 - .62 Natural rubber
 - For natural rubber products, see 678.63; properties of natural rubber, 678.64*
 - .63 Natural rubber products
 - .64 Properties of natural rubber
 - .68 Chemical derivatives of natural rubber
 - Cyclo and halogenated rubbers, rubber hydrochloride, other derivatives
- .7 **Synthetic elastomers**
 - .71 Synthetic latexes
 - .72 Synthetic rubber and derivatives
 - Butadiene-styrene rubbers (GR-S), chloroprene rubbers (CR-M), acrylonitrile rubbers (CR-A), isobutylene rubbers (CR-I), polyurethane, cis-polydienes
- 678.722 -678.724 Synthetic rubber
 - Class comprehensive works in 678.72
- .722 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for synthetic rubber
- .723 Synthetic rubber products
- .724 Properties of synthetic rubber
- .728 Chemical derivatives of synthetic rubber
- .73 High-styrene resins (Elastoplastics)
- 679 **Other products of specific materials**
 - .4 **Of keratinous and dentinal materials**
 - .43 Ivory products
 - .47 Feather products
 - .6 **Of fibers and bristles**
 - Brooms, brushes, mops, other products
 - .7 **Of tobacco**
 - .72 Cigars
 - .73 Cigarettes
 - [.9] **Of waste materials**
 - Class in 604.6

680 Miscellaneous manufactures

Planning, design, fabrication of final products

681 Precision instruments and other devices**SUMMARY**

- 681.1 Analog and digital instruments**
- .2 Testing and measuring instruments**
- .4 Optical instruments**
- .6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment**
- .7 Other scientific and technological instruments and machinery**
- .8 Musical instruments**

.1 Analog and digital instruments

Design, construction, testing, maintenance, repairs

*For electronic computers, see 621.38195; testing and measuring instruments, 681.2***.11 Timepieces****.111 Ancient and primitive instruments**

Examples: sundials, water clocks (clepsydras), hourglasses

.112 Constituent parts (Clockwork)

Gears, escapements, bearings, regulating devices

.113 Clocks*For pneumatic clocks, see 681.115; electric clocks, 681.116; constituent parts, 681.112; time clocks, 681.118***.114 Watches***For stopwatches, see 681.118; constituent parts, 681.112***.115 Pneumatic clocks****.116 Electric clocks****.118 Chronographs, chronoscopes, chronometers**

Examples: stopwatches, metronomes, tachometers, time clocks, time-and-date recorders, timers

[.12] Industrial gages and flowmeters

Class in 681.2

[.13] Photographic equipment

Class in 681.418

.14 Calculating, counting, sorting machines and instruments other than electronic computers

Including slide rules

.2 Testing and measuring instruments

Including liquid-pressure measuring instruments [*formerly* 621.28], industrial gages and flowmeters [*both formerly* 681.12]

Class optical testing and measuring instruments in 681.4; a specific application with the subject, e.g., aircraft instrumentation 629.135

For timepieces, see 681.11

.4 Optical instruments**.41 Specific instruments**

Class component parts of specific instruments in 681.42–681.43

.411 Spectacles**.412 Telescopes, opera and field glasses****.413 Microscopes****.414 Spectroscopes****.414 2–.414 6 Optical and paraphotic**

Add to 681.414 the numbers following 535.84 in 535.842–535.846, e.g., infrared spectroscopes 681.4142

.414 8 Other

Radiofrequency, microwave, X- and gamma-ray, magnetic resonance spectroscopes

.415 Photometers**.416 Polarimeters****.418 Photographic equipment [*formerly* 681.13]**

Cameras, projectors, accessories

Class film and other chemical photographic supplies in 661.808 .

For photometers, see 681.415; *photoduplication equipment, 681.65*

681.42–681.43 Component parts

Class comprehensive works in 681.4

.42 Lenses, prisms, mirrors**.43 Frames and other housings****.6 Printing, writing, duplicating machines and equipment**

Including pens, mechanical pencils

.61 Stenographic and composing machines, typewriters**.62 Printing presses****.65 Photoduplication equipment**

-
- .7 Other scientific and technological instruments and machinery**
 - Not provided for elsewhere
 - .75 Scientific**
 - .753 Physical**
 - Including instruments with multiple applications based on physical principles, e.g., gyroscopes
 - .754 Chemical**
 - .755 Geological**
 - .757 Biological**
 - .76 Technological**
 - For household appliances, see 683.8; utilities, 696*
 - .761 Medical**
 - .763 Agricultural**
 - .763 1 For plant culture**
 - .763 6 For animal culture**
 - .766 For chemical and related technologies**
 - .766 4 Food and beverage technology**
 - .766 5 Petroleum and industrial gas technologies**
 - .766 6 Ceramic technology**
 - .766 8 Plastic and elastomer technologies**
 - .766 9 Metallurgy**
 - .767 For nonchemical manufactures**
 - .767 1 Metal manufactures**
 - .767 6 Wood and paper technologies**
 - .767 7 Textile and clothing technologies**
 - .8 Musical instruments**
 - .81 Conventional**
 - Add to 681.81 the numbers following 78 in 786.2–789.6, e.g., pipe organs 681.8166
 - Class hand construction in 786–789
 - .82 Barrel organs and music boxes**
 - Including hand organs, street organs, street pianos
 - .83 Reproducing and player pianos, and orchestrions**

682 Small forge work (Blacksmithing)

- .1 Horseshoeing
- .4 Hand-forged tools and ironwork

683 Hardware

- .3 Locksmithing
- .31 Bolts and latches
- .32 Locks and keys
- .34 Safes and strongboxes

.4 Small firearms

Class here gunsmithing

Use 683.4001–683.4009 for standard subdivisions

Class military small arms in 623.44

683.401–683.406 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 683.4

- .401 Design
- .402 Manufacture
- .403 Maintenance and repair
- .406 Ammunition
- .42 Rifles and shotguns
- .43 Pistols and revolvers

.8 Household appliances**.82 Kitchen utensils**

Cutlery, pots, pans, pails, related items

.83 Electrical appliances

For electrical equipment requiring special installation, see 683.88

.88 Heavy equipment

Electrical, gas, other equipment requiring special installation, e.g., stoves, ranges, water heaters, washing machines, dryers, dishwashers, garbage disposal units

For refrigerators and freezers, see 621.57; heating, ventilating, air-conditioning equipment, 697

/

684 Furnishings and home workshops

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of furnishings

.08 Woodworking

Class here comprehensive works on home (amateur) workshops

For metalworking, see 684.09

.082 With hand tools

.083 With power tools

.084 Surface finishing

[.088] Projects

Number discontinued; class in 684.08

.09 Metalworking

.1 **Furniture**

Use 684.1001-684.1009 for standard subdivisions

684.104-684.106 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 684.1

.104 Wooden furniture

.104 2 Basic construction

.104 3 Surface finishing

.104 4 Maintenance and repair

.104 42 Body restoration

.104 43 Surface refinishing

.105 Metallic furniture

.106 Furniture in other materials

Rattan, plastics, composite materials, tiles

684.12-684.16 Specific pieces for home and office

Class comprehensive works in 684.1, specific pieces for garden, patio, porch in 684.18

.12 Upholstered furniture

Sofas, couches, upholstered chairs

.13 Chairs and tables

For upholstered chairs, see 684.12

.14 Desks

.15 Beds

Frames, springs, mattresses

- .16 Cabinets and built-in furniture
 - Chests, dressers, bookcases, china and linen cabinets, file cabinets, shelving
 - .18 Garden, patio, porch furniture
 - .3 **Fabric furnishings**
 - Draperies, hangings, slipcovers, curtains
 - For carpets and rugs, see 677.643*
 - [.7] **Nonmotor land vehicles**
 - Class in 688.6
 - 685 **Leather and fur goods, and related manufactures**
 - .1 **Saddlery and harness making**
 - .2 **Leather and fur clothing and accessories**
 - Class leather and fur footwear in 685.3, leather and fur gloves and mittens in 685.4
 - .22 **Leather**
 - Examples: jackets, skirts, trousers, aprons, belts
 - .24 **Fur**
 - Examples: coats, jackets, stoles, neckpieces, muffs, hats
 - .3 **Footwear and related products**
 - For overshoes, see 678.33*
 - .31 **Boots and shoes**
 - Use 685.31001–685.31009 for standard subdivisions
 - For wooden shoes and clogs, see 685.32; footwear for specific activities, 685.36, footwear and related products for the disabled, 685.38*
-
- 685.310 2–685.310 4 Generalities of cobbling
 - Class comprehensive works in 685.31
 - .310 2 Design
 - .310 3 Construction
 - .310 4 Maintenance and repair
 - .32 **Wooden shoes and clogs**
 - .36 For specific activities
 - .361 Ice skates
 - .362 Roller skates
 - .363 Snowshoes
 - .364 Skis

- .367 Stilts
- .38 For the disabled
 - Special shoes, crutches, artificial legs
- .4 Gloves and mittens**
 - Leather, fur, textile, other
- .41 Conventional gloves and gauntlets
- .43 Specialized gloves, gauntlets, mittens
 - Examples: athletic gloves and mitts, protective gloves for industry
- .47 Conventional mittens
- .5 Luggage and camping equipment**
- .51 Luggage
 - Trunks, suitcases, valises, handbags, purses, briefcases, attaché cases
- .53 Camping equipment [*formerly also* 688.7654]
 - Examples: tents, camp beds, campstools, sleeping bags

686 **Printing and related activities**

- Class here book arts [*formerly* 655]
- Class book illustration in 741.64
- .1 Invention of printing**
- .2 Printing [*formerly* 655.1–655.3]**
 - .209 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class invention of printing in 686.1
 - .21 Specific alphabets and characters
 - Not limited geographically
 - .212 Braille and other raised characters
 - Class Braille printing in 686.282
 - .217 Latin
 - .217 2 Roman
 - .217 3 Italic
 - .217 4 Gothic (Black-letter)
 - Including fraktur
 - .218 Greek
 - .219 Other
 - Add “Languages” notation 91–99 from Table 6 to base number 686.21, e.g., Cyrillic alphabet 686.21918

- .22 **Typography and composition**
- .221 **Typesetting and typesetting**
- .224 **Typefaces**
 - Design, style, specimens of letters, other characters and devices
 - Class typefaces in specific alphabets and characters in 686.21
- .225 **Composition (Typesetting)**
- .225 2 **Page design**
 - Including style manuals
- .225 3 **Hand composition**
- .225 4 **Machine composition**
 - By use of linotype and other human-operated equipment
 - By use of computer-operated and other automatic equipment
- .225 5 **Proofreading**
- .225 6 **Imposition and lockup**
- .23 **Presswork (Impression)**
 - For printing special graphic materials, see 686.28*
- .231 **Mechanical techniques**
- .231 2 **Letterpress**
 - Printing from type
- .231 4 **Plate**
 - Printing from stereotypes, electrotypes, autotypes, engraved plates, paper mats
- .231 5 **Planographic (Flat-surface)**
 - Lithography and offset (offset lithography)
- .231 6 **Stencil**
 - Example: silk-screen
- .232 **Photomechanical techniques**
- .232 5 **Photolithography, photo-offset, collotype (gelatin process)**
- .232 6 **Photometallography**
 - Photozincography, photoalgraphy, photoaluminography
- .232 7 **Photoengraving (Photoetching)**
 - Photogravure, photointaglio, line and halftone cuts
- .28 **Printing special graphic materials**
- .282 **Braille and other raised characters**
 - Class Braille alphabet in 686.212
- .283 **Maps**

- .284 Music
- .288 Materials of direct monetary value
 - Examples: securities, bank notes, postage stamps
- .3 **Bookbinding [formerly 655.7]**
 - Processes and materials
 - Use 686.3001–686.3009 for standard subdivisions
 - .302 Hand and fine binding
 - .303 Commercial binding
 - .303 2 Individual-copy (Library)
 - .303 4 Edition
 - .34 Types of covers
 - .342 Leather
 - .343 Cloth and imitation leather
 - .344 Paper
 - .35 Methods of fastening
 - Oversewing, hand-sewing, side-sewing, wire-stitching; perfect binding and other kinds of gluing
 - .36 Ornamentation
 - Tooling, lettering, marbling, gilding
- .4 **Photoduplication (Photocopying) [formerly 778.1]**
 - .42 Blueprinting [formerly 772.2]
 - .43 Microphotography [formerly 778.315]
 - Production of microfilm and other microreproductions
 - .44 Electrostatic processes (Electrophotography)
 - Including xerography [formerly 655.328]
 - .45 Production of photostats

687 Clothing

For leather and fur clothing, see 685.2; footwear, 685.3; gloves and mittens, 685.4

- .1 **Generalities and outer garments**
 - Use 687.1001–687.1009 for standard subdivisions of outer garments
 - For hosiery and sweaters, see 687.3; headgear, 687.4*
- [.101] Fashion design
 - Class in 746.92

687.102–687.105 Generalities

Class comprehensive works in 687.1; application to underwear, hosiery, sweaters, headgear in 687.2–687.4

- .102 **Patternmaking and grading**
- .103 **Cutting**
- .104 **Tailoring**
- .105 **Dressmaking**

687.11–687.13 Outer garments for specific classes of people

Class comprehensive works in 687.1; accessories and special-purpose outer garments for specific classes of people in 687.14–687.19

- .11 **Men's clothing**
 Examples: suits, jackets, trousers, shirts
- .12 **Women's clothing**
 Examples: dresses, suits, blouses, skirts
- .13 **Children's clothing**
 Examples: suits, dresses, skirts, trousers, blouses, shirts, jackets

687.14–687.16 Special-purpose outer garments

Class comprehensive works in 687.1

- .14 **Outdoor garments**
 Overcoats, topcoats, raincoats, stoles, cloaks
 Add to 687.14 the numbers following 687.1 in 687.11–687.13, e.g.,
 outdoor garments for women 687.142
 For sweaters, see 687.38
- .15 **Uniforms and symbolic garments**
 Civil and military uniforms, ceremonial and academic robes,
 ecclesiastical vestments
- .16 **Other special-purpose garments**
 Lounging garments, nightclothes, sportswear; fire-resistant and other
 special protective clothing
- .19 **Miscellaneous garments and accessories**
 Neckwear, cuffs, belts, aprons, handkerchiefs, scarves

.2 Underwear**.21–.23 For specific classes of people**

Add to 687.2 the numbers following 687.1 in 687.11–687.13, e.g.,
 for women 687.22

Class supporting garments for specific classes of people in 687.25

- .25 **Supporting garments**
 - Foundation garments, brassieres, surgical corsets and belts
 - Class support hose in 687.32

- .3 **Hosiery and sweaters**

- .32 Hosiery

- .38 Sweaters

- .4 **Headgear**

- Add to 687.4 the numbers following 687.1 in 687.11–687.13, e.g., headgear for women 687.42

- For nonwoven felt hats, see 677.635*

- .8 **Items auxiliary to clothing construction (Notions)**

- Buttons, hooks and eyes, snaps, slide fasteners, needles, pins, thread, padding, shields

688 **Other final products**

- .1 **Models**

- Class a specific model with the subject, e.g., airplane models 629.1331

- .2 **Costume jewelry**

- Mass-produced costume ornaments from inferior metals, ornamental stones, other common materials

- .4 **Smokers' supplies**

- Pipes, hookahs, cigarette holders and cases, tobacco pouches, lighters, ash trays

- .5 **Accessories for personal grooming**

- Razors, razor blades, electric shavers, combs, nail-care tools, tweezers

- For brushes, see 679.6; cosmetics, 668.55*

- .6 **Nonmotor land vehicles [*formerly* 684.7]**

- Carriages, wagons, carts, wheelbarrows

- For cycles, see 629.227*

- .7 **Recreational equipment**

- Class recreational equipment made of leather and fur, recreational footwear and handwear, camping equipment in 685

- .72 **Toys**

- .722 Dolls, puppets, marionettes

- .723 Doll houses and furniture

- .724 Padded toys other than dolls

- .725 Educational toys

- Examples: science sets, construction toys

- .726 Tricks and novelties
- .728 Action toys
 - Mechanical, electrical, electronic, others
- .74 Equipment for indoor games of skill
 - Add to 688.74 the numbers following 794 in 794.1–794.7, e.g., chessmen 688.741
- .75 Equipment for games of chance
 - Add to 688.75 the numbers following 795 in 795.1–795.4, e.g., playing cards 688.754
- .76 Equipment for outdoor sports and games
 - Add to 688.76 the numbers following 796 in 796.1–796.9, e.g., tennis rackets 688.76342
 - Class camping equipment [*formerly* 688.7654] in 685.53
 - Class footwear for sports and games in 685.36
 - For equipment for fishing, see* 688.79
- .79 Equipment for fishing
 - Rods, reels, hooks, lures, floats, other equipment

689 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

690 Buildings

Planning, analysis, engineering design, construction, maintenance, repairs, destruction of habitable structures and their utilities

Class interdisciplinary works on design and construction in 721

- .01–.09 Standard subdivisions
 - Class plans and drawings in 692.1–692.2, construction specifications in 692.3
- .1 Specific structural elements
 - Add to 690.1 the numbers following 721 in 721.1–721.8, e.g., roofs 690.15 [*formerly* 624.9]
 - Class structural elements of specific types of buildings in 690.5–690.8
- .2 General activities
 - Class application to specific structural elements in 690.1, to specific types of buildings in 690.5–690.8
- .22 Provision for safety
 - Engineering for optimum safety, safety during construction
- .24 Maintenance and repairs
 - Class home repairs by members of household in 643.7
- .26 Wrecking and razing

.5-.8 Specific types of buildings

Add to 690 the numbers following 72 in 725-728, e.g., ranch houses 690.864, environmental engineering of educational buildings 690.7 [*formerly* 371.626-371.628]

For forts and fortresses, see 623.1

691 Building materials

Selection, preservation, construction properties

.1 Timber**.12 Prevention of decay**

Spraying, painting, impregnating with fungicides

.14 Prevention of termite damage**.15 Treatment for fire resistance**

Impregnation with monomagnesium, monoammonium, diammonium phosphates

.2 Natural stones

Examples: granite, limestone, marble, sandstone, slate, serpentine, soapstone

.3 Concretes and artificial stones

Examples: concrete blocks, cinder blocks

.4 Ceramic and clay materials

Examples: brick, tile, terra cotta, sun-dried blocks

.5 Masonry adhesives**.6 Glass****.7 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)****.8 Metals**

Add to 691.8 the numbers following 669 in 669.2-669.7, e.g., aluminum 691.8722

For iron and steel, see 691.7

.9 Other**.92 Plastics and their laminates****.95 Insulating materials**

Rock wool, corkboard, asbestos, kapok, diatomaceous earth

.96 Bituminous materials

Asphalt, synthetic and rock asphalts, tar

.97 Prefabricated materials**.99 Adhesives and sealants**

For plastics and their laminates, see 691.92; masonry adhesives, 691.5

692 Auxiliary construction practices**.1 Plans and drawings**

Interpretation and use of rough sketches, working drawings, blueprints

For detail drawings, see 692.2

.2 Detail drawings

Interpretation and use of large-scale drawings of trims, moldings, other details

.3 Construction specifications**.5 Estimates of materials, time, labor****.8 Contracting**

Provision of construction materials and services in accordance with specifications

693 Construction in specific materials and for specific purposes

For selection, preservation, construction properties of building materials, see 691; wood construction, 694

SUMMARY

- 693.1 Natural stones**
- .2 Stabilized earth materials**
- .3 Tiles and terra cotta**
- .4 Artificial stones and hollow blocks**
- .5 Concrete**
- .6 Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork**
- .7 Metals**
- .8 Resistant construction**
- .9 Construction in other materials**

693.1–693.7 Construction in specific materials

Class comprehensive works in 693

For construction in other materials, see 693.9

.1 Natural stones**.2 Stabilized earth materials****.21 Bricks**

For hollow bricks, see 693.4

.22 Sun-dried blocks

Adobe, pisé, cob, tapia, tabby

.3 Tiles and terra cotta

For hollow tiles, see 693.4

- .4 Artificial stones and hollow blocks**
 - Concrete blocks, cinder blocks, hollow tiles, hollow bricks
- .5 Concrete**
 - For concrete blocks, see 693.4*
 - .52 Without reinforcement
 - .521 Poured
 - .522 Precast
 - .54 With reinforcement (Ferroconcrete)
 - .541 Poured
 - .542 Prestressed
 - .544 Precast
- .6 Plaster-, stucco-, lathwork**
- .7 Metals**
 - .71 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals)
 - .72- .77 Nonferrous metals
 - Add to 693.7 the numbers following 669 in 669.2-669.7, e.g., tin 693.76
- .8 Resistant construction**
 - .82 Fireproof construction
 - .83 Insulated construction
 - .832 Thermal
 - .834 Acoustical (Soundproofing)
 - .84 Pest-resistant construction
 - .842 Termite-resistant
 - .844 Rodent-resistant
 - .85 Shock-resistant construction
 - .852 Earthquake-resistant
 - .854 Blast-resistant
 - .89 Other
 - .892 Waterproof construction
 - .893 Moistureproof construction
 - Constructional control of condensation and dampness in buildings
 - .898 Lightning-resistant construction
- .9 Construction in other materials**
 - .91 Ice and snow

- .92 Sandwich panels
Class sandwich panels in a specific substance with the subject,
e.g., wood 694
- .96 Glass
- .97 Prefabricated materials
Class materials prefabricated in a specific substance with the subject,
e.g., precast concrete 693.522
- .98 Nonrigid materials
Example: pneumatic construction

694 Wood construction Carpentry

.1 Planning, analysis, engineering design

694.2–694.6 Carpentry

Class comprehensive works in 694

2 Rough carpentry (Framing)

- 202 8 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
Including use of scaffolds, ladders, materials hoists
[all formerly 694.28]
- 22 Sidings, partition frames, walls
- 23 Posts and beams
Including sills and joists
- 26 Floors
- 27 Ceilings and roofs
Class roofing in 695
- 28] Use of scaffolds, ladders, materials hoists
Class in 694.2028

29 Openings

6 Finish carpentry (Joinery)

- Construction of details
- 61 Doors and doorways
- 62 Windows
- 63 Blinds and shutters
- 64 Balconies, porches, verandas
- 67 Built-in cases and shelves
Fine joinery
- 68 Stairs, ramps, balustrades, rails

.69 Trims

Moldings, paneling, inlays

695 Roofing and auxiliary structures

Materials, installation, maintenance, repairs

.1 Wood roofing

Shingles and shakes

.2 Slate roofing

.3 Concrete and tile roofing

.4 Metal roofing

For iron and steel roofing, see 695.5

.43 Copper

.44 Lead

.46 Tin

.47 Aluminum

.5 Iron and steel (Ferrous metals) roofing

.6 Composition roofing

Asbestos-composition, prepared roll, mineral-surfaced asphalt

.7 Textile roofing

Felt, duck, canvas

.9 Other topics

.92 Thatch roofing

.96 Auxiliary structures

Examples: gutters, drainpipes, flashings

596 Utilities

For electrical engineering, see 621.3; heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering, 697

.1 Plumbing

Design, installation, maintenance, repair of water fixtures and pipes

Including water pipe thawing [*formerly 696.8*]

.12 Water supply

Intake pipes, water receiving fixtures, water-softening equipment

*For water supply in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18;
hot-water supply, 696.6*

.13 Water drainage

For water drainage in specific parts of buildings, see 696.18

- .18 Water supply and drainage in specific parts of buildings
- .182 Lavatories and bathrooms
- .183 Laundries
- .184 Kitchens
 - Including installation of garbage disposal units and dishwashers

.2 Pipe fitting

Design, installation, maintenance, repair of pipes for heating, refrigeration, air conditioning, other nonplumbing purposes

Including gas pipes (gas fitting)

For steam fitting, see 696.3

.3 Steam pipes (Steam fitting)

Design, installation, maintenance, repair

.6 Hot-water supply

Design, installation, maintenance, repair of pipes, water heaters, water-softening equipment

[.8] Water pipe thawing

Class in 696.1

697 Heating, ventilating, air-conditioning engineering

Design, installation, maintenance, repair of systems and components

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of heating

.02 Local heating

.03 Central heating

.04 Heating with specific sources of energy

Class here fuels

For solar heating, see 697.78, nuclear heating, 697.79

.042 Coal and coke heating

.043 Gas heating

.044 Oil heating

.045 Electric heating

.07 Heating equipment

Radiators, boilers, furnaces, thermostats and other controls

SUMMARY

- 697.1 Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)
- .2 Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)
- .3 Hot-air heating
- .4 Hot-water heating
- .5 Steam heating
- .7 Other heating methods
- .8 Chimneys and flues
- .9 Ventilation and air conditioning

697.1–697.8 Heating

Class comprehensive works in 697

697.1–697.2 Local heating

Class comprehensive works in 697.02, chimneys and flues for local heating in 697.8

- .1 **Heating with open fires (Radiative heating)**
 - Including braziers
- .2 **Heating with space heaters (Convective heating)**
- .22 Stationary stoves
- .24 Portable heaters
 - Electric and nonelectric

697.3–697.7 Central heating

Class comprehensive works in 697.03, chimneys and flues for central heating in 697.8

- .3 **Hot-air heating**
 - Class radiant panel hot-air heating in 697.72
 - .32 Systems
 - Number discontinued, class in 697.3
- .4 **Hot-water heating**
 - Class radiant panel hot-water heating in 697.72
- .5 **Steam heating**
 - Use 697.5001–697.5009 for standard subdivisions
 - Class radiant panel steam heating in 697.72
 - .507 Equipment
 - Furnaces, boilers, radiators
 - .507 3 Furnaces, boilers, radiators
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 697.507

- .51] Systems
 - Number discontinued; class in 697.5
- .52 Heating single buildings
- .54 District heating
 - Heating a group of buildings from a central station
- .7 **Other heating methods**
- .72 Radiant panel heating
 - Hot-air, hot-water, steam, electric
- .78 Solar heating
- .79 Nuclear heating
- .8 **Chimneys and flues**
- .9 **Ventilation and air conditioning**
- .92 Ventilation
- .93 Air conditioning
- .931 Generalities
 - Class generalities applied to specific types of bu
697.935 697.938
- .931 2 Design principles
- .931 5 Psychrometrics
 - Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric
environment for optimum comfort
- .931 6 Industrial and commercial applications
 - Determination and control of enclosed atmospheric
environment for effective operations
- .932 Components
- .932 2 Temperature controls
 - Refrigerating and heating equipment, e.g., cooling and
heating coils, thermostats
- .932 3 Humidity controls
 - Humidifiers, dehumidifiers, humidistats
- .932 4 Quality controls
 - Filters and other devices for removing dust, pollen,
other particulates
- .932 5 Movement and distribution controls
 - Blowers, air-return and air-supply equipment

► 697.933–697.934 Systems

Class comprehensive works in 697.93, systems in specific types of buildings in 697.935–697.938, system components in 697.932

.933 Central-station systems

.933 2 Winter systems

.933 3 Summer systems

.933 4 Year-round systems

.934 Other systems

.934 2 Unitary systems

.934 4 Combination systems

.935–.938 In specific types of buildings

Add to 697.93 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g.,
air conditioning in hotels 697.9385

Class components for specific types of buildings in 697.932

698 Detail finishing

.1 Painting

.102 Miscellany

.102 8 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

.102 82 Equipment

Brushes, rollers, paints, diluents

.102 83 Paint mixing

.102 88 Application methods

.12 Exteriors

[.124] House painting

Number discontinued, class in 698.12

[.128] Sign painting

Class in 667.9

.14 Interiors

For painting woodwork, see 698.35

.142 Walls

.146 Floors

.147 Ceilings

.2 Calcimining and whitewashing

.3	Finishing woodwork
.32	By staining
	Including graining and marbling
.33	By polishing with wax and oil
.34	By varnishing and lackering
.35	By painting
.5	Glazing and leading windows
.6	Paperhanging
.9	Floor coverings
	Measuring, cutting, laying rugs, carpeting, linoleum, tiles
699	[Unassigned]
	Most recently used in Edition 14

700

700 The arts Fine and decorative arts

Description, critical appraisal, techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials of the fine, decorative, literary, performing, recreational arts

Use 700.1–700.9 for standard subdivisions of the arts

For book arts, see 686; literature, 800

► 701–709 Generalities of fine and decorative arts

Standard subdivisions and their extended meanings

Class comprehensive works in 700, generalities of individual artists in 709.24

701 Philosophy and theory of fine and decorative arts

.1 Appreciative aspects

.15 Psychological principles

Fine arts as products of creative imagination

.17 Esthetics

.18 Criticism and appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 709

.184 Thru use of audiovisual aids

Class audiovisual treatment of fine and decorative arts in 702.08

.8 Inherent features

Composition, color, form, style, perspective, decorative values

Class techniques [*formerly* 701.8] in 702.8

Class methodology in 701.9

.9 Methodology

Add to 701.9 the numbers following 018 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0182–0184 from Table 1, e.g., data processing 701.93

Class psychological principles in 701.15

702 Miscellany of fine and decorative arts

.8 Techniques [*formerly* 701.8], apparatus, equipment, materials

Including use of models

703 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of fine and decorative arts

704 General special aspects of fine and decorative arts

.03-.87 Classes of persons occupied with art

Add "Persons" notation 03-87 from Table 7 to base number 704

Class development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works, biography of artists in 709.2

For art dealers, see 706.5

.9 Iconography and collections of writings

.92 Collections of writings

.94 Iconography

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

SUMMARY

- 704.942 Human figures and their parts
- .943 Nature and still life
- .944 Architectural subjects
- .945 Abstractions
- .946 Symbolism and allegory
- .947 Mythology and legend
- .948 Religion and religious symbolism
- .949 Other specific subjects

.942 Human figures and their parts

Not provided for in 704.946-704.948

Class here portraits

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., groups of nude women 704.9424

- Pornography
- Specific kinds of persons
- Groups of figures
- According to attire

704.942 1-704.942 2 According to attire

Class comprehensive works in 704.942

.942 1 Nudes

.942 2 Draped figures

704.942 3-704.942 5 Specific kinds of persons

Class comprehensive works in 704.942

.942 3 Men

.942 4 Women

.942 5 Children

.942 6 Groups of figures

- .942 8 Pornography
- .943 Nature and still life
Not provided for in 704.946–704.948
- .943 2 Animals ✓
- .943 4 Plants
- .943 5 Still life
- .943 6 Landscapes
- .943 7 Marine scenes (Seascapes)
- .944 Architectural subjects
Including cityscapes
- .945 Abstractions
- .946 Symbolism and allegory
For religious symbolism, see 704.948
- .947 Mythology and legend
- .948 Religion and religious symbolism
Class significance and purpose of art in religious worship in 246, 291.37, 292–299
For mythology, see 704.947
- .948 2 Christianity
For specific Christian subjects, see 704.9484–704.9487
-
- 704.948 4–704.948 7 Specific Christian subjects
Class comprehensive works in 704.9482
- .948 4 Biblical characters and events
For Trinity, Madonna, Holy Family, see 704.9485; apostles, saints, angels, 704.9486, devils, 704.9487
- .948 5 Trinity, Madonna, Holy Family
- .948 52 Trinity
- .948 55 Madonna and Child
- .948 56 Holy Family
- .948 6 Apostles, saints, angels
- .948 7 Devils
- .948 9 Other religions
Add to 704.9489 the numbers following 29 in 294–299, e.g., Buddhism in art 704.948943
Class Old Testament characters and events in 704.9484

.949

Other specific subjects

Add 001–999 to base number 704.949, e.g., industrial subjects
704.9496

705

Serial publications of fine and decorative arts

706

Organizations of fine and decorative arts

.5

Business organizations

Including art dealers

707

Study and teaching of fine and decorative arts

.4

Temporary and traveling exhibits

Class museums and permanent exhibits in 708

708

Galleries, museums, private collections of fine and decorative arts

Class collections of writings in 704.92

For temporary and traveling exhibits, see 707.4

.001–.009

Standard subdivisions

Class historical treatment in specific areas in 708.1–708.9

[.01–.07]

Art museum economy

Class in 069

•

708.1–708.9 Geographical treatment

Class here guidebooks and catalogs of specific galleries, museums, private collections

Divide geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Japan 708.J (preceding 708.1)

Class comprehensive works in 708

In North America

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to galleries, museums, private collections of a specific country, it is optional to class them in this number, in that case class galleries, museums, private collections in North America in 708.97)

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Middle America in 708.972

.11

Canada

Add to 708.11 the numbers following 71 in “Areas” notation 711–719 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in British Columbia 708.111

.13-.19 United States

Add to 708.1 the numbers following 7 in "Areas" notation 73-79 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in Pennsylvania 708.148

Class galleries, museums, private collections in Hawaii in 708.9969

.2-.8 In modern European countries

Add to 708 the numbers following 4 in "Areas" notation 42-48 from Table 2, e.g., galleries, museums, private collections in France 708.4

Class comprehensive works, and galleries, museums, private collections in countries not provided for in "Areas" notation 42-48 in 708.94

.9 In other geographic areas

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 708.9, e.g., comprehensive works on galleries, museums, private collections in European countries 708.94; in Islamic areas 708.917671

709 Historical and geographical treatment of fine and decorative arts

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

709.01-709.04 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 709

.01 Primitive peoples and ancient times**.011 Primitive (Preliterate) peoples**

Regardless of time or place

.012-.015 Ancient times to 500 A.D.

Add "Standard Subdivisions" notation 09012-09015 from Table 1 to base number 7, e.g., art of 1st century B.C. 709.014

.02 500-1500

Class here early Christian, Byzantine art

Class Christian, Byzantine art before 500 in 709.015

.021 500-1200

Including Romanesque art

.022 13th century, 1200-1300

Class here Gothic art

Class Gothic art of an earlier or later period with the specific period

.023 14th century, 1300-1400

- .024 15th century, 1400–1500
 - Class here Renaissance art
 - Class Renaissance art of an earlier or later period with the specific period
- .03 Modern period, 1500–
 - For 20th century, 1900–, see 709.04*
- .031 16th century, 1500–1600
- .032 17th century, 1600–1700
 - Class here baroque art
 - Class baroque art of 18th century in 709.033
- .033 18th century, 1700–1800
 - Including rococo art
- .034 19th century, 1800–1900
 - Including classical revival, romanticism
- .04 20th century, 1900–
 - Class here modern art
 - Add “Standard Subdivisions” notation 09041–09049 from Table 1 to base number 7, e.g., art of 1960–1970 709.046
 - For 19th century, 1800–1900, see 709.034*
- .1 **Treatment by areas, regions, places in general**
 - Class art of primitive (preliterate) peoples regardless of place in 709.011
- .2 **Artists regardless of area, region, place**
 - Description and critical appraisal of work, collections of works, biography of artists not limited to or chiefly identified with a specific form, e.g., painting, or group of forms, e.g., graphic arts
- .3–.9 **Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities**
 - Class art of primitive (preliterate) peoples regardless of place in 709.011

710 Civic and landscape art

711 Area planning (Civic art)

- Design of physical environment for public welfare, convenience, pleasure
- For landscape design, see 712*
- .028 Apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Class techniques in 711.12

SUMMARY

- 711.1 **Procedural and social aspects**
 - .2 **International and national plans and planning**
 - .3 **Interstate, state, provincial, county plans and planning**
 - .4 **Local community (City) plans and planning**
 - .5 **Specific kinds of areas**
 - .6 **Structural elements**
 - .7 **Utilities Transportation facilities**
 - .8 **Other utilities**
- .1 **Procedural and social aspects**

Class procedural and social aspects of planning for areas of specific levels in 711.2–711.4, of planning of specific kinds of areas in 711.5, of specific elements in 711.6–711.8
- .12 **Professional practice and technical procedures**

Examples: collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models
- .13 **Social factors affecting planning**
- .14 **Economic factors affecting planning**
- 711.2–711.4 Plans and planning for areas of specific levels**

Class comprehensive works in 711, plans and planning of specific kinds of areas regardless of level in 711.5, of specific elements regardless of level in 711.6–711.8
- .2 **International and national plans and planning**
- .3 **Interstate, state, provincial, county plans and planning**

For metropolitan areas, see 711.43
- .4 **Local community (City) plans and planning**
- .409 **Historical and geographical treatment**

Class here specific cities

711.41–711.45 Specific types of plans

Class comprehensive works in 711.4, plans and planning for specific cities in 711.409
- .41 **Plans based on street patterns**

Examples: gridiron, radial, studied irregularity plans
- .42 **Plans based on topography and climate**
- .43 **Plans based on size**

Villages, small and large cities, metropolitan areas

- .45 Plans based on function
 - Examples: cities serving primarily as governmental, industrial, residential centers
- .5 **Specific kinds of areas**
- .55 Functional
 - For religious center areas, see 711.56; cultural and educational areas, 711.57; residential areas, 711.58; parking areas, 711.73*
- .551 Civic, administrative, governmental
- .552 Commercial, transportation, industrial
- .554 Agricultural
- .555 Medical center
- .556 Prison and reformatory
- .557 Hotel, restaurant, trailer-park
- .558 Recreational
 - Examples: parks, playgrounds, theater districts
- .56 Religious center
- .57 Cultural and educational
 - Areas for libraries, museums, colleges and universities, other schools
- .58 Residential
 - Urban, suburban, rural areas
 - Including apartment-house districts
 - For housing renewal, see 711.59*
- .59 Redevelopment of slums and blighted areas
 - Including housing renewal
- 711.6–711.8 Plans and planning of specific elements**
 - Class comprehensive works in 711.6, plans and planning of specific elements in specific kinds of areas in 711.5
- .6 **Structural elements**
 - Adaptation to site and use
 - Class here comprehensive works on plans and planning of specific elements
 - For utilities, see 711.7*
- .7 **Utilities Transportation facilities**
 - For other utilities, see 711.8*
- .73 **Motor transport facilities**
 - Including parking areas

.74 Pedestrian transport facilities

.75 Railroad transport facilities

.76 Marine transport facilities

.78 Air transport facilities

.8 Other utilities

Water, gas, electricity transmission and supply; communication lines, sanitation, flood control

712 Landscape design (Landscape architecture)

For specific elements in landscape design, see 714–717

.028 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques in 712.3

712.2–712.3 General considerations

Class comprehensive works in 712, general considerations of design of specific kinds of land tracts in 712.5–712.7

.2 Principles

Examples: esthetics, style, effect, composition

.3 Professional practice and technical procedures

Examples: collection of data, preparation and presentation of plans and models, supervision of operations



712.5–712.7 Specific kinds of land tracts

Class comprehensive works in 712

For trafficways, see 713; cemeteries, 718; natural landscapes, 719

.5 Public parks and grounds

Examples: commons, fairgrounds, amusement parks, zoological and botanical gardens

.6 Private parks and grounds

Front and back yards, home gardens, penthouse gardens, estates

.7 Semiprivate and institutional grounds

Examples: grounds of country clubs, hotels, hospitals, churches, schools, industrial plants

713 Landscape design of trafficways

► **714–717 Specific elements in landscape design**

Class comprehensive works in 712

714 Water features

Examples: natural and artificial pools, fountains, cascades

715 Woody plants

Nonflowering and flowering

.1 Topiary work

► **715.2–715.4 Specific kinds of plants**

Class comprehensive works in 715, topiary work on specific kinds of plants in 715.1

.2 Trees

.3 Shrubs

.4 Vines

716 Herbaceous plants

Nonflowering and flowering

Including ground cover

Class here comprehensive works on flowering plants in landscape design

For woody flowering plants, see 715

717 Structures

Relationship of buildings, terraces, fences, gates, steps, ornamental accessories to other elements of landscape design

718 Landscape design of cemeteries

.8 National memorial cemeteries

719 Natural landscapes

.3 Reserved lands

.32 Public parks and natural monuments

.33 Forest and water-supply reserves

.36 Wildlife reserves

720 Architecture

.28 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Including architectural drawing [*formerly 744.424*]

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class Oriental schools and styles in 722.1–722.5

[.901–.904] II Historical periods

Do not use; class in 722–724

[.93] In the ancient world

Do not use; class in 722

721 Architectural construction

Interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class architectural construction of specific types of structures in 725–728

For engineering design and construction, see 690; design and decoration, 729; structural engineering, 624.1

.04 General special**.042 Specific shapes**

Example: multi-story buildings

Class architectural construction of buildings of specific materials regardless of shape in 721.044

.044 Specific materials**.044 1–.044 6 Masonry**

Add to 721.044 the numbers following 693 in 693.1–693.6, e.g., architectural construction in ferroconcrete 721.04454

.044 7 Metals

Add to 721.0447 the numbers following 669 in 669.1–669.7, e.g., architectural construction in aluminum 721.0447722

.044 8 Wood**721.1–721.8 Structural elements**

Class comprehensive works in 721

.1 Foundations**.2 Walls**

Footings, colonnades, arcades, entablatures, partitions, bearing and retaining walls

.3 Columnar constructions

Piers, abutments, colonnettes, columns, posts, pedestals, pilasters

For colonnades, arcades, entablatures, see 721.2

.4 Curved constructions and details

Class curved doors and windows in 721.8

.41 Arches

For groined arches, see 721.44; arcades, 721.2

.43 Vaults

For specific types of vaults, see 721.44–721.45

721.44–721.45 Specific types of vaults

Class comprehensive works in 721.43

.44 Groined vaults and arches**.45 Other types of vaults**

Examples: tunnel, expanding, rib and fan vaults

.46 Domes

For cupolated roofs, see 721.5

.48 Niches**.5 Roofs and roof structures**

Including dormers, cornices, skylights, cupolated roofs, towers, spires, pinnacles, gables, pediments, chimneys

.6 Floors**.7 Ceilings****.8 Other elements**

Doors, doorways, windows, balconies, stairs, ramps, balustrades, porches, blinds, fastenings

722–724 Architectural schools and styles

Class comprehensive works, medieval and modern Western schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality in 720.9, architects of specific schools and styles not limited to a specific type of structure in 720.92, details of construction of specific schools and styles in 721; design and decoration of structures of specific schools and styles in 729; specific types of structures regardless of school or style in 725–728

722**Ancient and Oriental architecture****722.1–722.5 Oriental**

Ancient, medieval, modern

Class comprehensive works in 722

For Saracenic, see 723.3

.1 Chinese, Japanese, Korean

.2 Egyptian

Class early Christian architecture in Egypt in 723.1

.3 Semitic**.31 Phoenician**

Architecture of Tyre, Sidon, Beirut, Byblos

For colonial Phoenician, see 722.32

.32 Colonial Phoenician

Architecture of ancient Carthage, Utica, Cadiz, Cyprus

.33 Jewish**.4 South and southeast Asian**

Architecture of India, Pakistan, Tibet, Burma, Thailand, Cambodia, Java, Malaya, Philippines

Class here Buddhist, Jain, Hindu architecture

Class Buddhist, Jain, Hindu architecture of other national styles with the specific subject, e.g., Japanese 722.1

.5 Near Eastern

For Semitic, see 722.3; Egyptian, 722.2; Aegean, 722.61

.51 Mesopotamian**.52 Persian****.6 Ancient Western**

For Roman, see 722.7; Greek (Hellenic), 722.8; other ancient Western, 722.9

.61 Aegean, Minoan, Mycenae**.62 Etruscan****.7 Roman****.8 Greek (Hellenic)****.9 Other ancient Western****.91 American**

Architecture of Pueblo, Aztec, Toltec, Maya, Inca Indians

723 Medieval architecture, ca. 300–1400

Not limited by country or locality

For Oriental architecture, see 722.1–722.5

.1 Early Christian**.2 Byzantine****.3 Saracenic**

Muslim, Moorish, Mudejar

.4 **Romanesque and Norman**

.5 **Gothic**

724 **Modern architecture, 1400–**

Not limited by country or locality

For Oriental architecture, see 722.1–722.5

.1 **Early modern, 1400–1800**

Including Renaissance, Elizabethan, Jacobean, Queen Anne, Georgian, colonial styles

.19 **Baroque, rococo, Churrigneresque**

724.2–724.8 19th century

Class here eclecticism

Class comprehensive works in 724, eclecticism of another specific period with the period, e.g., 20th century 724.9

.2 **Classical revival**

.22 **Roman**

.23 **Greek**

.3 **Gothic revival**

.5 **Renaissance revival and neoclassical**

.7 **Swiss timber and half-timber**

.8 **Romanesque revival**

.9 **20th century**

Including international style, functionalism



725–728 Specific types of structures

Development of architectural schools and styles, design, interdisciplinary works on design and construction

Class here specific structures

Class comprehensive works in 720, engineering design and construction of specific types of habitable structures in 690.5–690.8

For structural engineering, see 624.1

725

Public structures

Not used primarily for religious, educational, research, residential purposes

SUMMARY

- 725.1 Government buildings
- .2 Commercial buildings
- .3 Transportation and storage buildings
- .4 Industrial buildings
- .5 Health and welfare buildings
- .6 Prison and reformatory buildings
- .7 Refreshment and park structures
- .8 Recreation buildings
- .9 Other public structures

.1 Government buildings

.11 Legislative department

.12 Executive department

.13 County and city

.14 Customs

.15 Court, record, archive

.16 Post office

.17 Official residence

Palaces of rulers, executive mansions; embassy, legation, consulate buildings

.18 Military and police

Examples: barracks, forts, castles, fortresses, armory and arsenal buildings

Class castles as dwelling places in 728.81, engineering of forts and fortresses in 623.1

.19 Fire station

.2 Commercial buildings

For refreshment structures, see 725.7

.21 Retail trade (Stores and shops)

- .23 **Office**
 - Including medical office buildings and clinics, radio and television buildings and towers
- .24 **Financial institution**
 - For exchange buildings, see 725.25*
- .25 **Exchange**
 - Examples: stock and commodity exchange, board of trade, chamber of commerce buildings
- .3 **Transportation and storage buildings**
 - .31 Railroad passenger station
 - .32 Railroad freight station
 - .33 Railroad accessory
 - Examples: roundhouses, shops, tool storage, guard and signal buildings
 - .34 Marine transportation
 - Harbor, dock, pier buildings
 - .35 Warehouse
 - .36 Storage elevator
 - .38 Motor vehicle transportation
 - Examples: bus terminal, public garage, filling station buildings
 - .39 Air transportation
 - Hangars, terminal and shop buildings
- .4 **Industrial buildings**
 - Factories, mills, plants, shipyards
- .5 **Health and welfare buildings**
 - For medical office buildings and clinics, see 725.23*
 - .51 General hospital and sanitarium buildings
 - Class children's hospital buildings in 725.57
 - .52 Psychiatric hospital buildings
 - .53 } Buildings of institutions for persons with mental handicaps
 - .54 } Buildings of institutions for persons with physical handicaps
 - .55 Buildings of institutions for the indigent
 - .56 Buildings of institutions for the aged
 - .57 Child welfare institution and hospital buildings
 - .59 Other
 - .592 Veterinary hospitals and shelters

- .594 Homes for veterans
- .597 Morgues and crematories
- .6 Prison and reformatory buildings**
- .7 Refreshment and park structures**
- .71 Restaurant buildings
- .72 Taproom buildings
- .73 Bathhouse buildings
- .74 Swimming pools
- .76 Amusement park and casino buildings
- .8 Recreation buildings**
 - For refreshment and park structures, see 725.7*
- .81 Music and concert buildings
 - For opera buildings, see 725.822*
- .82 Buildings for shows and spectacles
- .822 Theater and opera buildings
- .827 Buildings for outdoor performances and sports
 - Examples: stadiums, amphitheaters, grandstands
 - For racetrack buildings, see 725.89*
- .83 Auditorium buildings
- .84 Buildings for indoor games
 - Examples: boys' club, bowling alley buildings; halls for pool, card games, chess, checkers
 - For gymnasium buildings, see 725.85*
- .85 Gymnasium and athletic club buildings
- .86 Rink and dance hall buildings
- .87 Boathouses and recreation pier buildings
 - Including canoe club, yacht club buildings
- .88 Riding club buildings
- .89 Racetrack buildings
- .9 Other public structures**
- .91 Exhibition buildings
- .94 Memorial buildings
 - Class memorial buildings for a specific purpose with the subject, e.g., memorial library buildings 727.8
- .96 Arches, gateways, walls

- .97 Towers
 - Examples: bell, clock, observatory towers
- .98 Bridges, tunnels, moats
- [.99] Vehicles
 - Provision discontinued because not part of architecture

726 Buildings for religious purposes

SUMMARY

- 726.1 Temples and shrines
 - .2 Mosques and minarets
 - .3 Synagogues and Judaistic temples
 - .4 Accessory houses of worship
 - .5 Christian church buildings
 - .6 Cathedral church buildings
 - .7 Monastic buildings
 - .8 Mortuary chapels and tombs
 - .9 Other buildings for religious purposes
- .1 Temples and shrines
 - Add to 726.1 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., Buddhist temples and shrines 726.143
 - For mosques and minarets, see 726.2; synagogues and Judaistic temples, 726.3, Christian church buildings, 726.5*
- .2 Mosques and minarets
- .3 Synagogues and Judaistic temples
- .4 Accessory houses of worship
 - Parish houses, chapels, Sunday school buildings, baptistries of all religions
 - For mortuary chapels, see 726.8*
- .5 Christian church buildings
 - For cathedral church buildings, see 726.6*
- .58 Specific denominations
 - Add to 726.58 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., Protestant Episcopal Church buildings 726.583
 - Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific denominations in 726.509
- .59 Details
 - .591 Entrances and approaches
 - .592 Naves and transepts
 - .593 Chancels, sanctuaries, choir lofts, pulpit platforms
 - .594 Clerestories

- .595 Side chapels
- .596 Sacristies and baptistries
- .597 Towers and steeples
- .6 **Cathedral church buildings**
Class details of cathedral church buildings in 726.59



726.62–726.65 Specific denominations

Class comprehensive works in 726.6, geographical treatment of buildings of specific denominations in 726.609

- .62 **Oriental**
For Eastern Orthodox, see 726.63
- .63 Eastern Orthodox
- .64 Roman Catholic
- .65 Anglican
- .69 Accessory structures
Cathedral cloisters, chapter houses
- .7 **Monastic buildings**
Abbeys, priories, friaries, convents, monasteries of all religions
- .77 **Of specific Christian orders**
Add to 726.77 the numbers following 255 in 255.1–255.9, e.g.,
Franciscan monasteries 726.773
Class geographical treatment of buildings of specific orders in 726.709
- [.779 9] **Of orders of other religions**
Class in 726.78
- .78 **Of orders of other religions** [*formerly 726.7799*]
Add to 726.78 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g.,
Buddhist monasteries 726.7843
- .79 Accessory structures
Refectories, cloisters, cells
- .8 **Mortuary chapels and tombs**
- .9 **Other buildings for religious purposes**
Parsonages, episcopal palaces, missions, buildings of religious associations
- 727 **Buildings for educational and research purposes**
 - .1 **Elementary school buildings**
 - .2 **Secondary school buildings**

.3 College and university buildings

Class specialized college and university buildings in 727.4–727.8

.38 Accessory structures

Dormitory, dining hall, music room buildings

.4 Professional and technical school buildings

Use 727.40001–727.40009 for standard subdivisions

Add 001–999 to base number 727.4, e.g., law school buildings 727.434

.5 Research buildings

Laboratory, botanical and zoological garden, observatory buildings

Use 727.50001–727.50009 for standard subdivisions

Add 001–999 to base number 727.5, e.g., astronomical observatories 727.552

.6 Museum buildings

Use 727.60001–727.60009 for standard subdivisions

Add 001–999 to base number 727.6, e.g., science museum buildings 727.65

For art museum buildings, see 727.7

.7 Art museum and gallery buildings**.8 Library buildings**

727.82–727.84 Specific kinds of libraries

Class comprehensive works in 727.8, geographical treatment regardless of kind of library in 727.809

.82 General libraries

Add to 727.82 the numbers following 027 in 027.1–027.8, e.g., public library buildings 727.824

For branch libraries, see 727.84

.83 Libraries devoted to specific subjects**.84 Branch libraries****.9 Other buildings for educational and research purposes**

Community center, learned society buildings

728 Residential buildings (Domestic architecture)

Structures designed for permanent and temporary homes

For official residence buildings, see 725.17; parsonages and episcopal palaces, 726.9; college dormitory buildings, 727.38

Low-cost housing

Unit and multiple dwellings designed along simple lines to reduce construction costs

Former heading: Temporary buildings

[.2] **Mutiple dwellings**

Class in 728.31

728.3–728.6 Conventional housing

Class comprehensive works in 728

*For low-cost housing, see 728.1***.3 Urban types****.31 Multiple dwellings [formerly 728.2]**

Duplex [formerly 728.34] and row houses, tenements, flats, apartments, apartment hotels

[.34] Duplex houses

Class in 728.31

.37 Separate houses of two or more stories

Class farmhouses of two or more stories in 728.67

728.4–728.5 Special-purpose housing

Class comprehensive works in 728, resort dwellings in 728.7

.4 Club houses

For country, city, fraternal clubs

.5 Hotels and motels*For apartment hotels, see 728.31***.6 Suburban and rural types****.64 Single-story houses with or without basements**

Cottages, bungalows, ranch and split-level houses

.67 Farmhouses**.69 Solar houses****.7 Vacation cabins, hunting lodges, houseboats, house trailers****.8 Large and elaborate private dwellings****.81 Castles****.82 Palaces and chateaux****.83 Mansions and manor houses****.84 Villas****.9 Accessory domestic structures**

Examples: gatehouses, garages, conservatories, farm buildings

729 **Design and decoration of structures and accessories**

Class design and decoration of specific types of structures in 725–728, interior decoration in 747

SUMMARY

- 729.1 **Design in vertical plane**
- .2 **Design in horizontal plane (Plans and planning)**
- .3 **Design and decoration of structural elements**
- .4 **Decoration in paint**
- .5 **Decoration in relief**
- .6 **Decoration in veneer and incrustation**
- .7 **Decoration in mosaic**
- .8 **Decoration in ornamental glass**
- .9 **Built-in ecclesiastical furniture**

729.1–729.2 **Design in specific planes**

Class comprehensive works in 729, design of structural elements in specific planes in 729.3

- .1 **Design in vertical plane**
 - Façades, elevations, sections
- .11 **Composition**
- .13 **Proportion**
- .19 **Inscriptions and lettering**
- .2 **Design in horizontal plane (Plans and planning)**
 - As related to function and size of areas
 - Class here modular design
- .23 **Proportion**
- .24 **Interior arrangement**
- .25 **Lines of interior communication**
- .28 **Lighting**
- .29 **Acoustics**
- .3 **Design and decoration of structural elements**
 - Class design and decoration of structural elements in specific mediums in 729.4–729.8, of built-in ecclesiastical furniture in 729.9
- .31 **Walls**
 - Including paneling, entablatures, moldings
 - For pilasters, see 729.32*

- .32 Columnar structures
 - Colonnettes, columns, colonnades, posts, pedestals, pilasters, piers
 - For arcades, see 729.33*
- .326 Architectural orders
 - For entablatures, see 729.31*
- .33 Arches and arcades
- .34 Vaults, domes, niches, ceilings
- .35 Roofs and roof structures
 - Including dormers, cornices, skylights, pinnacles, towers, spires, chimneys, gables, pediments
- .37 Floors
- .38 Doors, doorways, windows
- .39 Other elements
 - Stairs, ramps, balustrades, balconies, porches

729.4–729.8 Decoration in specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 729

- .4 **Decoration in paint**
 - Decorative painting as an adjunct to architecture
- .5 **Decoration in relief**
 - Carved and sculptured decoration and ornament, Gothic tracery, gargoyles
- .6 **Decoration in veneer and incrustation**
 - Use of wood, stone, metal, enamel in architectural decoration
- .7 **Decoration in mosaic**
- .8 **Decoration in ornamental glass**
- .9 **Built-in ecclesiastical furniture**
- .91 Sacramental furniture
 - Examples: altars, baptismal fonts, confessionals, tabernacles
- .92 Rostral furniture
 - Examples: pulpits, lecterns, prayer desks
- .93 Seats and canopies
 - Examples: bishops' thrones, baldachins, choir stalls, pews
- .96 Screens and railings
 - Examples: rood screens, altar screens, altar and chancel railings, reredoses
- .97 Organ cases

.98 Lighting fixtures

730 Plastic arts Sculpture

Use 730.01–730.09 for standard subdivisions of plastic arts

730.1–730.9 Generalities of sculpture

Standard subdivisions and their extended meanings

Class comprehensive works in 730, generalities of individual sculptors in 730.924

.1 Philosophy and theory of sculpture

.11 Appreciative aspects

Class psychological principles in 730.19

.117 Esthetics

.118 Criticism and appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 730.9

.18 Inherent features

Composition [*formerly* 731.1], color, form, style, decorative values

Class methodology in 730.1

.2 Miscellany of sculpture

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 731.2–731.4

.3–.8 Other standard subdivisions of sculpture

.9 Historical and geographical treatment of sculpture

Class sculpture of primitive (prehistoric) peoples regardless of time or place in 732.2, Oriental schools and styles in 732

[.901–.904] Historical periods

Do not use, class in 732–735

.92 Sculptors

Description and critical appraisal of work, collections of works, biography of sculptors regardless of process, representation, style, period, place

[.93] In the ancient world

Do not use, class in 732–733



731–735 Sculpture

Fine art of producing figures and designs in relief or the round by fashioning in plastic and rigid materials

Class comprehensive works in 730

731

Processes and representations of sculpture

Class processes and representations of individual sculptors in 730.924; processes and representations used in specific periods and by specific schools in 732–735

SUMMARY

- 731.2 Materials
- .3 Apparatus and equipment
- .4 Techniques
- .5 Styles and forms
- .7 Sculpture in the round
- .8 Iconography

[.1]

Composition

Class in 730.18

731.2–731.4 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 731, styles, forms, subjects employing specific techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 731.5–731.8

.2

Materials

Examples: metals, wood, stone, clay, wax, papier-mâché, finishing materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 731.4

.3

Apparatus and equipment

Tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 731.4

.4

Techniques

.42

Modeling

With and without armatures

.43

Molding

Preparation of molds from models

.45

Casting

.452

In plaster and cement

.453

In synthetic plastics

.456

In bronze

.457

In other metals

- .46 Carving
- .462 In wood
- .463 In stone
- .47 Firing and baking
 - Including clay models for molding, ceramic sculpture
- .48 Restoration
- .5 **Styles and forms**
 - Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of **works**
 - For sculpture in the round, see 731.7*
- .52 Universal styles
 - Examples, idealistic, naturalistic, realistic, grotesque
 - Class styles limited by time or place in 732-735
- .54 Sculpture in relief
 - Class iconography of sculpture in relief in 731.8
- .542 Portals and doors
- .549 Monumental reliefs
- .55 Mobiles and stabiles
- .7 **Sculpture in the round**
 - Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of **works**
 - Class iconography of sculpture in the round in 731.8
- .72 Decorative sculpture
- .722 Garden sculpture and fountains
- .724 Sculptured vases and urns
- .74 Busts
- .75 Masks
- .76 Monuments
- .8 **Iconography**
 - Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of **works**
- .81 Equestrian sculpture
- .82-.89 Other specific subjects
 - Add to 731.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942-704.949, e.g., mythology and legend 731.87

732-735 Schools and styles of sculpture

Class comprehensive works, medieval and modern Western schools and styles limited to a specific country or locality in 730.9; sculptors of specific schools and styles in 730.92

For universal styles, see 731.52

732 Primitive, ancient, Oriental sculpture**.2 Primitive (Preliterate)**

Regardless of time or place

.3 Palestinian

Including Jewish

.4 South and southeast Asian

Sculpture of India, Pakistan, Tibet, Burma, Thailand, Cambodia, Java, Malaya, Philippines

Class here Buddhist, Jain, Hindu sculpture

Class Buddhist, Jain, Hindu sculpture of other national styles with the specific subject, e.g., Japanese 732.7

.5 Mesopotamian and Persian**.6 Ancient Germanic, Celtic, Slavic, Iberian, British****.7 Chinese, Japanese, Korean****.8 Egyptian****.9 Other ancient and Oriental**

Add to 732.9 the numbers following 39 in "Areas" notation 391–398 from Table 2, e.g., Phoenician sculpture 732.944

*For Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture, see 733***733 Greek, Etruscan, Roman sculpture**

Class sculpture of Greek Archipelago in 732.91

.3 Greek (Hellenic)**.4 Etruscan****.5 Roman****734 Medieval sculpture, ca. 500–1400**

Not limited by country or locality

.2 Styles**.22 Early Christian and Byzantine****.24 Romanesque****.25 Gothic****735 Modern sculpture, 1400–**

Not limited by country or locality

.2 Specific periods**.21 Early modern, 1400–1800**

Including Renaissance, baroque

- .22 19th century
Including classical revival, romanticism, realism
- .29 20th century
Including abstractionism, geometric design, nonobjectivity

736–739 Other plastic arts

Processes and products

Class comprehensive works in 730, fine art of sculpture in 731–735, other plastic arts not provided for here in 745–749

736 Carving and carvings

- .2 **Precious and semiprecious stones (Glyptics)**
- .202 Miscellany
- .202 8 Lapidary work
Cutting, polishing, engraving gems
- ?? Specific forms
Class scarabs in 736.209.32, carving in specific materials regardless of form in 736.23–736.28
- .222 Cameos
- .223 Intaglios

736.23–736.28 Specific stones

Class comprehensive works in 736.2

- .23 Diamonds
- .24 Jade
- .25 Sapphires
- .28 Obsidian
- .4 **Wood**
Whittling, scrollwork, chip carving, wood rasp carving; totem poles
- .5 **Stone**
Including lettering, inscriptions, designs
- .6 **Ivory, bone, horn, shell, amber**
- .68 Netsukes
- .7 **Ornamental fans**
Class fans of a specific material with the material, e.g., ivory 736.6
- .9 **Other materials**
- .93 Wax

- .94 Snow and ice
- .95 Soap
- .98 Paper cutting and folding
 - Including origami

737 Numismatics and sigillography

For paper money, see 769.55

- .2 Medals, talismans, amulets
- .3 Counters and tokens
- .4 Coins
 - Class here counterfeit coins
- .409 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Class coins of specific countries in 737.49
- .49 Of specific countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 737.49
- .6 Engraved seals, stamps, signets (Sigillography)

738 Ceramic arts

For glass, see 748

- [.028] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 - Do not use; class in 738.1
- .1 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
- .12 Materials
 - Kaolin, petuntse, other clays, glazes, color materials
 - Class use of materials in specific techniques in 738.14
- .13 Apparatus and equipment
 - Potter's wheels, kilns, accessories
 - Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 738.14
- .14 Techniques
 - Class techniques of making specialized products in 738.4–738.8
 - For decorative treatment, see 738.15*
- .142 Modeling and casting
- .143 Firing
 - Before and after glazing
- .144 Glazing

.15 **Decorative treatment**

Underglaze and overglaze painting, slip tracing, sgraffito decoration, transfer painting

For glazing, see 738.144

738.2–738.8 Products

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

Class comprehensive works in 738

738.2–738.3 Pottery

Class comprehensive works in 738, techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 738.1

.2 **Porcelain (China)**

.27 **Specific varieties**

Examples: Limoges, Staffordshire, Sèvres, Meissen, Wedgwood

Arrange alphabetically by name

.28 **Specific products**

Examples: vases, tableware

Class specific products made of specific varieties of porcelain in 738.27

.3 **Earthenware and stoneware**

.37 **Specific varieties**

Examples: majolica, faience, delft, Wedgwood jasper ware

Arrange alphabetically by name

.38 **Specific products**

Class specific products made of specific varieties of earthenware and stoneware in 738.37

.382 **Vases**

.383 **Other containers**

738.4–738.8 Specialized products and techniques of making them

Class comprehensive works in 738

.4 **Enameling and enamels**

Examples: cloisonné, champlevé, basse-taille, surface-painted enamels

For nielloing, see 739.15, jewelry, 739.27

.5 **Mosaic ornaments**

.6 **Ornamental bricks and tiles**

.8 Other products

Lighting fixtures, candlesticks, stoves, braziers, figurines

739 Art metalwork

Decorative metallic forms and their creation

For numismatics, see 737

[.028] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 739.1

SUMMARY

739.1 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

.2 Work in precious metals

.3 Watch- and clockcases

.4 Ironwork

.5 Work in other metals

.7 Arms and armor

.1 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for a specific kind of metalwork with the subject, e.g., goldsmithing 739.22

.12 Materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 739.14

.13 Apparatus and equipment

Tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 739.14

.14 Techniques

Shaping metals by hammering and beating (*repoussé* work), stamping, forging, welding, rolling, drawing, casting, bending

For decorative treatment, see 739.15

.15 Decorative treatment

Examples: painting, chasing, nielloing, damascening, patinating

.2 Work in precious metals

Class watch- and clockcases in precious metals in 739.3

739.22–739.24 In specific metals

Class comprehensive works in 739.2, jewelry in specific metals in 739.27

.22 Goldsmithing

[.220 28] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use; class in 739.222–739.225

[.220 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 739.227

.220 92 Goldsmiths

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 739.2272)

739.222–739.225 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 739.22; historical and geographical treatment in 739.227; techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.228

.222 Materials

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 739.224

.223 Apparatus and equipment

Tools, machines, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 739.224

.224 Techniques

Shaping gold by hammering and heating (*repoussé work*), stamping, forging, welding, rolling, drawing, casting, bending

For decorative treatment, see 739.225

.225 Decorative treatment

Examples: chasing, nielloing, damascening, patinating

.227 Historical and geographical treatment

.227 01–.227 04 Historical periods

Add to 739.2270 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., goldsmithing in 15th century 739.227024

.227 1–.227 9 Geographical treatment

Add “Arcas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 739.227, e.g., goldsmiths 739.2272

If preferred, class goldsmiths in 739.22092

.228 Specific products

Gold and gold plate

Class historical and geographical treatment of specific products in 739.227

.228 2 Ecclesiastical articles

.228 3 Tableware

For ecclesiastical articles, see 739.2282

.228 4 Receptacles

Examples: vases, boxes, loving cups

For ecclesiastical articles, see 739.2282

- .23 Silversmithing**
 Add to 739.23 the numbers following 739.22 in 739.22092–739.228, e.g., silver tableware 739.2383
- .24 Platinumwork**
- .27 Jewelry**
For mosaic ornaments, see 738.5; precious and semiprecious stones, 736.2
- [.270 28] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use; class in 739.272–739.275
- .272–.275 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Add to 739.27 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.15, e.g., techniques 739.274
 Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.278
- .278 Specific products**
- .3 Watch- and clockcases**
- [.302 8] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Do not use, class in 739.32–739.35
- [.309] Historical and geographical treatment
 Do not use, class in 739.37
- .309 2 Artists**
 (Use of this number is optional; prefer 739.372)
- .32–.35 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 Add to 739.3 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.15, e.g., apparatus and equipment 739.33
 Class historical and geographical treatment in 739.37
- .37 Historical and geographical treatment**
- .370 1–.370 4 Historical periods**
 Add to 739.370 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., making of clockcases in 18th century 739.37033
- .371–.379 Geographical treatment**
 Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 739.37, e.g., artists 739.372
 If preferred, class artists in 739.3092

739.4–739.5 Work in base metals

Class comprehensive works in 739, watch- and clockcases in base metals in 739.3

For arms and armor, see 739.7

.4 Ironwork

Ornamental work in wrought iron, cast iron, stainless steel

.402 8] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Do not use, class in 739.42–739.45

.409] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use, class in 739.47

.409 2 Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 739.472)

.42–.45 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Add to 739.4 the numbers following 739.1 in 739.12–739.15, e.g., apparatus and equipment 739.43

Class historical and geographical treatment in 739.47; techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials for specific products in 739.48

.47 Historical and geographical treatment

.470 1–.470 4 Historical periods

Add to 739.470 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., ironwork in 19th century 739.47034

.471–.479 Geographical treatment

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 739.47, e.g., artists 739.472

If preferred, class artists in 739.4092

.48 Specific products

Examples. grills, balcony motifs, balustrades, knockers, ornamental nails

Class historical and geographical treatment of specific products in 739.47

.5 Work in other metals

.51 Copper and its alloys

For brass, see 739.52

.511 Copper

.512 Bronze

.52 Brass

.2 Techniques [formerly also 741.4], apparatus, equipment, materials

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials used in special applications in 741.5–741.7; used in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8; used by individual artists in 741.092

For perspective, see 742

741.22–741.29 Specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 741.2

.22 Charcoal

.23 Chalk and crayon

.235 Pastel

.24 Pencil

.25 Silverpoint

.26 Ink with pen or brush

.29 Scratchboard and airbrush drawing

[.4] Drawing processes

Class composition in 741.018, techniques in 741.2

741.5–741.7 Special applications

Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials, description, critical appraisal, collections

Class comprehensive works in 741, description and critical appraisal of specific artists regardless of application in 741.092

.5 Cartoons, caricatures, comics

.58 Animated cartoons

Class cartoon films in 791.433

.59 Collections

Class here cartoons with subordinate text

.590 9 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by specific continents, countries, localities in 741.593–741.599

.593–.599 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities

Class here collections by individual cartoonists

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 741.59

.6 Illustration (Commercial art)

.61 Principles

741.64–741.69 For specific mediums

Class comprehensive works in 741.6

.64 Books and book jackets

Class illumination of manuscripts and books in 745.67

.642 Children's books**.65 Magazines and newspapers****.67 Advertisements and posters****.672 Fashion drawing****.68 Calendars, greeting and postal cards****.69 Match covers and labels****.7 Silhouettes****.9 Collections of drawings**

Regardless of medium or process

Class collections devoted to special applications in 741.5–741.7

**741.92–741.99 Collections of drawings of specific periods and places**

Regardless of subject

Class comprehensive works in 741.9

.92 Historical periods

Not limited geographically

.921 Ancient to 500 A.D.**.922 500–1400****.923 1400–1800****.924 1800–****.93–.99 Continents, countries, localities**

Class here collections by individual artists

Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 741.9

742 Perspective

Theory, principles, methods

Class perspective in drawing specific subjects in 743.4–743.8, in special applications in 741.5–741.7

743 Drawing and drawings by subject**[.028] Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Do not use; class in 743.4–743.8

743.4–743.8 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 743, artists regardless of subject in 741.092

Drawing human figures

Class here portraits, nudes, anatomy for artists

For drawing draped figures, see 743.5

743.43–743.45 Specific kinds of persons

Class comprehensive works in 743.4, anatomic systems of specific kinds of persons in 743.46–743.47, parts of body of specific kinds of persons in 743.49

- 43 Men
- 44 Women
- 45 Children

743.46–743.47 Anatomic systems

Class comprehensive works in 743.4

- .46 Bones (Skeletal system)
- .47 Muscles (Muscular system)
- .49 Parts and regions of body
 - Examples: head, thorax, abdomen, extremities

.5 Drawing draperies and draped figures

For fashion drawing, see 741.672

.6 Drawing animal life**.62–.69 Specific animals**

Add to 743.6 the numbers following 59 in 592–599, e.g.,
drawing birds 743.682

.7 Drawing plant life

Including flowers, fruit

.8 Drawing other subjects

Add to 743.8 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.943–704.949, e.g.,
landscapes 743.836

.9 Collections of drawings by subject

Not limited chronologically or geographically

Add to 743.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g.,
collections of drawings of buildings 743.94

Class collections of drawings by subject but limited chronologically or
geographically in 741.92–741.99

[744] Technical drawing

Class in 604.2

[.424] Architectural drawing

Class in 720.28

[.428] Map drawing

Class in 526.86

745 Decorative and minor arts

Class here folk art

Class other decorative and minor arts in 736–739

*For interior decoration, see 747***SUMMARY**

- 745.1 Antiques**
- .2 Industrial art and design**
- .4 Pure and applied design and decoration**
- .5 Handicrafts**
- .6 Lettering, illumination, heraldic design**
- .7 Decorative coloring**
- .8 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas**
- .9 Other decorative arts**

.1 Antiques

Class a specific kind of antique with the subject, e.g., brasses 739.52

.2 Industrial art and design

Creative design of mass-produced commodities

.4 Pure and applied design and decoration

Class design in a specific art form with the form, e.g., design in architecture 729

*For industrial design, see 745.2***[.409] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 745.44

.409 2 Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 745.4492)

.44 Historical and geographical treatment**745.441–745.444 Periods of development**

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 745.44

.441 Primitive (Preiterate) peoples, and ancient times to 500 A.D.

Class here design and decoration by primitive peoples regardless of time or place

- .442 500–1400
Including early Christian, Byzantine, Romanesque, Gothic styles
- .443 Early modern, 1400–1800
Including Renaissance, baroque, rococo styles
- .444 Modern period, 1800–
Including classical revival, romantic styles
- .449 Geographical treatment
Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 745.449,
e.g., artists 745.4492
If preferred, class artists in 745.4092
Class design and decoration by primitive peoples regardless of
place in 745.441
- .5 Handicrafts**
Creative work done by hand with aid of simple tools or machines
For decorative coloring, see 745.7; floral arts, 745.92
- 745.51–745.57 In specific materials
Class comprehensive works in 745.5, glass handicrafts in 748
For textile handicrafts, see 746
- .51 In woods
Examples: marquetry, inlay trim, ornamental woodwork
For ornamental woodwork in furniture, see 749.5
- .53 In leathers and furs
- .531 Leathers
- .537 Furs
- .54 In papers
Examples: découpage, gift wrapping, use of endpapers and wallpapers
- .55 In shells
- .56 In metals
- .57 In rubber and plastics

- .59 Making specific objects
 - Class here handicrafts in composite materials
- .592 Toys and models
 - 745.592 2-745.592 4 Toys
 - Class comprehensive works in 745.592
 - For toy soldiers, see 745.59282*
 - .592 2 Dolls, puppets, marionettes, and their clothing
 - .592 3 Dollhouses and furniture
 - .592 4 Padded toys other than dolls
 - .592 8 Models
 - .592 82 Military
 - Including toy soldiers
- .593 Useful objects
 - Including decoys
 - For toys and models, see 745.592*
 - .593 2 Lampshades
 - .593 3 Candlesticks
- .594 Decorative objects
 - .594 1 For special occasions
 - Examples: holidays, weddings
 - .594 2 Costume jewelry
 - .594 3 Artificial flowers
 - Class arrangement of artificial flowers in 745.92
- .6 Lettering, illumination, heraldic design
 - .61 Decorative lettering
 - Class here calligraphy, artistic lettering [*both formerly also 741*]
 - .619 Specific styles
 - .619 7 Latin
 - .619 8 Greek
 - .619 9 Other
 - Add "Languages" notation 9 from Table 4 to base number 745.619, e.g., Chinese 745.619951
 - .66 Heraldic design
 - .67 Illumination of manuscripts and books
 - Class development, description, critical appraisal of manuscripts in 091, of illustrated books in 096.1

- .7 Decorative coloring**
 - For printing, painting, dyeing textiles, see 746.6*
- .72 Painting and lackering**
 - Examples: japanning, tolecraft
- .73 Stenciling**
- .74 Decalcomania**
- .8 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas**
- .9 Other decorative arts**
- .92 Floral arts**
 - Flower arrangement: selection and arrangement of plant materials and appropriate accessories
 - Class here arrangement of artificial flowers
 - 745.922–745.926 Three-dimensional arrangements
 - Class comprehensive works in 745.92
 - 745.922–745.925 Three-dimensional arrangements with specific materials
 - Class comprehensive works in 745.92, arrangements with specific materials for special occasions in 745.926
 - .922 Flower arrangements in containers
 - .922 4 Occidental compositions
 - .922 5 Oriental compositions
 - .922 51 Chinese
 - .922 52 Japanese
 - .923 Flower arrangements without containers
 - Examples: corsages, boutonnieres, set floral pieces
 - .924 Fruit and vegetable arrangements
 - .925 Arrangements with other plant materials
 - Examples: driftwood, pods and cones, dried and gilded grasses and leaves
 - .926 Three-dimensional arrangements for special occasions
 - Examples: flower and other floral arrangements for holidays, weddings, funerals, church services
 - .928 Two-dimensional arrangements
 - Use of seeds and other dried plant materials in pictures, hangings, trays, and for other decorative purposes

746 Textile arts and handicrafts

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., embroidering tapestry in wool 746.3

Products

- Laces and related fabrics
- Pictures, hangings, tapestries
- Rugs and carpets
- Other textile products

Processes

- Spinning and weaving
- Needle- and handwork
- Beadwork
- Printing, painting, dyeing

Specific materials**.04 Specific materials**

Add to 746.04 the numbers following 677 in 677.1–677.7, e.g., silk 746.0439

SUMMARY

- 746.1 Spinning and weaving**
 - .2 Laces and related fabrics
 - .3 Pictures, hangings, tapestries
 - .4 Needle- and handwork
 - .5 Beadwork
 - .6 Printing, painting, dyeing
 - .7 Rugs and carpets
 - .9 Other textile products

.1 Spinning and weaving**.12 Spinning****.14 Weaving**

For weaving unaltered vegetable fibers, see 746.41

.2 Laces and related fabrics**.22 Bobbin, darned, needlepoint laces****.27 Passementerie**

Braids, cords, fringes

.3 Pictures, hangings [*both formerly* 746.445], tapestries**[.309] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 746.39

.309 2 Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 746.392)

- .39 **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .390 1–.390 4 **Historical periods**
 - Add to 746.390 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., tapestries in 12th century 746.39021
- .391–.399 **Geographical treatment**
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 746.39, e.g., artists 746.392
 - If preferred, class artists in 746.3092
- .4 **Needle- and handwork**
- .41 Weaving, braiding, matting unaltered vegetable fibers
 - Examples: raffiawork, rushwork
- .43 **Knitting, crocheting, tatting**
- .44 **Embroidery**
 - Smocking, appliqué, couching, cutwork, needlepoint, crewelwork, drawn work, hardanger
- [.445] **Pictures and hangings**
 - Class in 746.3
- .46 **Patchwork and quilting**
- .5 **Beadwork**
- .6 **Printing, painting, dyeing**
 - Block and silk-screen printing, resist-dyeing, hand decoration, stenciling, batik
- .7 **Rugs and carpets**
- [.709] **Historical and geographical treatment**
 - Do not use; class in 746.79
- .709 2 **Artists**
 - (Use of this number is optional, prefer 746.792)
- .72 **Woven without pile**
 - Plain, twill, Jacquard, tapestry weaves
 - Including Navaho rugs
- .73 **Crocheted, knitted, braided**
- .74 **Hooked and embroidered**

.75 Woven with pile

746.751–746.759 Oriental rugs and carpets

Class comprehensive works in 746.75

.751–.758 From Asian countries

Add “Areas” notation 51–58 from Table 2 to base number 746.7,
e.g., Chinese rugs 746.751

.759 From Caucasus region

.79 Historical and geographical treatment

.790 1–.790 4 Historical periods

Add to 746.790 the numbers following 090 in “Standard
Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., carpets
in 18th century 746.79033

.791–.799 Geographical treatment

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 746.79,
e.g., artists 746.792

If preferred, class artists in 746.7092

Class historical and geographical treatment of Oriental rugs and
carpets in 746.751–746.759

.9 Other textile products

.92 Costume

Including fashion design [*formerly also* 687.101]

746.94–746.98 Interior furnishings

Class comprehensive works in 746.9

.94 Draperies and curtains

.95 Furniture covers

Upholstery, slipcovers, antimacassars

.96 Table linens

Tablecloths, napkins (serviettes), doilies, mats, scarves

.97 Bedclothing

Blankets, sheets, bedspreads, pillowcases

.98 Towels and toweling

747 Interior decoration

Design and decorative treatment of interior furnishings

Class textile arts and handicrafts in 746

For furniture and accessories, see 749

[.09] **Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 747.2

.092 **Artists**

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 747.2)

.2 **Historical and geographical treatment**

Class here artists

If preferred, class artists in 747.092

747.201–747.204 **Periods of development**

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 747.2

.201 **Ancient period to 500 A.D.**

.202 **500–1400**

.203 **Renaissance period, 1400–1800**

.204 **Modern period, 1800–**

.21–.29 **Geographical treatment**

Add to 747.2 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g.,
interior decoration in France 747.24

747.3–747.4 Decoration of specific elements

Class comprehensive works in 747, decoration of specific elements in specific types of buildings in 747.8, decoration of specific elements in specific rooms of residential buildings in 747.7, specific decorations of specific elements in 747.9

.3 **Ceilings, walls, doors, windows**

Decorative hangings, painting, papering, paneling, woodwork

For draperies, see 747.5

.4 **Floors**

For carpets, see 747.5

.5 **Draperies, upholstery, carpets**

.7 **Decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings**

Class specific decorations regardless of room in 747.9

.73 **Home libraries and studies**

.75 Living rooms, drawing rooms, parlors

.76 Dining rooms

.77 Bedrooms and nurseries

.78 Bathrooms and powder rooms

.79 Other rooms

.791 Recreation and family rooms

.797 Kitchens

.8 Decoration of specific types of buildings

Add to 747.8 the numbers following 72 in 725–728, e.g., decoration of Christian church buildings 747.865

Class specific decorations regardless of type of building in 747.9

For decoration of specific rooms of residential buildings, see 747.7

.9 Specific decorations

For draperies, upholstery, carpets, see 747.5

.92 Decorative lighting

.93 Decorations for specific occasions

Examples: for parties, weddings, holidays

748 Glass

.2 Glassware

Blown, prest, molded, cast, decorated products other than stained glass

For specific articles, see 748.8; methods of decoration, 748.6

[.209] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 748.29

.209 2 Artists

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 748.29)

.29 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here artists

If preferred, class artists in 748.2092

.290 1–.290 4 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Add to 748.290 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201–747.204, e.g., modern period 748.2904

.291–.299 Geographical treatment

Add to 748.29 the numbers following 708 in 708.1–708.9, e.g., glassware of Pennsylvania 748.29148

- .5 Stained, painted, leaded, mosaic glass**
 [.509] Historical and geographical treatment
 Do not use; class in 748.59
 .509 2 Artists
 (Use of this number is optional; prefer 748.59)
 .59 Historical and geographical treatment
 Class here artists
 If preferred, class artists in 748.5092
 .590 1-.590 4 Periods of development
 Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality
 Add to 748.590 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201-747.204,
 e.g., 500-1400 748.5902
 .591-.599 Geographical treatment
 Add to 748.59 the numbers following 708 in 708.1-708.9, e.g.,
 glass of France 708.594
.6 Methods of decoration
 Including engraving, cutting, sand blasting, etching
 For painted glass, see 748.5
.8 Specific articles
 Examples: mirrors, paperweights, containers, ornaments
 For lighting fixtures, see 749.63

749 Furniture and accessories

For upholstery, see 747.5

- [.09] Historical and geographical treatment
 Do not use; class in 749.2
 .092 Artists
 (Use of this number is optional; prefer 749.2)
.2 Historical and geographical treatment
 Class here antiques and reproductions, artists
 If preferred, class artists in 749.092
 .201-.204 Periods of development
 Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality
 Add to 749.20 the numbers following 747.20 in 747.201-747.204,
 e.g., Renaissance period 749.203
 .21-.29 Geographical treatment
 Add to 749.2 the numbers following 708 in 708.1-708.9, e.g.,
 French furniture 749.24

.3 Specific kinds of furniture

Examples: chairs, tables, beds, chests, clockcases, screens

Class heating and lighting fixtures in 749.6

.4 Built-in furniture

Class built-in ecclesiastical furniture in architectural design in 729.9

For heating and lighting fixtures, see 749.6

.5 Ornamental woodwork in furniture

Examples: marquetry, inlay trim, lacker work, scrollsawing

.6 Heating and lighting fixtures**.62 Heating**

Examples: fireplaces, mantels, inglenooks

.63 Lighting

Examples: chandeliers, lamps

Class built-in ecclesiastical lighting fixtures in architectural design in 729.98

.7 Picture frames and shadow boxes**750 Painting and paintings**

Class painting in a specific decorative art with the subject, e.g., illumination of manuscripts and books 745.67

.1 Philosophy and theory**.11 Appreciative aspects**

Class psychological principles in 750.19

.117 Esthetics**.118 Criticism and appreciation**

Theory, technique, history

Class works of critical appraisal in 759

.18 Inherent features

Composition, form, style, perspective, decorative values

Class methodology in 750.1, color in 752

.2 Miscellany

Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 751.2–751.6

[.9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 759

.92 Painters

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 759)

751 Processes and forms

Class processes and forms of individual painters in 759.1–759.9

► **751.2–751.6 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Class comprehensive works in 751

For color, see 752

.2 Materials

Surfaces, pigments, mediums, fixatives, coatings

Class use of materials in specific techniques in 751.4

.3 Apparatus and equipment

Models, tools, accessories

Class use of apparatus and equipment in specific techniques in 751.4

.4 Techniques**.42 Water-soluble mediums**

For tempera painting, see 751.43

.422 Water-color painting

Including gouache, casein painting

.425 Ink painting

Including Suiboku painting

.426 Acrylic painting**.43 Tempera painting****.44 Fresco painting****.45 Oil painting****.46 Encaustic (Wax) painting****.48 Mosaic painting****.49 Other methods**

Including finger painting

.493 Collage**.494 Airbrush****.5 Reproduction and copying**

For print making and prints, see 760

.58 Forgeries and alterations

Including expertizing, determination of authenticity

.6 Care, preservation, restoration

.7 Specific forms

Class subjects in specific forms in 753–758, techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials employed in specific forms in 751.2–751.6

.72 Easel paintings**.73 Murals****.74 Panoramas, cycloramas, dioramas****.75 Scene paintings**

Including theatrical scenery

.77 Miniatures**752 Color****753–758 Specific subjects (Iconography)**

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works regardless of form

Class comprehensive works in 750; techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials employed in painting specific subjects in 751.2–751.6; individual painters regardless of subject in 759.1–759.9

753 Abstractions, symbolism, allegory, mythology, legend

Add to 753 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.945–704.947, e.g., epic paintings 753.7

For religious symbolism, see 755

754 Subjects of everyday life (Genre paintings)**755 Religion and religious symbolism**

Add to 755 the numbers following 704.948 in 704.9482–704.9489, e.g., paintings of Holy Family 755.56

For mythology, see 753

756 Historical events

Examples: battles, coronations, disasters

757 Human figures and their parts

Not provided for in 753–756, 758

Class here portraits

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., groups of nude women 757.4

Pornography

Miniature portraits

Collections of portraits

Specific kinds of persons

Groups of figures

According to attire

.2 According to attire**.22 Nudes****.23 Draped figures****757.3–757.5 Specific kinds of persons**

Class here portraits of individuals

Class comprehensive works in 757

.3 Men**.4 Women****.5 Children****.6 Groups of figures****.7 Miniature portraits****.8 Pornography****.9 Collections of portraits****758 Other subjects****.1 Landscapes****.2 Marine scenes****.3 Animals****.4 Still life****.42 Flowers****.5 Plants**

For flowers, see 758.42

.6 Industrial and technical subjects**.7 Architectural subjects**

759 Historical and geographical treatment

Development, description, critical appraisal, collections of works

If preferred, class painters in 750.92

759.01–759.06 Periods of development

Class here schools and styles not limited by country or locality

Class comprehensive works in 759

.01 Primitive peoples, and ancient times to 500 A.D.

.011 Primitive (Preliterate) peoples

Regardless of time or place

.02 500–1400

Including Romanesque, Gothic painting

Class here early Christian, Byzantine painting

Class Christian, Byzantine painting before 500 in 759.01

.03 1400–1600

Class here Renaissance painting

Class Renaissance painting before 1400 in 759.02

.04 1600–1800

Including baroque, rococo painting

.05 19th century, 1800–1900

Including classical revival, romanticism, naturalism, impressionism, luminism, pleinairism, neo-impressionism, pointillism, divisionism, postimpressionism

.06 20th century, 1900–

Including expressionism, abstraction, nonobjective painting, cubism, Dadaism, surrealism, fauvism, futurism, intimism, neoplasticism

Class here modern painting

For 19th century, 1800–1900, see 759.05

759.1–759.9 Geographical treatment

Class here individual painters regardless of process, form, subject

If preferred, class painters in 750.92

Arrange geographically as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country, place them first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., Burmese painting and paintings 759.B (preceding 759.1)

Class comprehensive works in 759, paintings of primitive peoples regardless of place in 759.011

.1 North America

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to painting and paintings of a specific country, it is optional to class them here, in that case class painting and paintings of North America in 759.97)

Class painting and paintings of Middle America in 759.972

.11 Canada**.13 United States**

Including individual painters

Class painting and paintings of specific states in 759.14–759.19

.14–.19 Specific states of United States

Add to 759.1 the numbers following 7 in “Areas” notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of San Francisco 759.19461

Class individual painters in 759.13, painting and paintings of Hawaii in 759.9969

.2–.8 Modern European countries

Add to 759 the numbers following 4 in “Areas” notation 42–48 from Table 2, e.g., painting and paintings of France 759.4

Class comprehensive works, and painting and paintings of countries not provided for in “Areas” notation 42–48 in 759.94

.9 Other geographic areas**.91 Areas, regions, places in general**

Do not class individual painters here

Add “Areas” notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 759.9, e.g., Western Hemisphere 759.91812

.93–.99 Continents, countries, localities

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 759.9, e.g., comprehensive works on painting and paintings of Europe 759.94, Etruscan painting and paintings 759.9375

760 Graphic arts Print making and prints

Use 760.01–760.09 for standard subdivisions of graphic arts

For drawing and drawings, see 741; painting and paintings, 750; photography and photographs, 770; printing, 686.2

760.1–760.8 Generalities of print making and prints

Standard subdivisions and their extended meanings

Class comprehensive works in 760, generalities of individual print makers in 769.924

- .1 **Philosophy and theory of print making and prints**
- .11 **Appreciative aspects**
 - Class psychological principles in 760.19
- .117 **Esthetics**
- .118 **Criticism and appreciation**
 - Theory, technique, history
 - Class works of critical appraisal in 769
- .18 **Inherent features**
 - Composition, color, form, style, perspective, decorative values
 - Class methodology in 760.1
- .2 **Miscellany of print making and prints**
 - Class techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials in 761–767
- .3–.8 **Other standard subdivisions of print making and prints**
- [.9] **Historical and geographical treatment of print making and prints**
 - Do not use, class in 769.9
- .92 **Print makers**
 - (Use of this number is optional; prefer 769.92)

761–769 Print making and prints

Class comprehensive works in 760, commercial art in 741.6



761–767 Print making

Fine art of executing a printing block or plate representing a picture or design conceived by the print maker or copied from another artist's painting or drawing or from a photograph

Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 760; techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials employed by individual print makers in 769.92, preservation in 769.1

761 Relief processes (Block printing)

Printing from raised surfaces

.2 Wood engraving

.3 Linoleum-block printing

.8 Metal engraving

762 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

763 Lithographic (Planographic) processes

Printing from flat surfaces

For chromolithography, see 764.2

.2 Surfaces

.22 Stone

.23 Aluminum

.24 Zinc

764 Chromolithography and serigraphy

.2 Chromolithography

.8 Serigraphy (Silk-screen printing)



765–767 Intaglio processes

Printing from incised surfaces

Class comprehensive works in 765

765 Metal engraving

Class here comprehensive works on metal relief and metal intaglio processes, on intaglio processes

For metal relief engraving, see 761.8; mezzotinting and aquatinting, 766; etching and drypoint, 767

.2 Line engraving

.5 Stipple engraving

.6 Criblé engraving

766 Mezzotinting, aquatinting, related processes

.2 Mezzotinting

.3 Aquatinting

.7 Composite processes

Use of two or more processes in a single print

767 Etching and drypoint

.2 Etching

.3 Drypoint

768 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

769 Prints

Description, critical appraisal, collections regardless of process

[.09] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 769.9

.1 Collecting, care, preservation

Class collecting, care, preservation of specific forms in 769.5

[.3] By artist copied

Number discontinued, class in 769

.4 By subject

Add to 769.4 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g., portrait prints 769.42

Class postage stamps by subject in 769.564, prints made by an individual print maker regardless of subject in 769.92

.5 Specific forms

Including lettering, inscriptions, designs on name cards, postcards, posters, diplomas, decorative prints, match covers

Class prints (other than postage stamps) on a specific subject regardless of form in 769.4, made by an individual print maker regardless of form in 769.92

.55 Paper money

Class here counterfeit paper money

[.550 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 769.559

.559 Historical and geographical treatment**.559 01-.559 04 Historical periods**

Add to 769.5590 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., paper money in 19th century 769.559034

.559 1-.559 9 Geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 769.559

.56 Postage stamps (Philately)

Separate, precanceled, printed on cards and envelopes \

[.560 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 769.569

.562 Counterfeit stamps**.563 Stamps commemorating persons and events****.564 Stamps depicting specific subjects**

For stamps commemorating persons and events, see 769.563

.569 Historical and geographical treatment**.569 01-.569 04 Historical periods**

Add to 769.5690 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., postage stamps of 19th century 769.569034

.569 1-.569 9 Geographical treatment

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 769.569

.9 Historical and geographical treatment of print making and prints**.901-.904 Periods of development**

Add to 769.90 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., prints of 1950-1960 769.9045

.91 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general

Add "Areas" notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 769.9, e.g., Western Hemisphere 769.91812

- .92 **Print makers**
 Regardless of subject, form, place
 Class here techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials of individual
 print makers
 If preferred, class in 760.92
 Add "Areas" notation 2 from Table 2 to base number 769.9, e.g.,
 individual print makers 769.924
- .93-.99 **Treatment by continents, countries, localities**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 769.9

770 Photography and photographs

- .1 **Philosophy and theory**
- .11 **Inherent features**
 Composition, color, form, style, perspective, decorative values
- .2 **Miscellany**
- .23 **Photography as profession and hobby**
- .232 As a profession
- .233 As a hobby
- .28 **Techniques**
 Class apparatus, equipment, materials in 771
- .282 **Camera use**
 Loading, focusing, exposure, plate and film removal
- 770.283-770.284 **Darkroom practice**
 Class comprehensive works in 770.28
- .283 **Preparation of negatives**
 Developing, desensitizing, reducing, intensifying, rinsing, fixing,
 washing, drying exposed plates, films, paper
 For reversing negatives, see 770.285
- .284 **Preparation of positives (Contact printing)**
 Exposing, developing, rinsing, fixing, washing, drying, retouching,
 toning, coloring, mounting
- .285 **Preservation of negatives and transparencies**
 Storage, aging effects, reversing negatives
 Class data processing in 770.28
- .286 **Preservation of positives**
 For mounting, see 770.284
- .287 **Recovery of waste materials**

.9 Historical and geographical treatment

.92 Photographers regardless of area, region, place

Class collections of works in 779

771 Apparatus, equipment, materials

Class here interdisciplinary works on use and manufacture

Class apparatus, equipment, materials used in special processes in 772–774, in specific fields of photography in 778, manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, materials with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.418

.1 Studios, laboratories, darkrooms

.2 Furniture and fittings

.3 Cameras and accessories

.31 Specific makes of cameras

Arrange alphabetically by trade name

.35 Optical parts of cameras

Class optical parts of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

For shutters, see 771.36; focusing and exposure apparatus, 771.37

.352 Lenses

.356 Filters

.36 Camera shutters

Class shutters of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

.37 Focusing and exposure apparatus

Examples: exposure meters, viewfinders, range finders

Class focusing and exposure apparatus of specific makes of cameras in 771.31

.38 Accessories

Examples: tripods, carrying cases

.4 Developing and printing apparatus

Examples: trays, utensils, frames

.5 Chemical materials

.52 Support materials

Backings of glass, metal, ceramics, cellulose compounds, paper

.53 Photosensitive surfaces

.532 Specific photosensitive surfaces

.532 2 Plates

.532 3 Papers

.532 4 Films

[.534]

Sensitometry

Class in 661.808

.54

Developing and printing supplies

Developing, reducing, toning, intensifying, fixing solutions

**772–774 Special processes**

Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class comprehensive works in 770

*For processing techniques in color photography, see 778.63–778.66;
 photomechanical printing techniques, 686.232*

772**Metallic salt processes**

.1

Direct positive and printing-out processes*For platinum printing-out process, see 772.3*

.12

Daguerreotype process

.14

Wet-collodion, ferrotype, tintype processes

.16

Kallitype processes

[.2]

Blueprinting

Class in 686.42

.3

Platinotype processes

Including platinum printing-out process

773**Pigment processes of printing**

.1

Carbon and carbonyl processes

Examples: Manotype, ozotype, ozobrome

.2

Powder (Dusting-on) processes

Including peppertype processes

.3

Imbibition processes

.5

Gum-bichromate processes

.6

Photoceramic and photoenamel processes

.7

Diazotype processes

.8

Oil processes

Including bromoil process

774**Holography**

Photography by use of interference patterns produced by coherent light waves

775**[Unassigned]**

Most recently used in Edition 14

776 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

777 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 14

778 Specific fields of photography

Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

Class here interdisciplinary works on use and manufacture of apparatus, equipment, materials

Class manufacture of a specific kind of apparatus, equipment, materials with the subject, e.g., of cameras 681.418

SUMMARY

- 778.2 Photographic projection**
 - .3 Scientific and technological applications**
 - .4 Stereoscopic photography and projection**
 - .5 Motion pictures and television photography**
 - .6 Color photography and photography of colors**
 - .7 Photography under specific conditions**
 - .8 Trick photography**
 - .9 Photography of specific subjects**

[.1] Photoduplication (Photocopying)

Class in 686.4

.2 Photographic projection

Including filmstrips, filmslides

For stereoscopic projection, see 778.4; motion-picture projection, 778.55

.3 Scientific and technological applications

Class a specific application with the subject, e.g., use of photography in astronomy 522.63

.31 Photomicrography

Production of enlarged photographs of microscopic objects in black-and-white and color

For motion-picture photomicrography, see 778.56

[.311] Photomicrography

Number discontinued; class in 778.31

[.315] Microphotography

Class in 686.43

.32 Photography in terms of focus**.322 Telephotography**

For aerial and space photography, see 778.35; panoramic photography, 778.36

- .324 Close-up photography
- [.33] Radiography (X- and gamma-ray photography)
 - Class in 621.3673
- .34 Infrared photography
 - Class technological infrared photography [*formerly* 778.34] in 621.3672
- .35 Aerial and space photography
 - Including interpretation
 - For photogrammetry, see* 526.982
- [.352–.353] Aerial and space photography
 - Numbers discontinued; class in 778.35
- 36 Panoramic photography
- .37 Ultra high-speed photography
 - Including flash-bulb photography
- .4 Stereoscopic photography and projection
 - Production of effects of binocular vision
 - For stereoscopic motion-picture photography, see* 778.5341; *projection, 778.5541*
- .5 Motion pictures and television photography

 - 778.53–778.58 Motion pictures
 - Class comprehensive works in 778.5
- .53 Motion-picture photography (Cinematography) and editing
 - For motion-picture photomicrography, see* 778.56
- .534 Specific types of photography
 - .534 1 Stereoscopic
 - Production of effects of binocular vision
 - .534 2 Color
 - .534 4 Sound-picture recording
 - .534 6 Time-lapse
 - .534 7 Animated-cartoon
 - .534 9 Amateur
 - .534 91 Specific types of cameras
- .535 Editing films
 - Including titling

- .538 **Photography of specific subjects**
 - Add 001–999 to base number 778.538, e.g., newsreel photography 778.53807
 - Class specific types of photography regardless of subject in 778.534
- .55 **Motion-picture projection**
- .554 **Of specific kinds of motion pictures**
 - .554 1 Stereoscopic
 - .554 2 Color
 - .554 4 Sound
 - .554 9 Amateur
- .56 **Motion-picture photomicrography**
- .58 **Preservation and storage of motion-picture films**
- .59 **Television photography**
- .6 **Color photography and photography of colors**
 - For color motion-picture photography, see 778.5342; color photomicrography, 778.31*
- .62 **Photography of colors in monochrome**
 - Orthochromatic and panchromatic
- 778.63–778.66 **Processing techniques in color photography**
 - Class comprehensive works in 778.6
- .63 **Direct process reproduction in color photography**
 - Including Lippmann process
- 778.65–778.66 **Indirect processes in color photography**
 - Class comprehensive works in 778.6
- .65 **Additive processes in color photography**
 - Production of color films and projections by additive analysis and additive synthesis respectively
- .66 **Subtractive processes in color photography**
 - Production of color films and prints by subtractive analysis and subtractive synthesis respectively
- .7 **Photography under specific conditions**
- .71 **Outdoors**
- .712 **In sunlight**
- .719 **At night**
 - For infrared photography, see 778.34*

- .72 Indoors and by artificial light
 For flash-bulb photography, see 778.37; infrared photography, 778.34
- .73 Underwater
- .75 Under extreme climatic conditions
- .8 **Trick photography**
 Examples: table-top photography, photography of specters, distortions,
 multiple images, silhouettes
- .9 **Photography of specific subjects**
 Add to 778.9 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g.,
 portrait photography 778.92
 Class photography by specific methods regardless of subject in 778.2–778.8

779 **Collections of photographs**

- Class here collections of works of individual photographers
- Add to 779 the numbers following 704.94 in 704.942–704.949, e.g.,
 photographs of children 779.25

780 **Music**

- Distinguish scores and parts from treatises as provided below, e.g., comprehensive
 treatises on violin 787.1, scores and parts for violin 787.151–787.154; however, if
 preferred, distinguish scores and parts by prefixing *M* to number for treatises, e.g.,
 scores and parts for violin *M*787.1
- .01 Research
- .07 Relation to society
 Former heading: Music and society
 Including support, patronage
- [.071–.074] Persons and patronage
 Numbers discontinued; class in 780.07
- [.075] Official support and regulation
 Class in 350.854
- .08 Relation to literature and other arts
- .09 Relation to subjects other than arts
- .1 **Philosophy and esthetics**
 Class general principles (“theory of music”) in 781
- [.14] Languages (Terminology)
 Do not use, class in 781.23–781.24

- .15 **Appreciation**
 - Theory, technique, history
 - Including analytical guides, program notes; listening
 - Class scientific principles in 781.1
- [.19] **Psychological principles**
 - Do not use; class in 781.15
- .2 **Miscellany**
- [.28] **Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - Do not use; class in 781
- .29 **Commercial miscellany**
 - Class trade catalogs of music scores in 016.78
- .4 **General special**
 - Class appreciation regardless of kind of music in 780.15
- .42 **Popular music**
- .43 **Art ("Classical") music**
- .6 **Organizations**
- .65 **Business firms**
 - Publishers, retailers, concert bureaus
- .7 **Study, teaching, performances**
- .71 **Students, learners, apprentices, novices**
 - Class schools and courses in 780.72
- .72 **Schools and courses**
 - Conservatories and general schools at secondary and higher levels
 - Class research in 780.01
- .729 **Historical and geographical treatment**
- .729 01-.729 04 **Historical periods**
 - Add to 780.7290 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., schools in 18th century 780.729033
- .729 1-.729 9 **Geographical treatment**
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 780.729

- .73 **Performances**
 Concerts and recitals
 Class students, learners, apprentices, novices in 780.71
- .739 **Programs**
 Add "Arcas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 780.739
 Class program notes in 780.15
- .77 **Special methods of teaching**
 Dictation, ear training, eye training, music reading, rhythm training;
 programed teaching
- .79 **Festivals, competitions, awards**
 Add "Arcas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 780.79
- .8 **Collections and miniature scores**
 Including collections of writings about music
- 780.81-780.82 Collected scores and parts of conventional size
 Class here works combining scores and words to be sung or recited
 with music
 Class comprehensive works in 780.8, words to be sung or recited with
 music in 781.96
- .81 Collected scores and parts by single composers
- .82 Collected scores and parts by more than one composer
- .84 Miniature pocket scores
 Regardless of medium or kind
- .9 **Historical and geographical treatment**
 Development, description, critical appraisal
 Class critical appraisal in analytical guides and program notes in 780.15
- 780.901-780.904 Periods of development
 Class here schools and styles not limited ethnically or by country or
 locality
 Class comprehensive works in 780.9
- .901 Ancient times to 450 A.D.
- .902 450-1450
 Including Gothic style, ars antiqua, ars nova
- .903 Modern period, 1450-
 For 20th century, 1900- , see 780.904
- .903 1 1450-1600
 Including Renaissance style

- .903 2 1600–1750
 - Including baroque style, nuove musiche
- .903 3 1750–1825
 - Including classicism
 - Class here rococo style
 - Class rococo style of earlier period in 780.9032
- .903 4 1825–1900
 - Including romanticism
 - Class here nationalism
 - Class 20th century nationalism in 780.904
- .904 20th century, 1900–
 - Including new music
 - Class here impressionism
 - Class early impressionism in 780.9034
- .91 Treatment by areas, regions, places in general
 - Class music of ethnic orientation in 781.7
- .92 Musicians
 - Regardless of ethnic or national orientation, or of area, region, place
- .93–.99 Treatment by specific continents, countries, localities
 - Class music of ethnic and national orientation in 781.7

781 General principles and considerations

- Class here techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials, “theory of music”
- Class principles and techniques of dramatic music in 782, of sacred music in 783, of music for specific mediums in 784–789

SUMMARY

- 781.1 Scientific principles
 - .2 Basic considerations
 - .3 Harmony
 - .4 Melody and counterpoint
 - .5 Musical forms
 - .6 Composition and performance
 - .7 Music of ethnic and national orientation
 - .9 Other topics
- .1 Scientific principles
 - Including mathematical, physical, physiological principles
 - Class scientific principles of musical sound in 781.22
- .15 Psychological principles
 - Including music and color

.2 Basic considerations**.22 Musical sound**

Pitch, scales, intervals, tonalities, chords

.23 Nomenclature and systems of terms**.24 Notation**

Including neumes, tablature

781.3–781.4 Musical structure

Class comprehensive works in 781.3, musical structure in specific musical forms in 781.5

For basic musical sound, see 781.22, rhythm and meter, 781.62

.3 Harmony

Including harmonic analysis

Class here comprehensive works on musical structure

For melody and counterpoint, see 781.4

.32 Thoro bass (Basso continuo)

Including realization of figured bass

.36 Modulation**.4 Melody and counterpoint****.41 Melody****.42 Counterpoint**

Including canon, fugue

.5 Musical forms

For canon, fugue, see 781.42

.52 Sonata**.55 Dance music**

Class jazz dance music in 781.57

.56 Program music**.57 Jazz and related forms****.572 Ragtime****.573 Blues****.574 Hot jazz and swing****.6 Composition and performance****.61 Composition**

For special elements of composition, see 781.64–781.67

.62 Rhythm and meter

.63 Performance

Execution, interpretation, expression

For special elements of performance, see 781.64–781.67

.633 Score reading and playing

.634 Memorizing

.635 Conducting

781.64–781.67 Special elements of composition and performance

Class comprehensive works in 781.6

.64 Arrangement (Transcription)

Including resolution, instrumental reduction

.642 Transposition

Written and extemporaneous

.65 Improvisation (Extemporization)

.66 Accompaniment

.67 Embellishment

Graces, ornaments, decoration

.7 Music of ethnic and national orientation

Development, description, critical appraisal

Class here folk music

.71 Of primitive (preliterate) peoples

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 781.71

781.72–781.79 Of nonprimitive peoples

Class comprehensive works in 781.7

.72 Of races without distinct national orientation

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 781.72, e.g., Gipsy music 781.7291497

.73–.79 Of national orientation

Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 781.7

.9 Other topics

.91 Musical instruments

Design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing, verification

.96 Words to be sung or recited with music

Description, critical appraisal, collections of librettos, scenarios, poems

.97 Bibliographies, catalogs, thematic catalogs of scores and parts
(Use of this number is optional; prefer 016.78. Other options are described under 016)

.971 *Bibliographies
Add to 781.971 the numbers following 78 in 780.8–789.9, e.g.,
bibliographies of violin music 781.971715

Class bibliographies of individual composers in 781.972

.972 *Catalogs and bibliographies of individual composers
Not clearly identified with any specific form, kind, medium

.973 *General catalogs
Scores held in a specific collection or group of collections and not
limited by kind, form, medium, composer
Add to 781.973 the numbers following 017 in 017.1–017.4,
e.g., trade catalogs 781.9734

782 Dramatic music and production of musical drama

If preferred, class scores and parts of dramatic music for a specific medium
in 784–789

.01 Philosophy and esthetics

.015 Appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Including analytical guides, program notes; listening

.02 Miscellany

.028 Composition

Writing and arrangement of music, librettos, scenarios

.07 Study, teaching, production, productions

Class here training, conducting, performance

Including training in dramatic interpretation

.08 Collections

Including collections of writings about the subject



782.081–782.082 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining librettos
with scores

For collections of librettos, see 782.085

.081 Scores and parts by single composers

.082 Scores and parts by more than one composer

.085 Librettos

¹ Use is optional; prefer treatment described under 781.97

- .086 Stories, plots, analyses
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Development, description, critical appraisal
 - Class critical appraisal in analytical guides and program notes in 782.015
- .092 Musicians
 - Composers, librettists, performers
- .1 **Opera**
 - Grand, light, comic, satiric, chamber
 - For operettas, see 782.81*
- .101 Philosophy and esthetics
- .101 5 Appreciation
 - Theory, technique, history
 - Including analytical guides, program notes; listening
- .102 Miscellany
- .102 8 Composition
 - Writing and arrangement of music, librettos, scenarios
- .107 Study, teaching, production, productions
- .107 1 Conducting and performance
- .107 3 Performances of specific operas
 - Including stage guides
- .107 39 Programs
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 782.10739
 - Class program notes in 782.1015
- .108 Collections of writings about the subject
 - Class collections of scores and parts in 782.15, of librettos in 782.12; of stories, plots, analyses in 782.13
- .109 Historical and geographical treatment
 - Development, description, critical appraisal
 - Class critical appraisal in analytical guides and program notes in 782.1015
- .109 2 Musicians
 - Composers, librettists, performers
- .12 Librettos
- .13 Stories, plots, analyses

.15 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining librettos with scores

For librettos, see 782.12

.152 Collections by more than one composer**.154 Single works and collections by single composers****.8 Theater music**

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01-09 Standard subdivisions

Apply the extended meanings of 782.101-782.109, e.g., composition 028

2-5 Librettos, stories, plots, analyses, scores and parts

Add the numbers following 782.1 in 782.12-782.15, e.g., scores and parts of single works 54

.81 *Musical shows

Operettas, musical comedies, revues

.82 *Cantatas and oratorios

For sacred cantatas, see 783.4; sacred oratorios, 783.3

.83 *Incidental dramatic music**.85 *Film music****.86 *Radio music****.87 *Television music****.9 Other forms of dramatic music**

Including music for pantomimes, masks, pageants

.95 Ballet music

Add as instructed under 782.8, but class stories, plots, analyses, librettos, stage guides of ballets in 792.84

* Add as instructed under 782.8

783 Sacred music

Music composed for public and private worship or dedicated to a religious purpose

Class here treatises on sacred music, scores and parts of sacred vocal music; but, if preferred, class scores and parts of sacred vocal music in 784

Class scores and parts of sacred instrumental music in 785–789

.01 Philosophy and esthetics

.015 Appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Including analytical guides, program notes; listening

.02 Miscellany

.024 Composition

Writing and arrangement of music and words

783.026–783.029 Music for specific religious groups

Class comprehensive works in 783.02

.026 Christianity

Add to 783.026 the numbers following 28 in 281–289, e.g., music for Methodists 783.0267

(It is optional to class here specific kinds of sacred music for specific denominations and sects, prefer 783.1–783.9. If option is chosen, add as above; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 783 in 783.1–783.9, e.g., Methodist church choirs 783.026708)

.029 Other religions

Add to 783.029 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., music of Judaism 783.0296

(It is optional to class here specific kinds of sacred music of specific religions; prefer 783.1–783.9. If option is chosen, add as above, then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 783 in 783.1–783.9, e.g., liturgical music of Judaism 783.029602)

.07 Study, teaching, performances

.073 Performances

.073 9 Programs

Add “Arcas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 783.0739

Class program notes in 783.015



783.1–783.9 Specific kinds of music and performing groups

Class here specific kinds of sacred music of specific Christian denominations and sects, of other specific religions; but, if preferred, class these in 783.026–783.029

Class comprehensive works in 783

SUMMARY

- 783.1 Instrumental music
- .2 Liturgical and ritualistic music
- .3 Oratorios
- .4 Nonliturgical choral works
- .5 Nonliturgical chants
- .6 Songs
- .7 Evangelistic music
- .8 Choirs and vocal groups
- .9 Hymns

.1 Instrumental music

Treatises on instrumental music and instrumental accompaniment to vocal music

.2 Liturgical and ritualistic music

Class here works combining texts (librettos) with scores

Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g., liturgy and ritual of Christian church 264

.200 1–.200 7 Standard subdivisions

.200 8 Collections of writings about the subject

Class collections of scores and parts in 783.205

.200 9 Historical and geographical treatment

.205 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Class scores and parts of liturgical and ritualistic music of a specific religion with the religion, e.g., liturgical and ritualistic music of Judaism 783.2096

.205 2 Collections by more than one composer

.205 4 Single works and collections by single composers

.209 Liturgical music of non-Christian religions

Add to 783.209 the numbers following 29 in 292–299, e.g., liturgical music of Judaism 783.2096



783.21–783.29 Liturgical music of Christian church

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 5 Scores and parts
 - Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- 52 Collections by more than one composer
- 54 Single works and collections by single composers

Class comprehensive works in 783.2

- .21 *Mass (Communion service)
 - For Common of the Mass, see 783.22; Proper of the Mass, 783.23*
- .22 *Common (Ordinary) of the Mass
 - Kyrie, Gloria, Credo, Sanctus, Benedictus, Agnus Dei
- .23 *Proper of the Mass
 - Introit, gradual, tract, sequence, offertory, communion
- .24 *Office hours
 - Matins, lauds, prime, terce, sext, none, vespers, complin
- .26 *Litanies
- .27 *Lenten and penitential music
- .28 *Joyous and festive music
 - Including Christmas, Easter liturgical music
- .29 Other special services
 - Solemnities, processions, recessions
- .3 **Oratorios**
 - Class here Passions
 - .301 Philosophy and esthetics
 - .301 5 Appreciation
 - Theory, technique, history
 - Including analytical guides, program notes; listening
 - .307 Study, teaching, performances
 - .307 3 Performances
 - .307 39 Programs
 - Add "Arcas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 783.30739
 - Class program notes in 783.3015

* Add as instructed under 783.21–783.29

- .308 Collections of writings about the subject
 - Class collections of scores and parts in 783.35, of librettos in 783.32
 - .32 Librettos
 - .35 Scores and parts
 - Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining librettos with scores
 - For librettos, see 783.32*
 - .352 Collections by more than one composer
 - .354 Single works and collections by single composers
 - .4 Nonliturgical choral works
 - Anthemns, motets, choruses, cantatas
 - For oratorios, see 783.3*
 - .401-.409 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 783.301-783.308, e.g., listening 783.4015
 - .42-.45 Librettos, scores, parts
 - Add to 783.4 the numbers following 783.3 in 783.32-783.35, e.g., collections by more than one composer 783.452
 - .5 Nonliturgical chants
 - Gregorian, Ambrosian, Anglican, Jewish chants
 - .501-.509 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 783.301-783.308, e.g., performances 783.5073
 - .52-.55 Librettos, scores, parts
 - Add to 783.5 the numbers following 783.3 in 783.32-783.35, e.g., scores of single works 783.554
 - .6 Songs
 - , For hymns, see 783.9*
- 783.62-783.63 Carols
- Class comprehensive works and treatises in 783.6
 - For Christmas carols, see 783.65*
- .62 Texts of carols
- .63 Scores and parts of carols
 - Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining texts (librettos) with scores
 - For texts, see 783.62*
- .632 Collections by more than one composer

- .634 Single works and collections by single composers
- .65 Christmas carols
 Class here comprehensive works on Christmas music
 Class a specific kind of Christmas music with the subject, e.g.,
 oratorios 783.3
- .650 1–.650 9 Standard subdivisions
 Apply the extended meanings of 783.3015–783.308, e.g.,
 programs 783.650739
- .652–.655 Librettos, scores, parts
 Add to 783.65 the numbers following 783.3 in 783.32–783.35, e.g.,
 scores of single works 783.6554
- .67 Other songs for from one to nine parts
- .672 Texts
- .675 Scores and parts
 Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works
 combining texts (librettos) with scores
 Add to 783.675 the numbers following 784.306 in 784.3061–784.3067,
 e.g., solos for men 783.67513
 For texts, see 783.672
- .7 **Evangelistic music**
 Treatises on mission, revival, Sunday school music
 Class scores and parts of evangelistic songs for from one to nine parts in
 783.675, for congregational singing in 783.95
- .8 **Choirs and vocal groups**
 In churches and other local units of worship
 Including training, conducting
 Class scores and parts of music for choirs with the kind of music, e.g.,
 anthems 783.45
- .9 **Hymns**
 Songs for congregational singing
- .95 Scores and parts
 Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts, works combining
 texts with scores
 Class texts used by a specific religion with the religion, e.g.,
 texts of hymns for Christian congregations 264.2
- .952 Collections by more than one composer (Hymnals)
- .954 Single works and collections by single composers



784–789 Individual mediums of musical expression

(It is optional to class here scores and parts of dramatic music for a specific medium; prefer 782)

Observe the following table of precedence for works combining two or more mediums, e.g., duets for violin and flute 785.7271, for soprano and tenor 784.30622

- Voice
 - Children
 - Women
 - Men
- String instruments
 - Arranged as in 787
- Wind instruments
 - Arranged as in 788
- Percussion instruments
 - Arranged as in 789
- Keyboard instruments
 - Accordion
 - Organ
 - Harpsichord
 - Piano

Class comprehensive works in 780

784

Voice and vocal music

With or without instrumental accompaniment

Class here comprehensive works on or combining words and music (texts and scores)

(It is optional to class here scores and parts of sacred vocal music, prefer 783)

For words to be sung or recited with music, see 781.96; music for orchestra with incidental vocal parts, 785.2

.01

Philosophy and esthetics

.015

Appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Including analytical guides, program notes; relation of words to music, listening

.02

Miscellany

.028

Composition

Writing and arrangement of music and words

- .07 Performances
 - Concerts and recitals
 - Class training in 784.9
- .073 Programs
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 784.073
 - Class students, learners, apprentices, novices in 784.07;
 - program notes in 784.015
- .08 Collections of writings about the subject
 - Class collections of vocal music in 784.8
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
- .092 Musicians
 - Composers, librettists and lyricists, singers

SUMMARY

- 784.1 Choruses and part songs
- .2 Complete choral works
- .3 Songs for from one to nine parts
- .4 Folk songs
- .6 Songs for specific groups and on specific subjects
- .7 Other kinds of songs
- .8 Collections of vocal music
- .9 The voice

784.1-784.7 Specific kinds of vocal music

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 001-009 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 784.01-784.09, e.g., recitals 007
 - Class collections of scores and parts in 06
- 06 Scores and parts
 - Collections and single works
 - Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
 - Subdivisions of 06 are supplied where recommended

Class comprehensive works in 784



784.1-784.3 Vocal music according to number of voices

Class comprehensive works in 784; vocal music according to origin, subject, special interest, regardless of number of voices, in 784.4-784.7

- .1 *Choruses and part songs
 - Madrigals, glees, rounds, catches, other choral pieces not originally composed for orchestral accompaniment
- .106 Scores and parts

* Add as instructed under 784.1-784.7

- 784.106 1–784.106 5 For specific kinds and arrangements of voices
 Class comprehensive works in 784.106
- .106 1 Children's voices
- .106 2 Women's voices
- .106 3 Men's voices
- .106 4 Mixt voices
- .106 5 Vocal parts with choruses
- .2 ***Complete choral works**
 Originally composed for chorus with or without solo voices
- .3 ***Songs for from one to nine parts**
 Vocal chamber music, art songs, dance songs, ballads, ballades, canzonets
- .306 Scores and parts
- .306 1 One-voice part (Solos)
- .306 11 Children
- .306 12 Women
- .306 13 Men
- .306 2 Two-voice parts (Duets)
 Add to 784.3062 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., duets for women and men 784.30622
- .306 3 Three-voice parts (Trios)
 Add to 784.3063 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., trios for women and children 784.30631
- .306 4 Four-voice parts (Quartets)
 Add to 784.3064 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., quartets for men 784.30643
- .306 5 Five-voice parts (Quintets)
 Add to 784.3065 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., quintets for women 784.30652
- .306 6 Six-voice parts (Sextets)
 Add to 784.3066 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., sextets for men, women, children 784.30661

* Add as instructed under 784.1–784.7

- .306 7 Seven-, eight-, nine-voice parts (Septets, octets, nonets)
 Add to 784.3067 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–
 784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under
 784–789, e.g., octets for men 784.30673

► **784.4–784.7 Vocal music according to origin, subject, special interest**

Class comprehensive works in 784

.4 *Folk songs

Class national airs, songs, hymns in 784.71, songs of specific ethnic and cultural groups in 784.75–784.76

[.400 9] Historical and geographical treatment

Do not use; class in 784.49

.49 Historical and geographical treatment

.490 1–.490 4 Historical periods

Add to 784.490 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., folk songs of 17th century 784.49032

.491–.499 Geographical treatment

Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 784.49

.6 *Songs for specific groups and on specific subjects

.61 *For home and community

For songs for students and children, see 784.62

.62 *For students and children

.622 *College and university songs

Songs for undergraduate, graduate, professional, technical schools; fraternities

.623 *High school songs

.624 *Children’s songs

.66 *For societies and service clubs

Including Masonic, Rotary, Lions Club songs

Class society and service club songs on specific subjects in 784.68

For songs for college fraternities, see 784.622

* Add as instructed under 784.1–784.7

- .68 **On specific subjects (Topical songs)**
 Add 001–999 to base number 784.68, e.g., labor songs 784.68331

.7 Other kinds of songs

- .71 ***National airs, songs, hymns**

 Patriotic, martial, political songs

- [.710 09] **Historical and geographical treatment**

 Do not use; class in 784.719

- .719 **Historical and geographical treatment**

 Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 784.719

► **784.75–784.76 Songs of specific ethnic and cultural groups**

 Class comprehensive works in 784.7

- .75 **Songs of ethnic and cultural groups in United States and Canada**

 (If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to songs of ethnic and cultural groups of a specific country, it is optional to class them here; in that case class songs of ethnic and cultural groups in United States and Canada in 784.76)

- .751 **Amerindians**

- .752 **Gipsies**

- .755 **Anglo-Americans and Celtic-Americans**

- .756 ***Negroes**

 Examples: minstrel and plantation songs, spirituals

- .76 **Songs of ethnic and national groups in other countries**

 Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 784.76

.8 Collections of vocal music

 Too general to be provided for in 784.1–784.7

 Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

- .81 **Solos**

 Add to 784.81 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, e.g., collections of women’s solos 784.812 `

- .82 **Duets**

 Add to 784.82 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., collections of men’s duets 784.823

¹ Add as instructed under 784.1–784.7

- .83 **Trios**
 Add to 784.83 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613,
 observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g.,
 collections of trios for men and women 784.832
- .84 **Quartets**
 Add to 784.84 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613,
 observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g.,
 collections of children's quartets 784.841
- .85 **Quintets, sextets, septets, octets, nonets**
 Add to 784.85 the numbers following 784.3061 in 784.30611–784.30613,
 observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g.,
 collections of sextets for men, women, children 784.851
- .87 **Other collections for male voices**
- .88 **Other collections for female voices**
- .9 **The voice**
- .93 **Training and performance**
 Class training and performance of vocal ensembles in 784.962
 For special methods of training and expression, see 784.94
- .932 **Training**
 Voice culture, vocal expression, breathing, pronunciation, tone
 formation, vowel formation
 For training for dramatic performance, see 784.95
- .934 **Performance**
 Execution, interpretation, expression
- .94 **Special methods of training and expression**
 Including sight singing, solfeggios, sol-fa
- .949 **Whistling**
- .95 **Voice training for dramatic performance**
 Class training in dramatic interpretation in 782.07
- .96 **Vocal ensemble**
 Class here community singing, singing in the home
- .962 **Training**

- .963 Conducting
- .964 Performance
 - Execution, interpretation, expression



785–789 Instruments and instrumental music

Class comprehensive works in 780

For treatises on sacred instrumental music, see 783.1

785 Instrumental ensembles and their music

- .01 Philosophy and esthetics
- .015 Appreciation
 - Theory, technique, history
 - Including analytical guides, program notes; listening
- .02 Miscellany
- .028 Composition
 - Including accompaniment, embellishment
- .028 4 Arrangement and instrumentation
- .06 Organizations
 - [.061] Permanent government organizations
 - Do not use, class in 785.062
 - .062 Permanent organizations
 - .062 3–.062 9 Specific organizations
 - Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 785.062
 - Class concerts and programs [*both formerly* 785.0623–785.0629] in 785.073



785.066–785.068 Specific kinds of ensembles

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 07 Training, conducting, performance

Class comprehensive works in 785.06; specific organizations in 785.0623–785.0629

- .066 *Orchestras
 - Class here string bands
- .066 1 *Full (Symphony) orchestra

* Add as instructed under 785.066–785.068

- .066 2 *Salon orchestra
 - Chamber, theater, hotel, café orchestra
- .066 3 *String orchestra
- .066 6 *Dance orchestra
- .066 7 *Jazz orchestra
 - Class here comprehensive works on jazz orchestra and band
 - For jazz band, see 785.0672*
- .067 *Bands
 - For string bands, see 785.066*
- .067 1 *Marching band
 - Wind, brass, military, school band; drum and bugle corps
- .067 108 Drill, marching, drum majoring
- .067 2 *Jazz band
- .067 5 *Rhythm and percussion bands
- .068 *Chamber music ensembles
- .07 Study, teaching, concerts
- .073 Concerts and programs [*both formerly also 785.0623–785.0629*]
 - .073 9 Programs
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 785.0739
 - Class program notes in 785.015
- .09 Historical and geographical treatment
 - For specific organizations, see 785.0623–785.0629*
- .092 Musicians
 - Composers and conductors

* Add as instructed under 785.066–785.068

**785.1–785.8 Specific kinds of music**

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

- 01–05 Standard subdivisions
Apply the extended meanings of 785.01–785.02
- 06 Organizations
Do not apply the extended meanings of 785.06
- 07 Study, teaching, concerts
Apply the extended meanings of 785.07
- 08 Collections of writings about the subject
Class collections of scores in the specific number provided
- 09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class comprehensive works in 785

SUMMARY

- 785.1 Symphonies and band music**
 - .2 Music for orchestra with incidental vocal parts
 - .3 Miscellaneous music for orchestra
 - .4 Music for small ensembles
 - .5 Independent overtures for orchestra
 - .6 Concertos
 - .7 Chamber music
 - .8 Suites for orchestra

.1 Symphonies and band music

.11 *Symphonies for orchestra

Class here symphonies for salon orchestra, for string orchestra

.115 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

.115 2 Collections by more than one composer

.115 4 Single works and collections by single composers

.12 *Band music

Symphonies, music with incidental vocal parts, overtures, suites, miscellaneous music

Add to 785.12 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g., single works 785.1254

Class concertos for band in 785.6, dance music for band in 785.41, jazz for band in 785.42

For military band music, see 785.13



* Add as instructed under 785.1–785.8

- .13 ***Military band music**
 Marches and patriotic music
 Add to 785.13 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
 single works 785.1354
- .2 ***Music for orchestra with incidental vocal parts**
 Add to 785.2 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g., collections of
 orchestral music with voice parts by one composer 785.254
 Class symphonies with vocal parts in 785.11
- .3 **Miscellaneous music for orchestra**
 Not provided for in 785.1–785.2, 785.4–785.8
 Class here miscellaneous music for salon orchestra, for string orchestra
 Add as instructed under 785.1–785.8, but use the notation
 785.3001–785.3009
- .305 **Scores and parts**
 Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
 Add to 785.305 the numbers following 785.115 in 785.1152–785.1154,
 e.g., collections of miscellaneous pieces by several composers
 785.3052
- .31 ***Serenades and other romantic music**
 Class here divertimenti, cassations
 Add to 785.31 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
 single works 785.3154
- .32 ***Symphonic poems and other program music**
 Add to 785.32 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
 single works 785.3254
- .34 ***Variations and other large works**
 Add to 785.34 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
 collections of scores by a single composer 785.3454
- .4 **Music for small ensembles**
 For chamber music, see 785.7
- .41 ***Dance music**
 Add to 785.41 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g., collections
 of dance music arrangements for orchestra by more than one composer
 785.4152
 Class jazz dance music in 785.42, dance music for rhythm and
 percussion bands in 785.43
- .42 ***Jazz**
 Add to 785.42 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
 single works 785.4254

* Add as instructed under 785.1–785.8

.43 *Music for rhythm and percussion bands

Add to 785.43 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
single works 785.4354

.5 *Independent overtures for orchestra

Class here overtures for salon orchestra, for string orchestra

Add to 785.5 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g.,
single works 785.554

.6 *Concertos

One or more solo instruments with orchestra or band

Class here concerti grossi

For music for organ, piano, orchestra, see 786.89

.66–.69 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Add to 785.6 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, e.g., violin concertos
785.671; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 785.115
in 785.1152–785.1154, e.g., collections of violin concertos by two or more
composers 785.67102

Class compositions with more than one solo instrument by following the
table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., concertos for flute
and violin 785.671

.7 Chamber music

Compositions for two or more different solo instruments

Add as instructed under 785.1–785.8, but use notation 785.7001–785.7009

For music for organ and piano, see 786.88

.702–.709 Treatises on music for groups of specific sizes

Add to 785.70 the numbers following 785.7 in 785.72–785.79, e.g.,
treatises on duets for flute and piano 785.702851



785.71–785.79 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Class comprehensive works in 785.7

.71 Collections of scores and parts for groups of various sizes

¹ Add as instructed under 785.1–785.8

► 785.72–785.79 Scores and parts for groups of specific sizes

Collections and single works

Class comprehensive works in 785.7

.72 Duets

Scores and parts

Add to 785.72 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., duets for flute and piano 785.72851

.73 Trios

Scores and parts

Add to 785.73 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., trios for violin, flute, harp 785.7371

.74 Quartets

Scores and parts

Add to 785.74 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., string quartets 785.7471

.75 Quintets

Scores and parts

Add to 785.75 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., quintets for clarinet and strings 785.7571

.76 Sextets

Scores and parts

Add to 785.76 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., string sextets 785.7671

.77 Septets

Scores and parts

Add to 785.77 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., brass septets with trumpet 785.7781

.78 Octets

Scores and parts

Add to 785.78 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., octets including violin 785.7871

.79 Nonets and larger combinations

Scores and parts

Add to 785.79 the numbers following 78 in 786–789, observing the table of precedence of mediums under 784–789, e.g., combinations with violin 785.7971

.8 *Suites for orchestra

Class here suites for salon orchestra, for string orchestra

Add to 785.8 the numbers following 785.11 in 785.115, e.g., single works 785.854

**786–789 Specific instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works on instruments and their music in 780, on instruments in 781.91

786 Keyboard instruments and their music

For celesta, see 789.6

SUMMARY

- 786.1 Keyboard string instruments and their music**
 - .2 Keyboard string instruments**
 - .3 Training in and performance on keyboard string instruments**
 - .4 Music for keyboard string instruments**
 - .5 Organ and its music**
 - .6 Organ**
 - .7 Training in and performance on organ**
 - .8 Music for organ**
 - .9 Other keyboard instruments**

.1 Keyboard string instruments and their music

Comprehensive works

For instruments, see 786.2, training and performance, 786.3; music, 786.4

.101 Philosophy and esthetics**.101 5 Appreciation**

Theory, technique, history

Including analytical guides, program notes; listening

.102 Miscellany**.102 8 Composition**

Including accompaniment, embellishment

.102 84 Arrangement

* Add as instructed under 785.1–785.8

- .107 Performances
 - Concerts and recitals
 - Class instruction and study in 786.3
- .107 3 Programs
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 786.1073
 - Class program notes in 786.1015
- .108 Collections of writings about the subject
 - Class collections of scores and parts in 786.4
- .109 Historical and geographical treatment
- .109 2 Musicians
 - Composers and performers
- .2 **Keyboard string instruments**
 - 786.21–786.22 Specific kinds
 - Class comprehensive works in 786.2; design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing of specific kinds in 786.23
 - For player piano, see 789.72*
 - .21 Pianoforte (Piano)
 - For early forms, see 786.223*
 - .22 Other instruments
 - .221 Harpsichord, spinet, virginal
 - .222 Clavichord
 - .223 Forerunners and early forms of pianoforte
 - .23 Design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing
 - .3 **Training in and performance on keyboard string instruments**
 - Class here keyboard harmony, accompaniment
 - .304 Specific kinds of instruments
 - Add to 786.304 the numbers following 786.2 in 786.21–786.22, e.g., harpsichord 786.30421
 - .31 Hand
 - .32 Touch
 - .33 Studies and exercises in scales
 - .34 Studies and exercises in octaves, chords, arpeggios
 - .35 Studies and exercises in pedal



786.36–786.38 Graded instruction

Class comprehensive works in 786.3

.36 Elementary

.37 Intermediate

.38 Advanst

.4 Music for keyboard string instruments

Class instructive editions in 786.3

.404 Treatises on music for specific kinds of instruments

Add to 786.404 the numbers following 786.2 in 786.21–786.22, e.g.,
music for harpsichord 786.40421

Class scores and parts for specific kinds of instruments in 786.405

.405 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Add to 786.405 the numbers following 785.115 in 785.1152–785.1154,
e.g., collections for harpsichord by more than one composer 786.4052



786.41–786.49 Specific forms

Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 785.11 in
785.115, e.g., single piano sonata 786.4154

Class comprehensive works in 786.4

.41 *Sonatas, sonatinas, rondos

.42 *Fantasias, fugues, rhapsodies, arabesques

.43 *Romantic and descriptive music

Examples: nocturnes, meditations, ballads, songs without words

.44 *Marches, polonaises, polkas, mazurkas

.45 *Dances

Including national, classic, idealized dances; dance suites,
square dance music

For polonaises, polkas, mazurkas, see 786.44;
modern dance music, 786.46

.46 *Modern dance music

Examples: ballroom dance music, jazz music

.47 *Artistic études

.48 *Variations and suites

* Add as instructed under 786.41–786.49

- .49 Music for more than one performer
 - Not provided for in 786.41–786.48
- .495 Scores and parts
 - Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
- .495 6 One piano, two or more performers
- .495 7 Two pianos, two or more performers
- .495 8 Three or more pianos, three or more performers
- .5 **Organ and its music**
 - Comprehensive works
 - For organ, see 786.6; training and performance, 786.7; music, 786.8*
- .501–.509 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 786.101–786.109, e.g., composition 786.5028
- .6 **Organ**
 - For electronic organ, see 786.92; reed organ, 786.94*
- [.609] Historical and geographical treatment
 - Do not use; class in 786.62
- .62 Historical and geographical treatment
- .620 1–.620 4 Historical periods
 - Add to 786.620 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., organs in 18th century 786.62033
- .621–.629 Geographical treatment
 - Add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 786.62
- .63 Design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing
- .7 **Training in and performance on organ**
 - Class here keyboard harmony, accompaniment
- .73 Studies and exercises
 - For graded instruction, see 786.76–786.78*
- 786.76–786.78 Graded instruction
 - Class comprehensive works in 786.73
- .76 Elementary
- .77 Intermediate
- .78 Advanst

.8 Music for organ

Class instructive editions in 786.7

.805 Scores and parts

Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts

Add to 786.805 the numbers following 785.115 in 785.1152–785.1154,
e.g., arrangements for organ by one composer 786.8054**786.81–786.89 Specific forms**Add to each subdivision identified by * the numbers following 785.11 in
785.115, e.g., single organ sonata 786.8154

Class comprehensive works in 786.8

.81 *Sonatas, sonatinas, similar works**.82 *Fugues, preludes and fugues, toccatas***For preludes, see 786.83***.83 *Preludes****.84 *Interludes****.85 *Postludes****.86 *Offertories****.87 *Voluntaries and improvisations****.88 *Music for organ and piano****.89 *Music for organ, piano, orchestra****.9 Other keyboard instruments****.92 Electronic organ**

Class training and performance in 786.7, music in 786.8

.920 1–.920 9 Standard subdivisionsApply the extended meanings of 786.101–786.109, e.g.,
programs 786.92073**.923 Design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing****.94 Reed organ**

Harmonium, melodeon, cabinet organ

Class training and performance in 786.7, music in 786.8

.940 1–.940 9 Standard subdivisionsApply the extended meanings of 786.101–786.109, e.g.,
programs 786.94073**.943 Design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing****.97 Accordion and concertina and their music**

* Add as instructed under 786.81–786.89



787–789 Other instruments and their music

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Apply the extended meanings of 787.101–787.109, e.g.,
programs 0739

2–5 Instruments and music

Add the numbers following 787.1 in 787.12–787.15, e.g.,
description of instrument 2

Class comprehensive works in 780

787 String instruments and their music

Use 787.001–787.009 for standard subdivisions

.01 *Bowed instruments and their music

Class specific instruments in 787.1–787.4

.05 *Plectral instruments and their music

Class specific instruments in 787.5–787.9

SUMMARY

- 787.1 Violin
- .2 Viola
- .3 Violoncello
- .4 Other bowed string instruments
- .5 Harp
- .6 Guitar, mandolin, lute
- .7 Banjo
- .8 Zither
- .9 Other plectral instruments



787.1–787.4 Specific bowed instruments and their music

Class comprehensive works in 787.01

.1 Violin

.101 Philosophy and esthetics

.101 5 Appreciation

Theory, technique, history

Including analytical guides, program notes; listening

.102 Miscellany

.102 8 Composition

Including accompaniment, embellishment

.102 84 Arrangement

* Add as instructed under 787–789

- .107 Educational aspects and performance
- .107 1 Training and performance
- .107 12 Training
 - (It is optional to class here instructive editions of scores and parts; prefer 787.151)
- .107 14 Performance
 - Execution, interpretation, expression
- .107 3 Concerts and recitals
- .107 39 Programs
 - Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 787.10739
 - Class program notes in 787.1015
- .108 Collections of writings about the subject
 - Class collections of scores and parts in 787.15
- .109 Historical and geographical treatment
- .109 2 Musicians
 - Composers and performers
- .12 Instruments
 - Design, description, hand construction, care, tuning, repairing
- .15 Music
 - 787.151–787.154 Scores and parts
 - Class here arrangements, abridgments, excerpts
 - Class comprehensive works in 787.15
 - .151 Instructive editions of scores and parts
 - If preferred, class in 787.10712
 - .152 Collections of scores and parts by more than one composer
 - Add to 787.152 the numbers following 787.154 in 787.1541–787.1544, e.g., collections of accompanied solos 787.1522
 - .154 Scores and parts of single works and of collections by single composers
 - .154 1 Solo, unaccompanied
 - .154 2 Solo, accompanied
 - Class chamber music in 785.7
 - .154 3 Two or more violins, unaccompanied
 - .154 4 Two or more violins, accompanied
 - Class chamber music in 785.7

- .2 ***Viola**
- .3 ***Violoncello**
- .4 **Other bowed string instruments**
- .41 ***Double bass**
- .42 ***Viols and vielle**

► **787.5–787.9 Specific plectral instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 787.05

- .5 ***Harp**
- .6 **Guitar, mandolin, lute**
- .61 ***Guitar**
 For banjo, see 787.7; ukulele, 787.92
- .65 ***Mandolin**
- .67 ***Lute**
 For mandolin, see 787.65
- .7 ***Banjo**
- .8 ***Zither**
- .9 **Other plectral instruments**
 Including hurdy-gurdy, dulcimer, psaltery
- .92 ***Ukulele**

788 Wind instruments and their music

Use 788.001–788.009 for standard subdivisions

- .01 ***Brass instruments and their music**
 Class specific instruments in 788.1–788.4
- .05 ***Woodwind instruments and their music**
 Class specific instruments in 788.5–788.9
- .056 ***Reed**
 Class specific reed instruments in 788.6–788.9

► **788.1–788.4 Specific brass instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 788.01

- .1 ***Trumpet, cornet, bugle**
- .2 ***Trombone**

* Add as instructed under 787–789

.4 Horns and other brass wind instruments**.41 *French horn and hunting horn****.42 *Saxhorn****.44 *Baritone and euphonium****.45 *Ophicleide, key bugle****.48 *Bass horns**

Tuba, helicon, sousaphone, serpent

.49 Alpenhorn**788.5–788.9 Specific woodwind and related instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 788.05

.5 *Flute group

Wind instruments with mouth hole

Including ocarina

.51 *Flute, piccolo, fife**.53 *Recorder and flageolet****788.6–788.9 Specific reed instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 788.056

.6 *Single-reed instruments**.62 *Clarinet and basset horn****.66 *Saxophone****► 788.7–788.8 Double-reed instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 788.056

.7 *Oboe and English horn**.8 *Bassoon and heckelphone****.9 Other reed instruments**

Examples: jew's harp, bagpipe, harmonica (mouth organ)

789 Percussion, mechanical, electrical instruments**.01 *Percussion instruments and their music**

Class specific instruments in 789.1–789.6

* Add as instructed under 787–789

► **789.1–789.6 Specific percussion instruments and their music**

Class comprehensive works in 789.01

.1 *Membranophones

Timpano (kettledrum), drum, tambourine, tom-tom

.2 *Cymbals

.3 *Triangle

.4 Other percussion instruments of indefinite pitch

Examples: castanets, maracas, gong, rattle, anvil

.5 *Bells, carillons, chimes

.6 Other percussion instruments of definite pitch

Including harmonica (musical glasses), glockenspiel, marimba, xylophone, vibraphone, celesta

.69 Unsophisticated instruments

Examples: musical saw, comb

.7 Mechanical instruments and devices

Class here comprehensive works on mechanical and electronic reproduction of music

For music box, see 789.8; electronic musical instruments and music recording, 789.9

.71 Barrel organ

Hand organ, street organ, street piano

.72 Reproducing and player pianos and orchestrion

.8 Music box

.9 Electronic musical instruments and music recording

Including emicon, theremin, trautonium

Class modifications or imitations of a standard instrument with its prototype, e.g., electric guitar 787.61

.91 Music recording

Recording on and playing from phonorecords (cylinders, discs, wires, tapes, films)

.911 Mechanical and electronic reproducers

.912 Recordings

For critical appraisal of recordings, see 789.913

† Add as instructed under 787–789

- .913 **Critical appraisal of recordings**
 (It is optional to class here catalogs and lists; prefer 016.789912.
 Other options are described under 016)
- .913 1 **General appraisals**
 (Use for lists is optional; prefer treatment described under
 789.913)
- .913 2 **Appraisals of recordings of individual composers**
 Not clearly identified with any specific form, kind, medium
 (Use for lists and catalogs is optional; prefer treatment
 described under 789.913)
- .913 6 **Appraisals of recordings of specific forms, kinds, mediums**
 Class here recordings of individual performers identified with
 specific forms, kinds, mediums
 (Use for lists and catalogs is optional; prefer treatment
 described under 789.913)
 Add to 789.9136 the numbers following 78 in 781-789, e.g.,
 recordings of violin music 789.913671, of dance music in
 several mediums 789.9136155
- .913 7 ***General catalogs**
- .913 71 ***Of libraries**
- .913 72 ***Of private collections**
- .913 74 ***Of manufacturers and dealers**
- .98 **Concrete music (Musique concrète)**

790 **Recreational and performing arts**

For music, see 780

- 790.01-790.09 Standard subdivisions of recreation
 Class comprehensive works in 790
- .01 **Philosophy and theory of recreation**
- .013 **Value, influence, effect**
- .013 2 **Psychological principles**
- .013 5 **Effective use of leisure**
- [.019] **Activities and programs for specific classes of people**
 Class in 790.19
 Class psychological principles in 790.0132
- .02 **Miscellany of recreation**
- .023 **Recreation as a profession, occupation, hobby**
 Class hobbies [*formerly* 790.023] in 790.13

* Use of this number is optional, prefer treatment described under 789.913

- .03-.05 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances, serial publications of recreation
- .06 Organizations dealing with recreation
- .068 Recreation centers
 - Indoor and outdoor
 - Including parks and community centers as recreation centers
- .07-.09 Other standard subdivisions of recreation
- .1 **Recreational activities**
 - Class standard subdivisions in 790.01-790.09, a specific activity with the subject, e.g., outdoor sports 796, piano playing 786.3, paper cutting and folding 736.98
- .13 Activities generally engaged in by individuals
 - Class here hobbies [*formerly* 790.023]
- .132 Collecting
 - Class collecting a specific kind of object with the subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 075 from Table 1, e.g., stamp collecting 769.56075
- .133 Play with mechanical and scientific toys
- .134 Participation in contests
 - Examples: writing jingles, matching numbers
- .138 Passive (Spectator) activities
 - Reading, watching, listening, other sendentary activities
- .15 Activities generally engaged in by groups
- .19 Activities and programs for specific classes of people [*formerly* 790.019]
 - Class activities generally engaged in by individuals in 790.13, by groups other than families in 790.15
- .191 For families
- .192 For specific age levels
 - Including young adults, mature adults
 - Class activities for specific sexes regardless of age in 790.194; for invalids, convalescents, handicap persons regardless of age in 790.196
- .192 2 Children
- .192 6 Senior citizens
- .194 For groups by sex
 - Boys, men, girls, women
 - Class activities for invalids, convalescents, handicap persons regardless of sex in 790.196

.196 For invalids, convalescents, persons with handicaps

.2 The performing arts

Class a specific art with the subject, e.g., motion pictures 791.43,
symphony orchestra performance 785.066107

.201–.209 Standard subdivisions

791 Public performances

Other than musical, sport and game performances

For magic, see 793.8; theatrical dancing, 793.32; stage presentations, 792

.06 Organizations

.068 Amusement parks

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 791.068

SUMMARY

791.1 Traveling shows

.3 Circuses

.4 Motion pictures, radio, television

.5 Miniature, toy, shadow theaters

.6 Pageantry

.8 Animal performances

.1 Traveling shows

Including medicine shows

For circuses, see 791.3

.12 Minstrel shows and skits

.3 Circuses

791.32–791.38 Specific elements of circus performance

Class comprehensive works in 791.3

.32 Animal performances

.33 Clowns

.34 Acrobatics and trapeze work

.35 Freaks and sideshows

.38 Parades

.39 Amateur circuses

Class specific elements of circus performance in amateur circuses in
791.32–791.38

- .4 Motion pictures, radio, television**
- .43 Motion pictures**
- .430 1–.430 9 Standard subdivisions**
 Except for 791.43022, apply the extended meanings of 792.01–792.09, e.g., make-up for motion pictures 791.43027
 Class types of presentation [*formerly* 791.43022] in 791.433
- .433 Types of presentation [*formerly* 791.43022]**
 Examples: home and amateur films, cartoon films
 Class specific films in 791.437, animated cartooning in 741.58
- .435 Kinds of motion pictures**
 Class specific films in 791.437
- .435 2 Dramatic films (Photoplays)**
 Class texts of plays in 800
- .435 3 Educational and documentary films**
 Including newsreels
- .437 Specific films**
 Description, critical appraisal, production scripts
 Arrange alphabetically by title of film
- .438 Bibliographies and catalogs of films**
 (Use of this number is optional; prefer 010)
- .44 Radio**
- .440 1–.440 9 Standard subdivisions**
 Except for 791.44022, apply the extended meanings of 792.01–792.09, e.g., influence of radio 791.44013
 Class types of presentation [*formerly* 791.44022] in 791.443
- .443 Types of presentation [*formerly also* 791.44022]**
 Examples: live or recorded, network production, announcing, commercials
 Class specific programs in 791.447
- .445 Kinds of programs**
 Examples: news, sports, musical, dramatic, educational and expository, audience participation
 Class specific programs in 791.447, texts of plays in 800
- .447 Specific programs**
 Description, critical appraisal, production scripts
 Arrange alphabetically by name of program

- .45 **Television**
- .450 1-.450 9 **Standard subdivisions**
 - Except for 791.45022, apply the extended meanings of 792.01-792.09, e.g., scenery and lighting for television 791.45025
 - Class types of presentation [*formerly* 791.45022] in 791.453
- .453 **Types of presentation [*formerly also* 791.45022]**
 - Examples: live or filmed, color or black-and-white, network production, announcing, commercials
 - Class specific programs in 791.457
- .455 **Kinds of programs**
 - Examples: news, sports, musical, dramatic, educational and expository, audience participation
 - Class specific programs in 791.457, texts of plays in 800
- .457 **Specific programs**
 - Description, critical appraisal, production scripts
 - Arrange alphabetically by name of program
- .5 **Miniature, toy, shadow theaters**
- .53 **Puppetry**
 - Operation of marionettes and puppets, producing and staging puppet plays
- .538 **Production scripts of puppet plays**
 - Class texts of plays in 800
- .6 **Pageantry**
 - Examples: processions, festivals, illuminations, parades, floats for parades
 - For water pageantry, see 797.203; circus parades, 791.38*
- .62 **Pageants**
- .622 **Religious pageants**
- .624 **Historical and patriotic pageants**
- .8 **Animal performances**
 - Including cockfighting, rodeos
 - For circus animal performances, see 791.32; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798*
- .82 **Bullfighting**
- 792 **Theater (Stage presentations)**
 - Class texts of plays in 800
 - For miniature, toy, shadow theaters, see 791.5*
- .01 **Philosophy and esthetics**
- .013 **Value, influence, effect**
 - .

-
- .015 Criticism and appreciation
 - Theory, technique, history
 - .02 Handbooks, techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials, miscellany
-
- 792.022–792.028 Handbooks, techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials
 Class comprehensive works in 792.02, miscellany in 792.029
- .022 Types of stage presentation
 - Including municipal theater, showboats
 - .022 2 Amateur theater
 - .022 3 Little theater movement
 - .022 4 Summer theater
 - .022 6 Children's theater
 - .022 8 Arena theater (Theater-in-the-round)
 - .023 Supervision
 - .023 2 Production
 - .023 3 Direction
 - .023 6 Programing
 - .025 Setting
 - Scenery, lighting
 - .026 Costuming
 - .027 Make-up
 - .028 Acting
 - Including impersonation, improvisation, use of expression and gestures, stage fright
 - .029 Miscellany
 - .029 07 Humorous treatment
 - .029 08 Audiovisual treatment
 - .029 1–.029 7 Miscellaneous works
 - Add to 792.029 the numbers following 02 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 021–027 from Table 1, e.g., stage as a profession 792.0293
 - .029 9 Commercial miscellany
 - House organs, prospectuses, price lists, trade catalogs

.09 Historical and geographical treatment

Class here description, critical appraisal of specific theaters and companies

Class description, appraisal of specific productions in 792.9

.090 9 Special aspects

Add to 792.0909 the numbers following 080 in "Subdivisions of Individual Literatures" notation 0801–0803 from Table 3, e.g., treatment of sex in the theater 792.0909353

**792.1–792.8 Specific kinds of dramatic performance**

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

01–09 Standard subdivisions

Apply the extended meanings of 792.01–792.09

Class comprehensive works in 792, specific productions of specific kinds in 792.9

.1 *Tragedy and serious drama

Class here historical, Passion, morality, miracle plays

.2 *Comedy and melodrama**.3 *Pantomime****.7 *Vaudeville, music hall, variety, cabaret, night club presentations****.8 *Ballet****.809 Historical and geographical treatment**

Class specific performances in 792.84

.82 Ballet dancing

Including choreography

.84 Specific ballets

Description, critical appraisal, production scripts (stage guides)

Including stories, plots, analyses, librettos, stage guides

¹ Add as instructed under 792.1–792.8

.9 Specific productions

Description, critical appraisal, production scripts (stage guides)

Class specific productions of specific ballets in 792.84

793 Indoor games and amusements*For indoor games of skill, see 794; games of chance, 795***.01 Philosophy and theory****.019 Activities and programs for specific classes of people**Add to 793.019 the numbers following 790.19 in 790.191–790.196,
e.g., indoor games and amusements for children 793.01922

Class psychological principles in 793.01

.2 Parties and entertainments**.21 Children's parties****.22 Seasonal parties**

Class children's seasonal parties in 793.21

.24 Charades and tableaux**.3 Dancing****.31 Folk and national dances****[.310 9] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 793.319

.319 Historical and geographical treatment**.319 01–.319 04 Historical periods**Add to 793.3190 the numbers following 090 in "Standard
Subdivisions" notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., folk
dances in 17th century 793.319032**.319 1–.319 9 Geographical treatment**

Add "Areas" notation 1–9 from Table 2 to base number 793.319

.32 Theatrical dancing

Including artistic, classical, interpretive dancing

*For ballet dancing, see 792.82***.324 Tap and clog dancing****.33 Ballroom dancing (Round dances)****.34 Square dancing****.35 Dances with accessory features**

Examples: sword dance, cotillions, Germans

.38 Balls

Class ballroom dancing in 793.33

- .4 **Games of action**
- .5 **Forfeit and trick games**
- .7 **Games not characterized by action**
 For charades and tableaux, see 793.24
- .73 **Puzzles and puzzle games**
 Including quizzes, literary games, anagrams, acrostics
 For mathematical games and recreations, see 793.74
- .732 **Crossword puzzles**
- .735 **Riddles**
- .74 **Mathematical games and recreations**
- .8 **Magic**
 Scientific recreations, conjuring, juggling, ventriloquism
 For card tricks, see 795.438
- .9 **Other indoor diversions**
 Example: making cat's cradles

794 **Indoor games of skill**

For card games based chiefly on skill, see 795.41

- .1 **Chess**
- .12 **Strategy and tactics**
 Combinations, sacrifices, traps, pitfalls, attack, counterattack, defense
 Class strategy and tactics with individual chessmen in 794.14
- .122 **Openings**
- .123 **Middle games**
- .124 **End games**
- .14 **Individual chessmen**
 Position, moves, power, value
- .142 **Pawns**
- .143 **Rooks (Castles)**
- .144 **Knights**
- .145 **Bishops**
- .146 **Queen**
- .147 **King**

- .15 Collections of games
- .152 Master matches
 - Class master matches by individual players in 794.159
- .157 Tournaments and championships
 - Class tournaments and championships by individual players in 794.159
- .159 Games, matches, tournaments, championships by individual players
- .17 Special forms of chess
 - Examples: blind play, simultaneous play, living chess; use of automaton, mechanical, electronic chess players
- .18 Variants of chess
 - Examples: Chinese (chong-kie), Japanese (hogi), three-dimensional chess
- .2 Checkers and similar games
- .6 Bowling
- .7 Ball games
 - Class athletic ball games in 796.3
 - For bowling, see 794.6*
- .72 Billiards
- .73 Pool
- 795 Games of chance**
 - .01 Theory
 - Gambling and betting systems, probabilities of winning
 - .1 Backgammon, craps, other games with dice
 - .2 Roulette and other wheel and top games
 - .3 Games dependent on drawing numbers or counters
 - Examples: dominos, mah-jongg
 - .4 Card games
 - .41 Games based chiefly on skill
 - .412 Poker
 - .413 Whist and bridge whist
 - .414 Auction bridge

- .415 Contract bridge
- .415 2 Bidding
- .415 3 Play of the hand
- .415 4 Scoring systems
- .415 8 Collections of games and matches
- .416 Pinochle
- .418 Rummy and its variants
 - Examples: canasta, samba, bolivia
- .42 Games based chiefly on chance
 - Examples: baccarat, faro, twenty-one (blackjack)
- .43 Games and recreations based on position and skill
 - Including solitaire, patience
- .438 Card tricks

796 Athletic and outdoor sports and games

For aquatic and air sports, see 797; equestrian sports and animal racing, 798; fishing, hunting, shooting, 799

- .01 Philosophy and theory
- .019 Activities and programs for specific classes of people
 - Add to 796.019 the numbers following 790.19 in 790.191–790.196, e.g., sports for girls 796.0194
 - Class psychological principles in 796.01
- .06 Organizations
- .068 Playgrounds
- .07 Study and teaching
- .077 Coaching
 - Class programed teaching and learning in 796.07

SUMMARY

- 796.1 Miscellaneous games
 - .2 Active games requiring equipment
 - .3 Ball games
 - .4 Athletic exercises and gymnastics
 - .5 Outdoor life
 - .6 Cycling
 - .7 Driving motor vehicles
 - .8 Combat sports
 - .9 Ice and snow sports
- .1 Miscellaneous games
- .13 Singing and dancing games
- .14 Active games
 - Examples: leapfrog, hide and seek, puss in corner, prisoner's base
 - For active games requiring equipment, see 796.2*
- .15 Play with kites and similar toys
- .2 Active games requiring equipment
 - For ball games, see 796.3; play with kites, 796.15*
- .21 Roller skating
- .24 Pitching games
 - Examples: quoits, horseshoes
- .3 Ball games

SUMMARY

- 796.31 Ball thrown or hit by hand
 - .32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
 - .33 Inflated ball driven by foot
 - .34 Racket games
 - .35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat
- .31 Ball thrown or hit by hand
 - Examples: handball, lawn bowling
- .32 Inflated ball thrown or hit by hand
 - Including netball
- .323 Basketball
- .323 01-.323 09 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202-796.332077,
e.g., basketball courts 796.323068

-
- .323 2 **Strategy and tactics**
 - Defensive and offensive play
 - .323 3 **Refereeing**
 - .323 6 **Specific types of basketball**
 - Class specific games regardless of type in 796.3237, strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3232
 - .323 62 **Precollege**
 - .323 63 **College**
 - .323 64 **Professional**
 - .323 7 **Specific games**
 - Intercollegiate games
 - League games
 - .323 8 **Variants**
 - Example: basketball for women
 - .325 **Volleyball**
 - .33 **Inflated ball driven by foot**
 - Including pushball
 - .332 **American football**
 - .332 02 **Miscellany**
 - .332 020 2 **Handbooks and guides**
 - .332 020 22 **Official rules**
 - .332 020 24 **Spectators' guides**
 - .332 028 **Apparatus, equipment, materials**
 - Examples: balls, goal posts, safety equipment
 - Class technique in 796.3322
 - .332 06 **Organizations and facilities**
 - Including clubs, leagues
 - .332 068 **Grounds and their layout**
 - .332 07 **Study and teaching**
 - .332 077 **Coaching**
 - Class programed teaching and learning in 796.33207

-
- .332 2 **Strategy and tactics**
 - Defensive and offensive play
 - .332 22 **Formations**
 - Examples: T, split-T, spread, single-wing back formations
 - .332 23 **Line play**
 - .332 24 **Backfield play**
 - .332 25 **Passing**
 - .332 26 **Blocking and tackling**
 - .332 27 **Kicking**
 - .332 3 **Refereeing and umpiring**
 - .332 6 **Specific types of American football**
 - Class specific games regardless of type in 796.3327, strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3322
 - .332 62 **Precollege**
 - .332 63 **College**
 - .332 64 **Professional**
 - .332 7 **Specific games**
 - .332 72 **Intercollegiate games**
 - Including "bowl" games
 - .332 78 **League games**
 - .332 8 **Variants**
 - Examples: football for women, six-man football, touch football
 - .333 **Rugby**
 - Union and League
 - .333 01–.333 09 **Standard subdivisions**
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., official rules 796.33302022
 - .333 2 **Strategy and tactics**
 - Defensive and offensive play
 - .333 23 **Forward play**
 - Including scrummaging, line-outs
 - .333 24 **Halfback play**
 - .333 25 **Three-quarter play**
 - .333 26 **Back play**

-
- .333 3 Refereeing and umpiring
 - .333 6 Specific types of rugby
 - Class specific games regardless of type in 796.3337, strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3332
 - .333 62 Club
 - Including college and university
 - .333 63 County
 - .333 65 International
 - .333 7 Specific games
 - .333 72 Club
 - Including college and university
 - .333 73 County
 - .333 74 Tours
 - .333 75 International
 - .333 8 Variants
 - .334 Soccer (Association football)
 - .334 01–.334 09 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202–796.332077, e g , equipment 796.334028
 - .334 2 Strategy and tactics
 - Defensive and offensive play
 - .334 22 Formations
 - .334 23 Forward play
 - .334 24 Halfback play
 - .334 25 Back play
 - .334 26 Goalkeeping
 - .334 3 Refereeing and umpiring
 - .334 6 Specific types of soccer
 - Class specific games regardless of type in 796.3347, strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3342
 - .334 62 Amateur

- .334 63 League
- .334 64 Cup competition
 - For World Cup competition, see 796.33466*
- .334 66 International
 - Including World Cup competition
- .334 7 Specific games
 - Add to 796.3347 the numbers following 796.3346 in 796.33462–796.33466, e.g., league games 796.33473
- .334 8 Variants
- .335 Canadian football
 - .335 01–.335 09¹ Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., coaching 796.335077
- .335 2 Strategy and tactics
 - Defensive and offensive play
- .335 3 Refereeing and umpiring
- .335 6 Specific types of Canadian football
 - Class specific games regardless of type in 796.3357, strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3352
- .335 7 Specific games
- .335 8 Variants
- .336 Australian-rules football
- .34 Racket games
 - Including court tennis, paddle tennis
- .342 Tennis (Lawn tennis)
 - .342 01–.342 09 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., layout of tennis courts 796.342068
 - .342 2 Strategy and tactics
 - Defensive and offensive play for men and women
 - .342 21 Service
 - .342 22 Forehand
 - .342 23 Backhand
 - .342 27 Singles
 - .342 28 Doubles
 - .342 3 Refereeing

- .343 Rackets and squash
- .345 Badminton
- .346 Table tennis
- .347 Lacrosse
- .35 Ball driven by club, mallet, bat

SUMMARY

- 796.352 Golf
- .353 Polo
- .354 Croquet
- .355 Field hockey
- .357 Baseball
- .358 Cricket

- .352 Golf
 - .352 01-.352 09 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202-796.332077,
e.g., official rules 796.3520202
 - .352 2 Variants
 - Including miniature golf
 - .352 3 Tactics of play
 - For men and women
 - Class here grip, swing, adaptation to specific golf courses
 - .352 32 Play with woods
 - .352 33 Play with distance irons
 - .352 34 Play with chipping or pitching irons
 - .352 35 Putting
 - .352 4 Refereeing
 - .352 6 Specific types of golf
 - Class specific games and matches regardless of type in 796.3527,
tactics of play regardless of type in 796.3523
 - .352 62 Amateur
 - .352 64 Professional
 - .352 7 Specific games and matches
 - .352 72 Amateur
 - .352 73 Open
 - .352 74 Professional

-
- .353 Polo
 - .354 Croquet
 - .355 Field hockey
 - .357 Baseball
 - .357 01-.357 09 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202-796.332077,
e.g., baseball leagues 796.35706
 - .357 2 Strategy and tactics
 - Defensive and offensive play
 - .357 22 Pitching
 - .357 23 Catching
 - .357 24 Infield play
 - .357 25 Outfield play
 - .357 26 Batting
 - .357 27 Base running
 - .357 3 Umpiring
 - .357 6 Specific types of baseball
 - Class specific games regardless of type in 796.3577, strategy
and tactics regardless of type in 796.3572
 - .357 62 Precollege
 - Including sandlot baseball
 - .357 63 College
 - .357 64 Professional and semiprofessional
 - .357 7 Specific games
 - Intercollegiate games
 - League games
 - World Series games
 - All-Star games
 - .357 8 Variants
 - Examples: softball, baseball for girls and women, indoor
baseball, one old cat

-
- .358 Cricket
 - .358 01–.358 09 Standard subdivisions
 - Apply the extended meanings of 796.3320202–796.332077, e.g., equipment 796.358028
 - .358 2 Strategy and tactics
 - Defensive and offensive play
 - .358 22 Bowling
 - .358 23 Fielding
 - .358 24 Wicket-keeping
 - .358 26 Batting •
 - .358 3 Umpiring
 - .358 6 Specific types of cricket
 - Class specific matches regardless of type in 796.3587, strategy and tactics regardless of type in 796.3582
 - .358 62 Amateur
 - Including school, college and university
 - .358 63 County
 - .358 65 International
 - .358 7 Specific matches
 - Add to 796.3587 the numbers following 796.3586 in 796.35862–796.35865, e.g., county matches 796.35873
 - .358 8 Variants
 - Example: single-wicket cricket
 - .4 **Athletic exercises and gymnastics**
 - .406 Organizations and facilities
 - .406 8 Gymnasiums and stadiums
 - .407 Study and teaching
 - .407 7 Coaching
 - Class programed teaching and learning in 796.407
 - .41 Calisthenics
 - Gymnastics, setting-up exercises, lifting with dumbbells and weights
 - .42 Track and field athletics
 - For jumping, vaulting, throwing, see 796.43*
 - .420 6 Organizations and facilities
 - .420 68 Athletic fields
 - .426 Running, sprinting, hurdling

- .43 Jumping, vaulting, throwing
- .435 Throwing
 - Examples: shot-putting, discus throwing, javelin hurling
 - For pitching games, see 796.24*
- .44 Horizontal and parallel bars
- .46 Trapeze work, rope climbing, wire walking
- .47 Acrobatics, tumbling, trampolining, contortion
- .48 Olympic games
 - Arrange chronologically by year
 - Class winter Olympic games [*formerly* 796.48] in 796.98
 - Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., basketball 796.323, swimming 797.21
- .5 Outdoor life**
- .51 Walking
 - For walking in specific kinds of terrain, see 796.52*
- .52 Walking and exploring in specific kinds of terrain
- .522 Mountains, hills, rocks
 - Alpinism
- .525 Caves
 - Spelunking
- .53 Beach activities
 - For aquatic sports, see 797.1–797.2*
- .54 Camping
- .542 Kinds of camps
 - Class here camps operated for profit
- .542 2 Institutional
 - Examples: school, church, YMCA, scouts
 - Class institutional day camps in 796.5423
- .542 3 Day
- .545 Activities
 - Examples: woodcraft, campfires, games
 - For beach activities, see 796.53*
- .56 Dude ranching and farming
- .6 Cycling**
 - Use of wheeled vehicles driven by manpower
 - Including bicycle, soapbox racing

.7 Driving motor vehicles**796.72–796.76 Racing**

Class comprehensive works in 796.7

- .72 Automobile racing
- .75 Motorcycle and motor scooter racing
- .76 Midget car racing (Karting)

**796.77–796.79 Driving for pleasure**

Class comprehensive works in 796.7

- .77 Driving sports cars for pleasure
- .78 Driving family cars for pleasure
- .79 Trailer travel for pleasure

.8 Combat sports

Class combat with animals in 791.8

- .81 Unarmed combat
 - For boxing, see 796.83*
- .812 Wrestling
 - .812 2 Continental (Greco-Roman) wrestling
 - .812 3 Free-style (Catch-as-catch-can) wrestling
 - .812 5 Sumo (Japanese wrestling)
- .815 Jujitsus
 - .815 01 Kuatsu (Restoration of life)
- .815 2 Judo
- .815 3 Karate
- .815 4 Aikido
- .815 9 Kenpo, kung fu, yarrowa
- .83 Boxing
- .86 Fencing

.9 Ice and snow sports*For ice fishing, see 799.12*

- .91 Ice skating
- .92 Snowshoeing
- .93 Skiing
- .95 Tobogganing and coasting

- .96 Ice games
 - Including curling
- .962 Ice hockey
- .97 Iceboating
- .98 Winter Olympic games [*formerly* 796.48]
 - Arrange chronologically by year
 - Class a specific activity with the activity, e.g., skating 796.91

797 Aquatic and air sports



797.1–797.2 Aquatic sports

Class comprehensive works in 797

For fishing, see 799.1

- .1 Boating
 - .12 With specific types of vessels
 - Class boat racing with specific types of vessels in 797.14
 - .122 Canoeing
 - .123 Rowboating
 - .124 Sailboating
 - .125 Motorboating
 - .14 Boat racing and regattas
 - .17 Minor methods of navigation
 - .172 Surf riding
 - .173 Water skiing
- .2 Swimming and diving
 - Use 797.2001–797.2009 for standard subdivisions
 - .203 Water pageantry
 - .21 Swimming
 - For submarine swimming, see* 797.23
 - .23 Submarine swimming
 - Skin diving, scuba diving
 - .24 Springboard and precision diving
 - .25 Water games
 - Example: water polo

.5 Air sports

► 797.52–797.54 Flying motor-driven aircraft

Class comprehensive works in 797.5

- .52 Racing**
- .53 Flying for pleasure**
- .54 Stunt flying**
- .55 Gliding and soaring**
- .56 Parachuting (Skydiving)**

798 Equestrian sports and animal racing

► 798.2–798.6 Equestrian sports

Class comprehensive works in 798

.2 Horsemanship

For horse racing, see 798.4

.23 Riding

For jumping, see 798.25

[.230 74] Exhibitions

Do not use; class in 798.24

.24 Riding exhibitions**.25 Jumping****.4 Horse racing**

Use 798.4001–798.4009 for standard subdivisions

.401 Betting

Including pari-mutuel

.43 Flat racing

Racing with horse and rider on level course without obstructions

.45 Steeplechasing and hurdling**.46 Harness racing****.6 Driving and coaching**

For harness racing, see 798.46

.8 Racing animals other than horses

799 Fishing, hunting, shooting**.1 Fishing****.11 Fresh-water fishing**

Class specific methods of fresh-water fishing in 799.12–799.14,
fishing for specific kinds of fresh-water fish in 799.17

**799.12–799.14 Specific methods of fishing**

Class comprehensive works in 799.1, specific methods of fishing for
specific kinds of fish in 799.17

.12 Angling

Still fishing, fly casting, bait casting, spinning, trolling, ice fishing

.13 Seining and other net fishing**.14 Other methods of fishing**

Example: spear fishing

.16 Salt-water fishing

Class specific methods of salt-water fishing in 799.12–799.14, fishing
for specific kinds of salt-water fish in 799.17

[.160 916 3–.160 916 7] In specific bodies of water

Do not use; class in 799.166

.166 In specific bodies of water

Add to 799.166 the numbers following 551.46 in 551.461–551.469,
e.g., fishing in Gulf of Darien 799.16635

.17 Fishing for specific kinds of fish

Add to 799.17 the numbers following 597 in 597.2–597.5, e.g.,
trout fishing 799.1755

.2 Hunting**.202 Miscellany****.202 8 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials**

Selection, care, use of ballistic devices in hunting and shooting
Including blowpipes, boomerangs, spears, bolas, lassos,
slings, nets

.202 83 Guns**.202 832 Rifles****.202 833 Pistols****.202 834 Shotguns****.202 85 Bows and arrows****[.209] Historical and geographical treatment**

Do not use; class in 799.29

799.21–799.23 Methods

Class comprehensive works in 799.2, methods of hunting specific kinds of animals in 799.24–799.27

- .21 Shooting game
- .213 With guns
- .215 With bows and arrows
- .23 Hunting with aid of animals
- .232 With falcons
- .234 With dogs

799.24–799.27 Hunting specific kinds of animals

Class comprehensive works in 799.2

- .24 Birds

799.242–799.244 Of specific habitats

Class comprehensive works in 799.24, birds of specific kinds regardless of habitat in 799.248

- .242 Land birds
- .243 Bay and shore birds
- .244 Waterfowl
- .248 Specific kinds
 - Add to 799.248 the numbers following 598 in 598.3–598.9, e.g., ducks 799.24841
- .25 Small game other than birds
- .254–.259 Specific kinds
 - Add to 799.25 the numbers following 59 in 594–599, e.g., rabbits 799.259322
- .26 Big game other than birds
 - For specific kinds, see 799.27*
- .27 Specific kinds of big game other than birds
- .271–.278 Mammals
 - Add to 799.27 the numbers following 599 in 599.1–599.8, e.g., elephants 799.2761
- 279 Other
 - Add to 799.279 the numbers following 59 in 597–598, e.g., crocodiles 799.279814

-
- .29 Historical and geographical treatment
 - .290 1--290 4 Historical periods
 - Add to 799.20 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., hunting in 13th century 799.29022
 - .291--299 Geographical treatment
 - Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 799.29
 - .3 **Shooting other than game**
 - For selection, care, use of ballistic devices, see 799.2028*
 - .31 With guns
 - .312 At stationary targets
 - .313 At moving targets
 - Examples: trapshooting, skeet shooting
 - .32 With bows and arrows (Archery)

800 Literature (Belles-lettres)

Works of literature, works about literature

If preferred, class belletristic essays, speeches, letters, satire, humor, quotations, epigrams, diaries, journals, reminiscences on a specific subject with the subject

A table of examples follows 899

Observe the following table of precedence for works combining two or more literary forms, e.g., English poetic drama 822

Drama

Poetry

Fiction

Essays

Speeches

Letters

Miscellaneous writings in specific forms

Other than quotations and epigrams

Satire and humor

Class collections of satire and humor in several literary forms as
satire and humor

If preferred, give precedence to satire and humor over all other forms

Quotations and epigrams

Class folk literature in 398.2

The following options give preferred treatment to, or make available more and shorter numbers for the classification of, literature of any specific language that it is desired to emphasize

A. Class in 810, where full instructions appear

B. Give preferred treatment by placing before 810 thru use of a letter or other symbol. Full instructions appear under 810–890

C. Where two or more countries share the same language:

1. Use initial letters to distinguish the separate countries

2. Use the special number designated for literatures of those countries which are *not* preferred

Full instructions appear under 810, 820, 840, 860, 869

801 Philosophy and theory

.3 Value, influence, effect

.9 Nature and character

.92 Psychology

Including literature as a product of creative imagination

.93 **Esthetics**

.95 **Criticism**

 Theory, technique, history

 Class works of critical appraisal in 809

.950 1--.950 9 **Standard subdivisions**



801.951–801.957 **Criticism of specific literary forms**

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 801.95, textual criticism of specific literary forms in 801.959

.951 **Poetry**

.952 **Drama**

.953 **Fiction**

.954 **Essays**

.955 **Speeches**

.956 **Letters**

.957 **Satire and humor**

.959 **Textual criticism**

802 Miscellany about literature

 Class techniques in 808

803 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances

804 [Unassigned]

 Most recently used in Edition 16

805 Serial publications of and about literature

806 Organizations

807 Study and teaching

808 Rhetoric (Composition) and collections

Rhetoric: techniques of oral and written communication for clarity and esthetic pleasure

Class here plagiarism

.001-.009 Standard subdivisions of rhetoric (composition)

► 808.02-808.06 General composition

Class comprehensive works in 808

.02 Authorship and editorial techniques

Preparation of manuscripts

.023 Research

.025 Writing for publication

.04 Composition in specific languages

Class specific kinds of composition regardless of language in 808.06

.042 In English

.042 01-.042 09 Standard subdivisions

.042 7 Study of composition thru critical reading

.042 75 Literature for learning composition

Collections and single works for critical reading

.043-.049 In other languages

Add "Languages" notation 3-9 from Table 6 to base number 808.04, e.g., German composition 808.0431; then to the result add the numbers following 808.042 in 808.04201-808.04275, e.g., literature for learning German composition 808.043175

.06 Specific kinds of composition

Class composition in specific literary forms in 808.1-808.7

.066 Professional, technical, expository literature

If preferred, class techniques of writing on a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0149 from Table 1

Add 001-999 to base number 808.066, e.g., technical writing 808.0666; then add 0 and to the result add "Languages" notation 2-9 from Table 6, e.g., technical writing in Spanish 808.0666061

For expository writing for children, see 808.0688

.067 Adult easy literature

Works for adults learning to read or for adult beginners in foreign languages

.068 Children's literature

.068 1-.068 7 Specific literary forms

Add to 808.068 the numbers following 808 in 808.1-808.7, e.g.,
storytelling 808.068543

.068 8 Expository writing

808.1-808.7 Rhetoric (Composition) in specific literary forms

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808, specific forms for children in
808.0681-808.0687

.1 Rhetoric of poetry

Add to 808.1 the numbers following 808.81 in 808.812-808.818, e.g.,
lyric poetry 808.14

.2 Rhetoric of drama

Add to 808.2 the numbers following 808.82 in 808.822-808.825, e.g.,
one-act plays 808.241

.3 Rhetoric of fiction

Add to 808.3 the numbers following 808.83 in 808.831-808.838, e.g.,
science fiction 808.3876

.4 Rhetoric of essays

.5 Rhetoric of speech

Class here voice, expression, gesture

.51 Public speaking (Oratory)

Platform, radio, after-dinner speaking

For debating and public discussion, see 808.53; preaching, 251

.53 Debating and public discussion

.54 Recitation

.543 Storytelling

.545 Reading aloud

.55 Choral speaking

.56 Conversation

.59 Listening

.6 Rhetoric of letters

.7 Rhetoric of satire and humor

.8 Collections from more than one literature

Class here works giving equal attention to collections of literary texts and to history, description, critical appraisal of literature

Class more than one literature in the same language with literature of that language

For history, description, critical appraisal of more than one literature, see 809

80
800 1-.800 4

Collections from specific periods

Add to 808.800 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1, e.g., collections of 18th century literature 808.8Q033

808.801-808.803 Collections displaying specific features

Class comprehensive works in 808.8

.801 Collections displaying specific qualities

Class literature displaying specific elements regardless of quality displayed in 808.802, literature dealing with specific themes and subjects regardless of quality displayed in 808.803

- .801 2 Realism and naturalism
- .801 3 Idealism
- .801 4 Romanticism
- .801 5 Symbolism, allegory, fantasy
- .801 6 Tragedy and horror
- .801 7 Comedy

Within the restrictions provided in the table of precedence under 800, class satire and humor in 808.87

.802 Collections displaying specific elements

Class literature dealing with specific themes and subjects regardless of element displayed in 808.803

- .802 2 Description
- .802 3 Narrative
- .802 4 Plot
- .802 5 Stream of consciousness
- .802 6 Dialog
- .802 7 Characters

.803 Collections dealing with specific themes and subjects**.803 1 Major disciplines**

Examples: religion, law, commerce, science, medicine, engineering, art

- .803 2 **Places**
 Physiographic and socioeconomic regions, continents, countries, localities
- .803 3 **Times**
 Seasons, special days, holidays; parts of day, e.g., darkness, dawn
- .803 5 **Humanity and human existence**
- .803 51 **Individual persons**
 Real, fictional, legendary •
 Examples: Abraham Lincoln, King Arthur, Faust, Odysseus, Pierrot
- .803 52 **Specific kinds of persons**
 Examples: children, Jews, saints, women
 For individual persons, see 808.80351
- .803 53 **Human qualities and attributes**
 Examples: success, pride, friendship, chivalry, sex, crime, insanity
 For love, see 808.80354
- .803 538 **Pornography**
- .803 54 **Life cycle**
 Birth, love, marriage, death -
- .803 55 **Everyday life**
 Examples: food, dwellings, occupations, recreation
- .803 56 **Man-made things and materials**
 Examples: wheels, ships
 For dwellings, see 808.80355
- .803 6 **Physical and natural phenomena**
 Examples: weather, fire, plants, animals, gardens
- .803 7 **The supernatural and legendary**
 For legendary persons, see 808.80351
- .803 72 **Places**
 Example: Atlantis
- .803 75 **Beings**
 Examples: ogres, fairies, vampires, ghosts •
- .803 76 **Things**
 Examples: philosopher's stone. Holy Grail

.808 8

Philosophic and abstract concepts

Examples: God, existentialism, nothingness

808.81–808.88 Collections in specific forms

Add to each subdivision identified by * as follows:

001–009 Standard subdivisions

01–04 Historical periods

Add to 0 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., 18th century 033

Observe table of precedence under 800

Class comprehensive works in 808.8

SUMMARY

- 808.81 Collections of poetry
- .82 Collections of drama
- .83 Collections of fiction
- .84 Collections of essays
- .85 Collections of speeches
- .86 Collections of letters
- .87 Collections of satire and humor
- .88 Collections of miscellaneous writings

.81

*Collections of poetry

808.812–808.818 Specific kinds of poetry

Class comprehensive works in 808.81

.812

Dramatic

.813

Epic

.814

Lyric and balladic

.815

Religious and didactic

.816

Descriptive

Class lyric descriptive poetry in 808.814

.817

Satirical and humorous

Within the restrictions provided in the table of precedence under 800 class satire and humor in 808.87

.818

Light and ephemeral verse

Including greeting card verse

.819

Poetry displaying specific features

Add to 808.819 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803, e.g., poetry about animals 808.819.36

Class poetry of specific kinds regardless of feature in 808.812–808.818

Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88

.82 *Collections of drama

► 808.822–808.825 Drama of specific mediums, scopes, kinds

Class comprehensive works in 808.82

► 808.822–808.823 Drama for mass media

Class comprehensive works in 808.82

.823 For radio and television

.823 For motion pictures

.824 Drama of restricted scope

Class drama of restricted scope for mass media in 808.822–808.823

.824 1 One-act plays

.824 5 Monologs

.825 Specific kinds of drama

Class specific kinds of drama for mass media in 808.822–808.823,
specific kinds of drama of restricted scope in 808.824

.825 1 Tragedy and serious drama

Including historical, passion, morality, miracle plays

.825 2 Comedy and melodrama

Within the restrictions provided in the table of precedence
under 800 class satire and humor in 808.87

.825 7 Variety and miscellaneous

.829 Drama displaying specific features

Add to 808.829 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803,
e.g., drama about Abraham Lincoln 808.829351

Class drama of specific mediums, scopes, kinds regardless of
feature in 808.822–808.825

.83 *Collections of fiction

► • 808.831–808.838 Specific scopes and types of fiction

Class comprehensive works in 808.83

► 808.831–808.836 Fiction of specific scopes

Class comprehensive works in 808.83, fiction of specific types regardless
of scope in 808.838

.831 Short stories

.832 Novelets and novellas

.833 Novels

* Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88

- .836 Cartoon fiction (Comics)
- .838 Specific types of fiction
 - .838 1 Historical and period
 - .838 3 Sociological, psychological, realistic
 - .838 4 Occupational
 - .838 5 Love and romance
 - .838 7 Adventure
 - .838 72 Mystery and suspense
 - .838 74 Western
 - .838 76 Science
- .839 Fiction displaying specific features
 - Add to 808.839 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803, e.g., fiction about animals 808.83936
 - Class fiction of specific scopes and types regardless of feature in 808.831– 808.838
- .84 *Collections of essays
- .849 Essays displaying specific features
 - Add to 808.849 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803, e.g., essays on nature 808.84936
- .85 *Collections of speeches
 - ▶ 808.851–808.856 Specific kinds of speeches
 - Class comprehensive works in 808.85
 - .851 Public speeches (Oratory)
 - Platform, radio, after-dinner speeches
 - Including speeches and toasts for special occasions
 - For debates and public discussions, see 808.853*
 - .853 Debates and public discussions
 - .854 Recitations
 - .855 Texts for choral speaking
 - .856 Conversations
 - .859 Speeches displaying specific features
 - Add to 808.859 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803, e.g., descriptive speeches 808.85922
 - Class speeches of specific kinds regardless of feature in 808.851–808.856

† Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88

.86 *Collections of letters

.869 Letters displaying specific features

Add to 808.869 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803,
e.g., letters on nature 808.86936

.87 *Collections of satire and humor

.879 Satire and humor displaying specific features

Add to 808.879 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.803,
e.g., literary humor on specific subjects 808.8793

.88 *Collections of miscellaneous writings

► 808.882–808.888 Specific kinds of miscellaneous writings

Class comprehensive works in 808.88

.882 Quotations and epigrams

.883 Diaries, journals, reminiscences

.887 Experimental and nonformalized works

Works without identifiable form

.888 Prose literature

Class a specific form of prose literature with the form, e.g.,
essays 808.84

.89 Collections for and by specific kinds of persons

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., collections for
or by American Roman Catholic children 808.899282

Persons of specific age groups

Persons of specific sexes

Persons of specific occupations and interests

Persons of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Persons resident in specific continents, countries, localities

Persons resident in specific regions

Class literature in specific forms for and by specific kinds of persons in
808.81–808.88, literature displaying specific features for and by specific
kinds of persons in 808.801–808.803

.898 For and by specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 01–99 from Table 5
to base number 808.898

Class literatures of specific languages by persons of specific racial,
ethnic, national groups in 810–890

* Add as instructed under 808.81–808.88

- .899 For and by other specific kinds of persons
- .899 1 Persons resident in specific regions
 Not limited by continent, country, locality
 Add "Areas" notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 808.899,
 e.g., persons resident in Western Hemisphere 808.8991812
 Class literatures of specific languages by persons resident in
 specific regions in 810-890
- .899 2 Persons of specific classes
- .899 209-.899 279 Of specific occupations and interests
 Add "Persons" notation 09-79 from Table 7 to base number
 808.8992
*For persons occupied with geography, history, related
 disciplines, see 808.89929*
- .899 28 Of specific age groups and sexes
-
- 808.899 282-808.899 285 Age groups
 Class comprehensive works in 808.89928
- 899 282 Children
 899 282 6 Boys
 899 282 7 Girls
 899 283 Adolescents
 899 283 6 Young men
 899 283 7 Young women
 899 285 Aged people
-
- 808.899 286-808.899 287 Sexes
 Class comprehensive works in 808.89928
- .899 286 Men
 .899 287 Women
- .899 29 Occupied with geography, history, related disciplines
 Add "Persons" notation 9 from Table 7 to base number
 808.8992, e.g., biographers 808.899292
- .899 3-.899 9 Persons resident in specific continents, countries, localities
 Class here literatures of countries using more than one language
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 808.899
 Class literatures of specific languages by persons resident in
 specific continents, countries, localities in 810-890

809 History, description, critical appraisal of more than one literature

Class here biography

Class theory, technique, history of literary criticism in 801.95; more than one literature in the same language with literature of that language

.01-.04 Literature from specific periods

Add "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901-0904 from Table 1 to base number 8, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of 18th century literature 809.033

.1-.7 Literature in specific forms

Add to 809 the numbers following 808.8 in 808.81-808.87, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of science fiction 809.3876

.8 Literature for and by specific kinds of persons

Observe the following table of precedence, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature for or by American Roman Catholic girls 809.892827

Persons of specific age groups,

Persons of specific sexes

Persons of specific occupations and interests

Persons of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Persons resident in specific continents, countries, localities

Persons resident in specific regions

Class literature in specific forms for and by specific kinds of persons in 809.1-809.7, literature displaying specific features for and by specific kinds of persons in 809.9

809.801-809.889 Literature for and by specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Class comprehensive works in 809.8, literatures of specific languages by persons of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in 810-890

.801-.879 For and by general and larger Western racial, ethnic, national groups

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01-79 from Table 5 to base number 809.8

.88 For and by other racial, ethnic, national groups

.881 Ancient Greeks

.888 Modern Greeks and Cypriots

.889 Other

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 9 from Table 5 to base number 809.88, e.g., Jews 809.88924

- .89 For and by other specific kinds of persons
- .891 Persons resident in specific regions
 Not limited by continent, country, locality
 Add "Areas" notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 809.89, e.g.,
 history, description, critical appraisal of literature by persons
 resident in Western Hemisphere 809.891812
 Class literatures of specific languages by persons resident in specific
 regions in 810-890
- .892 Persons of specific classes
- .892 09-.892 79 Of specific occupations and interests
 Add "Persons" notation 09-79 from Table 7 to base number
 809.892
 *For persons occupied with geography, history, related
 disciplines, see 809.8929*
- .892 8 Of specific age groups and sexes

 809.892 82-809.892 85 Age groups
 Class comprehensive works in 809.8928
- .892 82 Children
- .892 826 Boys
- .892 827 Girls
- .892 83 Adolescents
- .892 836 Young men
- .892 837 Young women
- .892 85 Aged people

 809.892 86-809.892 87 Sexes
 Class comprehensive works in 809.8928
- .892 86 Men
- .892 87 Women
- .892 9 Occupied with geography, history, related disciplines
 Add "Persons" notation 9 from Table 7 to base number 809.892,
 e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature by
 historians 809.89297
- .893-.899 Persons resident in specific continents, countries, localities
 Class here literatures of countries using more than one language
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 809.89
 Class literatures of specific languages by persons resident in specific
 continents, countries, localities in 810-890

- .9 Literature displaying specific features**
Class literature in specific forms regardless of feature in 809.1–809.7
- .91–.92 Displaying specific qualities and elements**
Add to 809.9 the numbers following 808.80 in 808.801–808.802, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature displaying tragedy and horror 809.916
- .93 Displaying other aspects**
- .933 Dealing with specific themes and subjects**
Add to 809.933 the numbers following 808.803 in 808.8031–808.8038, e.g., history, description, critical appraisal of literature dealing with love 809.93354
- .935 Emphasizing subject values**
Literary appraisal of works not basically belles-lettres
Add 001–999 to base number 809.935, e.g., Bible as literature 809.93522

810–890 Literatures of specific languages

By language in which originally written

Class literature in a dialect with literature of the basic language

If preferred, class translations into a language requiring local emphasis with the literature of that language

Arrange as below; but, if it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific literature, place it first by use of a letter or other symbol, e.g., literature of Arabic language 8A0 (preceding 810), for which base number is 8A

Under each literature identified by *, add to designated base number "Subdivisions of Individual Literatures" notation 01–89 from Table 3

Class comprehensive works in 800

810 *American literature in English

English-language literature of Western Hemisphere and Hawaii

Base number: 81

(If it is desired to give local emphasis and a shorter number to a specific literature, e.g., Afrikaans literature, it is optional to class it here; in that case class American literature in English in 820)

If desired, distinguish literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C810, of Jamaica J810, of United States U810, or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 819. If literatures are not identified by one of these methods, use United States period table only

Special interpretations of and exceptions to Table 3, "Subdivisions of Individual Literatures":

810.8099 Collections for and by persons resident in Hawaii

810.999 History, description, critical appraisal of literature for and by persons resident in Hawaii

PERIOD TABLES

For Canada

- 3 Colonial period to 1867
- 4 Later 19th century, 1867–1900
- 5 20th century
- 52 Early, 1900–1945
- 54 Later, 1945–

For United States

- 1 Colonial period, 1607–1776
- 2 Post-Revolutionary period, 1776–1830
- 3 Middle 19th century, 1830–1861
- 4 Later 19th century, 1861–1900
- 5 20th century
- 52 Early, 1900–1945
- 54 Later, 1945–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

- 811 Poetry
- 812 Drama
- 813 Fiction
- 814 Essays
- 815 Speeches
- 816 Letters
- 817 Satire and humor
- 818 Miscellaneous writings
- 819 Literatures not requiring local emphasis

(It is optional to class here English-language literatures of specific American countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing United States literature may class here Canadian literature, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature may class here United States literature. Prefer 810–818 for literature of all American countries, especially for description, critical appraisal, biography, works of individual authors)

820 Literatures of *English and Anglo-Saxon languages

Base number for English: 82

If desired, distinguish English-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of England E820, of Ireland Ir820, of Scotland S820, of Wales W820 (or of all British Isles B820), of Australia A820, of India In820; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 828.99. If literatures are not identified by one of these methods, use Great Britain period table only

For American literature in English, see 810

PERIOD TABLES FOR ENGLISH

For Asian countries

- 1 Early period to 1858
- 2 1858–1947
- 3 Later 20th century, 1947–

For Australia

- 1 Early period to 1890
- 2 Early 20th century, 1890–1945
- 3 Later 20th century, 1945–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

820 Literatures of English and Anglo-Saxon languages (continued)

For Great Britain

- Early English period, 1066–1400
- Pre-Elizabethan period, 1400–1558
- Elizabethan period, 1558–1625
- Post-Elizabethan period, 1625–1702
- Queen Anne period, 1702–1745
- 6 Later 18th century, 1745–1800
- 7 Early 19th century, 1800–1837
- 8 Victorian period, 1837–1900
- 9 1900–
- 91 20th century
- 912 Early, 1900–1945
- 914 Later, 1945–

For Ireland

- 1 Medieval and early modern to 1660
- 2 Late 17th and 18th centuries, 1600–1800
- 3 19th century, 1800–1900
- 4 Irish literary revival, 1900–1945
- 5 Later 20th century, 1945–

For New Zealand

- 1 Early period to 1907
- 2 20th century, 1907–

For South Africa

- 1 To 1909
- 2 Early 20th century, 1909–1961
- 3 Later 20th century, 1961–

821 English poetry

822 English drama

.3 Elizabethan period, 1558–1625

.33 William Shakespeare

If desired, subarrange works about and by Shakespeare according to the following table, which may be adapted for use with any specific author:

- A Authorship controversies
(It is optional to class here bibliography; prefer 016)
- B Biography
- D Critical appraisal
Class critical appraisal of individual works in O–Z
- E Textual criticism
Class textual criticism of individual works in O–Z
- F Sources, allusions, learning
- G Societies, concordances, miscellany
- H Quotations, condensations, adaptations
(It is optional to class here tales based on Shakespeare; prefer fiction under specific literature)
- J Complete works in English without notes

.33

William Shakespeare (continued)

- J Complete works in English with notes
- K Complete works in translation
- L Partial collections in English without notes
- M Partial collections in English with notes
- N Partial collections in translation

O-Z Individual works

Use the first number of each pair for texts, the second for description and critical appraisal

O-R Comedies

- O1-2 All's well that ends well
- O3-4 As you like it
- O5-6 The comedy of errors
- O7-8 Love's labour's lost
- P1-2 Measure for measure
- P3-4 The merchant of Venice
- P5-6 The merry wives of Windsor
- P7-8 A midsummer night's dream
- Q1-2 Much ado about nothing
- Q3-4 The taming of the shrew
- Q5-6 The tempest
- Q7-8 Twelfth night
- R1-2 The two gentlemen of Verona
- R3-4 The winter's tale

S-V Tragedies

- S1-2 Antony and Cleopatra
- S3-4 Coriolanus
- S5-6 Cymbeline
- S7-8 Hamlet
- T1-2 Julius Caesar
- T3-4 King Lear
- T5-6 Macbeth
- T7-8 Othello
- U1-2 Pericles
- U3-4 Romeo and Juliet
- U5-6 Timon of Athens
- U7-8 Titus Andronicus
- V1-2 Troilus and Cressida

W-X Histories

- W1-2 Henry IV, parts 1-2
- W3-4 Henry V
- W5-6 Henry VI, parts 1-3
- W7-8 Henry VIII
- X1-2 King John
- X3-4 Richard II
- X5-6 Richard III
- Y1-2 Poems

For specific poems, see Y3-8

Y3-8 Specific poems

- Y3-4 Venus and Adonis
- Y5-6 The rape of Lucrece
- Y7-8 Sonnets

Z Spurious and doubtful works

823 English fiction**824 English essays****825 English speeches****826 English letters****827 English satire and humor****828 English miscellaneous writings****.99 English-language literatures not requiring local emphasis**

(It is optional to class here English-language literatures of specific non-American countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing British literature may class here Australian, Indian, other literatures, and libraries emphasizing Indian literature may class here British literature. Prefer 820–828 for literature of all non-American countries, especially description, critical appraisal, biography, works of individual authors)

829 Anglo-Saxon (Old English)**.1 Poetry**

For Caedmon, see 829.2; Beowulf, 829.3; Cynewulf, 829.4

.2 Caedmon**.3 Beowulf****.4 Cynewulf****830 Literatures of Germanic (Teutonic) languages*****German literature**

Use 830.01–830.09 for standard subdivisions of Germanic (Teutonic)

Base number for German: 83

For literatures of English and Anglo-Saxon languages, see 820

PERIOD TABLE FOR GERMAN

- 1 Early medieval period to 1150
- 2 Later medieval period, 1150–1300
- 3 Period of decline, 1300–1517
- 4 Reformation period, 1517–1625
- 5 Period of imitation, 1625–1750
- 6 Classical period, 1750–1830
- 7 Postclassical period, 1830–1856
- 8 Later 19th century, 1856–1900
- 9 1900–
- 91 20th century
- 912 Early, 1900–1945
- 914 Later, 1945–

831 German poetry**832 German drama**

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

- 833 German fiction
- 834 German essays
- 835 German speeches
- 836 German letters
- 837 German satire and humor
- 838 German miscellaneous writings
- 839 Other Germanic (Teutonic) languages

.09 *Yiddish [*formerly* 892.49]

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1700
- 2 Period of enlightenment, 1700–1860
- 3 Golden age and modern period, 1860–

► 839.1–839.4 West Germanic languages

Class comprehensive works in 839

.1 Old Low Germanic languages

Old Saxon, Old Frisian, Old Low Franconian, Old Low German

► 839.2–839.4 Modern Low Germanic languages

Class comprehensive works in 839

.2 *Frisian

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1609
- 2 17th–18th centuries, 1609–1800
- 3 19th century, 1800–1900
- 4 20th century, 1900–

.3 Netherlandish languages

.31 *Dutch

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Medieval period to 1450
- 2 Renaissance period, 1450–1600
- 3 17th century, 1600–1700
- 4 18th century, 1700–1800
- 5 19th century, 1800–1900
- 6 20th century
- 62 Early, 1900–1945
- 64 Later, 1945–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

.32 *Flemish

PERIOD TABLE

- 5 19th century, 1800–1900
- 6 20th century
- 62 Early, 1900–1945
- 64 Later, 1945–

.36 *Afrikaans

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1875
- 2 1875–1904
- 3 Early 20th century, 1904–1924
- 4 Mid-20th century, 1924–1961
- 5 Later 20th century, 1961–

.4 *Low German (Plattdeutsch)

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1600
- 2 17th–19th centuries, 1600–1900
- 3 20th century, 1900–

.5 Scandinavian (North Germanic) languages

For specific Scandinavian languages, see 839.6–839.8

839.6–839.8 Specific Scandinavian languages

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

.6 West Scandinavian languages *Old Norse (Old Icelandic)

Use 839.6001–839.6009 for standard subdivisions of West Scandinavian languages

Base number for Old Norse (Old Icelandic): 839.6

.69 Modern West Scandinavian languages *Modern Icelandic

Use 839.69001–839.69009 for standard subdivisions of modern West Scandinavian languages

Base number for modern Icelandic: 839.69

PERIOD TABLE FOR MODERN ICELANDIC

- 1 Early period, 1500–1720
- 2 Age of enlightenment, 1720–1835
- 3 Renaissance, 1835–1900
- 4 20th century, 1900–

.699 *Faroese

' Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

839.7–839.8 East Scandinavian languages

Class comprehensive works in 839.5

.7 *Swedish**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Medieval period to 1520
- 2 Reformation period, 1520–1640
- 3 Age of Stjernhjelm, 1640–1740
- 4 Age of Dalin, 1740–1780
- 5 Age of Gustavus, 1780–1800
- 6 19th century, 1800–1900
- 7 20th century
- 72 Early, 1900–1945
- 74 Later, 1945–

8 Danish and Norwegian**81 *Danish****PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Medieval period to 1500
- 2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
- 3 Learned period, 1560–1700
- 4 Age of Holberg, 1700–1750
- 5 Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
- 6 19th century, 1800–1900
- 7 20th century
- 72 Early, 1900–1945
- 74 Later, 1945–

.82 *Norwegian (Bokmaal)**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Medieval period to 1500
- 2 Reformation period, 1500–1560
- 3 Learned period, 1560–1700
- 4 Early 18th century, 1700–1750
- 5 Period of enlightenment, 1750–1800
- 6 19th century, 1800–1900
- 7 20th century
- 72 Early, 1900–1945
- 74 Later, 1945–

.83 *New Norse (Landsmaal)**PERIOD TABLE**

- 6 19th century, 1800–1900
- 7 20th century
- 72 Early, 1900–1945
- 74 Later, 1945–

.9 East Germanic

Gothic, Vandalic, Burgundian

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

840 Literatures of Romance languages [*formerly also* 879.9] *French literature

Use 840.01–840.09 for standard subdivisions of Romance languages

Base number for French. 84

If desired, distinguish French-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Canada C840, of France F840; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 848.99. If literatures are not identified by one of these methods, use France period table only

For literatures of Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages, see 850; of Spanish and Portuguese languages, 860

PERIOD TABLES FOR FRENCH

For Belgium

- 1 Early period to 1830
- 2 19th century, 1830–1900
- 3 20th century
- 32 Early, 1900–1945
- 34 Later, 1945–

For Canada

- 3 Colonial period to 1867
- 4 Later 19th century, 1867–1900
- 5 20th century
- 52 Early, 1900–1945
- 54 Later, 1945–

For France

- 1 Early period to 1400
- 2 15th century, 1400–1500
- 3 16th century, 1500–1600
- 4 Classical period, 1600–1715
- 5 18th century, 1715–1789
- 6 Revolution and Empire, 1789–1815
- 7 Constitutional monarchy, 1815–1848
- 8 Later 19th century, 1848–1900
- 9 1900–
- 91 20th century
- 912 Early, 1900–1945
- 914 Later, 1945–

841 French poetry

842 French drama

843 French fiction

844 French essays

845 French speeches

846 French letters

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

847 French satire and humor**848 French miscellaneous writings****.99 French-language literatures not requiring local emphasis**

(It is optional to class here literatures of specific countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of France may class here Belgian and Canadian literatures, and libraries emphasizing Canadian literature may class here literature of France. Prefer 840–848 for literature of all countries, especially description, critical appraisal, biography, works of individual authors)

849 *Provençal and Catalan

Base number for Provençal: 849

PERIOD TABLE FOR PROVENÇAL

- 1 Early period to 1100
- 2 Golden age, 1100–1300
- 3 14th and 15th centuries, 1300–1500
- 4 Decline and revival, 1500–1900
- 5 20th century
- 52 Early, 1900–1945
- 54 Later, 1945–

Catalan*PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 First period to 1350
- 2 Second period, 1350–1450
- 3 Golden age, 1450–1500
- 4 Decline and revival, 1500–1900
- 5 20th century
- 52 Early, 1900–1945
- 54 Later, 1945–

850 Literatures of *Italian, Romanian, Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Base number for Italian: 85

PERIOD TABLE FOR ITALIAN

- 1 Early period to 1375
- 2 Period of classical learning, 1375–1492
- 3 Age of Leo X, 1492–1542
- 4 Later 16th century, 1542–1585
- 5 Period of decline, 1585–1748
- 6 Period of renovation, 1748–1814
- 7 Early 19th century, 1814–1859
- 8 Later 19th century, 1859–1900
- 9 1900–
- 91 20th century
- 912 Early, 1900–1945
- 914 Later, 1945–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

- 851 **Italian poetry**
- 852 **Italian drama**
- 853 **Italian fiction**
- 854 **Italian essays**
- 855 **Italian speeches**
- 856 **Italian letters**
- 857 **Italian satire and humor**
- 858 **Italian miscellaneous writings**
- 859 ***Romanian and Rhaeto-Romanic**

Base number for Romanian. 859

PERIOD TABLE FOR ROMANIAN

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800–1900
- 3 20th century
- 32 Early, 1900–1945
- 34 Later, 1945–

.9 Rhaeto-Romanic languages

Romansh, Ladin, Friulian

† Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

860 Literatures of *Spanish and Portuguese languages

Use 860.01–860.09 for standard subdivisions

Base number for Spanish: 86

If desired, distinguish Spanish-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Chile Ch860, of Colombia Co860, of Mexico M860 (or, of all American countries A860), of Spain S860; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 868.99. If literatures are not identified by one of these methods, use Spain period table only

PERIOD TABLES FOR SPANISH

For American countries

- 1 Colonial and revolutionary period, 1519–1826
- 2 19th century, 1826–1888
- 3 Period of modernism and realism, 1888–1910
- 4 20th century, 1910–
- 42 Early, 1910–1945
- 44 Later, 1945–

For Spain

- 1 Early period to 1369
- 2 Age of imitation, 1369–1516
- 3 Golden age, 1516–1700
- 4 18th century, 1700–1800
- 5 19th century, 1800–1900
- 6 20th century
- 62 Early, 1900–1945
- 64 Later, 1945–

861 Spanish poetry

862 Spanish drama

863 Spanish fiction

864 Spanish essays

865 Spanish speeches

866 Spanish letters

867 Spanish satire and humor

868 Spanish miscellaneous writings

.99 Spanish-language literatures not requiring local emphasis

(It is optional to class here literatures of specific countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Spain may class here Hispanic-American literatures, and libraries emphasizing literature of Mexico may class here literatures of other Hispanic-American countries and of Spain. Prefer 860–868 for literature of all countries, especially description, critical appraisal, biography, works of individual authors)

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

869 *Portuguese

If desired, distinguish Portuguese-language literatures of specific countries by initial letters, e.g., literature of Brazil B869, of Portugal P869; or, if preferred, class literatures not requiring local emphasis in 869.899. If literatures are not identified by one of these methods, use Portugal period table only

PERIOD TABLES**For Brazil**

- 1 Period of formation, 1500–1750
- 2 Period of transformation, 1750–1830
- 3 Period of growing autonomy, 1830–1921
- 4 20th century, 1921–

For Portugal

- 1 Early period to 1500
- 2 16th–18th centuries, 1500–1800
- 3 19th century, 1800–1900
- 4 20th century
- 41 Early, 1900–1945
- 42 Later, 1945–

.899 Literatures not requiring local emphasis

(It is optional to class here literatures of specific countries, e.g., libraries emphasizing literature of Portugal may class here Brazilian literature, and libraries emphasizing Brazilian literature may class here literature of Portugal. Prefer 869 and its subdivisions for literature of all countries, especially description, critical appraisal, biography, works of individual authors)

870 Literatures of Italic languages *Latin literature

Use 870.01–870.09 for standard subdivisions of Italic

Base number for Latin: 87

Special interpretations of and exceptions to Table 3, "Subdivisions of Individual Literatures," for use with Latin appear below under 871–878

For literatures of Romance languages, see 840

PERIOD TABLE FOR LATIN

- 1 Roman period to ca. 500
- 2 Pre-Carolingian period, ca. 500–ca. 750
- 3 Medieval period, ca. 750–1350
- 4 Modern period, 1350–

871 Latin poetry

For dramatic poetry, see 872; epic poetry, 873; lyric poetry, 874

.01–.04 Specific periods

Add to 871.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 871.01

Do not use 871.02–871.08 for specific kinds

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

872 Latin dramatic poetry and drama**.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 872.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 872.01

Do not use 872.02-872.05 for specific mediums, scopes, kinds

873 Latin epic poetry and fiction**.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 873.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 873.01

Do not use 873.01-873.08 for specific scopes and types

874 Latin lyric poetry**.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 874.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 874.01

875 Latin speeches**.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 875.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 875.01

Do not use 875.01-875.06 for specific kinds

876 Latin letters**.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 876.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 876.01

877 Latin satire and humor**.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 877.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 877.01

878 Latin miscellaneous writings**.000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions****.002-.008 Specific kinds****.01-.04 Specific periods**

Add to 878.0 the notation from the period table for Latin, e.g., Roman period 878.01

879 Other Italic languages**.4 Latinian languages other than Latin**

Venetic, Lanuvian, Faliscan, Praenestian

.7 Sabellian languages

Aequian, Marrucinian, Marsian, Paelignian, Sabine, Vestinian, Volscian

.9 OtherClass literatures of Romance languages [*formerly* 879.9] in 840**.99 Osco-Umbrian languages**

Oscan, Umbrian

880 Literatures of Hellenic languages *Classical Greek literature

Class here literatures of classical languages

Use 880.01–880.09 for standard subdivisions of classical literatures

Base number for classical Greek: 88

Special interpretations of and exceptions to Table 3, "Subdivisions of Individual Literatures," for use with classical Greek appear below under 881–888

*For literature of Latin language, see 870***PERIOD TABLE FOR CLASSICAL GREEK**

1 Ancient period to ca. 500

2 Medieval and Byzantine periods, ca. 500–1600

3 Modern period, 1600–

881 Classical Greek poetry*For dramatic poetry, see 882; epic poetry, 883; lyric poetry, 884***.01–.03 Specific periods**

Add to 881.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 881.01

Do not use 881.02–881.08 for specific kinds

882 Classical Greek dramatic poetry and drama**.01–.03 Specific periods**

Add to 882.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 882.01

Do not use 882.02–882.05 for specific mediums, scopes, kinds

883 Classical Greek epic poetry and fiction**.01–.03 Specific periods**

Add to 883.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 883.01

Do not use 883.01–883.08 for specific scopes and types

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

884 Classical Greek lyric poetry

.01-.03 Specific periods

Add to 884.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 881.01

885 Classical Greek speeches

.01-.03 Specific periods

Add to 885.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 885.01

Do not use 885.01-885.06 for specific kinds

886 Classical Greek letters

.01-.03 Specific periods

Add to 886.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 886.01

887 Classical Greek satire and humor

.01-.03 Specific periods

Add to 887.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 887.01

888 Classical Greek miscellaneous writings

.000 1-.000 9 Standard subdivisions

.002-.008 Specific kinds

.01-.03 Specific periods

Add to 888.0 the notation from the period table for classical Greek, e.g., ancient period 888.01

889 *Modern Greek

Katharevusa and Demotic

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1821
- 2 19th century, 1821-1900
- 3 20th century
- 32 Early, 1900-1945
- 34 Later, 1945-

* Add to base number as instructed under 810-890

890 Literatures of other languages

891 East Indo-European and Celtic languages

SUMMARY

- 891.1 Indo-Iranian (Aryan) languages
 - .2 Sanskrit
 - .3 Middle Indic languages (Secondary Prakrits)
 - .4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)
 - .5 Iranian languages
 - .6 Celtic languages
 - .7 East Slavic languages Russian
 - .8 Balto-Slavic languages Slavic languages
 - .9 Baltic and other languages

Indo-Iranian (Aryan) languages

For Indic (Indo-Aryan) languages, see 891.2–891.4; Iranian languages, 891.5

891.2–891.4 Indic (Indo-Aryan) languages

Class comprehensive works in 891.1

.2 *Sanskrit

Vedic (Old Indic) and classical

.3 Middle Indic languages (Secondary Prakrits)

Including Pali

.4 Modern Indic languages (Tertiary Prakrits)

PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC MODERN INDIC LANGUAGES

1 To 1345

2 1345–1645

3 1645–1845

4 1845–1895

5 1895–1920

6 1920–1940

7 1940–

.41 *Sindhi and Lahnda

Base number for Sindhi: 891.41

Use period table for specific modern Indic languages

.419 *Lahnda

Use period table for specific modern Indic languages

.42 *Panjabi

Use period table for specific modern Indic languages

† Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

- .43 **Western Hindi languages** *Hindi
 Use 891.43001–891.43009 for standard subdivisions of **Western Hindi**
 Base number for Hindi: 891.43
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .439 *Urdu
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .44 *Bengali
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .45 Assamese, Bihari (Bhojpuri, Magahi, Maithili), Oriya
- .46 *Marathi
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .47 *Gujarati and Rajasthani
 Base number for Gujarati: 891.47
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .479 *Rajasthani, Jaipuri, Marwari
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .48 *Sinhalese and Mahl
 Use period table for specific modern Indic languages
- .49 Other
 Including Nepali, Pahari, Eastern Hindi (Awadhi, Bagheli, Chattisgarhi)
- .499 Dard languages
 Shina, Khowar, Kafiri, Kohistani, Kashmiri, Romany (Gipsy)
- .5 **Iranian languages**
- .51 *Old Persian (West Iranian)
- .52 *Avestan (East Iranian)
- .53 Middle Iranian languages
 Pahlavi (Middle Persian), Sogdian, Khotanese (Saka)

' Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

- .55 ***Modern Persian (Farsi)**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Period of formal development, ca. 1000–1389
 2 Period of traditionalism, 1389–1900
 3 20th century, 1900–
- .59 **Other modern Iranian languages**
 Kurdish, Baluchi, Tajiki, Pashto (Afghan), Ossetic, Pamir (Galcha),
 Yaghnobi
- .6 **Celtic languages**
 Including Gaulish, Cornish
- .62 ***Irish Gaelic**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1171
 2 Period of decline, 1171–1700
 3 Period of renaissance, 1700–1850
 4 Modern period, 1850–
- .63 ***Scottish Gaelic**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1600
 2 Renaissance, 1600–1830
 3 Modern period, 1830–
- .64 ***Manx**
- .66 ***Welsh (Cymric)**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1600
 2 Later period, 1600–
- .68 ***Breton**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1800
 2 19th century, 1800–1900
 3 20th century, 1900–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

.7 East Slavic languages *Russian

Use 891.7001–891.7009 for standard subdivisions of East Slavic

Base number for Russian: 891.7

PERIOD TABLE FOR RUSSIAN

- 1 Early period to 1700
- 2 18th century, 1700–1800
- 3 19th century, 1800–1917
- 4 20th century, 1917–
- 42 Early, 1917–1945
- 44 Later, 1945–

.79 *Ukrainian and Belorussian

Base number for Ukrainian: 891.79

PERIOD TABLE FOR UKRAINIAN

- 1 Early period to 1798
- 2 19th century, 1798–1917
- 3 20th century, 1917–

.799 *Belorussian**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to 1798
- 2 19th century, 1798–1917
- 3 20th century, 1917–

.8 Balto-Slavic languages Slavic languages

For East Slavic languages, see 891.7; Baltic languages, 891.9

.81 South Slavic languages *Bulgarian

Use 891.81001–891.81009 for standard subdivisions of South Slavic

Base number for Bulgarian: 891.81

For Serbo-Croatian, see 891.82; Slovenian, 891.84

PERIOD TABLE FOR BULGARIAN

- 1 Early period to 1850
- 2 Later 19th century, 1850–1900
- 3 20th century, 1900–

.819 *Macedonian**.82 *Serbo-Croatian****PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to ca. 1550
- 2 Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
- 3 18th century, 1700–1800
- 4 19th century, 1800–1900
- 5 20th century, 1900–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

.84 *Slovenian**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to ca. 1550
- 2 Period of renaissance, ca. 1550–1700
- 3 18th century, 1700–1800
- 4 19th century, 1800–1900
- 5 20th century, 1900–

.85 West Slavic languages *Polish

Use 891.85001–891.85009 for standard subdivisions of West Slavic

Base number for Polish: 891.85

For Czech, see 891.86; Slovak, 891.87; Wendish, 891.88; Polabian, 891.89

PERIOD TABLE FOR POLISH

- 1 Early period to 1400
- 2 Period of development, 1400–1500
- 3 Golden age, 1500–1600
- 4 Period of decline, 1600–1700
- 5 18th century, 1700–1795
- 6 Period of renaissance, 1795–1919
- 7 20th century, 1919–

.86 *Czech**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to 1400
- 2 Reformation period, 1400–1450
- 3 Humanist period, 1450–1620
- 4 Period of decline, 1620–1900
- 5 20th century, 1900–

.87 Slovak**.88 *Wendish (Sorbian, Lusatian)****.89 *Polabian****.9 Baltic and other languages**

891.91–891.93 Baltic languages

Class comprehensive works in 891.9

.91 Old Prussian**.92 *Lithuanian****PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800–1900
- 3 20th century, 1900–

¹ Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

.93 *Latvian (Lettish)

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800–1900
- 3 20th century, 1900–

.99 Other Indo-European languages

.991 *Albanian

.992 *Armenian

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 600
- 2 600–1000
- 3 1000–1400
- 4 1400–1850
- 5 Modern period, 1850–

.993–.998 Other

Add “Languages” notation 91993–91998 from Table 6 to base number 8

892 Afro-Asiatic (Hamito-Semitic) languages

For Hamitic and Chad languages, see 893

.1 East Semitic (Akkadian) languages

Examples: Assyrian, Babylonian, Chaldean

892.2–892.9 West Semitic languages

Class comprehensive works in 892



892.2–892.6 Northwest Semitic languages

Class comprehensive works in 892

.2 Aramaic languages

For Eastern Aramaic languages, see 892.3

.29 Biblical Aramaic, Samaritan, Chaldee

.3 Eastern Aramaic languages

Example: Syriac

¹ Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

892.4–892.6 Canaanitic languages

Class comprehensive works in 892.6

.4 *Hebrew

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Early period to 700
- 2 Medieval period, 700–1700
- 3 18th century, 1700–1820
- 4 19th century, 1820–1885
- 5 1885–1947
- 6 Later 20th century, 1947–

[.49] Yiddish

Class in 839.09

.6 Canaanite-Phoenician languages

Including Punic, Ugaritic, Minoan Linear A

Class here comprehensive works on Canaanitic languages

*For Hebrew, see 892.4***892.7–892.9 Southwest Semitic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 892

.7 *Arabic

PERIOD TABLE

- 1 Pre-Islamic period to 622
- 2 Early Islamic and Mukhadrami period, 622–661
- 3 661–1258
- 32 Umayyad period, 661–750
- 34 Abbasid period, 750–1258
- 4 Period of decline, 1258–1800
- 5 Period of renaissance, 1800–1945
- 6 Contemporary period, 1945–

.8 Ethiopic languages

Examples: Geez, Tigre, Tigrinya, Amharic, Argobba, Harari, Gurage

.9 South Arabic languages

Examples: Mahri, Sokotri, Qarawi, Shkhauri

893 Hamitic and Chad languages

Add "Languages" notation 93 from Table 6 to base number 8

Base number for *Coptic: 893.2

Base number for *Hausa: 893.72

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

894 Ural-Altaic, Paleosiberian, Dravidian languages**.1-.3 Altaic languages**

Add "Languages" notation 941-943 from Table 6 to base number 8

Base number for *Turkish: 894.35

PERIOD TABLE FOR TURKISH

- 1 Early period to 1500
- 2 Middle period 1500-1850
- 3 Modern period, 1850-

**894.4-894.5 Uralic languages**

Class comprehensive works in 894

.4 Samoyedic languages

Examples: Yenisei, Yurak, Kamasin, Ostyak Samoyed

.5 Finno-Ugric languages**.51 Ugric languages**

Including Ostyak, Vogul

.511 *Hungarian (Magyar)**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800-1900
- 3 20th century, 1900-

.53 Permian languages

Examples: Votyak (Udmurt), Zyrian

.54 Finnic languages

Including Karelian, Livonian, Veps

For Lapp, see 894.55; Middle Volga languages, 894.56

.541 *Finnish (Suomi)**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800-1900
- 3 20th century, 1900-

.545 *Estonian**PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Early period to 1861
- 2 Modern period, 1861-

.55 *Lapp**.56 Middle Volga languages**

Examples: Mordvin, Cheremis

' Add to base number as instructed under 810-890

.6 Paleosiberian languages

Luorawetlin, Yukaghir, Gilyak, Yeniseian families; Ainu

.8 Dravidian languages**PERIOD TABLE FOR SPECIFIC DRAVIDIAN LANGUAGES**

- 1 To 1345
- 2 1345–1645
- 3 1645–1845
- 4 1845–1895
- 5 1895–1920
- 6 1920–1940
- 7 1940–

.81 Dravida group

Including Malto, Kota, Kurukh (Orâon), Toda

.811 *Tamil

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

.812 *Malayalam

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

.814 *Kanarese (Kannada)

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

.82 Andhra group**.823 *Gondi**

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

.824 *Khond (Kandh)

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

.827 *Telugu

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

.83 *Brahui

Use period table for specific Dravidian languages

895 Languages of East and Southeast Asia *Sino-Tibetan languages**.1 *Chinese****PERIOD TABLE**

- 1 Classical age, 15th–3d centuries B.C.
- 2 Middle epoch, 2d century B.C.–7th century A.D.
- 3 Renaissance and neoclassicism, ca. 700–ca. 1000
- 4 Age of reason, and rise of drama and novel, ca. 1000–1912
- 5 20th century, 1912–

* Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

- .4 Tibeto-Burman languages *Tibetan**
 Use 895.4001–895.4009 for standard subdivisions of Tibeto-Burman
 Base number for Tibetan: 895.4
 For Burmese, see 895.8
- .49 Himalayan dialects**
- .6 *Japanese**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1185
 2 1185–1603
 3 Tokugawa period, 1603–1868
 4 Late 19th and early 20th centuries, 1868–1945
 5 Later 20th century, 1945–
- .7 *Korean**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1392
 2 Yi period, 1392–1910
 3 Early 20th century, 1910–1945
 4 Later 20th century, 1945–
- .8 *Burmese**
 PERIOD TABLE
 1 Early period to 1800
 2 19th century, 1800–1900
 3 20th century, 1900–
- .9 Other languages of Southeast Asia**
 Class Malayan languages in 899.2
- .91 Thai languages *Thai (Siamcse)**
 Use 895.91001–895.91009 for standard subdivisions of literatures of
 Thai languages
 Base number for Thai (Siamese): 895.91
 Class Annam-Muong languages in 895.92
 PERIOD TABLE FOR THAI (SIAMESE)
 1 Early period to 1800
 2 19th century, 1800–1900
 3 20th century, 1900–
- .919 Lao, Shan, Khamti, Ahom, Karen**
- * Add to base number as instructed under 810–890

.92-.95

Annam-Muong, Mon-Khmer, Munda languages

Add "Languages" notation 9592-9595 from Table 6 to base number 8

Base number for *Vietnamese (Annamese): 895.922

PERIOD TABLE FOR VIETNAMESE (ANNAMSE)

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800-1900
- 3 20th century, 1900-

Base number for *Cambodian: 895.932

896**African languages**

Add "Languages" notation 961-965 from Table 6 to base number 8

Base number for *Ibo: 896.332

Base number for *Yoruba: 896.333

Base number for *Swahili: 896.392

*For Afro-Asiatic languages, see 892***897****American aboriginal languages**

Add "Languages" notation 97 from Table 6 to base number 8, e.g., Macro-Penutian languages 897.4

*For South American aboriginal languages, see 898***898****South American aboriginal languages****899****Other languages**

Add "Languages" notation 99 from Table 6 to base number 8

Base number for *Tagalog (Filipino): 899.211

PERIOD TABLE FOR TAGALOG (FILIPINO)

- 1 Early period to 1800
- 2 19th century, 1800-1900
- 3 20th century, 1900-

Base number for *Indonesian (Bahasa Indonesia): 899.221

PERIOD TABLE FOR BAHASA INDONESIA

- 1 Early period to 1900
- 2 20th century, 1900 -

Base number for *Javanese: 899.222

Base number for *Malay (Pidgin Malay, Bazaar Malay): 899.28

Base number for *Malagasy: 899.3

Base number for *Esperanto: 899.992

Base number for *Interlingua. 899.993

* Add to base number as instructed under 810-890

Dewey Decimal Classification

TABLE OF EXAMPLES

Because of the complex number-building operations required for full application of class 800 (including Table 3, "Subdivisions of Individual Literatures," from which many notations are added to various subdivisions of 800), the following table of examples is set forth as a convenient guide to the building of typical numbers:

808.8	Collections from more than one literature
808.800 4	Collections from 20th century literature
808.801 4	Collections of literature displaying romanticism
808.802 6	Collections of literature displaying dialog
808.803 54	Collections of literature dealing with marriage
808.81	Collections of poetry from more than one literature
808.810 4	Collections of 20th century poetry
808.814	Collections of lyric poetry
808.819 14	Collections of poetry displaying romanticism
808.819 26	Collections of poetry displaying dialog
808.819 354	Collections of poetry dealing with marriage
808.898 924	Collections of literature for and by Jews
809	History, description, critical appraisal of more than one literature
809.04	History of 20th century literature
809.1	History of poetry
809.104	History of 20th century poetry
809.14	History of lyric poetry
<u>809.191</u> 4	History of poetry displaying romanticism
809.192 6	History of poetry displaying dialog
809.193 54	History of poetry dealing with marriage
809.889 24	History of literature by Jews
809.914	History of literature displaying romanticism
809.926	History of literature displaying dialog
809.933 54	History of literature dealing with marriage
810	American literature in English (Base number 81)
810.8	Collections of American literature
810.800 54	Collections of later 20th century American literature
810.801 4	Collections of American literature displaying romanticism

Table of examples for literature

810.802 6	Collections of American literature displaying dialog
• 810.803 54	Collections of American literature dealing with marriage
• 810.808 924	Collections of American literature by Jews
810.9	History, description, critical appraisal of American literature
810.900 54	History of later 20th century American literature
810.914	History of American literature displaying romanticism
810.926	History of American literature displaying dialog
• 810.935 4	History of American literature dealing with marriage
810.989 24	History of American literature by Jews
811	American poetry
811.008	Collections of American poetry by authors from more than one period
811.008 014	Collections of American poetry displaying romanticism
811.008 026	Collections of American poetry displaying dialog
• 811.008 035 4	Collections of American poetry dealing with marriage
811.009	History, description, critical appraisal of American poetry from more than one period
811.009 14	History of American poetry displaying romanticism
811.009 26	History of American poetry displaying dialog
• 811.009 354	History of American poetry dealing with marriage
811.04	American lyric poetry
811.54	Later 20th century American poetry
811.540 8	Collections of later 20th century American poetry
811.540 801 4	Collections of later 20th century American poetry displaying romanticism
811.540 802 6	Collections of later 20th century American poetry displaying dialog
• 811.540 803 54	Collections of later 20th century American poetry dealing with marriage
811.540 9	History, description, critical appraisal of later 20th century American poetry
811.540 914	History of later 20th century American poetry displaying romanticism
811.540 926	History of later 20th century American poetry displaying dialog
811.540 935 4	History of later 20th century American poetry dealing with marriage

900 General geography and history and their auxiliaries

General history: narrative and analysis of events of the distant or immediate past in the life of mankind, not limited to a single discipline or subject

Class here military, diplomatic, political, economic, social, welfare aspects of specific wars

Use 900.1–900.9 for standard subdivisions of general geography and history

Class historical treatment of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using “Standard Subdivisions” notation 09 from Table 1, e.g., pure sciences 509, economic events 330.9, purely political events 320.9, history of warfare 355.009; interdisciplinary works on geography and history of specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919

901 Philosophy and theory of general history

.9

Civilization

Man’s spiritual, intellectual, material situation and change

Class here agricultural civilization [*formerly also* 630.11]

If preferred, class in 909

Add to 901.9 the numbers following 090 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 0902–0904 from Table 1, e.g., civilization in the years 500–1200 901.921

Class comprehensive works on ancient civilization to ca. 500 A.D. in 913.03; geographical treatment of civilization in 910.031, 913.3–919.9; psychological principles of general history in 901

902 Miscellany of general history

.02

Synopses, chronologies, manuals

903 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances of general history

904 Collected accounts of specific events

Class here adventure

.5

Events of natural origin

Examples: earthquakes, volcanic eruptions, tidal waves, floods, storms

.7

Events induced by man

Examples: battles, explosions, fires; mine, transportation, nuclear accidents

905 Serial publications of general history

906 **Organizations of general history**

907 **Study and teaching of general history**

.2 **Historiography**

Class writing of history in 808.0669

908 **Collections of general history**

909 **General world history**

(It is optional to class here civilization; prefer 901.9)

Class history of ancient world to ca. 500 A.D. in 930; history of specific continents, countries, localities in modern world in 940–990

.04 **Specific ethnic [*formerly* 909.0974], racial, national groups**

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 909.04, e.g., world history of Jews 909.04924; then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.0492407

(It is optional to class here general history of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in a specific continent, country, locality, prefer subdivision 004 under 930–990. If option is chosen, add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 as above; then add 00 instead of 0 as above for world history by period, e.g., world history of Jews in 18th century 909.04924007; for specific countries add 0 and to the result add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., history of Jews in Germany 909.04924043)

.07 **Ca. 500–1450/1500**

Including Crusades

.08 **Modern history, 1450/1500–**

.09 **Areas, regions, places in general**

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Add to 909.09 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 11–19 from Table 2, e.g., history of tropical regions 909.093, then add 0 and to the result add the numbers following 909 in 909.1–909.8, e.g., history of tropical regions in 1950–1959 909.0930825

Class history of specific ethnic groups [*formerly* 909.0974] in 909.04

.1 **500–1199**

.2 **1200–1299**

.3 **1300–1399**

.4 **1400–1499**

.5 **1500–1599**

.6 **1600–1699**

.7 **1700–1799**

.8	1800–
.81	1800–1899
.82	1900–1999
.821	1900–1919
	<i>For World War I, see 940.3</i>
.822	1920–1929
.823	1930–1939
.824	1940–1949
	<i>For World War II, see 940.53</i>
.825	1950–1959
.826	1960–1969
.827	1970–1979
.828	1980–1989
.829	1990–1999
.83	2000–2099

910 General geography Travel

General geography: description and analysis by area of earth's surface and man's civilization upon it, not limited to a single discipline or subject; also, by extension, description and analysis of surfaces of and civilizations upon extraterrestrial worlds

Class geographical treatment of a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 09 from Table 1 unless otherwise instructed, e.g., geomorphology 551.409, social situation and conditions 309.1, the fine arts 709, religion 200.9

[.001] Philosophy and theory of general geography

Class in 910.01

[.002–.008] Other standard subdivisions of general geography

Class in 910.2–910.8

.01 Philosophy and theory of general geography [*formerly* 910.001], of travel

.02 The earth (Physical geography)

Add "Areas" notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 910.02

Class physical geography of ancient world in 913.02; of specific continents, countries, localities in subdivision 02 under 913.3–919.9

f.

.03 Man and his civilization

Class civilization of ancient world in 913.03; of specific continents, countries, localities in subdivision 03 under 913.3–919.9; general history of civilization in 901.9

.031 In areas, regions, places in general

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Add “Areas” notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 910.03, e.g., Western Hemisphere 910.031812

910.032–910.039 Among specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Not limited by continent, country, locality

Class here comprehensive works on civilization and world history of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

(It is optional to class here civilization of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in a specific continent, country, locality; prefer subdivision 06 under 914–919. If option is chosen, add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation from Table 5 as noted below under 910.032 and 910.033–910.039, e.g., civilization of Jews 910.03924; then add 0 and to the result add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2, e.g., civilization of Jews in United States 910.03924073)

Class comprehensive works in 910.03; world history of specific racial, ethnic, national groups in 909.04

.032 Among North Americans, Anglo-Saxons, British, English

Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 1–2 from Table 5 to base number 910.032

.033–.039 Among other racial, ethnic, national groups

Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 3–9 from Table 5 to base number 910.03

.09 Geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general

Class here comprehensive works on geography and history of areas, regions, places in general

Add “Areas” notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 910.09

Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 910.02; civilization of areas, regions, places in general in 910.03; geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities in 913–919; history of areas, regions, places in general in 909.09

[.093–.099] Discovery, exploration, growth of geographic knowledge

Class in 910.9

.1 Topical geography

(Use of this number is optional; prefer specific subject, e.g., economic geography 330.91–330.99)

Add 001–899 to base number 910.1, e.g., economic geography 910.133; then add 0 and to the result add “Areas” notation 1–9 from Table 2, e.g., economic geography of British Isles 910.133042

**910.2–910.8 Standard subdivisions of general geography
[formerly 910.002–910.008], of travel**

Class philosophy and theory in 910.01, historical treatment in 910.9

.2 Miscellany**.202 World travel guides*****.22 Illustrations**

Class charts and plans in 912

.3 Dictionaries, encyclopedias, concordances**.4^t Accounts of travel**

Not geographically limited

Class scientific travels in 508.3

For collections of original accounts of travels, see 910.8; discovery and exploration, 910.9

.41 Trips around the world**.45 Ocean travel and seafaring life**

Class ocean trips around the world in 910.41

.453 Collected voyages of adventure

Examples: shipwrecks, mutinies, buried treasure, pirates' expeditions

.5 Serial publications**.6 Organizations****.7 Study and teaching****.8 Collections of original accounts of travel**

Class collections of geography in 910, of travel other than original accounts in 910.4

.9 Historical treatment

Class here discovery, exploration, growth of geographic knowledge [*all formerly 910.093–910.099*]

.92 Geographers, travelers, explorers regardless of country of origin

Class geographers, travelers, explorers in or of specific areas, regions, places in 913–919

.93-.99 Discovery and exploration by specific countries

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 for countries responsible to base number 910.9

Class geography of and travel in areas, regions, places in general in 910.09; geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities in 913-919; periods of discovery and exploration in history in 940-990

911 Historical geography

Growth and changes in political divisions

Class here historical atlases

Add "Areas" notation 1-9 from Table 2 to base number 911

912 Graphic representations of surface of earth and of extraterrestrial worlds

Atlases, maps, charts, plans

Class map drawing and projections in 526.8

.01 Philosophy and theory**.014 Map reading****.014 8 Map scales and symbols****.09 Historical treatment of maps and map making**

Class maps of areas, regions, places in general in 912.19; of specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds in 912.3-912.9

.1 Specific subjects, and regions in general**.100 1-.189 9 Specific subjects**

Add 001-899 to base number 912.1, e.g., maps locating art centers 912.17

Class historical atlases in 911; atlases and maps for navigation with the specific subject, e.g., aeronautical flight guides 629.13254

.19 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to 912.19 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 11-19 from Table 2, e.g., maps of Western Hemisphere 912.19812

Class specific continents, countries, localities in 912.3-912.9

.3-.9 Specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 912



913–919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds

Class here interdisciplinary works on geography and history of specific continents, countries, localities

If preferred, class in 930–990

Class comprehensive works, geography of and travel in more than one continent in 910; history of specific continents, countries, localities in 930–990; geography of and travel in areas, regions, places not limited by continent, country, locality in 910.09; historical geography in 911; graphic representations in 912

913 Geography of and travel in ancient world

Use 913.001–913.008 for standard subdivisions

.02 The earth (Physical geography)

.03 Man and his civilization

.031 Archeology

Study of man's past civilizations thru discovery, collection, interpretation of his material remains

Class here prehistoric archeology

Class archeology of modern period, ancient and prehistoric archeology of continents, countries, localities not in "Areas" notation 3 from Table 2 in subdivision 03 under 914–919

.031 02 Miscellany

.031 028 Techniques, apparatus, equipment, materials

.031 028 2 Discovery of remains

.031 028 3 Excavation of remains

.031 028 5 Interpretation of remains

Including dating techniques, use of data processing

- 913.031 1–913.031 6 Specific archeological ages
 Class comprehensive works in 913.031
- .031 1 Eolithic Age
- .031 2 Stone ages
 Including Paleolithic (Old Stone) Age
 For Mesolithic Age, see 913.0313; Neolithic Age, 913.0314
- .031 3 Mesolithic Age
- .031 4 Neolithic (New Stone) Age
- .031 5 Copper and Bronze Age
- .031 6 Iron Age
- .032–.035 Specific periods
 Add to 913.03 the numbers following 0901 in “Standard Subdivisions”
 notation 09012–09015 from Table 1, e.g., civilization of 1st century
 A.D. 913.035
 Class specific archeological ages in 913.0311–913.0316
- .04 Travel
 Add to 913.04 the numbers following 0901 in “Standard Subdivisions”
 notation 09012–09015 from Table 1, e.g., general travels in 5th
 century A.D. 913.045
- .09 Areas, regions, places in general
 Not limited by continent, country, locality
 Add “Areas” notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 913.09
 Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in general in 913.02;
 civilization in 913.03; travel in 913.04
- .3 Continents, countries, localities
 Add “Areas” notation 3 from Table 2 to base number 913, e.g., geography
 of ancient Greece 913.38; then to the result add as instructed under
 914–919, e.g., travel in Hellenistic period 913.38048

914–919 Geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities in modern world; extraterrestrial worlds

Class here area studies; comprehensive works on ancient and modern geography of and travel in specific continents, countries, localities

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 91, e.g., geography of British Isles 914.2, of Norfolk, 914.261; then add further as follows:

- 001–008 Standard subdivisions
- 02 The earth (Physical geography)
- 03 Man and his civilization
 - Class here prehistoric and ancient archeology of continents, countries, localities not in "Areas" notation 3 from Table 2
 - Add historical period numbers (without 0) that appear in subdivisions of 930–990
 - For civilization of specific ethnic, racial, national groups, see 06*
- 04 Travel
 - Class here discovery, exploration, adventure
 - Add historical period numbers (without 0) that appear in subdivisions of 930–990
- 06 Civilization of specific ethnic [*formerly* 0974], racial, national groups
 - If preferred, class in 910.032–910.039
 - Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 06
- 09 Areas, regions, places in general
 - Add to 09 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., geography of urban regions 09732
 - Class ethnic groups [*formerly* 0974] in 06
 - Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in 02; civilization in 03; travel in 04

A specific and detailed example of addition under a place appears at 914.2

Class comprehensive works in 910

For geography of and travel in ancient world, see 913

914 Europe

Add "Areas" notation 41–49 from Table 2 to base number 91; then to the result add as instructed under 914–919. An example follows:

.2 British Isles England Great Britain United Kingdom

Class here area studies; comprehensive works on ancient and modern geography and travel

Class ancient geography and travel in 913.362~

.200 1–.200 8 Standard subdivisions

[.200 9] Areas, regions, places in general

Do not use; class in 914.209

.202 The earth (Physical geography)

.203 Man and his civilization

Class here archeology

Add to 914.203 the numbers following 942.0 in 942.01–942.08, e.g., civilization of Stuart England 914.2036

For civilization of specific racial, ethnic, national groups, see 914.206

.204 Travel

Class here exploration, adventure

Add to 914.204 the numbers following 942.0 in 942.01–942.08, e.g., travel in later 20th century England 914.20485

.206 Civilization of specific racial, ethnic, national groups

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 914.206

.209 Areas, regions, places in general

Add to 914.209 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 14–17 from Table 2, e.g., geography of urban regions in British Isles 914.209732

Class physical geography of areas, regions, places in 914.202; civilization in 914.203; travel in 914.204

915 Asia Orient Far East

Add "Areas" notation 51–59 from Table 2 to base number 91, e.g., Japan 915.2; then to the result add as instructed under 914–919, e.g., physical geography of Japan 915.202

916 Africa

Add "Areas" notation 61–69 from Table 2 to base number 91, e.g., South Africa 916.8; then to the result add as instructed under 914–919, e.g., geography of mountain areas of South Africa 916.80943

917 North America

Add "Areas" notation 71–79 from Table 2 to base number 91, e.g., Pennsylvania 917.48; then to the result add as instructed under 914–919, e.g., physical geography of Pennsylvania 917.4802

Class Indians in 970.1

918 South America

Add "Areas" notation 81–89 from Table 2 to base number 91, e.g., Brazil 918.1; then to the result add as instructed under 914–919, e.g., civilization of Brazil 918.103

Class Indians in 980.1

**919 Other parts of world and extraterrestrial worlds
Pacific Ocean islands (Oceania)**

Add "Areas" notation 93–99 from Table 2 to base number 91, e.g., moon (including selenography [*formerly* 523.34]) 919.91, Australia 919.4; then to the result add as instructed under 914–919, e.g., deserts of Australia 919.40954

920 General biography, genealogy, insignia

Class here autobiographies, diaries, reminiscences

Class biography of persons associated with a specific discipline or subject with the discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 92 from Table 1, e.g., biography of chemists 540.92; or, if preferred, class individual biography in 92 or B, collected biography in 92 or 920 undivided

.001–.008 Standard subdivisions of biography

Class general collections of biography in 920.009–920.09

.009 General collections of biography by period, region, group

Not associated with a specific subject

Class collections by continent, country, locality in 920.03–920.09; by sex in 920.7

.009 01–.009 04 Historical periods

Add to 920.0090 the numbers following 090 in "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0901–0904 from Table 1, e.g., general biography of 19th century 920.009034

.009 1 Areas, regions, places in general

Add "Areas" notation 1 from Table 2 to base number 920.009, e.g., biographies of suburbanites 920.0091733

.009 2 Racial, ethnic, national groups

Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 920.0092

.02 General collections of biography

Not limited by period, place, group and not associated with a specific subject

.03-.09 General collections of biography by continent, country, locality

Not associated with a specific subject

Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 920.0, e.g., collections of biographies of persons resident in England 920.042

Class collections by sex regardless of continent, country, locality in 920.7

**920.1-928.9 Biography of specific classes of persons**

(Use of subdivisions identified by * is optional; prefer specific discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 092 from Table 1. Another option is to class individual biography in 92 or B, collected in 92 or 920 undivided)

Class comprehensive works in 920.02

.1 *Bibliographers**.2 *Librarians and book collectors****.3 *Encyclopedists****.4 *Publishers and booksellers****.5 *Journalists and news commentators****.7 Collected biography of persons by sex**

(It is optional to class here individual biography; prefer specific discipline or subject using "Standard Subdivisions" notation 0924 from Table 1)

.71 Men**.72 Women****.9 *Persons associated with other subjects**

Not provided for in 920.1-920.5, 921-928

Add 001-999 to base number 920.9, e.g., astrologers 920.91335

921 *Philosophers and psychologists**921.1-921.8 Modern Western philosophers and psychologists**

Class comprehensive works in 921

.1 *United States and Canadian**.2 *British**

English, Scottish, Irish, Welsh

.3 *German and Austrian**.4 *French****.5 *Italian**

Use is optional; prefer treatment described under 920.1-928.9

.6 *Spanish and Portuguese

.7 *Russian

.8 *Other modern Western

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 921.8

.9 *Ancient, medieval, Oriental

Add to 921.9 the numbers following 18 in 181–189, e.g., Aristotelian philosophers 921.95

922 *Religious leaders, thinkers, workers

Class here collected biographies of communicants of specific religions and sects



922.1–922.8 Christians

Class comprehensive works in 922

.1 *Apostolic and Oriental churches

Add "Aicas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.1

.2 *Roman Catholics

.21 *Popes

.22 *Saints

.24–.29 *Other

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.2

.3 *Anglicans

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.3

.4 *Lutherans, Huguenots, continental Protestants

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.4

.5 *Presbyterians, Congregationalists, American Reformed

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.5

.6 *Baptists, Disciples of Christ, Adventists

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.6

.7 *Methodists

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.7

.8 *Members of other Christian sects

.81 *Unitarians and Universalists

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.81

.83 *Latter-Day Saints (Mormons)

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 922.83

[†] Use is optional; prefer treatment described under 920.1–928.9

- .84 ***Swedenborgians**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 922.84
- .85 ***Christian Scientists**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 922.85
- .86 ***Friends (Quakers)**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 922.86
- .87 ***Mennonites**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 922.87
- .88 ***Shakers**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 922.88
- .89 ***Others**
- .9 ***Adherents of other religions**
- .91 ***Atheists, Deists, Theosophists**
- .94 ***Adherents of Brahmanism and related religions**
- .943 ***Buddhists**
- .944 ***Jains**
- .945 ***Hindus**
- .95 ***Parsees**
- .96 ***Adherents of Judaism**
- .97 ***Muslims**
- .99 ***Others**
- 923 *Persons in social sciences**
- .1 ***Heads of state**
 Kings, queens, presidents
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 923.1
- .2 ***Persons in political science**
 Legislators, governors, politicians, statesmen, diplomats, nobility
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 923.2
 For heads of state, see 923.1
- .3 ***Persons in economics**
- .31 ***Labor leaders**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 923.31
- .33-.39 ***Others**
 Add "Areas" notation 3-9 from Table 2 to base number 923.3
- * Use is optional; prefer treatment described under 920.1-928.9**

- .4 *Persons in law, and criminals**
 - .41 *Criminals**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 923.41
 - .43–.49 *Persons in law**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 923.4
 - .5 *Public administrators and military persons**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 923.5
 - For heads of state, see 923.1; governors, politicians, statesmen, 923.2*
 - .6 *Philanthropists, humanitarians, social reformers**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 923.6
 - .7 *Educators**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 923.7
 - .8 *Persons in commerce, communication, transportation**
 - Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 923.8
 - .9 *Explorers, geographers, pioneers, frontiersmen**
 - 924 *Philologists and lexicographers**
 - Add "Languages" notation 1–9 from Table 6 to base number 924
 - 925 *Scientists**
 - Add to 925 the numbers following 5 in 510–590, e.g., botanists 925.81
 - 926 *Persons in technology**
 - Add to 926 the numbers following 6 in 610–690, e.g., engineers 926.2
 - Class booksellers in 920.4
 - 927 *Persons in arts and recreation**
 - Add to 927 the numbers following 7 in 710–790, e.g., baseball players 927.96357
 - For persons in literature, see 928*
 - 928 *Persons in literature**
 - Writers and critics of belles-lettres, historians, biographers
 - .1 *Americans**
 - .2–.9 *Others**
 - Add "Languages" notation 2–9 from Table 6 for language in which person writes to base number 928
- * Use is optional; prefer treatment described under 920.1–928.9

929 Genealogy, names, insignia**.1 Genealogy**

For sources, see 929.3; family histories, 929.2

.2 Family histories

If desired, arrange alphabetically by name

For royal houses, peerage, gentry, see 929.7

.3 Genealogical sources

Examples: registers, wills, tax lists, census records, court records compiled for genealogical purposes

For epitaphs, see 929.5

.309 Historical and geographical treatment

Class treatment by continent, country, locality in 929.33–929.39

.33–.39 Treatment by continent, country, locality

Regardless of form

Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 929.3

.4 Personal names**.5 Epitaphs****.6 Heraldry**

For armorial bearings, see 929.8

.7 Royal houses, peerage, gentry, orders of knighthood

Class here rank, precedence, titles of honor

.709 Historical and geographical treatment

Class historical and geographical treatment by country in 929.72–929.79

.71 Orders of knighthood

For Christian orders of knighthood, see 255.79

929.72–929.79 Treatment of royal houses, peerage, gentry by country

Class comprehensive works in 929.709

.72 Great Britain and Ireland**.73–.79 Other countries of Europe**

Add to 929.7 the numbers following 4 in "Areas" notation 43–49 from Table 2, e.g., royal houses of France 929.74

.799 9 Countries outside Europe

Add "Areas" notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 929.7999

- .8 Armorial bearings and autographs**
 Armorial bearings: coats of arms, crests, seals

- .9 Flags**
 National, state, provincial, ship, ownership flags
 Class military use in 355.15

930–990 General history of specific continents, countries, localities; of extraterrestrial worlds

(It is optional to class here general geography of specific continents, countries, localities, extraterrestrial worlds; prefer 913–919)

Add “Areas” notation 3–9 from Table 2 to base number 9, e.g., general history of Europe 940, of British Isles 942, of Norfolk 942.61; then, unless otherwise specified, add further as follows, e.g., general history of ethnic groups in Europe 940.04, in British Isles 942.004, in Norfolk 942.61004

- | | |
|-----------|---|
| 001–003 | Standard subdivisions |
| 004 | Specific ethnic [<i>formerly</i> 00974], racial, national groups |
| | If preferred, class in 909.04 |
| | Add “Racial, Ethnic, National Groups” notation 01–99 from Table 5 to base number 004 |
| 005–008 | Other standard subdivisions |
| 009 | Areas, regions, places, persons |
| 0091–0098 | Areas, regions, places in general |
| | Add to 009 the numbers following 1 in “Areas” notation 11–18 from Table 2, e.g., urban regions 009732 |
| | Class ethnic groups [<i>formerly</i> 00974] in 004 |
| 0099 | Persons |
| | Description, critical appraisal, biography of persons associated with the history of the continent, country, locality but limited to no specific period |
| 00992 | Collected |
| 00994 | Individual |
| 01–09 | Historical periods |
| | As shown in the schedules that follow |
| | Unless others are specified, add to each geographical subdivision of a country the period notations for the country as a whole, but only for those periods during which the specific subdivision formed part of the country |

The schedules that follow enumerate only those countries and localities denoted by three-digit class numbers or for which historical periods are provided

A specific and detailed example of addition under a place appears at 938

Class comprehensive works in 909; history of areas, regions, places not limited by continent, country, locality in 909.09; history of specific racial, ethnic, national groups not limited by continent, country, locality in 909.04

930 *General history of ancient world to ca. 500 A.D.

Use 930.01–930.09 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930–990

Add to 930 the numbers following 0901 in “Standard Subdivisions” notation 09012–09015 from Table 1, e.g., world history in 1st century A.D. 930.5

931 *China to 420 A.D.**932 *Egypt**

- .01 Earliest history to 332 B.C.
- .02 Greco-Roman period, 332 B.C.–640 A.D.

933 *Palestine to 70 A.D.**934 *India**

- .01 Early civilizations to ca. 1500 B.C.
- .02 Vedic period, ca. 1500–ca. 600 B.C.
- .03 Growth of civilizations, ca. 600–ca. 322 B.C.
- .04 Mauryas, ca. 322–185 B.C.
- .05 Changing dynasties, 185 B.C.–318 A.D.
- .06 Guptas, 318–500
- .07 Invasions and reign of Harsha, 500–647

935 *Mesopotamia and Iranian Plateau

- .01 Elamite, Sumerian, Akkadian period to ca. 1900 B.C.
- .02 Babylonian Empire and Kingdom of Mitanni, ca. 1900–ca. 900 B.C.
- .03 Assyrian Empire, ca. 900–625 B.C.
- .04 Median and Neo-Babylonian (Chaldean) Empires, 625–550 B.C.
- .05 Persian Empire, 550–332 B.C.
- .06 Hellenistic, Seleucid, Parthian periods, 332 B.C.–226 A.D.
- .07 Neo-Persian (Sassanian) Empire, 226–642

936 *Europe north and west of Italian peninsula**.2 *British Isles**

- .201 Earliest period to ca. 600 B.C.
- .202 Celtic period, ca. 600–55 B.C.
- .203 Early Roman contacts, 55 B.C.–43 A.D.
- .204 Roman period, 43–410

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.3 *Germanic regions**.301** Earliest period to 113 B.C.**.302** Period of interplay with Roman Republic and Empire,
113 B.C.–486 A.D.**.4 *Celtic regions**

Including Gaul

.401 Earliest period to 125 B.C.**.402** Gallo-Roman period, 125 B.C.–486 A.D.**.6 *Iberian Peninsula****.601** Earliest period to ca. 1000 B.C.**.602** Period of Greek and early Celtic and Germanic contacts,
ca. 1000–218 B.C.**.603** Roman period, 218 B.C.–415 A.D.**937 *Italian peninsula and adjacent territories****.01** Earliest period and Roman Kingdom to ca. 500 B.C.**.02** Roman Republic, ca. 500–31 B.C.*For specific periods, see 937.03–937.05*

937.03–937.05 Specific periods under the Republic

Class comprehensive works in 937.02

.03 Unification of Italy, ca. 500–264 B.C.**.04** Punic Wars, 264–146 B.C.**.05** Civil strife, 146–31 B.C.**.06** Roman Empire, 31 B.C.–476 A.D.*For specific periods, see 937.07–937.09*

► 937.07–937.09 Specific periods under the Empire

Class comprehensive works in 937.06

.07 Early and middle periods, 31 B.C.–284 A.D.**.08** Period of absolutism, 284–395**.09** Final period, 395–476**938 Greece****.001–.003** Standard subdivisions

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .004 **Specific racial, ethnic, national groups**
 Add "Racial, Ethnic, National Groups" notation 01–99 from
 Table 5 to base number 938.004
- .005–.008 **Other standard subdivisions**
- .009 **Areas, regions, places, persons**
- .009 4–.009 7 **Areas, regions, places in general**
 Add to 938.009 the numbers following 1 in "Areas" notation 14–17
 from Table 2, e.g., history of urban regions 938.009732
- .009 9 **Persons**
 Description, critical appraisal, biography of persons associated
 with the history of ancient Greece but limited to no specific
 period

938.01–938.09 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 938

- .01 **Mythical age to 775 B.C.**
- .02 **Formation of states, 775–500 B.C.**
- .03 **Persian Wars, 500–479 B.C.**
- .04 **Athenian supremacy, 479–431 B.C.**
- .05 **Peloponnesian War, 431–404 B.C.**
- .06 **Spartan and Theban supremacy, 404–362 B.C.**
- .07 **Macedonian era, 362–323 B.C.**
- .08 **Hellenistic period, 323–146 B.C.**
- .09 **Roman era, 146 B.C.–323 A.D.**

938.1–938.9 Geographical divisions

Class comprehensive works in 938

Macedonia

Add to 938.1 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
 Hellenistic period 938.108

Thessaly, Epirus, adjacent Ionian islands

Add to 938.2 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
 Roman era 938.209

Acarnania, Actolia, Locris, Doris, Phocis, Ithaca

Add to 938.3 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
 Persian Wars period 938.303

.4 Boeotia, Magaris, Euboea

Add to 938.4 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
specific racial groups 938.4004

.5 Attica

Add to 938.5 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
under Pericles 938.504

.6 Peloponnesus and adjacent Ionian islands

Add to 938.6 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
under Spartan supremacy 938.606

For divisions of Peloponnesus, see 938.7–938.9

**938.7–938.9 Divisions of Peloponnesus**

Class comprehensive works in 938.6

.7 Corinthia and Achaea

Add to 938.7 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
Peloponnesian War period 938.705

.8 Elis, Arcadia, Argolis

Add to 938.8 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
Macedonian era 938.807

.9 Messenia, Laconia, Sparta

Add to 938.9 the numbers following 938 in 938.001–938.09, e.g.,
period of formation of states 938.902

939 Other parts of ancient world to ca. 640 A.D.

Add “Areas” notation 39 from Table 2 to base number 9, e.g.,
Phoenicia 939.44

.1 *Aegean Sea islands

Add to 939.1 the numbers following 938 in 938.01–938.09, e.g.,
Hellenistic period 939.108

* Add as instructed under 930–990



940–990 General history of modern world, of extraterrestrial worlds

Class here comprehensive works on general history of specific continents, countries, localities

Class comprehensive works on more than one continent in 909

For general history of ancient world, see 930

940 *General history of Europe

From fall of Rome, 476, to present

Use 940.01–940.09 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930–990

SUMMARY

- 940.1 Middle Ages, 476–1453
- .2 Modern period, 1453–
- .3 World War I, 1914–1918
- .4 Military history of World War I (Conduct of the war)
- .5 20th century, 1918–

.1 Middle Ages, 476–1453

.11 Invasions and rise of new nations, 476–800

.14 Age of feudalism, 800–1100

.17 Later Middle Ages, 1100–1453

For period of the Crusades, see 940.18

.18 Period of the Crusades, 1096–1270

.2 Modern period, 1453–

Class here 15th century

For World War I, see 940.3; 20th century, 1918– , 940.5

.21 Renaissance period, 1453–1517

.22 Reformation to French Revolution, 1517–1789

For Reformation period, 1517–1648, see 940.23; 1648–1789, 940.25

.23 Reformation period, 1517–1648

For Thirty Years' War, see 940.24

.232 16th century, 1517–1618

.24 Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .25 Late 17th and 18th centuries, 1648–1789
- .252 1648–1715
 - Class here 17th century
- .252 6 War of the Spanish Succession, 1701–1714
- .253 18th century, 1715–1789
- .253 2 War of the Austrian Succession, 1740–1748
- .253 4 Seven Years' War, 1756–1763
- .27 Napoleonic era and wars, 1789–1815
 - Including Napoleonic wars in specific European countries
- .28 19th century, 1815–1914
- .282 1815–1830
- .283 1830–1848
- .284 Year of revolution, 1848
- .285 1848–1860
- .286 1860–1870
- .287 1870–1900
- .288 1900–1914
- .3 **World War I, 1914–1918**
 - For military history, see 940.4*
- .31 Social, political, economic history
 - For diplomatic history, see 940.32*
- .311 Causes
 - .311 2 Political and diplomatic
 - .311 3 Economic
 - .311 4 Social and psychological
- .312 Efforts to preserve or restore peace
- .314 Political, diplomatic, economic results
 - Class results in and effects on a specific country with history of the country
- .314 1 Conferences and treaties
 - For consequences of conferences and treaties, see 940.3142*
- .314 2 Consequences of conferences and treaties
- .314 22 Reparations
- .314 24 Territorial questions
- .314 25 Establishment of new nations

- .314 26 Establishment of mandates
- .314 4 Reconstruction
- .315 Relation of specific classes of persons to the war
 Class participation of specific classes of persons in the conduct
 of the war in 940.4
- .315 03-.315 87 Classes by various nonoccupational and occupational
 characteristics
 Add "Persons" notation 03-87 from Table 7 to base number
 940.315
 *For refugees, see 940.3159; children and other noncombatants,
 pacifists, enemy sympathizers, 940.316*
- .315 9 Refugees
- .316 Children and other noncombatants, pacifists, enemy
 sympathizers
- .316 1 Children and other noncombatants
- .316 2 Pacifists
- .316 3 Enemy sympathizers
- .32 Diplomatic history
 *For diplomatic causes, see 940.3112; efforts to preserve or restore
 peace, 940.312, diplomatic results, 940.314*
- .322 Allies and associated powers
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.322
- .324 Central Powers
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.324
- .325 Neutrals
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.325
- .33 Participation of specific groups of countries
 Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., diplomatic history 940.32
 For participation of specific countries, see 940.34-940.39
- .332 Allies and associated powers
- .334 Central Powers
- .335 Neutrals
- .34-.39 Participation of specific countries
 Class here mobilization in specific countries
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.3
 Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., efforts to preserve
 or restore peace 940.312
 For military participation of specific countries, see 940.409

.4 Military history of World War I (Conduct of the war)

Use 940.4001–940.4008 for standard subdivisions

.401 Strategy**.401 2 Allies and associated powers****.401 3 Central Powers****.402 Mobilization**

For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.34–940.39

.403 Racial minorities as troops**.405 Repressive measures and atrocities**

Class internment camps in 940.472

.409 Military participation of specific countries

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.409

SUMMARY**940.41 Operations****.42 Specific land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916****.43 Specific land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918****.44 Aerial operations****.45 Naval operations****.46 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials****.47 Prisons, health, social services****.48 Other topics****.41 Operations**

Class specific land campaigns and battles in 940.42–940.43

For aerial operations, see 940.44; naval operations, 940.45

940.412–940.413 Military units

Organization, history, rosters, service records

Class comprehensive works in 940.41, units engaged in a special service with the subject, e.g., ambulance companies 940.4753; operations in specific theaters in 940.414–940.416

For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.467

.412 Military units of Allies and associated powers

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.412

.413 Military units of Central Powers

Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.413

.414 Operations in Europe**.414 3 German fronts**

-
- .414 4 French front
 - Class here western front
 - Class German western front in 940.4143
 - .414 5 Italian front
 - .414 7 Russian front
 - Class here eastern front
 - Class German eastern front in 940.4143
 - .415 Operations in Asia
 - .416 Operations in Africa
 - .42 Specific land campaigns and battles of 1914–1916
 - .421 1914, western front
 - .422 1914, eastern front
 - .423 1914, other areas
 - .424 1915, western and Austro-Italian fronts
 - .425 1915, eastern Europe
 - .426 1915, other areas
 - .427 1916, European fronts
 - .427 2 Western and Austro-Italian fronts
 - .427 5 Eastern front
 - .429 1916, other areas
 - .429 1 Asia Minor
 - .43 Specific land campaigns and battles of 1917–1918
 - .431 1917, western and Austro-Italian fronts
 - .432 1917, eastern front
 - .433 1917, other areas
 - .434 1918, western and Austro-Italian fronts
 - Including final German offensives
 - Class final allied offensives in 940.435–940.436
 - .435 Final allied offensives, July 18–September 24
 - .436 Final allied offensives, September 25–November 11
 - .437 1918, eastern front
 - .438 1918, other areas
 - .439 Armistice, November 11, 1918

-
- .44 Aerial operations
 - .441 Services
 - Observation, scouting, artillery detecting, range finding, signaling, bombing, auxiliary land and naval fighting, antisubmarine activities, coast patrol
 - Class specific events in 940.444–940.448, operations of specific countries in 940.449
 - .442 Air raids
 - Class specific events in 940.444–940.448
 - .443 Bases
 - .444 Specific events of 1914
 - .445 Specific events of 1915
 - .446 Specific events of 1916
 - .447 Specific events of 1917
 - .448 Specific events of 1918
 - .449 Operations of specific countries
 - Class here aircraft, fliers, units
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.449
 - Class specific events in 940.444–940.448
 - .45 Naval operations
 - .451 Submarine warfare
 - .451 2 German use
 - For specific events, see 940.4514*
 - .451 3 Allied use
 - Add “Areas” notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4513
 - For specific events, see 940.4514*
 - .451 4 Specific events
 - .451 6 Antisubmarine warfare
 - For specific events, see 940.4514*
 - .452 Blockades and blockade running
 - For specific events, see 940.454–940.458*
 - .453 Bases
 - 940.454–940.458 Specific events
 - Class comprehensive works in 940.45
 - For specific events in submarine warfare, see 940.4514*
 - .454 Specific events of 1914

- .455 Specific events of 1915
- .456 Specific events of 1916
- .457 Specific events of 1917
- .458 Specific events of 1918
- .459 Operations of specific countries
 Class here ships, crews, units
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.459
 For specific events, see 940.454-940.458
- .46 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 Including commemorative meetings, flag presentations, decorations and awards
 Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Jutland 940.456
- .465 Monuments and cemeteries
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.465, e.g., monuments and cemeteries in France 940.46544
- .467 Rolls of honor and lists of dead
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.467
- .47 Prisons, health, social services
- .472 Prisons and internment camps
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.472, e.g., prison and internment camps maintained by Germany 940.47243
- .473 Exchange of prisoners
- .475 Medical services
 For hospitals, see 940.476
- .475 2 Sanitary affairs
- .475 3 Ambulance companies
- .475 4-.475 9 Services of specific countries
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.475
- .476 Hospitals
- .476 3 In specific places
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4763
 Class hospitals maintained in specific places by specific countries in 940.4764-940.4769
- .476 4-.476 9 Maintained by specific countries
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.476

- .477 Relief and welfare work
- .477 1 Activities of Red Cross
- .477 8 Activities conducted by specific countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4778
 - Class Red Cross activities conducted by specific countries in 940.4771
- .477 9 Activities in specific places
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4779
 - Class activities conducted in specific places by specific countries in 940.4778, activities of Red Cross in specific places in 940.4771
- .478 Religious life and chaplain services
- .48 Other topics
 - 940.481–940.482 Personal narratives
 - Class comprehensive works in 940.48, personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisons 940.472
 - .481 Personal narratives of individuals from Allies and associated powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.481
 - .482 Personal narratives of individuals from Central Powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.482
 - .483 Military life and customs of Allies and associated powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.483, e.g., life in United States Navy 940.48373
 - .484 Military life and customs of Central Powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.484, e.g., life in Luftwaffe 940.48443
 - .485 Unconventional warfare
 - Intelligence, subversion, sabotage, infiltration
 - For unconventional warfare of Allies and associated powers, see 940.486, of Central Powers, 940.487, propaganda, 940.488*
 - .486 Unconventional warfare of Allies and associated powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.486
 - .487 Unconventional warfare of Central Powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.487
 - .488 Propaganda
 - .488 6 By Allies and associated powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4886

- .488 7 By Central Powers
Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4887
- .488 9 Propaganda in specific countries
Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.4889
Class propaganda by one side or one country in 940.4886–940.4887
- .5 20th century, 1918–
- .51 1918–1930
- .52 1930–1939
- .53 World War II, 1939–1945
For military history, see 940.54
- .531 Social, political, economic history
For diplomatic history, see 940.532
- .531 1 Causes
- .531 12 Political and diplomatic
- .531 13 Economic
- .531 14 Social and psychological
- .531 2 Efforts to preserve or restore peace
- .531 4 Political, diplomatic, economic results
Including conferences, treaties
Class results in and effects on a specific country with history of the country
- .531 44 Reconstruction
- .531 5 Relation of specific classes of persons to the war
Class participation of specific classes of persons in the conduct of the war in 940.54
- .531 503–.531 587 Classes by various nonoccupational and occupational characteristics
Add "Persons" notation 03–87 from Table 7 to base number 940.5315
For refugees, see 940.53159; children and other noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers, 940.5316
- .531 59 Refugees
- .531 6 Children and other noncombatants, pacifists, enemy sympathizers
- .531 61 Children and other noncombatants
- .531 62 Pacifists
- .531 63 Enemy sympathizers

- .532 **Diplomatic history**
 For diplomatic causes, see 940.53112; efforts to preserve or restore peace, 940.5312; diplomatic results, 940.5314
- .532 2 **United Nations**
 Class here anti-Axis national groups, governments in exile
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5322
- .532 4 **Axis Powers**
 Class here pro-Axis national groups
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5324
- .532 5 **Neutrals**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5325
- .533 **Participation of specific groups of countries**
 Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., diplomatic history 940.532
 For participation of specific countries, see 940.534-940.539
- .533 2 **United Nations**
- .533 4 **Axis Powers**
- .533 5 **Neutrals**
- .533 6 **Occupied countries**
 For countries occupied by Axis Powers, see 940.5337, by United Nations, 940.5338
- .533 7 **Countries occupied by Axis Powers**
- .533 8 **Countries occupied by United Nations**
- .534-.539 **Participation of specific countries**
 Class here governments in exile, underground movements, anti-Axis national groups, pro-Axis national groups, mobilization
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.53
 Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 940.5312
 For military participation of specific countries, see 940.5409
- .54 **Military history of World War II (Conduct of the war)**
 Use 940.54001-940.54008 for standard subdivisions
- .540 1 **Strategy**
- .540 12 **United Nations**
- .540 13 **Axis Powers**
- .540 2 **Mobilization**
 For mobilization in specific countries, see 940.534-940.539
- .540 3 **American Negroes and Indians as troops**

- .540 4 Other ethnic groups as troops
- .540 5 Repressive measures and atrocities
 - Class internment camps in 940.5472
- .540 9 Military participation of specific countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5409

SUMMARY

- 940.541 Operations
 - .542 Specific campaigns and battles
 - .544 Aerial operations
 - .545 Naval operations
 - .546 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 - .547 Prisons, health, social services
 - .548 Other topics
- .541 Operations
 - For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.542; aerial operations, 940.544, naval operations, 940.545*

940.541 2-940.541 3 Military units

- Organization, history, rosters, service records
- Class comprehensive works in 940 541, units engaged in a special service with the subject, e.g., ambulance companies 940.54753
 - For rolls of honor and lists of dead, see 940.5467*
- .541 2 Military units of United Nations
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5412
- .541 3 Military units of Axis Powers
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5413
- .542 Specific campaigns and battles
 - .542 1 In European theater
 - .542 3 In Middle East and African theaters
 - .542 5 In east and southeast Asian and East Indian theaters
 - .542 6 In Pacific Ocean theater
 - For East Indian theater, see 940.5425*
 - .542 8 In American theater
 - .542 9 In other areas
- .544 Aerial operations
 - Class here combined air and naval operations
 - Including anti-aircraft defenses
 - For naval operations, see 940.545*

- .544 1 **Services**
 Observation, scouting, artillery detecting, range finding, signaling,
 bombing, auxiliary land and naval fighting, antisubmarine
 operations, coast patrol, balloon barrage
 Class campaigns and battles in 940.5442
- .544 2 **Campaigns and battles**
 For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.542
- .544 3 **Bases**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number
 940.5443, e.g., air bases in England 940.544342
- .544 9 **Operations of specific countries**
 Class here aircraft, fliers, units
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number
 940.5449
 Class campaigns and battles of specific countries in 940.5442
- .545 **Naval operations**
 For specific campaigns and battles, see 940.542
- .545 1 **Submarine warfare**
- .545 16 **Antisubmarine warfare**
- .545 2 **Blockades and blockade running**
- .545 3 **Bases**
- .545 9 **Operations of specific countries**
 Class here ships, crews, units
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5459
 Class a specific kind of operation with the subject, e.g.,
 blockades 940.5452
- .546 **Celebrations, commemorations, memorials**
 Including commemorative meetings, flag presentations,
 decorations and awards
 Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event
 with the event, e.g., Battle of the Coral Sea 940.5426
- .546 5 **Monuments and cemeteries**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5465,
 e.g., monuments and cemeteries in France 940.546544
- .546 7 **Rolls of honor and lists of dead**
 Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5467

-
- .547 Prisons, health, social services
 - .547 2 Prisons and internment camps
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5472, e g., prison and internment camps maintained by Germany 940.547243
 - .547 3 Exchange of prisoners
 - .547 5 Medical services
 - For hospitals, see* 940.5476
 - .547 52 Sanitary affairs
 - .547 53 Ambulance companies
 - .547 54-.547 59 Services of specific countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5475
 - .547 6 Hospitals
 - .547 63 In specific places
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.54763
 - Class hospitals maintained in specific places by specific countries in 940.54764 940 54769
 - .547 64-.547 69 Maintained by specific countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5476
 - .547 7 Relief and welfare work
 - .547 71 Activities of Red Cross
 - .547 78 Activities conducted by specific countries
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.54778
 - Class Red Cross activities conducted by specific countries in 940 54771
 - .547 79 Activities in specific places
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 940.54779
 - Class activities conducted in specific places by specific countries in 940.54778, activities of Red Cross in specific places in 940.54771
 - .547 8 Religious life and chaplain services

.548

Other topics

940.548 1–940.548 2 Personal narratives

Class comprehensive works in 940.548, personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisons 940.5472

.548 1

Personal narratives of individuals from United Nations

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5481

.548 2

Personal narratives of individuals from Axis Powers

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5482

.548 3

Military life and customs of United Nations

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5483,
e.g., life in United States Navy 940.548373

.548 4

Military life and customs of Axis Powers

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5484,
e.g., life in Luftwaffe 940.548443

.548 5

Unconventional warfare

Intelligence, subversion, sabotage, infiltration

*For unconventional warfare of United Nations, see 940.5486;
of Axis Powers, 940.5487; psychological warfare, 940.5488*

.548 6

Unconventional warfare of United Nations

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5486

.548 7

Unconventional warfare of Axis Powers

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number 940.5487

.548 8

Psychological warfare (Propaganda)

.548 86

By United Nations

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number
940.54886

.548 87

By Axis Powers

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number
940.54887

.548 89

Propaganda in specific countries

Add "Areas" notation 4–9 from Table 2 to base number
940.54889

Class propaganda by one side or one country in
940.54886–940.54887

.55

Later 20th century, 1945–

941 Scotland and Ireland

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 941.0001–941.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Scotland and Ireland treated together

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Scotland
 As enumerated under 930–990

941.01–941.08 Historical periods of Scotland

Class comprehensive works in 941

.01 Early history, 410–1057
 .02 Efforts at control by England, 1057–1314
 Including Battle of Bannockburn, 1314
 .03 Early period of independence, 1314–1424
 .04 James I–James V, 1424–1542
 .05 Reformation period, 1542–1603
 .06 Personal union with England, 1603–1707
 .07 18th century, 1707–1837
 .08 19th–20th centuries, 1837–
 .081 20th century, 1901–

.5 Ireland

.501–.509 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons
 As enumerated under 930–990

941.51–941.59 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 941.5

.51 Early history, 410–1086
 Including Battle of Clontarf, 1014
 .52 Disorder and English conquest, 1086–1171
 .53 Under House of Plantagenet, 1171–1399
 .54 Under Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485
 .55 Under Tudors, 1485–1603
 .56 Under Stuarts, 1603–1691
 .57 18th century, 1691–1800
 .58 19th century, 1801–1900
 .59 20th century, 1900–
 Including Irish Free State, Eire

.6 ***Ulster Northern Ireland**

.609 Under Government of Ireland Act, 1920–

942 *British Isles England

Class here United Kingdom, Great Britain

SUMMARY

- 942.01 Early history, 410–1066
- .02 Norman period, 1066–1154
- .03 House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399
- .04 Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485
- .05 Tudor period, 1485–1603
- .06 Stuart period, 1603–1714
- .07 House of Hanover, 1714–1837
- .08 Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–

- .01 Early history, 410–1066
- .013 Pre-Anglo-Saxon period, 410–449
- .014 Period of chaos, 449–ca. 600
 - Including reign of King Arthur
- .015 Period of Heptarchy, ca. 600–829
 - Class supremacy of Wessex in 942.016
- .015 3 Supremacy of Northumberland, 603–685
- .015 7 Supremacy of Mercia, 757–796
- .016 Supremacy of Wessex, 829–924
 - .016 1 Egbert, 829–839
 - .016 2 Ethelwulf, 839–858
 - .016 3 Ethelbald, Ethelbert, Ethelred I, 858–871
 - .016 4 Alfred the Great, 871–899
 - .016 5 Edward the Elder, 899–924
- .017 Saxon kings of England, 924–1016
 - .017 1 Athelstan, 924–940
 - .017 2 Edmund I, Edred, Edwy, 940–959
 - .017 3 Edgar and Edward the Martyr, 959–978
 - .017 4 Ethelred II and Edmund II, 978–1016
- .018 Danish kings, 1016–1042
 - .018 1 Canute, 1016–1035
 - .018 2 Harold I, 1035–1040
 - .018 3 Hardecnute, 1040–1042

* Add as instructed under 930–990

-
- .019 Transition, 1042–1066
 - Reigns of Edward the Confessor, 1042–1066, and Harold II, 1066
 - .02 Norman period, 1066–1154
 - .021 William I, 1066–1087
 - Including Battle of Hastings
 - .022 William II, 1087–1100
 - .023 Henry I, 1100–1135
 - .024 Stephen, 1135–1154
 - .03 House of Plantagenet, 1154–1399
 - .031 Henry II, 1154–1189
 - .032 Richard I, 1189–1199
 - .033 John, 1199–1216
 - .034 Henry III, 1216–1272
 - .035 Edward I, 1272–1307
 - .036 Edward II, 1307–1327
 - .037 Edward III, 1327–1377
 - (It is optional to class here Hundred Years' War; prefer 944.025)
 - .038 Richard II, 1377–1399
 - .04 Houses of Lancaster and York, 1399–1485
 - Period of Wars of the Roses
 - .041 Henry IV, 1399–1413
 - .042 Henry V, 1413–1422
 - .043 Henry VI, 1422–1461
 - .044 Edward IV, 1461–1483
 - .045 Edward V, 1483
 - .046 Richard III, 1483–1485
 - .05 Tudor period, 1485–1603
 - .051 Henry VII, 1485–1509
 - .052 Henry VIII, 1509–1547
 - .053 Edward VI, 1547–1553
 - .054 Mary I, 1553–1558
 - .055 Elizabeth I, 1558–1603

-
- .06 Stuart period, 1603–1714
 - (It is optional to class here Anglo-Dutch Wars; prefer 949.204)
 - .061 James I, 1603–1625
 - .062 Charles I, 1625–1649
 - .063 Commonwealth, 1649–1660
 - For Oliver Cromwell, see 942.064; Richard Cromwell, 942.065*
 - .064 Oliver Cromwell, 1653–1658
 - .065 Richard Cromwell, 1658–1659
 - .066 Charles II, 1660–1685 (Restoration)
 - .067 James II, 1685–1688
 - .068 William III (of Orange) and Mary II, 1689–1702
 - .069 Anne, 1702–1714
 - .07 House of Hanover, 1714–1837
 - .071 George I, 1714–1727
 - .072 George II, 1727–1760
 - (It is optional to class here War of Jenkins' Ear, prefer 946.055)
 - .073 George III, 1760–1820
 - Including formation of United Kingdom
 - .074 George IV, 1820–1830
 - .075 William IV, 1830–1837
 - .08 Victoria and House of Windsor, 1837–
 - .081 Victoria, 1837–1901
 - (It is optional to class here Crimean War, Boer (South African) War; prefer 947.07 and 968.204 respectively)
 - .082 20th century, 1901–
 - Including reign of Edward VII, 1901–1910
 - For George V, see 942.083; period of World War II, 942.084; later 20th century, 942.085*
 - .083 George V, 1910–1936
 - .084 Period of World War II, 1936–1945
 - Reigns of Edward VIII, 1936, and George VI, 1936–1952
 - .085 Later 20th century, 1945–
 - Reign of Elizabeth II, 1952–

943 Central Europe Germany

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 943.0001–943.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of central Europe

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Germany

As enumerated under 930–990

943.01–943.08 Historical periods of Germany

Class comprehensive works in 943

SUMMARY

- 943.01 Early period and Empire of Charlemagne, 486–843
- .02 Early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519
- .03 Period of Reformation and Counterreformation, 1519–1618
- .04 17th century, 1618–1705
- .05 Rise of Prussia, 1705–1790
- .06 Period of Napoleonic wars, 1790–1815
- .07 Unification, 1815–1866
- .08 Empire, Third Reich, republics, 1866–

- .01 Early period and Empire of Charlemagne, 486–843
- .02 Early Holy Roman Empire, 843–1519
- .021 Carolingian emperors, 843–911
- .022 Conrad I and Saxon emperors, 911–1024
- .023 Salian (Franconian) emperors and Lothair II, 1024–1137
- .024 Early Hohenstaufen period, 1138–1197
- .025 Later Hohenstaufen period and Interregnum, 1198–1273
- .026 Early Hapsburgs and others, 1273–1378
- .027 House of Luxemburg, 1378–1438
- .028 Albert II and Frederick III, 1438–1493
- .029 Maximilian I, 1493–1519
- .03 Period of Reformation and Counterreformation, 1519–1618
- .031 Charles V, 1519–1556
 - Including wars with France and Schmalkaldic League
 - If preferred, class wars with France in 944.028
- .032 Ferdinand I, 1556–1564
- .033 Maximilian II, 1564–1576
- .034 Rudolf II, 1576–1612
- .035 Matthias, 1612–1619

- .04 17th century, 1618–1705
- .041 Period of Thirty Years' War, 1618–1648
 - For Matthias, see 943.035; Ferdinand II, 943.042;*
 - Ferdinand III, 943.043*
- .042 Ferdinand II, 1619–1637
- .043 Ferdinand III, 1637–1657
- .044 Leopold I, 1658–1705
- .05 Rise of Prussia, 1705–1790
- .051 Joseph I, Emperor, 1705–1711
- .052 Charles VI, Emperor, 1711–1740
- .053 Frederick the Great, King of Prussia, 1740–1786
 - For Emperor Charles VII, see 943.054; Francis I, 943.055;*
 - Joseph II, 943.057*
- .054 Charles VII, Emperor, 1742–1745
- .055 Francis I, Emperor, 1745–1765
 - Including period of Seven Years' War, 1756–1763
- .057 Joseph II, Emperor, 1765–1790
- .06 Period of Napoleonic wars, 1790–1815
 - Including Confederation of the Rhine
- .07 Unification, 1815–1866
 - Including Schleswig-Holstein Wars, 1864–1866
 - If preferred, class Schleswig-Holstein Wars in 948.904
- .08 Empire, Third Reich, republics, 1866–
- .081 North German Confederation, 1866–1871
 - For Franco-German War, see 943.082*
- .082 Franco-German War, 1870–1871
 - If preferred, class in 944.07
- .083 William I, 1871–1888
- .084 Frederick and William II, 1888–1918
- .085 Weimar Republic, 1918–1933
- .086 Third Reich, 1933–1945
- .087 Later 20th century, 1945–
- .1 ***Northeastern Germany**
 - Class here East Germany
- .108 7 German Democratic Republic, 1949–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.6 *Austria

- .602 Medieval period, 486–1500
- .603 16th to 18th centuries, 1500–1815
- .604 19th century, 1815–1919
- .605 20th century, 1919–

.7 *Czechoslovakia

- .702 Kingdom of Bohemia to 1918
- .703 Republic, 1918–1945
- .704 Later 20th century, 1945–

.8 *Poland

- .802 Early period to 1795
- .803 Period of foreign rule, 1795–1918
- .804 Republic, 1918–1939
- .805 Later 20th century, 1939–

.9 *Hungary

► 943.902–943.905 Historical periods [*formerly*
943.9102–943.9105]

- .902 Arpad dynasty, 894–1301
- .903 Period of elective kings, 1301–1526
- .904 Period of foreign rule, 1526–1918
- .905 20th century, 1918–

[.910 2–.910 5] Historical periods of Hungary
Class in 943.902–943.905

944 *France**SUMMARY**

- 944.01 Early history, 486–987
 - .02 Growth of royal power, 987–1589
 - .03 House of Bourbon, 1589–1789
 - .04 Revolution, 1789–1804
 - .05 First Empire, 1804–1815
 - .06 Restoration, 1815–1848
 - .07 Second Republic and Second Empire, 1848–1870
 - .08 Third, Fourth, Fifth Republics, 1870–
- .01 Early history, 486–987
 - Merovingian dynasty, 486–751; Carolingian dynasty, 751–987

' Add as instructed under 930–990

- .02 Growth of royal power, 987–1589
 - Class here wars with Italy, 1494–1559
 - If preferred, class wars with Italy in 945.06
- .021 House of Capet, 987–1328
 - Including reigns of Hugh Capet, Robert II, Henry I, 987–1060
 - Class reigns of other Capetian kings in 944.022–944.024
- .022 Philip I, Louis VI, Louis VII, 1060–1180
- .023 Philip II, Louis VIII, Louis IX, 1180–1270
- .024 Philip III, Philip IV, Louis X, John I, Philip V,
Charles IV, 1270–1328
- .025 House of Valois, 1328–1498
 - Including reigns of Philip VI, John II, Charles V, 1328–1380;
Hundred Years' War
 - If preferred, class Hundred Years' War in 942.037
 - Class reigns of other Valois kings in 944.026–944.027
- .026 Charles VI and Charles VII, 1380–1461
- .027 Louis XI, Charles VIII, Louis XII, 1461–1515
- .028 House of Angoulême, 1515–1589
 - Including reigns of Francis I and Henry II, 1515–1559
 - (It is optional to class here wars with Charles V; prefer 943.031)
 - For Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, see 944.029*
- .029 Francis II, Charles IX, Henry III, 1559–1589
- .03 House of Bourbon, 1589–1789
- .031 Henry IV, 1589–1610
- .032 Louis XIII, 1610–1643
- .033 Louis XIV, 1643–1715
- .034 Louis XV, 1715–1774
- .035 Louis XVI, 1774–1792
- .04 Revolution, 1789–1804
- .041 Period of Estates-General, National Assembly,
Legislative Assembly, 1789–1792
- .042 First Republic, 1792–1799
 - For National Convention, see 944.043; Directory, 944.045*
- .043 National Convention, 1792–1795
 - For Reign of Terror, see 944.044*
- .044 Reign of Terror, 1793–1794

- .045 Directory, 1795–1799
- .046 Consulate, 1799–1804
- .05 First Empire, 1804–1815
 - Including reign of Louis XVIII, 1814–1815; Hundred Days, 1815
 - Class Napoleonic wars in 940.27
- .06 Restoration, 1815–1848
- .061 Louis XVIII, 1815–1824
- .062 Charles X, 1824–1830
- .063 Louis Philippe, 1830–1848 (July Monarchy)
- .07 Second Republic and Second Empire, 1848–1870
 - (It is optional to class here Franco-German War; prefer 943.082)
- .08 Third, Fourth, Fifth Republics, 1870–
- .081 Third Republic, 1870–1945
 - .081 4 Period of World War I, 1914–1918
 - .081 5 Between the wars, 1918–1939
 - .081 6 Period of World War II, 1939–1945
- .082 Fourth Republic, 1945–1958
- .083 Fifth Republic, 1958–

945 *Italy

- .01 Gothic and Lombard kingdoms, 476–774
- .02 Frankish rule, 774–962
- .03 German emperors, 962–1122
- .04 12th and 13th centuries, 1122–1300
- .05 Renaissance period, 1300–1494
- .06 Period of European aggression, 1494–1796
 - (It is optional to class here French wars with Italy; prefer 944.02)
 - For Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796, see 945.07
- .07 Spanish and Austrian domination, 1527–1796
- .08 Growth of nationalism, 1796–1870

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .09 Unified kingdom, Fascist regime, Republic, 1870–
Including reigns of Victor Emmanuel II, Humbert I, Victor
Emmanuel III, 1870–1947
(It is optional to class here Ethiopian War; prefer 963.04)
- .091 Fascist regime, 1918–1946
(It is optional to class here Italo-Ethiopian War; prefer 963.056)
- .092 Republic, 1946–

946 Iberian Peninsula Spain

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 946.0001–946.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Iberian Peninsula

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Spain
As enumerated under 930–990

946.01–946.08 Historical periods of Spain

Class comprehensive works in 946

- .01 Visigothic domination, 415–711
- .02 Moorish dynasties, 711–1479
- .03 Union of Castile and Aragon. 1479–1516
Reign of Ferdinand V and Isabella I
- .04 Early Hapsburg rulers, 1516–1598
Charles I, Philip II
- .05 Later Hapsburg rulers and Bourbon rulers, 1598–1808

946.051–946.053 Hapsburgs

Class comprehensive works in 946.05

- .051 Philip III, 1598–1621
- .052 Philip IV, 1621–1665
- .053 Charles II, 1665–1700
- .054 Bourbon rulers, 1700–1808

For specific Bourbons, see 946.055–946.058

946.055–946.058 Specific Bourbons

Class comprehensive works in 946.054

- .055 Philip V, 1700–1746
Including War of Jenkins' Ear
If preferred, class War of Jenkins' Ear in 942.072
- .056 Ferdinand VI, 1746–1759

- .057 Charles III, 1759–1788
- .058 Charles IV, 1788–1808
- .06 Period of Peninsular War and rule of Joseph Bonaparte, 1808–1814
- .07 Bourbon restoration, 1814–1868
 - Reigns of Ferdinand VII and Isabella II
 - (It is optional to class here Spanish-Moroccan War; prefer 964.03)
- .08 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1868–
 - Including revolution, 1868–1871; second Bourbon restoration, 1871–1873; First Republic, 1873–1874; reigns of Alfonso XII and Alfonso XIII, 1875–1931
 - (It is optional to class here Spanish-American War; prefer 973.89)
- .081 Second Republic, 1931–1939
- .082 Regime of Francisco Franco, 1939–
- .9 ***Portugal**
 - .901 Early history, 415–1143
 - .902 Rise and fall of empire, 1143–1640
 - .903 Restoration of Portuguese monarchy, 1640–1910
 - .904 20th century, 1910–
 - .904 1 Republic, 1910–1926
 - .904 2 1926–
 - Including Novo Estado, 1933– , regime of Salazar, 1933–1968

947 **Eastern Europe Union of Soviet Socialist Republics (Soviet Union)**

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 947.0001–947.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of eastern Europe

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Russia
 - As enumerated under 930–990



947.01–947.08 Historical periods of Russia

Class comprehensive works in 947

- .01 Origins to 862
- .02 Kievan period, 862–1240
- .03 Tatar suzerainty, 1240–1480

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .04 **Growth of nationalism, 1480–1689**
 - Including Livonian War, 1557–1582
 - If preferred, class Livonian War in 948.502
- .05 **Peter I (the Great), 1689–1725**
 - Including Great Northern War, 1700–1721
 - If preferred, class Great Northern War in 948.05
- .06 **Growth of empire, 1725–1796**
- .07 **Early 19th century, 1796–1855**
 - Including period of invasion by Napoleon, 1812; Crimean War, 1853–1856
 - If preferred, class Crimean War in 942.081
- .08 **Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1855–**
 - Including reigns of Alexander II, Alexander III, Nicholas II; Russo-Turkish War, 1877–1878
 - If preferred, class Russo-Turkish War in 956.101
 - (It is optional to class here Russo-Japanese War; prefer 952.031)
- .084 **Communist regime, 1917–** (Union of Soviet Socialist Republics, 1923–)
 - For later 20th century, see 947.085*
- .084 1 **Revolutions, Kerensky, Lenin, 1917–1924**
- .084 2 **Period of Stalin, 1924–1953**
 - (It is optional to class here Russo-Finnish War; prefer 947.103)
- .085 **Later 20th century, 1953–**
- .1 ***Finland**
- .101 **Early history to end of Swedish rule, 1809**
- .102 **19th century, 1809–1917**
- .103 **Independence, 1917–**
 - Including Russo-Finnish War, 1939–1940
 - If preferred, class Russo-Finnish War in 947.0842

948 ***Northern Europe Scandinavia**

- **948.01–948.08 Historical periods of Scandinavia**
 - Class comprehensive works in 948
- .01 **Early history, 486–800**
- .02 **Period of migration and conquest, 800–1387**
- .03 **Period of union, 1387–1523**

¹ Add as instructed under 930–990

-
- .04 Reformation and rise of Sweden, 1523–1648
 - .05 Period of conflict, 1648–1792
 - (It is optional to class here Great Northern War; prefer 947.05)
 - .06 Napoleonic era, 1792–1814
 - .07 19th century, 1814–1905
 - .08 20th century, 1905–
 - .1 *Norway
 - .101 Early history, 486–1387
 - .102 Union with Denmark, 1387–1814
 - .103 Union with Sweden, 1814–1905
 - .104 20th century, 1905–
 - .5 *Sweden
 - .501 Early history, 486–1523
 - .502 Vasa dynasty, 1523–1654
 - (It is optional to class here Livonian War; prefer 947.04)
 - .503 Decline of power, 1654–1818
 - For Great Northern War, see 947.05*
 - .504 19th century, 1818–1905
 - .505 20th century, 1905–
 - .9 *Denmark
 - .901 Early history, 486–1387
 - .902 Union with Norway and Sweden, 1387–1523 -
 - .903 Union with Norway, 1523–1814
 - For Great Northern War, see 947.05*
 - .904 19th century, 1814–1906
 - (It is optional to class here Schleswig-Holstein Wars, prefer 943.07)
 - .905 20th century, 1906–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

949 Other parts of Europe

SUMMARY

- 949.1 Northwestern islands
- .2 Netherlands (Holland)
- .3 Southern Low Countries **Belgium**
- .4 Switzerland
- .5 Greece
- .6 Balkan Peninsula
- .7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria
- .8 Romania
- .9 Aegean Sea islands

.1 *Northwestern islands

.12 *Iceland

- .120 1 Early history to 1262
- .120 2 Medieval period, 1262–1550
- .120 3 Early modern period, 1550–1848
- .120 4 Modern period, 1848–

.2 *Netherlands (Holland)

- .201 Early history to 1477
- .202 Hapsburg rule, 1477–1568
- .203 Struggle for independence, 1568–1648
- .204 Dutch Republic, 1648–1795

Including Anglo-Dutch Wars, 1652–1653, 1665–1667; Great Wars against England, France, and allies, 1672–1678; Coalition War, 1690–1697

If preferred, class Anglo-Dutch Wars in 942.06

- .205 Napoleonic era, 1795–1830
- .206 19th century, 1830–1901
- .207 20th century, 1901–

.3 Southern Low Countries **Belgium**

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 949.30001–949.30009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of southern Low Countries

- .300 1–.300 9 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Belgium

As enumerated under 930–990

¹ Add as instructed under 930–990

- 949.301–949.304 Historical periods of Belgium
Class comprehensive works in 949.3
- .301 Early history to 1477
 - .302 Foreign rule, 1477–1830
 - .303 19th century, 1830–1909
 - .304 20th century, 1909–
 - .35 *Luxembourg
 - .350 1 Early history to 1482
 - .350 2 Foreign rule, 1482–1830
 - .350 3 19th century, 1830–1890
 - .350 4 20th century, 1890–
 - .4 *Switzerland
 - .401 Early history to 1291
 - .402 Struggle for independence, 1291–1499
 - .403 Period of the Reformation, 1499–1648
 - .404 Period of internal strife, 1648–1789
 - .405 Napoleonic period, 1789–1815
 - .406 19th century, 1815–1900
 - .407 20th century, 1900–
 - .5 *Greece
 - .501 Eastern Roman (Byzantine) Empire in 323–717
 - Including wars against Avars and Persians
 - .502 Period of Byzantine prosperity, 717–1057
 - .503 Dissolution of Byzantine Empire, 1057–1204
 - .504 Latin and Greek states, 1204–1453
 - .505 Turkish domination, 1453–1821
 - .506 Monarchy, 1821–1924
 - Including Greco-Turkish War, 1896–1897
 - If preferred, class Greco-Turkish War in 956.101
 - For Balkan Wars, see 949.6
 - .507 20th century, 1924–

Add as instructed under 930–990

.6 *Balkan Peninsula

Including Balkan Wars, 1912–1913

.61 *Turkey in Europe (Turkish Thrace)Add to 949.61 the numbers following 956.1 in 956.101–956.103, e.g.,
later 20th century 949.6103**.65 *Albania****.650 1** Early history to 1912**.650 2** Early 20th century, 1912–1946**.650 3** Later 20th century, 1946–**.7 Yugoslavia and Bulgaria**Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 949.70001–949.70009 for standard
subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Yugoslavia and Bulgaria
treated together**.700 1–.700 9** Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Yugoslavia
As enumerated under 930–990

949.701–949.702 IIistorical periods of Yugoslavia

Class comprehensive works in 949.7

.701 Early history to 1918*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6***.702** 20th century, 1918–**.77 *Bulgaria****.770 1** Early history to 1878**.770 2** Autonomy and independence, 1878–1946*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6***.770 3** Later 20th century, 1946–**.8 *Romania****.801** Foreign domination to 1861**.802** Monarchy, 1861–1947*For Balkan Wars, see 949.6***.803** Later 20th century, 1947–**.9 *Aegean Sea islands**Add to 949.9 the numbers following 949.5 in 949.501–949.507, e.g.,
early Byzantine period 949.901**.98 *Crete****.980 1** Early history, 323–961

Add as instructed under 930–990

- .980 2 Greek and Venetian periods, 961–1664
- .980 3 Turkish domination, 1664–1898
- .980 4 20th century, 1898–

950 *General history of Asia Orient Far East

Use 950.01–950.09 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930–990

- .1 Early history to 1162
- .2 Mongol and Tatar Empires, 1162–1480
 - Including reigns of Genghis Khan, ca. 1200–1227; Kublai Khan, ca. 1259–1294; Timur (Tamerlane), ca. 1336–1405
- .3 European exploration and penetration, 1480–1905
- .4 20th century, 1905–
- .41 Early 20th century, 1905–1945
- .42 Later 20th century, 1945–

951 China and adjacent areas

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 951.0001–951.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of China and adjacent areas treated together

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of China
 - As enumerated under 930–990



951.01–951.05 Historical periods of China

Class comprehensive works in 951

- .01 Early history, 420–960
- .02 Sung to Ming dynasties, 960–1644
- .025 Yüan (Mongol) dynasty, 1260–1368
- .026 Ming dynasty, 1368–1644
- .03 Ch'ing (Manchu) dynasty, 1644–1912
 - (It is optional to class here Sino-Japanese War; prefer 952.031)
- .04 Early 20th century, 1912–1949
- .041 Early Republic, 1912–1927
- .042 Nationalist government, 1927–1949
- .05 Period of People's Republic, 1949–
- .9 *Korea
- .901 Early history to 1392

¹ Add as instructed under 930–990

- .902 Yi dynasty, 1392–1910
- .903 Japanese period, 1910–1945
- .904 Later 20th century, 1945–
- .904 2 Korean War, 1950–1953
- .904 3 Postwar period, 1953–

952 *Japan and adjacent islands

- .01 Early history to 1185
- .02 Feudal period, 1185–1868
- .025 Tokugawa (Edo) period, 1603–1868
- .03 Re-establishment of imperial power, 1868–1945
- .031 Meiji period, 1868–1912
 - Including Sino-Japanese War, 1894–1895; Russo-Japanese War, 1904–1905
 - If preferred, class Sino-Japanese War in 951.03, Russo-Japanese War in 947.08
- .032 Taishō period, 1912–1926
- .033 Early Shōwa period, 1926–1945
- .04 Later Shōwa period (Postwar period), 1945–

953 *Arabian Peninsula and adjacent areas

- .02 Medieval history, 622–1517
- .03 Period of Ottoman rule, 1517–1740
- .04 Struggles to overthrow Turks, 1740–1926
- .05 20th century, 1926–
- .8 *Saudi Arabia

Add to 953.8 the numbers following 953 in 953.02–953.05, e.g., 20th century 953.805

954 *South Asia India

- .02 Asian dynasties and European penetration, 647–1774
- .021 Early period, 647–997
- .022 Moslem conquests, 997–1206
- .023 Slave kings, Khalji and Tughluk dynasties, 1206–1413
- .024 Sayyid and Lodi dynasties, 1413–1526
- .025 Mogul Empire, 1526–1707
- .029 European penetration, 1707–1774

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .03 British rule, 1774–1947
 - .031 East India Company, 1774–1858
 - .031 7 Sepoy Mutiny, 1857
 - .035 Control by crown, 1858–1947
 - .04 Independence and partition, 1947–
 - .9 *Pakistan
 - .904 Independence and partition, 1947–
 - .93 *Ceylon
 - .930 1 Early history, 647–1795
 - .930 2 British period, 1795–1948
 - .930 3 Independence, 1948–
 - 955 *Iran (Persia)
 - .02 Medieval history, 642–1499
 - .03 Rise and fall of Persian dynasties, 1499–1794
 - .04 19th century, 1794–1906
 - .05 20th century, 1906–
 - 956 *Middle East (Near East)
 - .01 To 1900
 - .02 1900–1918
 - .03 1918–1945
 - .04 1945–
 - .042 Israel-Arab War, 1948–1949
 - .044 Sinai Campaign, 1956
 - .046 Israel-Arab War, 1967
 - .1 Turkey and Cyprus
-
- 956.101–956.103 Historical periods of Turkey
- Class comprehensive works in 956.1
- .101 Medieval and modern history, ca. 640–1918
(It is optional to class here Russo-Turkish War, Greco-Turkish War;
prefer 947.08 and 949.506 respectively)
 - .102 Early 20th century, 1918–1945
 - .103 Later 20th century, 1945–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .4 *South central Turkey and Cyprus**
- .45 *Cyprus**
- .450 1 Early history to 1571
- .450 2 Turkish domination, 1571–1878
- .450 3 British period, 1878–1960
- .450 4 Independence, 1960–
- .7 *Iraq**
- .702 Medieval history, 642–1553
- .703 Period of Ottoman rule, 1553–1920
- .704 Mandate and independence, 1920–
- .9 *Eastern Mediterranean**
- .91 *Syria**
- .910 2 Medieval history, 640–1516
- .910 3 Period of Ottoman rule, 1516–1920
- .910 4 Mandate and independence, 1920–
Including period of United Arab Republic
- .92 *Lebanon**
- .920 3 Medieval and modern history, 640–1926
- .920 4 Separation from Syria, 1926–
- .94 *Palestine Israel**
- .940 01 Zionism
- .940 2 Pre-Islamic period, 70–640
- .940 3 Medieval and modern history, 640–1917
- .940 4 British control, 1917–1948
- .940 5 Independence, 1948–
- .95 *Jordan**
- .950 3 Medieval and modern history, 640–1923
- .950 4 Mandate and independence, 1923–

957 *Siberia (Asiatic Russia)

- .03 Pre-Russian period to 1581
- .07 Scattered settlement, 1581–1855
- .08 Expanded settlement and exploitation, 1855–
Add to 957.08 the numbers following 947.08 in 947.084–947.085, e.g.,
Siberia under Stalin 957.0842

* Add as instructed under 930–990

958 *Central Asia**.1 *Afghanistan****.101 Early history to 1221****.102 Foreign rulers, 1221–1709****.103 Afghan rulers, 1709–1919****.104 20th century, 1919–****.4 *Turkestan Soviet Republics of central Asia****Class Turkmen, Tadjhik, Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republics in 958.5–958.7****.407 Pre-Russian period to 1855****.408 Russian period, 1855–**Add to 958.408 the numbers following 947.08 in 947.084–947.085,
e.g., later 20th century 958.4085**.5 *Turkmenistan (Turkmen Soviet Socialist Republic)**Add to 958.5 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408, e.g.,
pre-Russian period 958.507**.6 *Tadjhikistan (Tadjhik Soviet Socialist Republic)**Add to 958.6 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408, e.g.,
Russian period 958.608**.7 *Uzbekistan (Uzbek Soviet Socialist Republic)**Add to 958.7 the numbers following 958.4 in 958.407–958.408, e.g.,
later 20th century 958.7085**959 *Southeast Asia****SUMMARY****959.1 Burma****.3 Thailand (Siam)****.4 Laos****.5 Commonwealth of Nations territories Malaysia****.6 Cambodia****.7 Vietnam****.8 Indonesia****.9 Philippine Islands****.1 *Burma****.102 Early history to 1826****.103 Period of British conquest, 1826–1885****.104 British rule, 1885–1948****.105 Independence, 1948–**

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .3 *Thailand (Siam)**
 - .302 Early history to 1782
 - .303 19th century, 1782–1910
 - .304 20th century, 1910–
- .4 *Laos**
 - .403 Medieval and modern history to 1949
 - .404 Late 20th century, 1949–
- .5 *Commonwealth of Nations territories Malaysia**
 - .503 Medieval and modern history to 1946
 - .504 Middle 20th century, 1946–1963
 - .505 Federation, 1963–
 - Including separation of Singapore, 1965
- .6 *Cambodia**
 - .603 Medieval and modern history to 1949
 - .604 Late 20th century, 1949–
- .7 *Vietnam**
 - .703 Medieval and modern history to 1949
 - Including French Indochina
 - For Indochinese War, see 959.7041*
 - .704 Independence, 1949–
 - .704 1 Indochinese War, 1946–1954
 - .704 2 1954–1961
 - .704 3 Vietnamese War, 1961–
 - .704 31 Social, political, economic history
 - Causes, results, efforts to preserve or restore peace, relation of specific classes of persons to the war
 - Class general diplomatic history in 959.70432
 - .704 32 Diplomatic history
 - Class diplomatic causes, efforts to preserve or restore peace, diplomatic results in 959.70431
 - .704 33 Participation of specific countries and groups
 - Class military participation of specific countries and groups in 959.70434
 - .704 331 North Vietnam

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .704 332 South Vietnam
- .704 332 2 National Liberation Front
 - Including Vietcong
- .704 332 5 Government forces
- .704 334-.704 339 Foreign participation
 - Add "Areas" notation 4-9 from Table 2 to base number 959.70433
 - Class a specific activity with the subject, e.g., efforts to preserve or restore peace 959 70431
- .704 34 Military operations
 - Including military units
 - Class units engaged in a specific type of operation or service with the subject, e.g., medical units 959.70437
- .704 342 Land operations
- .704 345 Naval operations
- .704 348 Aerial operations
- .704 37 Prisons, health, social services
- .704 38 Other topics
 - Personal narratives, military life and customs, unconventional warfare, propaganda

.8 *Indonesia

- .801 Early history to 1602
- .801 2 Hindu-Buddhist era to 1478
- .801 5 Muslim rule, 1478-1602
- .802 Dutch period, 1602-1945
 - .802 1 East India Company, 1602-1798
 - .802 2 Netherlands East Indies, 1798-1945
 - Including Java War, 1825-1830
- .803 Republic, 1945-

.9 *Philippine Islands

- .901 Discovery and early history to 1564
- .902 Spanish period, 1564-1898
 - .902 7 Insurrection, 1896-1898
- .903 United States period, 1898-1946
 - .903 1 Insurrection, 1898-1901
 - .903 2 United States rule, 1901-1935

• Add as instructed under 930-990

.903 5 Commonwealth, 1935–1946

.904 Republic, 1946–

960 *General history of Africa

Use 960.01–960.09 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930–990

.2 Early history, 640–1900

.3 20th century

961 *North Africa

.02 Early history, 640–1830

(It is optional to class here Tripolitan War with the United States, United States war with Algiers; prefer 973.47 and 973.53 respectively)

.03 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.1 *Tunisia

.102 Period of Arab rule, 647–1516

.103 Period of Ottoman rule, 1516–1881

.104 Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1881–1956

.105 Independence, 1956–

.2 *Libya

.202 Periods of Arab and Ottoman rule, 644–1911

.203 Period of Italian rule, 1911–1952

.204 Independence, 1952–

962 Countries of the Nile Egypt

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 962.0001–962.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of countries of the Nile

.001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Egypt

As enumerated under 930–990

► 962.02–962.05 Historical periods of Egypt

Class comprehensive works in 962

.02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1517

.03 Period of Ottoman rule, 1517–1882

.04 British occupation and protectorate, 1882–1922

Add as instructed under 930–990

- .05 Independence, 1922–
Including United Arab Republic
Class period of United Arab Republic in Syria in 956.9104

.4 *Sudan

- .402 From Arab invasion, 7th century, to 1820
- .403 Period of Egyptian and British rule, 1820–1956
(Anglo-Egyptian Sudan)
- .404 Independence, 1956–

963 *Ethiopia (Abyssinia)

- .02 Period of Arab rule, 640–1543
- .03 Period of conquest, 1543–1855
- .04 Later 19th century, 1855–1896
Including Ethiopian War, 1895–1896
If preferred, class Ethiopian War in 945.09
- .05 Early 20th century, 1896–1941
- .056 Italo-Ethiopian War, 1935–1936
If preferred, class in 945.091
- .057 Italian rule, 1936–1941
- .06 Independence restored, 1941–

964 Northwest African coast and offshore islands Morocco

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 964.0001–964.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Northwest African coast

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Morocco
As enumerated under 930–990

► **964.02–964.05 Historical periods of Morocco**

Class comprehensive works in 964

- .02 Periods of Arab and Berber rule, 647–1830
- .03 19th century, 1830–1900
Including Spanish-Moroccan War, 1859–1860
If preferred, class Spanish-Moroccan War in 946.07
- .04 Early 20th century, 1900–1956
- .05 Independence, 1956–

965 *Algeria

- .02 Periods of Arab, Berber, Ottoman rule, 647–1830

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.03 Later 19th century, 1830–1900

.04 20th century, 1900–1962

.05 Independence, 1962–

966 *West Africa and offshore islands

SUMMARY

- 966.1 Mauritania
- .2 Mali, Upper Volta, Niger
- .3 Senegal
- .4 Sierra Leone
- .5 Upper Guinea area
- .6 Liberia and Ivory Coast
- .7 Ghana
- .8 Togo and Dahomey
- .9 Nigeria

.1 *Mauritania

.101 Early history to 1903

.103 French period, 1903–1960

.105 Independence, 1960–

.2 Mali, Upper Volta, Niger

[.201–.205] Historical periods of Mali

Class in 966.2301–966.2305

.23 *Mali

► 966.230 1–966.230 5 Historical periods [*formerly* 966.201–966.205]

Class comprehensive works in 966.23

.230 1 Early history to 1902

.230 3 French period, 1902–1960 (French Sudan)

.230 5 Independence, 1960–

.25 *Upper Volta

.250 1 Early history to 1904

.250 3 French period, 1904–1960

.250 5 Independence, 1960–

.26 *Niger

.260 1 Early history to 1904

.260 3 French period, 1904–1960

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.260 5 Independence, 1960–

.3 *Senegal

.301 Early history to 1895

.303 French period, 1895–1960

.305 Independence, 1960–

.4 *Sierra Leone

.401 Early history to 1787

.402 British colony, 1787–1896

.403 Colony and protectorate, 1896–1961

.404 Independence, 1961–

.5 *Upper Guinea area

.51 *The Gambia

.510 1 Early history to 1807

.510 2 British colony, 1807–1965

.510 3 Independence, 1965–

.52 *Guinea republic

.520 1 Early history to 1882

.520 3 French period, 1882–1958 (French Guinea)

.520 5 Independence, 1958–

.57 *Portuguese Guinea

.570 1 Early history to 1879

.570 2 Colony, 1879–

.58 *Cape Verde Islands

.580 1 Early history to 1900

.580 2 20th century, 1900–

.6 Liberia and Ivory Coast

[.601–.603] Historical periods of Liberia

Class in 966.6201–966.6203

.62 *Liberia

► 966.620 1–966.620 3 Historical periods [*formerly* 966.601–966.603]
Class comprehensive works in 966.62

.620 1 Early history to 1847

.620 2 Late 19th and early 20th centuries, 1847–1945

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.620 3 Later 20th century, 1945–

.68 *Ivory Coast

.680 1 Early history to 1904

.680 3 French period, 1904–1960

.680 5 Independence, 1960–

.7 *Ghana

.701 Early history to 1874

.703 British colony, 1874–1957 (Gold Coast)

.705 Independence, 1957–

.8 Togo and Dahomey

[.801–.805] Historical periods of Dahomey

Class in 966.8301–966.8305

.81 *Togo

.810 1 Early history to 1894

.810 2 German period, 1894–1914

.810 3 Anglo-French period, 1914–1960

.810 4 Independence, 1960–

.83 *Dahomey

► 966.830 1–966.830 5 Historical periods [*formerly* 966.801–966.805]

Class comprehensive works in 966.83

.830 1 Early history to 1904

.830 3 French period, 1904–1960

.830 5 Independence, 1960–

.9 *Nigeria

.901 Early history to 1886

.903 British colony, 1886–1960

.905 Independence, 1960–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

967 *Central Africa and offshore islands

SUMMARY

- 967.1 Lower Guinea area
 - .2 Gabon and Congo
 - .3 Angola
 - .4 Central African Republic and Chad
 - .5 Former Belgian territories
 - .6 Uganda and Kenya
 - .7 Somaliland
 - .8 Tanzania
 - .9 Mozambique

.1 *Lower Guinea area

.11 *Cameroons

- .110 1 Early history to 1884
- .110 2 German period, 1884–1916
- .110 3 Anglo-French period, 1916–1959
- .110 4 Independence, 1960–

.2 *Gabon and Congo

.21 *Gabon

- .210 1 Early history to 1839
- .210 2 French period, 1839–1960
- .210 4 Independence, 1960–

.24 *Republic of the Congo

Former French Congo

- .240 1 Early history to 1885
- .240 3 French period, 1885–1960 (Middle Congo)
- .240 5 Independence, 1960–

.3 *Angola

- .301 Early history to 1648
- .302 17th–19th centuries, 1648–1900
- .303 20th century, 1900–

.4 *Central African Republic and Chad

.41 *Central African Republic

- .410 1 Early history to 1890
- .410 3 French period, 1890–1960 (Ubangi-Shari)
- .410 5 Independence, 1960–

· Add as instructed under 930–990

- .43 ***Chad**
- .430 1 Early history to 1850
- .430 2 Colonial period, 1850–1960
- .430 4 Independence, 1960–
- .5 **Former Belgian territories**
- [.501–.503] Historical periods of Congo
 - Class in 967.5101–967.5103
- .51 ***Congo Republic**
- 967.510 1–967.510 3 Historical periods [*formerly* 967.501–967.503]
 - Class comprehensive works in 967.51
- .510 1 Early history to 1885
- .510 2 Belgian period, 1885–1960
- .510 3 Independence, 1960–
- .57 ***Rwanda and Burundi (Ruanda-Urundi)**
- .570 1 Early history to 1899
- .570 2 German period, 1899–1917
- .570 3 Belgian period, 1917–1962
- .571 ***Rwanda**
- .571 04 Independence, 1962–
- .572 ***Burundi**
- .572 04 Independence, 1962–
- .6 ***Uganda and Kenya**
- .61 ***Uganda**
- .610 1 Early history to 1894
- .610 3 British period, 1894–1962
- .610 4 Independence, 1962–
- .62 ***Kenya**
- .620 1 Early history to 1895
- .620 3 British period, 1895–1963
- .620 4 Independence, 1963–
- .7 ***Somaliland**
- .71 ***French Somaliland**
- .710 1 Early history to 1881

† Add as instructed under 930–990

- .710 3 French period, 1881–
- .73 ***Somalia**
- .730 1 Early history to 1884
- .730 3 British and Italian control, 1884–1960
- .730 5 Independence, 1960–
- .8 ***Tanzania**
- .804 United Republic, 1964–
- .81 ***Zanzibar and adjacent islands**
- .810 1 Early history to 1700
- .810 2 Arab rule, 1700–1890
- .810 3 British protectorate, 1890–1963
- .810 4 Independence, 1963–
- .82 ***Tanganyika**
- .820 1 Early history to 1884
- .820 2 German period, 1884–1916
- .820 3 British period, 1916–1961
- .820 4 Independence, 1961–
- .9 ***Mozambique**
- .901 Early history to 1648
- .902 17th–19th centuries, 1648–1900
- .903 20th century, 1900–
- 968 ***South Africa Republic of South Africa**
- .02 Early history to 1488
- .03 Period of exploration and settlement, 1488–1814
- .04 19th century, 1814–1909
- .05 Union, 1909–1961
- .06 Republic, 1961–
- .1 ***Botswana**
- .101 Early history to 1885
- .102 British period, 1885–1966 (Bechuanaland)
- .103 Independence, 1966–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.2 *Transvaal**.204 19th century, 1814–1909**

Including Boer (South African) War

If preferred, class Boer (South African) War in 942.081

.6 *Lesotho**.601 Early history to 1868****.602 British period, 1868–1966 (Basutoland)****.603 Independence, 1966–****.9 *Rhodesia, Zambia, Malawi**

Formerly Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland, Central African Federation

.901 Early history to 1888**.902 British control, 1888–1953****.903 Federation of Rhodesia and Nyasaland (Central African Federation), 1953–1963****.904 Post-Federation, 1964–****.91 *Rhodesia (Southern Rhodesia)** Add to 968.91 the numbers following 968.9 in 968.901–968.904, e.g.,
 period of Federation 968.9103**.94 *Zambia (Northern Rhodesia)** Add to 968.94 the numbers following 968.9 in 968.901–968.904, e.g.,
 independent republic, 1964– 968.9404**.97 *Malawi (Nyasaland)** Add to 968.97 the numbers following 968.9 in 968.901–968.904, e.g.,
 early history 968.9701**969 *South Indian Ocean islands****.1 *Madagascar (Malagasy Republic)****.101 Early history to 1895****.103 French period, 1895–1960****.105 Independence, 1960–**

* Add as instructed under 930–990

970 General history of North America

Use 970.001–970.009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930–990

Class Indians in 970.1

970.01–970.05 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 970

- .01 Period of discovery and exploration to ca. 1600
(Use of this number is optional, prefer 973.1)
- .02 1600–1700
- .03 1700–1800
- .04 1800–1900
- .05 1900–
- .051 To end of World War I, 1900–1918
- .052 From end of World War I to end of World War II, 1918–1945
- .053 Since World War II, 1945–

.1 Indians of North America

History and civilization in North America

Class world history of North American Indians in 909.0497, history in a specific place outside North America with history of the place using subdivision 00497 from table under 930–990, civilization outside North America in 910.0397

For specific tribes, see 970.3, Indians in specific places, 970.4, government relations, 970.5

.3 Specific Indian tribes

Arrange alphabetically by name of tribe

Class government relations of specific Indian tribes in 970.5

.4 Indians in specific places in North America

Add to 970.4 the numbers following 7 in “Areas” notation 71–79 from Table 2, e.g., Indians in Arizona 970.491

Class specific tribes in North America regardless of place in 970.3, government relations of Indians in North America regardless of place in 970.5

.5 Government relations with Indians

History and policy

Class Indian wars of a specific place and period with history of that place and period, e.g., Black Hawk War 973.56, a specific aspect of government relations with the subject, e.g., social welfare services 362.84

971 *Canada



971.01–971.06 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 971

SUMMARY

- 971.01 Early history to 1763
- .02 Early British rule, 1763–1791
- .03 Period of separate colonies, 1791–1841
- .04 Growth of responsible government, 1841–1867
- .05 Dominion of Canada, 1867–1911
- .06 20th century, 1911–

.01 Early history to 1763

.011 Exploration and early settlement to 1632

.011 2 Norse explorations

.011 3 French explorations

.011 4 English explorations

.016 French and English expansion, 1632–1689

.016 2 Company of New France, 1632–1663

Including Jesuit missions

.016 3 French royal province, 1663–1689

.018 Struggle of France and England for supremacy, 1689–1763

Class here comprehensive works on French royal province, 1663–1763

(It is optional to class here War of the League of Augsburg (King William's War), War of the Spanish Succession (Queen Anne's War), War of the Austrian Succession (King George's War); prefer 973.25 and 973.26)

For French royal province, 1633–1689, see 971.0163

.018 7 Expulsion of Acadians, 1755

.018 8 Seven Years' War (French and Indian War), 1756–1763

(Use of this number is optional; prefer 973.26)

.02 Early British rule, 1763–1791

Including Quebec Act, 1774

(It is optional to class here Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764; prefer 973.27)

.024 Canada and American Revolution, 1774–1783

Including settlement of Loyalists from United States, 1774–1789

.028 Constitutional Act, 1791, and events leading to it

' Add as instructed under 930–990

-
- .03 Period of separate colonies, 1791–1841
 - .034 Period of War of 1812, 1812–1814
 - (It is optional to class here War of 1812; prefer 973.52)
 - .038 Rebellions of 1837–1838
 - Including Family Compact, Upper Canada; Chateau Clique, Lower Canada
 - .039 Durham mission and report, 1838–1839; and Act of Union, 1840
 - Union of Upper and Lower Canada
 - .04 Growth of responsible government, 1841–1867
 - .048 Fenian activities, 1866–1871
 - .049 Confederation, 1864–1867
 - Movement toward confederation, British North America Act, 1867
 - Including Charlottetown and Quebec Conferences, 1864
 - .05 Dominion of Canada, 1867–1911
 - .051 Prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1867–1873
 - Including Riel's first (Red River) rebellion, 1869–1870
 - .052 Prime ministership of Alexander Mackenzie, 1873–1878
 - .054 Second prime ministership of Sir John A. Macdonald, 1878–1891
 - Including Riel's second (Northwest) rebellion, 1885
 - .055 1891–1896
 - Including prime ministerships of Sir John J. C. Abbott, 1891–1892; of Sir John Sparrow Thompson, 1892–1894; of Sir Mackenzie Bowell, 1894–1896; of Sir Charles Tupper, 1896
 - .056 Prime ministership of Sir Wilfrid Laurier, 1896–1911
 - .06 20th century, 1911–
 - .061 1911–1921
 - Prime ministership of Sir Robert Laird Borden, 1911–1920
 - Including period of World War I
 - .061 3 Prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1920–1921
 - .062 1921–1935
 - Prime ministerships of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1921–1930
 - Including second prime ministership of Arthur Meighen, 1926
 - Class third prime ministership of William Lyon Mackenzie King in 971.0632
 - .062 3 Prime ministership of Richard Bedford Bennett, 1930–1935

- .063 1935–1957
- .063 2 Third prime ministership of William Lyon Mackenzie King, 1935–1948
 - Including period of World War II
- .063 3 Prime ministership of Louis Stephen St. Laurent, 1948–1957
- .064 1957–
- .064 2 Prime ministership of John George Diefenbaker, 1957–1963
- .064 3 Prime ministership of Lester Bowles Pearson, 1963–1968
- .064 4 Prime ministership of Pierre Elliott Trudeau, 1968–

971.1–971.9 Specific provinces and territories

Class comprehensive works in 971

SUMMARY

- 971.1 **British Columbia**
 - .2 Northern territories and prairie provinces
 - .3 Ontario
 - .4 Quebec
 - .5 New Brunswick
 - .6 Nova Scotia
 - .7 Prince Edward Island
 - .8 Newfoundland and adjacent islands
 - .9 Labrador
- .1 ***British Columbia**
 - .101 Discovery and early exploration, 1774–1790
 - .102 Settlement and colony, 1790–1871
 - .103 Province of Canada, 1871–1945
 - Class postwar period in 971.104
 - .104 Postwar period, 1945–
- .2 ***Northern territories and prairie provinces**
 - .201 Early history to 1869
 - .202 Incorporation into Canada, 1869–1945
 - .203 Postwar period, 1945–
- .23 ***Alberta**
 - Add to 971.23 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g., postwar period 971.2303

[†] Add as instructed under 930–990

- .24 ***Saskatchewan**
 Add to 971.24 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g.,
 postwar period 971.2403
- .27 ***Manitoba**
 Add to 971.27 the numbers following 971.2 in 971.201–971.203, e.g.,
 postwar period 971.2703
- .3 ***Ontario**
 .301 Early history to 1791
 .302 Upper Canada and Union Act, 1791–1867
 .303 Province of Canada, 1867–1945
 Class postwar period in 971.304
 .304 Postwar period, 1945–
- .4 ***Quebec**
 .401 French period to 1763
 .402 British period, 1763–1867
 .403 Province of Canada, 1867–1945
 Class postwar period in 971.404
 .404 Postwar period, 1945–
- .5 ***New Brunswick**
 .501 Early history to 1784
 .502 Separate province, 1784–1867
 .503 Province of Canada, 1867–1945
 Class postwar period in 971.504
 .504 Postwar period, 1945–
- .6 ***Nova Scotia**
 .601 Early history to 1763
 .602 British colony, 1763–1867
 .603 Province of Canada, 1867–1945
 Class postwar period in 971.604
 .604 Postwar period, 1945
- .7 ***Prince Edward Island**
 .701 Early history to 1769
 .702 Separate province, 1769–1873

¹ Add as instructed under 930–990

- .703 Province of Canada, 1873–1945
Class postwar period in 971.704
- .704 Postwar period, 1945–
- .8 ***Newfoundland and adjacent islands**
For Labrador, see 971.9
- .801 Early history to 1855
- .802 Responsible government, 1855–1933
- .803 Suspension of parliamentary government, 1933–1949
- .804 Province of Canada, 1949–
- .9 ***Labrador**
Add to 971.9 the numbers following 971.8 in 971.801–971.804, e.g.,
postwar history 971.904

972 Middle America Mexico

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 972.0001–972.0009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Middle America

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Mexico
As enumerated under 930–990

► 972.02–972.08 Historical periods of Mexico

Class comprehensive works in 972

- .02 Conquest and colonial period, 1516–1810
- .03 Revolutionary period and independence, 1810–1822
- .04 First empire and republic, 1822–1845
- .05 Period of war with United States, 1845–1848
(It is optional to class here Mexican War; prefer 973.62)
- .06 Reaction and reform, 1848–1861
- .07 European intervention, 1861–1867
- .08 Republic, 1867–
- .081 Under constitution of 1857, 1867–1917
- .082 Under constitution of 1917, 1917–
- .8 ***Central America**
- .802 Period of discovery, exploration, conquest, 1502–1535
- .803 Colonial period, 1535–1821
- .804 19th century, 1821–1900

† Add as instructed under 930–990

- .805 20th century, 1900–
- .81 ***Guatemala**
Add to 972.81 the numbers following 972.8 in 972.802–972.805, e.g.,
colonial period, 1535–1821 972.8103
- .82 ***British Honduras (Belize)**
Add to 972.82 the numbers following 972.8 in 972.802–972.805, e.g.,
colonial period, 1535–1821 972.8203
- .83 ***Honduras**
Add to 972.83 the numbers following 972.8 in 972.802–972.805, e.g.,
colonial period, 1535–1821 972.8303
- .84 ***El Salvador**
Add to 972.84 the numbers following 972.8 in 972.802–972.805, e.g.,
colonial period, 1535–1821 972.8403
- .85 ***Nicaragua**
Add to 972.85 the numbers following 972.8 in 972.802–972.805, e.g.,
colonial period, 1535–1821 972.8503
- .86 ***Costa Rica**
Add to 972.86 the numbers following 972.8 in 972.802–972.805, e.g.,
colonial period, 1535–1821 972.8603
- .9 ***West Indies (Antilles)**
- .902 Period of discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608
- .903 17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801
- .904 19th century, 1801–1902
- .905 20th century, 1902–

SUMMARY

- 972.91 **Cuba and adjacent islands**
- .92 **Jamaica and adjacent islands**
- .93 **Dominican Republic**
- .94 **Haiti**
- .95 **Puerto Rico**
- .98 **Windward and other southern islands**
- .91 ***Cuba and adjacent islands**
- .910 2 Period of discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1514
- .910 3 First colonial period, 1514–1763
- .910 4 Second colonial period, 1763–1810
- .910 5 Third colonial period, 1810–1899
- For Spanish-American War, see 973.89*

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .910 6 20th century, 1899–
- .910 61 American military occupation, 1899–1902
- .910 62 First republic, 1902–1933
- .910 63 Second republic, 1933–1958
- .910 64 Regime of Fidel Castro, 1959–
- .92 *Jamaica and adjacent islands
- .920 2 16th century, 1494–1607
- .920 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1607–1832
- .920 31 Later Spanish rule, 1607–1655
- .920 32 English conquest to Great Earthquake, 1655–1692
- .920 33 Great Earthquake to antislavery struggle, 1692–1782
- .920 34 Antislavery struggle to emancipation, 1782–1832
- .920 4 Later 19th century, 1832–1904
- .920 5 First part of 20th century, 1904–1962
- .920 6 Independence, 1962–
- .93 *Dominican Republic
- .930 2 Period of discovery, exploration, conquest, 1492–1608
- .930 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1608–1801
- .930 4 19th century, 1801–1902
- .930 5 20th century, 1902–
- .930 53 Regime of Trujillo, 1930–1961
- .930 54 Later 20th century, 1961–
- .94 *Haiti
- .940 2 Spanish rule, 1492–1625
- .940 3 French colony, 1625–1804
- .940 4 Independence and republic, 1804–1915
- .940 5 American occupation, 1915–1934
- .940 6 Republic, 1934–
- .95 *Puerto Rico
- .950 2 Period of discovery and early colonial period, 1493–1602
- .950 3 17th and 18th centuries, 1602–1804
- .950 4 19th century, 1804–1900
- .950 5 20th century, 1900–
- .950 53 Commonwealth, 1952–

¹ Add as instructed under 930–990

- .98 *Windward and other southern islands
- .983 *Trinidad and Tobago
- .983 02 16th-18th centuries, 1498-1797
- .983 03 British period, 1797-1962
- .983 04 Independence, 1962-

973 United States

Use 973.01-973.09 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930-990

(If optional "Arcas" notation 734-739 from Table 2 is used, use 973.01-973.09 for historical periods, and 973.001-973.009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons)



973.1-973.9 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 973

SUMMARY

- 973.1 Period of discovery and exploration to 1607
 - .2 Colonial period, 1607-1775
 - .3 Revolution and confederation, 1775-1789
 - .4 Constitutional period, 1789-1809
 - .5 Early 19th century, 1809-1845
 - .6 Middle 19th century, 1845-1861
 - .7 Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861-1865 (Civil War)
 - .8 Later 19th century, 1865-1901 (Period of reconstruction)
 - .9 20th century, 1901-
- .1 Period of discovery and exploration to 1607
 - Class here period of discovery and exploration of America; if preferred, class in 970.01
 - Class period of discoveries and explorations in a specific country with history of the country
- .11 Pre-Columbian claims
 - For Chinese claims, see 973.12; Norse, 973.13, Welsh, 973.14*
- .12 Chinese claims
- .13 Norse claims
- .14 Welsh claims
- .15 Discoveries by Columbus
- .16 Spanish and Portuguese explorations
- .17 English explorations
- .18 French explorations

¹ Add as instructed under 930-990

- .19 Explorations of other nations
- .2 **Colonial period, 1607–1775**
 - Class local history in 974–975
- .21 Virginia settlements, 1607–1620
- .22 Other early settlements, 1620–1643
 - By English in New England and elsewhere, by Dutch on Hudson River, by Swedes on Delaware River
 - Including Pequot War, 1636–1638
- .23 Middle 17th century, 1643–1664
- .24 Later 17th century, 1664–1689
 - Including King Philip's War, 1675–1676
- .25 Period of early French wars, 1689–1732
 - Including King William's War, Queen Anne's War
 - If preferred, class King William's War, Queen Anne's War in 971.018
- .26 Extension of English rule, 1732–1763
 - Including King George's War, French and Indian War
 - If preferred, class King George's War in 971.018, French and Indian War in 971.0188
- .27 End of colonial period, 1763–1775
 - Including Pontiac's conspiracy, 1763–1764
 - If preferred, class Pontiac's conspiracy in 971.02
- .3 **Revolution and confederation, 1775–1789**

SUMMARY

- 973.31 Social, political, economic history
- .32 Diplomatic history
- .33 Operations
- .34 Military units
- .35 Naval history
- .36 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
- .37 Prisons and health services
- .38 Other topics
- .31 Social, political, economic history
 - For diplomatic history, see 973.32*
- .311 Causes
 - .311 1 Stamp Act, 1765–1766
 - .311 2 Commerical restrictions
 - Navigation Acts, Townshend Acts, burning of the Gaspée, 1772
 - For tax on tea, see 973.3115*

- .311 3 Quartering of troops and Boston Massacre, 1770
- .311 4 Taxation and representation
- .311 5 Tax on tea and Boston Tea Party, 1773
- .311 6 Boston Port Bill, 1774
- .312 Continental Congress
- .313 Declarations of independence, 1775–1776
- .314 Loyalists (Tories)
 - For settlement by Loyalists in Canada, see 971.024*
- .315 Relation of specific classes of persons to the Revolution
 - Add “Persons” notation 03–99 from Table 7 to base number 973.315
- .316 Results
 - For Treaty of Peace, see 973.317; Confederation, 973.318*
- .317 Treaty of Peace, 1783
- .318 Confederation, 1783–1789
- .32 Diplomatic history
 - Relations of United States with other nations
 - Add to 973.32 the numbers following 4 in “Areas” notation 41–49 from Table 2, e.g., relations with France 973.324
- .33 Operations
 - For naval operations, see 973.35*
- .331 Of 1775
 - .331 1 Battles of Lexington and Concord
 - .331 2 Battle of Bunker Hill
- .332 Of 1776–January 3, 1777
 - Including Battles of Trenton and Princeton
- .333 Of 1777
 - For Battles of Trenton and Princeton, see 973.332, winter at Valley Forge, 973.3341*
- .334 Of 1778
 - .334 1 Winter at Valley Forge, 1777–1778
- .335 Of 1779
- .336 Of 1780
- .337 Of 1781
- .338 Of 1782
- .339 Of 1783

- .34 **Military units**
 - Organization, history, rosters, service records
 - Class operations of military units in 973.33, units engaged in a special service with the subject, e.g., privateering 973.35
 - For naval units, see 973.35; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.36*
- .341 **British troops**
 - For mercenary troops, see 973.342; Indian allies, 973.343*
- .342 **Mercenary troops**
- .343 **Indian allies**
- .344 **American troops from northern states**
 - Add to 973.344 the numbers following 74 in "Areas" notation 741-749 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.3448
- .345 **American troops from southern states**
 - Add to 973.345 the numbers following 75 in "Areas" notation 751-758 from Table 2, e.g., Virginia troops 973.3455
- .346 **Auxiliary troops on American side**
 - Including Polish, Swedish, Spanish
 - For French troops, see 973.347*
- .347 **French troops**
- .35 **Naval history**
 - Operations, ships, units
 - Including privateering
- .36 **Celebrations, conunemorations, memorials**
 - Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 - Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Bunker Hill 973.3312
- .37 **Prisons and health services**
 - Including exchange of prisoners
- .371 **British prisons and prison ships**
- .372 **American prisons**
- .375 **Medical services**
 - For hospitals, see 973.376*
- .376 **Hospitals**

-
- .38 Other topics
 - Including personal narratives
 - Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisons 973.37
 - .381 Treason
 - For treason of Benedict Arnold, see 973.382; of Charles Lee, 973.383*
 - .382 Treason of Benedict Arnold
 - .383 Treason of Charles Lee
 - .385 Secret service and spies
 - For British secret service and spies, see 973.386*
 - .386 British secret service and spies
 - .388 Propaganda
 - .4 **Constitutional period, 1789–1809**
 - .41 Administration of George Washington, 1789–1797
 - For Indian wars, see 973.42; second term, 973.43*
 - .42 Indian wars, 1790–1791
 - .43 Washington's second term, 1793–1797
 - .44 Administration of John Adams, 1797–1801
 - For troubles with France, see 973.45*
 - .45 Troubles with France, 1797–1800
 - .46 Administration of Thomas Jefferson, 1801–1809
 - For Tripolitan War, see 973.47, second term, 973.48*
 - .47 Tripolitan War, 1801–1805
 - If preferred, class in 961.02
 - .48 Jefferson's second term, 1805–1809
 - .5 **Early 19th century, 1809–1845**
 - .51 Administration of James Madison, 1809–1817
 - For War of 1812, see 973.52; war with Algiers, 973.53*
 - .52 War of 1812, 1812–1814
 - If preferred, class in 971.034
 - .521 Social, political, economic history
 - Including causes, results
 - For diplomatic history, see 973.522*
 - .522 Diplomatic history
 - Relations of United States with other nations

- .523 Operations
 Including campaigns and battles in the North and Canada
 For naval operations, see 973.525
- .523 8 In the South
 Including Battle of Bladensburg, burning of Washington,
 bombardment of Fort McHenry
 For Battle of New Orleans, see 973.5239
- .523 9 Battle of New Orleans
- .524 Military units
 Organization, history, rosters, service records
 Class operations of military units in 973.523, units engaged in a
 special service with the subject, e.g., privateering 973.525
 For naval units, see 973.525, rolls of honor and lists of dead,
 973.526
- .524 1 British troops
- .524 2 Indian allies of British
- .524 4–.524 7 American troops
 Add to 973.524 the numbers following 7 in “Areas” notation 74–77
 from Table 2, e.g., Pennsylvania troops 973.52448
- .525 Naval history
 Operations, ships, units
 Including privateering
- .525 4 Battle of Lake Erie
- .525 6 Battle of Lake Champlain
- .526 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event
 with the event, e.g., Battle of Lake Erie 973.5254
- .527 Prisons and health services
 Including exchange of prisoners
- .527 5 Medical services
 Including hospitals
- .528 Other topics
 Including personal narratives
 Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject,
 e.g., on prisons 973.527
- .528 5 Secret service and spies

-
- .53 War with Algiers, 1815
 - If preferred, class in 961.02
 - .54 Administration of James Monroe, 1817–1825
 - Including First Seminole War, 1818
 - .55 Administration of John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829
 - .56 Administration of Andrew Jackson, 1829–1837
 - Including Black Hawk War, 1832
 - .561 Nullification movement
 - .57 Administration of Martin Van Buren, 1837–1841
 - Including Second Seminole War, 1835–1842
 - .58 Administrations of William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, 1841–1845
 - .6 Middle 19th century, 1845–1861
 - .61 Administration of James Knox Polk, 1845–1849
 - For Mexican War, see 973.62*
 - .62 Mexican War, 1845–1848
 - If preferred, class in 972.05
 - .621 Social, political, economic history
 - Including causes, results
 - For diplomatic history, see 973.622*
 - .622 Diplomatic history
 - Relations of United States with other nations
 - .623 Operations
 - For naval operations, see 973.625*
 - .624 Military units
 - Organization, history, rosters, service records
 - Class operations of military units in 973.623, units engaged in a special service with the subject, e.g., naval operations 973.625
 - For naval units, see 973.625; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.626*
 - .625 Naval history
 - Operations, ships, units
 - .626 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 - Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 - Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., capture of Chapultepec 973.623

- .627 Prisons and health services
- .627 5 Medical services
 - Including hospitals
- .628 Personal narratives
 - Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisons 973.627
- .63 Administration of Zachary Taylor, 1849–1850
- .64 Administration of Millard Fillmore, 1850–1853
- .66 Administration of Franklin Pierce, 1853–1857
- .68 Administration of James Buchanan, 1857–1861
- .7 Administration of Abraham Lincoln, 1861–1865 (Civil War)

SUMMARY

- 973.71 Social, political, economic history
 - .72 Diplomatic history
 - .73 Operations
 - .74 Military units
 - .75 Naval history
 - .76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 - .77 Prisons, health, social services
 - .78 Other topics
- .71 Social, political, economic history
 - For diplomatic history, see 973.72*
- .711 Causes
 - .711 2 Extension of slavery
 - .711 3 Compromises
 - Missouri Compromise, Compromise of 1850, Wilmot Proviso
 - .711 4 Abolition movement
 - .711 5 Fugitive slaves
 - Including underground railway, Dred Scott decision
 - .711 6 John Brown's raid
 - .712 Efforts to preserve peace
 - .713 The South and secession
 - Confederate States of America in the war
 - .714 Results
 - Including Emancipation Proclamation, establishment of Freedmen's Bureau
 - For period of reconstruction, see 973.8*

-
- .715 Relation of specific classes of persons to the war
 - .715 03–.715 87 Classes by various nonoccupational and occupational characteristics
 - Add “Persons” notation 03–87 from Table 7 to base number 973.715
 - For refugees, see 973.7159; southern Union sympathizers, 973.717; northern Confederate sympathizers, 973.718*
 - .715 9 Refugees
 - .717 Southern Union sympathizers
 - .718 Northern Confederate sympathizers
 - .72 Diplomatic history
 - Including relations of Union with other nations
 - .721 Relations of Confederacy with other nations
 - .73 Operations
 - For naval operations, see 973.75*
 - .730 1 Strategy
 - .730 12 Union side
 - .730 13 Confederate side
 - .731 Opening phase, 1861–1862
 - Bombardment of Fort Sumter, First Battle of Bull Run (Manassas); operations in the West, May 1861–February 1862, in the South, July 1861–April 1862
 - .732 Spring and summer, 1862
 - Campaigns to open Mississippi River: capture of Forts Henry and Donelson, fall of Nashville, occupation of Memphis, Battle of Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), capture of New Orleans, siege of Corinth, Peninsular campaign of Army of the Potomac from siege of Yorktown to Second Battle of Bull Run (Manassas)
 - .733 Summer and fall, 1862
 - Including campaigns in the South other than those connected with opening the Mississippi, April 1862–June 1863, in the West, June 1862–January 1863, in Texas, New Mexico, Arizona to May 1863; Burnside’s offensive, Battle of Fredericksburg
 - .733 6 Lee’s invasion of Maryland
 - Including Battles of Harper’s Ferry, South Mountain, Antietam (Sharpsburg)

- .734 Summer, 1863
Including trans-Mississippi campaigns to end of year; western campaigns: siege of Port Hudson, Louisiana; eastern campaigns: Hooker's offensive, Battle of Chancellorsville
- .734 4 Siege and fall of Vicksburg
- .734 9 Battle of Gettysburg
- .735 Fall, 1863
Including campaigns in the South: bombardment of Fort Sumter and Charleston, Chickamauga and Knoxville campaigns
- .735 9 Chattanooga campaign
Including Battles of Lookout Mountain, Missionary Ridge
- .736 Winter and spring, 1864
Campaigns in the East, January–May; in the South, January–November; Union offensive from Wilderness to Cold Harbor, Peninsular campaign, engagements at New Market, Lynchburg, Monocacy, Fort Stevens
- .737 Summer and fall, 1864
Including Sherman's Atlanta campaign, Sheridan in the Shenandoah Valley, siege of Petersburg
- .737 8 Sherman's march to the sea and Savannah campaign
- .738 Final phase, 1865
- .74 Military units
Organization, history, rosters, service records
Class operations of military units in 973.73, units engaged in a special service with the subject, e.g., privateering 973.75
For naval units, see 973.75; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973.76
- .741 Union troops
For state organizations, see 973.744–973.749
- .741 5 Negroes
- .742 Confederate troops
For state organizations, see 973.744–973.749
- .744–.749 State organizations
Add to 973.74 the numbers following 7 in "Areas" notation 74–79 from Table 2, e.g., Ohio troops 973.7471
- .75 Naval history
Including operations, privateering, blockade running, Union ships and units
- .752 Battle of Monitor and Merrimac
- .754 Battle of Kearsarge and Alabama

- .757 Confederate Navy
 - Ships and units
- .76 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 - Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 - Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e g., Battle of Antietam 973.7336
- .77 Prisons, health, social services
 - Including exchange of prisoners
- .771 Confederate prisons
- .772 Union prisons
- .775 Medical services
 - For hospitals, see 973.776*
- .776 Hospitals
- .777 Welfare work
 - Including United States Sanitary Commission, postwar relief work
- .778 Religious life and chaplain services
- .78 Other topics

973.781–973.782 Personal narratives

Class comprehensive works in 973.78, personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e g., on prisons 973.77

- .781 Personal narratives of individuals from Union side
- .782 Personal narratives of individuals from Confederate side
- .783 Military life and customs of Union side
- .784 Military life and customs of Confederate side
- .785 Secret service and spies
 - For Confederate secret service and spies, see 973.786*
- .786 Confederate secret service and spies
- .788 Propaganda

.8 Later 19th century, 1865–1901 (Period of reconstruction)

- .81 Administration of Andrew Johnson, 1865–1869
- .82 Administration of Ulysses Simpson Grant, 1869–1877
- .83 Administration of Rutherford Birchard Hayes, 1877–1881
- .84 Administrations of James Abram Garfield and Chester Alan Arthur, 1881–1885
- .85 First administration of Grover Cleveland, 1885–1889

- .86 Administration of Benjamin Harrison, 1889–1893
- .87 Second administration of Grover Cleveland, 1893–1897
- .88 Administration of William McKinley, 1897–1901
 - For Spanish-American War, see 973.89*
- .89 Spanish-American War, 1898
 - If preferred, class in 946.08
- .891 Social, political, economic history
 - Including causes, results
 - For diplomatic history, see 973.892*
- .892 Diplomatic history
 - Relations of United States with other nations
- .893 Operations
 - For naval operations, see 973.895*
- .893 3 Cuban campaign
- .893 5 Puerto Rican campaign
- .893 7 Philippine campaign
- .894 Military units
 - Organization, history, rosters, service records
 - Class operations of military units in 973.893, units engaged in a special service with the subject, e.g., naval operations 973 895
 - For naval units, see 973.895; rolls of honor and lists of dead, 973 896*
- .895 Naval history
 - Operations, ships, units
- .896 Celebrations, commemorations, memorials
 - Including rolls of honor, lists of dead
 - Class celebrations, commemorations, memorials of a specific event with the event, e.g., Battle of Manila Bay 973.895
- .897 Prisons, health, social services
- .897 5 Medical services
 - Including hospitals
- .898 Personal narratives
 - Class personal narratives on a specific subject with the subject, e.g., on prisons 973.897
- .9 20th century, 1901–
- .91 Early 20th century, 1901–1953
- .911 Administration of Theodore Roosevelt, 1901–1909

- .912 Administration of William Howard Taft, 1909–1913
- .913 Administration of Woodrow Wilson, 1913–1921
- .914 Administration of Warren Gamaliel Harding, 1921–1923
- .915 Administration of Calvin Coolidge, 1923–1929
- .916 Administration of Herbert Clark Hoover, 1929–1933
- .917 Administration of Franklin Delano Roosevelt, 1933–1945
- .918 Administration of Harry S. Truman, 1945–1953
- .92 Later 20th century, 1953–
- .921 Administration of Dwight David Eisenhower, 1953–1961
- .922 Administration of John Fitzgerald Kennedy, 1961–1963
- .923 Administration of Lyndon Baines Johnson, 1963–1969
- .924 Administration of Richard Milhous Nixon, 1969–



974–979 Specific states of United States

Class comprehensive works in 973

For Hawaii, see 996.9

974 *Northeastern United States (New England and Middle Atlantic states)

- .01 Period of discovery and early settlement to 1620
- .02 Colonial period, 1620–1776
- .03 Revolution to Civil War, 1776–1865
- .04 Since Civil War, 1865–
- .1 *Maine
 - .101 Period of discovery and early settlement to 1620
 - .102 Colonial period, 1620–1776
 - .103 Postcolonial period and statehood, 1776–1865
 - .104 Modern period, 1865–
- .2 *New Hampshire
 - Add to 974.2 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g., colonial period 974.202
- .3 *Vermont
 - Add to 974.3 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g., early settlement 974.301

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.4 *Massachusetts

Add to 974.4 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
colonial period 974.402

.5 *Rhode Island

Add to 974.5 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
modern period 974.504

.6 *Connecticut

Add to 974.6 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
postcolonial period 974.603

.7 *New York

Add to 974.7 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
New Amsterdam 974.702

.8 *Pennsylvania

Add to 974.8 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
modern period 974.804

.9 *New Jersey

Add to 974.9 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
colonial period 974.902

975 *Southeastern United States (South Atlantic states)

Add to 975 the numbers following 974 in 974.01–974.04, e.g.,
colonial period 975.02

.1 *Delaware

Add to 975.1 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
colonial period 975.102

.2 *Maryland

Add to 975.2 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
postcolonial period 975.203

.3 *District of Columbia (Washington)

.301 Early period to 1800

.302 Federal city, 1800–1865

.303 Postwar period and early 20th century, 1865–1933

.304 Metropolis and world capital, 1933–

.4 *West Virginia

Add to 975.4 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
modern period 975.404

.5 *Virginia

Add to 975.5 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
colonial period 975.502

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.6 *North Carolina

Add to 975.6 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
modern period 975.604

.7 *South Carolina

Add to 975.7 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
colonial period 975.702

.8 *Georgia

Add to 975.8 the numbers following 974.1 in 974.101–974.104, e.g.,
discovery and early settlement 975.801

.9 *Florida

.901 Early Spanish period, 1513–1763

.902 English period, 1763–1783

.903 Spanish period, 1783–1821

.904 Territorial period, 1821–1845

.905 Post-territorial period and statehood, 1845–1865

.906 Modern period, 1865–

976 *South central United States Gulf Coast states

.01 Discovery and early exploration to 1700

.02 Foreign domination, 1700–1800

.03 Early 19th century, 1800–1865

.04 Since Civil War, 1865–

SUMMARY

- 976.1 Alabama
- .2 Mississippi
- .3 Louisiana
- .4 Texas
- .6 Oklahoma
- .7 Arkansas
- .8 Tennessee
- .9 Kentucky

.1 *Alabama

.101 Discovery and early exploration, 1539–1701

.102 French period, 1701–1763

.103 British period, 1763–1783

.104 Spanish and territorial periods, 1783–1817

.105 Territorial period and statehood, 1817–1865

.106 Modern period, 1865–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.2 *Mississippi

Add to 976.2 the numbers following 976.1 in 976.101–976.106, e.g.,
British period 976.203

.3 *Louisiana

- .301 Discovery and early exploration, 1528–1718
- .302 French period, 1718–1763
- .303 Spanish period, 1763–1803
- .304 French and territorial periods, 1803–1812
- .305 Early statehood, 1812–1865
- .306 Modern period, 1865–

.4 *Texas

- .401 Discovery and early exploration, 1519–1680
- .402 Spanish and French periods, 1680–1821
- .403 Mexican period, 1821–1836
- .404 Republic, 1836–1846
- .405 Early statehood, 1846–1865
- .406 Modern period, 1865–

.6 *Oklahoma

- .601 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1682
- .602 French and Spanish periods, 1682–1803
- .603 Indian Territory, 1803–1866
- .604 Territorial period and statehood, 1866–1907
- .605 Modern period, 1907–

.7 *Arkansas

- .701 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1686
- .702 French and Spanish periods, 1686–1803
- .703 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1803–1836
- .704 Early statehood, 1836–1865
- .705 Modern period, 1865–

.8 *Tennessee

- .801 Discovery and early exploration. 1541–1682
- .802 French, Spanish, English periods, 1682–1769

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .803 Early settlement and territorial period, 1769–1796
Including District of Washington, State of Franklin
- .804 Early statehood, 1796–1865
- .805 Modern period, 1865–
- .9 *Kentucky**
- .901 Discovery and early exploration, 1584–1736
- .902 French and territorial period, 1736–1792
Including Transylvania Colony
- .903 Early statehood, 1792–1865
- .904 Modern period, 1865–
- 977 *North central United States Lake states**
- .01 Discovery and early settlement to 1787
- .02 Early 19th century, 1787–1865
- .03 Since Civil War, 1865–
- .1 *Ohio**
- .101 Discovery and early settlement to 1763
- .102 British and early United States periods, 1763–1787
- .103 Territorial period and early statehood, 1787–1865
- .104 Modern period, 1865–
- .2 *Indiana**
Add to 977.2 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.203
- .3 *Illinois**
Add to 977.3 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.303
- .4 *Michigan**
Add to 977.4 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., modern period 977.404
- .5 *Wisconsin**
Add to 977.5 the numbers following 977.1 in 977.101–977.104, e.g., territorial period 977.503
- .6 *Minnesota**
- .601 Discovery and early settlement to 1660
- .602 French period, 1660–1783
- .603 Preterritorial period, 1783–1849

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .604 Territorial period and early statehood, 1849–1900
- .605 Modern period, 1900–
- .7 *Iowa**
 - .701 Discovery and early settlement, 1673–1838
 - .702 Territorial period and early statehood, 1838–1900
 - .703 Modern period, 1900–
- .8 *Missouri**
 - .801 Discovery and early settlement, 1673–1750
 - .802 French and Spanish periods, 1750–1803
 - .803 Territorial period and early statehood, 1803–1900
 - .804 Modern period, 1900–

978 *Western United States

- .01 Early history to 1800
- .02 19th century, 1800–1900
- .03 20th century, 1900–

SUMMARY

- 978.1 Kansas
- .2 Nebraska
- .3 South Dakota
- .4 North Dakota
- .6 Montana
- .7 Wyoming
- .8 Colorado
- .9 New Mexico

- .1 *Kansas**
 - .101 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1803
 - .102 Territorial period, 1803–1861
 - .103 Statehood, 1861–
- .2 *Nebraska**
 - .201 Discovery and early exploration, 1739–1854
 - .202 Territorial period, 1854–1867
 - .203 Statehood, 1867–
- .3 *South Dakota**
 - .301 Discovery and early exploration, 1743–1861
 - .302 Territorial period, 1861–1889

' Add as instructed under 930–990

.303 Statehood, 1889–

.4 *North Dakota

Add to 978.4 the numbers following 978.3 in 978.301–978.303, e.g.,
territorial period 978.402

.6 *Montana

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1803–1864

.602 Territorial period, 1864–1889

.603 Statehood, 1889–

.7 *Wyoming

.701 Discovery and early exploration, 1743–1868

.702 Territorial period, 1868–1890

.703 Statehood, 1890–

.8 *Colorado

.801 Discovery and early exploration, 1541–1803

.802 Acquisition and territorial period, 1803–1876

.803 Statehood, 1876–

.9 *New Mexico

.901 Discovery and early exploration, 1540–1598

.902 Spanish period, 1598–1821

.903 Mexican period, 1821–1848

.904 Territorial period, 1848–1912

.905 Statehood, 1912–

**979 *Great Basin and Pacific Slope regions of United States
Pacific Coast states**

Add to 979 the numbers following 978 in 978.01–978.03, e.g.,
20th century 979.03

SUMMARY

- 979.1 Arizona
- .2 Utah
- .3 Nevada
- .4 California
- .5 Oregon
- .6 Idaho
- .7 Washington
- .8 Alaska

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.1 *Arizona

Add to 979.1 the numbers following 978.9 in 978.901–978.905, e.g.,
territorial period 979.104

.2 *Utah

.201 Discovery and early exploration, 1776–1848

.202 Territorial period, 1848–1896

.203 Statehood, 1896–

.3 *Nevada

.301 Discovery and early exploration, 1825–1861

.302 Territorial period and early statehood, 1861–1900

.303 Modern period, 1900–

.4 *California

.401 Discovery and early exploration, 1542–1769

.402 Spanish period, 1769–1822

.403 Mexican period, 1822–1848

.404 Territorial period and early statehood, 1848–1900

.405 Modern period, 1900–

.5 *Oregon

.501 Discovery and early exploration, 1543–1778

.502 Spanish and British periods, 1778–1819

.503 Preterritorial and territorial periods, 1819–1859

.504 Statehood, 1859–

.6 *Idaho

.601 Discovery and early exploration, 1805–1863

.602 Territorial period, 1863–1890

.603 Statehood, 1890–

.7 *Washington

.701 Discovery and early exploration, 1592–1818

.702 British and preterritorial periods, 1818–1853

.703 Territorial period, 1853–1889

.704 Statehood, 1889–

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .8 *Alaska**
- .801 Discovery and early exploration, 1741–1799
- .802 Russian period, 1799–1867
- .803 Preterritorial period, 1867–1912
- .804 Territorial period, 1912–1959
- .805 Statehood, 1959–

980 General history of South America

Use 980 001–980 009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons as enumerated under 930–990

Class Indians in 980.1

980.01–980.03 Historical periods

Class comprehensive works in 980

- .01 Early history to 1806
 - Period of discovery, exploration, colonization
- .02 Wars of Independence, 1806–1830
- .03 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–

.1 Indians of South America

History and civilization in South America

Class world history of South American Indians in 909.0498, history in a specific place outside South America with history of the place using subdivision 00498 from table under 930–990, civilization outside South America in 910.0398

For specific tribes, see 980.3, Indians in specific places, 980.4; government relations, 980.5

.3 Specific Indian tribes

Arrange alphabetically by name of tribe

Class government relations of specific Indian tribes in 980.5

.4 Indians in specific places in South America

Add to 980.4 the numbers following 8 in “Areas” notation 81–89 from Table 2, e.g., Indians in Brazil 980.41

Class specific tribes in South America regardless of place in 980.3, government relations of Indians in South America regardless of place in 980.5

.5 Government relations with Indians

History and policy

Class a specific aspect of government relations with the subject, e.g., social welfare 362.84

* Add as instructed under 930–990

981 *Brazil

- .01 Period of discovery and conquest to 1534
- .02 Hereditary captaincies, 1534–1549
- .03 Colonial period, 1549–1822
- .04 Empire, 1822–1889
 - For Paraguayan War, see 989.205*
- .05 First republic, 1889–1930
- .06 20th century, 1930–

982 *Argentina

- .02 Period of discovery, conquest, colonization, 1516–1810
- .03 Revolutionary period and Wars of Independence, 1810–1829
- .04 Republic, 1829–1861
- .05 Constitutional period, 1861–1910
 - For Paraguayan War, see 989.205*
- .06 20th century, 1910–

983 *Chile

- .02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1535–1560
- .03 Colonial period, 1560–1810
- .04 Republic, 1810–1830
- .05 Autocratic republic, 1830–1861
- .06 Later republics, 1861–
 - .061 Liberal republic, 1861–1891
 - Including War of the Pacific, 1879–1883
 - If preferred, class War of the Pacific in 984.045
 - .062 Revolution of 1891
 - .063 Democratic republic, 1891–1924
 - .064 Republic, 1924–

984 *Bolivia

- .02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1532–1559
- .03 Colonial period, 1559–1809
- .04 Republic, 1809–1899
 - .041 War of Independence, 1809–1825
 - .042 First republic, 1825–1831

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .044 Administration of Andrés Santa Cruz, 1831–1839
Including confederation with Peru, 1835–1836
- .045 Period of boundary wars, 1839–1883
(It is optional to class here War of the Pacific; prefer 983.061)
- .046 Conservative republic, 1883–1899
- .05 20th century, 1899–
(It is optional to class here Chaco War; prefer 989.207)

985 *Peru

- .02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1519–1555
- .03 Colonial period, 1555–1808
- .04 Independence, 1808–1824
- .05 Rise of military power, 1824–1867
Including confederation with Bolivia, 1835–1836
- .06 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1867–
.061 1867–1883
For War of the Pacific, see 983.061
- .062 Reconstruction, 1883–1895
- .063 20th century, 1895–

986 *Northwestern South America and Panama

.1 *Colombia

- .101 Period of discovery and conquest to 1550
- .102 Colonial period, 1550–1810
- .103 Independence, 1810–1819
- .104 Republic of Colombia, 1819–1830
- .105 New Granada, 1831–1863
- .106 Later republics, 1863–
.106 1 United States of Colombia, 1863–1886
.106 2 Republic of Colombia, 1886–1930
.106 3 Later 20th century, 1930–

.2 *Panama

- .201 Period of discovery and conquest to 1550
- .202 Colonial period, 1550–1821
- .203 19th century, 1821–1903

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .204 Independence, 1903–1904
- .205 Republic, 1904–
- .6 ***Ecuador**
- .601 Period of discovery and conquest to 1561
- .602 Colonial period, 1562–1809
- .603 Independence, 1810–1822
- .604 Quito Presidency as part of Greater Colombia, 1822–1830
- .605 Republic, 1830–1859
- .606 Restoration, 1860–1895
- .607 20th century, 1896–

987 ***Venezuela**

- .02 Period of discovery and conquest, 1498–1528
- .03 Colonial period, 1528–1806
- .04 Independence, 1806–1819
- .05 Venezuela as part of Greater Colombia, 1819–1830
- .06 Later 19th and 20th centuries, 1830–
- .061 Republic, 1830–1864
- .062 Federal period, 1864–1900
- .063 20th century, 1900–

988 ***Guianas**

- .01 Early history to 1815
- .02 1815–1945
- .03 Later 20th century, 1945–
- .1 ***Guyana (British Guiana)**
Add to 988.1 the numbers following 988 in 988.01–988.03, e.g.,
later 20th century 988.103
- .2 ***Guyane (French Guiana)**
Add to 988.2 the numbers following 988 in 988.01–988.03, e.g.,
later 20th century 988.203
- .3 ***Surinam (Dutch Guiana)**
Add to 988.3 the numbers following 988 in 988.01–988.03, e.g.,
later 20th century 988.303

* Add as instructed under 930–990

989 Other parts of South America**.2 *Paraguay**

.202 Period of discovery, exploration, conquest, 1524–1537

.203 Colonial period, 1537–1811

.204 Independence, 1811–1814

.205 Dictatorship, 1814–1870

Including Paraguayan War, 1865–1870

.206 Republic, 1870–1902

.207 20th century, 1902–

Including Chaco War

If preferred, class Chaco War in 984.05

.5 *Uruguay

.502 Period of discovery and conquest, 1516–1724

.503 Colonial period, 1724–1811

.504 Independence, 1811–1825

.505 Republic and national state, 1825–1886

.505 5 National state, 1830–1886

For Paraguayan War, see 989.205

.506 Late 19th and 20th centuries, 1886–

**990 General history of other parts of world Pacific
Ocean islands (Oceania)**

.01–.09 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Pacific
Ocean islands (Oceania)

As enumerated under 930–990

991 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

992 [Unassigned]

Most recently used in Edition 17

993 *New Zealand and Melanesia**.1 *New Zealand**

.101 Early history to 1840

Including Maori history

.101 9 History of European settlers

* Add as instructed under 930–990

- .102 Colonial period, 1840–1908
- .102 1 Crown colony, 1840–1853
 - Including Maori Wars of 1843–1847
- .102 2 Period of provincial governments, 1853–1876
 - Class here Maori Wars
 - For Maori Wars of 1843–1847, see 993.1021*
- .102 3 Period of general government, 1876–1908
- .103 Dominion period, 1908–

994 **Australia**

- .01 Early history to 1788
- .02 Settlement and growth, 1788–1851
- .03 Colonial administration, 1851–1901
- .031 Gold discovery and consolidation, 1851–1891
- .032 Federal movement, 1891–1901
 - Class here comprehensive works on federation, 1891–1922
 - For development of federal institutions, 1901–1922, see 994.041*
- 994.04–994.06 20th century, 1901–
 - Class comprehensive works in 994.04
- .04 Early 20th century, 1901–1945
 - Class here comprehensive works on 20th century
 - For postwar period and Menzies administration, 1945–1965, see 994.05;*
later 20th century, 1965–, 994.06
- .041 Development of federal institutions, 1901–1922
- .042 To end of World War II, 1922–1945
- .05 Postwar period and Menzies administration, 1945–1965
- .06 Later 20th century, 1965–

995 ***New Guinea (Papua)**

996 **Other parts of Pacific Polynesia**

- .001–.009 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Polynesia
 - As enumerated under 930–990

* Add as instructed under 930–990

.9 North central Pacific Hawaii

Add as instructed under 930–990, but use 996.90001–996.90009 for standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of North central Pacific

.900 1–.900 9 Standard subdivisions, groups, regions, persons of Hawaii

As enumerated under 930–990

996.902–996.904 Historical periods of Hawaii

Class comprehensive works in 996.9

.902 Native rule and republic to 1898

.902 8 Revolution and republic, 1893–1898

.903 Annexation by United States and territorial period,
1898–1959

.904 Statehood, 1959–

997 *Atlantic Ocean islands

998 *Arctic islands and Antarctica

999 Extraterrestrial worlds

Do not add from table under 930–990

* Add as instructed under 930–990